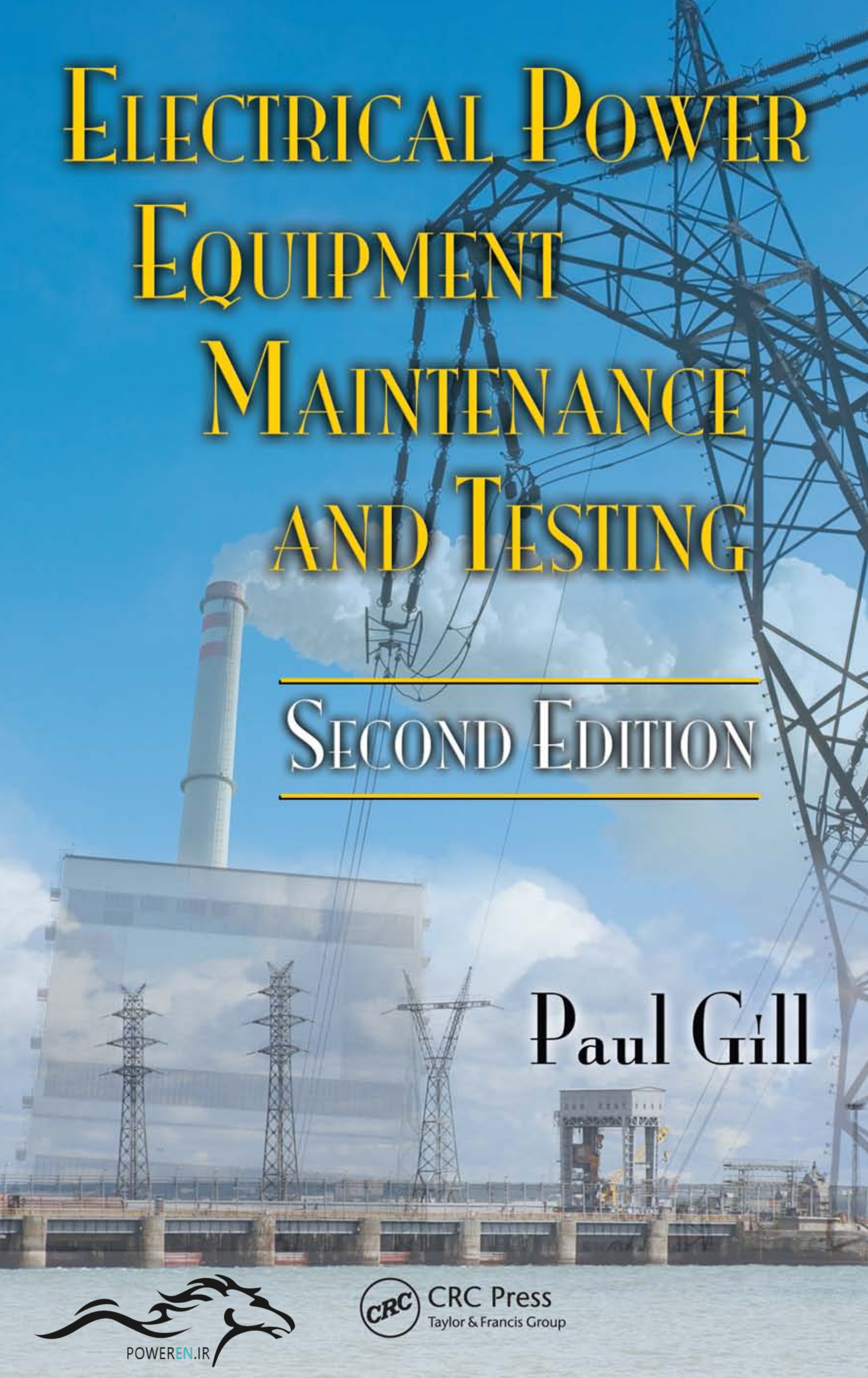
Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing

Second Edition

Paul Gill



CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

POWER ENGINEERING

Series Editor
H. Lee Willis
Quanta Technology
Raleigh, North Carolina

Advisory Editor
Muhammad H. Rashid
University of West Florida
Pensacola, Florida

1. Power Distribution Planning Reference Book, *H. Lee Willis*
2. Transmission Network Protection: Theory and Practice, *Y. G. Paithankar*
3. Electrical Insulation in Power Systems, *N. H. Malik, A. A. Al-Arainy, and M. I. Qureshi*
4. Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing, *Paul Gill*
5. Protective Relaying: Principles and Applications, Second Edition, *J. Lewis Blackburn*
6. Understanding Electric Utilities and De-Regulation, *Lorrin Philipson and H. Lee Willis*
7. Electrical Power Cable Engineering, *William A. Thue*
8. Electric Systems, Dynamics, and Stability with Artificial Intelligence Applications, *James A. Momoh and Mohamed E. El-Hawary*
9. Insulation Coordination for Power Systems, *Andrew R. Hileman*
10. Distributed Power Generation: Planning and Evaluation, *H. Lee Willis and Walter G. Scott*
11. Electric Power System Applications of Optimization, *James A. Momoh*
12. Aging Power Delivery Infrastructures, *H. Lee Willis, Gregory V. Welch, and Randall R. Schrieber*
13. Restructured Electrical Power Systems: Operation, Trading, and Volatility, *Mohammad Shahidehpour and Muwaffaq Alomoush*
14. Electric Power Distribution Reliability, *Richard E. Brown*
15. Computer-Aided Power System Analysis, *Ramasamy Natarajan*

16. Power System Analysis: Short-Circuit Load Flow and Harmonics, *J. C. Das*
17. Power Transformers: Principles and Applications, *John J. Winders, Jr.*
18. Spatial Electric Load Forecasting: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded, *H. Lee Willis*
19. Dielectrics in Electric Fields, *Gorur G. Raju*
20. Protection Devices and Systems for High-Voltage Applications, *Vladimir Gurevich*
21. Electrical Power Cable Engineering, Second Edition, *William Thue*
22. Vehicular Electric Power Systems: Land, Sea, Air, and Space Vehicles, *Ali Emadi, Mehrdad Ehsani, and John Miller*
23. Power Distribution Planning Reference Book, Second Edition, *H. Lee Willis*
24. Power System State Estimation: Theory and Implementation, *Ali Abur*
25. Transformer Engineering: Design and Practice, *S.V. Kulkarni and S. A. Khaparde*
26. Power System Capacitors, *Ramasamy Natarajan*
27. Understanding Electric Utilities and De-regulation: Second Edition, *Lorrin Philipson and H. Lee Willis*
28. Control and Automation of Electric Power Distribution Systems, *James Northcote-Green and Robert G. Wilson*
29. Protective Relaying for Power Generation Systems, *Donald Reimert*
30. Protective Relaying: Principles and Applications, Third Edition, *J. Lewis Blackburn and Thomas J. Domin*
31. Electric Power Distribution Reliability, Second Edition, *Richard E. Brown*
32. Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing, Second Edition, *Paul Gill*

Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing

Second Edition

Paul Gill

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

Printed in the United States of America on acid-free paper
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-57444-656-2 (Hardcover)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Gill, Paul, 1942-
Electrical power equipment maintenance and testing / Paul Gill. -- 2nd ed.
p. cm.
ISBN 978-1-57444-656-2 (alk. paper)
1. Electric power systems--Testing. 2. Electric power systems--Maintenance and repair. I. Title.

TK401.G55 2008
621.31'0420287--dc22 2008029371

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at
http://www.taylorandfrancis.com

and the CRC Press Web site at
http://www.crcpress.com

Liability

This textbook and instructions offered in it are designed to acquaint students and readers with accepted good practice for maintenance, operation, and testing of electrical equipment and/or systems. This book does not purport to be complete nor is it intended to be specific for the products of any manufacturer, testing procedures, or maintenance routines. The publisher, the author, companies, and other organizations referenced in this book will not accept any responsibility and liability whatsoever for work undertaken on the basis of this text. The sole purpose of this book is to impart knowledge on the subjects covered in the book. All work undertaken based on this text is the sole responsibility of the reader and user of the book. The manufacturer's operating, maintenance, and testing procedures are the only reliable guide in any specific instance and, therefore, they should be consulted before undertaking any work on electrical equipment.

The contents of this book do not represent a U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission (USNRC) position on the subjects covered in the book.

Dedication

In memory of my parents—Jasbir Singh and Amar Kaur

To my wife Patricia—for her patience and understanding to make this work possible

To my children/spouses—Shaun/Debra, Rajan/Larie, Jason/Deanna, and Rania/Alden and to my beautiful grandchildren Collin, Andrew, Ryan, Timothy, Owen, Henry, Jack, Maya, Chani, Paul, and Lauryn who keep me young and bring boundless joy to my journey in life

Contents

Chapter 2 Direct-Current Voltage Testing of Electrical Equipment

Chapter 10 Motors and Generators

Series Introduction

When the first edition of this book was published 10 years ago, it was a particularly timely addition to the Marcel Dekker series on power system engineering. The power industry was beginning to be challenged by "aging infrastructures"—areas within local and regional power grids where a good deal of equipment was quite old and in a few cases much deteriorated. Maintenance, particularly testing to determine condition and prescribe proper service and refurbishment, was receiving more attention than it had in decades.

But now, more than ever, there are factors beyond just the need to evaluate old equipment that are creating a heightened focus on sound maintenance and testing throughout the electric power industry. Equipment manufacturers have honed computer-aided design models to the point where they can shave design margins and engineer wear and deterioration rates with great precision, all to the purpose of reducing first cost, something they are forced to do in a world where much of the market buys mostly on the basis of lowest first cost. This means that comprehensive testing and "by the book" maintenance of equipment are critical earlier in the life cycle, because today's new equipment has little margin for skipped maintenance or continued deterioration; it works well only if maintained in good condition. In addition, new materials, designs, and testing methods mean the proper matching of testing and maintenance to specific equipment is more intricate and involved than ever. New technologies like online condition monitoring create opportunities to improve operations and efficiency. Finally, evolving concerns and standards, such as those regarding arc-flash, create a need for renewed focus in some areas.

Electric Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing, Second Edition is a thorough update of the first edition, with revised material and additions throughout, including new discussions on arc-flash, online condition monitoring, uninterruptible power supply testing, motor vibration analysis, and current industry safety requirements to name just a few. In addition, it has two new chapters that provide enhanced focus on a pair of critical areas in power system testing: testing and commissioning of protective relays and instrument transformers; and power quality and harmonics, and their effects on electrical equipment.

As the editor of the Power Engineering Series, I am proud to include *Electric Power and Equipment Maintenance and Testing, Second Edition* among this important group of books. During the past decade, I found the first edition to be among those I most often used in my work. This second edition is as well organized and indexed as the first, so that it will make a good reference in day-to-day work, with key material easy to find and concisely presented. Yet it is written in an accessible, linear style so that it is also a good tutorial for those who are not familiar with the material. Since these are qualities I strive for in my books, I know how difficult it is for an author to achieve them well and as a result value Paul Gill's new book all the more.

Like all the books in the Power Engineering Series, *Electric Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing, Second Edition* puts modern technology in a context of proven, practical application; useful as a reference book as well as for self-study and advanced classroom use. The Power Engineering Series includes books covering the entire field of power engineering, in all of its specialties and subgenres, all aimed at providing practicing power engineers with the knowledge and techniques they need to meet the electric industry's challenges in the twenty-first century.

H. Lee Willis

Foreword

Paul Gill's original book, *Electrical Equipment Testing and Maintenance* (1982), and the first edition, *Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing* published in 1997, were the first two books that addressed the practical aspects of electrical testing and maintenance of power system equipment and apparatus. Both books presented testing methodologies and engineering basics on the subject of electrical testing and maintenance in one volume. Considered the electrical testing and maintenance "bible," *Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing* has been the leading treatise on the subject and an essential reference book for engineers and technicians concerned with the maintenance and testing of electrical power system equipment and apparatus. Both of these textbooks were a must read for the plant electrical engineer and plant maintenance technician as well as for electrical engineering graduates and students. The first edition has become a required reading for institutions offering electrical testing and maintenance curricula. The first edition has also been an invaluable aid for technicians studying for the InterNational Electrical Testing Association's (NETA) levels II, III, and IV test technician examinations and is a valued reference for engineers and technicians in the electrical testing industry.

The second edition contains major revisions and is an improvement of the first edition. It represents a great deal of effort and study on the part of the author to compile, sort, and apply information and data supplied by manufacturers and allied industries together with that made available by relevant industry standards, institutions, and associations. The second edition is an invaluable book for practicing engineers, technicians, managers, and others who are involved in the testing, maintenance, and care of electrical equipment and apparatus, as well as engineering students pursuing further studies in this field. This new book has been substantially enhanced by the addition of updated information on various subjects.

For example, Chapter 1 has been revised to include information on reliability centered maintenance (RCM), insulating materials and insulation systems of electrical equipment, causes of insulation failure and failure modes of electrical equipment, temperature ratings, and the relationship between maintenance and arc-flash hazard. Chapter 5 has been revised to include the latest tests performed on transformers including online monitoring tests. Chapter 6 has been revised to include cable degradation and diagnostic online and off-line tests such as PF, VLF, and partial discharge; summary/comparison of various field tests; and latest trends in cable diagnostic testing. Major revisions have been made to Chapter 7; the section on circuit breaker time travel has been expanded to fully cover how the test is to be conducted and evaluated, and the protective relays and instrument transformers previously covered in this chapter are now covered in a separate chapter. The revisions to Chapter 8 include assessing service life and endurance requirements for low-voltage breakers, mechanical maintenance factors such as lubrication, electrical maintenance factors, and information on how to conduct thermographic surveys. The original Chapter 9 now covers testing and commissioning of protective relays and instrument transformers. Instrument transformers and electromechanical, solid-state, static and microprocessor relays including event reporting have been covered in greater detail with examples in Chapter 9. Chapter 10 now covers motors and generators, and it has been revised to include an extensive guide on preventative maintenance of motors and variable frequency drives. In this chapter, a discussion section has been added on the online and off-line partial discharge testing and vibration analysis of motors. A new Chapter 12 has been added to cover power quality and hormonic issues and their relationship to predictive maintenance since many causes of equipment failure are being attributed to poor power quality. A new Chapter 13 covers the contents of the original Chapter 11. This chapter now includes a detailed discussion on arc-flash hazard regulatory basis, and how to perform an arc-flash hazard study.

The revised second edition contains a wealth of new information, along with the original information in the first edition, with tables, formulas, diagrams, line drawings, and photographs. Also, in this book, the text has been consolidated under each subject heading to facilitate easier reading and to locate information. The original chapters have been updated to include the latest information on testing and test methods and two new chapters have been added to cover additional subjects. The whole book has been organized to make it reader-friendly. The information contained herein will prove even more useful than that contained in the first edition. The reader will find this book an invaluable resource on insulation materials and systems, aging stressors and failure modes of power equipment, and for routine field (in situ) testing of electrical power system equipment and apparatus. Also, in the revised second edition, the author has superbly explained the relationship between poor power quality and harmonics resulting from the application of nonlinear loads, and how it can impact insulation systems of power apparatus. In this book, the author has explained various rules of thumb that exist in the industry for evaluating insulation test results and why they should not be followed blindly. We believe this is the only book that makes a significant attempt to address this issue. We congratulate Gill for superbly improving on an excellent original book. We wholeheartedly recommend the new book to the reader.

Alan D. Peterson
Technical Committee Chairman
InterNational Electrical Testing Association

Jayne Tanz
Executive Director
InterNational Electrical Testing Association

Preface

This edition has been devoted to the subject of maintenance and testing of electrical power equipment and apparatus. It covers all types of apparatus and equipment found in electrical power systems serving industrial and commercial facilities, large institutional complexes and office buildings, and utility type substations and generating plants. This book is an outgrowth of my work teaching courses on maintenance and testing of electrical power system apparatus and equipment over the last 30 years. Electrical equipment maintenance and testing are subjects that have assumed greater importance these days because of the detailed attention they are receiving from professional societies, insurance companies, government regulators, manufacturers, and owners. There exists considerable interest among people who operate and maintain electrical power systems in a wide range of topics relating to equipment maintenance and testing. This is because *condition and reliability* are directly related to *maintenance and testing*. To obtain maximum life from electrical equipment, maintain its reliability, and minimize repair costs, it is necessary to service and test it periodically to predict its condition. More attention is being directed to the maintenance and safe operation of electrical equipment. Many municipalities are mandating regulations and codes for periodic inspection and testing of large electrical facilities under their jurisdictions; the federal government has passed laws for the maintenance of commercial nuclear power plants (maintenance rule), and insurance companies are basing their premiums on the quality of a facility's maintenance program and equipment condition. Attitudes are changing and it is no longer true that maintenance is something the industry must tolerate and learn to live with; preventive and predictive maintenance instead of "necessary" maintenance is now the preferable option and is being increasingly adopted.

In the past, the subject of electrical equipment maintenance and testing was promoted mostly by electrical power equipment and electrical test equipment manufacturers, utilities, and professional societies and organizations, such as the IEEE, ANSI, NEMA, and others. These bodies and entities continue to publish a majority of the requirements for maintenance and testing. To the best of my knowledge, there is no comprehensive book that addresses this subject to the level previous editions of my book have covered. There are other books on the market that address maintenance of individual equipment but I am not aware of any book that covers the subject as comprehensively as this book does. Although many of the basic principles, including theory and practices, have not been affected by the latest technological advancements in this field, there have been changes in the practices of certain applications and instrumentation. In this revised edition, I have attempted to consolidate and coordinate the latest advances in the field into a comprehensive and understandable text. In addition, this book provides a guide for evaluating the test results of each category of testing. This information is not usually found in other publications, and I consider it the strength of this book.

This book also provides practical information on the maintenance and testing of electrical equipment for maintenance personnel who install and maintain such equipment. The scope of this book is both very broad and specialized. Therefore, to carry out the test procedures and maintenance practices discussed in this book, one must either have or acquire the necessary knowledge to carry them out successfully and safely. The original Chapter 1 has been expanded to include information on reliability center maintenance (RCM), insulating materials and insulation systems of electrical equipment, causes of insulation failures and failure modes of electrical equipment, temperature ratings, and the relationship between maintenance and arc-flash hazard analysis. It retains the original material on dielectric theory, testing methods, and maintenance planning. The new material provides a clear understanding concerning what fails within power equipment and how the equipment fails. Once a clear understanding of the failure modes of equipment is established, correct maintenance strategies can be developed to address such failures before they happen. Also, an extensive discussion has been undertaken on the basis of maintenance of protective devices and how such maintenance, or lack of such maintenance, will impact the arc-flash hazard exposure, hazard labeling of equipment, and personnel protective equipment. Chapter 2 has been devoted to testing with direct current (DC) voltage of various types of electrical equipment and apparatus, including its advantages and disadvantages. Chapter 3 deals with testing with alternating current (AC) voltage, for example, power factor (Doble) and dissipation factor (Tan Delta) test methods. Advantages as well as limitations of the AC voltage methods are discussed to provide a thorough understanding of this subject. Chapter 4 covers the testing of oil and insulating fluids used in electrical apparatus such as transformers and circuit breakers. The description of maintenance and test methods includes typical problems found in these types of insulation systems.

In Chapter 5, information on transformer maintenance and testing, including installation, application, and operation as it relates to the reliability of transformers, is discussed. This chapter has been expanded to include the latest tests performed on transformers including online monitoring and diagnostic tests. Chapter 6 has been devoted to the discussion of cables, including their construction, application, failure modes, and testing, as well as cable fault locating methods. The section on cable testing in this revision now includes information on cable degradation and diagnostic tests; online and off-line tests such as PF, VLF, partial discharge, and AC resonance; a summary of comparison of various field tests; and latest trends in cable diagnostic testing. Chapter 7 has been revised to solely cover inspection, maintenance, and testing of medium- and high-voltage switchgear and control power. Information has also been provided on the rating system used for circuit breakers and how these are selected and applied in switchgear applications. Additional information has been provided on circuit breaker time travel analysis to explain this test in more detail and how this test can be used to ensure the reliability of medium- and high-voltage breakers. Chapter 8 is devoted to the maintenance and testing of low-voltage (below 1000 V) switchgear and circuit breakers. This chapter provides information on Underwriters Laboratories' testing, labeling, and verification of these breakers in the field. Additional information has been provided in this chapter on assessing service life and endurance requirement for low-voltage breakers, mechanical maintenance factors such as lubrication, electrical maintenance factors, and information on how to conduct thermographic surveys.

A new Chapter 9 covers instrument transformers and testing and commissioning of protective relays. The information in this chapter explains the theory, application, and testing of instrument transformers, and electromechanical, solid-state, static, and microprocessor relays. The commissioning of microprocessor relays including event reporting has been covered in greater detail with examples of commissioning microprocessor relays in this chapter. The protective relays, especially microprocessor relays, are an important part of the power system; hence they are retained in the respective chapter in this edition. The maintenance and testing of motors and generators, including the makeup of the insulation systems used in these machines and their temperature rating system, are covered in the new Chapter 10. This chapter has been revised to include an extensive guide on preventative maintenance of motors and variable frequency drives. In this chapter, a detailed discussion has been added on online and off-line partial discharge testing and vibration analysis of motors. The original Chapter 10 has been renumbered as Chapter 11, which covers electrical power system grounding and ground resistance measurements. Various grounding systems are described to provide an understanding on what is a good ground and how to obtain it. A new Chapter 12 has been added in this revision to cover power quality and harmonic issues and their relationship to predictive maintenance since many of the causes of equipment failures are now being attributed to poor power quality and harmonics. It is expected that the information in this chapter will help the reader understand poor power quality and how it can affect the health and reliability of electrical equipment and apparatus. It is hoped that the monitoring of power quality will receive the required attention so corrective actions can be implemented to minimize equipment degradation and failures.

On-site safety and switching practices required during maintenance and testing of electrical equipment are now covered in Chapter 13, as are National Electrical Code (NEC), National Safety Code, and OSHA requirements as they relate to the maintenance and testing of electrical equipment as well as arc-flash hazard analysis and exposure. A new section has been added in this chapter on arc-flash hazard regulatory basis, what it is, and how to perform an arc-flash hazard study.

It is hoped that this book will serve as a practical guide that engineers and technicians can use for the maintenance and testing of electrical equipment. To make this book useful, many tables, test connection diagrams, and photographs are provided throughout the book. One of the complicated aspects of testing is the interpretation of test results—it is difficult to judge how good or bad test results are unless the previous year's test results are available for comparison. Various minimum values are used as rules of thumb for assessing the relative health of the insulation of electrical equipment. In this book, I have provided some insights on these rules of thumb and why they should not be followed blindly. It is my belief that the knack for interpreting test results can be gained only by acquiring this knowledge and hopefully this book fulfills this need. To a great extent this is the only book that makes a significant attempt to address this issue.

I hope that this book may prove useful both to budding and experienced engineers alike. With this book they can acquire the needed knowledge and application to pursue further studies in this field. I believe that most aspects of this subject that were thought to be necessary are covered in this revision. It is possible that some aspects of this subject are not covered, or in detail to the extent necessary for a good understanding of the subject. I would welcome and appreciate any suggestions from readers to make this book even more useful and current.

Paul Gill, P.E.

Acknowledgments

This book is based on my notes and my previous two volumes, *Electrical Equipment Testing and Maintenance* (1982), and *Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing* (1997), which were used in teaching a course on electrical equipment maintenance and testing at the George Washington University and at IBEW Local 26. The production of a book requires the cooperation and effort of many people and institutions. It is difficult to appropriately acknowledge all the organizations and individuals who helped in the development of a book of this type.

I would particularly like to thank the major electrical manufacturers, testing services companies, electrical test equipment manufacturers, various private and government organizations, and professional societies and organizations for making information available. Where possible, I have tried to give recognition to the source of the information obtained.

I wish to acknowledge explicitly the following organizations and persons for their review and support in the development of this book. The staff of Megger Incorporated, Valley Forge, Pennsylvania (formerly AVO International, Dallas, Texas) reviewed and provided comments on Chapters 2 and 6. Additionally, I thank the various staff at Megger Incorporated for helping to teach cable fault locating in a course on maintenance and testing at the George Washington University and providing review comments on the section on cable fault locating in Chapter 6. The information on power factor testing in Chapter 3 is based on the Double Engineering Company's literature and their past contributions in teaching maintenance and testing courses at the George Washington University. I am also grateful to them for reviewing and commenting on Chapter 3. The information in Chapter 4 on dissolved gas analysis is condensed from the IEEE std. C57.104-1991. I thank the personnel of Baron USA, Inc., Cookville, Tennessee for providing an overall review and comments on Chapter 4. Alan Peterson of Utility Services and chairman of the NETA Technical Committee peer-reviewed many chapters for this revision and I thank him for his support. The information on ground resistance measurements and testing was supplied by AEMC Instruments, Boston, Massachusetts, and for which I thank them.

In addition, I want to thank the following persons and organizations for contributing and providing information, material, and doing the peer review for the following portions of the book in this revision: Joe Mooney, manager of Power Engineering, Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories (SEL) who helped in writing, commissioning, and testing of microprocessor relays in Chapter 9 and reviewing that chapter; Noah Bethel of PdMA for providing material on the predictive maintenance guide on motors and variable frequency drives including photographs and illustrations, and for reviewing this section in Chapter 10; Dennis K. Neitzel, director of AVO Training

Institute, Dallas, Texas, for providing information and reviewing the write-up on the bases of maintenance and testing of protective devices as they relate to arc-flash hazard described in Chapter 1; Ed St. Germain of EMR for providing material on the RCM program and its implementation; Mark Meyer and Mike Hensley of Megger Incorporated for providing photographs of Megger instruments and contributing to the section on circuit breaker time-travel analysis given in Chapter 7; Eric Black of Black and Associates for providing photographs of the thermographic surveys in Chapter 8; Ashok Anand of On-line Monitoring Incorporated for providing information and photographs on the online monitoring system for bushings and lightning arrestors; Siemens Corporation for providing information and photographs on the online monitoring of transformers in Chapter 5; Jonathan Blaisdell and Leah Mattheis of Fluke Instruments for providing information and reviewing Chapter 12 on power quality; and Alan Peterson of Utility Services and chairperson of the NETA Technical Committee for peer-reviewing various chapters of the book.

I also wish to thank Alan D. Peterson and Jayne Tanz of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association for writing the Foreword and recommending the book. Finally, I thank all my students who have taken the maintenance and testing course at the George Washington University and the IBEW Local 26 who made it possible for me to teach and write this book in the first place.

1

Maintenance Strategies, Dielectric Theory, Insulating Materials, Failure Modes, and Maintenance Impact on Arc-Flash Hazards

1.1 Introduction

The deterioration of electrical equipment is normal, and this process begins as soon as the equipment is installed. If deterioration is not checked, it can cause electrical failures and malfunctions. In addition, load changes or circuit alterations may be made without overall design coordination, which can result in improper selection of equipment, or settings of protective devices, or wrong trip devices installed in the circuits. The purpose of an electrical preventive maintenance (EPM) and testing program should be to recognize these factors and provide means for correcting them. With an EPM and testing program, potential hazards that can cause failure of equipment or interruption of electrical service can be discovered and corrected. Also, the EPM program will minimize the hazards to life and equipment that can result from failure of equipment when it is not properly maintained. Properly maintained equipment reduces downtime by minimizing catastrophic failures. To carry out the successful operation of electrical equipment and apparatus, it is essential to set up an effective maintenance and testing program. This program can be implemented by setting up a maintenance department or by contracting the work to a private company engaged in this practice.

The EPM program should consist of conducting routine inspections, tests, repairs, and service of electrical power system apparatus such as transformers, cables, circuit breakers, switchgear assemblies, and the like, along with associated equipment comprised of control wiring, protective devices and relays, supervisory equipment, and indicating and metering instruments.

1.2 Why Maintain and Test

A well-organized and implemented program minimizes accidents, reduces unplanned shutdowns, and lengthens the mean time between failures (MTBF) of electrical equipment. Benefits of EPM can be categorized as direct and indirect. Direct benefits are derived from reduced cost of repairs, reduced downtime of equipment, and improved safety of personnel and property. Indirect benefits can be related to improved morale of employees, better workmanship, increased productivity, and the discovery of deficiencies in the system that were either designed into the original system or caused by later changes made in the system.

1.3 Overview of Electrical Maintenance and Testing Strategies

Much of the essence of effective electrical equipment preventive maintenance (PM) can be summarized by four rules:

- Keep it dry.
- Keep it clean.
- Keep it cool.
- Keep it tight.

More specifically, most electrical power and control equipment is susceptible to a relatively small number of mechanisms of degradation, and the purpose of most EPM activities is to prevent them, retard them, or mitigate their effects. There are number of traditional philosophical approaches to electrical maintenance, such as run-to-failure (RTF), maintain as necessary, perform maintenance on fixed time schedules, and predictive maintenance, which are briefly summarized in the following sections. The reliability-centered maintenance (RCM) program is gaining favor because it combines the strengths of reactive, preventive, predictive, and proactive maintenance strategies. The RCM approach to electrical equipment is discussed in a greater detail than other maintenance strategies because it is becoming a maintenance program of choice. However, most power utilities, manufacturing firms, and owners of plant facilities utilize a combination of these programs. The decision as to which approach to adopt is largely dependent on the scope of system and equipment, as well as a function of how management views the cost and benefits of maintenance.

RTF

In this approach, EPM per se is not performed at all. Degraded equipment is only repaired or replaced when the effect of degradation on process output becomes unacceptable. (For most types of electric power equipment, this coincides with catastrophic failure.) No explicit attempt is made to monitor performance or to avert failure, and the risks associated with ultimate failure are accepted. Because of the generally high reliability of electric power equipment installed in a benign environment, the RTF approach often provides satisfactory power reliability and availability in noncritical applications.

Small organizations which lack dedicated maintenance staffs often utilize this approach by default, and larger and more sophisticated organizations in the manufacturing sector also frequently apply it to noncritical equipment and systems. This maintenance strategy is also referred to as reactive maintenance.

Inspect and service as necessary
This approach is an advance beyond RTF wherein plant operating or maintenance personnel inspect electrical equipment on a more or less regular schedule (often during regular rounds of the plant). Under this approach, incipient failures are usually corrected before they become catastrophic, especially if the impact of a failure is considered unacceptable, and there is often some informal monitoring of performance to predict future failures. Many industrial manufacturing plants use this approach and find it satisfactory.

Time-based maintenance
The time-based maintenance (TBM) strategy is also known as scheduled PM. In this approach, established EPM activities are performed at fixed intervals of calendar time, operating hours, or operating cycles. Both procedures and schedules are usually based on manufacturers' recommendations or industry standards. While the scheduled EPM approach ensures that equipment gets periodic attention, it does not necessarily prioritize EPM according to safety or productivity significance, nor does it optimize the application of limited EPM resources or take advantage of lessons learned from plant and industry experience. Scheduled EPM currently is the predominant approach among relatively sophisticated operators of plants where productivity and safety is a serious concern.

Condition-based maintenance
The condition-based maintenance (CBM) strategy is also called predictive maintenance. It is an extension of the TBM strategy and uses nonintrusive testing techniques to assess equipment condition. It uses planned maintenance tasks that are based on equipment's previous operating history, and trending of the maintenance data. It is most effective when combined with a PM program because it prioritizes EPM based on criticality of equipment, productivity, resources, or lessons learned from experience.

RCM
It is a maintenance strategy where equipment condition, criticality, failure history, and life cycle cost are integrated to develop logically the most effective maintenance methods for each system, subsystem, and components. RCM capitalizes on the respective strengths of reactive, preventive, predictive, and proactive maintenance methods to maximize equipment reliability and availability. It is an ongoing process that continuously refines and redefines each maintenance activity.

The RCM process reduces the uncertainty inherently associated with the operational reliability of equipment by managing the risk through the periodic assessment of equipment condition. By using the proper instrumentation, the ability to determine the current equipment condition, changes from the baseline, and margin to failure, limits are readily determined. This allows the maintenance and operations staff to quantify the risk associated with continued operation or maintenance deferment, and to identify the most probable cause of the problem to the component level. In the majority of cases, condition testing is nonintrusive, allowing equipment condition assessments to be performed with the equipment operating under normal, loaded conditions.

The concept of RCM has evolved considerably over time when one applies it to facility maintenance. Historically, there was an intuitive belief that because mechanical parts wear out over time, equipment reliability is directly related to operating age. The belief was that the more frequently that equipment was overhauled, the better protected it would be against failure. Industry increased PM to include nearly everything.

In the 1970s, the airline industry found that many types of failure could not be prevented regardless of the intensity of maintenance. Actuarial analysis of failure data suggested that PM was ineffective by itself in controlling failure rates. And for many items, failure rates did not increase with increased operational use. In the 1980s, early forms of condition monitoring devices came on the market and coincided with microprocessors and a new computer literacy. RCM theory was refined and adopted by the US Navy's submarine fleet. It was shown that in many cases, scheduled overhaul increases the overall failure rate by introducing new infant mortality probability into an otherwise stable system.

What has evolved is a complementary program—rigorous and streamlined—that has its most appropriate applications based on the consequences of failure, the probability of failure, historical data, and the amount of risk willing to be tolerated.

Rigorous RCM in its original concept involves a heavy reliance on detailed failure modes and effects analyses; math-calculated probabilities of failure; model development and accumulation of historical data. It provides the most detailed knowledge on a specific system and component and provides the most detailed documentation. Because of the detail involved, it is highly labor intensive, time-consuming, and comparatively expensive. The most appropriate applications of RCM are when the consequences of failure would result in a catastrophic risk to personal safety and health, to the environment, or could result in complete economic failure of an organization.

Plant managers adopted a streamlined RCM approach recognizing its benefits while realizing that few building mechanical and electrical systems carry the catastrophic risk addressed in the rigorous RCM process. Lower intensity more in line with the scale of a facility's infrastructure also meant lower costs. Streamlined RCM targets systems and components in order of criticality. It relies heavily on condition-based tasks and eliminates low-value maintenance tasks altogether based on maintenance and operations staff input and historical data. It minimizes extensive analysis in favor of finding the most obvious, costly problems early-on, capitalizes on the early successes, and then expands outward in a continuous fashion.

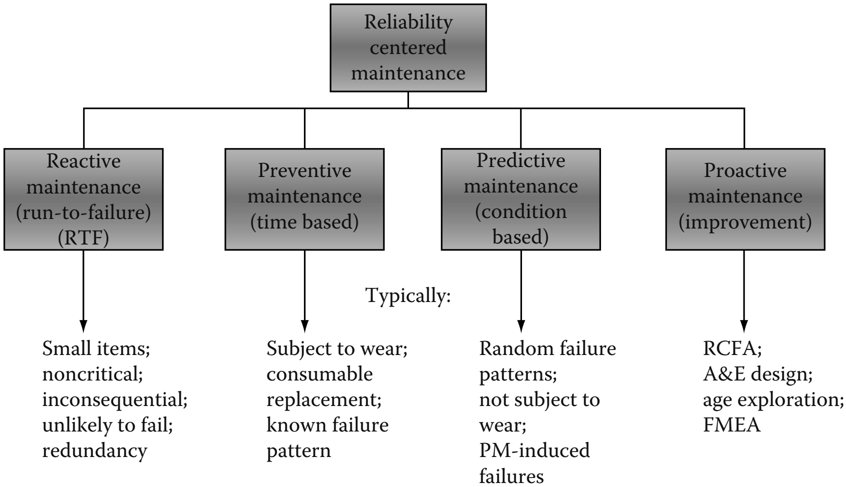


FIGURE 1.1
Common applications of maintenance strategies for RCM program. (From St. Germain, E. and Pride, A., *NASA Facilities RCM Guide,* 1996, p. 1-1. With permission.)

Streamlined RCM requires a thorough understanding of condition monitoring technologies as well as analytical techniques, including root cause failure analysis (RCFA), trend analysis, and failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA). With some exceptions streamlined RCM is the philosophy of choice in plant maintenance programs.

Failure: RCM defines failure as any unsatisfactory condition. It may be a loss of function, where a system or component stops running altogether, or it may be a loss of acceptable quality, where operation continues, but at a substandard or inadequate quality. A failure may be catastrophic or merely out of tolerance.

As stated, RCM seeks the optimum mix of four maintenance strategies: reactive (RTF), preventive (time-directed), predictive (condition-directed), and proactive (failure-finding). Most common elements of each maintenance strategy are illustrated in Figure 1.1. The application of the various elements of the four maintenance strategies for an automobile RCM program is shown in Figure 1.2.

The mix: Maintenance activity at facilities typically run about 80%–85% reactive (service requests, trouble calls, repairs), 15% preventive, 1% predictive, and 1% proactive. Goals for effective maintenance programs should be in the range of 30%–35% for reactive maintenance, 30%–35% for PM, 25% for predictive maintenance, and 10% for proactive maintenance.

In addition to improving reliability, this maintenance mix will have a sizeable impact on the cost of maintenance: breakdowns and repairs typically cost about $17–18 per installed horsepower (hp)/year, preventive costs about $11–13 per installed hp/year, and predictive maintenance costs about $7–9 per installed hp/year.

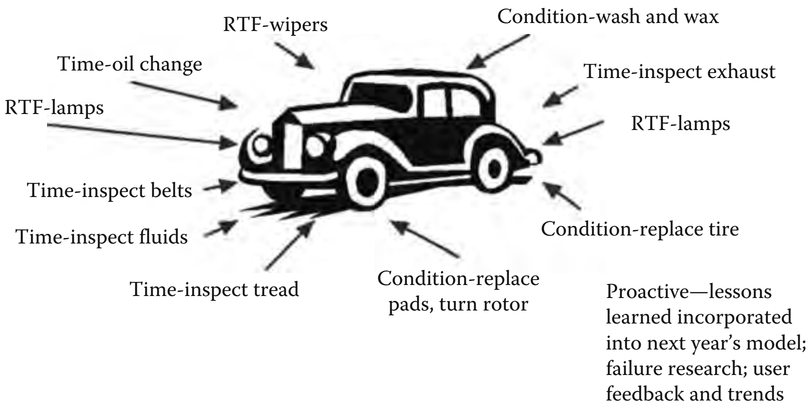


FIGURE 1.2
An example of proactive maintenance applied to an automobile. (From St. Germain, E. and Pride, A., *NASA Facilities RCM Guide*, 1998, p. 1-7. With permission.)

A decision logic tree shown in Figure 1.3 may be used as a starting point to determine the appropriate maintenance strategy for a given system or component. Various maintenance strategies are discussed in the following sections.

Reactive maintenance: It involves repair or replacement only when deterioration of the condition causes a functional failure. The unit breaks down. Reactive maintenance assumes that failure is equally likely to occur in any part, component, or system. If an item fails and parts are not available, delay will occur. Management has no influence on when the failure will occur (usually at the most inopportune time) and a premium will be paid for urgent attention. When this is the sole type of maintenance practiced, there is typically a high percentage of unplanned maintenance, a large replacement parts

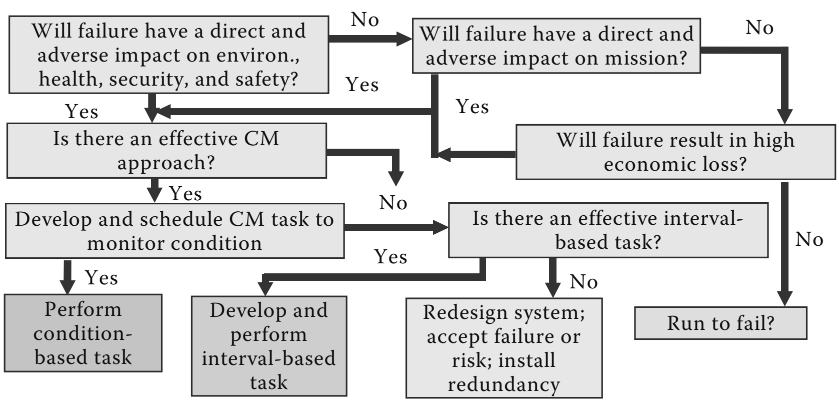


FIGURE 1.3
A decision logic tree for maintenance strategy. (From St. Germain, E. and Pride, A., *NASA Facilities RCM Guide*, 1996, p. 2-3. With permission.)

inventory must be maintained, and it is an inefficient use of the workforce. An appropriate application of reactive maintenance is when a failure of the system or component poses little risk to operations, is inconsequential, and the costs of maintenance outweigh the items replacement cost. Examples include the replacement of failed fuses, incandescent lamps, and repair equipment when it breaks down. Reactive maintenance strategy is similar to RTF strategy discussed earlier.

PM: It consists of the regularly scheduled inspection, adjustments, cleaning, lubrication, parts replacement, and repair of components. It is performed on an arbitrary time basis without regard for equipment condition. Maintenance intervals are normally predefined by the manufacturer (who may have a protective self-interest at stake and a lesser regard for costs to the plant). Regularly scheduled PM can result in unnecessary, even damaging, maintenance. Maintenance-induced failures and high maintenance costs typify this strategy. An example is overhauling a properly functioning motor generator set based on a manufacturer recommended timetable. PM strategy is the same as scheduled PM discussed earlier.

Predictive maintenance or condition monitoring: It uses nonintrusive testing techniques, visual inspection, performance data, and data analysis to assess equipment condition. It replaces arbitrarily scheduled maintenance tasks with maintenance tasks that are driven by the item's condition. Trending analysis of data is used for planning and to establish schedules. Since the technology is not applicable to all types of equipment or possible failure modes, it should not be the sole maintenance strategy employed. It is most effective when used in conjunction with a preventive program. Examples are detection of high-resistance electrical connections by infrared thermography, bearing deficiencies by vibration analysis, and motor winding problems by motor signature analysis.

Vibration monitoring: It is perhaps the most familiar and most beneficial of the mainline techniques for rotating apparatus such as motors. It should be applied to all large (>7.5 hp), high-cost, and critical rotating equipment to monitor wear, imbalance, misalignment, mechanical looseness, bearing damage, belt flaws, sheave and pulley flaws, gear damage, flow turbulence, cavitation, structural resonance, mounting deficiencies, and fatigue. It can take several weeks or months of warning before failure occurs, thereby allowing the remedial task to be planned during a convenient time and logistically prepared. It has an accuracy rate of as high as 92% when applied correctly and a false alarm rate of about 8%. The vibration analysis can be performed in-house by technicians who have a good understanding of vibration theory and adequate equipment or it can be outsourced.

Infrared thermography: It has numerous applications in checking electrical systems (connections, unbalanced loads, and overheating), mechanical systems (blocked flow, binding, bearings, fluid levels, and thermal efficiency), and structural systems (roof leaks, building envelope integrity, and insulation). Equipment varies from contact devices to imaging infrared cameras, coupled with appropriate analysis software. Analysis can be a challenge, based on part by environmental factors that influence the data, so a technician with level I or II thermography certification should be employed to perform this survey. These services can be outsourced. Thermographic finds are invaluable from a safety perspective and typically result in a cost recovery within 1 year.

Passive airborne ultrasonic: It is a low-cost tool for detecting pressure and vacuum leaks in piping, steam traps, pressure vessels, and valves; mechanical systems bearings, lubrication, and mechanical rubbing; and electrical systems arching and corona. Ultrasonic devices are becoming increasingly popular by technicians performing lubrication tasks to determine appropriate lubrication levels. Operators require little training or prior experience and scanners cost as little as $1000.

Lubrication oil analysis: It is often performed on large or critical machines to determine its mechanical wear, the condition of lubricant, if the lubricant has become contaminated, and the condition and appropriateness of the lubricant additives. Lube oil packages include checking for visual condition and odor, viscosity, water content, acidity, alkalinity, and metallic and nonmetallic contamination. Precise procedures must be followed in obtaining clean, representative samples; however, analysis is performed in a laboratory at reasonable costs ($10–$100 per test). A single failure detected could pay for the program for several years.

Electrical condition monitoring techniques: It should be applied to electrical distribution cabling, panels, and connections; switchgear and controllers; transformers; electric motors; and generators. It is estimated that 95% of all electrical problems are due to connections (loose, corroded, undersized, and over tightened), unbalanced load, inductive heating, spiral heating in multistrand wires, slip rings, commutators, and brush riggings. Condition monitoring detects abnormal temperature, voltage, current, resistance, complex impedance, insulation integrity, phase imbalance, mechanical binding, and the presence of arching. The most common predictive tests are

- Infrared thermography—To detect temperature differences and the overheating of circuits (see Chapter 8 for more detail)
- Insulation power factor (PF)—Measures power loss through insulation to ground (see Chapter 3 for more detail)
- Insulation oil analysis—Detects transformer, switch, breaker insulation oil condition, and contamination (see Chapter 4 for more detail)
- Dissolved gas analysis—Trends the amount of nine gases in transformer oil formed by transformer age and stress (carbon monoxide [CO] and carbon dioxide [CO_2] to detect overheating of windings; CO, CO_2, and methane [CH_4] to detect hot spots in insulation; hydrogen, ethane, ethylene, and methane (H_2, C_2H_6, C_2H_4, and CH_4) to detect overheating of oil and/or corona discharge; and acetylene (C_2H_2) to detect internal arching) (see Chapter 4 for more detail)

- Megohmmeter testing—Measures insulation resistance phase to phase or phase to ground (see Chapters 2 and 3 for more detail)
- High-potential (hi-pot) testing—Go/no-go test of the insulation
- Airborne ultrasonic noise—Detects electrical arching and corona discharges
- Battery impedance—Checks impedance between terminals and compares the same battery against previous readings (should be within 5%), compares the battery with others in the bank (within 10%), internal short (impedance > 0), open circuit (impedance > infinity), and premature aging due to heat/discharges (fast rise in capacity loss) (see Chapter 8 for more detail)
- Surge testing—Go/no-go test of winding insulation
- Motor circuit analysis (MCA)—Measures motor circuit resistance, capacitance, imbalance, and rotor influence (see Chapter 10 for details)
- Motor current signature analysis (MCSA)—Provides signatures of motor current variations (see Chapter 10 for details)

Electric motor phase voltage unbalances affect the phase current unbalances, cause motors to run hotter, and reduce the motor's ability to produce torque. For every 10°F increase in operating temperature, it is estimated that the life of the equipment is reduced by half (H.W. Penrose, White Paper, Test methods for determining the impact of motor condition on motor efficiency and reliability).

Some of these electrical tests require the circuits to be energized, and others not. Some tests require specific initial conditions, such as normal operating temperature. Whereas some high loads amplify problems, low load allows for their nondetection.

Electricians, technicians, and electrical engineers trained in electrical predictive techniques can perform the testing. A comprehensive testing program toolbox would include an infrared camera, ultrasonic detector, multimeter/voltohmmeter, clamp-on current transformer, an insulation and PF test set, battery impedance test set, MCSA test set, and MCA tester.

Proactive maintenance: It improves equipment condition and rate of degradation through better design, installation procedures, failure analysis, workmanship, and scheduling. Its procedures and technologies are used during forensic evaluations to determine the cause of failure. Proactive maintenance uses feedback to ensure that changes from lessons learned and best practices are incorporated in future designs and procedures. It employs a life-cycle view of maintenance, ensures that nothing affecting maintenance is done in isolation, and integrates maintenance support functions into maintenance planning. It uses RCFA and predictive technologies to maximize maintenance effectiveness. Common proactive techniques are:

RCM specifications: Specifications that incorporate RCM philosophy and techniques are prepared for new and rebuilt equipment. These specifications include vibration, alignment, and balance standards; electrical testing criteria;

lube oil testing requirements; and commissioning and acceptance testing requirements. Operator and maintenance feedback and RCM analysis documentation provide designers with justification for equipment upgrades and modernization. New and replacement units' design should reflect lessons learned and best practices for improvements on operability, maintainability, and reliability.

Failed part analysis: Involves visually inspecting failed parts to identify the root cause of the failure. It looks at forensic scoring, color, and pitting, particularly of bearings, which are generally the equipment's weakest components and achieve only 10%–20% of their design life.

RCFA: Maintenance technicians usually repair symptoms, although recurring problems are symptomatic of more severe problems. The end result is high cost, questionable mission reliability, strained user goodwill, and safety hazards. RCFA seeks to find the cause, not just the effect, quickly, efficiently, and economically. Predictive maintenance techniques detect and correct problems before failure, but do not act on the root cause. RCFA provide the information to eliminate the recurrence and instill the mentality of "fix forever."

FMEA: Similar to RCFA, but performed prior to failure. Its goal is to identify potential failures and failure modes to take action to prevent the failure, detect the failure earlier, and reduce the consequences of failure. For each affected equipment, it describes the function, identifies failure modes and the effects of failure, the probability and criticality of failure, and suggests a maintenance approach.

Reliability engineering: It involves the redesign, modification, and replacement of components with superior components, such as sealed bearings, upgraded metal, and lubricant additives.

Age exploration: Determines the optimal maintenance frequency. Starts with the manufacturer's recommendations, then adjusts the frequency based on equipment histories and observations and condition assessments during PMs and "open and inspects."

Recurrence control: A repetitive failure is the recurring inability of a system, subsystem, structure, or component to perform the required function. The process analyzes the repeated failure of the same component, repeated failure of various components of the same system, and the repeated failure of the same component of various systems. Historical maintenance and trend data would be monitored to determine if recurring component problems might be symptomatic of possible genetic problems and/or procedures of system aging, corrosion, wear, design, operations, the work environment, or maintenance application (or misapplication).

***Program implementation**:* The planning of a maintenance program should include considerations for proper test equipment, tools, trained personnel to carry out the maintenance tasks, and time required to perform inspections, tests, and maintenance routines. Also, consideration should be given to record-keeping systems that range from computerized maintenance management systems (CMMSs) to manual file systems. There are number of companies that offer computerized maintenance management programs as stand alone programs or they can be incorporated into the facility operational programs. The reader is encouraged to look into this programs since they are not fully covered in this book.

The following are the steps in implementing an effective maintenance program:

1. Determine the objectives and long-range goals of the maintenance program.
2. Survey and consolidate data on equipment breakdowns.
3. Determine equipment criticalities.
4. Determine the risk and the amount of risk that you are willing to tolerate.
5. Establish metrics and key performance indicators (KPIs) to track and trend performance.
6. Establish the best maintenance techniques within your resources to mitigate the risk. Determine the maintenance procedures and frequencies.
7. Schedule and implement the program, starting with the most critical systems and those with the fastest, most beneficial paybacks first.
8. Publicize successes; provide trends, metrics, and KPIs to top management to gain management support.
9. Repeat the cycle.

Maintenance analyst: The quality of the maintenance program is reflective of the skill of the maintenance technicians, their workmanship, quality of the supporting documentation, procedures, and the technologies used.

A position for maintenance analyst should be included in an RCM program. This person should be able to detect the equipment condition, must have the skill to analyze the condition, must be able to diagnose the machine or system operation and develop a course of action, and must take the action needed to prevent failure (or allow RTF). The analyst would be responsible for monitoring and analyzing data for the mechanical systems. He or she would receive all work orders, trouble calls, KPIs, and test results and would provide continuous oversight and analysis.

Plant databases: CMMSs, building management systems (BMSs), and energy management systems (EMSs) provide invaluable historical data to the maintenance analyst. Historical data from these provide information on age–reliability relationships, data to trend and forecast impending failure, test results, performance data, and feedback to improve performance and to document condition.

RCM involves specifying and scheduling EPM activities in accordance with the statistical failure rate and/or life expectancy of the equipment being maintained and its criticality and productivity, and continually updating EPM procedures and schedules to reflect actual maintenance experience in the plant. RCM is the most cost-effective of the alternative approaches because it improves plant safety, reliability, and availability while reducing maintenance costs by concentrating limited maintenance resources on items which are the most important and/or troublesome, and reducing or eliminating unnecessary maintenance on items which are of little significance and/or highly reliable. A comprehensive RCM program also incorporates structured provisions for failure root cause investigation and correction and for performance monitoring to predict failures. RCM is used extensively in the military and is gaining acceptance among both nuclear utilities and manufacturing plant operators as its advantages are increasingly recognized.

1.3.1 Key Factors in EPM Optimization Decisions

The optimum EPM approach for any specific plant, system, and/or piece of equipment depends on a variety of factors, including the following:

- Safety impact of equipment failure
- Productivity and profitability impact of equipment failure (including costs of lost production as well as failed equipment repair or replacement)
- Cost of PM
- Failure rate and/or anticipated life of equipment
- Predictability of failure (either from accumulated operating time or cycles or from discernible clues to impending failure)
- Likelihood of inducing equipment damage or system problems during maintenance and testing
- Technical sophistication of the plant maintenance staff
- Availability of equipment reliability data to support RCM

1.3.2 General Criteria for an Effective EPM and Testing Program

Effective electrical equipment and subsystem PM and testing programs should satisfy the criteria listed below.

First and most fundamental, a structured EPM program should actually exist. That is, EPM should be performed as follows:

- Under formal management control
- In accordance with defined practices and schedules
- By clearly designated persons

Specifically:

Management should assign a high priority to EPM. As a corollary, adequate resources—personnel, facilities, tools, test equipment, training, engineering, and administrative support—should be devoted to EPM. Adequate support from design engineering and operations are especially important.

EPM activities should be prioritized according to the criticality of the systems and equipment involved, with the highest resource intensity and scheduling priority assigned to equipment, subsystems, and systems important to safety.

EPM should be performed according to unambiguous written procedures based on specific consideration of equipment, application, and environmental characteristics.

EPM procedures and schedules should be maintained and reviewed in order to ensure engineering review of procedural changes and the incorporation of plant modifications.

The EPM program should have provisions to take effective advantage of actual experience accumulated both in the plant and elsewhere (e.g., as professional society and industry association publications, and informal communications with other interested organizations).

The EPM program should incorporate effective provisions for failure root cause analysis, correction, and recurrence control.

Information systems should be in place to record and update the plant maintenance, testing, and operating history, and to facilitate trending of test data, in support of the previous two criteria.

EPM should be performed only by appropriately qualified personnel. (See Section 1.3.3.)

Management should continually monitor and reevaluate the effectiveness of the EPM program, and make appropriate changes in response to identified programmatic problems and advances in maintenance technology.

By clear implication, the “RTF” and “inspect and service as necessary” philosophies described earlier fail to provide enough structure, direction, and monitoring to satisfy the criteria for a sound EPM approach. These philosophies are not acceptable for important equipment and systems. At a minimum, a scheduled EPM program is clearly necessary.

1.3.3 Qualifications of EPM Personnel

The minimum acceptable qualifications for personnel assigned to perform EPM depend on the type of maintenance and the type of the equipment to be maintained. It is normally acceptable for nonspecialists personnel to perform superficial inspections and other undemanding EPM tasks when guided by defined procedures and acceptance criteria. However, effective administrative controls should be in place to ensure that critical PM tasks on important equipment and systems are performed only by—or at least under the immediate and active supervision of—appropriately trained and experienced maintenance technicians. Such tasks typically include internal inspection, testing, calibration, and refurbishment.

Training for critical EPM work on important equipment and systems should include at least the following:

- The fundamentals of electrical power technology
- General electrical maintenance techniques
- Electrical safety methods and practices
- The design and operation of the equipment and system to be maintained
- The applicable maintenance and testing procedures required for the maintenance and testing of the equipment

For critical tasks, technicians' experience should include similar work on the same or closely comparable equipment, preferably in an operational environment, although experience acquired in a training environment under direct supervision of experienced instructors is acceptable.

With regard to electrical safety methods and practices, the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) have promulgated new guidelines and requirements to protect workers from shock and flash hazards. The NFPA 70E, Article 110.8 (B) (1) requires safety-related work practices to be used to protect employees who might be exposed to the electrical hazards involved when working on live parts operating at 50 V or more. Appropriate safety-related work practices shall be determined before any person approaches exposed live parts within the limited approach boundary by using both shock hazard and flash hazard analyses. Similarly, OSHA 1910.335(a)(1)(i) requires employees working in areas where there are potential electrical hazards to be provided with, and to use, electrical protective equipment that is appropriate for the specific parts of the body to be protected and for the work to be performed. Also in accordance with OSHA 1910.132(d), the employer is required to assess the workplace hazard to determine the use of personal protective equipment (PPE) required to protect the worker from shock and flash hazards. The NFPA 70E and OSHA requirements for shock and arc-flash hazards and guidelines for performing such an analysis are covered in more detail in Chapter 13, Sections 13.2 and 13.3. The maintenance of protective devices and its impact on arc-flash hazard are covered in Section 1.7 of Chapter 1.

1.3.4 Optimization of PM Intervals

Experience in a variety of industries demonstrates that performing PM on an absolutely fixed schedule rarely results in the optimum balance among the costs of preventive and corrective maintenance and the safety and productivity benefits of equipment reliability and availability. Given an adequate historical failure and maintenance database, reasonably straightforward methods can be used to optimize the PM cycle.

Also, several industry standards such as National Electrical Code (NEC) Standard 70B, National Electrical Testing Association (NETA) maintenance specifications, and others including manufacturer's recommendations provide guidelines on the frequency of maintenance of electrical equipment which could be used to establish EPM cycle.

1.3.5 Trending of Test Results

Systematic trending of EPM test results is a key element of a high-quality electrical maintenance program. This is true because the magnitudes (pass or fail value) of many of the parameters measured during EPM tests on equipment are poor predictors of future failures, unless they are so far out of the normal range that they indicate imminent and probably irretrievable failure. Examples include insulation resistance, leakage current, capacitance, PF, and dissipation factor (DF); bearing temperature and vibration; and winding temperature. However, a degrading trend in these parameters strongly indicates impending trouble, especially if the trend is accelerating. A sound trending program can often alert the maintenance and operations staff of the plant in time to arrest the degradation and avert the failure, or at least to minimize the effect of the failure on safety and productivity.

To provide meaningful information, the trending program must be structured to screen the effects of external factors which affect the measured results but which are irrelevant to the actual condition of the equipment health and reliability. Test procedures should mandate precautions to ensure that the external conditions which can affect the test results remain the same from test to test, or to correct the results when this is impractical. (For example, insulation resistances readings taken at varying temperatures are corrected to a common base temperature.) Typical irrelevant external conditions that affect electrical test results include temperature, humidity, and load.

1.3.6 Systematic Failure Analysis Approach

Failure analysis and root cause investigation should be an integral part of any EPM program. The steps to be taken after a failure is observed are

1. Use a failure cause analysis to determine the proximate cause of the failure. The proximate cause is expressed in terms of the piece-part-level failure, e.g., relay XX failed to transfer due to corroded contacts.
2. Compare the proximate cause to past failures or conditions on the same and similar equipment to determine if the problem has a

systematic root cause, e.g., a chemically active environment in the example cited above.

3. If there appears to be no systematic root cause, correct the failure, resume operation, and continue performance monitoring. If there is a discernible root cause, initiate a structured root cause investigation.
4. If the problem is generic, contact other affected plants and manufacturers of the equipment to determine if they have taken any effective corrective actions. If so, adapt these actions to the specific circumstances of the affected equipment; if not, proceed to the next step.
5. If the problem is plant-specific, or if it is generic but no effective solution has been developed elsewhere, determine if it is attributable to a unique system design, to application or environmental factors, or to operational factors such as maintenance, testing, and operations practices.
6. If the problem is determined to be related to system design, equipment application, or environment, determine the specific deficiency (through special tests performance monitoring, environmental monitoring, etc.), and make appropriate corrections.
7. If the problem is related to faulty operations, identify and correct the specific procedures involved.
8. Determine whether the root cause of the problem is a programmatic deficiency, e.g., in procedures writing, training, supervision, or adequacy of resources, and make appropriate corrections.
9. Perform the necessary postcorrection testing and monitoring to close out the problem and ensure that it is corrected.

1.3.6.1 Postmaintenance Testing

Postmaintenance testing provides the best assurance that maintenance actions were accomplished correctly and that the system or component was returned to functional condition. Postmaintenance testing is heavily emphasized in the better-performing plants. In these organizations, postmaintenance tests are performed following any action that potentially affects the operability of a component/subsystem/system and the scope of the testing is broad enough to confirm all of the potentially affected functions. Associated systems, subsystems, or components are tested along with the systems, subsystems, or components which initiated the process if an engineering analysis indicates that the maintenance action could have a significant impact on these associated items.

1.3.6.2 Engineering Support

Engineering support is intended to ensure that the PM program properly addresses the engineering and logistical aspects of maintenance. In view of this broad objective, engineering support of maintenance encompasses much of the engineering and management activity that takes place in a plant. This includes at least the following functions:

- Maintenance engineering
- System engineering
- Design engineering
- Training
- Spare parts and materials management
- Quality assurance
- Quality control

There are, of course, many other areas of maintenance involvement with engineering support groups. The intent here is to show areas which stand out in the better-performing plants and which tend to be missing or underdeveloped in other organizations.

Maintenance engineering is the engineering support activity most directly involved with PM. This function is present in all of the better-performing plants, although its name and where it fits into the organization vary widely from plant to plant. Its purpose is to optimize the maintenance program through planning, feedback, continual evaluation, and periodic updating of policies and procedures. The functions of a maintenance engineering group typically include

- Maintenance procedure development and control
- Periodic review and updating of maintenance practices and procedures
- Maintenance recordkeeping
- In-service inspection and testing (ISI/IST) program development
- Providing guidance to the training staff on maintenance training
- Collecting and trending equipment failure, reliability, availability, and maintainability data
- Tracking and trending the corrective- to preventive-maintenance ratio
- Failure root cause analysis
- Tracking, trending, and analysis of nonconformances
- Identifying and monitoring maintenance-related equipment performance parameters, especially failure precursors
- Identifying and monitoring maintenance performance indicators

1.3.6.3 Summary

The foregoing has been a brief look at the features of the EPM program. There are many ways to effect improvements in an organization, but probably the dominant cause of failing to improve is resistance to change. In the plants that have outstanding maintenance organizations, upper management has overcome this resistance by direct, long-term involvement in establishing and implementing policies leading to improved maintenance. Perceptible improvements in reliability, availability, and thermal efficiency have generally resulted; the indirect results have been both greater safety and higher profits. The changes in these organizations were not easy and required both time and dedication to implement. Effective management appears to be the key to an effective overall maintenance organization, not the number of programs management has in place.

1.4 Planning an EPM Program

There are management, economic, and technical considerations as discussed in Section 1.3 along with other requirements that need to be understood in order to develop an effective maintenance program. Let us review these items from the viewpoint of developing an effective and comprehensive maintenance program. The main parts of the maintenance program can be classified into maintenance management considerations, technical requirements, and those items that should be included in the EPM program.

1.4.1 Maintenance Management Considerations

The design of any maintenance program must meet the ultimate goals of plant management. Maintenance is like an insurance policy: it has no direct payback, yet it is a cost that adds to the cost of the final product. However, one must hasten to say that it has inherent paybacks such as those listed in Section 1.2. It is generally observed that management resists the investment in a maintenance program even though they realize the need for good maintenance. In view of this, it is up to electrical personnel to show management how a properly planned electrical maintenance and testing program is justifiable.

The planning of EPM programs should then include the advantages of a well-planned maintenance along with cost data for lost production due to equipment failure versus cost of budgeted PM. Any maintenance program should prove that it is cost effective and minimizes equipment failure. The planning of the program should include considerations for proper test equipment, tools, trained personnel to carry out maintenance tasks, and time required to perform inspections, tests, and maintenance routines. Also, consideration should be given to record keeping systems, which can range from fully computerized to manual file systems. To set up an EPM and test program, the following steps may be undertaken:

- Determine the factors that will form the basis of the maintenance program, such as the necessity for continuous production, management policy on budgeting for planned maintenance versus replacement of equipment, and the like.

- Survey and consolidate data on equipment breakdowns and cost of lost production. Make an analysis of the cost data to convince management of the benefits of planned maintenance.
- Establish electrical maintenance priorities. These consist of on-line production sequence, most important to least important equipment, weighing the reliability of the equipment, and other factors.
- Establish the best maintenance techniques. This involves selecting the best maintenance method and personnel for the various types of equipment and systems.
- Schedule and implement the program. Monitor its benefits and costs. Analyze program functions periodically for improvement of the program.

After the program has been set up, it is essential that it consist of elements that will prove it to be a success such as responsibilities, inspection, scheduling, work orders, and record keeping.

1.4.1.1 Responsibilities

The responsibilities of the maintenance organization should be clearly defined by organization charts with functional work statements for each unit. The functional work statements must be established by management as a matter of policy. Every other department must be informed of the responsibilities assigned to maintenance organizations. The effectiveness of the maintenance departments will depend upon how well they are organized and how well personnel are utilized.

1.4.1.2 Inspection

Inspection is the key to the success of any maintenance program. Sufficient time should be allocated for inspection to verify the condition of new and installed equipment. The purpose of inspection is to provide advance warning as to the condition of the equipment under investigation. When inspection is performed on definite cycles by qualified people, impending deterioration can be detected in advance so that repair or replacement can be made before failure of the equipment occurs.

1.4.1.3 Scheduling

To perform maintenance, a definite schedule of work to be performed must be established. Maintenance schedules must be based upon minimum downtime for the various operating segments. The schedule for inspection, routine maintenance, and other work may vary for different equipment and will depend upon many factors. These factors can be age of equipment, frequency of service, hours of operation, environmental conditions, damage due to abuse, and safety requirements. Frequency of scheduling of all tasks should be adjusted as data on various equipment are recorded and analyzed to provide a balance between cost of maintenance and replacement cost of the equipment.

1.4.1.4 Work Orders

Work orders are job requests that need action for completion. Work orders can be established for all inspection service and other work on equipment in terms of routines. Any of these routines should include information on when such work is to be performed, where it is to be performed, and exactly what has to be done. These routines can be generated by a computer-based maintenance system. The routines should include all the pertinent information concerning the equipment.

1.4.1.5 Record Keeping

The success of a planned maintenance program depends upon the impetus given by top management and the interest of the maintenance personnel in the program. To have an effective program, it is imperative that maintenance and test inventory data on all equipment should be complete and readily available throughout the service life of the equipment. To that end, record keeping is very important. All forms and reports should be organized to provide ready accessibility to data when needed and to flag down problem areas. Such data may also be used over the years to analyze trends for equipment deterioration. If data are not recorded and maintained properly, the whole purpose of planned maintenance is lost.

1.4.2 Technical Requirements

Technical requirements can be stated as follows:

- Survey of plant equipment
- Listing of plant equipment in the order of critical importance
- Plan to perform EPM on a regular frequency
- Development of instructions and procedures for the EPM program

1.4.2.1 Survey of Plant Equipment

To perform an effective EPM program, it is necessary to have accurate data about the electrical power system. This may include one-line diagrams, short-circuit coordination study, wiring and control diagrams, and other data that can be used as a reference point for future maintenance and testing. The purpose of these diagrams is to document and serve as an official record of equipment and circuit installation. The National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA) has established standards for diagram symbols, device designations, and electrical symbols. The types of diagrams and drawings in common use are the following:

Process or flow diagram: A conceptual diagram of the functional interrelationship of subsystems in pictorial form.

Block diagram: A group of interconnected blocks, each of which represents a device or subsystem.

One-line (single-line) diagram: It shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the flow of electrical power or the course of electrical circuits and how they are connected. In this diagram, physical relationships are usually disregarded. A typical one-line diagram is shown in Figure 1.4.

Schematic (elementary) diagram: It shows all circuits and device elements of the equipment. This diagram emphasizes the device elements and their

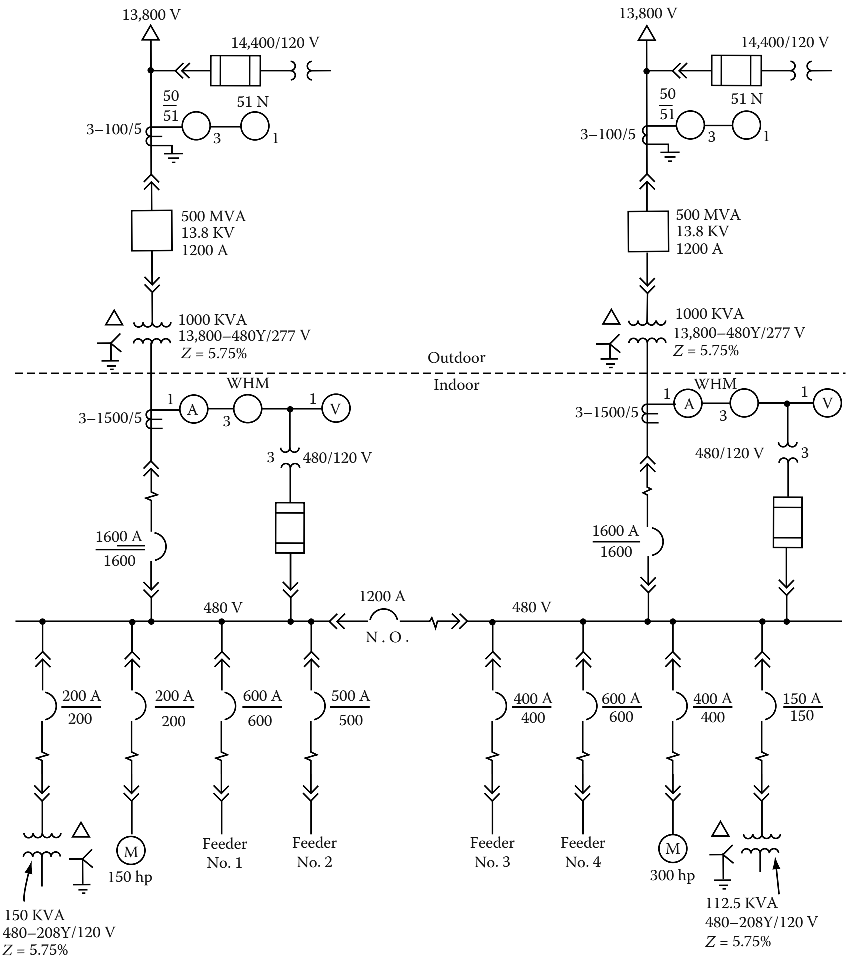


FIGURE 1.4
Typical one-line diagram of a power distribution system.

functions, and it is always drawn with all devices shown in de-energized mode. A typical elementary diagram is shown in Figure 1.5a.

Control sequence (truth-table) diagram: A description of the contact positions, or connections, that are made for each position of control action or device.

Wiring diagram (connection diagram): It locates and identifies electrical devices, terminals, and interconnecting wires in an assembly. This diagram may show interconnecting wiring by lines or terminal designations. A typical wiring diagram is shown in Figure 1.5b.

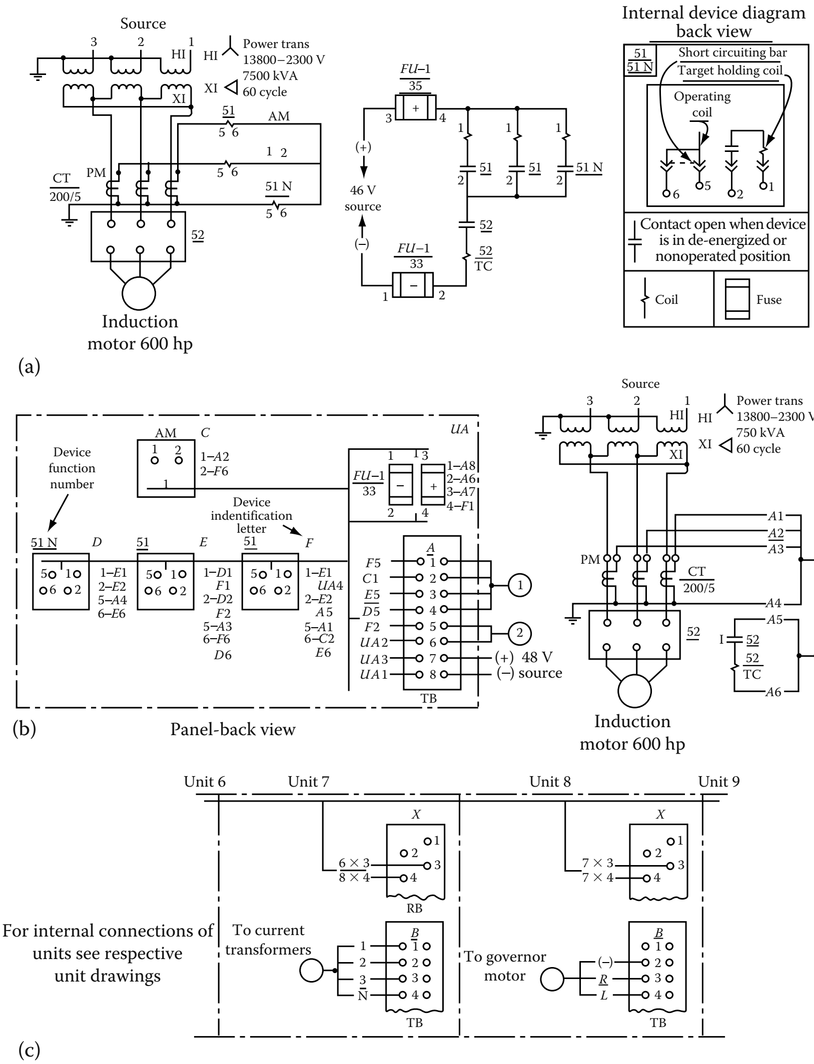


FIGURE 1.5
Typical electrical (a) elementary control, (b) connection, and (c) interconnection diagrams.

Interconnection diagram: It shows only the external connections between controllers and associated equipment or between various housing units of an assembly of switchgear apparatus as shown in Figure 1.5c.

Circuit layout and routing diagram: They show the physical layout of the facility and equipment and how the circuit to the various equipment is run.

Short-circuit coordination study: An electrical power system data, diagrams, and drawings are needed during maintenance and testing of electrical equipment. This may involve information and data relating to protective devices and relays. Such data are usually found in a short-circuit coordination study and usually encompass all the short-circuit values available in the power system, relays, and trip device settings. Normally, this study is performed during the construction and commissioning phase of the facility. It would be much more desirable to perform this engineering study as part of the initial facility design, and then validate it during the construction phase to assure that equipment and values specified have been met. When accepting the facility, this study data should be used as a benchmark, and any changes that may have been made during construction in the system should be incorporated to update the study for future references.

System diagrams: In addition to other data assembled, system diagrams will generally be needed for large systems. Such diagrams may consist of the following:

Control and monitoring system
Lighting system
Ventilation system
Heating and air conditioning system
Emergency system
Other systems

All the system diagrams may interface with one another, such as electrical diagrams, fire and security diagrams, emergency power, hydraulic, pneumatic, and/or mechanical systems. Therefore, it is important to know how these interfaces work and how they can be coordinated in the maintenance program.

1.4.2.2 Listing of Plant Equipment in the Order of Critical Importance

Electrical power system equipment, like any other plant equipment, is vital to the operation of the plant or facility. Failure of the power system may be considered a serious threat to people and property. The listing may be difficult to accomplish because the criticalness of any piece of equipment will vary for each plant or facility. Therefore, a team to mutually identify and list the critical equipment (electrical and other) vital to the operation of a facility may be necessary. The team should consist of representatives from each area of expertise involved in the operation of the plant. All the critical equipment and/or systems should be identified on the drawings. The maintenance department should understand each of these systems, equipment, and/or their functions and how they may affect or interface with other systems. The more knowledgeable the maintenance members are about their system, the better job they will perform in their duties.

1.4.2.3 Plan to Perform EPM on Regular Frequency

Several factors should be considered in establishing the frequency with which equipment is to be maintained:

- Environmental conditions
- Load conditions
- Duty requirements
- Critical nature of the equipment

The purpose of the maintenance schedule is to establish the condition of the equipment and determine what work will be required before its next scheduled maintenance. Usually, manufacturers' service manuals specify recommended frequency of maintenance and/or inspection. These time intervals are based upon standard operating conditions and environments. If these standard conditions change for the equipment, then the frequency should be modified accordingly. However, once the frequency of scheduled maintenance is established, this schedule should be adhered to for at least several maintenance cycles. The schedule should be adjusted if the equipment begins to experience unexpected failures. The frequency in this case can be reduced by as much as 50%. On the other hand, if the equipment does not require maintenance for more than two inspections, the period of frequency for that equipment can be increased by as much as 50%. Adjustment should be continued until the optimum interval is found. Generally, the test frequency can vary from 6 months to 3 years.

1.4.2.4 Development of Instruction and Procedures for the EPM Program

The final technical function in developing an EPM program involves establishment of instructions, procedures, and methods to ensure that the equipment and system components operate without failure. The maintenance department should have fully developed procedures and instructions for thoroughly servicing all equipment and components. In addition, the maintenance department should also develop shutdown procedures, safeguards, interlocking of equipment, alarms, and methods of recording data (forms) and reporting unusual conditions to the proper authority. The maintenance records should be further utilized to evaluate results and as an indicator of possible modifications or changes in the maintenance program. In other words, the recorded information should be used as historical data and for feedback to modify the maintenance program.

1.4.3 What Should Be Included in the EPM Program

The EPM and testing program should encompass the following activities:

- EPM and testing
- Electrical repairs
- Analysis of failures
- Trending of maintenance and testing data

To have an effective and efficient operation, it is essential to carry out these four activities.

1.4.3.1 EPM and Testing

This activity involves inspection, cleaning and adjustment, and testing of equipment to ensure trouble-free operation until its next scheduled maintenance. PM and testing also allow the prediction of impending failure of a particular piece of equipment so that plans can be made to replace it without catastrophic results. The information on testing can be obtained from several different sources such as manufacturer's manuals, published literature on specific equipment, and industry standards. The relevant industry standards are: the Insulated Cable Engineering Association (ICEA), NFPA, Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE), American National Standard Institute (ANSI), NEMA, NETA, Insurance Company Manuals (ICMs), and others, depending on the equipment to be tested.

1.4.3.2 Electrical Repairs

The repair of electrical equipment and related machinery associated with plant production is the fundamental requirement of good maintenance programs. The maintenance should be performed economically and expeditiously. The basic objective of the maintenance program should be to avoid unexpected breakdowns of equipment. Furthermore, when breakdowns occur, spare parts should be on hand to make the necessary repairs. The maintenance personnel should be properly trained to perform the repairs promptly and correctly in order to minimize the downtime of the equipment.

1.4.3.3 Analysis of Failures

The failure of electrical equipment should be analyzed to assess reasons for its breakdown. Unless the cause is obvious, the equipment quality may be questioned. Reliability can be built into the equipment, but it requires upkeep to retain it. The tendency to ignore regular maintenance and testing generally prevails over regularly scheduled maintenance because regular maintenance may be considered unnecessary and too expensive. Therefore, the best designed and built equipment may break down through lack of attention. Every failure should be analyzed for its cause so that corrective measures can be implemented to prevent similar breakdowns.

1.4.3.4 Trending of Maintenance and Testing Data

Systematic trending of maintenance and testing data (see Section 1.3.5) can alert the maintenance staff of degrading equipment. This allows the maintenance staff to monitor such equipment more closely or take corrective actions to avert a catastrophic failure.

1.4.3.5 Computerized Maintenance Management System

It is essential to have a CMMS for implementing an effective maintenance program. In the past, the maintenance data were manually recorded and managed. It was time consuming and difficult to record data and perform trend analysis of the maintenance test results. Today, most maintenance tasks can be automated with the use of commercially available CMMS programs and a desktop or a laptop computer. The job of maintaining and managing maintenance and test data has become much easier compared to the past. A CMMS is essential for improving performance, analyzing data for key trends and anomalies, forecasting reliability issues, and in making forward-looking decisions that deliver improved bottom-line results. A comprehensive CMMS program can incorporate all of the elements discussed in Sections 1.4.1.2 through 1.4.3.4 and make the electrical maintenance department an effective organization. Typical key functions of CMMS include the following:

Work orders—scheduling jobs, assigning personnel, reserving materials, and recording costs.

PM—keeping track of PM inspections, tests, and jobs, including step-by-step instructions or checklists, lists of materials required, and other pertinent details.

Asset management—recording data on equipment including specifications, nameplate information, purchase date, maintenance history, inspection and test data, and so on.

Inventory control—management of spare parts, tools, and other materials.

Critical equipment listing and inventory—list of critical equipment vital to the operation of the facility.

Root cause analysis of failures—analysis of failures and their causes so that corrective measures can be implemented to prevent similar failures.

Advanced reporting and analytics—creating customized reports and analyses that can be used to forecast likely problems in time to prevent them.

There are number of vendors that offer CMMS for the management of electrical maintenance and testing data and reporting such as Megger "PowerDB," Service Automation Technologies "EPower Forms," and Optima-SMS. For example, PowerDB* is a powerful software package for entry and management of acceptance (start-up) and maintenance test data, storage and reporting. The system allows the user to define data forms for different equipment types. When testing equipment, these forms are used to facilitate data entry, on-screen data presentation, and report printing. Equipment is organized in an organization scheme of up to five levels. This software is designed to work as the Equipment Tree. The Equipment Tree levels are labeled as customer, user, plant, substation, and position. Data entry and reporting for one or more pieces of equipment are organized into jobs. PowerDB stores information in a database. Subsets of the database may be made for field-testing. Results, changes, and additions to the subset may be merged with the master database. All types of test results can be entered and stored into the software for generating formal reports and a permanent historical record. The PowerDB CMMS program is designed to record and manage the maintenance and test data for the many of the electrical equipment including the following: batteries, cables, circuit breakers, coordination data, disconnects, generators and motors, power transformers, insulation fluids, loadbreak switches, motor control centers (MCCs), relays, PF tests, switchboards, transfer switches, watt-hour meters transducers, ground fault tests; ground mat/grid tests; instrument transformers, and so on.

The user interface for viewing or recalling information is also the actual test or inspection entry form. Various forms for each type of apparatus allow input of inspection and electrical test data. Over 200 standard tests forms currently exist in PowerDB, and customized forms can be generated using a built-in forms editor. Archived test results can be trended and compared with newly entered information for quick analysis of equipment condition. Forms include embedded equation calculations as well as functional scripts for operating electrical and electronic field test sets. This capability allows for automated testing and capturing of test results into the database. Customer and contract information is quickly sorted and searched. Opening a specific record shows detailed information about the job, such as type of service, order date, sales contact, and invoice information. Job information and related test results can be transferred between field-use databases and a master database. Job and device productivity reports track the time spent on testing and evaluation of equipment. Test data entry screens and printed

---

* This CMMS program is cited here as an example of one of several such programs. This listing is not intended as an endorsement of this program by the author or publisher.

forms are identical allowing intuitive operation. Entire test documentation packages consisting of test reports, comment and deficiency summaries, table of contents, and field service reports are created easily.

1.5 Overview of Testing and Test Methods

Testing of electrical equipment is usually performed in the field on new equipment after installation and on existing equipment to assess its condition. The manufacturer conducts electrical tests on equipment before it leaves the factory; these tests, known as factory tests, are outside the scope of this text and therefore will not be discussed. Field tests are conducted to see whether newly installed equipment has been damaged, to indicate whether any corrective maintenance or replacement is necessary on existing equipment, to indicate if the equipment can continue to perform its design functions safely and adequately, to chart the gradual deterioration of the equipment over its service life, and to check new equipment before energization. In view of these objectives, the electrical testing of equipment can be divided into the following:

- Types of tests
- Types of testing methods

1.5.1 Types of Tests

The types of field tests are acceptance tests, routine maintenance tests, and special maintenance tests that are conducted for specific purposes.

1.5.1.1 Acceptance Tests

These tests are known as start-up or commissioning tests and are performed on new equipment, usually after installation and prior to energization. When these tests are repeated within a year, that is before the warranty period expires, then these tests are referred to as proof tests. Tests of this type are made at 80% of the final factory test voltage value. They are run to determine the following:

Whether the equipment is in compliance with the specification

To establish a benchmark for future tests

To determine that the equipment has been installed without damage

To verify whether the equipment meets its design intent and limit

1.5.1.2 Routine Maintenance Tests

These tests are performed at regular intervals over the service life of the equipment. They are made concurrently with PM and at 60% of the final factory test voltage value. In the course of routine maintenance tests, it is very helpful to record the information as it is found on the equipment and to also record the condition in which the equipment is left. Therefore, these tests can be further subdivided into the following:

As-found tests: These tests are performed on equipment on receipt or after it has been taken out of service for maintenance, but before any maintenance work is done.

As-left tests: These tests are performed after maintenance has been performed and just before reenergization. They can indicate the degree of improvement in the equipment and service as a benchmark for comparison for future tests.

1.5.1.3 Special Maintenance Tests

These tests are performed on equipment that is known to be defective or has been subjected to adverse conditions that may affect its operating characteristics. An example might be the fault interruption by a circuit breaker, which requires inspection, maintenance, and tests before it can be put back into service.

1.5.2 Types of Testing Methods

The testing of electrical power system equipment involves checking the insulation system, electrical properties, and other factors as they relate to the overall operation of the power system. Therefore, testing of electrical equipment can be divided into the following types:

- Solid insulation testing
- Insulating liquid testing
- Relay and protective device testing
- Circuit breaker time–travel analysis
- Grounding electrode resistance testing
- Fault gas analysis testing
- Infrared inspection testing

1.5.2.1 Solid Insulation Testing

Insulation can be either solid, liquid, or gaseous dielectric materials that prevent the flow of electricity between points of different potential. Insulation testing is done to determine the integrity of the insulating medium. This usually consists of applying a high potential (hi-pot) voltage to the sample under test and determining the leakage current that may flow under test conditions. Excessive leakage current flows may indicate a deteriorated condition or impending failure of the insulation. Insulation testing can be performed by applying either direct current (DC) voltage or alternating current (AC) voltage. The testing of solid insulation with these voltages can be categorized as nondestructive testing and destructive testing, respectively. The destructive test may cause equipment under test to fail or render it unsuitable for further service. Nondestructive tests are performed at low-voltage stress, and the equipment under test is rarely damaged.

The AC hi-pot test is primarily a "go" or "no-go" test. The voltage is raised to a specified level. If the equipment fails or shows excessive leakage current, the equipment under test is unusable. If the equipment does not fail, it has passed the test. This test can only indicate whether the equipment is good or bad. It cannot indicate with what safety margin the test was passed. However, there are nondestructive tests that can be performed with AC voltage, such as power factor (PF), dissipation factor (DF), capacitance, etc., which are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 3.

The DC hi-pot test can indicate more than a "go" or "no-go" condition. It can indicate that equipment is all right at the present time but may fail in the future. DC testing is done to obtain information for comparative analysis on a periodic basis. With dc testing, the leakage current is measured during the progress of the test and compared to leakage current values of previous tests. However, the DC hi-pot test is considered to be a destructive test if the test voltage is not applied in a predetermined control-voltage steps. The DC voltage tests can be performed at lower voltages, which are nondestructive tests, such as insulation resistance, dielectric absorption ratio, and polarization index. These tests are discussed in more detail in Chapter 2.

1.5.2.2 Insulating Liquid Testing

Insulating liquids used in transformers or other electrical apparatus are subject to deterioration and contamination over a period of time. These contaminants have a detrimental effect on the insulating properties of the fluid, as well as on the solid insulation system of the transformer winding. Basically, the elements that cause the deterioration of the insulating fluids are moisture, heat, oxygen, and other catalysts that result in a chemical reaction that produces acid and sludge, which in turn attack the insulating fluids. The main insulating fluids that are in use today for transformers are oil, silicone, and RTemp and Wecosol. Askarel was used in the past, but its use was banned by federal regulations owing to its high toxicity; however, there may be installations that still may have this fluid at their plant sites. Regular tests are recommended to monitor the condition of the insulating liquid. Samples should be taken from the transformers on periodic basis to perform various tests in accordance with American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM) methods, which are discussed in detail in Chapter 4.

1.5.2.3 Protective Device Testing

Protective device testing involves the testing and maintenance of protective relays, low-voltage draw out power circuit breakers, low-voltage molded-case breakers, and associated equipment such as instrument transformers and wiring. The function of protective relays and devices maintenance and testing is to assure that a particular breaker or protective relay is able to perform its basic protective function under actual operating conditions. The tests on relays, protective trip devices, and circuit breakers can be classified as commissioning tests, routine maintenance testing, and verification testing. These tests are discussed in more detail in Chapters 7 through 9.

1.5.2.4 Circuit Breaker Time–Travel Analysis

The circuit breaker time–travel analysis test is performed to determine if the operating mechanism of the circuit breaker is operating properly. This test is usually performed on medium- and high-voltage circuit breakers and depicts the position of breaker contacts with relation to time. This relationship can then be used to determine the operating speed of the circuit breaker for opening and closing and contact bounce, and the interval time for closing and tripping. The breaker operating time data can be used to evaluate the condition of mechanical parts of breakers, such as closing mechanism, springs, and shock absorbers. Circuit breaker time–travel analysis test is described in greater detail in Chapter 7.

1.5.2.5 Grounding Electrode Resistance Testing

The integrity of the grounding system is very important in an electrical power system for the following reasons:

- To maintain a reference point of potential (ground) for equipment and personnel safety
- To provide a discharge point for traveling waves due to lightning
- To prevent excessive high voltage due to induced voltages on the power system

Therefore, to maintain ground potential effectiveness, periodic testing of grounding electrodes and the grounding system is required. Electrical power system grounding and ground resistance measurements are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 11.

1.5.2.6 Fault Gas Analysis Testing

Fault gas analysis testing comprises of dissolved gas analysis and total combustible gas tests. The dissolved-gas analysis provides information on the individual combustible gases dissolved in the insulating oil. The total combustible fault gas analysis test provides information on incipient faults in oil-filled transformers by measuring the total combustible gases present in the nitrogen cap of the transformer. Because of excessive heat due to loading of the transformer, or arcing and sparking inside the transformer insulating oil, some of the oil in the transformer decomposes and generates combustible gases, which then are dissolved in the oil, and eventually become liberated where they mix with the nitrogen above the top oil. The dissolved oil gas and total combustible gas test methods are discussed in more detail in Chapter 4.

1.5.2.7 Infrared Inspection Testing

There are many different devices available using infrared technology to check hot spots in switchgear and other energized parts of the power system. They are very useful in routine maintenance and inspection for finding bad connections and joints and overloaded terminals or lines. The infrared inspection testing is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 8.

1.6 Review of Dielectric Theory and Practice

All electrical circuits use insulation which is suppose to be nonconductive and confines and guides the electric current to the inside of the circuit. Therefore, the electrical insulation materials should exhibit (1) high resistance to the flow of electrical current, (2) high strength to withstand electrical stress, and (3) excellent heat-conducting properties. There are three fundamental electrical circuits and they are (1) the electric circuit, (2) the dielectric circuit, and (3) the magnetic circuit. These three circuits are analogous in many respects and are all governed by Ohm's law. For example, each of the three circuits can be written as follows:

$$\text{The electric circuit is } I = \frac{E}{R}$$

$$\text{The dielectric circuit is } \psi = \frac{E}{S}$$

$$\text{The magnetic circuit is } \Phi = \frac{F}{\check{R}}$$

where

- E is the electromotive force
- F is the magnetic motive force
- R is the electrical resistance
- S is the dielectric resistance
- $\check{R}$ is the magnetic resistance (reluctance)
- I is the current in the electrical circuit
- ψ is the electrical flux in the dielectric circuit
- Φ is the magnetic flux in the magnetic circuit

Correspondingly, the formulas for electrical, dielectric, and magnetic resistance are also similar; that is

$$S = (1/e_r)(L/A)$$

$$\check{R} = (1/u_r)(L/A)$$

$$R = \rho(L/A)$$

where
 ρ is the resistivity
 e_r is the relative capacitivity (dielectric constant)
 u_r is the relative permeability

Although these circuits are analogous to one another, they differ in actual practice. In the electrical circuit, the circuit is confined to the inside of the conductor and its path is along the conductor, where as in the dielectric and magnetic circuits the length of the path is short, irregular, and there is a large proportion of leakage flux usually into the air. In practice, it is much more difficult to make precise calculations for the dielectric and magnetic circuits than it is for the electric circuits. Furthermore, the current in the electric circuit can be measured very readily where as it is much more difficult to make similar measurements in the dielectric and magnetic circuits. In particular, the dielectric circuit differs further from an electric and magnetic circuit is in its design, predictability, and reliability. The dielectric circuit involves several terms and parameters that need to be understood in order to assess the characteristics and performance of the dielectric circuit. These terms are discussed as follows:

Dielectric: Dielectric is a term used to identify a medium, such as insulation in which an electric field charge can be produced and maintained. The energy required to charge the dielectric is recoverable, in whole or in part, when the charge is removed.

Dielectric constant: Dielectric constant is known as specific inductive capacitance, capacitivity, or permittivity. The dielectric constant of any medium or material is defined as the ratio of the capacitance of a given configuration of electrodes with the medium as a dielectric, to the capacitance of the same configuration with a vacuum (or air) as the dielectric between the electrodes.

Dielectric absorption: Dielectric absorption is a phenomenon which occurs in dielectrics whereby positive and negative charges are separated to respective polarity when a DC voltage is applied to the dielectric. This phenomenon is time-dependent and usually manifests itself as a gradually decreasing current with time after application of DC voltage.

Dielectric loss: Dielectric loss is the time rate at which electric energy is transformed into heat in a dielectric when it is subjected to an electric field. Dielectric loss is associated with real component (watts) losses in a dielectric.

Dielectric PF: The dielectric PF of a material is the ratio of the power dissipated in the material in watts (watt loss) to the effective volt-amperes (effective voltage × current) when tested with sinusoidal (AC) voltage. Numerically, it is expressed as a cosine of the dielectric phase angle (θ) or cos θ.

Dielectric DF: The dielectric DF is the tangent of the loss angle ($90 - \theta$). It is commonly referred to as tan δ (tan delta).

Dielectric loss factor or dielectric loss index: The dielectric loss factor of any material is the product of its dielectric constant and its DF.

Dielectric strength: The dielectric strength of a material is the potential gradient (voltage) at which breakdown (electrical failure) occurs and is a function of the material thickness and its electrical properties.

Voltage gradient: A voltage gradient is defined as the electrical intensity at a point in an electric field, that is, force exerted on unit charge at a point. Numerically, it is equal to the density of the electric flux divided by the dielectric constant.

1.6.1 Characteristics of Dielectrics (Insulation)

Dielectrics (insulation) for electrical equipment and apparatus is used for many different applications. It is expressed for a wide range of environmental conditions such as temperature, moisture, chemicals, other contaminants, and exposure to weather. One major factor affecting insulation life is thermal degradation, although moisture, contamination, voltage stress, and other factors may also contribute to its degradation. In addition, the life of an insulating material depends on the degree of loading, the type of service to which the equipment is subjected, the care it receives during installation and operation, and mechanical vibration and forces to which it is subjected.

The properties of insulating materials that are necessary and desirable are surface leakage, resistance to moisture, chemicals, oils and other contaminants, and mechanical properties. The important electrical characteristics of insulation are volume resistivity, PF, DF, capacitivity, dielectric constant, and dielectric strength. These characteristics, except for dielectric strength, can be assessed by nondestructive testing. These tests are

1. AC dielectric loss
2. PF or DF (tan δ)
3. Capacitance
4. AC resistance
5. Radio interference voltage (RIV)

6. DC insulation resistance
7. DC dielectric absorption

1.6.1.1 Dielectric Loss

All solid and liquid insulations have some measurable loss since there is no perfect insulator. These losses are usually very small in the insulations typically used in electrical equipment and apparatus, and these losses vary as the square of the applied voltage. Gaseous insulations, such as air, do not have a measurable loss until they become overstressed or ionized. Dielectric loss is measured in watts (resistive components) and is a measure of energy dissipation through and over the surface of the insulation. The dielectric losses of most insulations increases with increase in temperature, moisture, and corona. Insulations may fail due to the cumulative effect of temperature, that is, rise in temperature causes an increase in dielectric loss which in turn results in a further rise in temperature. This phenomenon is self-perpetuating and continues until the insulation fails.

1.6.1.2 PF and DF

The PF of insulation is defined as the ratio of watt loss to total charging volt-amperes, or the cosine of the angle θ between total current vector (I_T) and the impressed voltage vector. It is a measure of the energy component (resistive component) of the charging current. The DF is defined as the ratio of the watt loss to charging amperes, or the tangent of the angle δ between the total current vector and the capacitive current vector. The angle δ is the complementary angle of the PF angle θ. Although, the charging volt-amperes and watt loss increase as the volume of insulation being tested increases at a given test voltage, the ratio of watt loss to the volt-amperes (PF or DF) remains the same regardless of the volume of insulation tested. Therefore, the basic relationship of PF or DF eliminates the effect of the volume of insulation—that is, the size of the electrical equipment or apparatus tested. This simplifies the problem of establishing normal insulation values for most types of electrical equipment. PF and DF testing is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 3.

1.6.1.3 Capacitance

In a capacitor, the charge Q (amount of electricity) is proportional to the voltage E. The expression for this relationship can be written as

$$Q = CE$$

where C is a constant called capacitance. The capacitance of any electrical equipment, including capacitors, may be calculated from their geometry.

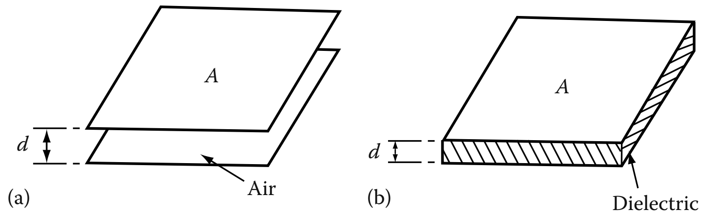


FIGURE 1.6
(a) Parallel-plate air capacitor and (b) parallel-plate capacitor with dielectric material.

A capacitor in its most simple form is the parallel-electrode air capacitor as shown in Figure 1.6a. The capacitance of such a capacitor can be calculated by the following formula:

$$C = \frac{KA}{d}$$

where
- A is the area between the electrodes
- d is the thickness of the insulation (spacing between the electrodes)
- K is the dielectric constant of the insulation (air)

The dielectric constant (K) of air is practically unity and the dielectric constant of the other insulation materials is defined in terms of air or vacuum. Table 1.1 gives the dielectric constant values for most common types of insulating materials.

In cases where the geometry of the electrical equipment is simple and known, capacitance can be calculated mathematically. In the majority of cases, however, most insulation's geometry is usually too complex and not well-enough understood to derive a reliable calculation of capacitance mathematically.

1.6.2 Insulation as a Capacitor

A perfect insulator can be represented by an ideal capacitor as shown in Figure 1.7a. However, all electrical equipment insulation have losses and therefore an insulator is not a pure capacitor. Thus, the electrical circuit of a

TABLE 1.1

Dielectric Constant of Insulating Materials

Vacuum	1.0	Fiber	2.5–5.0
Air	1.0	Glass	5.4–9.9
Paper	2–2.6	Mica	2.5–7.7
Rubber	2–3.5	Wood	2.5–7.7
Oil	2.2	Porcelain	5.7–6.8
Bakelite	4.5–5.5	Polyethylene	2.3

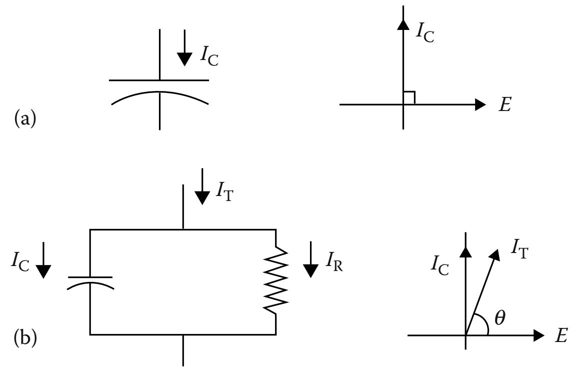


FIGURE 1.7
Electrical representation of insulation: (a) perfect and (b) practical.

practical insulator can be represented by a capacitor with a small resistance in parallel with it, as shown in Figure 1.7b.

The nature of insulation materials is such that 60 Hz current does not easily flow through them and therefore their purpose is to guide the current to the inside of the conductor. When voltage is applied to the conductor, two fields are established; one due to the current flow (magnetic field) and the other due to the voltage (dielectric or electrostatic field). The lines of magnetic flux around the conductor are concentric circles, whereas the lines of the dielectric flux around the conductor are radial. The resulting voltage stress due to the dielectric field varies inversely with the distance between equipotential lines.

The dielectric constant of an insulator is an indication of how much dielectric flux the insulation will allow through it. Under identical conditions insulation with a higher dielectric constant will pass more dielectric flux through it than another insulation having a lower dielectric constant. The dielectric constant for most commercial insulations varies from 2.0 to 7.0 as indicated in Table 1.1. It should be noted that the dielectric constant of water is 81 and generally when insulation becomes wet, its dielectric constant increases along with its capacitance, thus resulting in greater dielectric loss. An ideal insulation can be represented as a capacitor because its behavior is similar to that of a capacitor. Two of the most common configurations considered for insulators are parallel-plate and cylindrical capacitors. For example, the parallel-plate capacitor represents an insulation system of a transformer or a machine winding, whereas the cylindrical capacitor represents an insulation system of a cable or a bushing.

1.6.3 DC Voltage versus AC Voltage Tests

When voltage is applied to the insulation, a current is established consisting of a charging current (I_C) and an in-phase component current (I_R). As shown in Figure 1.7b, the charging current leads the in-phase component current by 90°. The vector sum of the charging current and the in-phase component current is the total current (I_T) drawn by the insulation specimen. The in-phase component current is also referred to as the resistive current, loss current, or conduction current. The ideal insulation (ideal capacitor) behaves somewhat differently under the application of DC versus AC voltages which are discussed below.

1.6.3.1 DC Voltage Tests

When a DC voltage is applied to the insulation, a large current is drawn at the beginning to provide the charging energy, however, this current decreases to a minimum level over time. The minimum current is due to continuous leakage or watt loss through the insulation. The energy required to charge an insulation is known as the dielectric absorption phenomenon.

In actual practice, the losses from dielectric absorption (i.e., the absorption current) are much higher than the continuous leakage losses. In the case of DC voltage testing, the effect of dielectric absorption becomes minimum over time and therefore measurements of continuous leakage current can be made. Dielectric absorption losses are very sensitive to changes in moisture content of an insulation, as well as the presence of other contaminants. Small increases in moisture content of an insulation cause a large increase in dielectric absorption. The fact that dielectric losses are due to dielectric absorption makes the dielectric loss, PF, or DF test a very sensitive test for detecting moisture in the insulation. When a DC voltage is applied to an insulation, the total current drawn by the insulation is comprised of capacitance charging current, dielectric absorption current, and continuous leakage currents. These currents and their behavior are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 2.

1.6.3.2 AC Voltage Tests

In the case of AC voltage application to an insulation, a large current is drawn which remains constant as the AC current alternately charges and discharges the insulation. The effect of dielectric absorption currents remains high because the dielectric field never becomes fully established due to the polarity of the current reversing each half cycle. When an AC voltage is applied to an insulation, the currents drawn by the insulation are due to capacitance charging, dielectric absorption, continuous leakage current, and corona which are discussed below:

Capacitance charging current: In the case of AC voltage, this current is constant and is a function of voltage, the dielectric constant of the insulating material, and the geometry of the insulation.

Dielectric absorption current: When an electric field is set up across an insulation, the dipole molecules try to align with the field. Since the molecules in an AC field are continually reversing and never fully align, the energy required is a function of material, contamination, (such as water), and electrical frequency. It is not a function of time.

Leakage current (conductivity): All insulation materials will conduct some current. If voltage is increased beyond a certain level, electrons will be knocked off of molecules causing current to pass through the insulation. This is a function of the material, contamination (especially water), and temperature. Excessive conductivity will generate heat causing the insulation to cascade into failure.

Corona (ionization current): Corona is the process by which neutral molecules of air disassociate to form positively and negatively charged ions. This occurs due to overstressing of an air void in the insulation. Air voids in oil or solid insulations may be due to deterioration from heat or physical stress, poor manufacture, faulty installation, or improper operation. Corona breaks down the air into ozone which, in combination with water, forms nitrous acid. The ionized air bombards the surrounding insulation and causes heat. The combination of these conditions will result in deterioration of the insulation and carbon tracking. Corona losses increase exponentially as voltage increases.

1.6.4 Insulation Breakdown Modes

Insulation breakdown can be classified as (1) failure due to excessive dielectric loss and (2) failure due to overpotential stress. These failure modes are discussed below:

Excessive dielectric loss is the result of deteriorated insulation or the contamination of the insulation with a poor dielectric such as water. As the dielectric losses increase, the temperature of the insulation increases resulting in even greater dielectric loss. Over time, the phenomenon eventually results in complete failure of the insulation. Overpotential stress occurs when a voltage is applied across an insulation greater than its dielectric strength. The molecular forces are overwhelmed and the insulation becomes a conductor. Some of the causes of insulation failure due to overpotential stress are (1) external increase in applied voltage, (2) decrease of insulation thickness, and (3) air bubbles or pockets in the insulation.

Example of insulation failure

Let us take an example of an oil-filled transformer that has oil and solid paper as an insulation system. For the purposes of this example, let us assume that this insulation system has 2 in. of oil and 2 in. of paper insulation. Since the dielectric constant for both paper and oil is 2.0, we can assume that each insulation system can withstand 2500 V/in., giving a total voltage withstand capacity of 10 kV as shown in Figure 1.8.

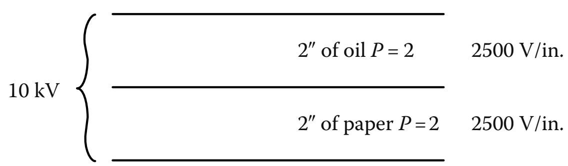


FIGURE 1.8
Insulation system rated for 10 kV.

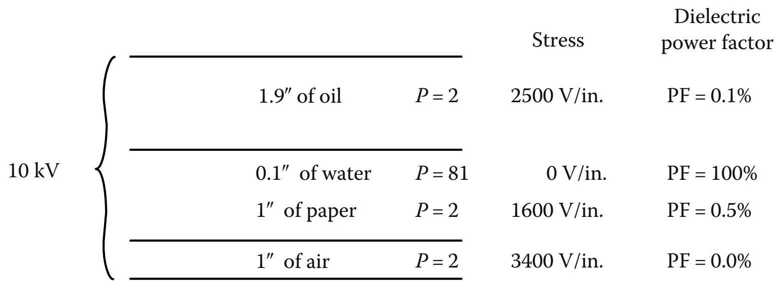


FIGURE 1.9
Insulation system with water and air contamination.

In order to put contamination in this insulation, let us replace one-tenth (1/10) inch of the oil with water and 1 in. of paper insulation with air (i.e., by putting voids in the paper as shown in Figure 1.9). Therefore, with the added contamination, the 10 kV rated insulation system is now rated at 9.750 kV assuming that the air voids do not break down. Since air has a lower dielectric constant, it will take more high-voltage stress than paper as shown in Figure 1.9. In this example, the two failure modes may be described in the following manner:

Failure due to excessive dielectric loss: The contamination of the oil insulation with water increases the dielectric losses in the oil and simultaneously reduces the dielectric strength of the insulation. Because of increased losses in the oil insulation over time, it will become degraded and eventually fail.

Failure due to overpotential stress: This failure mode occurs when air is introduced into the insulation. Air, although a good dielectric at low voltages becomes overstressed at higher voltages. It is assumed, in this example, that the air voids become overstressed at 2500 V and begin ionizing, thus resulting in corona which will eventually deteriorate the paper insulation. In this mode, the reduced thickness of the insulation and the resulting voltage overstress causes the insulation to fail.

1.7 Insulating Materials for Electrical Power Equipment

There are number of materials which are used either separately or as a combination of composite products to form an insulation system for electrical power equipment. The basic materials selected for insulation systems are selected based on their ability to withstand varied electrical, mechanical, and thermal stresses during the life of the equipment. Listed below is a partial summary of the materials and products used for insulating electrical power equipment.

1.7.1 Rigid Laminates Sheet, Rod, and Tube

- Canvas-based phenolic laminate
- Paper-based phenolic laminate
- Glass melamine laminate
- Glass silicone laminate
- Glass epoxy laminate
- Cogetherm mica-based laminate
- Mica epoxy laminate
- Transite HT and NAD-11 high-temperature cement boards

1.7.2 Glass Polyester Products

- Glass polyester sheet
- Glass polyester channels and angles
- Glass polyester stand-off insulators
- Glass polyester rods
- Specialty glass polyester

1.7.3 Flexible Laminates and Films

- Diamond-coated kraft paper
- Vulcanized fiber sheets, rods, and tubes
- Kraft pressboard products
- COPACO rag paper
- Quin-T family of flexible laminates
- Melinex polyester film
- Mylar polyester film
- Dacron–Mylar–Dacron
- Kapton polyimide film
- Nomex aramid paper
- Nomex–Polyester–Nomex
- Rag Mylar and Rag–Mylar–Rag

Over the years organic insulating materials have been replaced with inorganic materials and this progression is still continuing. There are number of organic and inorganic insulating materials that are used in electric power equipment. Although this listing discussed in this section is somewhat long, it is not all encompassing because the choices of available insulating materials are many. The use of the trade names in the listing given here does not represent a particular brand preference but are included for clarity. The characteristics of various insulating materials are discussed as follows.

Cotton: Cotton has been used extensively in electrical insulation because of its low cost, strength, elasticity, flexibility, and adaptability to size requirements and manufacturing process. However, cotton has a tendency to absorb moisture and limited thermal capability. Cotton is always used with varnish or resin impregnation to obtain good dielectric strength and moisture resistance. The use of cotton is restricted to 105°C (Class A insulation system) because temperatures higher than class A cause decomposition of the cotton fibers with resulting embrittlement and loss of mechanical strength.

Cotton fabrics: There are many varieties of treated fabrics that are fundamental Class A insulating materials. Untreated cotton fabrics that have been thoroughly dried are used for oil transformer insulation. These fabrics are quickly impregnated when the transformer is filled with oil, thereby providing excellent physical and dielectric properties. Two most commonly used fabrics are tan-varnish treated cloths and black-varnish treated cloths.

Paper: Many types of paper are used in insulating electrical equipment. These varieties include Japanese tissues, cotton rags, manila (hemp), the kraft (wood pulp), jute, fishpaper (gray cotton rag), fuller board, and the like. Rag and kraft paper often called transformer paper is used to separate windings in a transformer or in applications where there are no sharp edges that might poke through the relatively weak paper. Fishpaper is usually vulcanized and often laminated with Mylar giving it excellent resistance to tear and puncture. The paper–Mylar laminates resist soldering heat better since paper does not melt and the Mylar resist moisture best. Papers made with temperature resistance nylon and/or glass weaves have excellent electrical properties and good temperature resistance. Paper posses similar properties as cotton cloth, but because of its structure it has higher dielectric strength than cotton. The thermal stability and moisture absorption properties of paper are similar to cotton; however, paper does not possess the high mechanical strength of cloth. Untreated paper has little insulating value because of its extreme tendency to absorb moisture.

Asbestos: Recent restriction placed by Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and OSHA has limited the use of the asbestos as an insulating material. It is used in the form of asbestos paper or asbestos tape, asbestos mill board or asbestos lumber for electrical insulating purposes. In such forms, it may contain 10%–20% wood pulp and glue to give it strength. Asbestos is generally heat resistance, but if heated excessively asbestos loses its hygroscopic moisture and therefore becomes brittle. Asbestos absorbs moisture from the surrounding atmosphere which makes it a less effective insulator.

Glass: Glass insulation comes in a wide variety of forms including solid glass, fiber tapes, fiberglass sheets and mats, woven tubing and cloth, and various composites. The most common form of glass used in electrical equipment is fiberglass. Fiberglass is available as fiberglass yarns for insulating materials. Today, fiberglass cloths and tapes are widely used in high-temperature applications. Two types of fiberglass yarns commonly used for electrical insulation are continuous filament and staple fiber yarns. The continuous filament yarns have the appearance of natural silk or linen whereas the staple fiber yarns exhibit a considerable degree of fuzziness similar to wool yarns. Fiberglass has advantages of high thermal endurance, high chemical resistance, high moisture resistance, good tensile strength, and good thermal conductivity when impregnated or coated with varnish or resin. Glass fibers exhibit poor abrasion resistance therefore fibers must be lubricated before they are woven into cloth. Varnish treatment of glass cloths greatly increases the abrasion resistance. Untreated glass cloth is used primarily as a spacing insulation and when the cloth is impregnated and coated with an insulating resin or varnish it becomes an effective dielectric barrier. Among the many uses of fiberglass are covering of wire, binder tapes for coils, and backing for mica tapes. It is also used as ground insulation and insulation for stator coil connections, leads, ring supports, etc. when treated with oleor-resinous and other varnishes. Fiberglass, varnish-treated fiberglass, and nonwoven forms are thermally stable, resistance to solvent depending on the type of varnish used. It is more secure spacer insulation than cotton or paper.

Synthetic textiles and films: Numerous synthetic fiber textiles are in use as electrical insulation. These are either continuous monofilaments of resins, or short fibers made of resins that are spun into threads and woven into fabrics. They have to be coated or impregnated with varnish to become effective dielectric barriers. The thermal ability of these materials lies between cellulose fabrics and glass fabrics and depends on the type of resin coating or impregnating material used more than their own characteristics. Examples of synthetic fiber cloth and mats are Dacron, other polyesters, aromatic nylons, such as Nomex, Kelvar, and others. They have thermal stability, solvent resistance, and lack of fusibility. Several polyester films exhibit excellent electrical and physical properties, such as Mylar which enjoys widespread use in a variety of insulation systems.

Polyester films: They are used at temperatures above 105°C–125°C and have fair solvent resistance. Some specially formulated polyester varieties are used for service up to 180°C. The common uses of polyester films such as Mylar and others are slot liners, layer insulation in transformers, capacitors, and as laminated backing of paper insulation.

Aromatic polyimide (Kapton, Nomex, and others): It is used at temperatures of 180°C–220°C. It has excellent resistance to solvents and has good heat resistance and superb mechanical and electrical properties. Nomex is a Dupont aromatic polyamide with a temperature rating above 220°C and has high voltage breakdown strength.

Polyolefins: Polypropylene and polyethylene are two known polyolefins that are available with ultrahigh molecular grade matching the strength of steel. Polypropylene is used for insulation not to exceed temperatures above 105°C whereas polyethylene film has limited use such as class O insulation system since it softens at temperatures higher than 70°C.

Polycarbonate: Common trade names for it are Lexan and Merlon and are used for insulation system rated at temperatures 105°C and below. It has excellent electrical insulating properties and has good oil resistance but poor solvent resistance.

Polysulfone: This is another thermoplastic that include polyetherimide, polyamide, and polyphenylene with trade names like Noryl, Udel, Vespel, and Torlon. These materials are used at temperatures from 105°C to 130°C and have good oil resistance but not chlorinated solvent resistance.

Polytetrafluoroethylene (Teflon): It is an excellent high-temperature insulation with excellent electrical insulating properties and is used at temperatures of 220°C and higher. Teflon tubing and wire insulation is available in a variety of colors and typically feels slippery. It has good resistance to moisture.

Nylon: Nylon has good resistance to abrasion, chemicals, and high voltages and is often used to fashion electromechanical components. Nylon is extruded and cast and is filled with a variety of other materials to improve weathering, impact resistance, coefficient of friction, and stiffness.

Phenolics: Phenolic laminated sheets are usually brown or black and have excellent mechanical properties. Phenolics are commonly used in the manufacture of switches and similar components because it is easily machined and provides excellent insulation. Phenolic laminates are widely used for terminal boards, connectors, boxes, and components.

Polyvinylcloride (PVC): PVC is perhaps the most common insulating material. Most wiring is insulated with PVC including house wiring. Irradiated PVC has superior strength and resistance to heat. PVC tapes and tubing are also quite common. Electrical and electronic housings are commonly molded from PVC.

Acrylic: Lucite and Plexiglas are trade names for acrylic which has widespread use where toughness and transparency are required.

Beryllium oxide: A hard white ceramic-like material used as an electrical insulator where high thermal conductivity is required. Beryllium oxide is highly toxic in powder form and should never be filed or sanded and consequently has fallen out of common use. Power semiconductor heat sinks can still be found with beryllium oxide spacers for electrical insulation.

Ceramic: Ceramics are used to fabricate insulators, components, and circuit boards. The good electrical insulating properties are complemented by the high thermal conductivity.

Melamine: Melamine laminated with woven glass makes a very hard laminate with good dimensional stability and arc resistance. It is used in combination with mica to form rigid fiber laminates.

Mica: Mica sheets or stove mica is used for electrical insulation where high temperatures are encountered. Two kinds of mica, Muscovite (white or India mica) and phlogopite (amber mica) are generally used for insulating purposes. Mica and reconstituted mica paper are inorganic and infusible. Mica has high dielectric strength, high insulation resistance, low dielectric loss, good mechanical strength, good dielectric constant (specific inductive capacity), and good heat conductivity. Puncture resistance is good but the edges of the mica should be flush against a flat surface to prevent flaking. Mica finds uses in composite tapes and sheets which are useful up to 600°C with excellent corona resistance. Sheets and rods of mica bonded with glass can tolerate extreme temperatures, radiation, high voltage, and moisture. It is also available as mica paper where tiny mica flakes are made into paper like structure and reinforced with fiber, glass, or polyester.

Rigid fiber laminates: They are made of layers of cloth (glass, cotton, polyester, etc.) or paper with resin (phenolic, melamine, polyester, and epoxy) impregnation. They are supplied as thermosetting, thermoforming, and postforming materials used as insulators.

Micarta: It is rigid fiber laminate made of cloth, paper, or wood saturated with either a synthetic or organic resin, and then compressed under heat. This process makes the resin permanently hard and therefore Micarta becomes impermeable to heat, pressure, and solvents. Originally, Micarta was developed as an insulator but today it has many applications. Micarta is mechanically strong, rigid, and nonmagnetic. It is less susceptible to moisture and most acids. Micarta is used for insulating washers, controller panels and cams, slot wedges, brush rigging, bus bar supports, insulating barriers, and transformer insulation.

Synthetic resins: Synthetic resins are used extensively in varnish manufacture. The polyester and epoxy types are representative of heat hardening resins. Varnishes containing such resins are thermosetting and will cure by heat alone and do not require oxygen. Other synthetic resins are phenolic resins suitable for molding and bonding; alkyd type resins are being substituted for the old black varnishes and compounds; melamine resins are used for making laminates and molded compounds; and vinyl resins are used in the compounding of plastics and rubber substitutes.

Varnish: Insulating varnishes are of great importance in the maintenance of electrical equipment and apparatus. An insulating varnish is a chemical compound of synthetic resins or varnish gums and drying oils, having high dielectric strength and other properties that protect electrical equipment. Varnishes provide important insulating and protective functions, which are

- Protect the insulation and equipment against moisture
- Electrically and thermally enhance other insulating materials
- Add mechanical strength to other components of the insulation
- Minimize the accumulation of dust and contaminants, and improve heat dissipation by filling voids
- Enhance and increase the life of insulating materials

Adhesive-coated tapes: Many of the insulating films and fabrics described above can be obtained and used with adhesive backing that are usually thermoset or heat curable.

Rubber: Natural or Buna S rubber is not normally used for insulation these days because it is affected by ozone and has poor thermal stability. On the other hand, butyl and ethylene propylene rubbers are ozone resistance and more thermally stable. These are used for molded parts, cable insulation, and lead insulation in motors.

Silicone rubber: A variety of silicone foam rubbers are available as an insulating material. Silicone rubbers exhibit characteristics of superb chemical resistance, high-temperature performance, good thermal and electrical resistance, long-term resiliency, and easy fabrication. Liquid silicone rubbers are available in electrical grades for conformal coating, potting, and gluing. Silicone rubbers have excellent thermal stability and ozone resistance, but only fair mechanical strength and abrasion resistance.

Silicone/fiberglass: Glass cloth impregnated with a silicone resin binder makes an excellent laminate with good dielectric loss when dry.

1.7.4 Insulation Temperature Ratings

An insulation system is an assembly of insulating materials in association with the conductors and supporting structural parts of an electrical equipment and apparatus. Insulation systems for electrical equipment may be classified as solid, liquid, air and vacuum, and gases. The liquid insulation system comprise of mineral oil, silicone, and other less-flammable fluids. The gas that is primarily used for electrical insulation is SF_6 gas known as sulfur hexafluoride gas. The liquids and gases used as insulating medium in electrical system and equipment are covered in Chapter 4. The air and vacuum insulation system has been used from the very beginning and its characteristics are well documented and understood. The ability of insulating materials or an insulation system to perform its intended function is impacted by other aging factors. The major aging factors are electrical stresses, mechanical stresses, environmental stresses, and thermal stresses. Mechanical stresses imposed upon the system and its supporting structure by vibration and differential thermal expansion may become of increasing importance as the size of the apparatus increases. Electrical stresses will be more significant with high-voltage

TABLE 1.2
Thermal Classification of Electrical Insulating Systems

Thermal Classification	Class Temperature (°C)
A	105
E	120
B	130
F	155
H	180
N	200
R	220
S	250
C	>250

Source: From IEEE Standard 1-2000.

apparatus or with equipment exposed to voltage transients. Environmental stresses will have an impact depending on the presence of moisture, dirt, chemicals, radiation, or other contaminants. Thermal stresses depend upon environmental conditions (high ambient), loading, and ability to dissipate heat. All such factors should be taken into account when selecting insulating materials and/or insulation systems. To help the user, IEEE Standard 1-2001, "IEEE recommended practice—General principles for temperature limits in the rating of electrical equipment and for the evaluation of electrical insulation," has established the temperature rating for solid insulation systems of electrical equipment and apparatus. The IEEE Standard 1-2001 takes into account these factors in establishing the standards of temperature limits for particular classes of apparatus. Thus, for temperature rating purposes insulation systems are divided into classes according to the thermal endurance of the system.

According to IEEE Standard 1-2000, insulation system classes may be designated by letters and may be defined as assemblies of electrical insulating materials in association with equipment parts. These systems may be assigned temperature rating based on service experience or on an accepted test procedure that can demonstrate an equivalent life expectancy. The thermal classification of electrical insulating systems established by IEEE Standard 1-2000 is given in Table 1.2.

1.8 Causes of Insulation Degradation and Failure Modes of Electrical Equipment

The electrical insulation of equipment is usually made up of many different components selected to withstand the widely different electrical, mechanical, thermal, and environmental stresses occurring in different parts of the structure. The level of maintenance required for electrical equipment will depend on the effectiveness of the physical support for the insulation, the severity of the forces acting on it and the insulating materials themselves, and the service environment. Therefore, the length of useful life of the insulation depends on the arrangement of individual components, their interactions upon one another, contribution of each component to the electrical and mechanical integrity of the system, and the process used in manufacturing the equipment. Historically, functional evaluation of insulation was based primarily on thermal stresses. However, with many types of equipment, other aging stresses or factors, such as mechanical, electrical, and environmental may be dominant and significantly influence service life. The following are the major causes of insulation degradation and eventual failure.

Mechanical stress: Mechanical stress can be caused by power frequency transient currents such as when switching on power equipment, such as a motor or a transformer, that give rise to transient power frequency currents. In the case of a motor, this transient current may be as high as six times the normal frequency current. In the case of a transformer, the power frequency current may be as high as 10–12 times the normal current. The magnetically induced mechanical forces in the equipment are the square of the transient current, therefore a motor experiences mechanical forces 36 or more times and a transformer experiences 100 or more times stronger than normal service. If these transient occur frequently, such as frequent starting of motors or energizing of transformers and these forces cannot be withstood it would eventually lead to mechanical damage. Also, insulation can be damaged by mechanical vibration and expansion and contraction at power frequency operation. For example, when current is applied, the end turns of motor windings are twisted. If the twisting force is strong enough to break the bond of insulating varnish, the turns of magnetic wire will wear against each other and cause a turn-to-turn short. Once the turns are shorted, localized heating is caused by the current induced onto the closed loop. This heat rapidly degrades the surrounding insulation and over time destroys the groundwall insulation. A similar example may be applied to a transformer inrush current or through fault currents that can begin as mechanical damage in the turns and eventually manifest as winding faults.

Temperature hot spots: The value of temperature coefficient of resistance of an insulating material is negative and relatively large. Therefore, even a small increase in temperature will cause a large decrease in the insulation resistance. The current distribution over a given insulation is not uniform, therefore the weak part of the insulation carries more current and heated more than other parts, as long as the insulation or adjacent structures can conduct the heat away as fast as it is generated, the temperature will remain stable. However, if the heat is not dissipated as fast as it is generated the weaker spots in the insulation will become increasingly hotter until thermal breakdown occurs.

Environmental (moisture, chemicals, dirt, and oils): The environmental factors that degrade insulation over time are moisture, dirt, dust, oils, acids, and alkalies. Moisture is conductive because it contains impurities. When insulation absorbs or is laden with moisture it decreases the insulation resistance. The moisture penetrates the cracks and pores of the insulation, especially older insulation, and provides low resistance paths for creepage currents and potential sources of dielectric failure. Chemical fumes such as acids and alkalies often found in the industrial environment directly attack insulation and permanently lower its insulation resistance. Similarly, oil films will cover the internal surfaces of insulation of a machine. The oil may come from the environment or a leaking bearing seal. It will tend to lower the insulation resistance, reduce the ability to dissipate heat, and promote thermal aging and eventual failure. Dirt and dust in combination with moisture can become conductive and therefore cause creepage currents and insulation degradation as well as reduce the ability of the insulation to dissipate heat. The life of equipment is dependent to a considerable extent upon the degree of exclusion of oxygen, moisture, dirt, and chemicals from the interior of the insulating structure. At a given temperature, therefore, the life of equipment may be longer if the insulation is suitably protected than if it were freely exposed to industrial atmospheres.

Electrical stresses (corona, surges, and partial discharges): Electrical equipment is always subjected to internally generated or external voltage and current surges. A physical rupture of insulation with the destruction of molecular bonds might occur during a voltage surge due to switching of a large inductive load or lightning. This transitory overpotential stresses the molecular structure of the insulating material causing ionization and failure of the insulating material itself. Corona is defined as the form of electrical discharge that occurs when the critical (corona inception) voltage is reached, thus causing air to breakdown. Corona by itself is not harmful to insulation however corona produces ozone which accelerates the oxidation of the organic materials of insulation. Further, the nitrogen oxides produced by the ionization of air form acids when combined with moisture also degrade the insulation. The voids in the cable-extruded insulation once electrified begin to conduct and grow larger. This phenomenon is known as partial discharge in the cable insulation and over time makes the void to grow larger and eventually cause cable to fail. Electrical stresses will be more significant with high-voltage apparatus or with equipment exposed to voltage transients.

Thermal aging: The temperature at which an insulation operates determines its useful life. Thermal stress is the single most recognized cause of insulation degradation. Insulation does not always fail when reaching some critical temperature, but by gradual mechanical deterioration with time at an elevated temperature. The time–temperature relationship determines the rate at which the mechanical strength of organic material decreases. Thereafter, electrical failure may occur because of physical disintegration of the insulating materials. Typical thermal aging mechanisms include

(a) loss of volatile constituents, (b) oxidation that can lead to molecular cross-linking and embrittlement, (c) hydrolytic degradation in which moisture reacts with the insulation under the influence of heat, pressure, and other factors to cause molecular deterioration, and (d) chemical breakdown of constituents with formation of products that act to degrade the material further, such as hydrochloric acid. The electrical and mechanical properties of insulating materials and insulation systems may be influenced in different ways and to different degrees as a function of temperature and with thermal aging. Thermal aging progressively decreases elongation to rupture so that embrittlement finally leads to cracking and that may contribute to electrical failure. Thus, how long insulation is going to last depends not only upon the materials used, but also upon the effectiveness of the physical support for the insulation and the severity of the forces tending to disrupt it. Even though portions of insulation structures may have become embrittled under the influence of high temperature, successful operation of the equipment may continue for years if the insulation is not disturbed. Because of the effect of mechanical stress, the forces of thermal expansion and contraction may impose temperature limitations on large equipment even though higher temperature limits proved satisfactory in small equipment when similar insulating materials were used. The rate of physical deterioration of insulation under thermal aging increases rapidly with an increase in temperature. The oxidation of the insulating materials is a chemical reaction in which the rate of reaction is given by Arrhenius law. In his paper, "Electrical insulation deterioration treated as a chemical rate phenomenon," *AIEE Transaction*, 67 (Part 1) (1948) 113–122, T.W. Dakin realized the relationship between the thermal aging phenomenon and the Arrhenius law of chemical reaction rates. The life of insulation is related to temperature and can be expressed by

$$L_{\mathrm{H}} = A\mathrm{e}^{-E/RT}$$

where

L_{H} is life in hours (or the specific reaction rate)
A is the frequency of molecular encounters
E is the activation energy (constant for a given reaction)
R is the universal gas constant
T is the absolute temperature (K)

The above equation can be simplified as

$$L_{\mathrm{H}} = A\mathrm{e}^{B/T}$$

where A and B are constants.

An approximation of the above equation states that life of insulation will be reduced by half for every 10°C rise in temperature. From the above equation, it is apparent that higher the temperature, the shorter the expected life of the insulation.

1.8.1 Failure Modes—Electrical Power Equipment

Failures can occur in any electrical equipment at any time. The major power equipment considered for discussion are transformers, switchgear breakers, switchgear buses, electromechanical relays, cables, and rotating machines. The insulation systems makeup of the above referenced equipment contains dielectric materials which are the key components for gauging its reliability. A failure in insulation, or an insulation system, is failure of the power equipment. Therefore, we will briefly review the insulation systems of major electrical equipment and apparatus for an understanding why and how power equipment fails. A better understanding of the failure modes and effects will help broaden the understanding in the care and servicing of electrical power equipment.

1.8.1.1 Transformers

Major components that make up a transformer are primary winding, secondary winding, magnetic iron core, coolant (air, gas, oil, or synthetic fluid), bushings, and tank. The insulating materials used in the makeup of transformer insulation system are enameled conductors (wire), kraft paper, glass, thermoplastic insulating tape, presswood, glass fabric, wood, resins, porcelain, cements, polymer coatings, gasket materials, internal paints, and mineral oil or synthetic fluid. The iron core with its clamping structure, the primary and secondary windings with their clamping arrangement, and leads and tapping from windings together with their supporting structure complete the construction components of a transformer. Insulating materials used in the manufacturing of bushing are porcelain, glass, thermosetting cast resins, paper tape, and oil. The paper used in bushing is usually oil-impregnated paper, resin-impregnated paper, or resin-bonded paper. The feed-through lead conductor with its insulation system is enclosed in porcelain or glass housing. Bushings are constructed as condenser bushing or noncondenser bushing (see Section 3.6.2 for more detail). The condenser bushings are used in transformers with primary voltage rating above 50 kV whereas the noncondenser type bushings are used below 50 kV applications.

Transformer failures, while infrequent, are usually the culmination of a series of events: unusual loading, impressed surges (from protective circuitry failure or local switching), or improper maintenance. Nearly always, incipient failures can be determined by testing, and PM performed to correct the condition. If, however, the transformer does fault, other connected or adjacent equipment is protected by the sensing elements and circuit breakers. Any fluid spill or fire activates the fire extinguishing system if installed. There is very little probability that even a major transformer fault will mechanically damage any equipment other than itself. The mechanical damage will largely be confined to nearby piping, support structures, or electrical connections. The possible spill of flaming transformer oil into a trench carrying either oil-filled cables, hydrogen supply lines, or the transformer oil-filtering piping could easily involve areas and elements of

TABLE 1.3

Causes of Transformer Failures

Cause of Failure	% Failures (1998 study)
Insulation failure	13.0
Design/materials/ workmanship	2.9
All others	24.2
Overloading	2.4
Line surge/thru faults	21.5
Improper maintenance/ operation	11.3
Loose connection	6.0
Lightning	12.4
Moisture	6.3

Source: From Hartford Steam Boiler Insurance Company's article-Analysis of transformer failures, Part 2-causes, prevention and maximum service life, William H. Bartley.

equipment not electrical in nature. There is, of course, a small chance that projectiles from the bushings could impact on ceramic supports or feed through of other nearby equipment and contribute to their failure. If the transformer fault involves arcing between the high- and low-voltage windings, the physical damage resulting from the fault may well extend into the low-voltage bus work and connections.

Table 1.3 displays results of Harford Steam Boiler Insurance Company (HSB) 1998 study on the causes of transformer failures. Table 1.4 displays the results of HSB 2003 study on distribution of transformer failures. For the causes of failures reported line surge/through faults are the number one cause for all types of failures. Insulation failure was the second leading cause of transformer failures and these failures were attributed to defective installation,

TABLE 1.4

Distribution of Failures by Age of Transformers rated at 25 MVA and above

Age at Failure	Number of Failure
0–5 years	9
6–10 years	6
11–15 years	9
16–20 years	9
21–25 years	10
Over 25 years	16
Age unknown	35

Source: From Hartford Steam Boiler Insurance Company's transformer data for the period 1997 through 2001.

insulation deterioration, and short circuits. For failures due to aging, the winding insulation looses mechanical and dielectric withstand strength over time and therefore is weakened to the point where it can no longer sustain the high radial and compressive forces induced by a line surge, or an internal or through fault. Also, as the load increases due to system expansion, the operating stresses increase in a transformer.

Large power transformers used in the medium-voltage electrical distribution system are typically of liquid-immersed type. The primary and secondary coils are immersed in oil, which acts to insulate as well as cool the coils. The coils are wrapped on an iron core, which is enclosed in a tank and filled with oil. A dedicated cooling system consisting of finned radiators with temperature-controlled cooling fans will be provided to remove heat from the internals. In addition, some cooling systems include one or more circulating pumps to increase the flow of oil through the heat exchanger and provide more efficient core cooling. The insulating oil is circulated through the transformer tank and heat is rejected via the heat exchanger. The power for the circulating pumps and cooling fans is typically 480 V AC. Smaller power transformers, such as those found in load center switchgear, may be either oil-filled or dry-type units. Dry-type transformers may be air-cooled with natural circulation alone, or more typically, forced-air-cooled with temperature-controlled cooling fans. Power connections to electrical buses and cables are routed through insulated bushings to the interior transformer windings.

Age-related degradation of transformers is primarily associated with the coils and the electrical connections. Degradation of the coils can occur due to continual exposure to elevated temperature, or degradation of the insulating oil. When the oil starts to degrade, gas is generated, which will accumulate inside the transformer tank. Checking for gas content in the oil is one method of transformer condition monitoring. Moisture intrusion is also a concern since entrained moisture can cause the formation of bubbles in the insulating oil during transformer operation. Formation of bubbles can degrade the performance of the transformer. Some examples of failure causes of power transformers are the following:

- Short circuit to ground
- Turn-to-turn short
- Primary to secondary short
- External oil leakage
- Degraded or inoperable cooling system (reduces transformer million volt amperes (MVA) rating)

To develop and implement a rigorous PM program, an understanding of transformer failure modes is necessary. The transformers can fail from any combination of electrical, mechanical, and thermal factors. Actual transformer failures as listed above involve breakdown of the insulation system which may result from any of the factors (failure modes) just mentioned above. Table 1.5 summarizes the stressors, failure modes and effects of power transformers.

TABLE 1.5

Failure Modes, Stressors, and Effects of Transformers

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Mode	Effects
Enclosure	Structural steel	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
		Mechanical stress	Oxidation	Dirt/moisture intrusion
			Cracking of welds	Oil leakage
			Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
Coils	Cellulosic insulation	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement/cracking of insulation	Loss of dielectric integrity
	Fiberglass	Ohmic heating	Corrosion/oxidation of wire	Turn-to-turn shorts
	Epoxies	Moisture/humidity	Wear of insulation	Short circuit to ground
	Varnish	Electromagnetic cycling		
	Copper wire	Electrical transients		
Core	Iron	Humidity/moisture	Corrosion	Degraded operation of transformer
		Electromagnetic cycling	Oxidation	
		Electrical transients	Delamination	
Electrical connections	Copper, aluminum, phenolic, ceramic insulators	Elevated temperature	Corrosion	Degraded transformer operation

		Ohmic heating	Oxidation	Fault to ground
		Moisture/humidity	Cracking of welds and insulators	Loss of transformer function
		Vibration	Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
			Loosening of parts	
Insulating oil	Mineral oil, synthetic transformer oil (silicone and others)	Moisture/humidity	Oxidation/contamination of oil	Loss of dielectric strength
		Dirt/contamination	Degradation of insulating oil properties	Loss of cooling properties
			Sludge formation in tank	Generation of gas in oil
			Moisture in oil	Degraded due to moisture
Terminals	Aluminum, copper conductors, porcelain insulators	Moisture/humidity	Oxidation/corrosion	Arcing
		Dirt/contamination	Cracking/mechanical damage to insulators	Fault to ground
		Vibration/mechanical stress		
Tap changer	Aluminum, copper, porcelain insulators, phenolic	Moisture/humidity	Oxidation/corrosion of the conductors	Arcing
		Dirt/contamination	Cracking/mechanical damage to insulators	Fault to ground
		Vibration/mechanical stress		

Electrically induced failures: These involve transient or sustained overvoltage conditions, lightning and switching surges, partial discharges, and static electrification. The partial discharges may be caused by poor insulation system design, by manufacturing defects or by contamination of the insulation system (both oil and solid insulation).

Mechanically induced failures: A mechanically induced failure is due to deforming of a transformer's windings that eventually results in the abrasion or rupturing of its paper insulation. Transformer winding deformation happens in either during shipping or during magnetically induced electromechanical forces. When a transformer experiences an internal or heavy through fault, the windings are subjected to electromechanical forces that are beyond their design capability. When this happens, it can cause hoop (inward radial) buckling of the innermost windings, conductor tipping, conductor telescoping, spiral tightening, end ring crushing, and/or failure of the coil clamping system.

Thermally induced failures: Thermal degradation causes the paper insulation of the windings to loose its physical strength to the point where it can no longer withstand the vibration and mechanical movement that occur inside a transformer. The thermally induced failures are due to overloading beyond its design capability for long period of time, failure of the cooling system to dissipate heat, blockage of axial oil duct spaces, operating the transformer in an overexcited condition, and/or excessive ambient temperature conditions. Refer to Section 5.7.3.7 for more details on causes of transformer failures.

An anatomy of a transformer failure is illustrated in Figure 1.10 based on a root cause analysis of a station service transformer that failed in service catastrophically. The transformer was about 7 years old when it failed as a result of through fault because it had an incipient turn-to-turn fault in one of the phase winding. Because of lack of preventive and/or predictive maintenance testing over the 7 years, the fault went undetected until one day the transformer failed with dire consequences. As illustrated in Figure 1.10a, the original fault was a minor fault and was inconsequential to normal operation of the transformer. However, as the current dramatically increased under a through fault condition, the minor fault developed into a major fault (Figure 1.10b and c).

1.8.1.2 Switchgear and Circuit Breakers

The insulating materials used for bus bar insulation and mechanical support in switchgear and circuit breakers are ceramics, epoxy resins, epoxy resin bonded glass fiber, polyester resins, vulcanized fiber, and synthetic resins bonded paper. In low-voltage breakers, synthetic resin moldings are used as insulating materials for the metallic parts. The modern practice is to use thermosetting plastics for bus bar mounting in switchgear to better withstand electromechanical and electrodynamic forces arising out of system faults. The thermosetting compounds are known as dough molding compounds (DMCs) and sheet molding compounds (SMCs). These compounds are basically made up of fiber- or glass-reinforced thermosetting plastics that

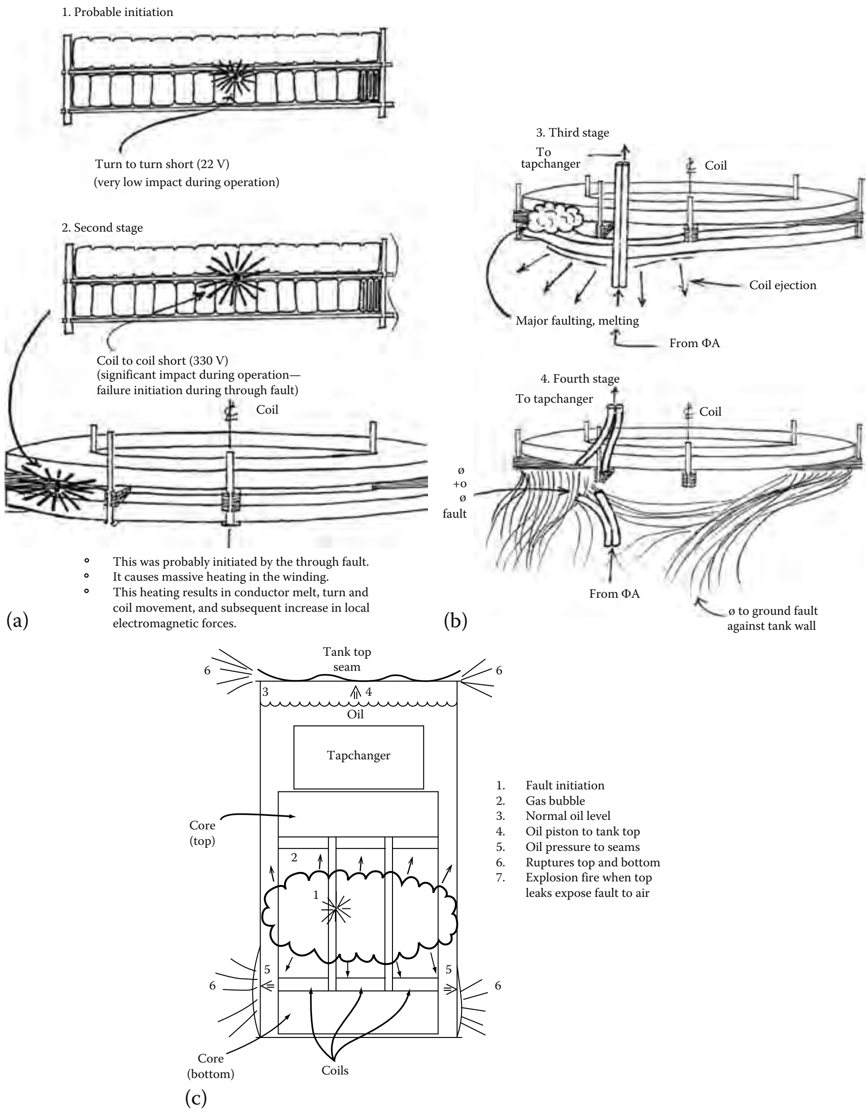


FIGURE 1.10
Anatomy of a failed transformer: (a) stages 1 and 2, (b) stages 3 and 4, and (c) final stage—transformer engulfed in fire.

posses good physical and thermal stability, high mechanical strength, and excellent electrical properties. These compounds have essentially replaced the older insulating materials such as bakelite (phenol formaldehyde) and veneered impregnated wood used in switchgear applications.

The SF_6 gas, air, vacuum, and oil are used as arc-quenching medium in circuit breakers. The mechanisms vary depending on voltage rating, the type, and vintage of circuit breakers. For breakers, the reliability concerns extend to not only insulation but also to the correct functioning of the operating mechanism, protective devices, and control that are integral to the breaker. Unlike transformers that are a quiescent element, switchgear breakers are active elements that can fail by acting spuriously or by not functioning (either to open or close) upon command. These incorrect functions can create problems in the connected circuits that are quite different from those that result directly from any fire, explosion, or spread of possibly toxic insulating fluids. If a breaker fails to clear upon signal or becomes overloaded for any reason, then the circuit will be subjected to further damage until an upstream breaker (usually larger and set at a higher current rating) can sense and clear the overload. If, on the other hand, a breaker fails to close, this normally means that all circuits that receive power from this feed point cannot perform their intended functions. Fortunately, most breakers are located in enclosed segregated areas, which provide containment and fire protection capabilities, as well as in their own cabinets, which help limit any physical damage to immediately adjacent equipment. However, switchgear fires can be catastrophic and incidents have occurred where complete line up of switchgear has burned down due to breaker failing to clear a fault. An example of switchgear burndown is shown in Figure 1.11.

Circuit breakers in the medium-voltage electrical system are typically of the metal-clad type, and are commonly part of a switchgear assembly. The switchgear assembly comprises of the following:

- Circuit breakers
- Bus bars
- Relays and control power

FIGURE 1.11
Switchgear fire damage resulting from a breaker failing to clear a fault.

The circuit breakers are constructed of a number of different mechanical and electrical subsystems, all of which are contained in a metal enclosure. Typically, switchgear and circuit breakers are located in a mild environment such as a switchgear room therefore, they would not be exposed to harsh environment. However, space heaters are always installed in circuit breaker cubicles to prevent moisture and condensation when it is not carrying load. The predominant stressors are expected to be operational stressors, such as mechanical wear of the moving parts and electrical cycling, as well as exposure to contaminants such as dust and dirt. Operation of the circuit breakers requires a number of mechanical, as well as electrical systems. Mechanical linkages, together with springs and latches are used to open and close the breaker. Repeated operation of the breaker can lead to wear of these components over time. Electrical transients can generate substantial electromagnetic forces that act on circuit breaker components and supports. Powerful vibrations are produced when a circuit breaker mechanism opens to interrupt an electrical arc. This can result in misalignment, bending, twisting, binding, or even breakage of the various mechanical components resulting in degraded performance or loss of function. Electrical cycling of the power path in the breaker can also lead to degradation of the various electrical components, such as the contacts and arc extinguishing components. When the contacts arc during breaker operation, small amounts of metal are vaporized and deposited on the arc chutes. As these deposits build up over time, they can increase the conductivity of the chutes and diminish their ability to extinguish the arcs. Another electrical system that can lead to breaker failure is the control power system. Typically, 125 V DC control power is used for a line up of switchgear breakers for tripping, closing, and to operate the peripheral equipment such as the spring charging motor. The closing and peripheral control power circuit normally includes a fuse. Degradation of this circuit, as well as the fuse and fuse holder can lead to loss of control power to the breaker and, thus, loss of breaker function. Failure modes for medium-voltage circuit breakers are the following:

- Failure to close
- Failure to open
- Spurious opening
- Spurious closure
- Failure to operate as required
- Failure to recharge closing spring
- Slow operation
- Short circuit to ground
- Out of calibration
- Intermittent operation

In a recent study of medium- and low-voltage circuit breakers used in nuclear power plants world wide, 104 events were identified with respect to failure

TABLE 1.6

Overview of Affected Components of the Breaker

Pieces/Parts	Number of Events
Bearing	1
Circuit board/command circuit (diodes)	1
Closing mechanism (in general)	9
Coil (undervoltage coil, shunt coil, trip coil)	11
Contacts	5
Digital trip unit	1
Enclosure (case, frame, casket)	2
Fuse	2
Latching mechanism	21
Limit switches	3
Lockout/interlock mechanism	1
Opening mechanism (in general)/trip device	10
Protection systems (instrumentation: sensors)	9
Relays	12
Spring	3
Switch (cell, cutoff)	3
Timer	1
Wires	4
Other (breaker in general)	1
Other (other component)	4
Total	104

modes as shown in Table 1.6. The following failure symptom categories were identified as being important:

- Movement of the breaker mechanism is impeded by insufficient or inadequate lubrication
- Movement of the breaker mechanism is impeded by broken, bent, or loose parts, friction, binding, resulting from excessive stress, wear, or faulty installation
- Operation of the breaker is impeded by incorrect adjustment of set points/limit switches
- Various electrical problems caused, e.g., by defective coils, defective command circuits, wiring faults, loose wires, poor contacts, and blown fuses
- Others (e.g., dirt, pollution, and corrosion)

As result of this investigation two principal categories of failure causes were identified. They are

Deficiencies in operation: This group comprises all events that involve human errors, expressed by a human error related root cause.

Three failure cause categories were identified as being important in this group:

- Deficient procedures for maintenance and/or testing
- Insufficient attention to aging of piece parts
- Operator performance error during maintenance/test activities

Deficiencies in design, construction, and manufacturing: This group comprises all events with hardware related root causes. Two failure cause categories were defined for this group as being important:

- Deficiency in design of hardware
- Deficiency in construction or manufacturing of hardware

Many breakers sit in open or closed position for long periods of time without having to change their state. Therefore, it is difficult to assess whether a breaker is trouble free and will respond correctly when called upon to perform its intended function. It is imperative that a clear understanding exists on how and what fails within a circuit breaker. Once the failure modes are identified then a method can be developed that can detect these failures modes before an actual failure occurs. The level of monitoring (maintenance and testing) for a particular type of circuit breaker is dependent on the circuit breaker age, type, application, and the risks associated with the loss of function of the circuit breaker including its associated power or protection and control support components (Table 1.7). The circuit breaker failure modes are discussed as follows:

Insufficient or inadequate lubrication: Movement of the breaker mechanism is impeded by lack of lubrication, more than half of them affecting the latching mechanism. This suggests that improvements in the maintenance practices should be concentrated upon checking the status of lubrication more regularly.

Mechanical wear: Movement of the breaker mechanism is impeded by wear, broken, bent, or loose parts, friction, binding, resulting from excessive stress, or faulty installation. Mechanical wear is the dominant failure mechanism in this failure symptom/manifestation category. Wear mostly affected the latching mechanism, coils, and relays. Besides deficient maintenance/test procedures and practices, insufficient awareness of aging of breaker piece parts also contributes significantly to this category.

Various electrical problems: This failure cause could be defective coils and command circuits, wiring faults, loose wires, blown fuses, and poor contacts. Defective coils and defective command circuits are the dominant failure mechanisms in this category. The events are mostly caused by deficiencies in design, construction, and manufacturing.

TABLE 1.7

Failure Modes, Stressors, and Effects of Circuit Breakers

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Modes	Effects
Enclosure	Painted sheet steel	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
		Mechanical stress	Oxidation	Dirt/moisture intrusion into internal components
			Cracking of welds	
			Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
Frame	Painted or electroplated steel	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
		Mechanical stress	Oxidation	Misalignment/improper operation of supported subcomponents
			Cracking of welds	
			Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
Mechanical components				
Closing/latching mechanisms	Cast bronze and steel	Mechanical stress due to cycling	Aging/cyclic fatigue	Misalignment/improper operation of linkage
Racking assembly			Wear/loosening	Breaker failure to operate
Springs			Weld cracking	
			Bending/twisting	
			Binding/sticking	
Mechanism lubricants	Molybdenum disulfide or petroleum-based grease	Elevated temperature	Dry out of lubricant	Breaker failure to operate
		Frictional heating	Loss of lubrication	
Contacts	Silver alloy or copper base	Electrical overload	Pitting	Increased operating temperature due to high resistance

		Moisture/humidity	Corrosion/oxidation	Improper operation of breaker due to misalignment of contacts
		Vibration	Chatter-induced damage	Loss of breaker function
		Mechanical stress	Bending/twisting of linkage	
		Electrical arcing and cycling		
Insulation along power path	Polyester, glass fiber-filled epoxy resin, or phenolic	Electrical arcing	Embrittlement/cracking	Loss of insulating properties
		Elevated temperature	Deposition of conducting material	Loss of ability to extinguish arc
		Moisture/humidity		
Electrical control circuits				
Circuit cards	Polymer insulation, copper wire, fuses, solid-state electronics	Electrical cycling	Embrittlement/cracking of wire insulation	Loss of control power to the breaker
Resistors		Electrical overload	Degradation of fuses	Loss of breaker function
Relays		Elevated temperature		Failure to recharge closing spring
Insulators		Moisture/humidity		
Bistable/switches				
Fuses				
Electrical stab connectors	Bronze, copper	Electrical cycling	Corrosion/oxidation	Increased operating temperature due to high resistance
		Electrical overload	Loosening	Improper operation of breaker due to misalignment of connectors
		Moisture/humidity	Bending/twisting of connectors	Loss of function of breaker
		Vibration		
		Mechanical stress due to repeated removal/insertion		

Fails to open: The breaker does not open the circuit when commanded manually or by automatic signal or by protective device. The failure cause probably could be inadequate lubrication of the trip latch or trip mechanism, control circuit failure, open and shorted coil, mechanism linkage failure between operating mechanism and interrupters, trip latch surface wear, deteriorated bearings, deformation of trip latch flat surfaces, or external circuit failure including wiring and battery.

Opens but fails to interrupt circuit: The breaker opens but is unable to interrupt the current and/or open contacts. For vacuum type breakers, the cause could be loss of vacuum in the vacuum bottle. For stored energy type breakers, the cause could be failure of arc chutes, puffer failure, or mechanical failure. For oil type breakers, it could be contaminated or bad oil. For SF_6 breakers, it may be low gas pressure or density. It could be altogether misapplication of the breaker. In the case of when the breaker fails to maintain the required dielectric isolation of contacts after opening operation, the failure cause could be the voltage exceeds the circuit breaker capability, lightning, loss of gas pressure, loss of vacuum, or the mechanism did not travel complete distance.

Nuisance tripping: In this case, the breaker trips unintentionally and interrupts the circuit. The failure cause could be trip latch not secure, ground on the trip circuit, stray current in the trip circuit, inadequate protective relay settings, or relay malfunction.

Fails to close: The breaker does not close the circuit to conduct current when commanded manually or by automatic signal or by protective device. The failure cause could be defective closing coil or solenoid, loss of stored energy, inappropriate lubrication, control circuit failure, contacts burned away, mechanical linkage to contacts broken, or loss of overtravel full contact closing.

Degraded or lack of dielectric: The breaker does not have sufficient insulation for the circuit either for three-phase or line-to-ground voltage. The failure cause could be loss of or degraded dielectric medium, such as oil, moisture in gas, vacuum, wear generated particles in interrupter, lightning, flashover due to system transient, damage to the insulation of the breaker, excessive overvoltage, or water/moisture infiltration.

1.8.1.3 Relays

The failure modes of electromechanical and induction type relays are addressed here. Relays parts include both electrical parts, in the form of coils, connectors, and contacts, as well as mechanical parts, such as contact carriers, linkages, and supports. Wear of both the electrical and mechanical parts can occur due to repeated cycling of the relay. Degradation to the mechanical parts can result in misalignment, bending, or twisting of the parts. Degradation of the electrical components can include shorting of the coils or pitting of the contacts. This degradation may result in degraded relay performance or complete loss of function. Switchgear relays are often mounted in switchgear assembly cabinet doors along with other electrical components. The heat generated from the components, combined with the effects of being in a confined space can often lead to temperatures that are significantly higher than ambient. Therefore, even though the relays may not be in a harsh location, a significant stressor for these components is elevated temperature. Also, relays that are constantly energized will experience an increased level of thermal degradation of temperature-sensitive materials. The coil insulation is the primary concern for degradation due to elevated temperature. Continual cycling of relays can result in loosening of parts or electrical connections, or weakening of springs. If electrical connections become loose, this can lead to increased resistance and higher operating temperatures. Failure modes for relays are

- Failure to close
- Failure to open
- Spurious signal
- Failure to operate as required
- Out of calibration

Table 1.8 summarizes the failure modes and characteristics of switchgear relays.

1.8.1.4 Switchgear Buses

Electrical buses are an integral part of the medium-voltage switchgear and are used as a connection point to distribute electric power to various parts of the facility. A bus consists of metallic bus bars which are energized at the rated nominal system voltage level. The bus bars are usually made of solid copper metal bar that are silver and/or zinc plated, metal tubing, or flexible cable and are supported by insulators. Depending on the voltage and current levels at which they will operate, the bus bars may be wrapped in insulation or enclosed is a separate duct. Cable leads are attached to the bus to connect the various loads to be supplied. Aging stressors that may cause degradation of electrical buses primarily include exposure to moist or humid air, which can lead to corrosion of the metallic components, as well as exposure to high-voltage arcing, which can degrade the various insulators used to support and isolate the bus bars. Vibration and thermal cycling can also lead to loosening of connections. Electrical transients can produce substantial electromagnetic forces that can crack, damage, or displace bus support insulators, connections, and associated hardware to secure these supports. Some examples of failure causes for electrical buses are listed below. Table 1.9 summarizes the aging characteristics of electrical buses.

- Short to ground
- Phase-to-phase short
- Corona and tracking

TABLE 1.8

Failure Modes, Stressors, and Effects of Medium-Voltage Switchgear Relays

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Modes	Effects
Enclosure	Phenolic, Lexan, aluminum, steel	Elevated temperature	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
		Moisture/humidity	Oxidation	Dirt/moisture intrusion into internal components
		Mechanical stress	Cracking of welds	
			Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
Coil wire	Polyamide/polyimide insulation, copper magnet wire	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement/cracking of insulation	Loss of dielectric integrity
		Ohmic heating	Corrosion/oxidation of wire	
		Moisture/humidity		
Coil spool	Zytel, Nylon, Lexan	Elevated temperature	Aging/cyclic fatigue, wear/loosening	Improper operation of relay
		Mechanical stress due to cycling		
Coil coating	Polyester or fiberglass tape varnish	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement/cracking	Improper operation of relay
		Ohmic heating		
Contacts	Silver	Electrical arcing/cycling	Pitting	Increased temperature due to high resistance
		Electrical overload	Corrosion/oxidation	Improper operation due to misalignment of contacts
		Moisture/humidity	Chatter-induced damage	

		Vibration	Bending/twisting of linkage	
		Mechanical stress		
Contact carrier/arm	Phenolic, Zytel, Delrin, Nylon	Mechanical stress due to cycling	Embrittlement/cracking	Improper/loss of relay function
			Distortion	
Coil lead wires capacitors	Teflon, silicon rubber, Tefzel, insulation	Electrical cycling	Embrittlement/cracking of wire insulation	Improper/loss of relay function
		Electrical overload	Degradation of fuses	
		Elevated temperature	Wear/loosening of connections	
		Moisture/humidity		
		Vibration induced		
Slip motor rotor/bearings	Bronze, copper	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion/oxidation	Improper/loss of relay function
		Mechanical stress	Bending/twisting	
Damping magnet	Magnetic steel	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion/oxidation	Improper/loss of relay function
		Mechanical stress		
Timing motor/bearings	Magnet wire with formal varnish	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement/cracking of winding insulation	Loss of relay function due to shoring of motor windings
		Moisture/humidity		
Cams	Delrin, Metal	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion/oxidation	Improper/loss of relay function
Timing diaphragms	Silicon rubber	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement/cracking	Improper/loss of relay function
		Mechanical stress due to cycling		

TABLE 1.9

Failure Modes, Stressors, and Effects of Medium-Voltage Switchgear Bus

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Modes	Effects
Conductor	Aluminum copper	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
		Elevated temperature	Oxidation	Loss of electrical continuity
		Vibration	Cracking of welds	Reduced electrical clearance
		Electrical transients	Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
			Distortion and displacement	
Enclosure	Aluminum polymers	Moisture/humidity	Corrosion/oxidation	Loss of structural integrity
		Vibration	Cracking of welds	Short circuit to ground
				Degraded cooling capacity
Insulators	Porcelain polymers	Humidity/moisture	Oxidation	Loss of structural integrity
		Elevated temperature	Embrittlement/ cracking	Fault to ground
		Vibration	Displacement	
		Electrical transients		
Electrical connections	Copper, aluminum phenolic, porcelain, polymer insulators	Elevated temperature	Corrosion and oxidation	Fault to ground
		Ohmic heating	Cracking of insulators and welds	Loss of function of load
		Moisture/humidity	Seismic/vibration-induced damage	
		Vibration	Loosening of parts	
		Electrical transients		

1.8.1.5 Cables and Connectors

Cables and connectors properly installed and not subjected to mechanical forces, moisture, or extreme temperatures have a predictable long service lifetime. This life of cable is dominated by the aging of cable insulation system. Cable faults, very random in nature, normally only affect a short length of a specific cable and are cleared by the protective relaying and supply circuit breakers. Usually, if required, the cable can be repaired by splicing and replaced in service. In conduit, cables seldom can involve other cables or equipment, but when the cable is in an open tray with other cables, it can directly affect others through mechanical motion or by heating (fire). Protective relays properly designed, installed, and kept calibrated, should clear cable faults in a short time and thus restrict the damage to the faulting cable. The cables can fail from any combination of electrical, mechanical, and thermal factors. A brief review of the insulating materials used for cables is needed in order to better understand cable failure modes. Insulating materials for cables may be classified into two categories: (1) impregnated paper insulation and (2) polymeric insulation and sheathing materials. Today, synthetic polymers have replaced natural materials such as paper, mineral oil, and natural rubber for the cable insulation and over sheathing of cables.

Impregnated paper insulation: Paper insulation consists of a felted mat of long cellulose fibers derived by chemical treatment of wood pulp. Paper is impregnated with suitable oils and compounds to give it good electrical properties and help reduce moisture absorption. A variation of paper insulation is polypropylene paper laminate known as PPL or PPLP is used in tape form. It is comprised of a layer of extruded polypropylene in which two thin layers of insulting paper are bonded. The combination of polypropylene and paper has insulation properties of low dielectric loss, high permittivity, high operating temperature, high mechanical strength, low elasticity and high tensile strength, and high resistance to partial discharges.

Polymeric insulation: In cable industry, polymeric materials are taken to be polymers which are plastics or rubbers. Rubbers are considered to be elastomer materials (elastic properties) that are materials which return to their original shape easily. In cable insulation terminology, the term rubbers and elastomer are used interchangeably although rubbers may imply natural rubber to many. Polymeric insulation may be classified as thermoplastic and thermosetting. The thermoplastic insulations are polyvinyl chloride (PVC), polyethylene, polypropylene, nylon, polyurethanes, polyester, block copolymers, Buna rubber, and fluorinated polymers. The thermosetting insulations are ethylene–propylene rubber (EPR), cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE), cross-linked ethylene vinyl acetate, and silicone rubber. The reader is urged to refer to Section 6.2.4 for further description of thermoplastic and thermosetting insulation types. The polymer-type insulations are known as polyolefins and are the preferred insulating materials for cables because they have superior properties than paper insulation. The polyolefins have low dielectric constant, low DF, high dielectric strength, excellent resistance to moisture, and high resistance to chemicals and solvents.

The service environments in which power cables operate are varied and may include mild environments, as well as harsh environments with high temperature levels. Power cables used to energize medium-voltage equipment, such as pump motors and switchgear, must operate at voltages and currents that are significantly higher than cables for control and instrumentation. Because medium-voltage power cables operate at higher voltages, there is an increased stress on the cables, which could accelerate aging degradation due to internal ohmic heating and partial discharges (corona). In addition, medium-voltage cables are susceptible to unique aging mechanisms, such as water treeing, that low-voltage cables (600 V) do not experience. Placement in conduit, raceways, underground ducts, and cable trays affects the service conditions under which the cables must operate. Routing in densely filled cable trays, enclosed ducts, or fire-wrapped cable trays, together with other continuous duty power cables, will result in elevated operating temperatures. Exposure to elevated temperatures can also be caused by the location, such as for cables installed in close proximity to high-temperature steam lines. Aging due to elevated temperatures will cause the various polymers used to insulate the cables to degrade, resulting in loss of elongation, embrittlement, and eventual cracking over long exposure periods.

Exposure to moisture can also degrade power cables. This can occur for cables installed below grade in ducts or conduits that are susceptible to water intrusion, or for cables buried directly in the ground. Cables exposed to water while energized are susceptible to a phenomenon called water treeing in which tree-like microcracks are formed in the insulation due to electrochemical reactions. The reactions are caused by the presence of water and the relatively high electrical stress on the insulation at local imperfections within the insulating material, such as voids and contaminant sites that effectively increase the voltage stress at that point in the insulation. Moisture can also cause corrosion of the various metallic components in the cable, such as metallic shields or the conductor. In general, aging degradation of the insulating material is of the most concern for medium-voltage power cables. The other subcomponents are also susceptible to aging degradation due to the various stressors to which they are exposed; however, their degradation rate is usually minimal. Some specific causes of power cable failures are the following:

- Short to ground
- Conductor-to-conductor short
- Reduced insulation resistance
- Reduced dielectric strength
- Excessive partial discharge

The failure modes of the cable insulation are dependent on many factors that determine the maximum operating temperature. For most thermoset materials life is determined by the susceptibility of the material to thermal degradation at elevated temperatures (heat) and oxygen. Hydrocarbon polymers oxidize thermally which then cause large changes in mechanical and electrical properties.

For some thermoplastics, such as polyethylene, the main determining factor is resistance to deformation. The failure modes of cables are

Electrically induced failures: These involve lightning, switching surges, and partial discharges. The partial discharges may be caused by poor insulation system design or by manufacturing defects. The partial discharge phenomenon is well known for the XLPE cable and is discussed in more detail in Section 6.10.1.

Mechanically induced failures: A mechanically induced failure can occur during installation by using excessive pulling tension and/or exceeding minimum bending radii. Cable can also be damaged during construction when earth moving equipment can dig into the cable or cable duct banks. Repeated bending and twisting during installation or in service can result in irreversible straining of conductor wires.

Thermally induced failures: Thermal degradation causes the insulation of the cable to loose its physical properties. The thermally induced failures are due to overloading beyond its design capability for extended periods and/or excessive ambient temperature conditions.

Metallic (semiconducting) shield damage: This failure mode describes where the shield ceases to perform its function. In order for the shield to perform its function, its volume resistivity must always remain sufficiently low. However, when metallic shield is damaged or corroded its volume resistivity is impacted by temperature. At higher temperatures, the volume resistivity of the metallic shield increases significantly (due to peak loads, unbalance currents, or circulating currents) giving rise to high voltage gradients at sharp metal edges that will lead to corona and arcing damage (from outside in). The corona and arcing will lead to eventual cable insulation failure.

Poor metallic shield contact: This is the case where the metallic shield is insulated from the semiconducting tape shield because of poor contact. This can be caused by a layer of corrosion or scale buildup on the metallic shield. Such a condition will give rise to a potential difference between the semiconducting shield and the metallic shield that will cause arcing between the two shields. This will lead to arcing damage from the outside into semiconducting shield and insulation and eventual cable failure. This situation is more severe if there are multiple areas of poor contact or breaks between the two shield systems. The reader should refer to Section 6.9 for more details on causes of cable failures and analyses. Failure modes stressors and effects of medium-voltage cables are summarized in Table 1.10.

1.8.1.6 Rotating Machines

Insulation is an inherent component of the machine windings (motors and generators). The purpose of the insulation system is to prevent circulating currents flowing between various conductors in the machine windings and to prevent short circuits between respective phases and phase to ground.

TABLE 1.10

Failure Modes, Stressors, and Effects of Cables

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Modes	Effects
Insulation	Various polymer materials (e.g., XLPE, EPR)	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement	Decrease in dielectric strength
			Cracking	Increase in leakage currents Eventual failure
	Various polymer materials that are permeable to moisture	Wetting	Moisture intrusion	Decrease in dielectric strength
				Increase in leakage currents Eventual failure
	Various polymer materials that do not contain a tree retardant additive	Wetting concurrent with voltage	Electrochemical reactions	Decrease in dielectric strength
			Water treeing	Increase in leakage currents Eventual failure
	Various polymer materials that have voids or other imperfections	Voltage	Partial discharge	Decrease in dielectric strength
			Electrical treeing	Increase in leakage currents Eventual failure
Jacket	Various polymer materials (e.g., CSPE, Neoprene)	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement	Loss of structural integrity
			Cracking	Increased intrusion of moisture and contaminants to cable interior
	Various polymer materials (e.g., CSPE, Neoprene)	Handling or abuse during maintenance, testing activities	Mechanical damage including crushing, bending, cutting, abrasion	Loss of structural integrity

				Increased intrusion of moisture and contaminants to cable interior
	Various polymer materials (e.g., CSPE, Neoprene)	Vibration	Mechanical damage including cutting, abrasion	Loss of structural integrity
				Increased intrusion of moisture and contaminants to cable interior
Conductor	Copper	Wetting due to moisture intrusion	Corrosion	Increased resistance to current flow
			Oxide formation	Increased ohmic heating
	Aluminum	Vibration	Loosening of connectors	Loss of structural integrity
			Metal fatigue	Degraded connector contact
	Aluminum	Compressive forces	Cold flow	Loss of contact on connectors
			Loosening of connectors	Increased resistance to current flow
				Increased ohmic heating
Shield	Copper tape	Wetting due to moisture intrusion	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
			Oxide formation	Increased insulation degradation due to partial discharges
	Semiconducting polymers	Elevated temperature	Embrittlement	Loss of structural integrity
			Cracking	Increased insulation degradation due to partial discharges
Sheath	Lead	Alkaline environment (e.g., free lime from concrete ducts)	Corrosion	Loss of structural integrity
				Increased intrusion of moisture and contaminants to cable interior

In an AC machine, there are three major components of insulation systems: (1) the stator winding, (2) the rotor, and (3) the steel laminations in the stator and the rotor cores. The insulation systems for the stator windings are discussed in more detail in Section 10.8.1. The rotor of an induction motor is not insulated because there is no voltage directly applied to it and the induced voltage is only a few volts. For AC synchronous machines and wound rotor induction motors, a voltage (less than the voltage of the stator windings) is applied to the rotor, therefore, the rotors of these machines have insulated windings. Majority of the insulation used in machine windings (stator and rotor) comprises of organic materials, such as varnish, polyester, and epoxy rated for an in-service operating temperature. Table 1.2 provides information on the various types of insulation systems classification established by IEEE Standard 1-2000. Refer to Section 10.8.1 for the insulating materials used in the make up of each insulation classification. Machine stator insulation can be broadly classified into random-wound stators and form-wound stators. Random-wound windings are used for low-voltage machines (2300 V and below), usually for 600 V class motors. Form-wound stator windings are used for high-voltage machines where the coils are preformed and shaped into rectangle (diamond) and then inserted into slots of the machine stator. The major difference between the form-wound and random-wound machines is that the form-wound machine has separate turn insulation and ground insulation. The stator of random-wound machine consists of strand (or conductor) insulation, ground insulation, coil separators, phase insulation, wedges, tapes and tie cords, varnishes, and resins. Form-wound machines stator insulation consists of preinsulated coils, strand and turn insulation, groundwall insulation, wedges, blocking and bracing, and semiconducting coating for control of partial discharges. In the formation of the form-wound stators, four manufacturing processes are used. They are (1) vacuum pressure impregnation (VPI) of individual coils and bars, (2) global VPI of whole stator, (3) hydraulic molding of individual coils and bars with resin rich tapes, and (4) press curing of individual coils and bars. Also, over the years several trademarked insulation systems have evolved for form-wound stator insulation system. The trademarked insulation systems are unique to each manufacturer and are beyond the scope of this book.

Machine design, insulation system, and the care and maintenance including condition monitoring of the machine are the main factors in determining how long the machine will last. One of the questions often asked is what is the expected service life of a machine (motor)? It is difficult to answer this question definitively. In view of the difficulties in predicting motor life, data do exist in various texts that indicate the average motor life as a function of hp. One such data are given in Table 1.11. There are many critical factors that can affect the motor life. Manufacturers design and build their motors to last a specified number of years based on the materials used, operating conditions, and the correct maintenance and care. However, before the insulation system of the motor can wear out, it is prematurely destroyed by misuse and/or misapplication, electrical stresses, thermal stresses, mechanical stresses, and hostile environment conditions.

TABLE 1.11

Average Electric Motor Life

Range (hp)	Average Life (Years)	Life Range (Years)
<1	12.9	10–15
1–5	17.1	13–19
6–20	19.4	16–20
21–50	21.8	18–26
51–125	28.5	24–33
>125	29.3	25–38

Source: From Andreas, J.C., *Energy-Efficient Electric Motors*: *Selection and Application*, Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1982.

The insulation system of a machine stator winding is complex and comprises of many insulating materials. The machine insulation system must be able to withstand continuous and transient stresses simultaneously imposed on it. These stresses are electrical, thermal, mechanical, and environmental and these stresses gradually degrade the insulation over its life. The electrical stresses can be dielectric aging, tracking, corona, poor connections, and transients (surges). The thermal stresses are aging, voltage unbalance and variations, cycling, loading, lack of ventilation, and excessive ambient temperature. The mechanical stresses are coil movement, rotor strikes, defective rotor, flying objects, and lugging of leads. The environmental stresses are moisture, chemical spills, abrasion, damaged parts, and restricted ventilation. The effect of these stresses lead to degradation and failure of the stator windings that can be classified as failure modes. The reader should refer to Section 10.9 for additional information and inspection for evaluating the condition of machine insulation. The failure modes are discussed under each category of stress.

Electrical failure modes: Machine stator windings are exposed to surges that are due to lightning, ground faults, inductive load switching, closing of breakers under out of phase conditions, and variable speed drives (VFDs). The voltage between turns under normal operating conditions is relatively low (usually <100 V). Repetitive voltage surges gradually deteriorate turn-to-turn insulation, groundwall insulation, and semiconductive and grading coatings. Surges produced by VFDs and other sources can create voltage transient with very fast rise times that can generate frequencies in the megahertz range. The high frequencies in the stator cause nonlinear distribution of voltage with a much greater percentage of the voltage appearing across the turn in the first coil connected to the phase terminal. The end result is that a very large voltage (as much as 40% of surge voltage) is impressed across the first turn. This voltage can be as high as several kilovolts across the turn insulation for a short time. The high voltage gives rise to partial discharges in the voids in the vicinity of the copper turns. Random-wound stators with magnetic wire are very susceptible to this mode of failure. Also, VFDs can create high-voltage surges due to voltage reflections between the power cable and the motor surge impedance. This phenomenon also can lead to partial discharges that can degrade the ground and phase insulation. Electrical tracking is the formation of carbonized (conductive) path over the insulation surface in the end winding region of the stator. Tracking can result due to contaminated surfaces that enable the current to flow on the surface of the insulation of the end windings. These conductive regions will pick up capacitive charge from the high-voltage windings of the machine. Consequently, leakage current will begin to flow in the conductive paths on adjacent paths or from these paths to the core with sparking at the surface discontinuities. The sparking currents degrade the insulation and create conductive carbonized paths to ground and between phases. This failure mode causes the groundwall and/or phase insulation to fail. Another failure mode can be attributed to air pockets within the stator insulation. These air pockets are formed during make up of formed coils and/or installation of coils in the stator slots. Also excessive heating will degrade the organic insulation and it will delaminate creating air pockets within the groundwall insulation. The dielectric strength of the insulation with air pockets will be reduced by as much as a four factor to that of air. If the voltage is high enough, the electric stress across the void will be high and a spark will occur in the void since the breakdown voltage of the air is much lower than the breakdown voltage of the solid insulation. This phenomenon is known as partial discharging in the voids and is stopped by groundwall insulation. However, repeated sparking will gradually break down the groundwall insulation. Many electrical connections are required for the coils and windings in the construction of a typical machine stator winding. Generally, form-wound stator insulation tends to have more voids than the random-wound stator insulation, and therefore is more susceptible to partial discharges. If the connections are made poorly the resistance of these connection will be high that will lead to overheating of the joints which then can degrade the insulation. Form-wound stator windings are more susceptible to this phenomenon since there are more joints that are required between coils and bars. However, any stator windings can have this problem that can eventually lead to failure of the machine.

Thermal failure modes: Thermal stresses are evidenced by looseness of the windings, adhesion of insulating materials and components, and loss of resistance to moisture. The I^2R losses (load losses) and eddy current losses in the windings, the stator core losses and the dielectric losses in the groundwall insulation give rise to the temperature of the copper conductors, core, and insulation. However, the temperature at the strand insulation is higher than the groundwall insulation. The temperature of stator windings can be higher than normal for several reasons. The temperature of air circulating to cool the machine increases above normal because of clogged plugged filters, air ducts, or heat exchanger problems. Another reason for the increase in winding temperature could be due to overloading the motor, or too frequent starting without allowing sufficient time between starts to allow the windings to cool down. Negative sequence currents in the will flow in the windings due to unbalance supply voltages to a machine. The negative currents create an opposing torque which the machine has to overcome by increasing current in the windings. Therefore, the negative sequence currents cause additional heating in the winding. Similarly, single phasing (loss of a phase) in the power supply to the motor can cause increase in current by as much as 200% of rated phase current. The continuous overheating can result in failure of the interstrand and strand-to-groundwall bonds because the strength of the bonds (both thermoplastic and thermosetting) decreases as the temperature increases. As the bonds fail, individual copper strands become loose. Thermal and magnetic forces in the machine windings cause the strands movement resulting in abrasion of the strand insulation and reduced heat transfer between the conductors and groundwall insulation. This process leads to turn-to-turn failures due to insulation abrasions or mechanical failure. Also, continuous operation at elevated temperatures will cause the epoxy and polyester to become brittle and shrink somewhat. The embrittlement and shrinkage will cause abrasions and cracking of the groundwall insulation during machine starting. The machine operation at the high temperatures will similarly cause the end winding blocking and bracing to slowly shrink and become brittle. During motor starting, the looseness can then lead to movement of the coils causing abrasion and/or cracking of the insulation. Another failure mode can be attributed to thermal cycling by starting motors too frequently. Because of different coefficient of thermal expansion for copper and insulation materials, the difference in expansion between these materials creates shear stress. As a result of weakened strength of bond materials due to higher operating temperatures, the bond between the copper and the groundwall is lost creating gaps and delamination in the insulation. Thermal cycling can also weaken the bonds between the coils and the blocking and bracing in the endwinding. This will cause components to become loose and lead to abrasion of the insulation.

Mechanical failure modes: Mechanical forces in the stator windings are generated by currents flowing in the magnetic circuit of the machine stator, and from thermal expansion due to normal load currents. Magnetic forces are produced in the stator coils from the interaction of the rotor poles and stator slots which will tend to move the coils. This electromagnetic phenomenon occurs at twice normal frequency and is referred to as 120 Hz vibrations. The force produced by the above phenomenon is proportional to the square of the current. The mechanical forces are more pronounced in coils that are near the surface of the stator, i.e., adjacent to the air gap. Also, additional mechanical forces are generated between adjacent coils as a result of current flowing in each coil. Form-wound stator windings using thermoset insulation system are more susceptible to these cyclic forces because they are less flexible and it is more difficult to ensure that the coils are tightly wedged in the slots. Stator windings using thermoplastic insulation system are less susceptible to this phenomenon because the insulation is more flexible and tends to restrict coil movement by swelling and flowing to fill the slot. The conductor and groundwall insulation are cyclically stressed by compression and flexing because of coil movement resulting from these forces. The insulation may be damaged by the relative movement of strands and/or coils in the slots. The normal 60 Hz current flowing through the stator coils and bars creates magnetic forces at the rate of 120 Hz that causes relative movement between coils and/or bracing points in the end windings. If the end windings are not secured adequately they will rub against each other which will gradually abrade the insulation and lead to eventual failure. This failure mode also cause cracking of groundwall insulation which can lead to a ground fault, or abrasion of strand and conductor insulation resulting in turn-to-turn faults, or loss of semiconducting coating (if present) due to abrasions in the groundwall insulation, thus leading to partial discharges that can fail the groundwall insulation.

Environmental failure modes: The life of the machine winding insulation is dependent upon the environment in which it operates. The major environmental factors that can lead to a failure of the insulation were previously listed as moisture, chemicals, abrasive particles, contamination, and restricted ventilation. If there is excessive moisture, contamination (dust, dirt, and oil) combined with chemicals on the windings, and particularly on the end windings, can lead to electrical tracking or loss of insulation resistance and dielectric strength. The tracking failure mode was discussed under electrical failure modes. The loss of insulation resistance can lead to increased leakage currents in the insulation that will translate into higher temperatures. The higher temperatures in turn will lead to lower insulation resistance and so on. This phenomenon is self-perpetuating and if allowed to continue will cause machine failure. Similarly, the combination of moisture, dust, and other contaminants degrade the insulation's mechanical and electrical properties. As a result of this contamination, the dielectric strength of the insulation system is reduced and thereby making it susceptible to failure by switching surges as was discussed under electrical failure modes. Another environmental factor is ambient that has significance for machines that are cooled by ambient air only. As the ambient temperature increases above the rated machine design ambient temperature, so will the winding temperature. If the total resulting temperature (ambient plus rise) is higher than the insulation rated temperature, it will degrade the insulation and failure may occur as was discussed under thermal failure modes. Abrasive particles in the cooling air (or closed cooling system) can cause erosion from impingement of the stator winding insulation. This problem is most likely to occur on open ventilated machines installed in dirty and abrasive environments. The insulation degradation from abrasive particles (dirty environment) can lead to interturn, ground or phase-to-phase faults. Chemicals can deteriorate the insulation if the insulation is exposed to acids, alkalis, paints, solvents, and the like. In some industries motors operate in such environments and therefore are susceptible to chemical attacks. This problem can also occur if the machine was cleaned with chemicals that are not combatable with the machine insulation system. Some older insulation systems using asphalt, varnish, and early polyesters as bonding agents are prone to softening, swelling, and loss of mechanical and electrical strength from exposure to certain chemicals. Modern stator windings insulation systems are less prone to chemical attacks. The most important means of preventing winding failure by this mechanism are to use totally enclosed machine, oil and grease leaks are contained, and that correct chemicals are used in cleaning of the windings. Table 1.12 summarizes the failure modes, aging stressors, and effects of machines.

TABLE 1.12

Failure Modes, Aging Stressors, and Effects of Machines

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Modes	Effects
Insulation				
Thermoplastic	Asphaltic-mica, micafolium	Thermal: at temperatures above 100°C causes delamination, slackness tape migration, reduced thermal conductivity	Groundwall puffiness, high internal partial discharges, high winding temperature	Strand and turn shorts due to movement of groundwall, puncture due to discharge and abrasion
Thermosetting	Epoxy mica, polyester mica	Thermal: high temperature causes reduction in physical strength, shrinkage, reduced thermal conductivity	Slackness in slot, high winding temperature, insulation embrittlement, discoloring of strand insulation	Leads to slot discharge, puncture due to discharge and abrasion
Groundwall insulation	Epoxy mica, polyester mica, main air cooled machines	Partial discharges due to looseness and abrasion of semicond. and insulation; poor semicond. application or grounding	High partial discharges between core and winding (slot discharge), high semicond. resistance	Electrical puncture due to reduction in groundwall insulation
End winding discharge	All types	High dielectric stress at the surface of the end winding	Reduced insulation resistance, high partial discharges	Erosion of insulation by discharges, electrical tracking leading to puncture
Windings	All types, especially polyester mica	Moisture	Reduce electrical and mechanical strength of insulation, higher loss factor	Higher losses leading to puncture; increased sensitivity to mechanical vibration
	All types of open machines	Abrasive material attack	Erodes insulation thickness	Puncture due to reduced wall thickness and loosing of windings
	All types but especially motors	High mechanical stresses	Loose bracing and blocking, broken ties in end windings	Abrasion of insulation and puncture

(continued)

TABLE 1.12 (continued)

Failure Modes, Aging Stressors, and Effects of Machines

Component	Material	Stressors	Failure Modes	Effects
	All types, especially polyester mica	120 Hz vibrations	Causes vibrations between the winding and the slot, or at blocking points in end windings, resulting in insulation abrasion	Phase–phase or phase–ground puncture due to partial discharges because of reduced insulation wall; also, turn insulation failure possible
	All types, but thermoplastic most sensitive	Delamination discharge	Partial discharge within groundwall make void larger due to original voids impregnated poorly, thermal cycling or operation at high temperature	Groundwall puncture, turn-to-turn short
	All types, but especially motors with VFDs	Steep front surges (fast rise dv/dt) causes high stress due to switching of starters and VFDs	Surges can be as high as 5 PU of motor voltage rating, and last 0.1–1 μs cause High stress in interturn insulation	Turn-turn-to-turn short, phase–phase or phase–ground failure especially in the first turns
Girth cracking	Primarily asphaltic and micafolium	Thermal cycling causing tape separation, relative movement between winding and groundwall	High internal partial discharge, loosening of end winding blocking and bracing	Cracking of insulation just outside the slot, leading to puncture

1.9 Maintenance of Protective Devices and their Impact on Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis

EPM and testing is not only important for the reliability and integrity of electrical distribution systems, but also for the safety and protection of people. PM of overcurrent protective devices and breakers, is often overlooked, performed infrequently, or is performed improperly. This maintenance and testing of the protective devices has taken on a greater importance because the operating times of these devices are credited in the arc-flash hazard analysis, the selection of personal protective equipment (PPE) and protecting the worker from shock and arc-flash hazards. To show why the maintenance and reliability of protective devices has become extremely important for protecting workers from arc-flash hazard and for labeling of electrical equipment to warn workers of such hazard, we will review and discuss the following:

1. Industry practice and regulatory bases for maintenance and testing of
   - Molded-case circuit breakers
   - Low-voltage power circuit breakers
   - Medium-voltage circuit breakers
   - Protective relays
2. Failure statistics for overcurrent protective devices
3. Impact of overcurrent protective devices on arc-flash hazards

1.9.1 Bases of Maintenance and Testing of Protective Devices

The NEC Articles 210-20, 215-3, 240-1, and 240-3 specify requirements for the protection of electrical equipment and conductors. The Fine Print Note (FPN) to Article 240-1, *Scope*, states, "Overcurrent protection for conductors and equipment is provided to open the circuit if the current reaches a value that will cause an excessive or dangerous temperature in conductors or conductor insulation." To protect against overcurrent conditions, the only way to ensure that circuit breakers, overcurrent relays, and protective devices are working correctly is through regular maintenance and testing of these devices. There are several steps that must be taken in order to establish an effective maintenance program for the breakers and overcurrent protective devices. The first step in correctly maintaining electrical equipment and overcurrent protective devices is to understand the requirements and recommendations for electrical equipment maintenance from various sources. Examples of such sources include, but are not limited to, the manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 70B, IEEE Standard 902 (Yellow Book), NEMA AB-4, NETA Specs, NFPA 70E and this book.

The second step in performing maintenance and testing is to provide adequate training and qualification for employees. NFPA 70E, Section 205.1 states, "Employees who perform maintenance on electrical equipment and installations shall be qualified persons … and shall be trained in and be familiar with the specific maintenance procedures and tests required." The NEC defines a qualified person as "One who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of the electrical equipment and installations and has received safety training on the hazards involved." It is vitally important that employees be properly trained and qualified to maintain electrical equipment in order to increase the equipment and system reliability, as well as the employee's safety.

The third step is to have a written, effective EPM program. NFPA 70B makes several very clear statements about an effective EPM program. These statements include

1. Deterioration of electrical equipment is a normal process, but that does not mean that equipment failure is eminent. If unchecked, deterioration will eventually cause equipment malfunction or complete failure. There are several factors that can accelerate the deterioration process, such as the environment, overload conditions, or severe duty cycles. An effective EPM program will help to identify and correct any or all of these conditions.
2. In addition to the deterioration problem, there are several other potential causes of equipment failure. These causes include, but are not limited to, load changes, circuit alterations, improper or misadjusted settings of protective devices, improperly selected protective devices, and changing voltage conditions.
3. With the absence of an effective EPM program, management assumes a greater responsibility for and an increased risk of a serious electrical failure, as well as the consequences.
4. An effective EPM program, that is administered properly, will reduce costly shutdowns and outages, reduce accidents, and save lives. These programs will identify impending troubles and apply solutions to correct them, before they become major problems that require time consuming and more expensive solutions.

IEEE Standard 902 states: "In planning an EPM program, consideration must be given to the costs of safety, the costs associated with direct losses due to equipment damage, and the indirect costs associated with downtime or lost or inefficient production."

The forth step is that all maintenance and testing of electrical protective devices must be accomplished in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. NFPA 70E adds to this by stating: "Protective devices shall be maintained to adequately withstand or interrupt available fault current." It goes on to state, "Circuit breakers that interrupt faults approaching their ratings shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions." In the absence of the manufacturer's instructions, the NETA Maintenance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems is an excellent source of information for performing the required maintenance and testing of these devices. However, the manufacturer's time–current curves would also be required in order to properly test each protective device.

The fifth and final step that will be addressed here is the arc-flash hazard considerations. One of the key components of the flash hazard analysis, which is required by NFPA 70E and OSHA, is the clearing time of the protective devices, primarily circuit breakers, fuses, and protective relays. Fuses, although they are protective devices, they do not have operating mechanisms that would require periodic maintenance. However, fuses should be inspected to verify that they are in good working condition.

We will address some of the issues concerning maintenance and testing of the protective devices, according to the manufacturer's instructions. We will also address how protective device maintenance relates to the electrical arc-flash hazard.

*Molded-case circuit breakers:** Generally, maintenance on molded-case circuit breakers is limited to mechanical mounting, electrical connections, and periodic manual operation. Most lighting, appliance, and power panel circuit breakers have riveted frames and are not designed to be opened for internal inspection or maintenance. All other molded-case circuit breakers that are Underwriters Laboratory (UL) approved are factory-sealed to prevent access to the calibrated elements. An unbroken seal indicates that the mechanism has not been tampered with and that it should function as specified by UL or its manufacture. A broken seal voids the UL and the manufacturers' warranty of the device. In this case, the integrity of the device would be questionable. The only exception to this would be a seal being broken by a manufacturer's authorized facility. Molded-case circuit breakers receive extensive testing and calibration at the manufacturers' plants. These tests are performed in accordance with UL 489, *Standard for Safety, Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures*. Molded-case circuit breakers, other than the riveted frame types, are permitted to be reconditioned and returned to the manufacturer's original condition. In order to conform to the manufacturer's original design, circuit breakers must be reconditioned according to recognized standards. The Professional Electrical Apparatus Recyclers League (PEARL) companies follow rigid standards to recondition low-voltage industrial and commercial molded-case circuit breakers. It is highly recommended that only authorized professionals recondition molded-case circuit breakers. Circuit breakers installed in a system are often forgotten. Even though the breakers have been sitting in place supplying power to a circuit for years, there are several things that can go wrong. The circuit breaker can fail to open due to a burned out trip coil or because the mechanism is frozen due to dirt, dried lubricant, or corrosion. The overcurrent device can fail due to inactivity or a burned out electronic component. Many problems can occur when proper maintenance is not performed and the breaker fails to open under fault conditions. This combination of events can result in fires, damage to equipment, or injuries to personnel.

* Text from here to Section 1.9.2 is used with permission from D.K. Neitzel. Article is titled Protective Devices Maintenance as it applies to the arc/flash hazard.

All too often, a circuit breaker fails because the minimum maintenance (as specified by the manufacturer) was not performed or was performed improperly. Small things, like failing to properly clean and/or lubricate a circuit breaker, can lead to operational failure or complete destruction due to overheating of the internal components. Common sense, as well as manufacturers' literature, must be used when maintaining circuit breakers. Most manufacturers, as well as NFPA 70B, recommend that if a molded-case circuit breaker has not been operated, opened, or closed, either manually or by automatic means, within as little as 6 months time, it should be removed from service and manually exercised several times. This manual exercise helps to keep the contacts clean due to their wiping action and ensures that the operating mechanism moves freely. This exercise, however, does not operate the mechanical linkages in the tripping mechanism (Figure 1.12). The only way to properly exercise the entire breaker operating and tripping mechanisms is to remove the breaker from service and test the overcurrent and short-circuit tripping capabilities. A stiff or sticky mechanism can cause an unintentional time delay in its operation under fault conditions. This could dramatically increase the arc-flash incident energy level to a value in excess of the rating of PPE. There will be more on incident energy later.

Another consideration is addressed by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.334(b)(2) which states:

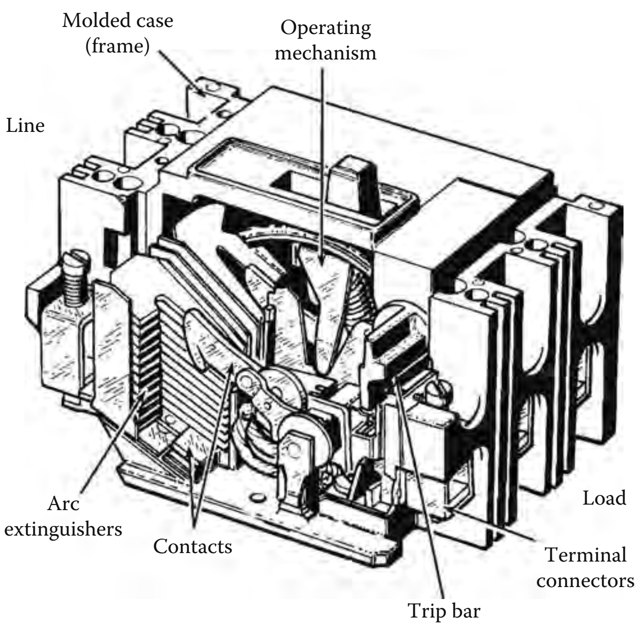


FIGURE 1.12
Principle components of a molded-case circuit breaker. (From Neitzel, D.K., Principle Components of a Molded-Case Circuit Breaker, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX (revision 2007, p. 14). With permission.)

> **Reclosing circuits after protective device operation**. After a circuit is de-energized by a circuit protective device, the circuit may NOT be manually reenergized until it has been determined that the equipment and circuit can be safely reenergized. The repetitive manual reclosing of circuit breakers or reenergizing circuits through replaced fuses is prohibited.
>
> **Note**. When it can be determined from the design of the circuit and the overcurrent devices involved and that the automatic operation of a device was caused by an overload rather than a fault condition, no examination of the circuit or connected equipment is needed before the circuit is reenergized.

The safety of the employee, manually operating the circuit breaker, is at risk if the short-circuit condition still exists when reclosing the breaker. OSHA no longer allows the past practice of resetting circuit breaker one, two, or three times before investigating the cause of the trip. This previous practice has caused numerous burn injuries that resulted from the explosion of electrical equipment. Before resetting a circuit breaker, it, along with the circuit and equipment, must be tested and inspected, by a qualified person, to ensure a short-circuit condition does not exist and that it is safe to reset.

Any time a circuit breaker has operated and the reason is unknown, the breaker must be inspected. Melted arc chutes will not interrupt fault currents. If the breaker cannot interrupt a second fault, it will fail and may destroy its enclosure and create a hazard for anyone working near the equipment.

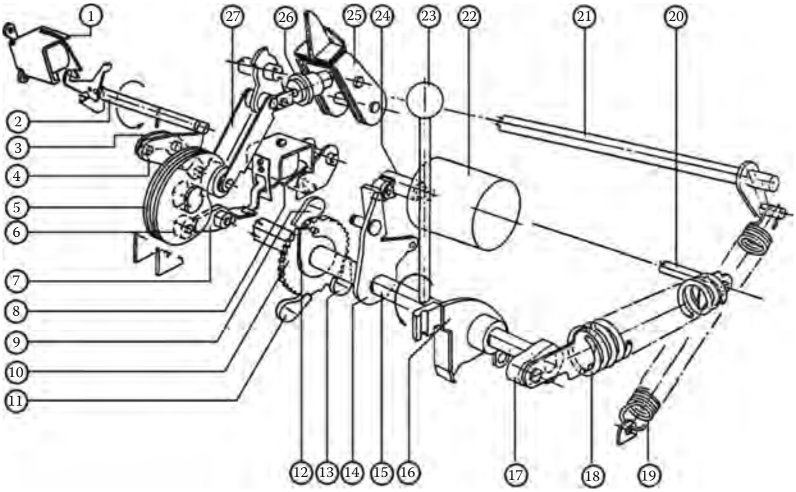
To further emphasize this point the following quote from the NEMA is provided:

> After a high level fault has occurred in equipment that is properly rated and installed, it is not always clear to investigating electricians what damage has occurred inside encased equipment. The circuit breaker may well appear virtually clean while its internal condition is unknown. For such situations, the NEMA AB4 "Guidelines for Inspection and Preventive Maintenance of MCCBs Used in Commercial and Industrial Applications" may be of help. Circuit breakers unsuitable for continued service may be identified by simple inspection under these guidelines. Testing outlined in the document is another and more definite step that will help to identify circuit breakers that are not suitable for continued service.
>
> After the occurrence of a short circuit, it is important that the cause be investigated and repaired and that the condition of the installed equipment be investigated. A circuit breaker may require replacement just as any other switching device, wiring or electrical equipment in the circuit that has been exposed to a short circuit. Questionable circuit breakers must be replaced for continued, dependable circuit protection.

The condition of the circuit breaker must be known to ensure that it functions properly and safely before it is put back into service.

Low-voltage power circuit breakers: Low-voltage power circuit breakers are manufactured under a high degree of quality control, of the best materials available, and with a high degree of tooling for operational accuracy. Manufacturer's tests show these circuit breakers have durability beyond the minimum standards requirements. All of these factors give these circuit breakers a very high reliability rating. However, because of the varying application conditions and the dependence placed upon them for protection of electrical systems and equipment as well as the assurance of service continuity, inspections and maintenance checks must be made on a regular basis. Several studies have shown that low-voltage power circuit breakers, which were not maintained within a 5-year period, have an average of a 50% failure rate. Maintenance of these breakers will generally consist of keeping them clean and properly lubricated. The frequency of maintenance will depend to some extent on the cleanliness of the surrounding area. If there were very much dust, lint, moisture, or other foreign matter present then obviously more frequent maintenance would be required. Industry standards for, as well as manufacturers of, low-voltage power circuit breakers recommend a general inspection and lubrication after a specified number of operations or at least once per year, whichever comes first. Some manufacturers also recommend this same inspection and maintenance be performed after the first 6 months of service regardless of the number of operations. If the breaker remains open or closed for a long period of time, it is recommended that arrangements be made to open and close the breaker several times in succession, preferably under load conditions. Environmental conditions play a major role in the scheduling of inspections and maintenance. If the initial inspection indicates that maintenance is not required at that time, the period may be extended to a more economical point. However, more frequent inspections and maintenance may be required if severe load conditions exist or if an inspection reveals heavy accumulations of dirt, moisture, or other foreign matter that might cause mechanical, insulation, or electrical failure. Mechanical failure would include an unintentional time delay in the circuit breakers tripping operation due to dry, dirty, or corroded pivot points or by hardened or sticky lubricant in the moving parts of the operating mechanism. The manufacturer's instructions must be followed in order to minimize the risk of any unintentional time delay. Figure 1.13 provides an illustration of the numerous points where lubrication would be required and where dirt, moisture, corrosion, or other foreign matter could accumulate causing a time delay in, or complete failure of, the circuit breaker operation.

Medium-voltage power circuit breakers: Most of the inspection and maintenance requirements for low-voltage power circuit breakers also apply to medium-voltage power circuit breakers. Manufacturers recommend that these breakers be removed from service and inspected at least once per year. They also state that the number and severity of interruptions may indicate the need for more frequent maintenance checks. Always follow the manufacturer's instructions because every breaker is different.

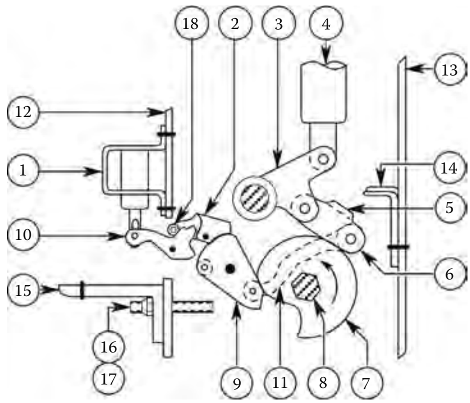


1. Shunt trip device	10. Ratchet wheel	19. Reset spring
2. Trip shaft	11. Hold pawl	20. Closing spring anchor
3. Roller constraining link	12. Drive plate	21. Pole shaft
4. Trip latch	13. Emergency charge pawl	22. Motor
5. Close cam	14. Oscillator	23. Emergency charge handle
6. Stop roller	15. Crank shaft	24. Motor crank and handle
7. Spring release latch	16. Emergency charge device	25. Moving contact assembly
8. Spring release device	17. Crank arm	26. Insulating link
9. Oscillator pawl	18. Closing spring	27. Main drive link

FIGURE 1.13
Power-operated mechanism of a cutler/hammer "DS" circuit breaker. (Courtesy of Cutler Hammer Corp.) (From Neitzel, D.K., *Circuit Breaker Maintenance*, Module 2, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX (revision 2007, p. 34). With permission.)

Figures 1.14 and 1.15 illustrate two types of operating mechanisms for medium-voltage power circuit breakers. These mechanisms are typical of the types used for air, vacuum, oil, and SF_6 circuit breakers. As can be seen in these figures, there are many points that would require cleaning and lubrication in order to function properly.

Protective relays: Relays must continuously monitor complex power circuit conditions, such as current and voltage magnitudes, phase angle relationships, direction of power flow, and frequency. When an intolerable circuit condition, such as a short circuit (or fault) is detected, the relay responds and closes its contacts, and the abnormal portion of the circuit is de-energized via the circuit breaker. The ultimate goal of protective relaying is to disconnect a faulty system element as quickly as possible. Sensitivity and selectivity are essential to ensure that the proper circuit breakers are tripped at the proper speed to clear the fault, minimize damage to equipment, and to reduce the hazards to personnel. A clear understanding of the possible causes of primary relaying failure is necessary for a better appreciation of the practices involved in backup relaying. One of several things may happen to prevent primary relaying from disconnecting a power system fault:



1. Tripping magnet
2. Tripping latch
3. Center pole unit lever
4. Main contact operating rod
5. Main link
6. Closing cam following roller
7. Closing cam
8. Crank shaft
9. Tripping cam
10. Tripping trigger
11. Tripping cam connecting link
12. Front panel
13. Mech back plate
14. Bumper
15. Dolly bracket
16. Tripping cam adjusting screw
17. Locking nut
18. Trip latch roller

FIGURE 1.14
Operating mechanism of stored energy air circuit breaker. (From Neitzel, D.K., *Circuit Breaker Maintenance*, Chapter 4, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX (revision 2006, p. 4-18). With permission.)

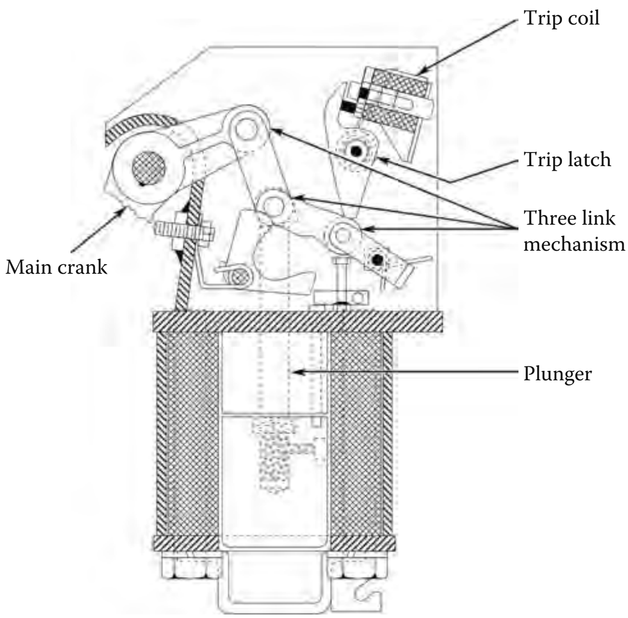


FIGURE 1.15
Solenoid-operated mechanism. (From Neitzel, D.K., *Circuit Breaker Maintenance*, Chapter 1, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX (revision 2006, p. 1-10). With permission.)

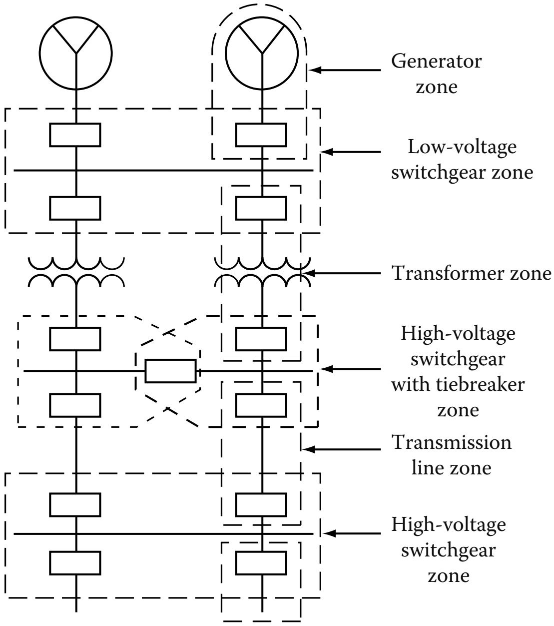


FIGURE 1.16
Primary relaying for an electric power system. (From Neitzel, D.K., *Protective Relay Maintenance,* Module 3, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX (revision 2006, p. 5). With permission.)

- Current or voltage supplies to the relays are incorrect
- DC tripping voltage supply is low or absent
- Protective relay malfunctions
- Tripping circuit or breaker mechanism hangs up

There are two groups of protective relays: primary and backup. Primary relaying is the so-called first line of defense, and backup relaying is sometimes considered to be a subordinate type of protection. Many companies, however, prefer to supply two lines of relaying and do not think of them as primary and backup. Figure 1.16 illustrates primary relaying. Circuit breakers are found in the connections to each power system element. This provision makes it possible to disconnect only the faulty part of the system. Each element of the system has zones of protection surrounding the element. A fault within the given zone should cause the tripping of all circuit breakers within that zone and no tripping of breakers outside that zone. Adjacent zones of protection can overlap, and in fact, this practice is preferred, because for failures anywhere in the zone, except in the overlap region, the minimum numbers of circuit breakers are tripped. In addition, if faults occur in the overlap region, several breakers respond and isolate the sections from the power system. Backup relaying is generally used only for protection against short circuits. Since most power system failures are caused by short circuits, short-circuit primary relaying is called on more often than most other types. Therefore, short-circuit primary relaying is more likely to fail.

Voltage and current transformers play a vital role in the power protection scheme. These transformers are used to convert primary current and voltages to secondary (120 V) current and voltages, and to allow current and voltage sensing devices, such as relays, meters, and other instruments to be isolated from the primary circuit. It should be clearly understood that the performance of a relay is only as good as the voltage and current transformers connected to it. A basic understanding of the operating characteristics, application, and function of instrument transformers is essential to a relay technician. Some overcurrent relays are equipped with an instantaneous overcurrent unit, which operates when the current reaches its minimum pickup point (see Figure 1.17). An instantaneous unit is a relay having no intentional time delay. Should an overcurrent of sufficient magnitude be applied to the relay, the instantaneous unit will operate and will trip the circuit breaker.

The instantaneous trip unit is a small, AC-operated clapper device. A magnetic armature, to which leaf-spring-mounted contacts are attached, is attracted to the magnetic core upon energization. When the instantaneous unit closes, the moving contacts bridge two stationary contacts and complete the trip circuit. The core screw, accessible from the top of the unit, provides the adjustable pickup range. Newer designs also feature tapped coils to allow even greater ranges of adjustment. The instantaneous unit, like the one

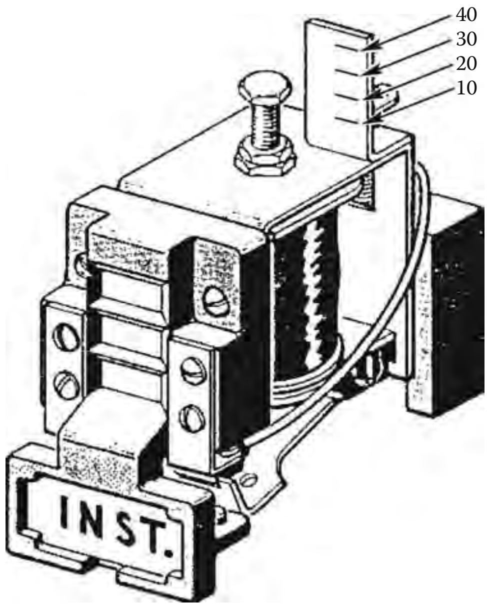


FIGURE 1.17
Instantaneous trip unit. (From Neitzel, D.K., *Protective Relay Maintenance,* Module 3, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX (revision 2006, p. 24). With permission.)

shown in Figure 1.17, is equipped with an indicator target. This indication shows that the relay has operated. It is important to know which relay has operated, and no relay target should be reset without the supervisor's knowledge and permission, or after it has been determined which relay operated to clear the fault. As can be seen, several things can go wrong that would prevent the instantaneous unit from operating properly. These things include an open or shunted current transformer, open coil, or dirty contacts. Protective relays, like circuit breakers, require periodic inspection, maintenance, and testing to function properly. Most manufacturers recommend that periodic inspections and maintenance on the induction and electromagnetic type relays be performed at intervals of 1–2 years. The intervals between periodic inspection and maintenance will vary depending upon environment, type of relay, and the user's experience with periodic testing. The periodic inspections, maintenance, and testing are intended to ensure that the protective relays are functioning properly and have not deviated from the design settings. If deviations are found, the relay must be retested and serviced as described in the manufacturer's instructions.

1.9.2 Failure Statistics

Several studies on electrical equipment failures have been completed over the years by IEEE. These studies have generated failure statistics on electrical distribution system equipment and components. IEEE Standard 493 (Gold Book) "IEEE Recommended Practice for the Design of Reliable Industrial and Commercial Power Systems" contains the information and statistics from these studies and can be used to provide failure data of electrical equipment and components such as circuit breakers. One key study that was completed and yields reliability data on circuit breakers was completed in 1974. The results of this study were based on low- and medium-voltage power circuit breakers (draw out and fixed) as well as fixed mounted molded-case circuit breakers. The results of the study indicated that

- 32% of all circuit breakers failed while in service
- 9% of all circuit breakers failed while opening
- 7% of all circuit breakers failed due to damage while successfully opening
- 42% of all circuit breakers failed by opening when it should not have opened
- 77% of fixed mounted circuit breakers (0–600 V including molded case) failed while in service
- 18% of all circuit breakers had a mechanical failure
- 28% of all circuit breakers had an electric-protective device failure
- 23% of all circuit breakers failures were suspected to be caused by manufacturer defective component

- 23% of all circuit breaker failures were suspected to be caused by inadequate maintenance
- 73% of all circuit breaker failures required round-the-clock all-out efforts

A 1996 IEEE survey was conducted on low-voltage power circuit breakers and the results concluded that

- 19.4% of low-voltage power circuit breakers with electromechanical trip units had unacceptable operation
- 10.7% of low-voltage power circuit breakers with solid-state trip units had unacceptable operation

Reviewing the data from the IEEE studies, it can be seen that nearly one-third of all circuit breakers failed while in service and thus would not have been identified unless proper maintenance was performed. In addition, 16% of all circuit breakers failed or were damaged while opening. The fact that 42% of all circuit breakers failed, by opening when they should not have opened, suggests improper circuit breaker settings or a lack of selective coordination to be the problem. This type of circuit breaker failure can significantly affect plant processes and could result in a total plant shutdown. Also of significance is that a very large percentage of fixed mounted circuit breakers, including molded-case had a very high failure rate of 77.8%. This is most likely due to the fact that maintenance of this style of device is often overlooked, but certainly is just as important. The fact that 18% of all circuit breakers had a mechanical failure and 28% had an electrical protective device failure suggests that both the mechanical linkages, as well as the trip units, need to be maintained. Furthermore, although mechanical maintenance is important, proper testing of the trip unit is much more critical. Also of importance, is the realization that maintenance and testing is needed because nearly one-quarter of all circuit breaker failures were caused by a manufacturer's defective component and nearly another one-quarter of all circuit breaker failures were due to inadequate maintenance. Thus, if proper maintenance and testing is performed, potentially 50% of failures could be eliminated or identified before a problem occurs. But perhaps the most important issue for an end user is downtime. With regard to this concern, the study indicated 73% of all circuit breaker failures required round-the-clock all-out efforts. This could most likely be greatly reduced if PM was performed on a regular basis. The results from the 1996 IEEE study show that technology has improved the failure rate of low-voltage power circuit breakers and could potentially be cut by almost half, but maintenance and testing would still be needed.

1.9.3 Flash Hazard Analysis

Maintenance and testing is also essential to ensure proper protection of equipment and personnel. With regard to personnel protection, NFPA 70E and OSHA require a flash hazard analysis be performed before anyone approaches exposed electrical conductors or circuit parts that have not been placed in an electrically safe work condition. In addition, it requires a flash protection boundary be established. All calculations for determining the incident energy of an arc, and for establishing a flash protection boundary, require the arc clearing time. This clearing time is derived from the engineering coordination study which is based on what the protective devices are supposed to do. If, for example, a low-voltage power circuit breaker had not been operated or maintained for several years and the lubrication had become sticky or hardened, the circuit breaker could take several additional cycles, seconds, minutes, or longer to clear a fault condition. The following are two specific examples that illustrate the important role protective trip devices play in the calculation of incident energy:

For the two examples, flash hazard analyses will be performed using a 20,000 A short circuit with the worker being 18 in. from the arc for a condition "arc in a cubic box" as described in Appendix D.6.2 of NFPA 70E-2004:

Example #1:

In this example, the breaker opening time is assumed to be five cycles, or 0.083 s (83 ms). The estimated incident energy for an arc in a cube box (20 in. on each side, open on one end) is applicable to an arc flashes emanating from within a switchgear, MCC, or other electrical equipment enclosure. The incident energy is given by the following equation:

$$E_{MB} = 1038.7 D_B^{-1.4738} t_A [0.0093F^2 - 0.3453F + 5.9675]$$

where

E_{MB} is the maximum 20 in. cubic box incident energy (cal/cm^2)
D_B is the distance from arc electrodes (for distances 18 in. and greater) (in.)
t_A is the arc duration (s)
F is the short-circuit current (for the range of 16–50 kA) (kA)
For example #1, the following data apply:
D_B = 18 in.
t_A = 0.083 s (five cycles)
F = 20 kA (assume)
Substituting the data in the above equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{MB} &= 1038.7 \times 18^{-1.4738} \times 0.083 [0.0093F^2 - 0.3453F + 5.9675] \\ &= 1038.7 \times 0.0141 \times 0.083 [0.0093 \times 400 - 0.3453 \times 20 + 5.9675] \\ &= 1.4636 \times [2.7815] = 3.5 \text{ cal/cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

From NFPA 70E, Table 130.7(C)(11), we find that it requires category 1 protection (FR shirt and FR pants or FR coverall) plus a hard hat and safety glasses to work at this location.

Example #2:

In example 2, all data remain same except for the breaker which, due to a sticky mechanism, now takes an unintentional time delay of 30 cycles, i.e., 0.5 s (500 ms) to open.

Substituting the new breaker opening time in the above equation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{MB} &= 1038.7 \times 18^{-1.4738} \times 0.5\,[0.0093F^2 - 0.3453F + 5.9675] \\
&= 1038.7 \times 0.0141 \times 0.5\,[0.0093 \times 400 - 0.3453 \times 20 + 5.9675] \\
&= 7.323 \times [2.7815] = 20.37\ \mathrm{cal/cm^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

From NFPA 70E, Table 130.7(C)(11), we find that it now requires category 3 protection (cotton underwear plus FR shirt and FR pants plus FR coverall, or cotton underwear plus two FR coveralls); category 3 also requires a hard hat, safety glasses or goggles, flash suit hood, hearing protection, leather gloves, and leather work shoes.

Based on the calculation of example 1, the worker is protected by using PPE category 1 based on what the system (breaker opening) is supposed to do (i.e., open in 0.083 s or five cycles); however, as a result of an unintentional time delay, due to lack of maintenance, the breaker opens in 0.5 s (30 cycles) instead of 0.083 s, the worker could be seriously injured or killed because he or she was underprotected because the worker is not wearing the correct PPE category 3.

As can be seen from this simple example, maintenance now becomes extremely important to an electrical safety program. Maintenance must be performed according to the manufacturer's instructions in order to minimize the risk of having an unintentional time delay in the operation of the circuit protective devices and breakers.

Additionally, Section 110.16 of the NEC titled *Flash Protection* states: "Switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, meter socket enclosures, and MCCs that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall be field marked to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc-flash hazards. The marking shall be located so as to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment."

"FPN No. 1: NFPA 70E, *Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace*, provides assistance in determining severity of potential exposure, planning safe work practices, and selecting personal protective equipment."

Figure 1.18 is an illustration of the minimum label that would be required based on the NEC 110.16. However, the minimum label does not provide sufficient information for the worker therefore the label shown in Figure 1.19 is recommended as a minimum.

In view of the regulatory requirements and labeling of electrical equipment for arc-flash hazard, it has now become extremely important to properly

WARNING

Arc Flash Hazard.
Appropriate PPE Required.
Failure To Comply Can Result In Death Or Injury.
Refer To NFPA 70 E.

FIGURE 1.18
NEC 110.16 required label. (From Neitzel, D.K., Various Electrical Safety Course Textbooks, NEC 110.16 Required label, AVO Training Institute, Inc. (revision 2007). With permission.)

maintain electrical protective devices and breakers as was illustrated in the examples above. An EPM program is a must in order to reduce hazards to employees, as well as to reduce the risk of failure or malfunction of electrical systems and equipment. The information on the elements for setting up a maintenance program was discussed in earlier sections of this chapter. Also, additional guidance on maintenance programs and frequency of maintenance for various electrical equipment can be obtained from NFPA 70B, *Recommended Practice for Electrical Equipment Maintenance*. With the proper mixture of common sense, training, manufacturers' literature, and spare parts, proper maintenance can be performed and power systems kept in a safe, reliable condition. Circuit breakers, if installed within their ratings and properly maintained, should operate trouble-free for many years. However, if operated outside of their ratings or without proper maintenance, catastrophic failure of the power system, circuit breaker, or switchgear can

WARNING

Arc Flash and Shock Hazard Required

302 Inch	Flash Hazard Boundary
76.1	cal/cm^2 Flash Hazard at 18 Inches
	****Dangerous!!! No FR Class Found
450 VAC	Shock Hazard When Cover Is Removed
42 Inch	Limited Approach
12 Inch	Restricted Approach
1 Inch	Prohibited Approach

Bus name: B6-480, Prot Device: SUB-C MAIN

FIGURE 1.19
Recommended label for arc-flash hazard. (From Neitzel, D.K., Various Electrical Safety Course Textbooks, Recommended Label for Arc-Flash Hazard, AVO Training Institute, Inc. (revision 2007). With permission.)

occur causing not only the destruction of the equipment but serious injury or even death of employees working in the area. In order to protect electrical equipment and people, proper electrical equipment PM must be performed. In addition to the manufacture's literature, industry standards and guides and books, such as this book, exist to assist users with electrical equipment maintenance and testing. When the overcurrent protective devices are properly maintained and tested for proper calibration and operation, equipment damage and arc-flash hazards can be minimized as expected. The regulatory requirements on arc-flash hazard and how to perform arc-flash hazard analysis are given in Sections 13.2 and 13.3, respectively.

2

Direct-Current Voltage Testing of Electrical Equipment

2.1 Introduction

This chapter covers direct current (DC) tests ordinarily performed in the field for acceptance and maintenance of electrical equipment and apparatus. The information provided by these tests will indicate whether any corrective maintenance or replacement of installed equipment is necessary, assess if the newly installed equipment can be safely energized, and chart the gradual deterioration of the equipment over its service life.

The DC test methods discussed in this chapter cover transformers, insulating liquids, cables, switchgear, motors, and generators. It is important to have the proper equipment and trained operators when conducting these tests. Also, if any test is to provide optimum benefits, it is essential to record all test data and maintenance actions for further analysis and future reference. Furthermore, the test equipment should be maintained in good condition and used by qualified operators. When test equipment is used to calibrate other equipment, it should have twice the accuracy of the equipment under test. Moreover, the test equipment should be calibrated at regular intervals to assure the accuracy of test data.

The test voltage levels and methods, as described in this chapter, are mostly in accordance with industry standards for the types of equipment discussed. The DC voltage values correspond to the alternating current (AC) test voltages as specified by the applicable industry standards. It is recommended that the manufacturer of the equipment be consulted for specific test and test voltage levels when the exact construction of the equipment under test is not known. Where definitive information for a particular equipment cannot be obtained, it is advised that the suggested DC test voltage be based on the rated AC circuit voltage in order to avoid possible damage to the insulation system. It is also important to observe certain additional precautions when conducting DC high-voltage tests; these are listed in Section 2.11.

Electrical phenomena in insulation when subjected to DC voltage were briefly discussed in Chapter 1. Before discussing various DC voltage tests, we need to understand better the electrical phenomena in dielectrics when subjected to DC voltage, which are discussed in the following section.

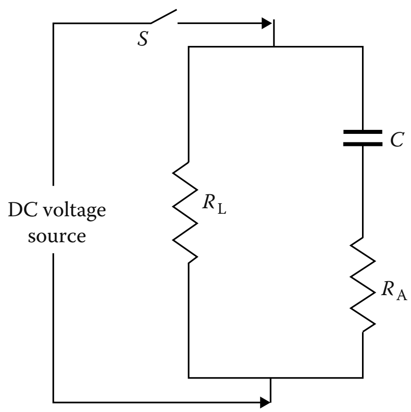
2.2 DC Voltage Testing of Insulation

When DC voltage is applied to an insulation, the electric field stress gives rise to current conduction and electrical polarization. Consider an elementary circuit as shown in Figure 2.1, which shows a DC voltage source, a switch, and an insulation specimen. When the switch is closed, the insulation becomes electrified and a very high current flows at the instant the switch is closed. However, this current immediately drops in value, and then decreases at a slower rate until it reaches a nearly constant value. The current drawn by the insulation may be analyzed into several components as follows:

- Capacitance charging current
- Dielectric absorption current
- Surface leakage current
- Partial discharge current (corona)
- Volumetric leakage current

Capacitance charging current: The capacitance charging current is high as the DC voltage is applied and can be calculated by the formula

$$i_e = \left(\frac{E}{R}\right)e^{-t/RC}$$



C represents charging current
R_A represents absorption current
R_L represents volumetric leakage current (dielectric loss)

FIGURE 2.1
Electrical circuit of insulation under DC voltage test.

where
i_e is the capacitance charging current
E is the voltage in kilovolts
R is the resistance in megohms
C is the capacitance in microfarads
t is the time in seconds
e is Napierian logarithmic base

The charging current is a function of time and will decrease as the time of the application of voltage increases. It is the initial charging current when voltage is applied and therefore not of any value for test evaluation. Test readings should not be taken until this current has decreased to a sufficiently low value.

Dielectric absorption current: The dielectric absorption current is also high as the test voltage is applied and decreases as the voltage application time increases, but at a slower rate than the capacitance charging current. This current is not as high as the capacitance charging current. The absorption current can be divided into two currents called reversible and irreversible charging currents. This reversible charging current can be calculated by the formula:

$$i_a = VCDT^{-n}$$

where
i_a is the dielectric absorption current
V is the test voltage in kilovolts
C is the capacitance in microfarads
D is the proportionately constant
T is the time in seconds
n is a constant

The irreversible charging current is of the same general form as the reversible charging current, but is much smaller in magnitude. The irreversible charging current is lost in the insulation and thus is not recoverable. Again, sufficient time should be allowed before recording test data so that the reversible absorption current has decreased to a low value.

Surface leakage: The surface leakage current is due to the conduction on the surface of the insulation where the conductor emerges and points of ground potential. This current is not desired in the test results and should therefore be eliminated by carefully cleaning the surface of the conductor to eliminate the leakage paths, or should be captured and guarded out of the meter reading.

Partial discharge current: The partial discharge current, also known as corona current, is caused by overstressing of air at sharp corners of the conductor due to high test voltage. This current is not desirable and should be eliminated by the use of stress control shielding at such points during tests. This current does not occur at lower voltages (below 4000 volts), such as insulation resistance test voltages.

Volumetric leakage current: The volumetric leakage current that flows through the insulation volume itself is of primary importance. This is the current that is used to evaluate the conditions of the insulation system under test. Sufficient time should be allowed for the volumetric current to stabilize before test readings are recorded. The total current, consisting of various leakage currents as described above, is shown in Figure 2.2.

2.2.1 Dielectric Phenomena and Polarization

The dielectrics have the property of both temporary and permanent absorption of electrical charges and property of conduction. When a voltage is applied to a dielectric, forces on the positive and negative charges inherent in the particles which make up the dielectric tend to orient the particles in line with the applied field. Some dielectric materials have molecules that have uneven number of atoms, that is, having asymmetrical arrangement of charges. When such a molecule is placed in an electrical field, it will migrate

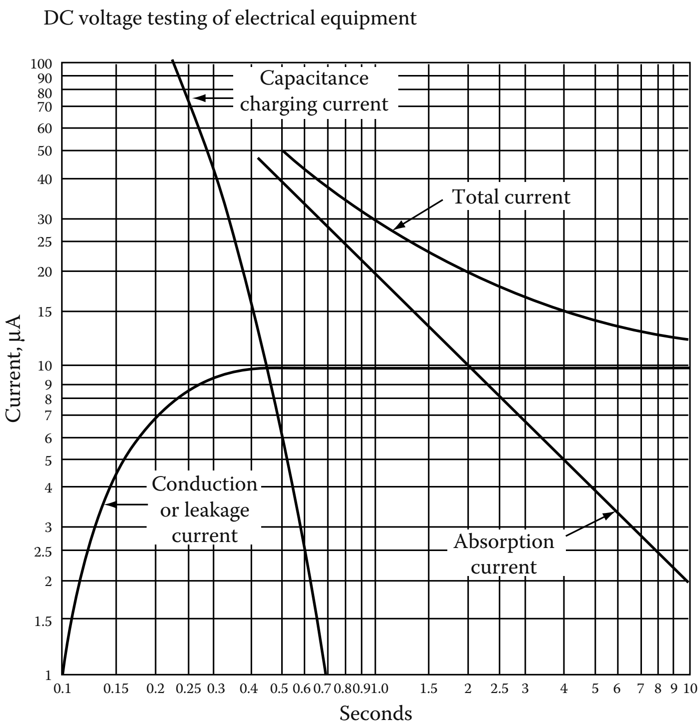


FIGURE 2.2
Various leakage currents due to the application of DC high voltage to an insulation system.

in an electric field, thus become polarized with the electric field. Such a molecule is called a dipole. Dipoles play an important role in the electrical characteristics of the insulation. A dipole may be represented by a particle having small positive charge at one end and a small negative charge at the other end. When these dipoles are subjected to DC voltage, they are polarized and become aligned with respect to positive and negative polarity of the DC voltage. This phenomenon is known as dipole polarization. Polarization phenomenon is influenced strongly by the material properties, structure, and condition of the insulation.

On the other hand, charged particles, that is, particles with positive and negative charges, which are not interrupted by interfacial barriers, and can travel through the dielectric from one electrode to the other, constitute the leakage current, and are not part of the polarization phenomenon.

After a time when the applied voltage is removed from the dielectric, the polarized molecules will eventually revert to their initial random arrangement so that the polarization approaches zero. The time it takes for the polarization to drop to zero when the dielectric is short-circuited is known as relaxation time. It should be noted that the large dielectrics have a much longer relaxation time, and appropriate measures should be taken to discharge the released energy (voltage and current) to ground, which is given by the polarized molecules when they revert to their original state.

2.2.2 Advantages and Disadvantages of DC Voltage Testing

DC voltage testing is commonly used for testing of electrical equipment and apparatus. DC voltage testing has advantages and disadvantages which vary in importance with the specific circumstances. The advantages and disadvantages of DC voltage are summarized below.

2.2.2.1 Advantages

- DC test is preferred on equipment whose charging capacitance is very high, such as cables.
- DC voltage stress is considered much less damaging to insulation than AC voltages.
- Time of voltage application is not as critical with DC voltage as with AC voltage.
- Test can be stopped before equipment failure occurs.
- Measurements can be taken concurrently.
- Historical data can be compiled and made available for evaluation.
- It is not necessary to make a separate insulation resistance test prior to making a DC overpotential test.
- Size and weight of equipment is significantly reduced compared to AC voltage test.

2.2.2.2 Disadvantages

- Stress distribution for transformers, motors, and generator winding is different for DC voltage than is for AC voltage.
- Residual charge after a DC voltage test must be carefully discharged.
- Time required to conduct a DC high-potential (hi-pot) test is longer than for an AC hi-pot test.
- Literature governing DC testing of cables suggest possible harmful effects hi-pot DC testing may have on some types of cables.
- Defects, undetectable with DC, can cause failure under AC voltage test.
- Voltage may not stress uniformly the insulation system.
- Temperature and voltage dependence of resistivity.
- Space charge formation—future potential failures.

2.3 DC Testing Methods

After seeing how insulation behaves when DC voltage is applied to it, let us now take a look at the various tests that are conducted with this voltage. Two tests can be conducted on solid insulation with the application of DC voltage:

- Insulation resistance testing
- High-potential (Hi-pot) voltage testing

2.3.1 Insulation Resistance Testing

This test may be conducted at applied voltages of 100–15,000 V. The instrument used is a megohmmeter, either hand cranked, motor driven, or electronic, which indicates the insulation resistance in megohms. An electronic megohmmeter is shown in Figure 2.3a. The quality of insulation is a variable, dependent upon temperature, humidity, and other environmental factors. Therefore, all readings must be corrected to the standard temperature for the class of equipment under test. The temperature correction factors for various electrical apparatus are shown in Table 2.1. The megohm value of insulation resistance is inversely proportional to the volume of insulation being tested. As an example, a cable 100 ft. long would have one-tenth the insulation resistance of cable 1000 ft. long, provided other conditions were identical. This test can be useful in giving an indication of deteriorating trends in the insulation system. The insulation resistance values by themselves neither indicate the weakness of the insulation nor its total dielectric strength. However, they can indicate the contamination of the insulation and trouble ahead within the insulation system if a downward trend continued in the insulation resistance values.

(a) (b)

FIGURE 2.3
(a) Electronic megohmmeter, 5000 V and (b) 15 kV DC dielectric test set. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

Insulation resistance measurement values can be accomplished by four common test methods:

- Short-time readings
- Time-resistance readings (dielectric absorption ratio [DAR] test)
- Polarization index (PI) test
- Step-voltage readings

2.3.1.1 Short-Time Readings

This test simply measures the insulation resistance value for a short duration of time, such as 30 or 60 s, through a spot reading that lies on the curve of increasing insulation resistance values. The reading only allows a rough check of the insulation condition. However, comparison of this value with previous values is of importance. A continued downward trend is indicative of insulation deterioration ahead. For interpreting the results, the values used for comparison should all be normalized to 20°C with humidity effects considered.

2.3.1.2 Time–Resistance Readings

A good insulation system shows a continued increase in its resistance value over the period of time in which voltage is applied. On the other hand, an insulation system that is contaminated with moisture, dirt, and the like will show a low resistance value. In good insulation, the effects of absorption current decreases as time increases. In bad insulation, the absorption

TABLE 2.1

Temperature Correction Factors

Temperature		Rotating Equip. Class		Transformers		Cables							
°C	°F	A	B	Oil-Filled	Dry Type	Code Natural	Code GR-S	Perf. Natural	Heat Resist. Natural	Heat Resist. and Perf. GR-S	Ozone Resist. Natural GR-S	Varnished Cambric	Impregnated Paper
0	32	0.21	0.40	0.25	0.40	0.25	0.12	0.47	0.42	0.22	0.14	0.10	0.28
5	41	0.31	0.50	0.36	0.45	0.40	0.23	0.60	0.56	0.37	0.26	0.20	0.43
10	50	0.45	0.63	0.50	0.50	0.61	0.46	0.76	0.73	0.58	0.49	0.43	0.64
15.6	60	0.71	0.81	0.74	0.75	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
20	68	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.47	1.83	1.24	1.28	1.53	1.75	1.94	1.43
25	77	1.48	1.25	1.40	1.30	2.27	3.67	1.58	1.68	2.48	3.29	4.08	2.17
30	86	2.20	1.58	1.98	1.60	3.52	7.32	2.00	2.24	4.03	6.20	8.62	3.20
35	95	3.24	2.00	2.80	2.05	5.45	14.60	2.55	2.93	6.53	11.65	18.20	4.77
40	104	4.80	2.50	3.95	2.50	8.45	29.20	3.26	3.85	10.70	25.00	38.50	7.15
45	113	7.10	3.15	5.60	3.25	13.10	54.00	4.15	5.08	17.10	41.40	81.00	10.70
50	122	10.45	3.98	7.85	4.00	20.00	116.00	5.29	6.72	27.85	78.00	170.00	16.00
55	131	15.50	5.00	11.20	5.20			6.72	8.83	45.00		345.00	24.00
60	140	22.80	6.30	15.85	6.40			8.58	11.62	73.00		775.00	36.00
65	149	34.00	7.90	22.40	8.70				15.40	118.00			
70	158	50.00	10.00	31.75	10.00				20.30	193.00			
75	167	74.00	12.60	44.70	13.00				26.60	313.00			

Note: Corrected to 20°C for rotating equipment and transformers; 15.6°C for cable.

effect is perpetuated by high leakage current. The time-resistance method is independent of temperature and equipment size. It can provide conclusive results as to the condition of the insulation. The ratio of time-resistance readings can be used to indicate the condition of the insulation system. The ratio of a 60 s reading to a 30 s reading is called the DAR:

$$\text{DAR} = \frac{\text{Resistance reading at 60 s}}{\text{Resistance reading at 30 s}}$$

A DAR ratio below 1.25 is cause for investigation and possible repair of the electrical apparatus. Usually, the DAR readings are confined to the hand-driven megohmmeter.

2.3.1.3 PI Test

The PI test is a specialized application of the dielectric absorption test. The PI is the ratio of the insulation resistance at 10 min to the insulation resistance at 1 min. A PI of less than 1 indicates equipment deterioration and the need for immediate maintenance. This test is used for dry insulation systems such as dry type transformers, cables, rotating machines, etc.

2.3.1.4 Step-Voltage Readings (DC Voltage Tip-Up Test)

In this method, voltage is applied in steps to the insulation under test by a way of a controlled voltage method. As voltage is increased, the weak insulation will show lower resistance that was not obvious at lower voltage levels. Moisture, dirt, and other contaminants can be detected at lower voltage levels, that is, below operating voltages, whereas aging and physical damage in clean, dry insulation systems can only be revealed at higher voltages. The step-voltage test is very valuable when conducted on a regular periodic basis.

2.3.2 High-Potential Voltage Test

A DC hi-pot voltage test is a voltage applied across the insulation at or above the DC equivalent of the 60 Hz operating crest voltage (i.e., DC value = 1.41 times RMS value). This test can be applied as a step-voltage test. When the high-potential voltage is applied as a dielectric absorption test, the maximum voltage is applied gradually over a period of 60–90 s. The maximum voltage is then held for 5 min with leakage current readings taken each minute. When this test is applied as a step-voltage test, the maximum voltage is applied in a number of equal increments, usually not less than eight, with each voltage step being held for an equal interval of time. The time interval between each step should be 1–4 min. At the end of each interval, a leakage current or insulation resistance reading is taken before proceeding to the next step. A plot of test voltage versus leakage current or insulation resistance can then be drawn to indicate the condition of the insulation system. Routine maintenance tests are conducted with a maximum voltage at or below 75% of the maximum test voltage permitted for acceptance tests, or at 60% of the factory test voltage. A 15 kV DC dielectric test set is shown in Figure 2.3b.

Dielectric absorption test: The dielectric absorption test is conducted at voltages much higher than the usual insulation resistance test values and can exceed 100 kV. This test is an extension of the hi-pot test. Under this test, the voltage is applied for an extended period of time, from 5 to 15 min. Periodic readings are taken of the insulation resistance or leakage current. The test is evaluated on the basis of insulation resistance. If insulation is in good condition, the apparent insulation resistance will increase as the test progresses. The dielectric absorption tests are independent of the volume and the temperature of the insulation under test.

2.4 Transformers

The DC testing of transformers involves testing of the solid winding insulation and the insulating fluids used in transformers. The testing of insulating fluids is covered in Chapter 4. The testing of solid winding insulation complements other transformer testing. The solid winding insulation tests are not conclusive in themselves, but provide valuable information on winding conditions, such as moisture content, and carbonization. The DC tests are considered nondestructive even though at times they may cause a winding failure. It should be pointed out that a winding failure results from an incipient failure that the test was supposed to detect. If it had gone undetected, it might have occurred at an unplanned time. The DC tests conducted for transformer winding insulation are discussed in the following section.

2.4.1 Insulation Resistance Measurement

This test is performed at or above rated voltage to determine if there are low resistance paths to ground or between winding to winding as a result of winding insulation deterioration. The test measurement values are affected by variables such as temperature, humidity, test voltage, and size of transformer. This test should be conducted before and after repair or when maintenance is performed. The test data should be recorded for future comparative purposes. The test values should be normalized to 20°C for comparison purposes. The general rule of thumb that is used for acceptable values for safe energization is 1 MΩ per 1000 V of applied test voltage plus 1 MΩ. Sample resistance values of good insulation systems are shown in Table 2.2. The test procedures are as follows:

TABLE 2.2

Typical Insulation Resistance Values for Power and Distribution Transformers

Transformer Winding Voltage (kV)	Winding Ground (MΩ)				
	20°C	**30°C**	**40°C**	**50°C**	**60° C**
6.6	400	200	100	50	25
6.6–19	800	400	200	100	50
22–45	1000	500	250	125	65
≥66	1200	600	300	100	75

1. Do not disconnect the ground connection to the transformer tank and core. Make sure that the transformer tank and core are grounded.
2. Disconnect all high-voltage, low-voltage, and neutral connections, lightning arresters, fan systems, meters, or any low-voltage control systems that are connected to the transformer winding.
3. Before beginning the test, jumper together all high-voltage bushings, making sure that the jumpers are clear of all metal and grounded parts. Also jumper together all low-voltage and neutral bushings, making sure jumpers are clear of all metal and grounded parts.
4. Use a megohmmeter with a minimum scale of 20,000 MΩ.
5. Resistance measurements are then made between each set of windings and ground. The windings that are to be measured must have its ground removed in order to measure its insulation resistance.
6. Megohmmeter reading should be maintained for a period of 1 min. Make the following readings for two-winding transformers:

    a. High-voltage winding to low-voltage winding and to ground
    b. High-voltage winding to ground
    c. Low-voltage winding to high-voltage winding and to ground
    d. Low-voltage winding to ground
    e. High-voltage winding to low-voltage winding

The connections for these tests are shown in Figures 2.4a through e and 2.5a through e for single-phase and three-phase transformers, respectively.

Megohmmeter readings should be recorded along with the test temperature (°C). The readings should be corrected to 20°C by the correction factors shown in Table 2.1. If the corrected field test values are one-half or more of the factory insulation readings or 1000 MΩ, whichever is less, the transformer insulation system is considered safe for a hi-pot test.

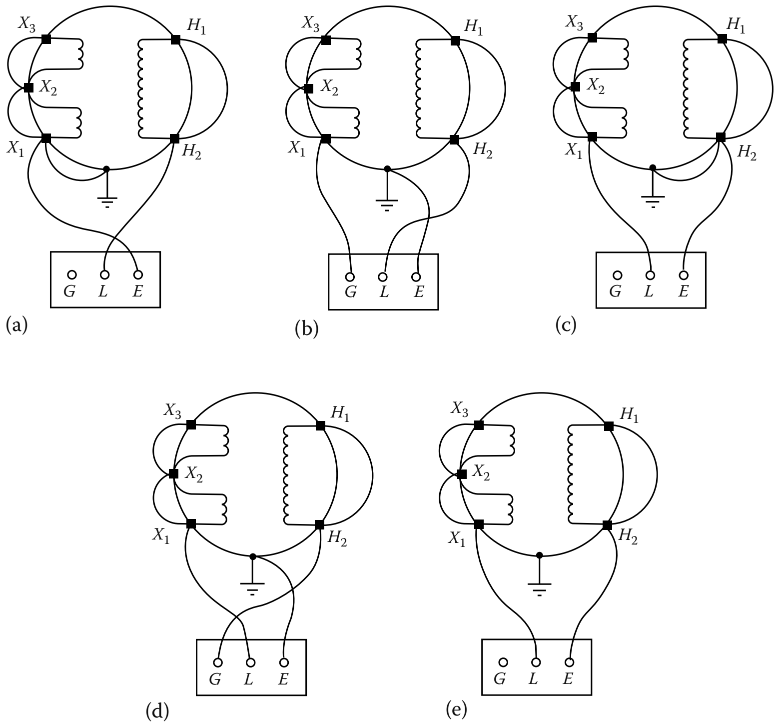


FIGURE 2.4
Test connections for insulation resistance of a single-phase transformer. *Note*: In figure (e) reverse the L and E leads to measure from high-winding to low-winding.

For three-winding transformers, test should be made as follows:

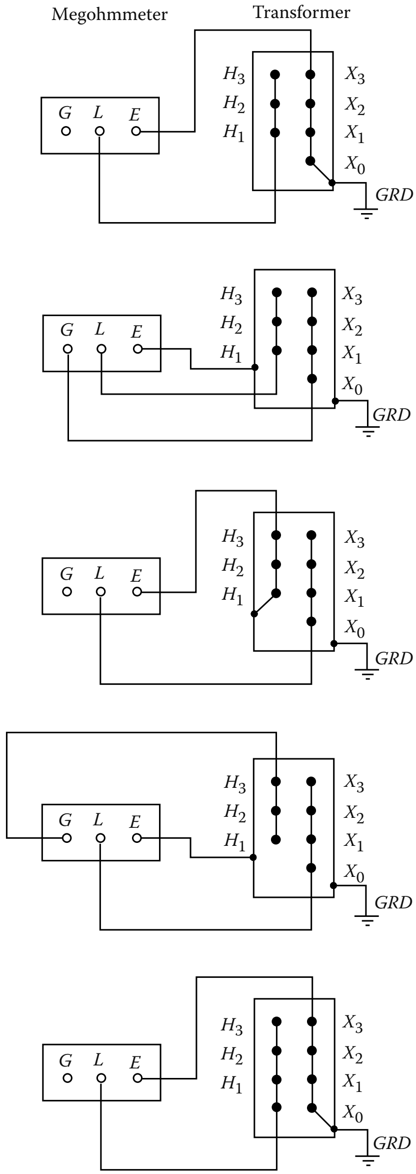
- High to low, tertiary and ground (H-LTG)
- Tertiary to high, low and ground (T-HLG)
- Low to high, tertiary and ground (L-HTG)
- High, low, and tertiary to ground (HLT-G)
- High and tertiary to low and ground (HT-LG)
- Low and tertiary to high and ground (LT-HG)
- High and low to tertiary and ground (HL-TG)

Do not make the megohm test of the transformer winding without the transformer liquid because the values of insulation resistance in air will be much less than in the liquid. Also, do not make the insulation resistance test of the transformer when it is under vacuum because of the possibility of flashover to ground.

The test connections shown in Figure 2.5a, c, and e are most frequently used. The test connections in Figure 2.5b and d give more precise results. The readings obtained in the connections in Figure 2.5a and b are practically equal to readings in test connections in Figure 2.5c and d, respectively.

DC voltage testing of electrical equipment

Winding connections		
Line	Earth	Guard
L	*E*	*G*
H	*X, GRD*	
H	*GRD*	*X*
X	*H, GRD*	–
X	*GRD*	*H*
H	*X*	–



(a) (b) (c) (d) (e)

FIGURE 2.5
Test connections for insulation resistance of a three-phase transformer: (a) connection for high winding to low winding to ground; (b) connection for high winding to ground and low winding guarded; (c) connection for low winding to high winding to ground; (d) connection for low winding to ground and high winding guarded; and (e) connection for high winding to low winding.

Acceptable insulation resistance values for dry and compound-filled transformers should be comparable to those for Class A rotating machinery, although no standard minimum values are available.

Oil-filled transformers or voltage regulators present a special problem in that the condition of the oil has a marked influence on the insulation resistance of the windings.

In the absence of more reliable data the following formula is suggested:

$$\mathrm{IR} = \frac{CE}{\sqrt{\mathrm{kVA}}}$$

where

IR is the minimum 1 min 500 V DC insulation resistance in megohms from winding to ground, with other winding or windings guarded, or from winding to winding with core guarded

C is a constant for 20°C measurements

E is the voltage rating of winding under test

kVA is the rated capacity of winding under test

Values of *C* at 20°C

	60 Hz	**25 Hz**
Tanked oil-filled type	1.5	1.0
Untanked oil-filled type	30.0	20.0
Dry or compound-filled type	30.0	20.0

This formula is intended for single-phase transformers. If the transformers under test is one of the three-phase type, and the three individual windings are being tested as one, then

E is the voltage rating of one of the single-phase windings (phase to phase for delta connected units and phase to neutral or star connected units)

kVA is the rated capacity of the completed three-phase winding under test

2.4.2 Dielectric Absorption Test

The dielectric absorption test is an extension of the transformer winding insulation resistance measurement test. The test consists of applying voltage for 10 min and taking readings of resistance measurements at 1 min intervals. The resistance values measured during this test are plotted on log–log paper with coordinates of resistance versus time. The slope of the curve for a good insulation system is a straight line increasing with respect to time, whereas a poor insulation system will have a curve that flattens out with respect to time. There are two tests that are conducted under dielectric absorption test. These are PI and DAR tests, which are discussed in Section 2.3.

TABLE 2.3

Dielectric Test Values for Routine Maintenance of Liquid-Filled Transformers

Transformer Winding Rated Voltage (kV)	Factory Test AC Voltage (kV)	Routine Maintenance DC Voltage (kV)
1.2	10	10.40
2.4	15	15.60
4.8	19	19.76
8.7	26	27.04
15.0	34	35.36
18.0	40	41.60
25.0	50	52.00
34.5	70	72.80

2.4.3 DC High-Potential Test

The DC hi-pot test is applied at above the rated voltage of a transformer to evaluate the condition of winding insulation. The DC high-voltage test is not recommended on power transformers above 34.5 kV; instead the AC hi-pot test should be used. Generally, for routine maintenance of transformers, this test is not employed because of the possibility of damage to the winding insulation. However, this test is made for acceptance and after repair of transformers. If the hi-pot test is to be conducted for routine maintenance, the AC test values should not exceed 65% of factory AC test value. The routine maintenance AC voltage value should be converted to an equivalent DC voltage value by multiplying it by 1.6, that is, 1.6 times the AC value for periodic testing (i.e., 1.6 × 65 = 104% of AC factory test value). The DC hi-pot test can be applied as a step-voltage test where readings of leakage current are taken for each step. If excessive leakage current is noticed, voltage can be backed off before further damage takes place. For this reason, the DC hi-pot test is considered to be a nondestructive test. Some companies conduct the AC hi-pot test at rated voltage for 3 min for periodic testing instead of the 65% of factory test voltage. The hi-pot test values for DC voltages are shown in Table 2.3.

The procedure for conducting this test is as follows (refer to Figure 2.6a and b for test connections):

- Transformer must have passed the insulation resistance test immediately prior to starting this test.
- Make sure transformer case and core are grounded.
- Disconnect all high-voltage, low-voltage, and neutral connections, low-voltage control systems, fan systems, and meters connected to the transformer winding and core.
- Short-circuit with jumpers together all high-voltage bushings and all low-voltage bushings to ground as discussed under "Insulation resistance measurements."

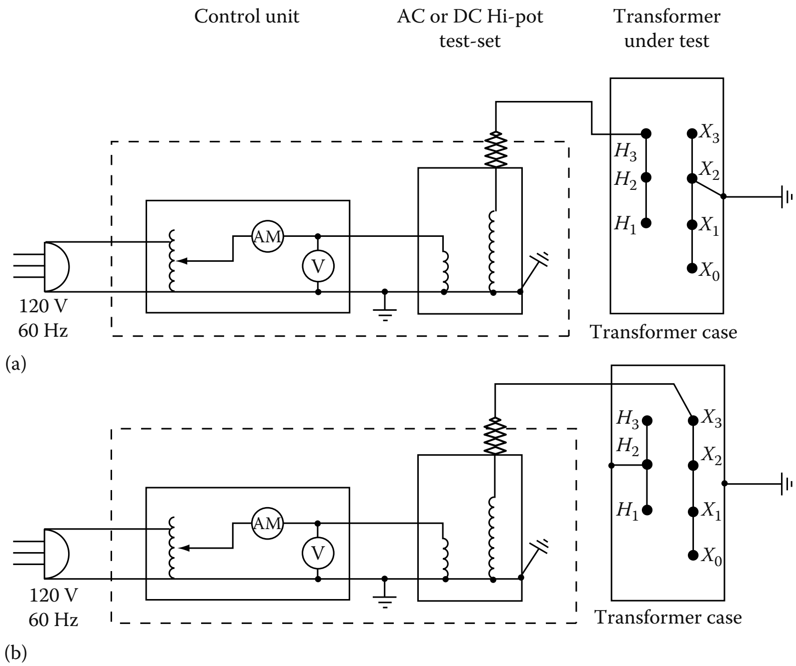


FIGURE 2.6
Transformer high voltage (hi-pot) test connection: (a) high winding hi-pot test connection and (b) low winding hi-pot test connections.

- Connect hi-pot test set between high-voltage winding and ground. Gradually increase test voltage to the desired value. Allow test voltage duration of 1 min, after which gradually decrease voltage to zero.
- Remove low-voltage to ground jumper and connect hi-pot test set between low-voltage winding and ground. Also connect the short-circuited high-voltage winding to ground. Gradually increase test voltage to desired value. Allow the test voltage duration of 1 min, after which gradually decrease voltage to zero.
- If the preceding two tests do not produce breakdowns or failures, the transformer is considered satisfactory and can be energized.
- Remove all jumpers and reconnect primary and secondary connections and other system equipment that may have been disconnected.

The following are some cautions and considerations in performing hi-pot tests:

In liquid-filled transformers two insulation systems are in series, that is, solid insulation with oil or synthetic fluid. When AC or DC hi-pot test voltage is applied, the voltage drops are distributed as follows:

Test Voltage	Winding Insulation (Paper–Cellulose) (% Stress Distribution)	Oil Insulation (% Stress Distribution)
AC	25	75
DC	75	25

When using DC hi-pot test voltage on liquid-filled transformers, the solid insulation may be overstressed.

Insulation that may be weakened near the neutral may remain in service due to lower stress under operating conditions. However, when subjected to hi-pot test voltage, it may break down and require immediate repair. The weakened insulation may usually be detected by the measurement at lower voltages.

If a hi-pot test is to be conducted for routine maintenance, consider the following in advance: (1) assume that a breakdown will occur, (2) have replacement or parts on hand, (3) have personnel available to perform work, and (4) is the loss of the transformer until repairs are made beyond the original routine outage?

2.5 Cables and Accessories

Cable testing is conducted to chart the gradual deterioration over the years, to do acceptance testing after installation, for verification of splices and joints, and for special repair testing. Normally, the maintenance proof tests performed on cables are at a test voltage of 60% of final factory test voltage. When the exact construction of cable in an existing installation is not known, it is generally recommended that DC maintenance proof test voltage be based on rated AC circuit voltage using the recommended value for the smallest sized conductor in the rated AC voltage range. The DC voltage tests conducted on cable are insulation resistance measurement and DC hi-pot test. The DC hi-pot test can be performed as leakage current versus voltage test, leakage current versus time test, or go, no-go overpotential test.

It is always appropriate to conduct the insulation resistance measurement test first, and if data obtained looks good, then proceed with the DC overpotential test. After DC overpotential test is completed, then perform the insulation resistance again to assure that the cable has not been damaged during the DC overpotential test.

2.5.1 Insulation Resistance Measurement Test

The insulation resistance is measured using a Megohmmeter (or it can be measured using a portable instrument consisting of a direct voltage source, such as a generator, battery, or rectifier, and a high-range ohmmeter that gives insulation resistance readings in megohms or ohms). This is a nondestructive method of determining the condition of the cable insulation to check contamination due to moisture, dirt, or carbonization. The insulation resistance measurement method does not give the measure of total dielectric strength of cable insulation or weak spots in the cable. Generally, the following voltages can be used for the indicated cable voltage rating.

Voltage Rating of Cables (V)	Megohmmeter Voltage (V)
>300	500
300–600	500–1,000
2,400–5,000	2,500–5,000
5,000–15,000	5,000–15,000
<15,000	10,000–15,000

The following is the general procedure when using a megohmmeter (Megger)* for resistance measurement tests.

- Disconnect the cable to be tested from other equipment and circuits to ensure that it is not energized.
- Discharge all stored capacitance in the cable by grounding it before testing, as well as after completing tests.
- Connect the line terminal of the instrument to the conductor to be tested.
- Ground all other conductors together to sheath and to ground. Connect these to the earth terminal of the test set.
- Similarly measure other insulation resistance values between one conductor and all other conductors connected, one conductor to ground and so on. The connections are shown in Figure 2.7a through d.
- The guard terminal of the megohmmeter can be used to eliminate the effects of surface leakage across exposed insulation at the test end of the cable, or both ends of the cable for leakage to ground.

The insulation resistance measurements should be conducted at regular intervals and records kept for comparison purposes. Keep in mind that, for valid comparison, the readings must be corrected to a base temperature, such as 20°C. A continued downward trend is an indication of insulation deterioration even though the resistance values measured are above the minimum acceptable limit.

Cable and conductor installations present a wide variation of conditions from the point of view of the resistance of the insulation. These conditions result from the many kinds of insulating materials used, the voltage rating or insulation thickness, and the length of the circuit involved in the measurement. Furthermore, such circuits usually extend over great distances, and may be subjected to wide variations in temperature, which will have an effect on the insulation resistance values obtained. The terminals of cables and conductors will also have an effect on the test values unless they are clean and dry, or guarded.

* Megger, Inc., trademark for megohmmeter.

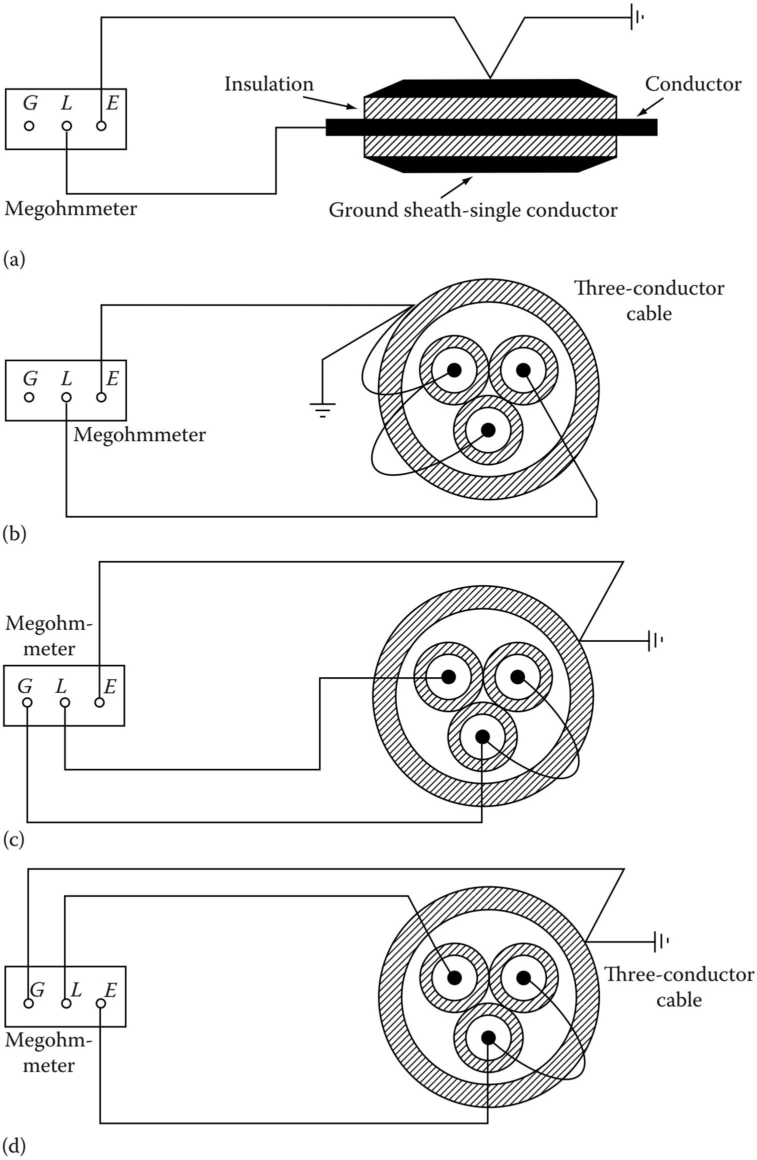


FIGURE 2.7
Cable test connections for insulation resistance measurement: (a) connection for single-conductor cable, one conductor to ground test; (b) connection for three-conductor cable, one conductor to other conductors and sheath to ground; (c) connection for three-conductor cable, one conductor to sheath and to ground and two conductors guarded; and (d) connection for three-conductor cable, one conductor to all other conductors without leakage to ground.

The Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA) gives minimum values of insulation resistance in its specifications for various types of cables and conductors. These minimum values are for new, single-conductor wire and cable after being subjected to an AC high voltage test and based on a DC test potential of 500 V applied for 1 min at a temperature of 60°F.

These standard minimum insulation resistance (IR) values (for single-conductor cable) are based on the following formula:

$$\mathrm{IR} = K \log_{10} \frac{D}{d}$$

where
- IR is in megohms per 1000 ft of cable
- K is a constant for insulating material
- D is the outside diameter of conductor insulation
- d is the inside diameter of conductor

Minimum Values of *K* at 60°F/1000 ft

Insulation Type	MΩ
Impregnated paper	2,640
Varnished cambric	2,460
Composite polyethylene	30,000
Polyethylene (thermoplastic)	50,000
Polyvinyl chloride 60°C	500
Polyvinyl chloride 75°C	2,000
Synthetic rubber	2,000
EP insulation	20,000
Cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE)	20,000

Grade	Natural Rubber	Synthetic Rubber
Code		950
Performance	10,560	2000
Heat resistant	10,560	2000
Ozone resistant	10,000 (butyl)	2000
Kerite		4000

The insulation resistance of one conductor of a multiconductor cable to all others and sheath is

$$\mathrm{IR} = K \log_{10} \frac{D}{d}$$

where
- D is the diameter over insulation of equivalent single-conductor cable = $d + 2c + 2b$
- d is the diameter of conductor (for sector cables, d equals diameter of round conductor of same cross section)
- c is the thickness of conductor insulation
- b is the thickness of jacket insulation

Also, the IEEE standard 690-1984* and 422-1986† recommended an insulation resistance field acceptance limit of

$$\mathrm{IR} = 1000\left[\frac{(kV + 10)}{L}\right]$$

where
- L is the cable length in feet
- kV is the insulation voltage rating

2.5.2 DC Overpotential Testing

In the past, this test has been extensively used for acceptance and maintenance of cables. Recent studies of cable failures indicate that the DC overpotential test may be causing more damage to some cable insulation, such as cross-link polyethylene, than the benefit obtained from such testing (see Chapter 6 for more details). It can indicate the relative condition of the insulation at voltages above or near operating levels. This test can be used for identification of weakness in the cable insulation and can also be used to break down an incipient fault. A typical DC test set is shown in Figure 2.8. Generally, it is not recommended that this test be used for breakdown of incipient faults even though some test engineers use it for this purpose. Therefore, the incipient fault breakdown probability should be anticipated before and during the hi-pot test. The impending cable failure will usually be indicated by sudden changes in the leakage current, and before insulation is damaged, the test can be stopped. The test voltage values for DC hi-pot tests are based upon final factory test voltage, which is determined by the type and thickness of insulation, the size of conductors, the construction of cable, and applicable industry standards. The DC test values corresponding to AC factory proof test voltages specified by the industry standards are usually expressed in terms of the ratio of DC to AC voltage for each insulation system. This ratio is designated as K, which when multiplied by the acceptance test factor of 80% and maintenance factor of 60% yields the conversion factors to obtain the DC test voltages for hi-pot tests. These recommended test voltage conversion factors are shown in Table 2.4. Also, the IEEE standard 400.1–2007 lists the voltage values for conducting hi-pot acceptance and maintenance tests in the field for laminated shielded power cables, which are shown in Table 2.5.

Many factors should be considered in selecting the right voltage for existing cables that are in service. As a general rule, for existing cables, the highest values for maintenance should not exceed 60% of final factory test voltage,

* The IEEE 690-2004 version does not contain this acceptance limit.

† The IEEE 422-1986 was withdrawn in 1996.

FIGURE 2.8
DC hi-pot test set, 70 kV. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

and the minimum test value should be not less than the DC equivalent of the AC operating voltage. If the cable cannot be disconnected from all the connected equipment, the test voltage should be reduced to the voltage level of the lowest rated equipment connected. The hi-pot test can be conducted as a step-voltage test as discussed next.

TABLE 2.4
Conversion Factors for DC Hi-Pot Tests

		Conversion Factors	
Type of Insulation	K	**DC Acceptance Test Voltage (0.8 × K)**	**DC Maintenance Voltage (0.6 × K)**
Impregnated paper, lead covered	2.4	1.92	1.44
Varnished cloth	2.0	1.60	1.20
Ozone-resistant rubber compound	3.0	2.40	1.80
Polyethylene	3.0	2.40	1.80
Polyvinyl chloride	2.2	1.76	1.32
Non-ozone-resistant rubber compound	2.2	1.76	1.32

TABLE 2.5

Field Test Voltages for Laminated Shielded Cables up to 69 kV System Voltage

System Voltage, kV RMS (Phase to Phase)	System BIL, kV (Peak)	Installation Test Voltage,[a] kV (Direct Voltage, Phase to Ground)	Maintenance Test Voltage,[a] kV (Direct Voltage, Phase to Ground)
5	75	28	23
8	95	36	29
15	110	56	46
25	150	75	61
28	170	85	68
35	200	100	75
46	250	125	95
69	350	175	130

Source: From IEEE Std 400.1–2007.

Note: Voltages higher those listed, up to 80% of system BIL for installation and maintenance testing may be considered in consultation with the suppliers of cable and the accessories. When equipment, such as transformers, motors, etc., is connected to the cable circuit undergoing a test, voltages lower than recommended values may be used to comply with the limitations imposed by the connected equipment.

[a] Maintained for a duration of 15 min.

2.5.3 Voltage versus Leakage Current Test (Step-Voltage Test)

In this test, the voltage is raised in equal steps and time is allowed between each step for leakage current to become stable. As explained in Chapter 1, the current is relatively high as a voltage is applied owing to capacitance charging current and dielectric absorption currents. As time passes, these transient currents become minimum with the steady-state current remaining, which is the actual leakage current and a very small amount of absorption current. At each step of voltage, the leakage current reading is taken before proceeding to the next step. Usually, it is recommended that at least eight equal steps of voltage be used and at least 1–4 min be allowed between each step. The leakage current versus voltage are then plotted as a curve. As long as this plotted curve is linear for each step, the insulation system is in good condition. At some value of step voltage, if the leakage current begins to increase noticeably, an increase in the slope of the curve will be noticed, as shown in Figure 2.9. If the test is continued beyond this test voltage, the leakage current will increase even more rapidly and immediate breakdown may occur in the cable insulation. Unless breakdown is desired, the test should be stopped as soon as the increase of slope is noticed in the voltage versus leakage current curve.

Maximum leakage current allowable for new cables acceptance can be determined from the ICEA formula for minimum allowable insulation

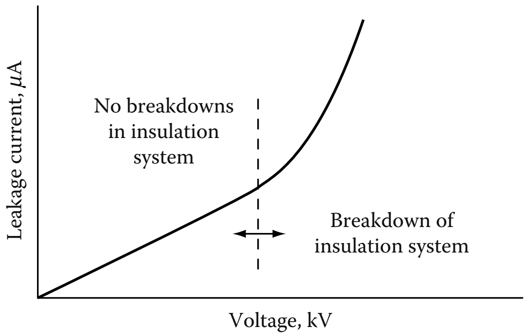


FIGURE 2.9
Step-voltage hi-pot test current.

resistance discussed earlier. The formula for leakage current then can be written as follows:

$$I_L = \frac{E}{K \log_{10}(D/d)}$$

where
I_L is the conduction or leakage current
E is the test voltage impressed
K is the specific insulation resistance megohms per 1000 ft at 60°F
D is the diameter over insulation
d is the diameter over conductor

The typical specific insulation resistance (K) for various commonly used insulations for cables are given under discussion of insulation resistance measurement test.

In order to explain the use of this formula, an example is given below for determining the maximum leakage current allowable for a 15 kV, 500 kcmil cable for an acceptance test.

Example

A 15 kV cable 500 MCM 220 Mil XLPE insulation conductor OD = 0.813 Class B strand. The circuit is 2500 ft long. Calculate the maximum leakage current at maximum test voltage of 65 kV.

$$I_L = \frac{65\times10^3\ [\text{V}]\times2.5}{\frac{20{,}000\times10^6\ [\Omega]}{1000\,[\text{ft}]}\times\log_{10}\frac{(2\times0.220)+0.813}{0.813}}$$

$I_L = 43\ \mu\text{A}$

2.5.4 Leakage Current versus Time Test

When the final test voltage of leakage current versus voltage test is reached, it can be left on for at least 5 min, and the leakage current versus time can be plotted for fixed intervals of time as the leakage current during this step reduces from an initial high value to a steady-state value. A curve for good cables will generally indicate a continuous decrease in leakage current with respect to time or steady-state value without any increase of current during the test. This curve is shown in Figure 2.10.

2.5.5 Go, No-Go Overpotential Test

The hi-pot test can be conducted as a go, no-go overpotential test. In this test the voltage is gradually applied to the specified value. The rate of rise of the test voltage is maintained to provide a steady leakage current until final test voltage is reached. Usually, 1–1.5 min is considered sufficient for reaching the final test voltage. The final test voltage can then be held for 5 min, and if there is no abrupt increase in current sufficient to trip the test set, the test has been successfully passed. This test does not provide a thorough analysis of cable condition, but provides sufficient information as to whether the cable meets a specific high-voltage breakdown strength requirement. This type of test is usually performed after installation and repair, where only cable that can withstand strength verification without a breakdown is to be certified.

2.5.6 DC Overpotential Test Connections and Procedures

The test connections for this test are similar to test connections shown in Figure 2.7a, and for three-conductor cable are similar to those shown in Figure 2.7b and c. The test procedures are the following:

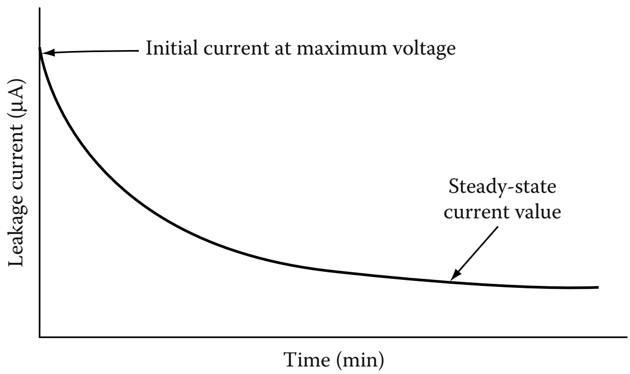


FIGURE 2.10
Leakage current versus time.

- Cable to be tested must be de-energized, opened at both ends, and grounded to discharge any electrostatic charge on the cable. Switches, potential transformers, lightning arresters, jumpers from potheads to feeders, fuses, cutouts, and any switchgear should be disconnected. If impossible to disconnect any or some of connected equipment, the test voltage should not exceed the value that could overstress these devices connected to the cable. See Figure 2.11 for equipment to be disconnected.
- DC test voltage should be applied from phase to ground on each conductor with other conductors, shields, and metallic sheath connected to ground or other conductors guarded with shield and metallic sheath grounded.
- Ensure that the hi-pot set main "on–off" switch is in off position and the high-voltage on switch is in the off position with voltage control switch turned to zero position before beginning the tests.
- Connect the hi-pot test set safety ground stud to a good electrical ground and make sure the connections are tight. Never operate the DC hi-pot test set without this ground connection. Also connect the shield ground strap of the shielded cable under test to the test set ground stud.
- Connect the return line from other conductors not under test to the earth ground terminal or to the guard terminal of the test set as desired. The hi-pot grounding switch should be switched into the appropriate position. Normally, 100 V insulation is required on the return line. Connect the shield and sheath to ground and also to the ground terminal of test set. The guard terminal is provided to bypass the current due to corona and surface leakage around the microammeter so that corona and surface leakage currents are not included in the test readings.
- Connect one end of the output or line cable to the desired phase of the cable under test, making sure that the connections are tight and without any sharp edges. Where corona currents may be expected owing to the application of high voltages, it is recommended that the connections be taped, covered over with clear plastic bags, or use a corona ring or corona shield. The other end of the output or line cable is connected to the output or line stud of the test set.
- Cable used for connecting the hi-pot test set to the cable under test, that is, the line or output cable, should be short and direct and supported along its length so that it is not touching the ground or grounding materials or surfaces. If extension cables are to be used with the output or line cable to reach the cable under test, shielded cable should preferably be used for this purpose. The shields of the extension cable and hi-pot cable should be connected with a shield jumper, which should be run away from the splice to prevent leakage. In case of the extension cable being nonshielded, care should be taken to keep the nonshielded wire away from the grounding surfaces as explained previously.

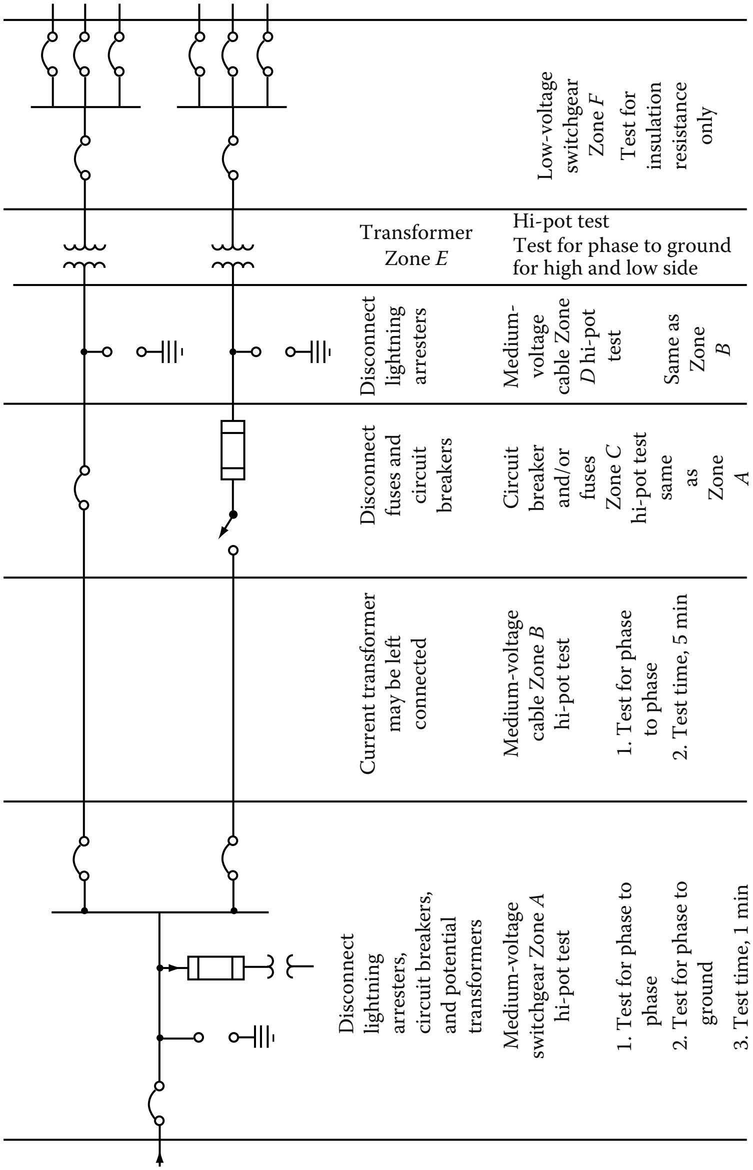


FIGURE 2.11
Hi-pot test for cables and associated equipment, and equipment to be disconnected during tests.

- When shielded cable is being tested, it is recommended that the shield be trimmed back about 1 in. for every 10 kV. The shield on the test set end of the cable is connected to ground as explained previously. The shield on the other end of cable can be taped and left hanging without any connections made to it.
- Test set now should be plugged into a 115 V, 60 Hz outlet. It is important that the AC supply voltage have good line regulation, because the DC output voltage of the test set depends upon the AC line input voltage. The test voltage kilovolt range should be selected before beginning the test. The power now can be turned on and the test begun either as step-voltage or as a go, no-go test.
- After the test is completed, turn the high-voltage switch of the test set to off position. Allow the cable just tested to discharge either through the internal test set discharge circuit or external ground applied to the cable by means of hot stick at 2 kV or below. Do not touch the cable until it is fully discharged.
- Connect a ground to the cable that was tested and leave it connected for at least four times the length of the test time or until the cable is connected into the system.

2.6 Electrical Switchgear and Circuit Breakers

The DC testing of electrical switchgear and circuit breakers involves the following:

- Insulation resistance measurement test
- DC hi-pot test
- Circuit breaker contact resistance test

The insulation resistance measurement test may be conducted on all types of electrical switchgear and circuit breakers using the insulation resistance megohmmeter commonly known as the Megger.

2.6.1 Insulation Resistance Measurement Test

The insulation resistance test consists of applying voltage (500–15,000 V DC) to the apparatus to determine the megohm value of resistance. This test does not indicate the quality of primary insulation. Several factors should be remembered when performing this test. The first is that this test can indicate low values of insulation resistance because of many parallel paths. The other is that an insulation system having low dielectric strength may indicate high

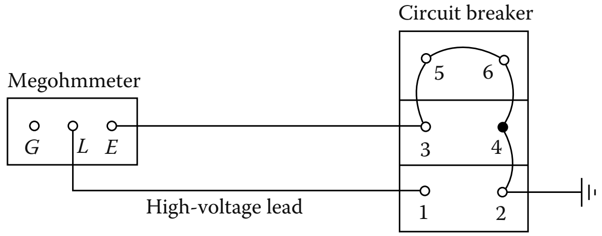


FIGURE 2.12
Typical connection for insulation resistance test of circuit breaker in open position.

resistance values. In view of this, the test results should only be interpreted for comparative purposes. This does not indicate the quality of the primary insulation system with regard to the dielectric strength to withstand high voltages. The connection diagram for making this test on a power circuit breaker is shown in Figure 2.12. The connection diagram for testing the insulation resistance of each branch circuit in a distribution panel is shown in Figure 2.13. When performing insulation testing, it is recommended that auxiliary equipment, such as potential transformers and lightning arresters, be isolated from the stationary switchgear.

Insulation resistance tests are made with the circuit breaker in open and closed position, whereas the insulation test for the switchgear bus is made with one phase to ground at a time, with the other two phases grounded. The procedure for this test is as follows:

- *Circuit breaker open:* Connect high-voltage lead to pole 1. Ground or guard all other poles. Repeat for poles 2 through 6, in turn, with other poles grounded.

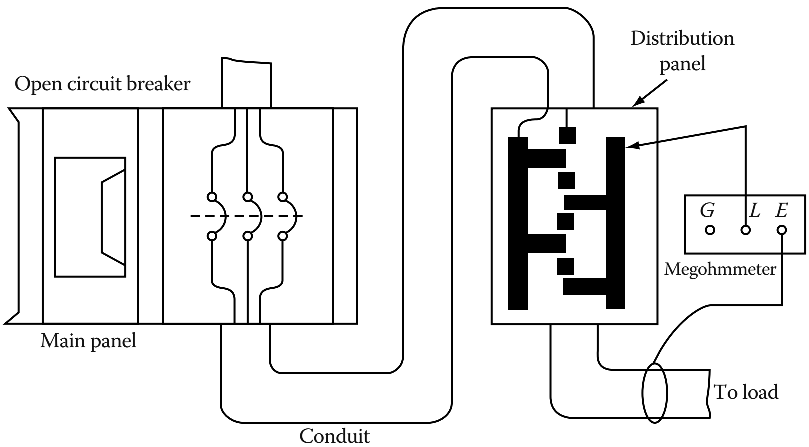


FIGURE 2.13
Insulation resistance testing of branch circuit to ground of a distribution panel.

- *Circuit breaker closed:* Connect high-voltage lead to pole 1, with either pole of phase 2 and 3 grounded. Repeat for phases 2 and 3 with other phases grounded.
- *Stationary gear (buses):* Connect high-voltage lead to phase 1 with phases 2 and 3 grounded or guarded. Repeat the same for phases 2 and 3 with other phases grounded. Repeat this test for checking the insulation resistance between phase 1 to 2, phase 2 to 3, and phase 3 to 1.

In the case of outdoor oil circuit breaker bushings, experience has shown that any bushing, with its assembled associated insulating members, should, for reliable operation, have an insulation resistance value above 10,000 MΩ at 20°C. This assumes that the oil within the tank is in good condition, that the breaker is separated from its external connections to other equipment, and that the porcelain weather shield is guarded. This means that each component such as the stripped bushing itself, cross-member, lift rod, lower arcing shield, etc. should have an insulation resistance in excess of that value.

Any components that are superficially clean and dry and have values less than 10,000 MΩ are usually deteriorated internally, by the presence of moisture or carbonized paths, to such an extent that they are not reliable for good service unless reconditioned. This is particularly so when operating under surge conditions such as during lightning disturbances. In the case of the stripped bushing itself, the lower stem and upper weather shield must be either perfectly clean or guarded before it is condemned as unreliable because of an insulation resistance value less than 10,000 MΩ.

Since bushings and other associated members have very high insulation resistance values normally, a megohmmeter insulation tester having a range of at least 10,000 MΩ is necessary to test such equipment. Megohmmeter instruments having ranges up to 50,000 MΩ will permit observation of deteriorating trends in bushings before they reach the questionable value of 10,000 MΩ.

2.6.2 DC High-Potential Test

The hi-pot testing of switchgear involves testing of the circuit breakers and switchgear buses separately. This is a major test and determines the condition of the insulation of the switchgear assembly. The DC hi-pot test is not preferred for testing AC switchgear because the application of DC voltage does not produce similar stress in the insulation system as is produced under operating conditions. Moreover, the DC hi-pot test produces corona and tracking owing to concentration of stress at sharp edges or endpoints of buses. The corona and tracking are more pronounced in older equipment, and it is therefore recommended that DC hi-pot testing be avoided on such equipment.

The test procedures for DC hi-pot testing are similar to those of AC hi-pot testing. If DC hi-pot testing is to be performed, the DC voltage test values shown in Table 2.6 are recommended for various voltage-class equipment.

The hi-pot test should be conducted under conditions similar to those of commercial testing. The switchgear should be wiped, cleaned, and restored

TABLE 2.6

DC Hi-Pot Maintenance Test Values

Rating Operating Voltage (V)	1 Min DC Test Voltage
240	1,600
480	2,100
600	2,300
2,400	15,900
4,160	20,100
7,200	27,600
13,800	38,200
23,000	63,600
34,500	84,800

to good condition before the hi-pot test is conducted. Temperature and humidity readings should be recorded and the test reading corrected when conducting DC tests.

2.6.3 Circuit Breaker Contact Resistance Measurement Test

Stationary and moving contacts are built from materials that provide good resistance to arcing. However, if contacts are not maintained on a regular basis, resistance due to repeated arcing builds up resulting in the contacts ability to carry current. Excessive corrosion of contacts is detrimental to the breaker performance. One way to check contacts is to apply DC current and measure the contact resistance or voltage drop across the closed contacts.

The breaker contact resistance should be measured from bushing terminal to bushing terminal with the breaker in closed position. It is recommended that for medium and high voltages the resistance test be made with a micro-ohmmeter having at least 100 A DC output. The use of a higher current value gives more reliable results than using lower current values. The resistance value is usually measured in micro-ohms ($\mu\Omega$).

2.7 Motors and Generators

The electrical insulation system is the most prominent part of motors and generators that needs periodic maintenance and testing. The insulation system of machines is subjected to varying degrees of mechanical, thermal, and electrical stresses. The reliability of a machine depends upon the integrity of its insulation system. Therefore, a preventive maintenance program should include an effective testing program, along with visual inspection and routine maintenance, to evaluate the insulating system.

The insulating parts found in motors and generators consist of stator windings, field windings, winding support, collector lead and ring, stator core, and others. The maintenance and testing program should be planned to detect and provide data on deteriorating factors to which motors and generators are subjected. The following DC tests can be conducted for the purposes of preventive maintenance to assess the condition of insulation systems of motors and generators.

2.7.1 Insulation Resistance Test

This test is conducted with voltages from 500 to 5000 V and provides information on the condition of machine insulation. A clean, dry insulation system has very low leakage as compared to a wet and contaminated insulation system. This test does not check the high-voltage strength of the insulation system, but does provide information whether the insulation system has high leakage resistance or not. This test is commonly made before the high-voltage test to identify insulation contamination or faults. This test can be made on all or parts of the machine circuit to ground. The following procedures are given for making this test on field winding, stator windings, and individual stator windings. Typical synchronous motor or generator connections are shown in Figure 2.14.

2.7.1.1 Field-Winding Test Procedures

The test connection is shown in Figure 2.15 and the procedures are as follows:

1. Lift brushes on the rotor
2. Disconnect neutral terminal from neutral device or ground
3. Ground all stator terminals, stator frames, and rotor shaft

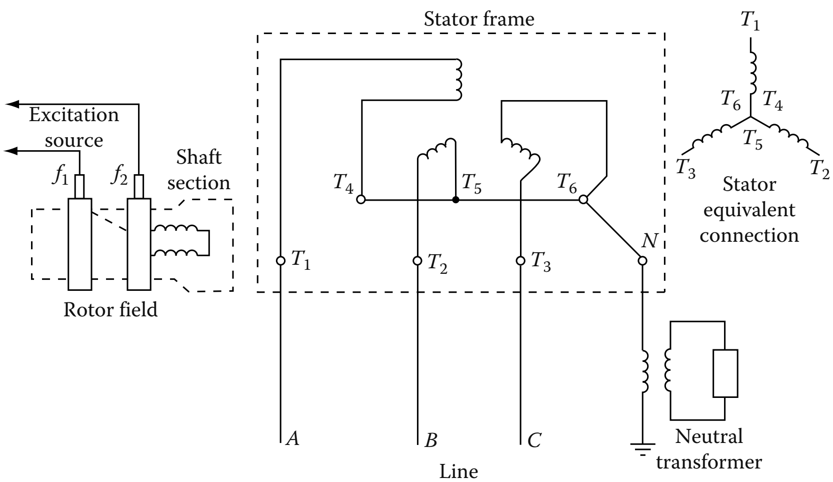


FIGURE 2.14
Typical in-service connection for synchronous machines.

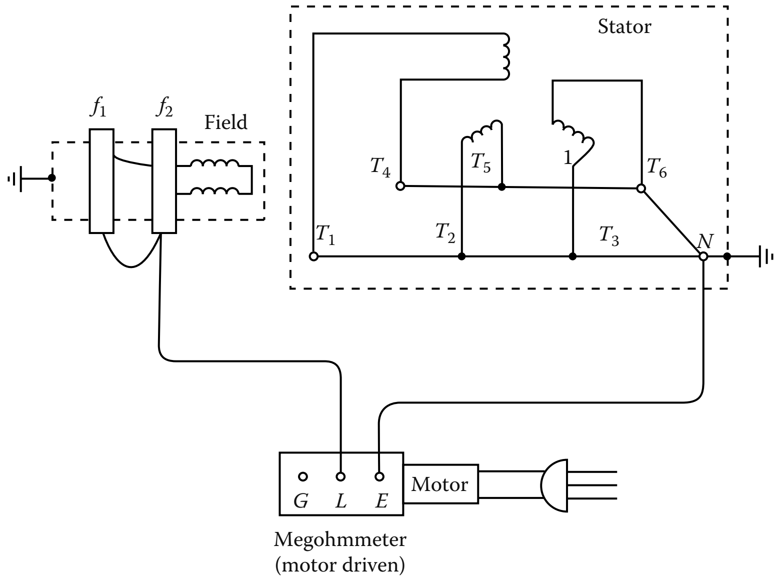


FIGURE 2.15
Test connections for field winding insulation resistance measurement.

4. Ground f_1 and f_2 for 30 min before conducting test to completely discharge winding
5. Disconnect ground from f_1 and f_2, connect test instrument (megohmmeter) ground terminal to ground, and test voltage lead to f_1 and f_2
6. Perform one of the following:
   a. Ten minute test to determine PI
   b. One minute test to determine DAR
   c. One minute test to determine insulation resistance value

2.7.1.2 Overall Stator (Armature Windings) Test

The following procedures are given for conducting this test, and the connection diagram is shown in Figure 2.16.

1. Check that stator frame and rotor shafts are grounded
2. Ground rotor terminals f_1 and f_2
3. Connect ground terminal of instrument to ground and connect test voltage lead to all motor terminals that are connected together
4. Remove ground connection from stator winding
5. Perform the following:
   a. Ten minute test, that is, PI test
   b. One minute test, that is, DAR test
   c. One minute test, that is, insulation resistance value

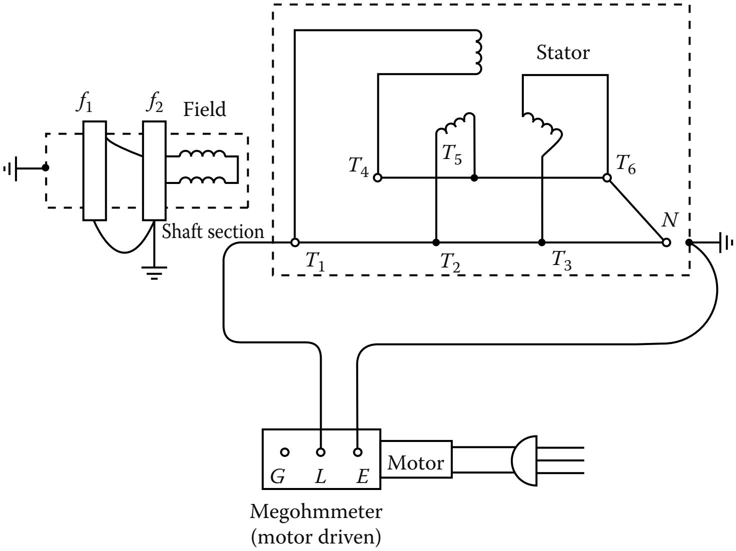


FIGURE 2.16
Test connection for overall stator winding test.

2.7.1.3 Overall System Test for the Motor or Generator

The overall system test includes generator neutral, transformer, all stator windings, isolated phase bus, and low side windings of generator step-up transformer. This test is performed as a screening test after an abnormal occurrence on the machine. If the reading is satisfactory, no further tests are made. If the reading is questionable or lower, the machine terminals are disconnected and further isolation performed to locate the source of the trouble. Similarly, it may be desirable to test a motor including its cables to prevent disconnection of motor terminals unnecessarily. The connection diagrams are shown in Figure 2.17a and b for generator system and a motor, respectively.

2.7.1.4 Individual Stator Winding Test

The following procedures are given for conducting this test, and the test connection diagram is shown in Figure 2.18.

- Ground stator terminals for 30 min
- Disconnect all stator terminals T_1 through T_6 and leave neutral terminal disconnected
- Test T_1–T_4 winding with T_2–T_5, T_3–T_6, and rotor grounded
- Test T_2–T_5 winding with T_3–T_6, T_1–T_4, and rotor grounded
- Test T_3–T_6 winding with T_1–T_4, T_2–T_5, and rotor grounded

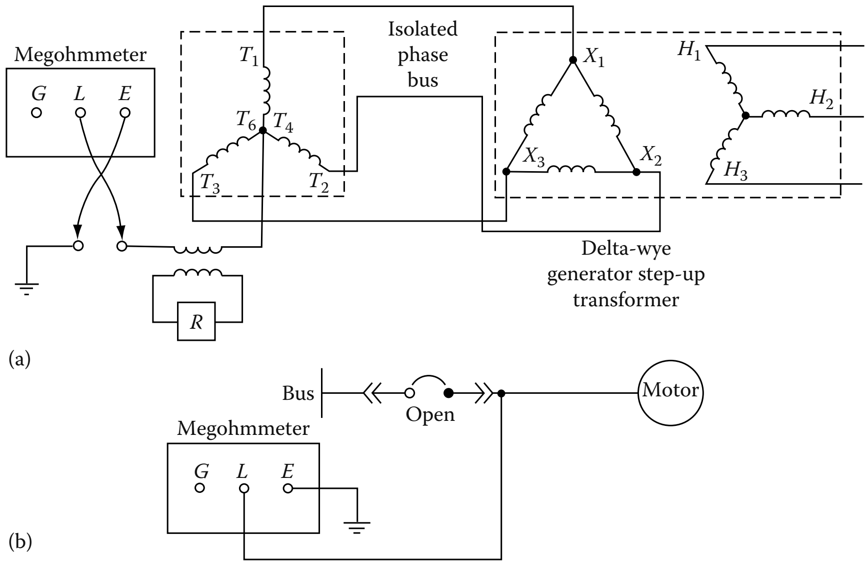


FIGURE 2.17
Test connection for an overall system for generator or motor: (a) generator system and (b) motor.

The connections for the four insulation resistance measurement tests are summarized in Table 2.7.

The IEEE standard 43-2000, "Recommended Practices for Testing Insulation Resistance of Rotating Machinery," provides information on making and

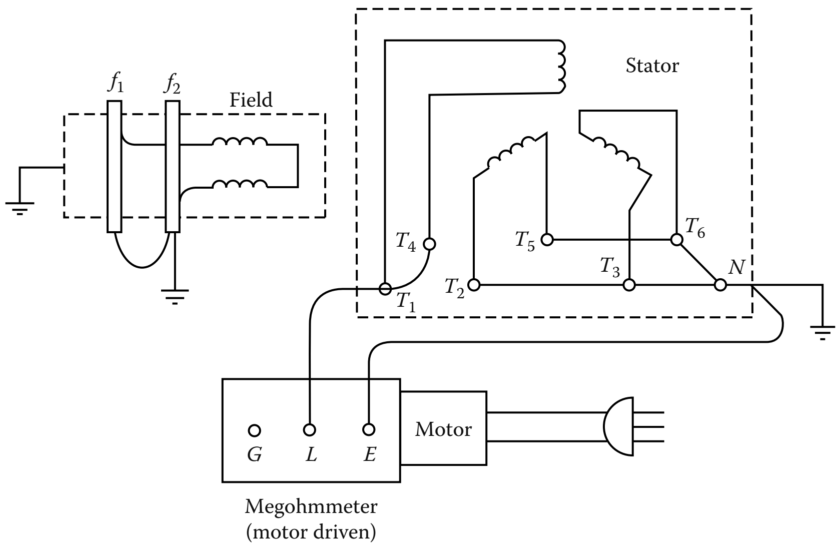


FIGURE 2.18
Connection diagram for individual stator winding test.

TABLE 2.7

Insulation Resistance Test Connections

Winding Under Test	Connect Test Voltage	Ground	Figures
Rotor field	f_1, f_2	Shaft, stator frame, T_1, T_4, T_2, T_5, T_3, T_6	2.15
All stator armature	T_1, T_4, T_3, T_5, T_3, T_6	Shaft, stator frame, f_1, f_2	2.16
Overall stator, conductors, primary transformer	Neutral transformer	Shaft, stator frame, f_1, f_2	2.14, 2.17
Individual stator windings			
T_1–T_4	T_1, T_4	Shaft, stator frame, f_1, f_2, T_2, T_5, T_3, T_6	2.18
T_2–T_5	T_2, T_5	Shaft, stator frame, T_1, T_4, T_3, T_6	
T_3–T_6	T_3, T_6	Shaft, stator frame, f_1, f_2, T_1, T_4, T_2, T_5	

interpreting insulation resistance measurements for rotating machinery. It reviews the factors that affect or change insulation resistance characteristics, outlines and recommends uniform methods for making tests, and presents formulas for the calculation of approximate minimum insulation resistance values for various types of AC and DC rotating machinery. The guide states:

> The recommended minimum insulation resistance R_m for AC and DC machine armature windings and for field windings of AC and DC machines can be determined by

$$R_m = kV + 1$$

where

R_m = recommended minimum insulation resistance in megohms at 40°C of the entire machine winding

kV = rated machine terminal to terminal potential, in kilovolts

> In applications where the machine is vital, it has been considered good practice to initiate reconditioning should the insulation resistance, having been well above the minimum value, drop appreciably to near that level.

The PI value of 2 or more is acceptable for insulating systems such as varnish-impregnated windings and asphalt windings, whereas thermoplastic insulation systems have a higher value than 2. A PI value of less than 1.0

indicates deterioration of the windings, which should be investigated. A very high PI value (above 5) indicates dried out, brittle windings such as is the case in very old machines.

2.7.2 DC Overpotential Test

The DC overpotential test is conducted on motors and generators to assess the insulation dielectric strength. This test can be made during routine maintenance or after repairs have been made on the machine. Either all or parts of the machine can be tested to ground to ensure that the insulation system has sufficiently high dielectric strength for safe operation.

As a general rule, the AC voltage used for the factory proof testing of the machine windings of motors or generators is based upon the rated operating voltages of the machine. A commonly used rule for establishing factory test values for stator windings is two times rated voltage (E) plus 1000 V. For DC field winding it is 10 times the excitation voltage. To convert these value to DC overpotential test values, the multiplying factor is 1.7. The recommended DC acceptance test voltage is 75% of the equipment AC voltage used for the factory proof test, whereas the recommended DC maintenance test voltage is 65% of the factory proof test value. These values can be represented by the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{DC acceptance test voltage} &= \{[(2\times E)+1000]\times 1.7\}\times 0.75\ \text{V}\\ &= (2.55E+1.275)\ \text{V}\\ \text{DC maintenance test voltage} &= \{[(2\times E)+1000]\times 1.7\}\times 0.65\ \text{V}\\ &= (2.21E+1.105)\ \text{V}\end{aligned}$$

The values mentioned may be varied depending upon the type and size of the machine. The standard duration of the DC overpotential test is usually 1–5 min for most electrical machines but may be varied depending upon the type and size. The reader is urged to consult IEEE standard 95-2007, Guide for Insulation Testing of AC Electric Machinery (2300 V and above) with High Direct Voltage, for further information on this subject. To obtain meaningful results, the DC maintenance test voltage should not be below 50% of the equipment AC factory test value.

2.7.3 Voltage versus Leakage Current Test (Step-Voltage Test)

The DC overpotential test is a controlled test; that is, the increase in applied voltage is controlled by monitoring the leakage current to identify any impending failures of the winding insulation with the intention of stopping the test before the breakdown occurs. This test is commonly known as the

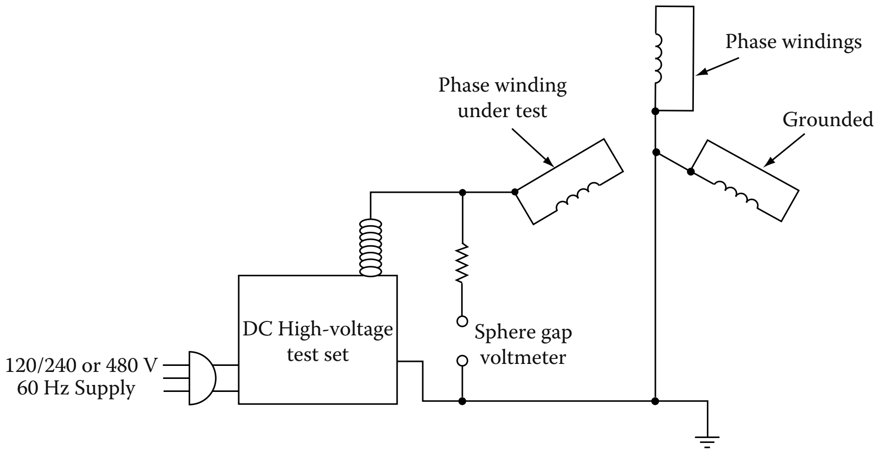


FIGURE 2.19
DC overpotential test connections for an AC machine armature (stator).

step-voltage test, and the test connection diagram is shown in Figure 2.19. This test procedure may be described as follows:

- First voltage step is usually one-third of the calculated test voltage, which is applied to the machine. Readings are taken at 1 min intervals up to a maximum of 10 min.
- Next step is to increase the test voltage in about-equal 1000 V steps and record the leakage current value for each step. Allow sufficient time between each step for leakage current to become stable.
- At each step, plot the values of leakage current on the vertical axis versus the applied test voltage on the horizontal axis. For a good insulation system, the curve generated by the readings will be smooth with rising slope. Any sudden changes in curve characteristics are indications of impending winding failure.
- Take steps to eliminate the possibility of excessive leakage due to ionization in order to measure the true leakage current.

2.7.4 Leakage Current versus Time Test

This test can be made in lieu of the voltage versus leakage current test. In this test, the point is to separate the absorption current from the total leakage current. In this test, reasonable time is allowed during each step of applied test voltage to allow the absorption current to disappear before readings are taken. To completely eliminate the absorption current, many hours of test time will be necessary. Therefore, a reasonable time interval is taken to be a 10 min waiting period during each step of applied voltage. The IEEE standard 95 describes this test in its appendix; which may be summarized as follows:

- Apply an initial voltage of about 30% on the machine winding and hold for 10 min. The readings are taken at regular intervals and are plotted on a log–log graph, with leakage current on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis.
- A curve is generated by the points plotted on the graph. This curve is used to calculate the conduction component (leakage current) of measured current. The total current readings at time intervals of, say, 1, 3, and 10 min are used and substituted into the following formula for calculation of the conduction component (C):

$$C = \frac{(i_{1.0} \times i_{10.0}) - (i_3)^2}{(i_{1.0} + i_{10.0}) - 2i_3}$$

where
$i_{1.0}$ is the 1 min total current
$i_{3.0}$ is the 3 min total current
$i_{10.0}$ is the 10 min total current

- The value of C as calculated from this formula is subtracted from the total current at 1 and 10 min interval readings. The difference of the current readings gives the current due to absorption. These values are used to calculate the absorption ration N, which is equal to

$$N = \frac{i_{a1.0}}{i_{a10.0}}$$

where
$i_{a1.0}$ is the absorption current at 1 min
$i_{a10.0}$ is the absorption current at 10 min

- The absorption ratio N is then used to select the time intervals from a precalculated schedule, as shown in IEEE standard 95.
- The test now may be carried out for the remaining steps of test voltage using the precalculated values of time steps. The readings of leakage current versus voltage are taken at the end of each step.
- A new curve may be generated by plotting the leakage current on the vertical axis and voltage on the horizontal axis. The curve obtained should be a straight line with rising slope if the rate of increase of conduction current component is linear. Moisture in the insulation system will produce a continuous upward slope, whereas void ionization will exhibit minor breaks in the slope of the curve. However, a sharp break in the curve will usually indicate an impending failure.

2.8 Lightning Arresters

The maintenance tests that may be made on lightning arresters with DC voltage is insulation resistance measurement. Following are the generalized maintenance procedures for lightning arresters for conducting the insulation resistance test:

- Apply (usually) 2500 V to line terminal with base grounded with an insulation resistance tester as shown in Figure 2.20. Readings are characteristic of each type of arrester. Some may be as high as 10,000 MΩ; others may be much lower, such as 500 MΩ. The evaluation should be based on comparing readings with previous test results or test values of similar equipment.
- Lightning arresters may also be tested using DC high potential voltage. The DC voltage should be 1.7 times rated voltage of lightning arresters.
- Field testing of station-class arresters may be accomplished during normal operation by measuring the leakage current through the arrester. Because of the high impedance to ground characteristics of arresters, an increase in leakage current above normal usually indicates a defective arrester. The evaluation of test data should be

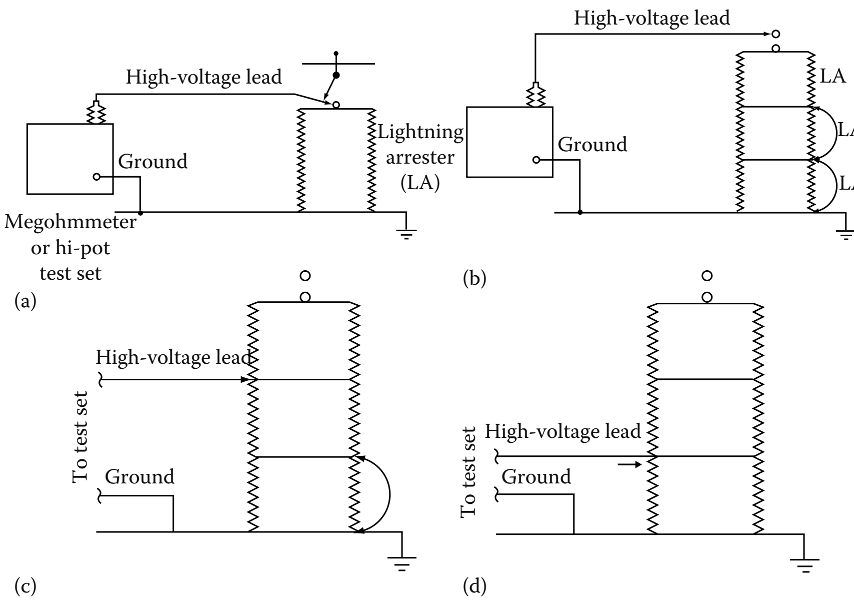


FIGURE 2.20
Lightning arrester test connections: (a) basic test connection for lightning arrester; (b) to test top arrester in stack; (c) to test middle arrester; and (d) to test bottom arrester.

based upon comparing the leakage current values with previous values or measurements obtained on similar units or comparative values of the three single-pole arresters in the single installation. It is also recommended that oscillographic measurements be made, if possible, because this will provide the most complete information, which allows for the best comparison.

2.9 Capacitors

Several different tests may be performed on power-factor correction capacitors to determine their suitability for service. From these, users may select tests that they deem practical and necessary. Factors that influence the selection of tests may be the type of banks, such as substation banks or distribution lines, electrical arrangements, failure rate experiences, and others. NEMA Standards Publication CP1-1977, Section 6.06, "Field Test on Capacitor Units," listed the two options: (1) checking new capacitor units before placing in service and (2) after they have been placed in service. For historical perspective, the requirements for checking the capacitor units before placing them in service were the following:

2.9.1 Tests to Check the Condition of New Capacitor Units before Placing in Service

Perform the following tests:

- Terminal-to-terminal AC or DC high-voltage test at 75% of factory routine (production) test voltage.
- Short-circuited terminal-to-case (two-terminal units only) perform impulse and DC high-voltage test according to voltage rating table given in the old standard. This section also states, "Experience has shown that these tests are not necessary on all capacitor units."

The most current standard, CP1-2000, lists only one option for checking the new capacitor units after they are placed in service. These requirements are the following.

2.9.2 Tests to Check the Condition of a Capacitor Unit after It Has Been in Service

Serviceability of a capacitor unit may be determined by one or more of the following tests in case of trouble or after exposure to possible damage:

- Capacitance measurements by current measurement at known voltage and rated frequency, or by a low voltage capacitance meter. These tests will generally indicate a short-circuited capacitor or open-circuited capacitor.
- Line-to-line internal discharge resistor may be checked with a suitable bridge or calculated from DC voltage and current readings.
- Line-to-case insulation resistance measurements may be made to determine the condition of the insulating terminals and dielectric insulation to case. The resistance measured should be not less than 1000 MΩ. This test is not applicable to single bushing capacitors. Measuring the line-to-case power factor or dielectric loss is another means of determining the condition of the line insulating terminals and insulation to case.
- Measurable characteristics of properly applied and installed capacitors, which are hermetically sealed, are not expected to change with time. Therefore, periodic testing may not be necessary. However,

TABLE 2.8

Capacitor AC to DC High-Voltage Field Tests

Line to line

AC and DC test voltage = 75% of factory routine (production) test

AC: 0.75 × 2*E* V = 1.5E V (*E*, nameplate rating); AC volts should be sinusoidal, 20–70 Hz and 10 s withstand; energize and de-energize capacitor at voltage not to exceed *E*

DC: 0.75 × 4.3*E* V = 3.2*E* V; duration of test including time to charge capacitor should not exceed 15 s to avoid possibility of damaging built-in discharge resistors

Line-to-case DC voltages per CP1-1977

Apply DC volts according to following tabulation (AC volts are not listed in this table)

Capacitor Rating (V)	DC Field Test (V)
216–1,199	15,000[a]
1,2 00–5,000	28,500
5,001–15,000	39,000
13,200–22,000	45,000

Line-to-case AC voltages per CP1-2000

Apply AC volts according to following tabulation (DC volts are not listed in this table)

		AC Field Test (V)	
Capacitor Rating (V)	BIL	Indoor	Outdoor
0–300	30[b]	3,000	10,000
301–1,199	30[b]	5,000	10,000
1,200–5,000	75[c]	11,000	26,000
5,001–15,000	95	—	34,000
13,200–22,000	125	—	40,000

[a] For indoor units, only 7500 should be used.
[b] Housed equipment also included.
[c] Outdoor capacitors only.

operating conditions may change, resulting in damage and short life; hence, periodic inspection and check of such operating conditions as outlined previously in this section are highly desirable.

- Liquid tightness at 50°C may be used if manufacturer's limit is not available.

NEMA standard CP1-2000 provides options that enable a user to develop a test program suitable to its needs. The discharge resistor measurements and calculations from current measurements at low voltage can be compared readily with manufacturers' values and serve as a reference for future comparison.

Current measurements at low voltage have proven value for two other purposes:

- Detection of short-circuited sections in a capacitor
- Predetermination and correction of unbalanced current in split-wye banks during installation

The test programs for substation and distribution lines have proved to be realistic during installation and in service situations. Table 2.8 references NEMA recommended test values in the older CP1-1977 and the latest CP1-2000 standards.

2.10 Evaluation of Test Data Readings

Insulation resistance measurements, coupled with other information, can serve as a guide to determine what actions to take on electrical apparatus or cables. The choices are as follows:

- Place or restore the circuit to service until the next scheduled inspection.
- Restore the circuit to service now, but plan to perform indicated repairs as soon as possible.
- Leave out of service until repairs have been made.

What factors should be considered to determine whether insulation is good or bad?

- Rule of thumb: Minimum acceptable value of insulation to place equipment in service is 1 MΩ per rated kilovolt plus 1 MΩ. This is based upon experience rather than the characteristics of insulation. The insulation resistance should never be less than 1 MΩ for all equipment.

- Manufacturers' information when available.
- Comparison with values obtained at acceptance or installation.
- Comparison with values from previous routine tests.
- Comparison with values of several similar units.

What physical factors may influence the readings?

- Contamination including dirt, moisture, acids, and salts.
- Contamination at terminal connection or at an end point can cause a low reading, and the true reading of a winding or cable will be unknown.
- Readings should be compared at a common temperature base, for example, 20°C. Different insulating materials have different temperature correction tables, which are available in manufacturers' literature.

2.10.1 Acceptance Criteria for Rating Insulation

The minimum acceptable insulation resistance for safe energization of power equipment of each nominal voltage class is listed in Table 2.9. Values below these minimums indicate moisture, substantial thermal or chemical degradation, contamination, or physical damage. Equipment whose insulation resistance is less than the appropriate minimum is susceptible to disruptive failure and must not be energized for safety as well as economic reasons. Table 2.15 lists the insulation resistance values that are considered acceptable for healthy insulation. By examining the data given in Tables 2.9 and 2.15, the

TABLE 2.9

Minimum Acceptable Insulation Resistance at 20°C for Safely Energizing Electric Power Equipment

Nominal Voltage Class	Typical System Voltage[a]	Minimum Acceptable Resistance (MΩ)[b]
600 V	120, 240, 480 V AC; 125, 250 V DC	1.5
2.4 kV	2.4 kV	3.4
5 kV	4.16 kV	5.16
7.2 kV	6.9 kV	8.2
15 kV	13.8 kV	14.8
36 kV	20–25, 34.5 kV	35.0
72 kV	69 kV	70.0
145 kV	115, 138 kV	139.0
242 kV	230 kV	231.0
550 kV	500 kV	501.0

[a] RMS AC except as shown.

[b] Resistances above these values do not necessarily indicate sound insulation condition, but only that the equipment may be energized without significant risk of disruptive failure.

difference should be obvious to the reader between what is considered a good value versus the absolute minimum value when evaluating the health of an insulation system.

An insulation resistance above the minimum in the table indicates only that the severely degraded conditions mentioned above do not exist and that the equipment may be energized safely. This does not necessarily mean that the insulation has acceptable dielectric strength, or that it is free of deterioration. A clean, dry insulation system in excellent condition should have a resistance several orders of magnitude larger than the minimum required for safe energization. For instance, the resistance of good 600 V class insulation is typically in the 100–1000 MΩ range.

In reality, the measured insulation resistance is of little significance on a one-time basis as long as it is well above the acceptance level. However, a long-term trend toward lower resistance strongly indicates progressive deterioration, which should be investigated and corrected.

To allow meaningful trending, the influence of irrelevant factors must be eliminated from the series of insulation resistance readings. The primary such factor is temperature. The measured resistance of a solid insulation system can change by as much two orders of magnitude as its temperature varies from the bottom to the top of the rated operating temperature range of the equipment. To eliminate this effect, tests whose results will be used for trending either should always be performed at essentially the same insulation temperature, or the results converted to a common temperature base. Insulation testing and test trending procedures for equipment should be written accordingly.

In practice, the first alternative implies either testing the insulation when it is at nearly normal operating temperature, that is, as soon as possible after a period of normal, stable loading, or after the insulation has cooled to an ambient temperature, which is above the dew point and remains reasonably stable from test to test. In the second, more common approach, the resistances measured at varying temperatures are converted to a common standard temperature of 20°C using tables of empirically based correction factors given in the literature. Temperature coefficients of resistance vary greatly with the chemical composition of the insulation, so different corrections are required for different insulation systems. The equipment manufacturers' literature is the best source of temperature correction information.

Humidity also affects the measured insulation resistance, but not nearly as much as temperature if the insulation system is reasonably clean. In fact, large variations in insulation resistance with ambient humidity, in the absence of other explanations, indicate a possibility of contamination, which should be investigated. It is not normally necessary to correct for humidity effects.

Tables 2.10 through 2.15 provide examples of rating insulation for various apparatus and equipment as to whether it is good, bad, or needs further investigation.

TABLE 2.10

Example of Evaluating 15 kV Cable Readings

Test	Megohm Values Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3	Good	Bad	Investigate
1	4000	4500	3500	X		
2	4000	800	3500			X
3	4000	50	3500		X	
4	4000	200	3500		X	
5	4000	1000	3500		X	
6	4000	4000	3500		X	

Note: Test 4 indicates a low value and upon investigation indicated a cracked sheath. Test 5, which was conducted on the second day on the same cable, indicated a higher value of resistance due to drying out. Test 6, conducted on the third day, indicated normal values because of further drying, but sheath crack still was not repaired.

TABLE 2.11

Example for a Lightning Arrester Might Be as Follows

Test	Megohm Value Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3
1	8,000	8,000	50,000

Note: The 50,000 MΩ value is too high and could indicate damage to the lightning arrester, such as missing elements. The 8,000 MΩ value is good.

TABLE 2.12

Example for a Generator Might Be as Follows

		Generator		Criteria		
Test	Type	Stator	Rotor	Good	Bad	Investigate
1	PI	4.1	2.6	X		
2	PI	4.1	1.2		X	
3	PI	4.1	7.0		X	

Note: Test 2 indicates moisture or contamination, whereas test 3 indicates rotor insulation embrittled by heat.

TABLE 2.13

Example of Insulation Resistance Values for Transformers

Transformer Condition	1 Min Readings in Megohms (Corrected to 20°C)
New mineral-oil transformers	1000 and above
Service-aged transformers	100–1000
Investigate below	100
Askarel-filled transformer with high-voltage switch	10–50

TABLE 2.14

Example of DAR and PI for Motors and Generators

		Criteria			
Test	**Test Type**	**Good**	**Fair**	**Questionable**	**Poor**
1	DAR	≥1.4	1.25–1.4	1.1–1.25	<1.1
2	PI	≥3	2–3	1.5–2	<1.5

2.11 Precautions When Making DC Tests

- DC overpotential test can be conducted any time an equipment is taken out of service for a few hours; however, it is preferred that the test be planned in conjunction with a periodic dismantled inspection of the equipment. This will allow time to investigate the cause of unsatisfactory test results and make necessary repairs with a minimum of interference to normal production.

TABLE 2.15

Representative Insulation Resistance Values for Electrical Apparatus

Nominal Rating of Equipment (V)	Minimum Test Voltage (DCV)	Recommended Minimum Insulation Resistance (MΩ)
250	500	25
600	1,000	100
1,000	1,000	100
2,500	1,000	500
5,000	2,500	1,000
8,000	2,500	2,000
15,000	2,500	5,000
25,000	5,000	20,000
34,500 and above	15,000	100,000

Source: From NETA Maintenance Testing Specifications, Table 100-1, International Electrical Testing Association, Portage, MI, 2005. With permission.

Note: In the absence of consensus standards dealing with insulation–resistance tests, the NETA Standards Review Council suggests the above representative values. Note that the insulation resistance values given in Table 2.15 are much higher than the insulation resistance values of Table 2.9 because the values in Table 2.15 are desired minimum values whereas the values in Table 2.9 are the absolute minimum for energizing equipment without a high risk of flashover. Test results are dependent on the temperature of the insulating material and the humidity of the surrounding environment at the time of the test. Insulation–resistance test data may be used to establish a trending pattern. Deviations from the baseline information permit evaluation of the insulation. See Table 2.1 for temperature correction factors.

- Equipment should be taken off the line sufficiently in advance of the test to permit it to cool below 40°C (104°F). Testing at ambient temperature is preferred.
- Insulation of windings should be relatively clean and dry. If excessive foreign matter is present, the windings should be cleaned prior to conducting the test. Any cleaning solvent used should be allowed to evaporate thoroughly so that the surface of the insulation is dry; otherwise, false leakage current readings may result.
- Where it is possible to do so, especially with large rotating machines, phase connections should be opened in order to test each phase separately, phase to phase and phase to ground. All windings not under test should be short-circuited and grounded to the machine frame.
- As a safety precaution, before any DC voltage tests are conducted, a ground should be applied to the unit or cable to be tested.
- Allow the DC voltage to discharge sufficiently, especially in cables after tests have been concluded. A common rule of thumb is that the discharge time should be four times the charge time.
- All components require de-energizing and solid grounding before being tested. Check with a reliable voltage indicator that responds to alternating current (AC) and DC voltage before testing to ensure all equipment is deenergized.
- All cable termination ends as well as all connecting leads of components being tested should be guarded from accidental contact by barriers, enclosures, or a watchman at all points. The cable ends should be separated from all elements not being tested by distances at least 0.1 in/kV of test potential for voltages upto 100 kV and at least 0.2 in/kV for higher test voltages.
- Breakdown may generate traveling waves into the cable that can be high enough to cause degradation or breakdown of the insulation being tested. Installation of suitable rod gaps should be considered according to IEEE Std 4 for DC voltages to provide protection. A damping resistor may be installed to reduce oscillations and reflection voltages into the insulation being tested.

3

Power Factor and Dissipation Factor Testing Methods

3.1 Introduction

This chapter covers the power factor (PF) and dissipation factor (DF) tests that are ordinarily conducted in the field for acceptance (start-up) and routine field (maintenance) testing of insulation of electrical equipment and apparatus. The PF and DF tests are conducted using the 60 Hz power frequency voltages, therefore these tests may be referred to as alternating current (AC) voltage tests. The purpose of conducting these tests is to identify if the equipment has been installed properly, determine if corrective maintenance and repair is needed, and/or track the gradual deterioration of the equipment over its life. The question might be asked, why conduct these tests? The answer is obvious because the equipment to be tested is normally energized with 60 Hz AC voltage, therefore testing with the same type of voltage that the equipment sees in service provides the best information on the condition of that equipment. By applying an AC voltage test potential across a series of insulations (insulation system), the voltage drop across each layer of insulation and the resulting measured losses can be equated to true operating conditions. The voltage drop is proportional to the dielectric constant of the insulation layers. There are other AC voltage tests that may be performed along with PF and DF tests. The AC voltage tests can be classified into the categories as listed below:

1. PF and DF
2. AC high potential tests
3. Very low frequency (VLF)
4. AC series resonant
5. Induced frequency
6. Partial discharge (PD)
7. Impulse tests

The AC tests may be classified as destructive and nondestructive tests. The PF and DF tests are considered nondestructive since the test voltages used in performing these tests do not exceed line-to-neutral voltages of the equipment being tested. The basic principle of the nondestructive testing is the detection of a change in the measurable characteristics of an insulation that can be associated with the effects of contaminants and destructive agents without overstressing the insulation. The AC high potential, VLF, and AC series resonant tests may be classified as destructive since the test voltages associated with these tests are higher than normal operating voltages which may overstress the insulation. The effect of repeated high voltage (HV) tests on insulation are cumulative and therefore thoughtful consideration should be given on the benefits of these tests for routine field and maintenance testing, except for special investigations or for acceptance testing. The induced frequency, PD, and impulse tests are primarily conducted at the factory during manufacturing of electrical apparatus and equipment. However, for special investigations these tests may be performed in the field but will require special test equipment and setup. The AC high potential, AC series resonant, VLF, PD, induced frequency, and impulse tests are covered in other chapters under respective equipment category. This chapter is exclusively devoted to PF and DF testing methods.

3.2 PF and DF Test Methods

3.2.1 General

The PF insulation tests were used in the laboratory since the early 1900s by cable manufactures, and in the field for testing bushing since 1929. The DF is based on the Schering bridge which was developed also in the early 1900s to evaluate insulation by separating the capacitive and real components of the charging current. Today, the PF and DF tests are considered to be synonymous because they both refer to the AC dielectric loss test. PF and DF are but two of the several measurable characteristics that can be obtained from an AC dielectric loss test used for evaluating the condition of the insulation system. Both of these tests are effective in locating weaknesses in the electrical insulation and hazard in the power apparatus before impending failure. PF and DF tests are not go-no-go tests, and can measure dielectric loss, capacitance, and AC resistance of the insulation of the electrical apparatus. These tests can measure the presence of bad insulation even when there may be a layer of good insulation in series with the bad insulation. These tests provide information on the overall condition of the insulation in terms of a ratio (i.e., PF or DF value of insulation) that is independent of the volume of the insulation being tested. Moreover, they provide assessment of the insulation under normal frequency (60 Hz) operating conditions which is not time dependent like the direct current (DC) voltage tests. The PF and DF tests do not overstress the insulation and can determine if the insulation is slowly degrading by comparison with previous year's test results, or with test results of similar equipment.

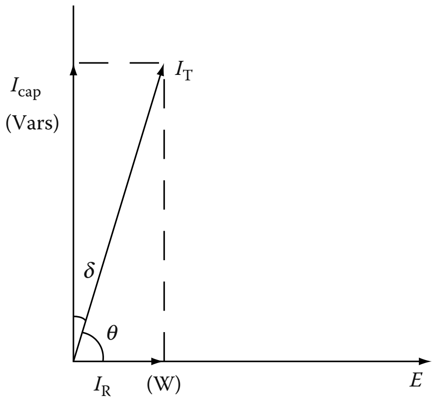


FIGURE 3.1
Vector relationship of voltage, resistive, and capacitive current (I_T, total current; I_{cap}, capacitive current; I_R, resistive current; θ, PF angle; and δ, dissipation angle).

3.2.2 Principles of PF/DF Testing

The PF/DF tests measure insulation capacitance, AC dielectric losses, and the ratio of the measured quantities. When insulation is energized with an AC voltage, the insulation draws a charging current. This charging current comprises of two components called capacitive current and resistive current. The capacitive current leads the applied test voltage by 90°, whereas the resistive current is in phase with the voltage as shown in Figure 3.1. The capacitive current is directly proportional to the dielectric constant, area, and voltage and inversely proportional to the thickness of the insulation under test. The capacitive current may calculated by the following formula:

$$I_{cap} = \frac{E}{X_c} = E\omega C$$

The above equation may be written as:

$$I_{cap} = E\omega\varepsilon_0\varepsilon_r\left(\frac{A}{d}\right) = \left[E\times 2\pi f\times 0.08854\times 10^{-12}\times\varepsilon_r\left(\frac{A}{d}\right)\right]$$

where
- E is the test voltage
- $C = \varepsilon_0\varepsilon_r(A/d)$
- ε_0 is the dielectric constant of vacuum (0.08854×10^{-12} F/cm)
- ε_r is the dielectric constant of the insulation
- A is the area (cm^2)
- d is the thickness of insulation
- f is the frequency

Changes in the capacitive current indicate degradation in the insulation, such as wetness or shorted layers, or change in the geometry of the insulation. The resistive current supplies the energy lost due to dielectric losses such as carbon tracking, volumetric leakage, surface conduction, and corona. Dielectric losses due to water contamination or carbon tracking or other forms of deterioration increase by the square of the voltage, where as dielectric losses due to corona increase exponentially as the voltage increases. PF/DF testing is sensitive enough to detect a deteriorated moisture problem in the insulation compared to an insulation resistance test.

Although there are several manufacturers of PF/DF test equipment, this text describes PF test methods and procedures based on the PF test equipment of Megger Incorporated (originally Megger Instruments), Valley Forge, Pennsylvania and Doble Engineering Company, Watertown, Massachusetts. The PF methods, theory, and principles discussed in this text are also applicable to the PF test equipment of other manufactures. It should be noted that in the electrical industry, especially in the utility transmission and distribution (T&D) arena, the PF test may be referred to as Doble test* because of the use of the Doble test sets when performing PF tests. The terms PF test and Doble test are one and the same.

3.2.3 Factors That Influence PF Measurements

The PF measurement is a searching diagnostic tool for evaluating insulation condition. It is a fundamental concept that changes in insulation quality result in measurable changes in some of the basic electrical characteristics of the insulation, such as capacitance, dielectric loss, or PF. Therefore, by measuring these electrical characteristics over time, changes in the integrity of the insulation can be assessed. Unfortunately, PF tests cannot always be conducted under the desired or same conditions because the equipment may be located outdoors or the environment may be different from test to test. There are two environmental variables which cannot be controlled easily; they are temperature and humidity. Also, depending on the cleanliness of the insulation and relative humidity, surface leakage current can also have an effect on the PF measurements. The electrical characteristics of most insulation materials vary with temperature. In order to compare the results of routine PF tests measurements taken at different temperatures for the same equipment, it is necessary to normalize the results to a common base temperature. It is a recommended practice to convert the measured PF values to a common base temperature of 20°C. When equipment is tested near freezing temperatures where a large correction factor may cause the resultant PF to be unacceptably high, then the equipment should be retested at a higher temperature before the equipment is condemned. Similarly, when high PF results are encountered at high temperature, the equipment should be retested after it has been allowed to cool down. Also, PF tests should not be performed for detection of presence of moisture in the insulation when the temperatures are much below freezing,

* Registered name of Doble Engineering Co., Watertown, Massachusetts.

because the ice has a resistivity of approximately 144 times that of water. Although, the temperature correction factors have been developed for correcting the measured PF results to a common base temperature, no such factors are available for humidity effects because of other variable effects. One of variables that affects the insulation measurement is surface leakage, which is dependent upon the moisture and the cleanliness of the surface of the specimen under test. When making PF tests, the effects of surface leakage (due to humidity, dirt, etc.) should be recognized and addressed accordingly. The effects of surface leakage current may be minimized by cleaning and drying external surfaces to reduce the losses, or using guard collars to divert the surface leakage current from the measuring circuit, or using the combination of the two approaches. Some cases may be handled quite easily with no thought or effort as to control of surface leakage, while others may require an extra effort to produce good results. It should also be recognized that there will be times when it will be best to postpone tests until another day. Refer to Section 3.7 for further discussion of variables affecting PF measurements.

The PF test results may be converted to the reference temperature of 20°C (68°F) using the conversion factors given in the test manual. The procedure for normalizing the test results to 20°C consists of (1) determine the test specimen PF, (2) measure the test specimen temperature, (3) obtain the appropriate correction factor from the table corresponding to the specimen temperature, and (4) multiply the calculated PF value with the correction factor.

3.3 Description of the PF Test Equipment

3.3.1 PF and DF Test Set

There are several manufacturers of the PF/DF test equipment. However, there are two main suppliers of PF/DF instruments in the United States, and they are Megger Incorporated, Valley Forge, Pennsylvania and Doble Engineering, Watertown, Massachusetts. The test sets listed below are in use for performing PF/DF tests on electric power system apparatus.

Megger Incorporated, Valley Forge, PA	Voltage
Model CB-100, Cat. No. 810130	28 V
Semi-automatic, Cat. No. 670025	2.5 kV
Semi-automatic, Cat. No. 670065	12 kV
Extended semi-automatic, Cat. No. 670070	12 kV
Model Delta-2000, Cat. No. 672001	12 kV
Model Delta-3000, Cat. No. 673001	12 kV

Doble Engineering, Watertown, MA	Voltage (kV)
MEU	2.5
M2H-MCM—fully automated	12
Type M4000/4100	12

This section briefly describes the Megger DF test equipment, its theory, and its operation for performing PF tests. The description of theory and operation for all types listed are essentially the same. A transformer ratio-arm bridge circuit is used as shown in the simplified diagram of Figure 3.2.

The circuit consists of a standard reference capacitor (C_S) and the insulation under test (C_X). A special multiwinding transformer is the characteristic feature of the circuit. A voltage is applied to both C_S and C_X. The ratio arms, N_S and N_X are adjusted to balance capacitive current, and the variable resistor (R_S) is adjusted to balance resistive current. The null indicator is used to determine when the bridge circuit is balanced. The values of N_S and N_X are used to determine capacitance and the value of R_S correlates to power (dissipation) factor of the test insulation.

Model CB-100 is a low voltage (LV) bridge which is manually balanced for both capacitance and DF, but it is direct reading. The semiautomatic models require manual balancing for capacitance, but they provide a direct digital readout of DF. Model Delta-3000 is automatic balancing for both capacitance and PF, and can also display DF directly (Figure 3.3).

Some of the major features of the Delta-3000 test set are listed below:

Completely self-contained test set including 0 to 12 kV power supply, standard capacitor, instrumentation, test leads, and printer

It is simple to operate, providing automatic balancing and digital display for voltage, current, dielectric loss (in watts), capacitance, and PF. Readings are adjusted to equivalent values of 10 or 2.5 kV

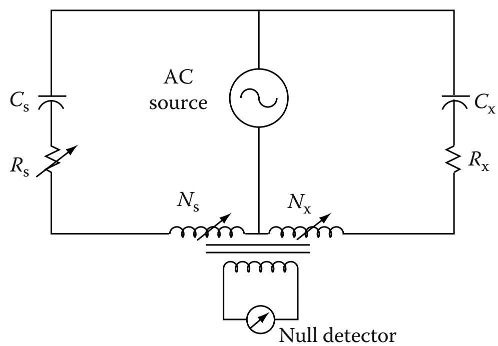


FIGURE 3.2
Simplified circuit diagram of Megger DF test set (transformer ratio-arm bridge.)

FIGURE 3.3
The Delta-3000 test set. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

Readings may be recorded on a thermal printer for hardcopy, and/or on a removable data key for download at a later time to a standard PC

It achieves high accuracy under severe electrostatic and electromagnetic interference conditions, such as encountered in HV substations

Safety features include two hand-operated interlock switches, open ground detection circuitry and zero voltage initiation of tests

Built-in diagnostic and calibration self-check

The formulas used for calculating the PF or DF are illustrated by using an example (Figure 3.4) with an insulation of PF = 1.0%. The value of PF is given by the cosine of the θ angle, or the equation can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{PF} = \cos\theta &= \frac{\text{dielectric losses}}{\text{charging volt-amps}} \\
&= \frac{\text{watts (W)}}{\text{volt-amps (VA)}} \\
&= 0.01\ (1\%) \\
\text{arc cos } (0.01) &= 89.43^\circ
\end{aligned}
$$

Also, PF is approximately equal to DF when PF and DF <10.0%, that is

$$\cos\theta = \tan\delta = \text{cotan}\,\theta$$

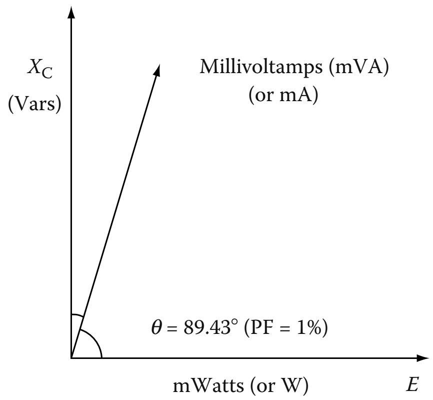


FIGURE 3.4
Vector diagram of an insulation specimen of PF of 1%.

$$\cos(89.43) = \tan(0.57) = 0.01(1\%)$$

Therefore, PF test results are comparable with DF test results up to 10.0%.

3.3.2 General Instructions for the Operation of the Megger Test Set

1. Assemble the test set in accordance with the operating instruction manual.
2. Connect ground lead from the test set to a station ground.

   Caution: PF tests are performed only on de-energized and isolated apparatus. Verify the equipment is cleared before attempting to connect leads.
3. Prepare the specimen for testing. This may include removing external connections, shorting winding terminals, etc.
4. Connect test leads: first to the test set, then to the apparatus to be tested following the instructions in the operating manual.
5. Check operation of safety and ground interlocks if supplied on the test set.
6. Select the proper test configuration for the insulation to be measured.
7. Initiate voltage output from the test set. Raise output voltage to the desired level.
8. Continue operation of the test set to obtain test readings, following the specific instructions in the operating manual.
   a. For manual test sets, balance the bridge for capacitance and PF.
   b. For semiautomatic test sets, balance the bridge for capacitance.
   c. For automatic test sets, select measure to initiate automatic balancing.

9. Reduce voltage to zero, or lowest setting and deinitiate voltage output.
10. Record all values as provided by the test set: test voltage, current, watts-loss, capacitance, and PF.

For specific operating instructions for any Megger test set, the reader is advised to follow the instructions given in the appropriate test set operating manual.

3.3.3 Doble PF Test Set

This section briefly describes the Doble Engineering Company test equipment, its theory, and operation for performing PF tests. The description of theory and operation is based on the MEU test set, but the theory and operation of the other test sets is the same for all test sets as manufactured by Doble Engineering. The type MEU test set has special measuring circuit in which the total current (I_T) of the insulation specimen is measured. Then a balancing network is switched into the measuring circuit and the capacitive component (I_C) of the specimen current is balanced out. The in-phase component (I_R) of the specimen current is then measured.

The formulas used for calculating the PF or DF are illustrated by using the example of Figure 3.4 with an insulation of PF of 1.0%. The value of PF is given by the cosine θ, or the equation can be written as given below for the 2.5 kV MEU and 10 kV M2H test set:

Doble MEU test set:

$$\%\text{PF} = (\text{mW} \times 100)/(\text{mVA})$$

$$\%\text{PF} = [(\text{dielectric losses in milliwatts})/(\text{millivoltamps})] \times 100$$

Doble M2H test set:

$$\%\text{PF} = (\text{W} \times 10)/(\text{mA})$$

$$\%\text{PF} = [(\text{dielectric losses in watts})/(\text{charging milliamps})] \times 10$$

3.3.4 Operation of Doble PF Test Set

The following is a set of general instructions which describe the procedure for operating the Doble test sets:

1. Assemble test set in accordance with the instruction book.
2. Check the ground and the HV connections and safety switches.
3. Connect specimen for the desired test. Raise test voltage to desired level.
4. Adjust the meter reading to full scale. The test set is ready to use and to record the test current and dielectric loss for the specimen.

5. Measure total charging current as the product of the meter reading and a multiplier within the proper range.
6. Specimen loss is measured by turning the milliwatts-adjust which cancels the capacitive reactance. When the capacitive reactance is cancelled the meter will be at minimum reading. This meter reading and the proper multiplier provides the milliwatt for the dielectric loss in the insulation.
7. The capacitance of the specimen is automatically obtained as a product of capacitance multiplier and capacitance dial reading at minimum milliwatts balance.
8. The product of the meter reading and the meter multiplier is the milliwatts loss of the specimen.
9. The power supply polarity is reversed to cancel the effect of electrostatic interference. The average of the two milliwatts results is calculated as the specimen milliwatts loss.
10. The test set has shielding to minimize the effect of electrostatic interference, as well as electromagnetic interference. For cases where high interference is encountered, a special interference cancellation circuit is available with the 10 kV test sets from Doble Engineering. The more advanced design of the Doble M4000 test set does not require interference cancellation circuit.

3.4 Basic Test Connections (Test Modes) for PF Testing

To help understand the PF test operation, it is convenient to consider the relative connections of the AC source, the bridge circuit, and the test specimen with respect to ground and the LV lead(s). Figure 3.5a through c shows basic test configurations that simplify testing on complicated insulation systems inside HV apparatus.

3.4.1 Grounded-Specimen Test Mode

In grounded-specimen test (GST) mode, all current between the AC source and ground (through C_X) is measured by the bridge (Figure 3.5a). GST is used when one terminal of the insulation to be measured is permanently connected to ground, such as a bushing flange, transformer tank, or grounded apparatus frame. GST mode also connects the LV lead(s) directly to ground. This enables the lead(s) to be used to ground a specimen terminal that is not normally grounded.

3.4.2 GST Mode with Guard (GST-G)

In Doble test sets this connection is referred to as guard-specimen test mode. In this mode, all current between the AC source and ground (through C_X)

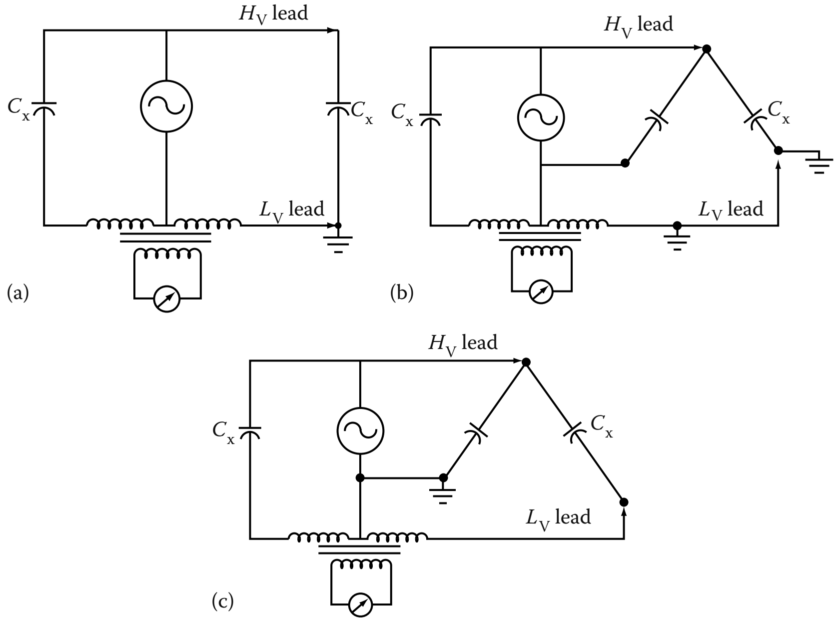


FIGURE 3.5
Test circuit modes of the PF test set (typical). (a) GST; (b) GST-G connection; and (c) UST connection.

is measured by the bridge (Figure 3.5b). The LV lead(s) may be connected to the test circuit guard. Any current present on the LV lead(s) during the test are bypassed directly to the AC source return, and are eliminated from the measurement. GST-G mode is used to isolate an individual section of insulation and test it without measuring other connected insulation.

3.4.3 Ungrounded-Specimen Test Mode

In ungrounded-specimen test (UST) Mode, only current between the AC source and the LV lead (through C_X)is measured (Figure 3.5c). Any current flowing to a grounded terminal is bypassed directly to the AC source return, and is eliminated from the measurement. UST mode is only used to measure insulation between two ungrounded terminals of the apparatus. In UST mode, ground is considered guard since grounded terminals are not measured. UST mode is used to isolate an individual section of insulation and test it without measuring other connected insulation.

3.5 Safety Cautions with PF Testing

Safety cannot be overstressed when working with and around HV. Companies that work with HV should and do have precise rules for working in and around the various types of HV apparatus and their associated lines and conductors. The purpose of these instructions is to reemphasize some generally acknowledged rules to be observed, and to outline some specific rules which must be adhered to strictly when making tests with PF test equipment.

All PF tests are performed with the apparatus to be tested completely de-energized and isolated from the power system. In addition, the apparatus housing or tank must be properly grounded. There is no substitute for a visual check to ensure that the apparatus terminals are isolated from the power source. For example, each pole of a three phase disconnect switch should be checked individually because there have been cases where one pole of a gang-operated disconnect failed to open with the others. Strictly observe all company rules and procedures for tagging and isolating the apparatus.

It is possible for the apparatus insulation to retain some charge after being switched out of service. Also, since field testing usually involves work in the vicinity of energized lines and apparatus, it is possible for relatively HVs to be induced in supposedly de-energized apparatus; this is particularly true when long lengths of bus are left connected to the de-energized apparatus. Trapped charges and induced voltages may not, by themselves, be sufficient to cause serious injury. Even relatively low energy charges are potentially hazardous in that an unexpected shock may cause a person to jump or fall from the apparatus. **Therefore, safety grounds should be applied to all apparatus terminals before doing any work on them, and before connecting and disconnecting the PF test leads.**

The PF test set should be located where the operator will have an unobstructed view of the apparatus under test and of various personnel assisting in the tests. Consideration should also be taken to place the equipment such that proper clearance is maintained between the test set and apparatus; in particular, it should be recognized that damaged or defective apparatus may fail during test.

Before proceeding with a test, the operator should discuss with his assistants the general plan for conducting the tests, voltages applied, precautions to be observed, and proper use of the safety devices.

PF field test sets are equipped with ground-relay that prevents test voltage being applied until the following preliminary conditions have been established:

1. A heavy-duty safety (station ground) has been applied to the ground receptacle of the test set.
2. The test case has been grounded through the 120 V supply cord.
3. The voltage control is at the fully counterclockwise zero voltage stop.

After the test set is properly grounded, the remaining test leads and HV test cable are plugged into their receptacles. **Do not connect test leads to the apparatus terminals unless the leads are already connected to the PF test set.**

The PF test set require two-person operation, and therefore two safety switches (deadman switches) are provided with the test set. These switches are of the spring-release type for quick action. With either switch off, all voltage to the HV test cable is removed. The test person operating the PF test set has one of the safety switch, known as the local operator switch; the safety supervisor or the person assisting in PF testing should hold the second safety switch, known as the extension safety switch. The safety supervisor or the assisting person should be in position to observe all terminals of the apparatus under test. If this is not possible, then the out-of-sight terminals should be roped off with caution labels appropriately placed, and a person posted in the vicinity to ensure safety.

Each time the test equipment is set up, prior to making the first test both safety switch operators should jointly verify the correct operation of both switches.

It is apparent that the operator of the second safety switch should not close the switch until all personnel are safely in the clear; personnel should not be permitted to remain atop the apparatus as it is being tested. Also, if unauthorized personnel should enter the area, or if some other undesirable situation should occur, the extension-safety switch operator should release the switch immediately and then notify the test set operator.

Both safety switches must be used at all times. Never short circuit them and do not use fixed mechanical locking means for depressing the switch button. The switch must be manually operated at all times.

The HV test cable used with PF test equipment is a double shielded cable in which the HV is exposed only at the outboard pothead tip. Nevertheless, it is recommended that the HV test cable not be handled while it is energized. The cable may be suspended or tied off in such a manner as to avoid handing.

The test set operator and assistant should follow a uniform system of visual and oral signals in order to prevent confusion when conducting the tests. After the tests are completed all test leads should be removed from the equipment terminals and brought down to the ground before they are disconnected from the test set. **The heavy-duty test set ground is the last lead to be removed from the test set. "Remember, safety, first, last, always."**

3.6 PF Testing of Electrical Apparatus Insulation

PF testing is normally used for acceptance testing, preventing maintenance, and post maintenance insulation assessment, and for condition trending. The test voltage used for PF testing should be sufficient to detect any latent weaknesses in the insulation, but since the test is intended to be nondestructive, the voltage should not exceed normal line-to-neutral or line-to-ground operating voltage of the apparatus under test. Below, the PF testing of various electrical apparatus and equipment is discussed.

3.6.1 Transformers

Power and distribution transformers may be either single-phase or three-phase and may be either dry-type, or oil or synthetic-liquid filled. Transformers may be installed indoors or outdoors depending upon application. The PF test as applied to transformers is the most comprehensive test for detecting insulation degradation, usually caused by moisture, carbonization, and other forms of contamination. Depending on the type, size, and voltage rating of transformer, the PF test may be performed as an overall transformer PF test, or on individual components of the transformer to localize the dielectric circuit for effective analysis of the test results; that is deterioration in the solid winding, bushing, and liquid insulation can be localized by separate tests on these components. Generally, it is common practice to perform PF tests of the bushing and the solid winding together on medium-voltage transformers that have solid porcelain-type bushings. On HV transformers with condenser-type bushings, the PF tests are performed on the individual bushings by the UST method. On all other bushings, hot-collar tests are performed by the GST method.

The types of transformers considered for the purposes of PF testing are

1. Two-winding transformers
2. Three-winding transformers
3. Autotransformers
4. Potential transformers (PTs)

When performing PF tests on transformers, the below listed conditions should be observed:

1. Transformer is de-energized and completely isolated from the power source.
2. Transformer housing is properly grounded.
3. All bushing of HV and LV winding, including the neutral are shorted to make them into an equivalent HV and LV bushings. Neutrals must be ungrounded.
4. Transformers equipped with load-tap-changers should be set to some position off neutral, and this position should be noted on the test data sheet.

3.6.1.1 Two-Winding Transformers

In a three-phase or a single-phase two-winding transformer, the transformer winding insulation system comprises of three insulation system; that is, C_H HV winding insulation, C_L LV winding insulation, and C_{HL} high-to-low winding insulation. The three insulation systems are shown in Figure 3.6.

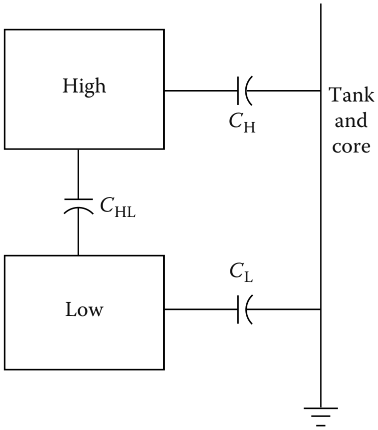


FIGURE 3.6
Insulation circuit of two winding transformer.

When performing PF tests, the HV bushing of the three phase units are shorted together to make them into an equivalent single bushing. Similarly, the LV bushing of three phase unit are also shorted together to make them into an equivalent bushing. Four PF tests of the windings are made as shown in Table 3.1. As shown in the Table 3.1, results of test 1 minus test 2, and test 3 minus test 4 are calculated to validate that the PF test have been made correctly.

Calculated results of Table 3.1: test 1 minus test 2

1. Subtract charging current of test 2 from test 1
2. Subtract watt loss of test 2 from test 1
3. Then calculate the PF, that is

$$[C_H + C_{HL}] - [C_H] = C_{HL}$$

TABLE 3.1
PF Tests for Two-Winding Transformers

Test No.	Winding Energized	Winding Grounded	Winding Guarded	Insulation Measured
1	HV	LV	—	C_H plus C_{HL}
2	HV	—	LV	C_H
3	LV	HV	—	C_L plus C_{HL}
4	LV	—	HV	C_L

Test 3 minus test 4

1. Subtract charging current of test 4 from test 3
2. Subtract watt loss of test 4 from test 3
3. Then calculate the PF, that is

$$[C_{\mathrm{L}} + C_{\mathrm{HL}}] - [C_{\mathrm{L}}] = C_{\mathrm{HL}}$$

The calculated value of C_{HL} from the above calculation should be same. If it is not then there is either an error in the test results or the calculated results.

The test connection arrangements for each of the four tests listed in the Table 3.1 are described below in Figure 3.7a through d.

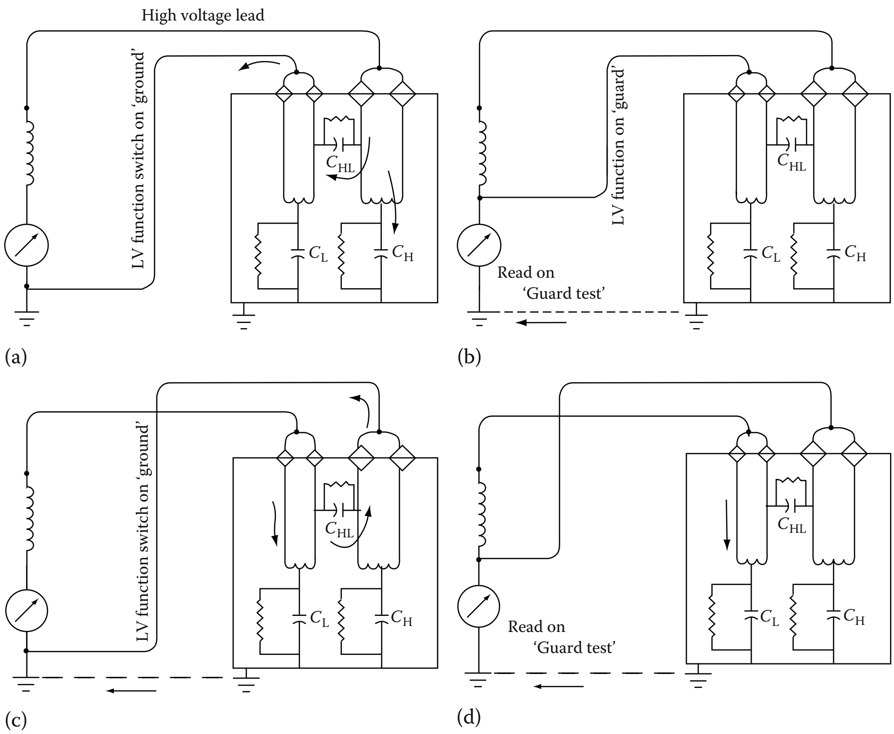


FIGURE 3.7
Measurements of (a) high winding and high-to-low winding insulation; (b) high winding insulation; (c) low winding and high-to-low winding insulation; and (d) low winding insulation.

Test #1: Grounded test mode (GST)

HV winding is energized
LV winding is grounded
The meter reads C_H plus C_{HL}

Test #2: Guard test mode (GST)

HV winding is energized
LV winding is guarded
The meter reads C_H

Test #3: Grounded test mode (GST)

LV winding is energized
HV winding is grounded
The meter reads C_L plus C_{HL}

Test #4: (Guard test mode)

LV winding is energized
HV winding is guarded
The meter reads C_L

3.6.1.2 Three-Winding Transformers

The equivalent circuit of a three-winding transformer insulation system is shown in Figure 3.8. The insulation system in a three-winding transformer

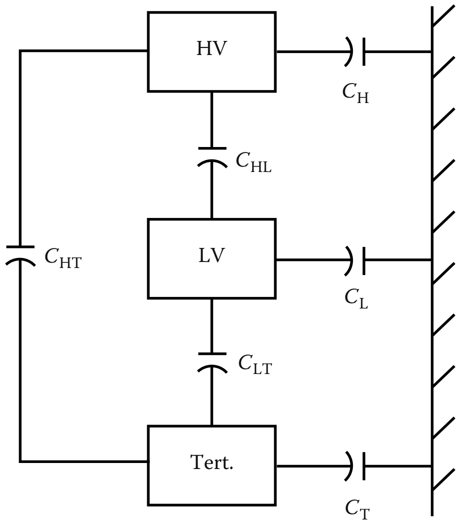


FIGURE 3.8
Insulation circuit of three-winding transformer.

TABLE 3.2
PF Tests for Three-Winding Transformers

Test No.	Winding Energized	Winding Grounded	Winding Guarded	Insulation Measured
1	HV	LV	Tert.	C_H plus C_{HL}
2	HV	—	LV and tert.	C_H
3	LV	Tert.	HV	C_L plus C_{LT}
4	LV	—	HV and tert.	C_L
5	Tert.	HV	LV	C_T plus C_{HT}
6	Tert.	—	HV and LV	C_T
7	ALL	—	—	C_H, C_L, and C_T

Note: Calculations: C_{HL}, test 1 minus test 2; C_{LT}, test 3 minus test 4; C_{HT}, test 5 minus test 6.

Check tests: Energize HV, UST LV, and read C_{HL} direct; Energize HV, UST Tert., and read C_{HT} direct; Energize LV, UST Tert., and read C_{LT} direct.

is similar to the two-winding transformer except that there is an additional winding in the transformer. The standard test procedure for a three-winding transformers is given in Table 3.2. This test technique for three-winding transformers is an extension of the two-winding transformers.

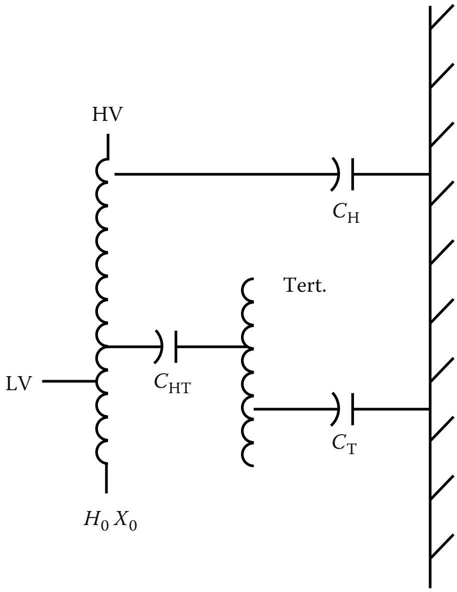


FIGURE 3.9
Insulation circuit of an autotransformer.

TABLE 3.3

PF Tests for an Autotransformers

Test No.	Winding Energized	Winding Grounded	Winding Guarded	Insulation Measured
1	HV and LV	Tert.	—	C_H plus C_{HT}
2	HV and LV	—	Tert.	C_H
3	Tert.	HV and LV	—	C_T plus C_{HT}
4	Tert.	—	HV and LV	C_T

Note: Calculations: C_{HT}, test 1 minus test 2; C_{HT}, test 3 minus test 4.

3.6.1.3 Autotransformers

The equivalent circuit of an autotransformer insulation system is shown in Figure 3.9. The PF tests that are conducted on an autotransformer are shown in Table 3.3. For test purposes, an autotransformer is considered the same as the two winding transformer with the exceptions that the HV is a combination of HV and LV winding which cannot be separated physically. To short circuit the HV winding on a three-phase unit all seven bushings are shorted together when performing PF tests; H_1, H_2, H_3, X_1, X_2, X_3, and H_0, X_0.

3.6.1.4 PTs

PTs are used on HV systems for metering and relaying applications. Because of LV rating of the PTs, the PF tests are routinely performed only on the primary winding of the PTs. Care should be exercised when performing PF tests on PTs to ensure that the PT is completely and effectively isolated from the power source before any tests are conducted. The test connections for conducting PF tests are shown in Figure 3.10. The tests that are conducted on PTs are shown in Table 3.4.

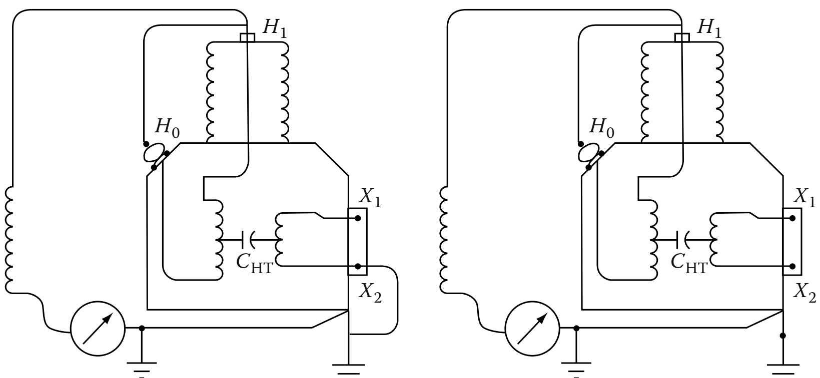


FIGURE 3.10
PF test connections for a single-phase PT.

TABLE 3.4
PF Tests for PT

Test No.	Winding Energized	Winding Grounded	Winding Guarded	Winding UST	Insulation Measured
1. Overall	H_1 and H_0	X_2	—	—	HV to GRD
2. H_1 cross-check	H_1	X_2	H_0	—	To GRD
3. H_0 cross-check	H_0	X_2	H_1	—	To GRD
4. H_1–H_0 excitation	H_1	X_2	—	H_0	I_{EX}
5. H_0—H_1 excitation	H_0	X_2	—	H_1	I_{EX}
6. Hot-collar tests (see hot-collar tests in Section 3.6.2)					

Notes: 1. On tests 1, 3, 4, and 5 limit the test voltage to the rating of the H_0 bushing, usually 5 kV; check the literature of the manufacturer of the PTs.
2. Tests 4 and 5 must be performed at the same voltage.
3. Remove ground from H_0 when performing tests.
4. Secondary winding of PTs need not be shorted; ground one end of the secondary winding only.
5. Tests 1, 2, 3, and 6 are standard tests for PTs.
6. Correct measured PF values to 20°C; use air temperature.

3.6.2 Transformer Bushing

Transformer bushing may be classified into condenser and noncondenser type. The condenser-type bushing consists of oil-impregnated paper insulation or resin-bonded paper insulation with interspersed conducting (condenser) layers. The noncondenser-type bushing consists of solid core, alternate layers of solid and liquid insulation, homogeneous insulating materials, or gas-filled insulation. Bushing may be further classified as having capacitance taps or PF taps. Bushing rated at 69 kV and above have capacitance taps where as bushing 23 to 69 kV have PF test taps. A condenser-type bushing is usually used on transformers above 50 kV. The condenser-type bushing is made up of equal capacitance layers (concentric capacitors) between the center conductor and ground flange. These concentric capacitors provide equal voltage steps; that is a uniform voltage gradient. As shown in Figure 3.11, the condenser-type bushing consists of 10 equal capacitance layers and each layer has a capacitance of 1 pico-farad (pf). Therefore the total capacitance (C) is equal to 0.1 pf. For example, if one capacitance layer breaks down then the capacitance of the bushing would be one-ninth or 0.11 pf; or an increase in bushing capacitance of 0.01 pf, or 10% increase. Figure 3.11 also shows the various insulations associated with the condenser-type bushing. The main insulation C_1 is the insulation from conductor to the tap electrode or shield layer; the tap insulation C_2 is between tap electrode and ground or flange; and C_3 is the overall insulation to ground of the upper and lower porcelain.

PF tests on bushing are usually performed by energizing the bushing conductor and measuring the test current and loss for the insulation system between the conductor and grounded flange. Many modern bushings have capacitance taps or PF test taps. Test on bushings with taps can separately determine the core insulation (C_1) from the tap insulation (C_2). The various insulation systems of the bushing with taps are shown in Figure 3.12.

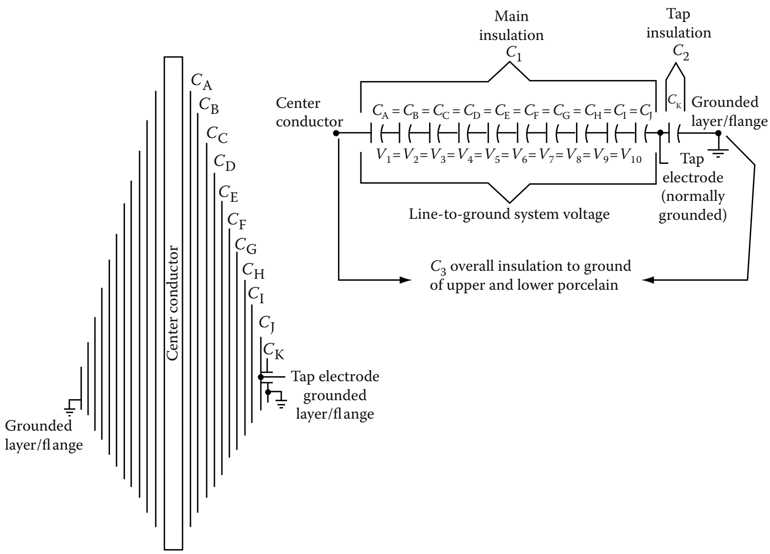


FIGURE 3.11
Equivalent diagram of a condenser-type bushing.

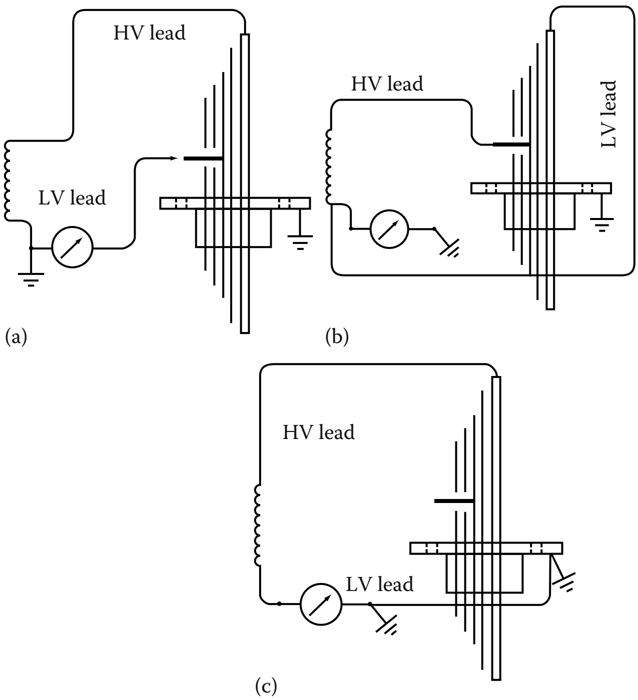


FIGURE 3.12
Measurements of (a) main insulation (C_1); (b) tap insulation (C_2); and (c) insulation of a bushing without taps.

The test connections for performing PF test on bushing are given below. It should be noted that all bushing except the bushing under test are shorted and grounded.

Test No. 1: This test measures the C_1 insulation of the bushing (see Figure 3.12a).

1. Remove capacitance (or PF tap) tap cover from the bushing under test and make connections as shown.
2. Put LV switch of PF test in UST mode.
3. Measure charging current and watt loss.
4. Calculate PF and capacitance; correct to 20°C.
5. Compare results to manufacturers PF and capacitance on nameplate.
6. Capacitance should be ±10% of nameplate and PF depends on manufacturer (<1%).

Test No. 2: This test measures the C_2 insulation of the bushing (see Figure 3.12b).

1. Remove capacitance (or PF tap) tap cover from the bushing under test and make connections as shown.
2. Put LV switch of PF test in guard mode.
3. Guard C_1 insulation as shown in the diagram.
4. Measure charging current and watt loss.
5. Calculate PF and capacitance; correct to 20°C.
6. Compare results to manufacturer's PF and capacitance on nameplate.
7. Capacitance should be ±10% of nameplate and PF depends on manufacturer (<1%).
8. Limit test voltages to 500 V for bushing less than 69 kV.
9. Limit test voltages to 5000 V for bushing greater than 115 kV.
10. Limit test voltages to 2000 V for Westinghouse "O"-plus bushing.

Test No. 3: This test measures the C_1 and C_2 insulation of the bushing (optional test).

1. Remove capacitance (or PF tap) tap cover from the bushing under test and make connections of the HV lead as shown in Figure 3.12b.
2. Put LV switch of PF test in ground mode, i.e., C_1 is not guarded out as was the case in Test No. 2, i.e., the low voltage lead is connected to ground side of the meter.
3. Limit test voltages as shown in Test No. 2.
4. This test measures C1 and $C2$, but $C1$ is very small compared to $C2$, therefore measures $C2$.

Test No. 4: This test measures the C_3 insulation of the bushing (optional test).

1. Remove capacitance (or PF tap) tap cover from the bushing under test and make connections as shown in Figure 3.12a.
2. Put LV switch of PF test in guard mode to guard out C2.
3. Measure charging current and watt loss.
4. Calculate PF and capacitance; correct to 20°C.

Test No. 5: This test measures the insulation of the bushing without capacitance or PF taps, or bushing not installed in equipment, i.e., spares (see Figure 3.12c).

1. Put LV switch of PF test in GST mode and make connections as shown in Figure 3.12c.
2. Measure I_T and watts loss; rate insulation on basis of watt loss.
3. Limit should be less than 0.1 W.

3.6.2.1 Hot-Collar Tests of Noncondenser-Type Bushings

The hot-collar tests may be performed on compound-type, porcelain dry-type bushing, oil-filled bushings, and cable pot heads. The collar is energized by the test voltage (thus the term hot collar), while the center conductor is grounded. It is well-established fact that the compound and dry type bushing fail from leaks that develop in the top end of the bushing allowing moisture to enter the bushing chamber. As a result, leakage paths are established which lead to bushing failure. By applying collar test in the upper region of the bushing, moisture, or deterioration can be detected in the early stages. The collar tests are also useful in detecting low levels of oil or compound in bushing and pot heads. The collar can be made of conductive rubber or metallic foil, braid or wire. When performing collar tests, care should be used to ensure that the collar makes intimate contact with the surface of the bushing or pothead. Hot-collar tests may be made as single collar tests or multiple collar tests as shown in Figure 3.13a through d. A single hot-collar test consists of a measurement between an externally applied collar and the bushing, while the center conductor is grounded (GST mode). In this test mode (Figure 3.13a), all currents passing between the energized collar and ground are measured. In the UST mode (Figure 3.13b), current between the energized collar and the center conductor are measured including the surface leakage currents flowing over the upper portion of the bushing whereas the surface leakage currents flowing in the lower portion of the bushing (grounded flange mounting) are not measured. In the guard mode (Figure 3.13c), the currents between the energized collar and the center conductor are measured and the surface leakage currents flowing over the upper and lower portion of the bushing are guarded, whereas in Figure 3.13d, the surface leakage current over the upper portion of the bushing only are guarded.

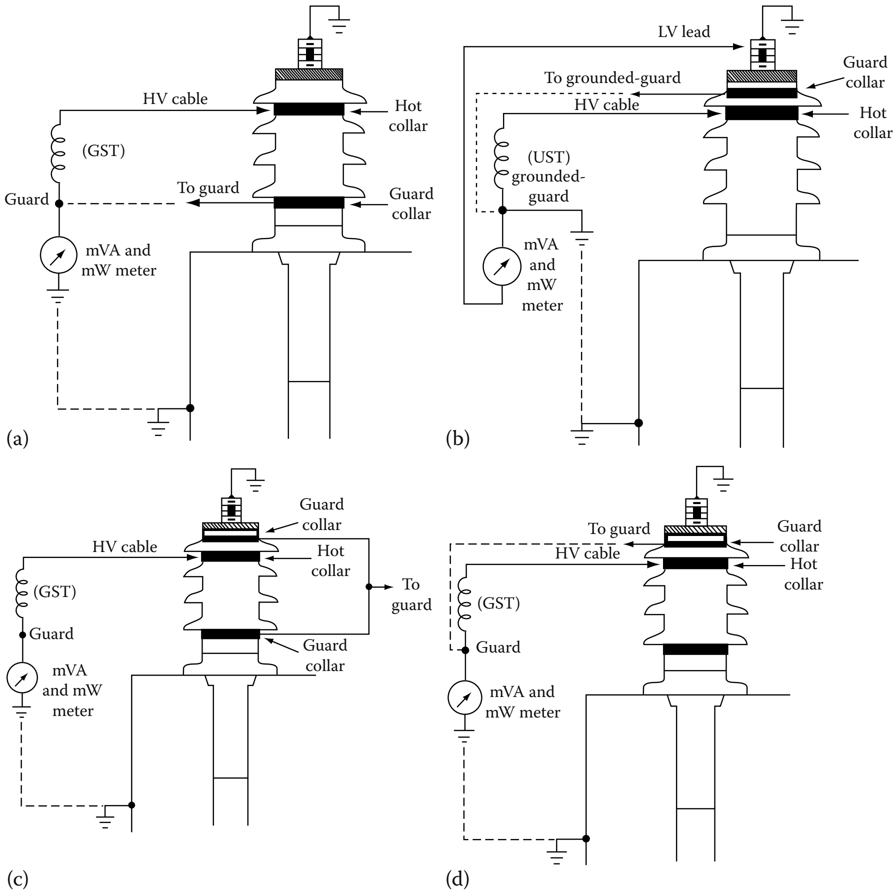
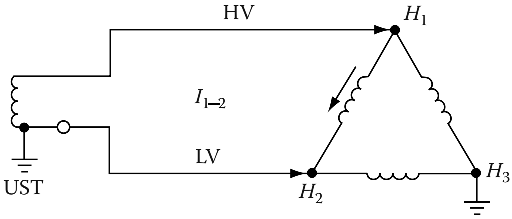


FIGURE 3.13
Hot-collar test of bushings in (a) GST mode; (b) UST mode; (c) guard mode, guard above and below; and (d) guard mode, guard above.

3.6.3 Transformer Excitation Current Test

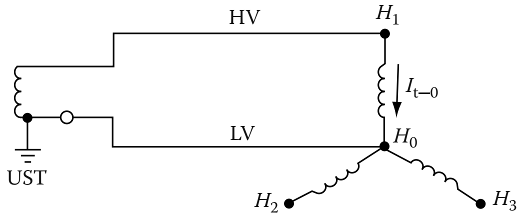
Transformer excitation current test is another test that can be performed with the PF test equipment. Excitation current is also known as the no-load or magnetizing current of the transformer. In this test, voltage is applied to the primary windings one at time with all other windings left open. The excitation current of a transformer is the current the transformer draws when voltage is applied to its primary terminals with the secondary terminal open. The excitation current test, when used in routine preventive maintenance or field acceptance testing of transformers, provides means of detection for winding problems, such as short-circuited or open turns, poor joints or contacts, core problems, etc.

The excitation current test is conducted on each phase winding at a time, that is only one winding is under test with the other winding including the secondary winding are floating. When performing this test, the bushings are not shorted



I_c	Energize	UST	Ground	Float
H_1–H_2	H_1	H_2	H_3 .*	$X_1X_2X_3$
H_2–H_3	H_2	H_3	H_1 .*	$X_1X_2X_3$
H_3–H_1	H_3	H_1	H_2 .*	$X_1X_2X_3$

(a) *If X is wye-connected, X_0 is grounded



I_c	Energize	UST	Float	Ground
H_1–H_0	H_1	H_0	$H_2H_3 \,.\, X_1X_2X_3$	*
H_2–H_0	H_2	H_0	$H_1H_3 \,.\, X_1X_2X_3$	*
H_3–H_0	H_3	H_0	$H_1H_2 \,.\, X_1X_2X_3$	*

(b) *If X is wye-connected, X_0 is grounded

FIGURE 3.14
Excitation current test method for (a) wye-connected winding and (b) Delta-connected winding.

together like they are when conducting the PF tests. The test is performed by applying voltage to one end of the transformer winding and connecting the other end with the LV switch of the PF test set in the UST position.

Figure 3.14b shows the single phase energization of H_1–H_0 of a three-phase wye-connected unit. Three measurements are routinely made (H_1–H_0, H_2–H_0, and H_3–H_0) at voltages generally below rated voltage—not exceeding 2.5 or 10 kV depending upon the PF test set equipment. The LV winding, not shown in this figure, is isolated from its source or load and is left floating during the test. The neutral is left grounded, as is in normal service. The exciting current flows in the core such that two high and one low readings are obtained because the middle leg carries a lower amount of current compared to the two outer core legs. This is because when the middle winding H_2–H_0 is energized, the current flows only in the middle leg and does not involve the joints and yokes of the core, where as when the H_1–H_0 and H_3–H_0 windings are energized, the current flow path involves the respective core leg, two joints and two yokes which gives the higher current.

Figure 3.13a shows the single phase energization of H_1–H_2 of a three-phase Delta-connected transformer. Similar to the wye-connected transformer, three readings are routinely made (H_1–H_2, H_2–H_3, and H_3–H_1) and measurement recorded. In this case, the readings of the exciting current are two low and one high reading because of the current flow path in the core. When H_1–H_2 winding is energized, the current flows in two core legs, four joints, and four yokes thereby giving a high current. Whereas when H_2–H_3 and H_3–H_1 windings are energized, the current path involves two core legs, four joints, and two yokes which give a lower current measurement. When evaluating excitation current test results, it is important to remember that the excitation current measurements should have a pattern of two high and one low, or two low and one high reading depending upon the transformer winding connections.

3.6.4 Transformer Insulating Oils and Fluids

In order to perform PF tests on transformer oils and fluids with the PF test set, a special cell is provided with the test set. The cell is essentially a capacitor which utilizes the insulating liquid as the dielectric. In order to make this test, a sample of the insulating fluid or oil should be obtained from the transformer by opening the sample valve. Remember to flush approximately one-quart of oil or fluid into a bucket to clean any contaminants from the valve housing. Once this is done, then fill cell with oil sample to just above the raised center of the cell to prevent any sparking due to insufficient amount of oil. This cell holds approximately one-quart of fluid. Make connections of the cell as shown in Figure 3.15. The test voltage should be 2.5 or 10 kV depending upon the PF test being used. The test voltage should be raised gradually to the desired level. Readings should be taken, and PF value calculated in the normal manner as is done with the solid insulation

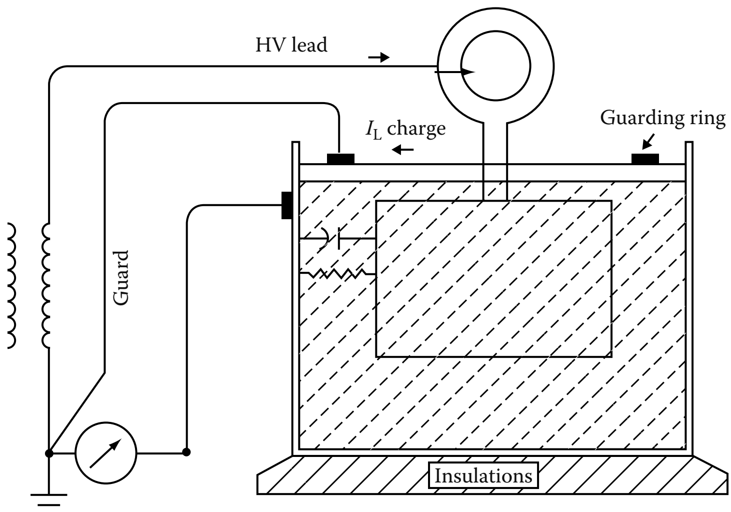


FIGURE 3.15
Power factor testing of the insulating liquid.

tests. Take the temperature of the oil or fluid sample immediately after the test completion. Correct the measured PF to 20°C.

3.6.5 Lightning Arrestors

Most station and intermediate class arrestors are of unit design, where gap and valve elements are enclosed in a single porcelain housing. These employ a series of gap elements with shunting resistors to shield the gaps and to provide uniform voltage distribution across the individual gaps and unit. The arrestor has electrical characteristics, such as AC grading current and dielectric loss, which is measurable. Failure of the arrestors can be attributed to several causes, such as damaged, defective or contaminated units, lightning strokes, long-duration surges due to switching and misapplication. Arrestors have low capacitance and experience has shown that the measurement of dielectric loss is effective in detecting defective, contaminated, and deteriorated arrestors. The dielectric loss indicates the mechanical condition and insulating qualities of the arrestor. Arrestors may consists of single units or assemblies (stacked units) depending on application for a given equipment rating. Arrestors are tested as single units to assure that the arrestor's mechanical and insulation integrity is intact so that it can perform its intended function. Before conducting any tests on arrestors, the line connected to the arrestor should be first de-energized and grounded, then disconnected from the arrestors. Arrestor assemblies consisting of single units are first disconnected from the bus and then tested by the GST method as shown in Figure 3.16a. Assemblies consisting of two or more units are tested using a combination of GST method and UST method as shown in Figure 3.16b. In case of assemblies of three or more units per phase, it is only necessary to de-energize the line and ground the top of the arrestor stack. In this case the bus need not be disconnected from the arrestor stack.

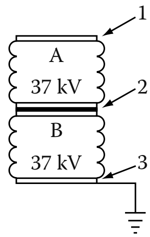
Since the arresters exhibit nonlinear characteristics, the losses may vary depending upon the applied test voltages. In order to compare dielectric losses for the various units, all tests must be performed at prescribed voltages. The Table 3.5 gives the recommended voltages for testing lightning arresters.

3.6.6 Circuit Breakers

Circuit breakers vary from very simple designs to large and very elaborate designs. The main purpose of the circuit breaker is not only to carry and interrupt load currents but also to interrupt abnormally high currents that flow during fault conditions. Circuit breakers are designed to conform to the particular characteristics of the power system to which they are applied. The voltage of a given power system determines the insulating requirements needed for the circuit breakers used in the system. Therefore many different principles and insulating mediums are used in the construction of the circuit breakers. The principal insulation mediums used for circuit breakers are air, oil, vacuum, and sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6) gas. The PF tests for circuit breakers are described in Sections 3.6.6.1 through 3.6.6.3.

Test connections

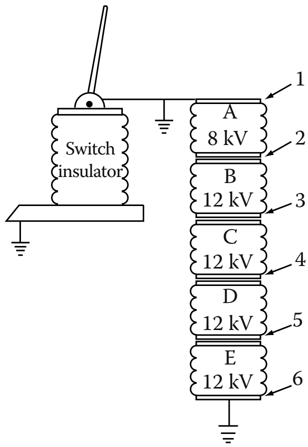
Test kV	Energize	Ground	Guard	UST	Measure
10	2	3		1	A
10	2	3	1		B



(a)

Test connections

Test kV	Energize	Ground	Guard	UST	Measure
8	2	1.6	3		A
10	3	1.6.2	4		B
10	3	1.6.2		4	C
10	5	1.6		4	D
10	5	1.6	4		E



(b)

FIGURE 3.16
PF measurements of (a) two-stack arrestors and (b) multistacked arrestors.

3.6.6.1 Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers

The circuit breakers covered in this group are air magnetic, air blast, and vacuum-type circuit breakers usually applied at voltages 1000 V and above. The air magnetic and air blast breakers use arc chutes that are installed over the breaker contacts for arc interruption where as vacuum breaker contact assembly is housed in a vacuum bottle. A circuit breaker is a gang-operated device, that is the three-phase contacts are opened and closed

TABLE 3.5
Recommended Test Voltages for Lightning Arresters

Arrestor Unit (kV)	Test Potential (kV)
3.0	2.5
4.5	4.0
6.0	5.0
7.5	7.0
9.0	7.5
12 and greater	10.0

TABLE 3.6

PF Tests Procedure for Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers

Test No.	Break Position	Bushing Energize	Bushing Guarded	Bushing UST
1	Open	1	2	—
2	Open	2	1	—
3	Open	3	4	—
4	Open	4	3	—
5	Open	5	6	—
6	Open	6	5	—
7	Open	1	—	2
8	Open	3	—	4
9	Open	5	—	6

simultaneously. The breaker three-phase bushing are numbered 1 through 6 with phase A numbered as 1 and 2, phase B numbered as 3 and 4, and phase C numbered as 5 and 6. The PF tests are performed on the circuit breaker as shown in Table 3.6 with the circuit breaker in open position. In order to eliminate the influence of the arc chutes on the bushings and other ground insulation, it is recommended to make tests 1 through 6 with the arc chutes raised or removed. The breaker frame must be properly grounded in order to obtained good test data. Since circuit breakers have very small capacitance, PF is not calculated, instead evaluation of the results is based on current and dielectric loss measurements. The test connections for test 1 through 6 are shown in Figure 3.17a and for tests 7 through 9 in Figure 3.17b.

3.6.6.2 Oil Circuit Breakers (OCBs)

An OCB consists of gang-operated three single-pole switches whose contacts are immersed in oil. Most units have one grounded tank per phase although some designs may have all three phases housed in a single tank. Major components of a circuit breaker are

- Two bushing per phase mounted in an oil-filled grounded tank
- A contact assembly (interrupter) mounted on the bottom terminal of each bushing
- An insulating operating rod to open and close breaker contacts
- An insulated guide assembly to keep the operating rod in proper alignment
- Tank containing a volume of insulating oil to provide arc quenching

Some breakers may have tank liners, shunt resistors across the interrupters, and other auxiliary components. The primary object of the insulation test on

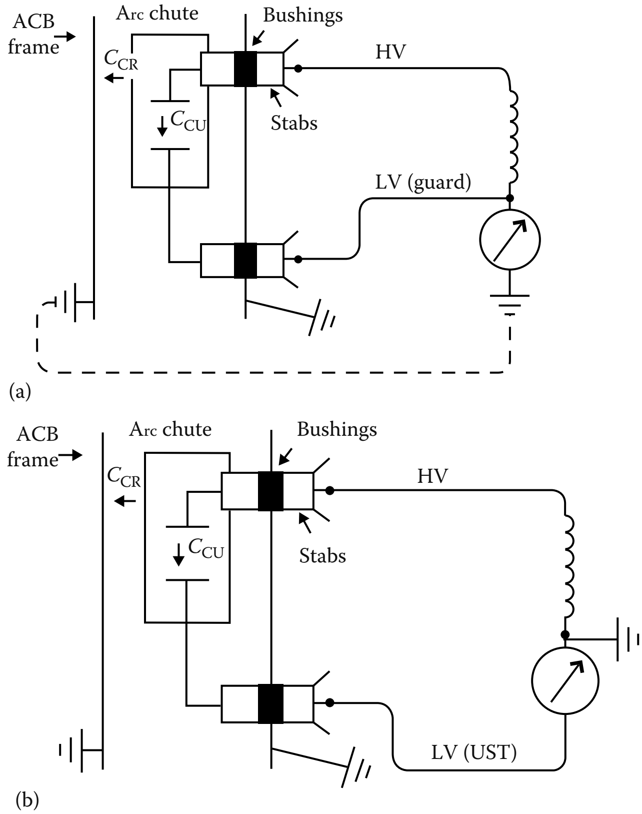


FIGURE 3.17
(a) Open circuit breaker tests and (b) closed circuit breaker tests.

the OCB is to determine the condition of the above-listed OCB components, particularly bushings which are most vulnerable especially at higher voltages. Nine overall tests are routinely performed on a three-phase OCB, three overall tests per phase as listed in Table 3.7. The open circuit breaker tests measure the insulation of bushing, oil, interrupter, lift rod guide, and tank liner. The closed circuit breaker tests measure both bushings, oil, both interrupters, lift rod, and tank liner. The test connections for the open breaker and closed breaker are shown in Figure 3.18a and b, respectively.

The difference between open circuit breaker and closed circuit breaker tests is that in the closed circuit breaker test a larger dielectric field is established. The watts loss of a closed breaker test is different from the sum of the two open breaker watts loss because during the closed breaker test, the crosshead is energized thus placing the lift rod in a stronger dielectric field. Also, the average dielectric field within the tank is increased during the closed breaker test. Since the difference between a closed OCB test is different than the sum of the two open OCB tests, then any differences must be due to

TABLE 3.7

PF Tests Procedure for OCB

Test No.	OCB Position	Test Mode	Bushing Energized	Bushing Floating
1	Open	GST	1	2
2	Open	GST	2	1
3	Open	GST	3	4
4	Open	GST	4	3
5	Open	GST	5	6
6	Open	GST	6	5
7	Closed	GST	1 and 2	—
8	Closed	GST	3 and 4	—
9	Closed	GST	5 and 6	—

losses in the auxiliary insulations which are not stressed the same for both conditions. The amount of such differences can be used to evaluate the condition of the auxiliary insulation, and is referred to as the tank loss index (TLI) test. TLI test is defined as the difference in watts loss between closed breaker test minus the sum of the two open breaker tests, or TLI can be written as the following:

$$\text{TLI} = \text{Closed breaker loss} - \text{sum of open breaker losses}$$

The polarity sign of the loss measurement for the TLI should be noted in order to indicate the type of problem with the circuit breaker. Table 3.8 gives the guidance for investigating abnormal TLI values for the OCB. When it is indicated that auxiliary insulation of the OCB requires further investigation

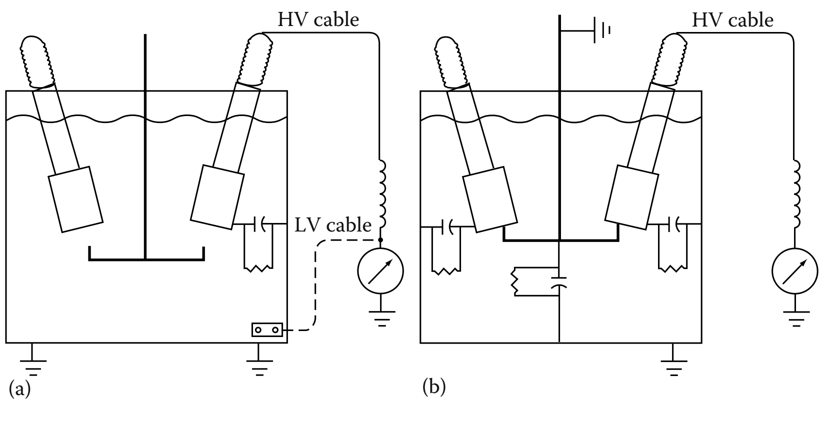


FIGURE 3.18
(a) OCB open breaker tests and (b) OCB closed breaker tests.

TABLE 3.8

Guide for Investigating Abnormal TLI of OCB

10 kV	**More than −0.25 W**	**−0.25 to −0.15 W**	**+0.15 to +0.25 W**	**>+0.25 W**
2.5 kV	**More than −15.6 mW**	**−15.6 to 9.4 mW**	**+9.4 to +15.6 mW**	**>+15.6 mW**
	Procedure			
	Investigate as soon as possible	Investigate at next regular maintenance period	Investigate at next regular maintenance period	Investigate as soon as possible
	Guide assembly, contact assembly, and upper portion of the lift rod	Guide assembly, contact assembly, and upper portion of the lift rod	Lift rod, tank oil, tank liner, and auxiliary contact insulation	Lift rod, tank oil, tank liner, and auxiliary tank insulation

then the interrupter and lift rod can be tested as shown on Figure 3.19a and b. With tank down, or oil removed from the OCB, perform the following test on the interrupter assembly.

UST Test-OCB Interrupter Assembly:

1. Energize HV bushing
2. LV lead on hot-collar strap around interrupter
3. Measure current and watt loss; calculate PF

UST Test-Lift Rod Assembly:

1. Use 10 kV test set
2. Stress insulation to 40 kV per foot
3. Measure current and watt loss; calculate PF

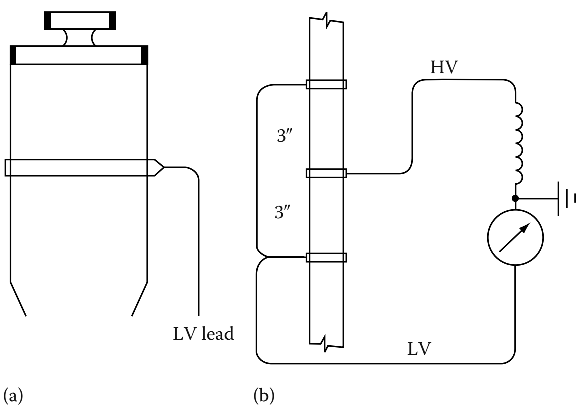


FIGURE 3.19
(a) PF tests of OCB interrupter assembly and (b) dielectric loss test of OCB lift rod assembly.

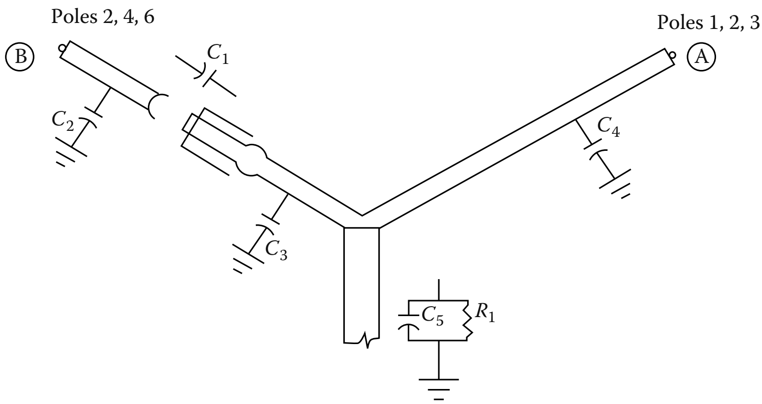


FIGURE 3.20
The capacitances of SF_6 breaker.

3.6.7 SF_6 Breaker

This type of breaker contains inert, nontoxic, and odorless gas known as SF_6. The SF_6 gas is kept under pressure from 45 to 240 lb/in.^{2} and extinguishes the arc rapidly. These types of breakers are usually used at higher voltages although some limited use of this gas is found in medium voltage switchgear and circuit breakers in the United States. The capacitances of a single pole unit SF_6 breaker are shown in Figure 3.20. The routine PF test conducted on this type of breaker are shown in Table 3.9.

3.6.8 Rotating Machinery

Rotating machinery includes machines such as motors, generators, synchronous condensers, and other machines. Although PF test can be performed on any size machine, they are routinely conducted on machines rated at 2.4 kV and higher voltages. Because of higher voltage and large charging currents (large capacitance) of relatively large machines, the 2500 V PF test set is not often used for conducting the PF tests. However, if the capacitance of the machine is within the charging capacity of the 2500 V test set, then the PF test may be conducted with this test set. It is a normal practice to use the 10 kV PF test set to perform PF tests on HV machines. Some manufacturer's of PF test

TABLE 3.9
PF Tests Procedure for SF_6 Breaker (All Tests with Breaker Open)

Test No.	Energize	LV Lead	Float	UST	Measure
1, 3, 5	A	Ground	B	—	C_4 C_5 C_3 R_1
2, 4, 6	B	Ground	A	—	C_2
7, 8, 9	B	—	—	A	C_1
1–6	GST mode				(SF_6 gas across C_1)
7–9	UST mode				

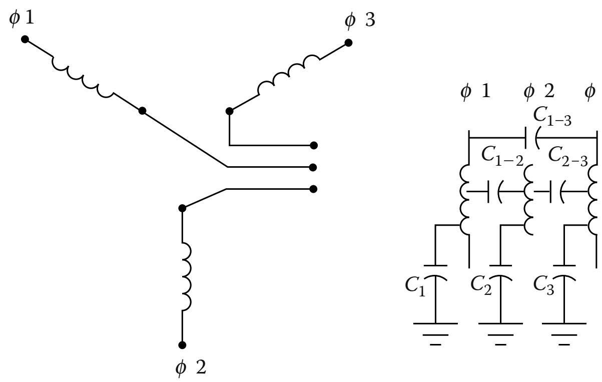


FIGURE 3.21
Insulation systems of a machine.

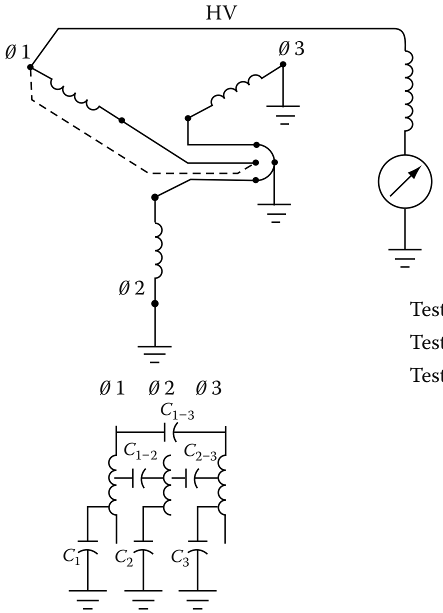
set supply a special resonator (inductive unit) with the 10 kV test sets for testing very large capacitance machines which normally could not be tested otherwise. A three-phase machine insulation is complex since it is made up of several insulation systems, but for test purposes the machine insulation can be considered to have two insulation systems. These two insulations are phase-to-ground insulation known as ground-wall insulation, and interphase insulation which is known as end-turn insulation. These two insulations are represented as capacitances and are shown below, and in Figure 3.21.

Machine Insulation Systems
C_{1-3}, Ground-wall insulation, phase-to-ground
C_{1-2}, End-turn insulation, phase-to-phase
C_{2-3}, End-turn insulation, phase-to-phase
C_{1-3}, End-turn insulation, phase-to-phase

The PF tests of machine insulation provide indication of the overall general condition of the insulation; that is the presence of contamination, moisture, corona (ionization), or other forms of contamination. The applied test voltage for the PF tests usually can be used up to the machine phase-to-neutral rating. It is recommended that two sets of tests be performed on the machine winding; that is first measure the ground-wall insulation and second measure the end-turn insulation. The test connections for conducting the ground-wall and end-turn insulations on a machine winding are shown in Figures 3.22 and 3.23, respectively.

3.6.8.1 PF Tip-Up Test

Another variation of the PF tests on machine winding insulation may be performed as a PF tip-up test. The PF tip-up is defined as the increase in the PF as the voltage is increased from an initial test value to the maximum test value. The PF tip-up test can be performed on any dry-type insulation,

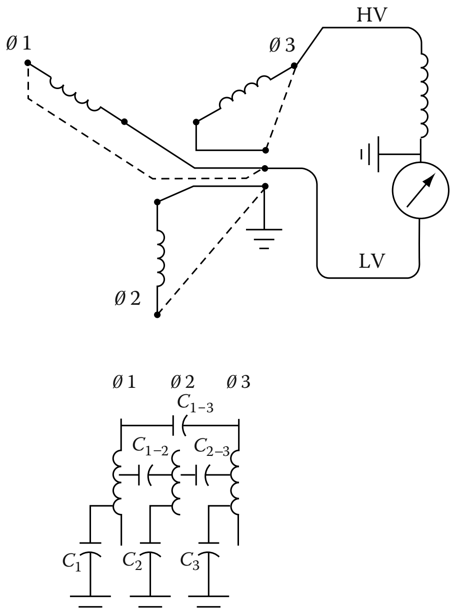


Test	Energize	Ground
1	Ø 1	Ø 2 and Ø 3
2	Ø 2	Ø 1 and Ø 3
3	Ø 3	Ø 1 and Ø 2

Insulation measured

Test 1, C_1(95%); C_{1-2}(5%); C_{1-3}(5%)
Test 2, C_2(95%); C_{1-2}(5%); C_{2-3}(5%)
Test 3, C_3(95%); C_{1-3}(5%); C_{2-3}(5%)

FIGURE 3.22
PF measurement of ground-wall insulation.



Test	Energize	Ground	UST
4	Ø 1	Ø 3	Ø 2
5	Ø 2	Ø 1	Ø 3
6	Ø 3	Ø 2	Ø 1

Insulation measured

Test 4, C_{1-2}
Test 5, C_{2-3}
Test 6, C_{1-3}

FIGURE 3.23
PF measurement of interphase (end-turn) insulation.

TABLE 3.10

PF Tip-Up Test of a Machine Winding

Test No.	Test Voltage (kV)	PF Value (%)
1	2	1.0
2	4	1.1
3	6	1.3
4	8	1.5
5	10	1.8

that is insulation not immersed in insulating oil, such as dry-type transformers, motors, etc. The PF tip-up test indicates the nature of insulation contamination and degradation which is voltage dependent, such as carbonization and ionization. It shows the increase in dielectric loss as a function of voltage, thereby indicating the cause of the increased losses. The PF tip-up test is illustrated by an example given in Table 3.10. In this example, PF tests are conducted starting at an initial voltage value of 2 kV, with five steps of 2 kV each to a maximum value of 10 kV. The PF test voltages and corresponding measured PF values for each test are shown in Table 3.10. The PF tip-up between test 1 and test 5 is 0.8% (test 5 minus test 1). Similarly PF tip-up can be calculated for each succeeding test to determine the PF tip-up. Increasing value of PF tip-up indicates increased dielectric losses due to increased voltage, thus indicating degradation that is sensitive to increasing voltage. If the tip-up value is small or the increase in tip-up value is small, it indicates that the insulation degradation is not voltage dependent, such as the case when the winding insulation is wet or contaminated with moisture.

3.6.9 Cables and Accessories

PF testing of cables requires additional precautions since cables are run in duct banks and conduits or are directly buried in ground, and are not visible other than the ends of the cable. Therefore both ends of the cable under test should be clearly identified and isolated. Additional concern involves the ground return path of the current to the test set. Effective PF test can only be performed for the shielded and sheathed cables. It is recommended that PF test for unshielded or unsheathed cables should only be performed if a definite ground return path can be provided back to the test set. Also, because of the long lengths of cables (large capacitance), the charging current of these cables may be very large and beyond the capacity of the PF test set. As a result, the PF tests can be performed on relatively short lengths of cables. PF tests are not very effective in detecting localized faults as the length of the cable under test increases. However, PF tests are useful in indicating general deterioration and contamination of the cable. The hot-collar tests discussed earlier in this chapter under bushings are most effective tests for cable accessories, such as pot heads. The PF tests for cables are

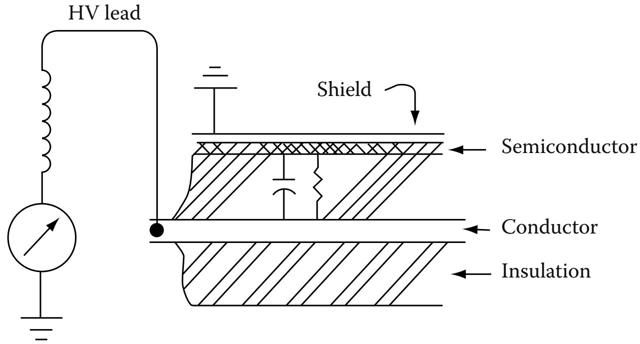


FIGURE 3.24
PF test connection of single-conductor shielded cable.

divided into shielded and sheathed cables and unshielded and unsheathed cables which are discussed in Sections 3.6.9.1 and 3.6.9.2.

3.6.9.1 Shielded or Sheathed Cable

The single conductor cable should be de-energized, isolated, and grounded to discharge the cable completely before conducting a PF test on it. The HV lead of the PF test set is connected to the cable conductor and the cable shield or sheath is effectively grounded as shown in Figure 3.24. The test is conducted in the GST mode and the voltage of sufficient magnitude (voltage should not exceed the cable's normal operating voltage) is applied depending upon the voltage rating of the cable. Multiconductor cables which are individually shielded can be tested similar to the single conductor shielded cables with the other cables not under test effectively grounded.

3.6.9.2 Unshielded and Unsheathed Cables

The single conductor unshielded or unsheathed cable may be tested similar to the single conductor shielded cable. However, the test results (measurement of the PF) may include PF measurements of other materials surrounding the cable or any materials that form the ground return path of the leakage current. In other words, the losses in materials that are not part of the insulation are included in the PF measurement, thus giving unpredictably higher PF results. *Also, it is unsafe to conduct the PF test in this manner since the return leakage current path is not exactly known and therefore may pose a danger to the test operator. Therefore this procedure is not recommended.* Instead, if PF tests are to be conducted on such cables then the procedure recommended is to use another phase conductor of the same circuit (or a spare cable if available) as a leakage current return path by connecting the far ends of two cables. The test is performed in the UST mode to conduct PF test measurement between the two cables. Similarly, multiconductor unshielded or unsheathed cables may be tested in this manner. Any other cables not included in the test should be effectively grounded. This procedure is repeated to include all conductors in at least one measurement.

3.6.10 PF Correction Capacitors and Surge Capacitors

The PF capacitors are used to improve system (load) PF or phase angle. The surge capacitors are used with surge arrestors to protect motors by changing the slope of the wave front of voltage surges. Both of these types of capacitors have relatively high capacitances. The PF correction capacitors are either a single or two bushing design, while the surge capacitors are always a single bushing design. The two bushing capacitor has capacitances known as main capacitance C_1 which is between the two bushing; ground capacitance C_{1g} between bushing one and ground; ground capacitance C_{2g} between bushing two and ground which are shown in Figure 3.25a. The main capacitance C_1 because of its largeness is generally beyond the range of the 2.5 kV PF test set, but the ground capacitance of two bushing can be tested with the 2.5 kV PF test set as shown in Figure 3.25b. Although this method does not measure the main insulation, it is effective in detecting problems associated with the bushing and internal

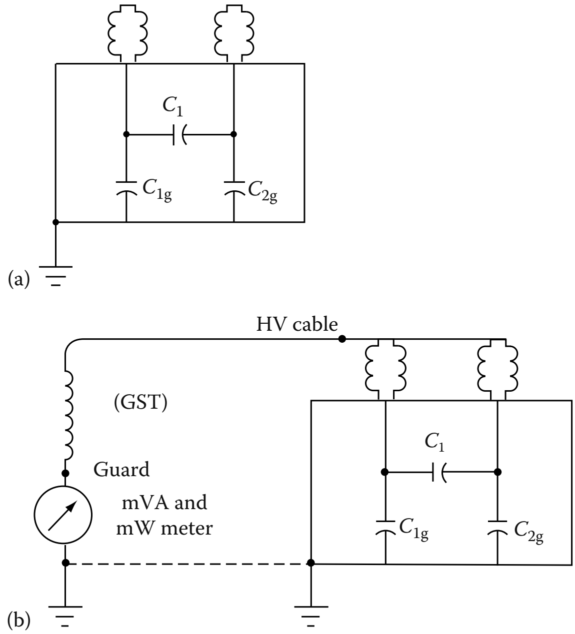


FIGURE 3.25
(a) Capacitance associated with a two bushing capacitor; (b) PF test connections for measuring ground insulation of a two bushing capacitor.

ground-wall insulation. The capacitor, the housing, and both bushing should be grounded to completely discharge the unit before any PF tests are made on these units. This caution applies to all units that have been just removed from service and others that have not been energized. The PF test is made in the GST mode for checking the ground capacitance and UST mode for checking the main capacitance C_1.

3.6.10.1 Bus Insulators

One-piece porcelain bus insulators can be tested individually by the dielectric loss method. The procedure consists of grounding the bus and insulator base, and applying the test voltage to the center of the porcelain as shown in Figure 3.26. The test measures the dielectric losses in the top and lower halves of the insulator in parallel to ground. The test potential should be applied to the porcelain busing by a snug-fitting hot collar. Average values of millivoltamperes and milliwatts should be calculated for a number of similar insulators. The insulators that have dielectric losses appreciably higher than the average should be removed for further tests and examined for cracks and internal contamination.

3.6.10.2 Miscellaneous Equipment

Other miscellaneous electrical equipment that can be tested for PF are coupling capacitors, hot sticks, bus insulators, rubber gloves and blankets, and bucket trucks. These types of equipment are beyond the scope of work of this text. It is recommended that the reader refer to the manufacturers of the PF test equipment for guidance on PF testing of such equipment.

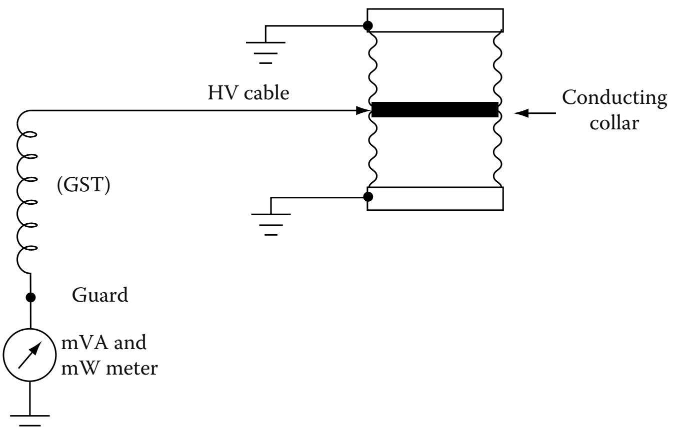


FIGURE 3.26
Test connections for one-piece post-type bus insulator.

3.7 Evaluation and Grading of PF and DF Test Results

3.7.1 General

After the PF tests are completed and results obtained, each apparatus and equipment insulation should be evaluated to its serviceability. The evaluation criteria may be divided into four categories. They are

1	Good	Insulation condition is good and suitable for continued service
2	Deteriorated	Insulation condition is satisfactory for service but should be checked within six months to see if the condition has further degraded
3	Marginal	Insulation condition is not satisfactory for service—immediate investigation of the degraded conditions should be begun and if this is not possible then it should be begun as soon as possible
4	Bad	Remove from service and recondition to restore insulation to good condition, if not possible, then replace

The recommended practice for evaluating test results is not only to assess whether the test results fall into one of the four categories mentioned above, but also to compare the test results with previous year's results to see how much change has occurred in the condition of the insulation since the last test. This is to say that the year-to-year test results are compared for trending purposes to signify any changes in the health of the insulation due to normal aging, but as well as other causes. Any sudden and large changes in test results between two test intervals should be a cause of concern and should be investigated before putting equipment back in service.

Usually, the failure hazards of electrical equipment are expressed in terms of maximum allowable PF values, however changes in the normal dielectric losses (watts loss), capacitance, and AC resistance are also used for indicating problems in the insulation. Depending upon the type of equipment, many manufacturers publish factory and operating limits for PF or capacitance values for their equipment which can then be used for evaluating the test results. The normal test values for various types of equipment used in the industry, and discussed in this text have been obtained from testing similar equipment in the field and factory over many years. The abnormal or unsafe limits have been established from correlation of known test values at which equipment insulation has failed in service. Insulation in deteriorated condition may operate for a period of time without a failure depending upon its exposure to abnormal operating conditions, such as voltage and current transients, short circuits, temperature, etc. However, it should be recognized that deteriorated insulation creates a definite operating hazard and if goes uncorrected will result in service interruptions and equipment damage. If deteriorated insulation is removed before failure, it may be reconditioned and restored to service with substantial savings in equipment cost and unnecessary service outages.

Whenever the test results are questionable or marginal, it is generally recommended to perform tests on more frequent basis in order to keep abreast of the condition and to establish a trend. A gradual and consistent increase in PF may be due to contamination, deterioration, or normal aging, where as a sudden increase in the PF is a cause of immediate concern even when the absolute PF value is not considered excessive. Whenever an increasing trend is established, then the equipment should be removed from service as soon as practical for inspection to determine the cause of the problem and to make appropriate repairs.

3.7.2 Analysis of the Results

The electrical characteristics of the insulation vary with temperature. In order to compare PF and DF test results on a periodic basis of given equipment or apparatus, the PF and DF values should be converted to base temperature of 20°C as was discussed in Section 3.2.3. The reader is referred to Doble Engineering Company's *Power Factor Test Data Reference Book* for more details on the effects of temperature and correction factors. The analysis of the PF test results for the various types of equipment and apparatus is discussed below and is condensed from the Doble Engineering Company's reference manuals.

3.7.2.1 Transformers

Typical problems in transformers that are found with PF (and DF) and excitation current tests are

- Wet insulation
- Short circuit windings and/or turns
- Corona damage and carbonization
- Contamination from sludge, varnishes, etc.
- Displaced windings and core damage

The appraisal of PF and DF test results is divided into oil-filled and dry-type transformers. Also, further reference to the term DF is not made in this discussion since PF and DF are the same for evaluating the condition of the insulation.

3.7.2.1.1 Oil-Filled Power and Distribution Transformers

The overall PF test results of oil-filled power and distribution transformers indicate the insulation condition of the solid windings, oil, barriers, bushings, etc. The overall PF value for individual windings-to-ground and interwindings insulation of modern oil-filled transformers should be 0.5% or less, corrected to 20°C. Service-aged power transformers will have somewhat higher PF values due to normal aging, loading (heat), and voltage stress.

A PF value as high as 1% is considered acceptable for older transformers when previous history or knowledge of PF value of the transformer, or similar transformers is not available. However, when the PF value of one insulation system of the transformer is higher than the others, for example, HV winding insulation PF is higher than the LV and interwinding insulation PF, then causes of the higher PF should be investigated. A PF value of 2% for extremely old power transformers may be considered acceptable. In the case of older transformers that utilized varnished-cambric or varnish insulation, these transformers may have normal PF values in the range of 4% to 5% at 20°C.

Transformers that are subjected to excessive internal forces due to possible through-faults or other causes may have windings that are physically distorted, that is the core–coil assembly configuration has changed from its original design configuration. If this should happen, then capacitance of the winding-to-ground and interwinding (i.e., C_H, C_L, and C_{HL}) would have changed. Therefore measuring the capacitance of the individual winding is also important in judging the condition of the winding insulation. Also, the transformer excitation current test discussed in Section 3.6.3 is extremely effective in revealing damage to the core, core–coil assembly, tap changer, and short circuited turn-to-turn insulation. In evaluating excitation current test results for three-phase transformers, evaluation is based on a normal pattern of excitation current readings, that is either a two high and one low reading, or two low and one high reading depending on the transformer winding connections. A change in this pattern is a cause for investigation. Also, if benchmark data, such as factory or field acceptance data are available, then the evaluation should be based on comparing the test results with the benchmark data.

3.7.2.1.2 Dry-Type Power and Distribution Transformers

The PF of dry-type transformers varies over a relatively wide range due to in part to the insulation of support insulators, bus work, and insulation materials. Corona is a greater possibility in HV dry-type transformers and the test procedure should include provisions for checking it. This can be done by making PF tip-up tests on the dry-type transformers. PF tip-up test is described in Section 3.6.7.1 under rotating machine testing. An abnormal increase in the tip-up value may be an indication of excessive corona or voids in the insulation. A comparison of the PF and PF tip-up test values with benchmark data if available, or with test results of similar units tested under similar conditions is recommended in evaluating the insulation condition of the dry-type transformers. It is not unreasonable to expect a PF of 2% or less for new modern dry-type transformers. However, PF may increase with age of the transformer, and may increase to 5%–8%. PF values substantially higher than the values discussed here should be investigated to determine the cause of the high PF. A better approach for appraisal of transformer insulation is to use the PF data recorded during the initial tests on the transformer, such as acceptance testing, as a benchmark for comparison with subsequent test results.

3.7.2.1.3 Transformer Insulating Fluids (Oil)

The PF of good, new oil is expected to be 0.05% or less at 20°C. Used oil in good condition should have a PF of 0.5% or less at 20°C, and if the PF exceeds 0.5% then the oil is considered questionable for continued use. Oil having PF greater than 1.0% at 20°C should be investigated or reconditioned, or replaced. A high PF of the oil is an indication of the presence of contamination, such as moisture, carbon, acids, polar contaminants, etc.

3.7.2.2 Bushings

The problems found in bushing are

- Cracks
- Dirty bushings
- Loss of oil or compound
- Short-circuited condenser bushings
- Wet or deteriorated bushings or tap insulation
- Dirty tap insulation
- Corona in bushing insulation system

The PF tests including the hot-collar tests performed on similar types of bushing under the same test and weather conditions should test similarly, and be within acceptable limits. When PF of a clean bushing increases significantly from its initial value, it is usually due to the effect of contamination, such as moisture which lowers the dielectric strength of the bushing. The possibility of the failure of the bushing in service increases as its dielectric strength decreases due to the effect of contamination. PF tests, made on a regular basis, have been used in assessing the serviceability of the bushing over the years. To decide whether a bushing should be removed from service because it has a slightly higher PF than normal depends upon the magnitude of the overall PF and hot-collar test results. However, a bushing that shows a substantial increase in PF each year is an indication of potential failure hazard. It is recommended that the bushing insulation should be evaluated based on the results of PF, capacitance, and hot-collar test results.

With regard to hot-collar test, higher than normal losses are indicative of contamination or deterioration of bushing insulation. Any bushing differing significantly from others by few milliwatts (up to one-tenth of a watt for the 10 kV test) should be investigated. The watts loss limit in bushing for the 2.5 kV test is approximately 0.15 W. The loss of oil or compound may be detected by comparing the hot-collar test current rather than the PF value. Abnormally low test current (10%–15%) may indicate absence of compound or oil. Testing under successively lower petticoats (skirts) will show normal current reading when compound or oil is reached.

Modern oil-impregnated paper insulated condenser type bushings have PF of 0.5% or less at 20°C. Any such bushing which shows a significant increase should be investigated. Usually the capacitance and/or PF value of a bushing are provided by the manufacture on the nameplate of the bushing which should be used for grading the PF and capacitance test results. Also, the previous year's test results if available may be used in evaluating the field test results.

3.7.2.3 Lightning and Surge Arrestors

The insulating quality of lightning and surge arrestors is affected by contamination, such as moisture, dirt, and/or corrosion. Other problems experienced with lightning and surge arrestors may be mechanical defects such as broken shunting resistors, broken preionizing elements, and/or misassembly. PF tests are effective in detecting these problems in lightning and surge arrestors. The lightning and surge arrestors are evaluated on the basis of dielectric loss (milliwatts or watts) of comparable units or previous year's benchmark test data. The PF is normally not calculated for these devices since their capacitance is very small. Abnormal dielectric losses can be divided into higher-than-normal and lower-than-normal and which are indicative of the problems as listed below:

1. Higher-than-normal losses
   a. Contamination by moisture and/or dirt or dust deposits on the inside surfaces of the porcelain housing or on the outside surfaces of sealed gap housing
   b. Corroded gaps
   c. Deposits of aluminum salts apparently caused by the interaction between moisture and products resulting from corona
   d. Cracked porcelain housing
2. Lower-than-normal losses
   a. Broken shunting resistors
   b. Broken preionizing elements
   c. Misassembly

3.7.2.4 Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers

The problems that may be identified with PF testing of medium-voltage circuit breakers are wet bushings, wet or damaged arc chutes, tracking across insulators, bushing and arc-chutes, etc. The PF test results evaluation for these breakers should be based on the basis of dielectric loss (milliwatts or watts) and not PF. These types of breakers have low capacitance and that small changes in the low test currents and losses can result in misleading changes in calculated PF values. The analysis of the test results should be based on a comparison of the test currents and losses of similar units or previous years test data on the same breaker.

3.7.2.5 OCB

The results of OCB depend upon the insulation condition of the bushings, oil and tank members. Therefore, the PF test results of an OCB should be evaluated for the condition of the bushings, tank insulation and oil.

The bushing are graded based on the analysis of open and closed circuit breaker tests including supplementary hot-collar test results. Tank insulation is evaluated based on TLI test. Oil is evaluated on PF and dielectric strength tests, and by a battery of other tests including visual inspection for carbon and other particulate matter.

The open breaker test provides information on the insulation condition of bushings, interrupters, lift rod guide, upper lift rod guide, oil (some), and tank liner (some). Whereas the closed circuit breaker test provides information on the insulation condition of bushings (both), oil, lower part of the lift rod assembly, and tank liner. What is then the difference between the open and closed circuit breaker tests. The major difference is that in the closed circuit breaker test, a larger dielectric field is established, and therefore the dielectric losses of the closed circuit breaker test will be different from the sum of the two open circuit breaker dielectric losses. In addition, in the closed circuit breaker test the cross head is energized, therefore a stronger dielectric field is established on the lift rod assembly. Also, a stronger dielectric field is established in the tank in the closed circuit breaker test compared to the open circuit breaker test. However, the dielectric field is decreased between the interrupters in the closed circuit breaker test. In summary, the closed circuit breaker test basically measures the lift rod assembly and tank insulation, where as the open circuit breaker measures bushing insulation.

Since open breaker test basically measures bushing losses, the PF test results should be compared to the results obtained on other bushing of the same breaker, or bushing results of other similar bushings. If PF results are high, then perform additional tests on the individual bushing by using the UST method and operate the breaker several times and retest. If the PF is still high, then check the interrupters and lift rod guide. The criteria used for grading interrupters is that if the PF is between 0% and 35% then the interrupters are good; if the PF is between 35% and 50%, the interrupters are marginal; and if the PF is above 50% the interrupters are wet, dirty, or just bad. The criteria for grading lift rods are that the watts loss obtained from the UST test for the lift rod should be 0.1 W or less.

3.7.2.6 SF_6 Breakers

The analysis for the SF_6 breakers is similar to that of the oil circuit breakers. However, it should be noted that the SF_6 breakers have very low dielectric loss, and therefore they should be evaluated based on only watts loss and capacitance measurements. All test results should be corrected to 20°C and compared with the data recorded for similar tests on the same breaker or breakers of similar model, make, manufacture and vintage.

3.7.2.7 Rotating Machines

The PF tests are made on rotating machines to detect contamination, such as moisture, dirt, dust, of the stator winding insulation and materials, and presence of corona at operating voltages. The typical PF values are of the order of 1.0% or less for large modern machines. The typical PF tip-up values are usually between 0.5% and 1.0%. A better way of evaluating field test results are to compare with previous year's results or benchmark test results from the factory, or acceptance tests which were conducted when the equipment was commissioned and was relatively new.

3.7.2.8 Cables and Accessories

The overall PF value of a cable is a function of insulation type, length, size, installation (whether it is installed in metallic or nonmetallic conduit), and voltage. Therefore, the evaluation of the field PF test results should be based on comparison with previously recorded tests on the cable when it was put in service and was relatively new, such as during acceptance testing. Typical PF values at 20°C for cable insulation system as listed in the Doble Engineering Company reference book are:

Insulation Type	PF Value (%)
Paper	≤0.5
Cross-link polyethylene	0.05–1.0
Ethylene/propylene rubber	0.5–1.0
Rubber (older type)	3.0–5.0
Varnished cambric	4.0–8.0

It should be noted that cables without metallic sheath or grounded shield, but are installed in metallic raceway may have PF higher than the values listed above.

The results of the hot-collar tests on potheads are evaluated by comparing field test results on similar type of potheads, or previous years recorded test results. The evaluation is based on watts loss and current, and PF. Abnormally high dielectric loss and current indicate the presence of moisture. Below than normal test current indicates the absence of compound or oil in the pothead. Increase in watts loss with increased test voltage (PF tip-up) indicates the presence of corona.

3.7.2.9 Capacitors

The main capacitance of the PF and surge capacitors is quite large and may be tested at reduced voltages. The PF of these capacitors should be of the order of 0.5% or less, and the capacitance should compare with the nameplate information. The ground-wall insulation of a two bushing PF capacitor is in the order of 0.5%. The ground-wall insulation measurements and hot-collar test results should be compared with previously recorded data on these units.

Coupling capacitors are evaluated on the basis of capacitance (charging current) and PF which are compared with the nameplate data and those recorded with similar units. Typically the PF values are around 0.25% and units with PF value of 0.5% are recommended to be removed from service. An increase in the capacitance above 2% is a cause for concern and may indicate shorted elements. A decrease in capacitance may indicate an open circuit or high resistance connection between condenser foil layers.

4

Insulating Oils, Fluids, and Gases

4.1 Introduction

Insulating oils, fluids, and gases are used as dielectrics in the electrical equipment and apparatus. The liquids used in the transformers are mineral oil and synthetic fluids, such as askarel, silicone, RTemp, Wecosal, Alpha 1, and GE R113. (The synthetic fluids such as askarel, silicone, RTemp, etc. have a fire point of not less than 300°C and are classified as less flammable insulating fluids by the National Electric Code, NEC.) Mineral oil is also used as a dielectric in circuit breakers, reclosers, interrupters, and the like. The most common insulating gas used in circuit breakers and completely enclosed substations is sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6). This chapter covers electrical, chemical, and visual tests which are normally conducted for the maintenance of transformer oils and fluids. Also, this chapter includes a discussion on the inspection, handling, and reconditioning of insulating oil, fluids, and gases used in electrical equipment.

The ability of insulating oils, fluids, and gases to serve as effective dielectric and coolant is adversely affected by their deterioration. The deterioration of insulating oil, fluids, and gases is due to contamination, overheating, electrical stress, and oxidation. Moisture is the most common contaminant which adversely affects the insulating properties of these liquids and gases. High temperatures from increased load and/or environmental conditions accelerate the deterioration process. To assure continuity of service, safety, and maintenance, a condition monitoring program, consisting of electrical and chemical testing, is necessary for these dielectrics.

4.2 Insulating Oil

Hydrocarbon (mineral oil #10) oil is used as an insulating fluid in transformers and circuit breakers because of its high dielectric strength and chemical stability. To properly maintain the transformer oil free of contaminants, regular inspection of the transformer and purification of the oil is needed. A brief discussion on the deterioration of the insulating oil is undertaken for maintenance purposes.

4.2.1 Deterioration of Insulating Oil

4.2.1.1 Effect of Oxygen on Oil

Moisture contamination is the most common cause of deterioration in the insulating quality of oil. This contamination can be readily corrected by purification. A slow but more serious deterioration, the formation of acids and sludge, is caused by oxidation. Thus, the exclusion of oxygen is of prime importance. In open-breather transformers, the oxygen supply is virtually unlimited and oxidative deterioration is faster than sealed transformers. Atmospheric oxygen and oxygen contained in water are the sources available for the oxidation of insulating oils. When water is present in insulating oils, oxidation of the oil will take place. Therefore, leaking gaskets and seals constitute a very real hazard since a water leak is, in effect, an oxygen leak. The rate of oxidation also depends on the temperature of the oil; the higher the temperature is, the faster the oxidative breakdown. An increase in temperature of 10°C (50°F) generally doubles the rate of oxidation. The fact points to the importance of avoiding overloading of transformers, especially in the summertime. Oxidation results in the formation of acids in the insulating oil and the formation of sludge at a more advance state of oxidation.

4.2.1.2 Moisture in Oil

Water can be present in oil in a dissolved form, as tiny droplets mixed with the oil (emulsion), or in a free state at the bottom of the container holding the oil. Demulsification occurs when the tiny droplets unite to form larger drops, which sink to the bottom and form a pool of free water. Emulsified water typically requires vacuum dehydration, as the emulsification cannot typically be broken by filtration or by excellerated gravity (centrifuge). Water in the free state may be readily removed by filtering or centrifugal treatment. However, dissolved water is not removed by centrifugal treatment; the filtration process can partially remove dissolved water if the filter papers are thoroughly dried before filtration, but the efficiency of the filtration process depends upon oil temperature and filtration media.

The effect of moisture on the insulating properties of oil depends upon the form in which the moisture exists. A very small amount of emulsified water has a marked influence in reducing dielectric strength of oil. Free moisture in oil usually shows up above 50 to 60 ppm depending upon temperature. Accepted levels of water in oil are shown in Table 4.1. The amount of moisture that can be dissolved in oil increases rapidly as the oil temperature increases, as shown in Figure 4.1. Therefore, an insulating oil purified at too high a temperature may lose a large percentage of its dielectric strength on cooling, because the dissolved moisture is then changed to an emulsion, unless vacuum dehydration is used as the purification process.

TABLE 4.1

Maximum Allowable Moisture in Oil

Voltage Level (kV)	Maximum Moisture (ppm)
5	30
15	30
35	25
69	20
138 and up	15

4.2.1.3 Oil Deterioration in Transformers

In transformers, sludge sticks to the surface through which heat should be dissipated; the sludge forms a blanket barrier to the flow of heat from the oil to the coolant and from the core and coils to the cool oil. If allowed to continue long enough, the sludge may even block off the flow of oil through the cooling ducts. As a result, the transformer insulation gets too hot and is damaged, particularly between turns of the windings. Deterioration of the turn insulation may eventually lead to short circuits between turns and the breakdown of the transformer. When oxidation progresses to the point where sludge is being precipitated, the first step should be to remove the sludge from the transformer by a high-pressure stream of oil or hot oil circulation to dissolve the sludge, or to either replace the sludged oil or treat it with activated clay to remove the acid. Under favorable conditions, complete treatment of the oil is less costly than replacing it with new oil.

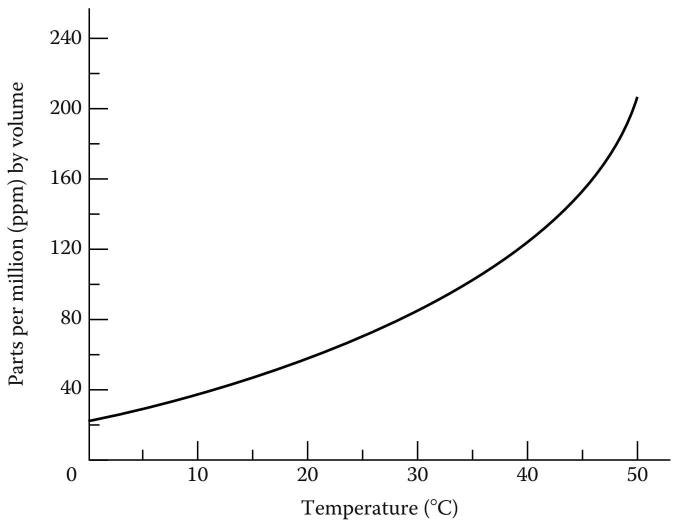


FIGURE 4.1
Maximum amount of water dissolved in mineral oil as affected by temperature.

4.2.1.4 Absorption of Moisture by Insulating Materials

Solid insulation (paper insulation) in transformers is very porous and thirstily absorbs water. Some of the water that is dissolved in the oil is absorbed from the oil by the cellouse (paper) winding insulation. As more water is dissolved in the oil, more water is absorbed by the insulation of the transformer windings. Once absorbed, it is difficult to remove. The most effective method for drying out the insulation in transformers is with heat and vacuum. Sometimes a vacuum cannot be applied in the field; then the transformer insulation must be dried by circulation of hot, dry oil. This oil should then be cooled and dried. Since the dielectric strength of insulation is reduced by absorption of moisture, it is important that the insulation not be allowed to absorb it in the first place.

4.2.1.5 Absorption of Nitrogen by Oil

Special precaution should be taken in operating transformers with nitrogen over the oil to avoid bubbling of the oil due to release of dissolved nitrogen when the pressure drops. Experience has shown that the automatic gas-pressure regulating system should be adjusted to limit the nitrogen pressure range from 1/2 to 3 psi (lb/in.^{2}) gauge to avoid formation of these bubbles and subsequent troubles due to corona deterioration.

4.2.2 Insulating Oil Testing

Transformer oil reacts with oxygen to form organic acids, esters, and phenolic compounds which ultimately leads to sludging of the transformer. The rate of this phenomena increases with an increased exposure to air and temperature. Also it should be noted that oxygen is more soluble in oil than found in air. Not only will the sludge adversely affect the dielectric properties of the oil, but it will also interfere with dissipation of heat within the transformer. The purpose of these tests are to chart the gradual deterioration and take preventative measures before insulating oil reaches a point where failure of the transformer is inevitable. The routine tests and sampling procedures that are conducted on insulating oil are shown in Table 4.2, and are discussed in text of this chapter.

TABLE 4.2

ASTM Method of Test for Insulating Liquids

Test	ASTM Test Method
Color	D1500
Dielectric breakdown voltage	D877, D1816
Visual examination	D1524
IFT (oil only)	D971, D2285
Neutralization number (acidity)	D974, D664, D1534
Power factor/dissipation factor	D924
Moisture (Karl Fischer method)	D1533
Specific gravity	D1298
Viscosity	D445, D2161
Sedimentation	D-1698

FIGURE 4.2
Oil dielectric test set 60 kV. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

4.2.2.1 Dielectric Breakdown Voltage Test (Cup Tests)

This is an AC overvoltage test applied to the insulating liquids to detect their breakdown strength. A typical test set is shown in Figure 4.2. The American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) has established test standards for these liquids, which are listed in Table 4.2. The dielectric test simply consists of placing a liquid sample from the transformer or (circuit breaker) in a cup containing two electrodes of specified gap. High voltage is then applied to the sample. The test is repeated for a least five different samples to determine the average dielectric strength. The minimum accepted values for the various liquids are listed in Table 4.3.

Two different electrodes are used in these tests, one for mineral-based oils and the other for mineral-based oils and synthetic liquids. The *Verband Dentschev Elektrotechniker* (VDE) cup is used for mineral-based oils; it has

TABLE 4.3
Acceptance Test Values for Transformers Insulating Oil

Liquid Type	Test	Satisfactory	Needs Reconditioning
Oil	Neutralization number (acidity)	0.4	0.4 to 1.0
	IFT (dyn/cm)	40 dyn/cm	Below 40
	Color	3.5	Above 3.5
	Dielectric strength	23 kV	Less than 23 kV
	Power factor	Up to 0.5%	Above 0.5%

a gap of 0.04 to 0.08 in. (1–2 mm) with a rate of voltage rise of 500 V/s. The disk cup is used for mineral-based oils and synthetic liquids such as askarel, silicone, and others. It has a gap of 0.1 in. with rate of rise of 3000 V/s. The step-by-step procedures for conducting these tests are described next.

Dielectric test ASTM D-877 (disk electrodes): Portable oil dielectric testers are usually used for making dielectric tests on oils in the field. Units with a variable high voltage of 40 kV or greater between the electrodes and which have Bakelite test cups are considered satisfactory. Instructions and procedures are as follows:

The electrodes and the test cup should be wiped clean with dry, calendered tissue paper or with a clean, dry chamois. The spacing of the electrodes should be checked with a standard round gauge having a diameter of 0.1 in. (2.5 mm) or with flat steel go and no-go gauges having thicknesses of 0.0995 and 0.1005 in., respectively; the electrodes should be locked in position. It is important to avoid touching the electrodes or the cleaned gauge with the fingers or with portions of the tissue paper or chamois that have been in contact with the hands.

The electrodes and test cup should be rinsed with dry, lead-free gasoline or other suitable solvent until they are entirely clean. To avoid any possible contamination, care should be taken to avoid touching the electrodes or the inside of the cup after cleaning.

After a thorough cleaning, the test cup is filled with a sample of the cleaning fluid; voltage is applied and uniformly increased at a rate of approximately 3 kV/s (rms value) until breakdown occurs. If the breakdown is not less than the established value of the oil being tested, the test cup should be considered in suitable condition for testing. If a lower value is obtained, the cup should again be thoroughly cleaned and the test repeated. A cleaning fluid whose breakdown is not less than the established value of the oil being tested must be used.

At the beginning of each test, the electrodes should be examined for pitting and carbon accumulation and the electrode spacing should be checked. The test cup should be thoroughly cleaned and tested as described previously. It should then be flushed with a portion of the sample to be tested before it is filled for the test.

If the test of a sample is below the breakdown value being used by the operator as a minimum satisfactory value, the cup should be cleaned and prepared before testing the next sample. Evaporation of the cleaning fluid from the electrodes may chill them sufficiently to cause moisture to condense on their surfaces. For this reason, after the final rinsing with cleaning fluid, the cup must immediately be flushed with the oil to be tested and then filled for the test.

The dielectric strength of liquid dielectrics may be markedly altered by the migration of impurities through the liquid. To obtain representative test specimens, the sample container should be gently tilted or inverted and the oil swirled several times before each filling of the test cup, in such a way that any impurities present will be thoroughly mixed with the liquid dielectric.

Too rapid agitation is undesirable, since it introduces an excessive amount of air into the liquid. Immediately after agitating, the test cup should be filled with oil to a height of not less than 20 mm (0.787 in.) above the top of the electrodes. To prevent the escape of entrapped air, the container should be gently rocked a few times and the oil allowed to stand in the cup for 3 min before voltage is applied.

The temperature of the sample when tested should be the same as that of the room, but not less than 20°C (68°F). Testing of oil at a lower than the room temperature is likely to give variable results, which may be misleading.

Voltage should be applied and increased at a uniform rate of 3 kV/s from zero until breakdown occurs, as indicated by a continuous discharge across the gap. Occasional momentary discharges that do not result in a permanent arc may occur; they should be disregarded.

Referee testing: When it is desired to determine the dielectric breakdown voltage of a new liquid for referee purposes, one breakdown should be made on each of five successive fillings of the test cup. If the five values meet the minimum dielectric values, the average should be reported as the dielectric breakdown voltage of the sample. If they do not meet the minimum dielectric values, one breakdown on each of five additional cup fillings should be made and the average of the 10 breakdowns reported as the dielectric breakdown voltage of the sample. No breakdown should be discarded.

Routine testing: When it is desired to determine the dielectric breakdown voltage of a liquid on a routine basis, one breakdown may be made on each of two fillings of the test cup. If no value is below the specified acceptance value, the oil may be considered satisfactory, and no further tests are required. If either of the values is less than the specified value, a breakdown should be made on each of three additional cup fillings, and the test results analyzed.

Alternative method: When it is desired to determine the dielectric breakdown voltage of a liquid on a routine basis, five breakdowns may be made on one cup filling with 1 min intervals between breakdowns. The average of the five breakdowns should be considered the dielectric breakdown voltage of the sample, provided the breakdown values meet the criterion for statistical consistency. If the breakdown voltages do not meet this criterion, the contents of the cup should be discarded, the sample container again gently inverted and swirled, the cup again filled, and five breakdowns made on this second cup filling. The average of the 10 breakdowns should be considered as the dielectric breakdown voltage of the sample. No breakdown should be discarded.

Criterion for statistical consistency: Compute the range of the five breakdowns (maximum breakdown voltage minus minimum breakdown voltage), and multiply this range by three. If the value obtained is greater than the next to the lowest breakdown voltage, it is probable that the standard deviation of the five breakdowns is excessive, and therefore the probable error of their average is also excessive.

Dielectric test ASTM D-1816 (VDE electrode): The present ASTM D-877 gap consists of 1 in. diameter disk, square-edged electrodes spaced at 0.1 in. The use of this test gap results in a uniform electrostatic field at the center line of the test disks and a highly nonuniform field at the edges of the disk. To attain uniform field strength at all points, spherical electrodes would have to be used. Between these extremes of a highly distorted field and an ideal uniform field, a third gap configuration, designated as VDE, has been used. The VDE gap specifications call for a sector diameter of 36 mm and a 25 mm radius of curvature for the spherically capped electrodes. A gap of about 0.08 in. between electrodes has been found to give about the same breakdown voltage relationships in the 25–30 kV range as the ASTM D-877 configuration. Tests have shown the following:

VDE configuration depicts more accurately the average electric strength and scatter of the oil as the transformer sees it

VDE gap is relatively sensitive to oil quality

ASTM D-877 is less sensitive

Point electrodes are almost completely insensitive to oil quality

The VDE cell, in which a quart of oil is tested between VDE electrodes, while being mildly circulated, realistically measures changes in oil strength, which determine the electrical strength of typical transformer construction. This test method (ASTM D-1816) is similar to ASTM D-877. The procedure for the VDE (ASTM D-1816) test is the same as for the disk electrodes (ASTM D-877).

4.2.2.2 Acidity Test

New transformer liquids contain practically no acids if properly refined. The acidity test measures the content of acids formed by oxidation. The acids are directly responsible for sludge formation. These acids precipitate out, as their concentration increases, and become sludge. They also react with metals to form another form of sludge in the transformer. The ASTM D974 and D664 are laboratory tests whereas D1534 is a field test which determines the approximate total acid value of the oil.

The acid number of the neutralization number is the milligrams (mg) of potassium hydroxide (KOH) required to neutralize the acid contained in 1 g of transformer liquid. Test data indicate that the acidity is proportional to the amount of oxygen absorbed by the liquid. Therefore, different transformers would take different periods of time before sledge would begin to appear. Transformers with free air access would have formation of sludge before transformers with conservators; and transformers with conservators would have sludge before transformers bolted tight; and transformers bolted tight would have sludge before transformers with nitrogen over oil. Refer to Table 4.3 for acceptable values of the naturalization number for the transformer oil.

The following is a brief description of the ASTM D1534 (Gervin) method for the neutralization number test: Pour the oil sample into a glass cylinder furnished with the Gervin test kit. Single doses of KOH are furnished in sealed ampules with the dosage indicated on the ampules. For example, if the oil level in the glass cylinder is up to mark 10, then number 3 ampules equals 0.3 mg of KOH gram of oil; a number 6 ampules equals 0.6 mg of KOH, and a number 15 equals 1.5 mg of KOH.

The pint bottles contain neutral solution to be put in the measured sample before adding the KOH. This solution washes the oil and the KOH can then act on the acids more readily. The neutral solution contains a color-changing indicator. If any KOH is left after the acids are neutralized, the indicator is pink. But if the KOH is all used up, the indicator is colorless like water.

4.2.2.3 Interfacial Tension (IFT)

It should be recognized that the acidity test alone determines conditions under which sludge may form, but does not necessarily indicate that actual sludging conditions exist. The IFT test is employed as an indication of the sludging characteristics of power transformer insulating liquid. It is a test of IFT of water against liquid, which is different from surface tension in that the surface of the water is in contact with liquid instead of air. The attraction between the water molecules at the interface is influenced by the presence of polar molecules in the liquid in such a way that the presence of more polar compounds causes lower IFT. The polar compounds are sludge particles or their predecessors.

The test measures the concentration of polar molecules in suspension and in solution in the liquids and thus gives an accurate measurement of dissolved sludge components in the liquid long before any sludge is precipitated. It has been established that an IFT of less than 15 dyn/cm almost invariably shows sludging. An IFT of 15–22 dyn/cm is generally indicative of no sludging. For maintenance purposes IFT values are shown in Table 4.3 for transformer oil.

4.2.2.4 Color Test

This test consists of transmitting light through oil samples and comparing the color observed with a standard color chart. The color chart ranges from 0.5 to 8, with the color number 1 used for new oil. Color test values are listed in Table 4.3.

4.2.2.5 Power Factor Test

The power factor of an insulating liquid is the cosine of the phase angle between applied sinusoidal voltage and resulting current. The power factor indicates the dielectric loss of the liquid and thus its dielectric heating. The power factor test is widely used as an acceptance and preventive maintenance test for insulating liquid. Liquid power factor testing in the field is usually done with portable, direct-reading power factor measuring test equipment, which is available from several companies, who provide this service. Power factor tests on oil and transformer liquids are commonly made with ASTM D-924 test cell.

Good new oil has a power factor of 0.05% or less at 20°C. Higher power factors indicate deterioration and/or contamination with moisture, carbon or other conducting matter, varnish, glyptal, sodium soaps asphalt compounds, or deterioration products. Carbon or asphalt in oil can cause discoloration. Carbon in oil will not necessarily increase the power factor of the oil unless moisture is also present. It is suggested that the following serve as guides for grading oil by power factor tests.

Oil having a power factor of less than 0.5% at 20°C is usually considered satisfactory for service.

Oil having a power factor between 0.5% and 2% at 20°C should be considered as being in doubtful condition and at least some type of investigation should be made.

Oil having a power factor of over 2% at 20°C should be investigated and should be reconditioned or replaced.

The preceding guides may be elaborated on by saying that good new oil has a power factor of approximately 0.05% or less at 20°C and that the power factor can gradually increase in service to a value as high as 0.5% at 20°C without, in most cases, indicating deterioration. When the power factor exceeds 0.5%, an investigation is indicated. The question of what decision to make regarding disposition of the oil depends on what is causing the high power factor. Dielectric strength tests should be made to determine the presence of moisture. The necessity for further tests will depend to a large extent on the magnitude of the power factors, the importance of the apparatus in which the oil is used, its rating, and the quantity of oil involved.

4.2.2.6 Specific Gravity

Specific gravity of oil is defined as the ratio of the mass of a given volume of oil to the mass of an equal volume of oil of water at a specified temperature. This test is conducted by floating a hydrometer in oil and taking the reading at the meniscus. For oil free of contaminants, such as water, askarel, or silicone, the reading should be less than 0.84.

4.2.2.7 Water Content Test (Karl Fisher Method)

This test is based on the reduction of iodine according to the traditional Karl Fisher reaction. Three methods are used to conduct this test. Methods A and C utilize iodine present in a titration solution while Method B electrically generates the iodine in the equipment. Moisture content of 69 kV and higher voltage transformers should be measured regularly and lower voltage transformers on indication of flow dielectric strength of the oil.

4.2.3 Combustible Gas Analysis of Insulating Oil

4.2.3.1 Introduction

An oil-filled transformer insulation system consists of insulating oil and cellulose (paper) materials. Under normal use, transformer insulation deteriorates and generates certain combustible and noncombustible gases. This effect becomes more pronounced when the transformer insulation is exposed to higher temperatures. When cellulose insulation (i.e., winding insulation) is overheated to temperatures as low as 140°C, carbon monoxide (CO), carbon dioxide (CO_2), and some hydrogen (H) or methane (CH_4) are liberated. The rate at which these gases are liberated depends exponentially on the temperature and directly on the volume of the insulation at that temperature. When insulating oil is overheated to temperatures up to 500°C, ethylene (C_2H_4), ethane (C_2H_6), and methane (CH_4) are liberated. When oil is heated to extreme temperatures, such as an electrical arc, hydrogen (H) and acetylene (C_2H_4) are liberated in addition to the above mentioned gases.

The main cause of gas formation in a transformer is due to the heating of paper and oil insulation and electrical problems inside the transformer tank. The electrical problems can be classified as low-energy phenomena, such as corona, or high-energy phenomena, such as an electrical arc. The interpretation of the test data in terms of the specific cause (or causes) is based on the type of gas (or gases) and the quantity of that gas found in the transformer. The detection, analysis, and identification of these gases can be very helpful in determining the condition of the transformer. Establishing a baseline data as a reference point for new transformers and then comparing with future routine maintenance test results is a key element in the application of this test method. However, monitoring or assessing the condition of a transformer using this method can start at anytime even if the reference data is not available. There are two methods for detecting these gases: (1) total combustible gas analysis (TCGA), and (2) dissolved gas analysis (DGA).

4.2.3.2 TCG

TCG can be determined in the field or analyzed in the laboratory from a sample of gas drawn from the gas space above the oil. The method is applicable to power transformers with a nitrogen blanket or conservator system. To facilitate the combustible gas testing, all transformers using a nitrogen blanket should have a gas sampling line installed from the upper portion of the tank to a ground-level sampling valve. Transformers having a conservator tank should have a gas sampling line installed from its gas accumulation relay to a ground-level sampling valve. The equipment used for measuring TCG is basically a Wheatstone bridge circuit. A combination of air and combustible gas sample is passed over a resistor where catalytic burning takes place on the resistor, which causes a proportional change in resistance. Based on the change in resistance of the resistor, the TCG is measured in percent.

4.2.3.3 DGA

The DGA is basically a laboratory test using an oil sample taken from a transformer. The oil sample is subjected to a vacuum to remove the combustible gases. These gases are then passed through a gas chromatograph and each gas is then extracted and analyzed for type and quantity. The quantity of each gas is given in part per million (ppm) or percent of the total gas present. The analysis of each gas present provides a useful tool in determining the condition of the transformer. The interpretation of the analysis has not yet been perfected to an exact science and is therefore subject to interpretation.

4.2.3.4 Comparing the Two Methods

The total fault gas analysis (TCGA) is probably the most widely used in the field. Its major advantages are that it is quick and can be used in the field or may be used to continuously monitor the transformer. Its disadvantages are that it provides only a single value of oil combustible gases and does not identify or quantify what gases are present, and detect gases that are available freely in the free space above the oil. As shown in Table 4.4, some of these gases are very soluble in oil and may not be liberated to the free space until the oil is fully saturated with the gas. Also, the solubility of these gases varies with temperature and pressure.

The DGA is the most informative method of detecting combustible gases. Although this is a laboratory method, it provides the earliest possible detection of any abnormal conditions in the transformer. Since diffusion of gases from liquid to gaseous space takes time, the TCGA method is not as sensitive as the DGA method and serious equipment damage could occur undetected if only the TCGA method is employed in assessing the serviceability of the transformer.

4.2.3.5 Interpretation of Gas Analysis

As discussed earlier, decomposition of paper insulation produces CO, CO_2, and water vapor at temperatures much lower than that for decomposition of oil.

TABLE 4.4
Solubility of Gases in Transformer Oil

Hydrogen	7.0% by volume
Nitrogen	8.6% by volume
Carbon monoxide	9.0% by volume
Oxygen	16.0% by volume
Methane	30.0% by volume
Carbon dioxide	120.0% by volume
Ethane	280.0% by volume
Ethylene	280.0% by volume
Acetylene	400.0% by volume

Note: Static equilibrium at 760 mm Hg and 25°C.

This is because the paper begins to degrade at lower temperatures than the oil and its gaseous byproducts are found at normal operating temperatures in the transformer. It is not unusual for a transformer that operates at or near its nameplate rating to normally generate several hundred ppm of CO and several thousand ppm of CO_2 without excessive hot spots.

The decomposition of oil at temperatures from 150°C to 500°C produces large quantities of hydrogen and methane, and trace quantities of ethylene and ethane. As the oil temperature increases to modest temperatures, the more hydrogen gas is liberated than methane, higher quantities of ethane, and ethylene. As the temperature increases further, increasing quantities of hydrogen and ethylene are produced. Low-level intermittent arcing and partial discharges (corona) produce mainly hydrogen, with small quantities of methane and trace quantities of acetylene. The quantities of acetylene become pronounced only when high-intensity arcing (700°C–1800°C) occurs inside the transformer tank.

The success of fault gas analysis is based on detecting the combustible gases at the earliest possible time and then taking steps to correcting the problem. The Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) Standard C57.104-1991, "IEEE guide for the interpretation of gases generated in oil-immersed transformers," suggests the following procedure for the detection and analysis of combustible gases.

- Direct measurement of the amount of TCG in the gas space above the oil and the rate of generation of these gases
- Direct measurement of the amount of combustible gases dissolved in the oil (gas-in-oil) and the rate of generation of these gases
- Gas chromatographic separation and analysis of individual gases and the rate of generation of each gas

The rate of gas generation in gas space above the oil can be calculated by taking the sum of the gas concentrations of all combustible gases in the first and second samples and using the equation* given below:

$$R = \frac{(S_T - S_o) \times V \times 10^{-6}}{7.5 \times T}$$

where

R is the rate of gas generation (ft^3/day)
S_o is the concentration of first sample (ppm)
S_T is the concentration of second sample (ppm)
V is the volume of the oil in tank (gal)
T is the time (days)

* Reproduced with permission from IEEE Standard C57.104-1991. This standard was withdrawn by IEEE in 2006, however it is a current ANSI standard.

Similarly, to determine the volume in gallons of fault gas dissolved in insulating oil, the following equation can be used:

$$\mathrm{TCG_v} = \frac{\mathrm{FG}(V)}{1{,}000{,}000}$$

where
FG is the sum of all combustible gases (ppm)
V is the volume of oil in transformer (gal)
$\mathrm{TCG_V}$ is the total dissolved combustible gas (gal)

4.2.3.6 Assessing the Transformer Condition Using the TCGA in the Gas Space

A new transformer should be tested within a week after energization. If it is not gassing and does not start gassing, subsequent tests should be made progressively increasing intervals until the 12-month normal interval is reached. When sudden increases in the combustible gas quantities or generating rates in the gas space of an operating transfer occur and internal fault is suspected, IEEE Standard C57.104-1991 recommends the procedure to be used as shown in Table 4.5.

TABLE 4.5
Actions Based on TCG

Condition	TCG Levels (%)	TCG Rate (%/Day)	Sampling Intervals and Operating Procedures for Gas Generation Rules: Sampling Interval	Operating Procedures
4	≥5	>0.03	Daily	Consider removal from service
		0.01–0.03	Daily	Advise manufacturer
		<0.01	Weekly	Exercise extreme caution Analyze for individual gases Plan outage Advise manufacturer
3	<5 to ≥2	>0.03	Weekly	Exercise extreme caution
		0.03–0.01	Weekly	Analyze for individual gases
		<0.01	Monthly	Plan outage Advise manufacturer
2	<2 to ≥0.5	>0.03	Monthly	Exercise caution
		0.03–0.01	Monthly	Analyze for individual gases
		<0.01	Quarterly	Determine load dependence
		>0.03	Monthly	Exercise caution Analyze for individual gases
1	<0.5	0.03–0.01	Quarterly	Determine load dependence
		<0.01	Annual	Continue normal operation

4.2.3.7 Assessing the Transformer Condition Using the DGA Method

As indicated in Section 4.2.3.6 on TCGA evaluation, a new transformer should be tested for combustible gases within a week after energization, and continued with testing until the 12-month normal interval is reached. However, if there is no previous DGA history on the transformer, then it can be difficult to determine whether a transformer is operating normally or not. The IEEE Standard C57.104-1991 has established a four-level criterion to classify risk to transformers, when there is no previous DGA history, for continued use at various combustible gas levels. The IEEE criterion is shown in Table 4.6 below, which shows the individual gases and TDGA.

When sudden increases in the dissolved gas quantity of the oil in a normally operating transformer is noted and an internal fault is suspected, the IEEE

TABLE 4.6

Dissolved Gas Concentrations

	Dissolved Key Gas Concentration Limits (ppm)[a]							
Status	**H_2**	**CH_4**	**C_2H_2**	**C_2H_4**	**C_2H_6**	**CO**	**CO_2**	**TDCG[b]**
Condition 1	100	120	35	50	65	350	2,500	720
Condition 2	101–700	121–400	50	51–100	66–100	351–570	2,500–4,000	721–1920
Condition 3	701–1800	401–1000	51–80	101–200	101–150	571–1400	4,001–10,000	1921–4630
Condition 4	>1800	>1000	>80	>200	>150	>1400	>10,000	>4630

Notes: Table 4.1 assumes that no previous tests on the transformer for DGA have been made or that no recent history exists. If a previous analysis exists, it should be reviewed to determine if the situation is stable or unstable. Refer to Tables 4.5 and 4.7 for appropriate action(s) to be taken. An ASTM round robin indicated variability in gas analysis between laboratories. This should be considered when having gas analysis made by different laboratories. Condition 1: TDCG below this level indicates the transformer is operating satisfactorily. Any individual combustible gas exceeding specified level should prompt additional investigation. Condition 2: TDCG within this range indicates greater than normal combustible gas level. Any individual combustible gas exceeding specified levels should prompt additional investigation. Condition 3: TDCG within this range indicates higher level of decomposition. Any individual combustible gas exceeding specified levels should be taken to establish a trend. Faults are probably present inside the transformer. Take action as specified in Tables 4.5 and 4.7. Condition 4: TDCG within this range indicates excessive decomposition. Continued operation could result in failure of the transformer. Proceed immediately and with caution with actions specified in Tables 4.5 and 4.7. Faults are probably present in the transformer.

[a] The numbers shown in Table 4.6 are in parts of gas per million parts of oil (ppm) volumetrically and are based on a large power transformer with several thousand gallons of oil. With a smaller oil volume, the same volume of gas will give a higher gas concentration. Small distribution transformers and voltage regulators may contain combustible gases because of the operation of internal expulsion fuses or load break switches. The status codes in Table 4.6 are also not applicable to other apparatus in which load break switches operate under oil.

[b] The TDCG value does not include CO_2, which is not a combustible gas.

TABLE 4.7
Actions Based on TDCG

			Sampling Intervals and Operating Procedures for Gas Generation Rules	
	TCG Levels (%)	TCG Rate (%/Day)	Sampling Interval	Operating Procedures
Condition 4	≥4630	>30	Daily	Consider removal from service Advise manufacturer
		10–30	Daily	Advise manufacturer
		<10	Weekly	Exercise extreme caution Analyze for individual gases Plan outage Advise manufacturer
Condition 3	1921–4630	>30	Weekly	Exercise extreme caution Analyze for individual gases Plan outage Advise manufacturer
		10–30	Weekly	Exercise caution Advise manufacturer
		<10	Monthly	Exercise caution Advise manufacturer
Condition 2	721–1920	>30	Monthly	Exercise caution Analyze for individual gases Determine load dependence
		10–30	Monthly	Analyze for individual gases Determine load dependence
		<10	Quarterly	Analyze for individual gases Determine load dependence
		>30	Monthly	Exercise caution Analyze for individual gases Determine load dependence
Condition 1	≤720	10–30	Quarterly	Analyze for individual gases Determine load dependence
		<10	Annual	Continue normal operation

Source: Reproduced from IEEE Std C57.104-1991. With permission.

Standard C57.104-1991 recommends the procedure shown in Table 4.7. The IEEE procedure recommends the initial sampling intervals and operating procedure for various levels of TDCG and TDCG rate. An increasing gas generating rate means that the problem in the transformer may be severe and therefore a shorter sampling interval is recommended.

4.2.3.8 Fault Types and Associated Key Gases

After the DGA has been obtained, then the next step is to determine the condition of the transformer. The evaluation has been simplified by looking at key gases and the associated condition as discussed in Table 4.8. Further, the

TABLE 4.8

Types of Faults and Key Gases

Operating Condition	Interpretations
1. Nitrogen plus 5% or less oxygen	Normal operation
2. Nitrogen, carbon monoxide, and carbon dioxide	Transformer winding insulation overheated; key gas is carbon monoxide
3. Nitrogen, ethylene, and methane—some hydrogen and ethane	Transformer oil is overheated; minor fault causing oil breakdown. Key gas is ethylene
4. Nitrogen, hydrogen, small quantities of ethane and ethylene	Corona discharge in oil; key gas is hydrogen
5. Same as #4 with carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide	Corona involving paper insulation; key gas is hydrogen
6. Nitrogen, high hydrogen and acetylene; minor quantities of methane and ethylene	High-energy arcing; key gas is acetylene
7. Same as #6 with carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide	High-energy arcing involves paper insulation of winding; key gas is acetylene

use of combustible gas ratios to indicate possible fault type was developed by Doernenburg and subsequently confirmed by Rogers on European system. These methods are known as Rogers ratio and Doernenburg ratio methods and are beyond the scope of this book.

4.3 Less Flammable Insulating Fluids

There has been a great increase in the use of less flammable liquids as an insulating and cooling medium in transformers. As these liquids are chemically different from mineral oils, they cannot be substituted in equipment designed for the use of mineral-oil type liquid. The NEC has officially designated these synthetic liquids as less flammable. They are askarels, silicone, RTemp, Wecosol R113, envirotemp (FR-3), and others. As is the case with mineral oil, the dielectric strength of askarels, silicone, RTemp, Wecosol, and other less flammable fluids is reduced by the presence of emulsified water. Silicone, Wecosol, and RTemp characteristics are similar to those of askarel.

The maintenance and testing of less flammable insulating fluids is similar to oil. The inspection and maintenance of these fluids are discussed in Section 4.5. The battery of tests (screening tests) that are normally performed on these fluids are listed in Table 4.2. These fluids should be maintained and tested on the same frequency as used for insulating oil. The oil sample for conducting the tests should be taken from the bottom of the transformer tank for RTemp, and from the top of the tank for silicone and askarel. The test limits for acidity, IFT, dielectric breakdown voltage, power factor, and color for service-aged less flammable fluids are given in Table 4.9. It should be noted that the dielectric breakdown voltage test limit given in Table 4.9 for these fluids is for the ASTMD877 method using disk electrodes.

TABLE 4.9

Acceptance Values for Less Flammable Fluids

Liquid Type	Test	Satisfactory	Needs Reconditioning
Askarel	Neutralization no. (acidity)	0.05	>0.5
	IFT	40 dyn/cm	<40 dyn/cm
	Color	2.0	>2.0
	Dielectric strength	26	<25
	Power factor	Up to 0.5%	0.6% to 2%
Silicone	Neutralization no. (acidity)	0.01	>0.01
	IFT	20.8 dyn/cm	
	Color	15 max	>15
	Dielectric strength	26	<26
	Power factor	1×10^{-4} max	1×10^{-3} max
RTemp	Neutralization no. (acidity)	0.5	>0.5
	IFT	30 dyn/cm	<30 dyn/cm
	Dielectric strength	26	<26
	Power factor	$<1 \times 10^{-3}$	1×10^{-3}
R113 (GE)	Neutralization no. (acidity)	0.2 max	>0.2
	Dielectric strength	26	<26
	Power factor		
Wecosol	Neutralization no. (acidity)	≤0.25	>0.25
	Dielectric strength	26	<26
	Power factor	≤12%	>12%
Envirotemp (FR3)	Neutralization no. (acidity)	≤0.06	≥2.5
	IFT	25–28 dyn/cm	<18
	Dielectric strength (D1816)	35	<30
	Power factor (DF) (25°C)	≤0.20	>0.20

4.4 Insulating Liquid Sampling Procedures

The validity of the test results is dependent upon the sampler being certain that the oil sample is truly representative of the oil in the equipment. Glass bottles are recommended as containers for samples because they can be easily inspected for cleanliness. The glass bottles may be either cork or glass stoppered or fitted with screwcaps having cork or aluminum liners (inserts). Corks should be of good quality. Do not use rubber stoppers. Clean, new, rectangular-shaped, 1 quart (qt) cans with screwcaps have been found to be satisfactory containers for shipping samples. Samples should be taken from the equipment in accordance with ASTM D 923, *Standard Test Method for Sampling Electrical Insulating Liquids*.

Containers should be rinsed in lead-free gasoline (which is flammable and should be used out-of-doors only) or chlorothene (a nonflammable solvent), dried, and washed in strong soapsuds. Then they should be thoroughly rinsed with water, dried in an oven at about 105°C for several hours, and removed from the oven. As the bottles cool, they should be sealed by dipping the necks in wax, and then stored for future use. These bottles should be opened only when the bottle temperature and the ambient temperature are the same or nearly so.

4.4.1 Sampling Oil from Transformers

General sampling instructions are as follows:

At least 2 qt of oil should be taken as a sample for dielectric, acidity, and IFT tests. Allow space at the top of the container for expansion. If two 1 qt bottles are used for a sample, label the bottles as 1 of 2 and 2 of 2.

Samples from outdoor apparatus should be taken on clear days when the humidity is near normal and the oil is at least as warm, or warmer than the surrounding air. Cold oil may condense enough moisture from a humid atmosphere to seriously affect its insulating properties. Therefore, this precaution must be observed in sampling spare transformers.

Samples should never be drawn in rain or when the relative humidity of the atmosphere exceeds 70%.

Guard against wind and dust.

When taking samples from an opening, such as a valve, clean the valve thoroughly and allow enough liquid to run out (about 1 qt) to remove any moisture or foreign material.

In a sealed transformer, which has a vacuum, be sure to vent the transformer before drawing the sample.

Place the sample in the freezing compartment of a refrigerator overnight. If the sample is cloudy when viewed the next day, it contains free water. Since free water is undesirable, take another sample to determine whether water is in the oil or was in the sample container.

4.4.2 Sampling Oil from Drums or Shipping Containers

The oil drum should remain undisturbed for several hours before drawing the sample.

A glass or Pyrex thief is recommended for sampling because it can be easily inspected for cleanliness. A glass tube approximately 36 in. long, 1 in. in diameter, and tapered at both ends is recommended for the sampling thief.

The thief should be cleaned before and after sampling in the same manner as for cleaning sample containers. When not being used, the thief should be corked at both ends.

Discard the first full thief of oil.

Draw the sample in the following manner:

With the top end covered with the thumb, lower the tube to within approximately 1/8 in. from the bottom of the drum.

Remove the thumb from the top opening until the thief is filled with oil.

Replace thumb over top of thief and remove thief full of oil to the sample container. Release thumb to permit oil to run into the container.

4.4.3 Taking Oil Samples for Gas-in-Oil Analysis

This procedure has been developed to maintain uniformity of all oil samples taken in the field for a laboratory gas-in-oil analysis. Special stainless-steel containers are used for collecting samples of oil for gas-in-oil analysis using gas chromatograph. These stainless-steel containers are not to be used for any other purpose and should be kept clean to eliminate all contaminants and purged with dry air for shipment to the field.

Use a can to catch overflow oil from the stainless-steel container.

Obtain two lengths of Tygon clear plastic tubing and attach one to each end of the stainless-steel container. Make certain that the tubing between transformer and container is as short as possible.

Attach the tubing from one end of the stainless-steel container to the sample valve cock on the transformer.

Hold the stainless-steel container in a vertical position with the length of tubing on the outlet end in the can to catch the overflow oil.

Open the sampling valve on the transformer.

Open valve on the inlet side of container.

Open valve on the outlet side of container and allow the stainless-steel container to fill and overflow into can. At least 1 pint should overflow to assure removal of all bubbles in the sampling system.

Close top valve (outlet side) first to ensure a contamination-free sample.

Close bottom valve (inlet side) and then close sampling valve on the transformer.

Do not wrap any kind of tape around valves or nozzles of the stainless-steel container.

Forward the sample to the laboratory.

4.5 Maintenance and Reconditioning of Insulating Oil and Fluids

This section covers the maintenance and reconditioning of the oils and less flammable fluids such as silicone, RTemp, and Wecosol. As discussed earlier, moisture and oxygen are the most prevalent contaminants present in transformer oil and fluids. As a result of these contaminants and other catalysts and accelerators, oxidation of these liquids takes place. Overtime oxidation results in deterioration of the transformer insulating system. If this degradation is not corrected in time, it eventually leads to terminal stage of deterioration called sludge. Sludge is a resinous, partially conductive substance that eventually causes the transformer to fail. Before this condition is reached, it is imperative that the oil should be maintained so that this condition does not occur. However, all is not lost; even badly deteriorated oils can be reconditioned and reclaimed by removing the oxidation products and other contaminants.

4.5.1 Reconditioning Used Insulating Oils

All known oil purification methods are shown in Table 4.10. Modern vacuum oil purification systems with integral Fuller's earth or activated alumina can correct all contamination conditions of deteriorated oils. First the contaminated oil condition has to be identified and then an appropriate method or combinations of the methods are used for a complete purification of the oil.

TABLE 4.10

Oil Purification Practices

	Types of Contamination Removed					
		Water			Acids, Sludge, Etc.	
Oil-Purification Practices	**Solid**	**Free**	**Soluble**	**Air and Gas**	**Volatile**	**Other**
Precipitation (settling)	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
Centrifuging	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
Absorption—filter process	Yes	Yes limited	Yes partial	No	No	No
Cartridge	Yes	Yes limited	Yes partial	No	No	No
Filter/dryer						
Absorptive type						
Mechanical filtration	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
Pleated and depth types						
Coalescing filter	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
Electrophoresis	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
Dry gas purge	No	Yes	Yes	No	Some	No
Low-vacuum treatment	No	Yes	Yes partial	Yes partial	Some	No
High-vacuum treatment (degasification)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Modern degasifier[a]	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Fuller's earth treatment or activated alumina	No, some colloids	Yes limited	No	No	Yes	Yes

Source: Reproduced from Baranowski, L. and Kelly, J., *An Update on the Reclamation of Insulation Oil*, Minutes of the 44th Annual International Conference of Doble Clients, 1977, Doble Engineering, Watertown, MA.

Note: Modern oil purification system (includes fuller's earth or activated alumina system).

4.5.1.1 Natural Precipitation

Oil that has low dielectric strength or contains deposits of sludge or other contamination should receive maintenance attention. Low dielectric strength indicates the need for drying by mechanical filter or vacuum dehydrator. High acidity, high power factor, or low IFT values indicate the need for reclaiming treatment. When used, insulating oils are to be subjected to reconditioning and/or reclaiming processes, every advantage possible should be taken of natural precipitation. Considerable savings can frequently be realized in processing used oil if it is allowed to remain in its container undisturbed for at least 24 h so that water and suspended solids can settle out. The oil can then be removed without disturbing the residue in the bottom of the container, thus obviating the necessity of removing the residue from the processing machinery.

4.5.1.2 Filter Presses

Filter presses (Figure 4.3) vary somewhat in form, but are based upon the principle of forcing oil under pressure through a series of absorbing materials, such as paper, Fuller's earth, etc. Filters of this type are capable of removing carbon, water, sludge, and the like, when they are in suspension, but except for certain special arrangements, they cannot remove them effectively when they are dissolved or in colloidal form. These devices (particularly those with centrifuges) will not remove air, but, in fact, tend to aerate the oil. Experience has shown that the most efficient temperature at which to filter insulating oil is between 20°C and 40°C. Below 20°C, the viscosity increases rapidly, while at temperatures above 40°C the moisture is more difficult to separate from the oil.

4.5.1.3 Filter Press Operation

When the oil is to be purified by the use of a filter press using blotting paper, the paper should be well dried to obtain the most efficient operation; otherwise, the paper may actually add moisture to the oil. An oven should be used for drying the paper, and the sheets should be separated as they are hung on rods in the oven to permit free circulation of air and to ensure the most rapid drying. The filter paper should be dried from 6 to 12 h at a temperature of 101°C to 105°C. After drying, the paper should be taken from the oven directly to the filter, or it may be stored in dry transformer oil for future use. When transferring the paper, care should be taken to handle it as little as possible to avoid the absorption of moisture from the hands and to minimize the time of exposure to the air.

When purifying very wet oil with a filter press, the back pressure will not increase appreciably as the filter paper absorbs moisture. Therefore, the operator should make frequent dielectric tests of the oil discharged from the filter press to determine when the paper should be replaced. When purifying oil containing materials such as sludge or small carbon particles, considerable back pressure will develop as the filtering progresses because of the materials clogging up the filter paper. When the back pressure reaches about 75 psi, the paper should be replaced.

FIGURE 4.3
Fuller's earth (attapulgus clay) filter press system: BA-CL2-500M. (Courtesy of Baron USA, Inc., Cookville, TN.)

4.5.1.4 Cartridge Filters

In recent years, mobile cartridge-type filters (Figure 4.4) for reconditioning transformer oil are being used. These units are available in various sizes with oil-processing capacities ranging from 10 to 75 gal/min and utilize disposable cartridges with filter densities ranging from 1 to 25 micrometers (μm). (*Note:* 0.5 μm filters are recommended for transformer oil.) These mobile filter units are smaller, lighter, and more portable than large filter presses, have greater oil-flow capacities, and in most cases provide better water and particle removal. In addition, a drying oven is not required since the filter cartridges are hermetically sealed in plastic for shipment and storage. Once used, the filter cartridges are properly disposed of. Each cartridge typically can hold up to 3 qt of water.

4.5.1.5 Centrifuges

Another means of separating free and suspended contaminants, such as carbon, water, and sludge, from oil is the continuous centrifuge. In general, the centrifuge

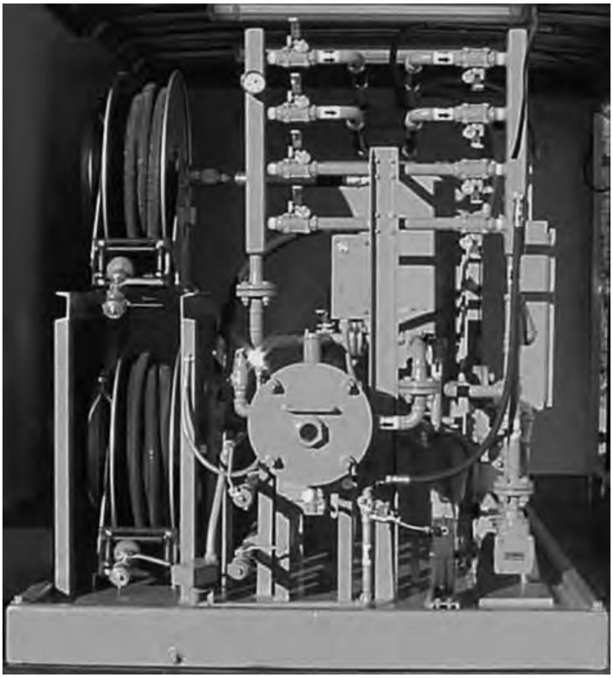


FIGURE 4.4
Mobile filter cartridge blotter-paper type dryer filter press Model BA-2FC2-20. (Courtesy of Baron USA, Inc., Cookville, TN.)

can handle much greater concentrations than can the conventional filter press, but it cannot remove some of the contaminants as completely as a filter press. Consequently, the centrifuge is generally used for rough bulk cleaning where large amounts of contaminated oil are to be handled.

Frequently, the output of the centrifuge is put through a filter press for the final cleanup. The centrifuge cannot remove dissolved water from oil; since the final centrifuge is sealed with water, the oil leaving the centrifuge may be saturated at the temperature of operation and conceivably could contain more dissolved water than when it entered. Neither the centrifuge nor the filter press is designed to treat oil chemically.

4.5.1.6 Coalescers

Throughout the power industry, coalescers are replacing centrifuges for use in removing free water from both lubricating and insulating oils. Coalescing is a technique that has been borrowed from the aviation fueling field. Fiberglass cartridges trap small water particles; increasing differential pressure across the filter media forces the particles of water together, and the large water drops are extruded at the outer surface of the fiberglass element. Large water drops are retained within a water-repellent separator screen and collect, by gravity, at the bottom of the filter while dry oil passes through the

FIGURE 4.5
Vacuum dehydrator oil unit, Model BA-D-H-1800. (Courtesy of Baron USA, Inc., Cookville, TN.)

separator screen. This method is quite similar to centrifuging with respect to performance and limitations; however, coalescing filters have no moving parts and, therefore, are simpler in operation and maintenance and suitable for unattended and automatic operation.

4.5.1.7 Vacuum Dehydrators

The vacuum dehydrator (Figure 4.5) is efficient in reducing the water content of insulating oil to a very low value. In this apparatus, the oil is exposed to a vacuum and heat for a short interval of time. Vacuum dehydrators can be used to treat oil without removing associated equipment from service. In addition to removing water, vacuum dehydrators will degas the oil and remove the more volatile acids. Vacuum dehydrators are frequently used by the manufacturer during initial filling of new transformers.

4.5.2 Maintenance of Less Flammable Fluids

4.5.2.1 Maintenance of RTemp

As a general rule, RTemp transformers may be handled in the same manner as conventional oil-filled transformers. However, some of the characteristics of RTemp fluid require special attention. The maintenance of RTemp fluid can be carried out similarly to that for oil and askarel. The sampling procedures for RTemp are similar to askarel. Special maintenance instructions for RTemp are the following:

Filtering: If it is necessary to filter RTemp fluid to remove excess moisture, sludge, and the like, it can be filtered through conventional filtration systems. The filtering system should be flushed before connection.

Care should be taken to assure that the pump has sufficient capacity to handle the relatively high viscosity of RTemp fluid at lower temperatures. The heating of the fluid and piping system will increase the speed and ease of filtration and is completely acceptable.

Cold start: RTemp fluid has a pour point of −30°C. At this point, the dielectric strength is still sufficient to allow safe energization of the transformer. Because the possibility exists of energizing a transformer into a fault, RTemp transformers should not be energized if the fluid temperature (top oil) is below −15°C. At −15°C top oil temperature or above, full load may be applied to the transformer.

If the top oil temperature is below −15°C, immersion heaters placed near the bottom of the tank, external heating blankets, or some other means should be used to raise the top oil temperature to −15°C, thus assuring adequate cold spot temperature.

Precautions: RTemp transformers are high-fire point liquid-insulated transformers. Relatively small quantities of conventional transformer oil or other low-fire point materials can substantially reduce the fire point of RTemp fluid. Care must be taken in processing and handling RTemp transformers not to introduce such contaminants. External systems, such as filtration systems, should be thoroughly flushed with RTemp fluid before connection to a RTemp transformer.

4.5.2.2 Maintenance of Silicone

Silicone insulating fluid is used in transformers to provide heat transfer. Transformers containing silicone should be installed, operated, and serviced by competent and trained maintenance personnel who are familiar with good safety practices. The sampling procedures for silicone are similar to askarel. The following are special maintenance instructions relating to silicone-filled transformers.

Receiving and handling: Immediately upon receipt of shipping drums or a transformer filled with silicone fluid, an examination should be made for leaks. If leakage is evident either at this time or at any time thereafter, the cause should be corrected and the spillage soaked up with absorbent materials such as sawdust or fuller's earth, followed by a cleanup of the affected area with rags soaked with kerosene or other approved solvent, such as 1,1,1-trichloroethane. Adequate ventilation must be provided when using such solvents.

On those infrequent occasions when silicone fluid is removed for shipment, the transformer may be shipped gas filled and is to be liquid filled at installation. If the transformer is located outdoors, adequate precautions must be taken to ensure that no dirt or moisture enters the liquid during the filling operation. Before opening a container of silicone fluid, allow it to stand until the liquid is at least as warm as the surrounding air.

Before placing the liquid in the transformer, take a sample from each container and make dielectric tests as outlined under Section 4.2.2.1. If the tests are unsatisfactory, restore the dielectric strength by filtering before placing the liquid in the transformer. When transferring from containers to the transformer, it is recommended that the liquid be passed through a filter press to remove any undetected moisture or sediment that may be present. A vacuum purifier is also commonly used.

Silicone fluid must be handled in containers, pipes, oil-resistant hoses, and the like, that are free from oil, grease, pitch, or other foreign materials, since these contaminate the liquid and decrease its nonflammable properties. All apparatus used in sampling, filtering, storing, or transporting silicone fluid must be maintained for exclusive use with silicone fluid, since it is extremely difficult to remove all traces of oil or other silicone fluid contaminants from equipment of this type. Also, mineral oil is completely miscible in silicone fluid, and it is practically impossible to separate the two liquids after they have been mixed.

Use kerosene or other approved solvent to remove all traces of silicone fluid on the outside of the transformer tank. This precaution should be taken since silicone fluid has a tendency to affect adhesion of additional coats of paint.

Storage: Shipping drums should be stored indoors in an area specially selected for this purpose. If it is necessary to store drums or cans containing silicone fluid outdoors, protect the containers from the weather and direct contact with water. Regardless of location, all drums should be stored in a position that results in the bungs being under a positive pressure. Do not open a drum or can until the liquid is actually needed. Any change in temperature while the containers are open will cause an exchange of air, with the possibility of moisture entering the liquid. Partially emptied drums must be tightly resealed and stored in the same manner outlined previously.

Periodic inspection: The insulating liquid must be maintained at the proper level, and for the longest possible service life of the transformer, the dielectric strength of the silicone fluid should be maintained at a high value. It is recommended, therefore, that the liquid be sampled and tested after the first few days of operation, again after 6 months, and yearly thereafter. Keep accurate records of the tests, and filter or replace the liquid as indicated. The entire transformer should also be thoroughly checked for leaks at these same intervals. If the pressure-vacuum gauge consistently reads zero, a leak in the gas space is indicated. If there is any reason to believe that water may have entered the transformer, check a top sample immediately for water.

Filtering: If test results indicate that moisture or other contaminants are present, they can usually be removed by passing the insulating liquid through a filter press. This device may be used either as a paper filter press for drying or with fuller's earth and paper for purifying. All apparatus used in sampling, filtering, storing, or transporting silicone fluid must be maintained for exclusive use with silicone fluid, since it is extremely difficult to remove all traces of oil or other silicone fluid contaminants from equipment of this type.

Filtration can be accomplished in the transformer or other container by circulating the silicone fluid from the bottom to the top through a filter press. Filtering can be done faster and more efficiently by passing the liquid from the transformer through the filter and into a separate, clean, dry container and then back through the filter again to refill the transformer. In this manner all the liquid will be given two complete passes through the filter press. If additional filtering is still required, the entire procedure can be repeated. As moisture is extracted from the liquid during the filtering process, the filtering medium will become wet. Frequent samples of the outgoing liquid should be tested to determine when the filtering medium should be replaced.

The filter press will not remove large quantities of free water from the silicone fluid. When a large quantity of free water is introduced into the filter, it will be passed on through, emerging as finely divided droplets dispersed throughout the liquid. Therefore, if free water is present, it should be removed before filtering is started. A transformer contaminated with moisture may not only have moisture suspended in the insulating liquid, but also in the windings and insulation. The most efficient temperature for filtering moisture from the liquid is between 20°C and 40°C, but at this temperature the transfer of moisture from the windings and insulation to the insulating liquid is quite slow. If free water is present in the transformer or if the dielectric strength of the silicone fluid is still below 30 kV after filtering, consult the nearest office of the transformer manufacturer for additional information.

Safety precautions: As a class, silicone liquids are nontoxic. Silicone fluid in contact with the eyes may cause local irritation, but this irritation is only temporary. If desired, eyes may be irrigated with water, and if irritation persists, consult a physician.

Precautions: Static charges can be developed when silicone fluid flows in pipes, hoses, and tanks. Fluid leaving a filter press may be charged to over 50,000 V. To accelerate dissipation of the charge in the liquid, ground the filter press, the piping, the transformer tank, and all bushings or the winding leads during flow into any tank. Conduction through silicone fluid is slow; therefore, it is desirable to maintain these grounds for at least 1 h after the flow has been stopped.

Arcs can occur from the free surface of the charged liquid even though the previous grounding precautions have been taken. Therefore, explosive gas mixture should be removed from all containers into which liquid is flowing.

4.5.2.3 Maintenance of Wecosol

Wecosol fluid is a transformer grade of tetrachloroethylene (sometimes called perchloroethylene). Wecosol fluid will slowly evaporate to produce Wecosol vapors. It is necessary to use the proper safety procedures to prevent adverse effects resulting from vapor inhalation and skin contact with fluid. Overexposure to Wecosol vapors will result in symptoms such as headaches, confusion, nausea, and lack of coordination. Extreme overexposure to Wecosol vapors could result in fatal personal injury. The fluid is considered as

TABLE 4.11

Maximum Wecosol Vapor Exposure

Parts Per Million (ppm)	Hours Per Day
33	24
50	16
80	10
100	8
133	6
200	4
Greater than 200	0

Note: Reference OSHA Standards Part 1910.1000, Table Z2.

less than 50 ppm polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) dielectric fluid in accordance with Federal PCB regulations 40 CFR 761, dated July 01, 2002. It is considered as a nonflammable fluid with boiling point of 121°C at atmospheric pressure. The safe limits of vapor exposure are shown in Table 4.11.

Low lying areas such as pits can slowly accumulate vapors which are nearly six times heavier than air. The tank should not be opened in those areas which may accumulate the vapors to prevent excessive vapor concentrations. The odor of Wecosol vapors is noticeable at concentrations of 50 ppm and often as low as 10 ppm. Do not use odor to determine vapor concentrations since odor threshold varies between individuals. Also, the ability to recognize Wecosol vapors diminishes after exposure, due to temporary desensitization.

Wecosol fluid is a solvent. Like any solvent, contact will dry out the skin by removing its natural oils. The natural oils can be replaced by the use of common hand lotions. Gloves resistant to Wecosol fluid should be worn to avoid skin contact and transformer fluid contamination.

Fluid splashed into the eyes may cause pain and irritation. Safety goggles should be worn if tasks to be performed risk splashing of fluid into the eyes. If the fluid is splashed into the eyes, flush the eyes with water for approximately 15 min and consult a physician. The following are special maintenance instructions for Wecosol.

Receiving and handling: Immediately upon receipt of drums or a transformer filled with Wecosol fluid, examine for leaks. Take the necessary action and precautions so that PCB contamination is not introduced from the leaks or any filling or maintenance of the transformer. If the fluid is received in drums, they must be stored in ventilated dry area in an upright position. Before a drum is used to fill the transformer, it must be sampled and tested for dielectric strength. The dielectric strength must be at least 30 kV for drummed fluid to be used.

Sampling: Samples should be taken to prevent air from entering the tank. To prevent air from being drawn into the tank, the tank pressure must be greater than zero psi. If necessary, increase the tank pressure by injecting dry nitrogen until a positive pressure of about one half psi is reached. The sample should be taken when the unit is warmer than the air to avoid condensation.

Care should be taken to procure a sample which fairly represents the liquid in the tank. All samples must be taken from the top liquid sampler near the top fluid level. A sufficient amount of liquid should therefore be drawn off before the sample is taken to insure that the sample will not be that which is stored in the liquid sampler. If the sample taken contains free water, it is not suitable for dielectric tests and the sample must be discarded. A second sample should then be taken after at least 2 qt of liquid have been withdrawn. If free water still exists, all transformer fluid must be dried as explained in the following section.

Drying: The transformer fluid can be dried by either chemical drying or insulation drying methods. Take the necessary precautions so that PCB contamination is not introduced during field filling or maintenance of the transformer. In the chemical drying method use hoses, gaskets, and threaded fitting seals made of viton rubber and Teflon-lined copper or steel. The liquid temperature must be less than 60°C for chemical drying procedure to be used. Circulate the tank fluid through glass or paper filters and calcium sulfate. The filters should be a 50 μm filter on the calcium sulfate inlet with a 1 μm absolute on the exit (filter will pass no particle larger than 1 μm). Continue the drying process until the water content is less than 35 ppm, and the dielectric breakdown is greater than 26 kV.

In the insulation drying method, the windings, insulation, and fluid can be dried by circulating current through the windings. The tank coolers must be blanketed off to reduce heat loss. The low-voltage winding is short circuited and sufficient voltage is impressed across the high-voltage winding to circulate current through the windings to maintain a liquid temperature between 90°C and 100°C. The voltage necessary to accomplish this task is approximately one-third the rated impedance divided by 100 and multiplied by the rated voltage. Current requirements are approximately one-third the rated current. During the heating, monitor the liquid level to make certain the liquid level is at least to the 25°C level. Stop the heating if the liquid level falls below the 25°C level. When the liquid has reached the required temperatures, purge the gas space with dry nitrogen. Minimize the Wecosol vapor exhaust. Continue the purging and heating until the liquid water content is less than 35 ppm, and dielectric breakdown is greater than 26 kV.

Reprocessing: If necessary the Wecosol fluid can be reprocessed by filtering. When reprocessing, use hoses and tubing lined with Teflon or made of copper or steel. All gaskets and threaded fitting seals used during this process must be made of viton rubber. Circulate the fluid through paper or glass filters and fuller's earth. The inlet filter should be a 50 μm filter. The exhaust filter must be a 5 μm absolute filter.

Inspection and maintenance: Periodic inspection and maintenance test should be conducted to determine whether a transformer fluid should continue to be used, dried, or reprocessed.

4.5.2.4 Maintenance of Environtemp (FR3)

This section discusses natural ester-based transformer insulating fluid known as Envirotemp® (FR3) and offers a guide on testing and evaluation, as well as criteria and methods of maintenance for it. These base fluids are also known as vegetable seed oils. These fluids are currently being used in the range of small distribution class transformers to medium power transformers. They are being applied in new equipment and for retrofilling existing equipment. The dielectric fluid FR3 has been available for transformers in the last several years and today this fluid is being used in transformers produced by many manufactures. This fluid is soy-based product and has an exceptionally high fire point of 360°C and flash point of 330°C. The chemical composition of FR3 fluid is a mixture of triglycerides (long-chain fatty acid ester molecules) that are relatively polar, are less prone to saturate, and readily form hydrogen bonds. It has the highest ignition resistance of less-flammable fluids currently available. It is referred to as a high fire point or "less-flammable" fluid, and is listed as a less-flammable dielectric liquid by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) for use in complying with the NEC and insurance requirements. Because FR3 fluid is derived from 100% edible seed oils and uses food-grade additives, its environmental and health profile is unmatched by other dielectric coolants. Its biodegradation rate and completeness meets the U.S. EPA criteria for "ultimate biodegradability" classification." The manufacturer (Cooper Power System, USA) also claims FR3 fluid extends insulation life by a factor of as much as 5–8 times because it has the unique ability to draw out retained moisture and absorb water driven off by aging paper. It also helps prevent paper molecules from severing when exposed to heat. These properties can result in increase ability to overload or longer transformer insulation life, resulting in both lower life cycle costs and delayed asset replacement. FR3 fluid is fully miscible with conventional mineral oil or R-Temp®, and may be used to retrofill or top off units filled with these fluid types. It appears the only negative that can be attributed to this fluid is the fact that it has a relatively high first cost relative to mineral oil and could easily add 15%–30% to the transformer first cost. FR3 fluid is a fire-resistant natural ester dielectric coolant specifically formulated for use in distribution and power transformers where its unique environmental, fire safety, chemical, and electrical properties are advantageous. Because of its excellent environmental, fire safety, and performance characteristics, applications for FR3 fluid have expanded into a variety of other applications, including power transformers, voltage regulators, sectionalizing switches, transformer rectifiers, electromagnets, and voltage supply circuits for luminaries. The fluid is also used in retrofill applications for transformers and other fluid-filled distribution and power equipment.

Storage and handling: The same basic procedures for storing and handling conventional transformer oil should be followed with FR3 fluid. To maintain the extremely low percent moisture saturation at time of fluid manufacture, it is recommended that exposure time to air be as minimal as practical. Drum and tote storage should be indoors or outdoors protected from the elements. To maintain the optimal fluid properties for its intended use as an electrical insulating fluid, exposure to oxygen, moisture, and other contaminants must be minimized. Except for short storage periods, material that has been immersed in FR3 fluid should not be exposed to air. Thin films of natural esters tend to polymerize much faster than conventional transformer oil. For equipment drained of FR3 fluid, it is recommended that the equipment be placed in an inert gas environment or be reimmersed as soon as is practical. Hot air drying is an unacceptable process for assemblies already impregnated with a natural ester fluid. For impregnated assemblies that require additional drying, a method of drying that does not expose the impregnated insulation to air is required to avoid polymerization of the dielectric fluid. Avoid extremes of temperature of storage. FR3 fluid should be stored in labeled, tightly closed containers at 10°C–40°C in dry and well-ventilated areas away from sources of ignition or heat.

Fluid maintenance tests: Physical, chemical, and electrical properties are used to evaluate new and in-service electrical insulating fluids. Periodic maintenance tests for FR3 fluid-filled equipment should follow the same schedule used for transformers filled with conventional transformer oil. However, some traditionally acceptable indicators of mineral oil performance may not apply or may have different values for Envirotemp FR3 fluid. When comparing the standard ASTM tests and mineral oil specifications to those for natural esters indicate that many tests may require special consideration. The battery of tests may be separated into performance, quality, and diagnostic. These tests are discussed below.

Performance tests

Insulating fluids provide both electrical insulation and cooling for the electrical apparatus. The dielectric breakdown voltage and viscosity are two key properties that affect the function and performance of an electrical insulating fluid. The dielectric breakdown voltage measures the integrity of the insulation. The viscosity influences the cooling performance.

Dielectric breakdown voltage tests: The dielectric breakdown voltage tests that are conducted for insulating fluids are ASTM D1816 and D877. The only modification to the D816 test method is the stand time before the test. The stand time for the mineral oil is between 3 and 5 min. Because of the viscosity of the FR3 fluid is higher than the mineral oil, a 15 min stand time is recommended between pouring the room temperature equilibrated fluid sample and the start time of the test. This added time gives the entrained air sufficient time to escape after pouring of the sample. The stand time recommended for the D877 is 2–3 min. The D1816 is the preferred test for FR3 even though D877 test works well for this fluid. The reason is that the D877 test is less sensitive to dissolved gas, water, and particulate than the D1816.

Viscosity: The kinematic viscosity of the FR3 fluid is the lowest of the less-flammable fluids, and is higher than that of mineral oil. The viscosity test using ASTM D445 may be performed without any modification.

Quality tests

These tests are conducted to give indicators of changes in the electrical insulating fluid over time due the operation of the equipment. Their usefulness is not so much in the test values (pass or fail) themselves, but in the trends over time. The quality of FR3 fluid is measured using the same battery of tests that are used for oil. However due to the differences in the chemistry of FR3 and mineral oil, the normal base line values are different for certain properties. For example, dissipation factor (power factor), water content, pour point, and acid (neutralization) number are typically higher than those of mineral oil. Interfacial tension, gassing, and resistivity are normally lower than that of oil. These tests provide a good indication of possible fluid contamination or unusual degradation. Acceptable limits for continued use of service-aged FR3 fluid-filled equipment are listed Table 4.12.

Dielectric strength per ASTM D1816 and D877: The acceptable limit for continued use of service-aged FR3 fluid is 30 kV minimum for equipment rated 69 kV and below. For applications greater than 69 kV line voltage contact manufacturer for recommendations. As was discussed above the stand time for the D1816 should be 15 min to allow entrapped air to escape before the test is conducted.

TABLE 4.12
Envirotemp (FR3) Fluid Acceptance Limits

Property	ASTM Method	Typical Envirotemp FR3 Fluid	New Fluid As Received in Drums	Continued Use of Service-Aged Fluid
Dielectric strength	D1816(1 mm)	28–33	≥30	≥30
	D1816(2 mm)	60–70	≥35	≥35
	D877	50–55	≥40	≥30
Dissipation factor (%) 25°C	D924	0.02–.06	≤0.20	≤1.0
Dissipation factor (%) 100°C		1–3	≤4.0	
Neutralization number (mg KOH/g)	D974	0.01–0.03	≤0.06	≤2.5
Interfacial tension (dyne/cm)	D971	25–28	25–28	≥18
Flash point (°C)	D92		≥300	—
Fire point (°C)	D92		≥340	≥300
Viscosity (cSt) 100°C	D445		≤10	—
Viscosity (cSt) 40°C			≤40	
Pour point (°C)	D97		≤–18	—
Moisture content (mg/kg)	D1533B	20–30	≤200	≤400

Water content: The ASTM D1533 method can be used for the FR3 fluid without modification. If erratic or unusual results are observed while conducting this test, then use the Karl Fisher reagents for aldehydes and ketones instead of those used for mineral oil. The high capacity for water (1100 versus 60 mg/kg for mineral oil) is one of the important attributes of FR3 fluid that gives kraft paper insulation longer life in it compared to its life in mineral oil. New FR3 fluid typically contains 20–60 mg/kg of water, and standard specification for natural ester fluids used in electrical apparatus allow up to 200 mg/kg.

Dissipation factor: The ASTM D924 method can be used without modification. When using the same test cell for both mineral oil and FR3 fluid dissipation measurements, it is of utmost importance to clean the test cell meticulously when changing from one type of fluid to another. This is especially true when measuring FR3 fluid after mineral oil, otherwise high values may be seen if the cell is not sufficiently cleaned. Also, clean the test equipment immediately after completion of the test due to the higher tendency of thin films of natural esters to oxidize and eventually polymerize when exposed to air. A 0.05% value at 25°C for new FR3 fluid is typical and values up to 0.2% are acceptable per ASTM D6871.

Acid number: The ASTM D974 can be used without modification for determining the neutralization (acid) number for FR3 fluid. Because new FR3 fluid contain small amounts of free fatty acids that result in acid neutralization number being higher than seen in mineral oil. As the FR3 fluid ages, it reacts with water (hydrolysis), generating additional long chain fatty acids that are considered to be noncorrosive and milder than short chain organic acids found in mineral oil.

IFT: The IFT can be measured in the same manner as for mineral oil using STM D971 method. The FR3 fluid has an inherently lower IFT value compared to mineral oil. It is considered that IFT should be as useful for FR3 fluid as it is for mineral oil however more test data is needed to establish safe limits for in-service FR3 fluid.

Color: A low color number of FR3 insulating fluid is desirable to permit inspection of assembled apparatus in a tank. An increase in color number during service is an indicator of oil deterioration or contamination. New FR3 may initially be slightly darker in color, typically a slight amber appearance, than highly refined new mineral oil. Other tests (such as dissipation factor and neutralization number) are better measures of fluid deterioration or contamination. Note that natural ester fluid manufacturers may add clear colorants for identification purposes. Such tints should not impact the ASTM color and visual examinations.

Diagnostic tests

Three tests are important for diagnostic and safety purposes. Flash and fire point analyses per ASTM D92 serves both for quality verification of new FR3 fluid and diagnostics and safety evaluation of in-service fluid.

The lower flash and fire point values indicate contamination by more volatile fluids. Flash point values can be used to estimate the amount of mineral oil in transformers that are retrofilled with FR3 fluid.

Flash point and fire point: Relatively small amounts of conventional oil should not significantly reduce the flash point and fire point of Envirotemp FR3 fluid. Contamination above 7.5% may reduce the fire point to below 300°C. If it is suspected that the fluid may be contaminated, flash point and fire point should be measured in accordance with ASTM D92.

Dissolved gas analysis: This test is recommended particularly for high value equipment or equipment servicing critical loads. ANSI/IEEE guide C57.104-1991 for detection and analysis of generated gases can be applied, except the use of ratio methods. Limited testing and field experience indicates that the same fault gases are produced in FR3 (natural esters) as are produced in mineral oil. Under the same magnitude of electrical overstress, natural esters typically produce somewhat less volume of the gases compared to mineral oil. Under the same thermal overstress, natural esters typically produce significantly more volume of the gases. There are differences in gas solubility coefficients between natural esters and mineral oils and their respective values should be used for data interpretation. There are differences between mineral oil and natural ester gassing tendency per ASTM D2300. During normal operation, the levels of dissolved hydrogen and ethane gases can increase at a rate greater than the typical rate in mineral oil.

Safety and care procedures

Typically, natural esters covered have been formulated to minimize health and environmental hazards. Although no known hazard is involved in the normal handling and use of natural ester fluids, additives to the base oil may differ. Users should obtain a material safety data sheet (MSDS) for each natural ester fluid in use. Follow the manufacturer's instructions at all times. Personnel should avoid eye/fluid contact and inhalation of spray mists, and take appropriate steps if such incidents occur. MSDSs should provide appropriate guidelines with respect to handling these fluids. Although not listed as a hazardous substance or waste by any federal agency, disposal of natural ester fluids may require certain precautions. Currently, the U.S. EPA Spill Prevention, Control, and Countermeasure (SPCC) regulation (40CFR112) makes no practical distinction between mineral oils and vegetable oils, except for possible reduction in spill remediation requirements. Refer to IEEE Std C57.147-2008, *IEEE Guide for Acceptance and Maintenance of Natural Ester Fluids in Transformers*, for more details.

4.5.2.5 Maintenance of Askarels

Askarel is a generic name for PCBs which were used extensively in electrical transformers, capacitors, and other equipment since the 1940s. Askarel was used by many electrical equipment manufacturers under their own trade name such as Pyranol (GE), Inerteen (Westinghouse), and so on. The open use of askarel was banned in electrical equipment in the early 1980s by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in the United States. The use of askarel in closed systems in some industries may still be allowed with mandated procedures for handling and disposal of askarel and askarel-contaminated materials. The discussion of maintenance of askarel is undertaken here for those facilities that are still allowed to use askarel as a dielectric medium for electrical equipment.

Inspection: Visual inspection and dielectric strength tests should be made on askarel when installing equipment and on a regular schedule at 1-year intervals thereafter. Visual inspection that reveals a clear, faint yellow or light brown color indicates good askarel condition. The presence of a green, red, or blue cast, cloudiness, or turbidity indicates the presence of insulation or moisture contamination, and further tests on the askarel and inspection of the associated equipment should definitely be made. If the askarel sample appears black or contains suspended carbon particles, severe arcing has occurred. The askarel should be discarded and a thorough inspection of the equipment performed.

Sampling: Samples of askarel should be taken in a clean, dry glass quart bottle. If the sample is to be stored indefinitely or sent to a service laboratory for moisture content tests, the bottle should be filled only to within 1 in. of the top; the sample should be sealed by wrapping the top and the threads of the jar with aluminum foil before tightly securing the cap. When the sample is to be sent to a laboratory, indicate the temperature of the askarel when the sample was taken. Samples of askarel should be taken when the relative humidity of the environment is low and when the temperature of the askarel is as high or higher than the surrounding air. It is best to take the sample when the unit is near operating or maximum temperature. Samples taken during regularly scheduled intervals should be taken at nearly the same temperature as previous samples. Samples should be taken as close to the top of the liquid surface as possible because askarel is heavier than water.

Testing: The testing procedure for askarel is the same as for mineral oil, but care should be taken to see that there is no mineral oil in the test cup. The dielectric strength test for askarel is the most important maintenance test. A higher dielectric strength indicates that the insulating efficiency of the askarel is high and that any cloudiness or turbidity present is not due to damaging moisture contamination. If the dielectric strength of the askarel decreases abruptly or a decreasing trend is observed, inspections should be made at more frequent intervals. When the dielectric strength is 26 kV or less, a sample of askarel should be sent to a laboratory for a moisture test (ASTM D 1533, Karl Fischer method). A high power factor alone is an insufficient criterion for replacing or reconditioning askarel; however, where abnormally low values of dielectric strength occur, the power factor of the askarel can be expected to abnormally high. Power factors of 20% and more are frequently encountered in askarel transformers during normal service. Although this is an indication that some contamination has occurred, experience has shown that askarel is serviceable long after power factor test values increase greatly. Again, the determining criterion that indicates the serviceability of askarel is the dielectric strength. Reconditioning askarel to obtain a lower power factor is usually not justifiable.

Contamination: Water contamination is the primary cause of deterioration of askarel dielectric strength. Inspect all askarel-filled equipment for possible areas that would allow the equipment to breathe moisture-laden air. Numerous sealing compounds are available for sealing these areas. Where gaskets are located, use silastic seals at the flanges, viton for an elastomeric seal, and Teflon tape on pipe threads. On older equipment, cork-type gaskets should have the outside edges sealed with epoxy cement.

Reconditioning askarel: The fact that the transformer tanks are generally sealed and that any condensation will float on top of askarel makes filtering by a blotter press rarely necessary. If such filtering is necessary, it can be done with an ordinary press from which all mineral oil has been removed. A centrifugal purifier designed for mineral oil will not function on askarel. Special combination activated clay purifiers and blotter presses are manufactured for askarel.

Handling and disposal of askarel: While askarel is generally considered to be noncombustible, under arcing conditions gases are produced that consist predominately of noncombustible hydrogen chloride and varying amounts of combustible gases depending on the askarel composition. Care should therefore be taken to handle askarel-filled apparatus as potentially combustible when accumulated gases are released.

Askarels (PCBs) have been used in many applications for over 40 years, but in the 1980s evidence was discovered that PCBs were widely dispersed in the environment. Studies have shown that PCBs are an environmental contaminant. Simultaneously, significant steps have been taken by the EPA to limit further releases of PCBs to the environment. The National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) prepared Publication No. TR-P6-1973 (January 25, 1973), "Proposed American National Standard Guidelines for Handling and Disposal of Capacitor and Transformer-Grade Askarels Containing Polychlorinated Biphenyls." The guidelines in this official standard should be rigidly followed by all personnel when handling or disposing of askarel-soaked materials.

The following excerpts from the official standard are presented as a handy reference:

Safety precautions: Based on about 40 years of industrial usage, askarels are considered harmful materials to humans. There has been no known instance of human injury when askarels are used under the normally prescribed conditions of precaution and handling. Nevertheless, exposure to askarel should be avoided at all times.

Vapors: The odor of askarel is noticeable well below the maximum safe air concentrations. Depending upon the composition of the askarel used, from 0.5 to 1.0 mg/m^3 of air has been determined to be the upper safe level of exposure during an 8 h workday. (See American Industrial Hygiene Association Hygienic Guide Series January/February, 1965.) Breathing vapor or fumes from heated askarels should be avoided. High concentrations of vapors can cause irritation of the eyes, nose, throat, and upper respiratory tract. Provision should be made for adequate ventilation and regulation of manufacturing operations to avoid open exposure of hot askarels (55°C or higher). The gases produced when askarel is decomposed by very high temperature (such as that of an electric arc) in the presence of air or organic insulating materials contain a high percentage of hydrogen chloride and small percentages of other gases. Minute concentrations of this combination of gases are very unpleasant and irritating, thus giving ample warning of their presence.

If exposure to high concentrations of askarel or its arced products is necessary under emergency conditions, an approved gas mask of the organic canister-type or self-contained breathing apparatus must be worn. Such exposure should be under the surveillance of other personnel capable of rescue in case of accident. If the odor of askarel or its arced products is detected by the person wearing protective equipment, he should immediately go into fresh air. All gas masks, respirators, and replacement parts should be approved for the purpose and be maintained on a regular schedule in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Liquid: Unlike mineral insulating oil, there is no fire hazard in handling askarels. A limited solvent action (similar to that for paint thinner) on the fats and oils of the skin with prolonged contact may lead to drying and chapping of the skin. As with insulating oil, some people are allergic to askarel, and continued exposure may result in skin irritation. Both the liquid and vapor are moderately irritating to eye tissue.

Operating procedures should require avoidance of contact with any askarels. The use of porous gloves that can absorb and retain askarels is to be avoided. Resistant gloves and aprons of the neoprene, polyethylene, or viton type should be used if contact is unavoidable. In case of spillage, clothing should be removed as soon as practical, the skin washed, and the clothing discarded. Medicinal washes or mild detergents followed by the application of cold cream will reduce the irritation resulting from the contact of an open cut or abrasion with askarel.

Safety glasses with side shields or face shield should be worn when handling askarel. Eyes that have been exposed to liquid askarel should be irrigated immediately with long quantities of running water for 15 min and then examined by a physician if the irritation persists. (A drop of castor oil has been found to reduce irritation.)

Persons developing a skin irritation or respiratory tract irritation while working with askarels should be placed under supervision of a physician. Ingestion or swallowing of askarels is not generally regarded as a problem of the industry. Should accidental ingestion occur, consult a physician immediately.

Hands should be washed with warm water and soap before eating, drinking, smoking, or using toilet facilities.

4.6 Insulating Gases

Insulating gases, such as SF_6, N_2, fluorocarbons (freons), H_2, and CO_2 are used in varying degrees as insulating medium in electrical equipment and apparatus. Since SF_6 is used as the principal insulation in high- and medium-voltage circuit breakers, information is provided on this gas in this section.

SF_6 in its normal state is odorless, tasteless, nontoxic, noncorrosive, nonflammable, and inert. Its dielectric strength is 2–3 times that of air, has high thermal stability, and good arc extinguishing properties. In circuit breakers, its self-healing properties enable it to regenerate itself following an AC interruption. The SF_6 liquefies at a temperature of below 50°F at a pressure of 220 psig, and on the lower end of the vapor pressure curve the gas becomes a liquid at −20°C at a pressure of 50 psig.

4.6.1 Maintenance of SF_6

One maintenance item of concern is to monitor the leakage of SF_6 gas from the electrical apparatus. This can be easily accomplished by using a refrigerator-type freon detector. This is a flameless detector that can detect leaks as small as one ounce per year. The other concern is the contamination of the gas. There are five types of contaminants in the SF_6 gas that must be identified which will require corrective actions. These contaminants are conducting particles, moisture, oil contamination, gaseous contamination, and arc-decomposition products. The SF_6 gas shipped form the manufacturer is in pure state and is practically free from contamination. However, in the factory some contamination may be introduced in the preparation of gas-filled components for shipment. To minimize contamination during installation in the field manufacturers' handling procedures should be followed. The various contaminants in the SF_6 gas are discussed in Sections 4.6.1.1 through 4.6.1.5.

4.6.1.1 Conducting Particles

Particles of metallic or carbonaceous matter may be found in the gas, especially in the gas-insulated bus. At normal operating voltages these particles may cause local ionization of the gas. Under normal circumstances no internal flashover results from this ionization because the SF_6 gas will absorb the free electrons as rapidly as they are generated. However, if the voltage gradient gets high enough, ionization proceeds faster than the ions can be absorbed by the gas molecules, and ion avalanche leads to an internal flashover. The free conducting particles are introduced in the gas from various sources, such as improper handling at the factory, vibrations in shipment, during installation, and from moving contacts. To detect free conducting particles inside a gas-insulated apparatus or equipment in the field is by performing g a 60 Hz high potential test at the manufacturers' recommended test voltage. Another method of locating conducting particles in the field is to use an ultrasonic translator detector which includes a microphone, an amplifier, and an ultrasonic signal generator.

4.6.1.2 Moisture

The SF_6 gas shipped from the factory has very low moisture content, less than 40 ppm by volume. Moisture is usually introduced into the gas during installation by inadequate evacuation of the equipment before filling. Water molecules adhering to the solid surfaces inside the equipment will diffuse into the gas after filling. Normally the gas-insulated equipment is evacuated to about 200 μm (0.2 mm Hg) before filling, and then checked for moisture content within a few days. It should be recognized that the relative humidity will change with variations in temperature and pressure. The moisture content of the gas is higher during summer months when the temperature is high and lower in winter when more moisture adheres to solid surfaces than the gas. It is not a simple process to determine the moisture content in SF_6 gas, therefore several factors should be considered. They are sensitivity and accuracy of the measuring equipment, operating pressure of the instrument and the system being tested, temperature, moisture absorption by the solid insulating components, sampling method being used, and manufacturers' operating requirements. There are several instruments and methods for detecting moisture in the gas. The most common techniques and instruments are (1) dew point method, (2) electrolytic cell method, and (3) capacitance method using aluminum oxide hygrometer or silicone hygrometer. After the moisture content of the SF_6 has been determined, the next step is to determine the adequacy of the gas dryness. Therefore, this has to be compared against the manufacturer of the equipment maximum allowable moisture level for safe operation of the equipment. In general the SF_6 gas is considered to be acceptably dry when the probability of moisture condensation in form of water at all foreseeable operating temperatures and pressures is very low. When taking samples of the gas for moisture determination, certain precautions should be followed. These are (1) all electrical safety rules must be followed, (2) ensure that the system is not subject to wide variations in temperature, (3) keep the whole system temperature well above the highest temperature at which water can condense from the gas, and (4) sampling lines should be kept as short and simple as possible.

4.6.1.3 Oil Contamination

Oil and oil vapor containing free carbon molecules can cause flashover of the SF_6 gas. Operating experience has shown that clean oil and oil vapor free of carbon does not degrade the performance of the gas-insulated equipment in any way.

4.6.1.4 Gaseous Contamination

The gaseous contamination in the SF_6 gas may result from three different sources. The first source of contamination is from the factory where it may have been introduced into the gas. The second source of contamination is in filling or operation of the gas-insulated equipment due to improper handling and procedures. The third source is due to arc decomposition products. The gaseous contamination may be checked by performing mass spectroscopy or gas chromatography in the laboratory. The laboratory will usually provide the metal sample cylinders for gas sampling with sampling instructions. Also, a field test for excessive oxygen content may be performed with any simple instrument designed for this purpose.

4.6.1.5 Arc Products

The SF_6 gas is referred to as a self-healing gas. This is because the gas absorbs the free electrons generated by the arc which causes the gas to ionize. These ions recombine to reform the SF_6 gas. Not all of the ions and free atoms recombine properly and some permanent breakdown products can form. Therefore, all arced SF_6 gas should be regarded as containing toxic byproducts. The byproducts are usually lower fluorides of sulfur.

After a major fault, the gas will usually exhibit the smell of rotten eggs. If this odor is present, the following precautions should be taken before working on the equipment.

1. Remove the gas from the equipment, keep personnel clear of discharge.
2. Open doors, purge the enclosure, and provide forced ventilation.
3. Remove the arc products (solids) as much as possible before entering the equipment. Appropriate protective clothing and other equipment should be worn when entering the equipment.
4. The arc products should be deposited in plastic containers and placed in sealable containers to be deposed of in a safe manner.

5

Transformers

5.1 Introduction

This chapter covers information on the maintenance and testing of power transformers. To ensure trouble-free service over the life of the transformer, it has to be maintained regularly, but equally important it must be operated properly. Therefore this chapter provides information on the basic design, construction, application, and operation of power distribution transformers with the expectation that this information will help toward better care and maintenance of transformers.

A transformer is an energy transformation device that transforms alternating current (AC) or voltage at one level to AC and voltage at another level. A transformer can economically convert voltage or current from low to high levels, or from high to low levels. The transformer usually consists of two or more insulated windings on a common iron core. In industrial and commercial applications, transformers are used to step down voltages from utility service voltage to lower distribution voltage levels or lower utilization voltages that may be required for a facility or a plant. Transformers are very reliable devices and can provide service for a long time if maintained and serviced regularly. Transformer failures, when they occur, are usually of a very serious nature, which may require costly repairs and long downtime. The best insurance against transformer failure is to ensure that they are properly installed and maintained.

5.2 Transformer Categories and Type

For consideration of maintenance requirements, transformers can be divided into the following categories:

Insulating medium
Construction
Application and use

5.2.1 Insulating Medium

The transformer's insulating medium can be subdivided into two types: dry and liquid filled.

5.2.1.1 Dry Type

Dry-type transformers are usually air cooled with winding insulation of class A, B, C, or H. The dry-type transformer can be either self-cooled or forced air cooled.

Self-cooled: A self-cooled transformer of the dry type is cooled by natural circulation of air through the transformer case. The cooling class designation for this transformer is AA.

Forced air cooled: A forced air-cooled transformer of dry type is cooled by means of forced circulation of air through the case. Transformers of this type have air-blast equipment such as fans with louvered or screened openings. These transformers are rated at 133% of the rating of the self-cooled dry-type transformers. The cooling class designation for this transformer is FA. Dry-type transformers can be obtained with both self-cooled and forced air-cooled rating. The designation for such a transformer is AA/FA. Dry-type transformers can also be cooled by gas instead of air. For such transformers, a sealed tank is required.

5.2.1.2 Liquid-Filled Transformer

In this type of transformer, the windings and core are totally immersed in a liquid contained in the transformer tank. The tank is equipped with cooling fins for circulation of the transformer liquid. The transformer liquid provides an insulating medium for the coils as well as for dissipation of heat. Two liquids have been used extensively in the past for transformers: mineral oils and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB), commonly known as askarel. Askarel was extensively used in transformers for indoor applications because it is a nonflammable synthetic insulating fluid. Askarel is a nonbiodegradable and toxic. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) banned the use of askeral in transformers and other electrical equipment, and its availability for reuse or for use in new applications is almost nonexistent. Newer fluids have been introduced, such as silicone, RTemp, Wecosal, and Alpha 1 for replacement of askarel. Others are still in developmental stages. Regardless of what new fluids come on the market for transformer applications, they would still have to be maintained and tested to assure transformer integrity.

Several cooling methods are used for liquid-filled transformers.

Self-cooled: A self-cooled transformer uses the natural circulation of the insulating liquid. Heat in the transformer tank is dissipated by convection currents set up in the liquid, which circulates through the tank and cooling fins. The cooling class designation for this transformer is oil natural, air natural OA.

Forced air cooled: In this type of transformer, air is forced over the cooling surface of the tank to supplement the self-cooled rating. The supplemental air is provided by fans that are mounted on the transformer tank and which can be manually or automatically controlled. The cooling class designation for this type of transformer is OA/FA.

Forced air cooled and forced oil cooled: This transformer uses a pump to circulate oil through a heat exchanger to increase heat dissipation, which supplements the self-cooling and forced air cooling. The cooling class designation for this transformer is OA/FA/FOA.

Water cooled: This transformer uses water instead of air to provide the cooling. The cooling system consists of a heat exchange by means of water pumped through a pipe coil installed inside or outside the transformer tank. The cooling class designation for this transformer is FOW.

5.2.2 Construction

Transformers can be classified by tank construction and core construction.

5.2.2.1 Tank Construction

Several types of transformer tank construction are used to prevent exposing liquid to the atmosphere. These types are as follows:

Free breathing: This type is open to the atmosphere (i.e., the airspace above the liquid is at atmospheric pressure). The transformer breathes as the air pressure and temperature change outside the tank. Some of these transformers can be equipped with dehydrating compounds in the breather.

Conservator or expansion-tank: These transformers are equipped with small expansion tanks above the transformer tank. The transformer tank is completely filled with oil, and the transformer breathes by means of this small tank, usually through a dehydrating compound. The purpose of the small tank is to seal the transformer fluid from the atmosphere and to reduce oxidization and formation of sludge.

Sealed tank: These transformers are equipped with an inert gas, such as nitrogen that is under pressure above the liquid in the transformer tank. Generally, the pressure range for this type of transformer is -8 to $+8\,\text{lb/in.}^2$

Gas-oil sealed: These transformers have an auxiliary tank to completely seal the interior tank, containing transformer liquid, from the atmosphere.

Vaporization: This type of transformer uses a special nonflammable insulating fluid, such as florocarbon (General Electric R-113), which is nonflammable, and a special condenser assembly welded on top of the transformer tank. The cooling tube ends are swaged and welded to tube headers. This transformer uses the technique of sprayed liquid on core and coil assembly (i.e., vaporization cooling known as pool boiling). The purpose of the condenser is to cool the boiling vapor into liquid for continued circulation of the fluid.

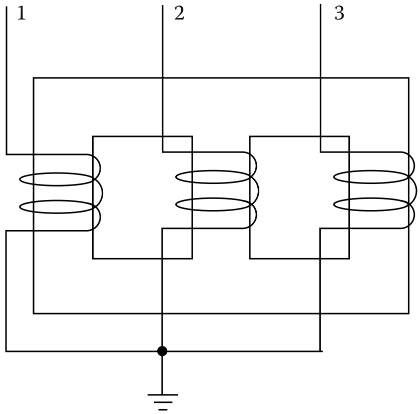


FIGURE 5.1
Three-phase core construction.

5.2.2.2 Core Construction

Transformers employ basically two types of core construction techniques.

Core type: In core-type construction, the transformer winding surrounds the laminated core. The coils can be cylindrical, flat, or disk shaped. They can be arranged to fit around the rectangle or square cross section of the core, as shown in Figure 5.1. Core-type construction provides a single-path magnetic circuit through the magnetic core. Most small distribution transformers are of this construction.

Shell type: In shell-type construction, the magnetic core surrounds the windings, as shown in Figure 5.2. The primary and secondary windings may be interspaced side by side or circularly stacked one above the other. Some large power transformers have this form of construction. One advantage of the shell type is that it offers a separate path for the zero-sequence currents through the core, as compared to the core type in which the zero-sequence path exists only through the transformer tank and end connections.

5.3 Application and Use

Transformers used for converting energy can be classified into five categories according to their application and use.

5.3.1 Distribution Transformers

A distribution transformer has a rating from 3 to 500 kVA. There are various types of distribution transformers, depending upon the cooling and insulating medium, service application, and mounting method. Transformers with

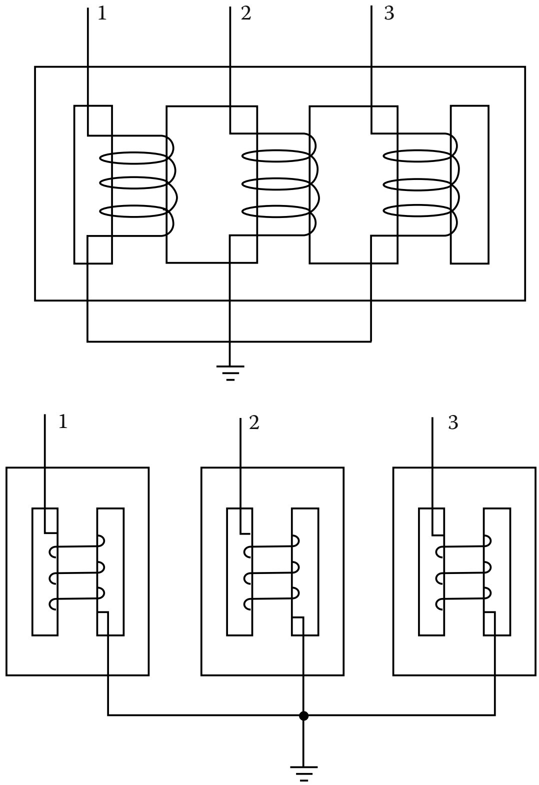


FIGURE 5.2
Three-phase and three single-phase shell type of construction.

voltage ratings of as high as 34,500 V are available. Virtually all distribution transformers are self-cooled.

5.3.2 Network Transformer

This is considered a distribution transformer per National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards and has characteristics similar to the distribution transformer. However, its application is different. It has special and severe requirements for network service, such as ventilation, vault size, submersibility, and short-circuit requirements. Network transformers can have kVA ratings in excess of 500 kVA and primary voltage up to 23 kV.

5.3.3 Arc-Furnace Transformer

The arc-furnace transformer is a special purpose transformer used in process industries. It is a low-voltage and high-amperage transformer and is specially braced to withstand mechanical stresses caused by fluctuating current requirements. Due to distorted waveform because of arcs, it has extra winding insulation.

5.3.4 Rectifier Transformer

The rectifier transformer is also a special purpose transformer used in the rectification of AC to direct current (DC) applications in the process industry. These transformers are specially braced to withstand mechanical stresses produced by high currents.

5.3.5 Power Transformer

The power transformer has a rating in excess of 500 kVA and is primarily used in transforming energy from generating stations to transmission lines, from transmission lines to distribution substations, or from utility service lines to plant distribution substations.

5.4 Transformer Fundamentals

The transformer was invented in 1886 by William Stanley and is a very useful device. A transformer can be divided into three parts: primary winding, secondary winding, and core. The primary and secondary windings are linked by common flux produced in the iron core, as shown in Figure 5.3. The following symbols are used for transformer voltages, currents, and impedances.

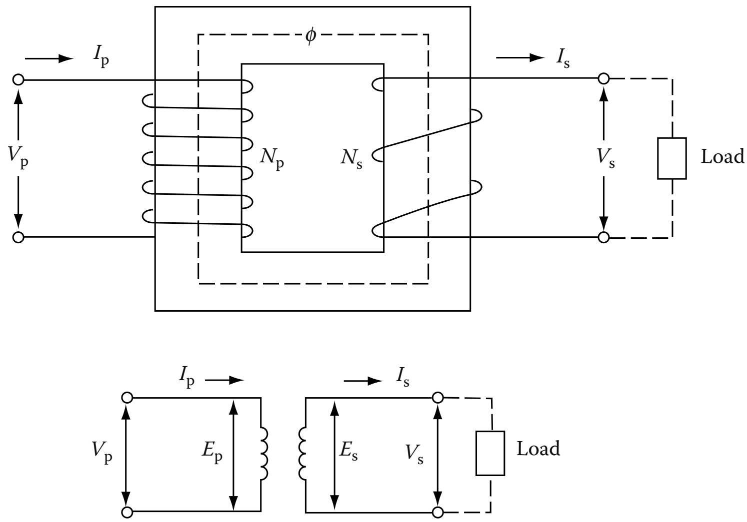


FIGURE 5.3
Connection and circuit diagram of a simple transformer.

Primary side:

V_p is the primary voltage
N_p is the primary turns
Z_{ps} is the leakage impedance (Ω)
I_p is the primary current

Secondary side:

V_s is the secondary voltage
N_s is the secondary turns
Z_{sp} is the leakage impedance (Ω)
I_s is the secondary current

Let us assume that the primary winding is energized by connecting it to an AC supply voltage, V_p. This sets up the primary current, which produces an alternating magnetic field in the iron core that is continually building up and collapsing in both positive and negative directions. The instantaneous induced voltage in the primary winding can be expressed by Faraday's law as

$$e_p = -N_p \frac{d\Phi}{dt} 10^{-8} \text{ V}$$

where $\Phi = \Phi_{max} = \sin wt$ and Φ_{max} = maximum instantaneous flux in the core. The rms value of this voltage can be expressed as

$$e_p = 4.44 f N_p A B_{max} 10^{-8} \text{ V}$$

where
f is the frequency
N_p is the number of turns in primary winding
A is the area of the core
B_{max} is the maximum flux density

The alternating flux produced by the primary winding in the core links the secondary winding and thus induces an alternating voltage in the secondary winding, which can also be expressed as

$$e_s = 4.44 f N_s A B_{max} 10^{-8} \text{ V}$$

where e_s is secondary voltage
Assuming that the secondary winding is open (no-load condition, $I_s = 0$) and the transformer is energized from the primary side, a small current, I_n, will flow in the primary winding. This current is called exciting current and sets up the alternating flux consisting of the following:

- Mutual flux whose path is through the core
- Leakage flux whose path is through the air

In commercial power transformers, the leakage flux is very small and is often neglected. The alternating flux in the iron core induces voltage in the primary and secondary windings. The induced voltage in the secondary produces a back electromotive force (emf) due to self-inductance. According to Lenz's law, the back emf is equal to applied voltage to the primary winding under no-load conditions. The applied voltage can be expressed as follows:

Applied voltage = total induced voltage − resistance drop in the primary winding

Neglecting the resistance drop in the primary winding, we can write

Applied voltage = induced voltage

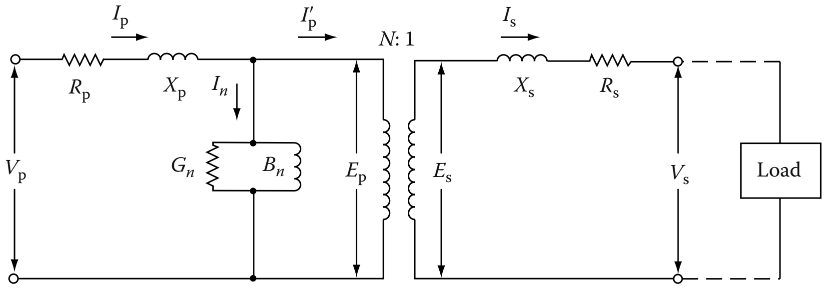
$$V_{\mathrm{p}} = e_{\mathrm{p}}$$

When load is applied to the secondary winding, a proportional primary current will flow corresponding to the secondary current. As the load is applied to the transformer, the voltage transformation ratio will deviate from the true transformer winding turns ratio. These small errors can generally be neglected in power transformers. In addition to the voltage drop in primary and secondary windings, losses due to the exciting current and load current have to be considered. Transformer losses can be divided in two types:

Copper loss (I^2R): This is power loss in the resistance of the primary and secondary winding due to load and magnetizing current of transformer.

Core loss: This is power loss in the transformer core and is due to the exciting current. The core loss can be subdivided into eddy current and hysteresis losses. Eddy current losses are due to eddy and small circulating currents in the core, whereas hysteresis losses are caused by the energy required to align the domains in the magnetic core material. Core loss is continuous as long as the transformer is energized.

A two-winding power transformer can be represented by an equivalent circuit diagram as shown in Figure 5.4. The exciting current of the transformer, represented by I_n, is shown as flowing to the magnetizing branch of shunt conductance and susceptance. The exciting current for power transformers usually ranges from 3% to 6%. To simplify the equivalent circuit, the exciting current may be neglected. Furthermore, the equivalent circuit diagram can be based upon the primary or secondary voltage. Figure 5.5a shows the equivalent circuit diagram of a transformer based on the secondary side. Sometimes it is desirable to represent a transformer by vector diagrams (the relationship of the primary and secondary currents and voltages). The vector diagram shown in the Figure 5.5b is based upon the equivalent circuit diagram shown in Figure 5.5a.



V_p = primary applied voltage
E_p = primary induced voltage
I_p = primary current
I'_p = $(I_p - I_n)$ current
R_p = primary resistance
X_p = primary reactance
I_n = exciting current
G_n = magnetic conductance
B_n = magnetic susceptance

V_s = secondary load voltage
E_s = secondary induced voltage
R_s = secondary resistance
X_s = secondary reactance
I_s = secondary current
N = transformer turns ratio

FIGURE 5.4
Transformer equivalent diagram.

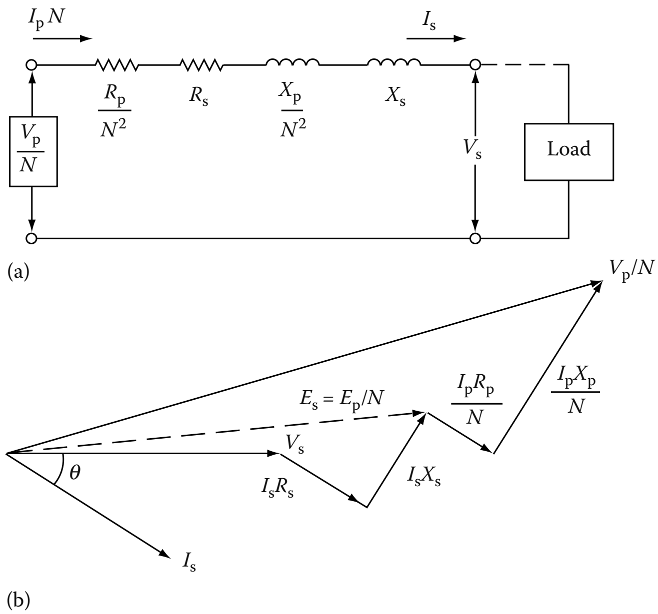


FIGURE 5.5
(a) Simplified equivalent diagram of transformer and (b) simplified vector diagram of transformer.

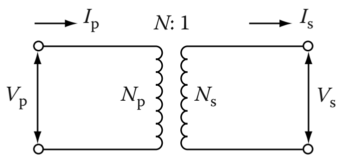


FIGURE 5.6
Graphical representation of a power transformer.

It is important to know the relationship between transformer voltage and current as energy is transformed from one voltage level to another. Consider the transformer shown in Figure 5.6. The voltage, current, and impedance are expressed as follows:

5.4.1 Voltage Relationship

According to Faraday's law,

$$V_p = e_p = N_p\left(\frac{d\Phi}{dt}\right)$$

$$V_s = e_s = N_s\left(\frac{d\Phi}{dt}\right)$$

$$\frac{V_p}{V_s} = \frac{N_p(d\Phi/dt)}{N_s(d\Phi/dt)} = \frac{N_p}{N_s} = N$$

$$V_pI_p = V_sI_s$$

$$N_pI_p = N_sI_s$$

$$\frac{V_s}{V_p} = \frac{I_p}{I_s} = \frac{N_s}{N_p} = \frac{1}{N}$$

5.4.2 Current Relationship

Power in = power out (ideal transformer)

$$V_pI_p = V_sI_s$$

$$N_pI_p = N_sI_s$$

$$\frac{V_s}{V_p} = \frac{I_p}{I_s} = \frac{N_s}{N_p} = \frac{1}{N}$$

5.4.3 Impedance Relationship

Z_{ps} is defined as the leakage impedance between primary and secondary winding measured in ohms on the primary winding with the secondary winding short circuited. The value of Z_{ps} is given by the following:

$$Z_{ps} = \frac{V_p}{I_p}$$

Z_{sp} is defined as the leakage impedance between secondary and primary winding measured in ohms on the secondary winding with the primary winding short circuited. The value of Z_{sp} is given by the following:

$$Z_{sp} = \frac{V_s}{I_s}$$

5.4.4 Summary

The voltage, current, and impedance equations for the transformer can be rewritten as follows:

$$\frac{V_p}{V_s} = \frac{I_s}{I_p} = \frac{N_p}{N_s} = N \quad \text{or}$$

$$V_p = \left(\frac{N_p}{N_s}\right)V_s \quad \text{and} \quad I_p = \left(\frac{N_s}{N_p}\right)I_s = \left(\frac{I}{N}\right)I_s$$

$$Z_{ps} = \frac{NV_s}{(1/N)I_s} = N^2\left(\frac{V_s}{I_s}\right) = N^2 Z_{sp}$$

conversely,

$$Z_{sp} = \left(\frac{1}{N^2}\right)Z_{ps}$$

Generally, for power transformers the impedance is specified in a percentage rather than actual ohms. The percentage of impedance of a transformer can be expressed as

$$Z_{ps}\% = \left(\frac{I_{rated} \times Z_{ps}}{V_{p\,rated}}\right) \times 100$$
$$= (\text{voltage drop at rated voltage/rated voltage}) \times 100$$

The percentage of impedance can be expressed independently of the terminal voltages and is based on the kVA rating of the transformer. The equivalent circuit diagram of a transformer on a percentage basis is shown in Figure 5.7.

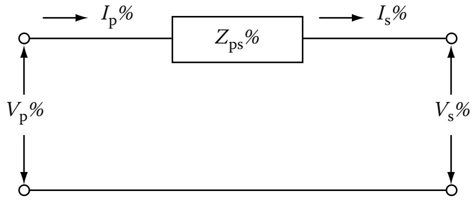


FIGURE 5.7
Percentage equivalent circuit of transformer.

5.5 Transformer Polarity, Terminal Markings, and Connections

5.5.1 Single-Phase Transformers

Primary and secondary terminals of a single-phase transformer have the same polarity when the current enters the primary terminal and at the same time leaves the secondary terminal. Transformers are constructed with subtractive and additive polarities.

5.5.1.1 Subtractive Polarity

When the high-side lead, H_1 and low-side lead, X_1, are brought out on the same side of the transformer, the polarity is said to be subtractive, as shown in Figure 5.8a. If leads H_1 and X_1 are connected and the high side is energized with a given voltage, the resulting voltage, which appears across the H_2 and X_2 leads, will be less than the applied voltage (see Figure 5.8b). This is due to the fact that in this series connection the low-voltage winding opposes

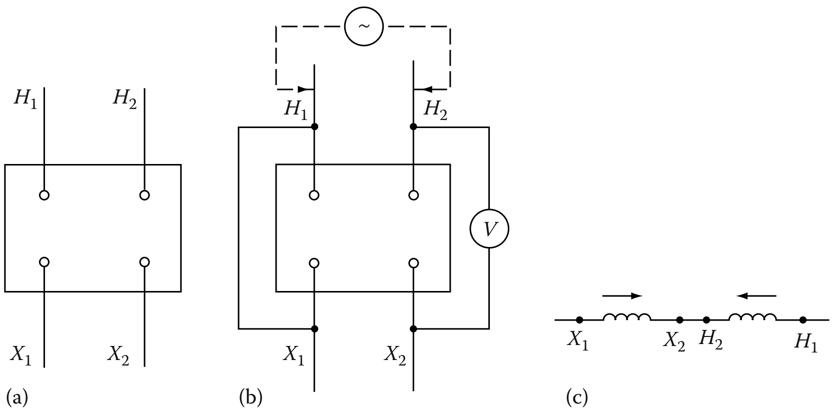


FIGURE 5.8
(a) Subtractive polarity of single-phase transformer, (b) connection for polarity test, and (c) resultant voltage across H_1 and X_1.

the high-voltage (HV) winding, and thus the low voltage is subtracted from the HV (see Figure 5.8c).

5.5.1.2 *Additive Polarity*

When the high-side lead, H_1, and low-side lead, X_2, are brought out on the same side of the transformer, the polarity is said to be additive. If the leads H_1 and X_2 are connected and a given voltage is applied to the high side, the resultant voltage across the H_2 and X_1 leads is the sum of the high- and low-voltage windings. Additive polarity is shown in Figure 5.9.

In general, polarity is not indicative of a higher or lower arrangement of potential stresses within a transformer or arrangement of windings. Both subtractive and additive polarities are found in transformers. Additive polarity is more prevalent in distribution-type transformers and subtractive polarity in power transformers.

The connections of single-phase distribution transformers usually have their windings divided into two or more sections. When the two secondary windings are connected in parallel, their currents add, and if the two windings are connected in series, their voltages add. The connection output is the same in both cases: for example, for series connection each secondary winding rated at 115 V and 100 A, therefore the output is equal to 230 × 100 = 23,000 VA or 23 kVA; and for parallel connection it is equal to 115 × 200 = 23,000 VA or 23 kVA. These connections are shown in Figure 5.10.

5.5.2 Three-Phase Transformers

The polarity of three-phase transformers is fixed by the connections between phases, as well as by the relative locations of leads, and can be designated by a sketch showing lead markings and a vector diagram showing the electrical

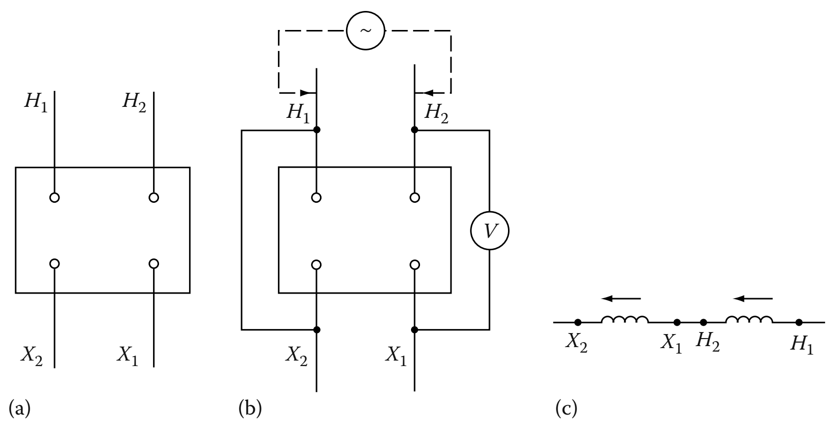


FIGURE 5.9
(a) Additive polarity of single-phase transformer, (b) connection for polarity test, and (c) resultant voltage across H_1 and X_2.

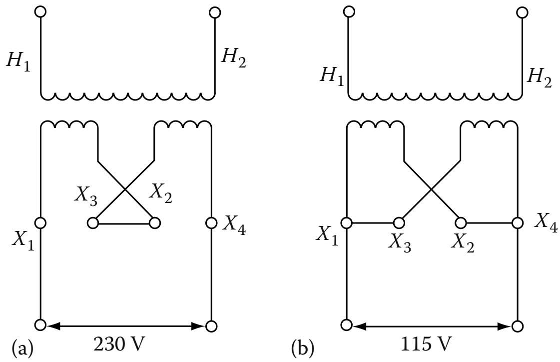


FIGURE 5.10
Single-phase transformer connections: (a) series connections and (b) parallel connections.

angular shift between terminals. The basic three-phase transformer configurations are as follows:

Delta–delta
Wye–wye (star–star)
Delta–wye (star)
Wye (star)–delta

These connections are shown in Figure 5.11. The standard angular displacement between reference phases of a delta–delta bank or a star–star bank is 0°. The standard angular displacement between reference phases of a star–delta or a delta–star bank is 30°. The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard C57.12 stipulates that for such three-phase banks the HV reference phase angle is 30° ahead of the reference low voltage, regardless of whether the bank connections are star–delta or delta–star.

The lead marking of three-phase transformers has been standardized by ANSI and NEMA for the purpose of paralleling operation. The HV lead H_1 is brought out on the right side when facing the HV side of the transformer case. The remaining HV side leads H_2 and H_3 are brought out and numbered in sequence from right to left. The low-voltage side lead, X_1 is brought out on the left side facing the low side of the transformer case. The remaining low-voltage side leads, X_2 and X_3, are numbered in sequence from left to right. This is shown in Figure 5.12.

The four basic three-phase transformer configurations can be accomplished by connecting three single-phase transformers or by connecting three-phase windings within one tank. All the configurations provide symmetrical connections. The relationship between each phase for high- and low-side voltage is 120°, as shown in the vector diagrams of Figure 5.13a and b. There are many other connections that give different phase displacement, and the reader is urged to review a text on transformer connections.

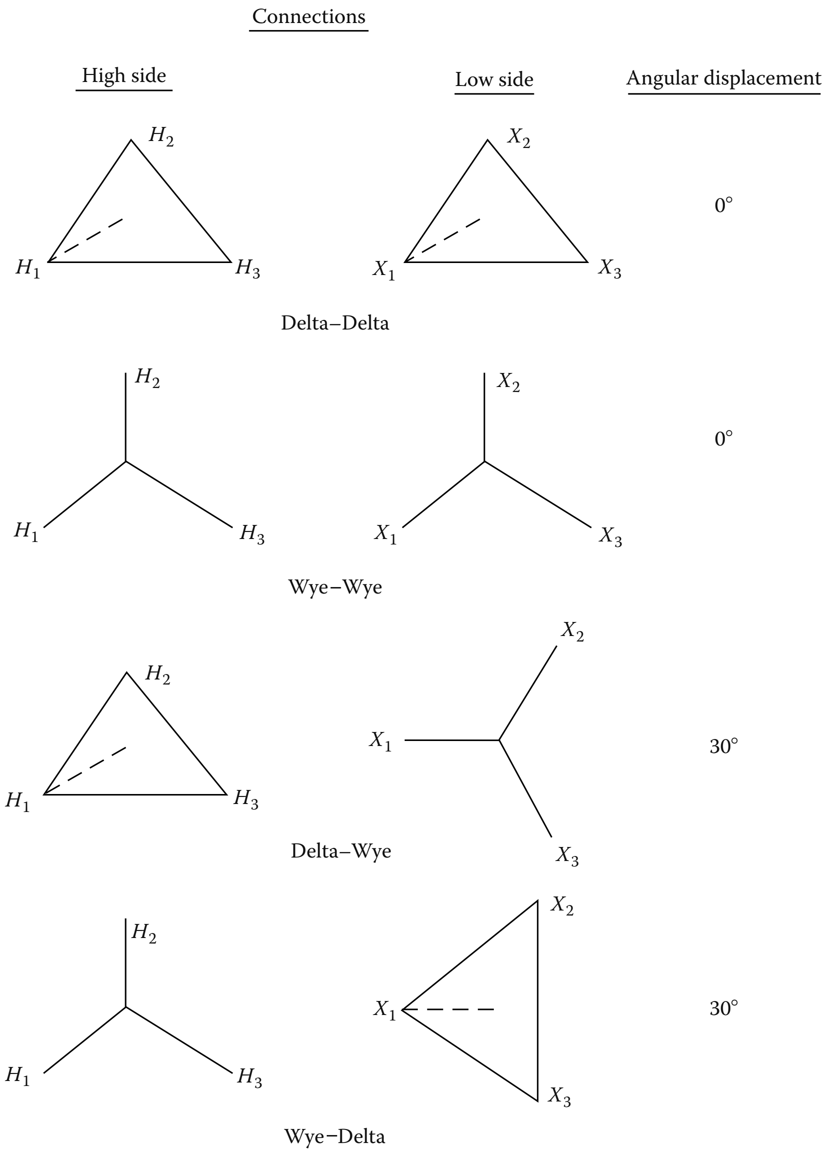


FIGURE 5.11
Three-phase connection and angular displacement.

For parallel operation of single- or three-phase transformers, it is essential that certain conditions be maintained. For example, when placing single-phase transformers in parallel, it is important to have the same voltage ratios and impedances. Similarly, the like polarities of each transformer must be connected together when placing single-phase transformers in parallel. One should be very careful in paralleling transformers, because many problems

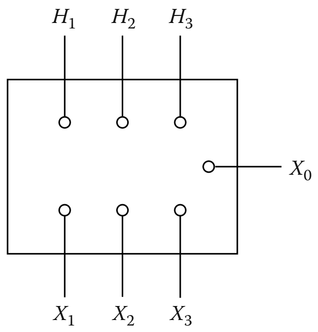


FIGURE 5.12
Three-phase transformer terminal marking.

can arise if proper consideration is not given to the transformer connections and characteristics. Some of the problems in paralleling transformers that require careful analysis are the following:

Paralleling transformers having different winding connections

Transformers with different impedances or turns ratio or different primary voltages

Transformers of different polarity and phase displacement

The reader is urged to consult a transformer text before paralleling transformers.

5.6 Transformer Characteristics

Most transformers used in industrial and commercial facilities range from 500 to 2500 kVA and are three-phase, liquid-filled or dry type located indoors.

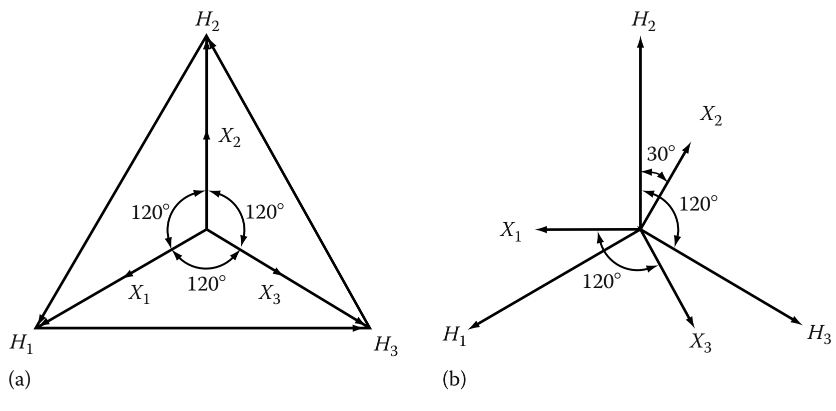


FIGURE 5.13
Phasor relationship of high- and low-side voltages: (a) delta–delta or wye–wye connection; (b) delta–wye or wye–delta connection.

These transformers are part of secondary unit substations supplying service to load centers. Transformers used for the distribution of power in plants and buildings have similar characteristics, which have been standardized as follows:

kVA rating: The rating must be adequate to carry the connected load.

Voltage ratings: The voltage rating provides the primary and secondary voltage to transform electrical energy from primary voltage to secondary voltage. This rating is associated with the winding turns ratios of the primary and secondary windings. Some examples of standard voltage ratings for power transformers are shown in Table 5.1.

Cooling: The type of cooling determines the method of medium used to dissipate heat generated in the transformer. Transformer kVA rating is specified based upon the temperature rise allowed for a given transformer.

TABLE 5.1

Three-Phase Transformer Standard Voltage Ratings

High-Side Voltage	Low-Side Voltage	
Secondary substation		
15 kV class insulation	600 V class insulation	
13,800	600	
13,200	480	
12,000	480Y/277	
7,200	240	
6,900	208Y/120	
5 kV class insulation		
4,800		
4,160		
2,400		
Primary substations		
69 kV class insulation	15 kV class insulation	5 kV class insulation
67,000	14,400	4800
	13,800	4360
46 kV class insulation	13,200	4160
43,800	13,090	2520
	12,600	2400
	12,470	
34.5 kV class insulation	12,000	
34,400	8,720	
26,400	8,320	
	7,560	
	7,200	
25 kV insulation	6,900	
22,900	5,040	

TABLE 5.2

NEMA Standard Impedance Values for Transformers

Transformers 500 kVA and above		
HV Ratings	**Low Voltage Rated at 2400 V or Higher (%)**	**Low Voltage Rated at 480 or 208 V (%)**
2.4–22.9	5.5	5.75
Up to 34.4	6.0	6.25
Up to 69	7.0	6.75
Transformers below 500 kVa		
112.5 through 225 kVA: not less than 2%		
300 through 500 kVA: not less than 4.5%		

Insulation class: The insulation class of a transformer is based upon the nominal voltage levels at which the system voltages and currents are transformed. For example, the ANSI standard C57.12 secondary and primary substation voltage ratings are listed in Table 5.1 for the various insulation-class levels.

Impedance level: The impedance of a transformer can be expressed as an impedance drop expressed in percent. This is equal to impedance drop voltage expressed as a percentage of rated terminal voltage. For most power transformers, the impedance can be considered equal to the reactance since the resistance component is very small. The NEMA has standardized the impedance values for transformers that are built in accordance with NEMA standards, which are shown in Table 5.2.

Short-circuit conditions: The ANSI standard C57.12 defines the short-circuit withstand capability of a transformer as the ability to withstand without-injury short circuits on any external terminals, with rated line voltages maintained on all terminals intended for connection to sources of power. The duration and values of short circuit are limited by ANSI as follows:

Symmetrical Current	Time (s)
25 rated current	2
20 rated current	3
16.6 rated current	4
14.3 rated current	5

Voltage taps: Many power transformers for industrial applications are equipped with voltage ratio tap changers. The tap changer is used to maintain a constant secondary voltage with variable primary voltage or to control the secondary voltage with a fixed primary voltage. Usually, most transformers will have two 5% taps or four 2.5% taps on the HV side for adjustment to maintain constant secondary voltage.

Sound level: All transformers hum and create noise when they are energized. This noise is generated by vibrations in the laminated core, and the

Audible Sound Levels for Liquid-Immersed Distribution Transformers and Network Transformers

kVA (15 k and Below)	Average Sound Level (dB)
0–50	48
51–100	51
101–300	55
301–500	56
750	57
1000	58
1500	60
2000	61
2500	62

Source: NEMA TR1-2000.

noise frequency is double the fundamental frequency. The noise level of transformers should be considered during installation in order not to exceed Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. Typical ratings for distribution transformers are listed as follows:

Basic impulse insulation level (BIL): BIL is the crest value of the impulse voltage that the transformer is required to withstand without failure. The transformer BIL impulse duration is 1.2×50 μs. That is, the impulse reaches its peak value in 1.2 μs and then decays to 50% of its peak value in 50 μs. In addition to full BIL value, transformers are tested for chopped-wave withstand (115% of BIL) and front-of-the-wave withstand (160% of BIL). These tests are intended to simulate conditions that can occur when transformers are subjected to lightning surges.

5.7 Preventive Maintenance of Transformers

The objective of this section is to outline the recommended work practices that are usually performed for preventive maintenance of transformers. The recommended procedures specified in this chapter do not pertain to the major overhaul and repair of a transformer. However, many tasks performed during routine maintenance and major overhaul of a transformer may be the same. The maintenance practices discussed in this section are applicable to a transformer that has not reached an advanced stage of deterioration. Moreover, these recommendations are written for the average conditions under which the transformer is required to perform and operate. It is further implied that all personnel associated with the maintenance are suitably trained and have experience in the maintenance of transformers.

The recommended practices offered in this section are similar to those that manufacturers recommend for their equipment. If detailed instructions are required, the reader should consult the instructions manual of the manufacturer. The preventative maintenance of transformer involves routine inspection, adjustment, testing, minor repairs, and special handling instructions. In addition, the trouble-free operation of the equipment over its life is dependent upon proper installation, operation, and maintenance, which are discussed in Section 5.7.1.

5.7.1 Transformer Installation, Acceptance, and Maintenance

The successful operation of transformers is dependent on proper installation, loading, and maintenance, as well as on proper design and manufacture. As is with all electrical apparatus, neglecting of certain fundamental requirements may lead to serious troubles, if not to the loss of the equipment. The objective of transformer maintenance philosophy can be described as follows:

5.7.1.1 Unscheduled Maintenance

This philosophy is based on reactionary mode of operation. That is to say, maintain the equipment when it breaks down, otherwise leave it alone.

5.7.1.2 Ordinary Maintenance

This philosophy subscribes to making irregular visual inspection and making repairs, adjustments, and replacements as necessary.

5.7.1.3 Protective Maintenance

This philosophy consists of performing preventive maintenance, predictive maintenance, and corrective maintenance. The preventive maintenance involves schedule maintenance and testing on a regular basis. Predictive maintenance involves additional monitoring and testing, where as corrective maintenance involves repairing and restoring transformer integrity to its original condition when degraded conditions are discovered.

The objective of the protective maintenance of transformers is to control and prevent severe oil and winding (paper) insulation deterioration. Mineral oil and paper insulation of the winding are affected by moisture, oxygen, heat, and other catalytic agents such as copper, iron, electric stress, and so on. The end result is that oxidation takes place in the oil which leads to sludging of the transformer. In sealed units ingress of moisture via atmosphere or seal leaks must be prevented. Moisture will reduce the dielectric strength of both the oil and the winding insulation systems. In addition, excessive heating of the transformer will cause the paper (winding insulation) to decompose (accelerate aging) which in-turn produces moisture (i.e., break up of cellulose fibres results in freeing hydrogen and oxygen atoms which combine to form H_2O). Increased moisture formed in the paper not only reduces the insulating strength of the paper but also, as temperature rises, the moisture will migrate from the paper insulation to the oil and decreasing its dielectric strength.

The first step is to build transformer designs to keep moisture and oxygen out of transformers. The next step is to operate transformers so that they are not operated beyond their temperature ratings and limits. In addition to the above, the severity of deterioration should be controlled by monitoring and testing transformer insulation systems on periodic basis, and take corrective actions to restore transformer to its original condition. This philosophy can be summarized by the following:

1. Control transformer heat
2. Inspect and maintain transformer auxiliary devices
3. Test and maintain transformer insulation systems
4. Maintain transformer bushing insulation
5. Maintain transformer protective coating

These topics are discussed next under installation, maintenance, and testing of transformers. The transformers are divided into dry and liquid types for the purposes of this chapter.

5.7.2 Dry-Type Transformers

5.7.2.1 Installation

Factors that should be kept clearly in mind in locating dry-type transformers are accessibility, ventilation, and atmospheric conditions. Ventilated dry-type transformers (Figure 5.14) normally are designed for application indoors in dry locations. They will operate successfully where the humidity may be high, but under this condition it may be necessary to take precautions to keep them dry if they are shut down for appreciable periods. Locations where there is dripping water should be avoided. If this is not possible, suitable protection should be provided to prevent water from entering the transformer case. Precautions should be taken to guard against accidental entrance of water, such as might occur from an open window, by a break in a water or steam line, or from use of water near the transformers. Adequate ventilation is essential for the proper cooling of transformers. Clean, dry air is desirable. Filtered air may reduce maintenance if the location presents a particular problem. When transformers are installed in vaults or other restricted spaces, sufficient ventilation should be provided to hold the air temperature within established limits when measured near the transformer inlets. This usually will require a minimum of 100 ft^3 of air per minute per kilowatt (kW) of transformer loss. The area of ventilating openings required depends on the height of vault. The location of openings, and the maximum loads to be carried by the transformers. For self-cooled transformers, the required effective area should be at least

FIGURE 5.14
A 150 kVA ventilated dry-type general purpose transformer with front cover removed to show core-coil assembly.

1 ft for each inlet and outlet per 100 kVA of rated transformer capacity, after deduction of the area occupied by screens, gratings, or louvers.

Ventilated dry-type transformers should be installed in locations free from unusual dust-producing mediums or chemical fumes. Transformers above 75 kVA should be located at least 12 in. from walls or other obstructions that might prevent free circulation of air through and around each unit. The distance between adjacent transformers should not be less than this value. Smaller transformers can be mounted directly on the wall but should still be mounted at least 12 in. apart. Also, accessibility for maintenance should be taken into account in locating a transformer. If the transformer is to be located near combustible materials, the minimum separations established by the National Electrical Code (NEC) should be maintained.

The transformer case is designed to prevent the entrance of most small animals and foreign objects. However, in some locations it may be necessary to give consideration to additional protection. In general, a flat, level industrial floor is adequate and no special preparation is necessary because of the base construction used on these transformers, which completely eliminates the complicated process of grouting sills into concrete floors. If noise is a factor in the location and operation of any transformer, special consideration should be given to the installation of the equipment.

The impulse strength of these transformers is less than that of liquid immersed units of the same voltage class. If there is any likelihood that transformers will be exposed to lightning or severe switching surges, adequate protective equipment should be provided.

Transformers of standard temperature rise are designed to operate at altitudes up to and including 3300 ft. Dry-type transformers are dependent upon air for dissipation of their heat losses; consequently, the effect of decreased air density due to high altitude will increase the transformer temperature. Standard transformers can be used at altitudes greater than 3300 ft if the load to be carried is reduced below nameplate rating as follows:

If the transformer is dry type, self-cooled, class AA, reduce the nameplate rating by 0.3% for each 330 ft above the altitude of 3300 ft.

If the transformer is dry type, forced air cooled, class AA/FA, reduce the nameplate rating by 0.5% for each 330 ft above the altitude of 3300 ft.

If the maximum 24 h average temperature of the cooling air is reduced below design levels, the altitude limitation of 3300 ft can be safely exceeded without reducing the nameplate rating of the transformer within the limitations of Table 5.3.

5.7.2.2 Inspection

New transformers should be inspected for damage during shipment when received. Examination should be made before removing from cars or trucks, and if any injury is evident or any indication of rough handling is visible, a claim should be filed with the carrier at once and the manufacturer should be notified.

Subsequently, covers or panels should be removed and an internal inspection made for injury or displacement of parts, loose or broken connections, cracked porcelain, dirt or foreign material, and for the presence of free water or moisture. Corrective measures should be taken where necessary. Shipping braces should be removed if provided. After a transformer is moved, or if it is stored before installation, this inspection should be repeated before placing the transformer in service.

TABLE 5.3

Maximum 24 h Average Temperature of Cooling Air (°C)

Type of Apparatus	Altitude			
	3300 ft (1000 m)	**6600 ft (2000 m)**	**9900 ft (3000 m)**	**13,200 ft (4000 m)**
Dry-type, class AA				
80°C rise				
115°C rise	30	26	22	18
150°C rise	30	24	18	12
	30	22	15	7
Dry-type, class AA/FA				
80°C rise	30	22	14	6
115°C rise	30	18	7	–5
150°C rise	30	15	0	–15

After making all the necessary primary and secondary connections, the transformer should be thoroughly inspected. Before placing in service, the operation of fans, motors, thermal relays, and other auxiliary devices should be checked. All bolted connections that may have loosened in shipment must be tightened before energizing. The case and core assembly of these transformers should be permanently and adequately grounded.

5.7.2.3 Acceptance Tests

After the transformer has been installed, the following tests should be conducted for acceptance:

Insulation resistance (IR) test: The IR test is of value for future comparative purposes and also for determining the suitability of the transformer of energizing or application of the high-potential (hi-pot) test. The IR test must be successfully completed for factory warranty to be valid. The IR test must be conducted immediately prior to energizing the transformer or beginning the high potential test.

These values, corrected to factory test temperature of 20°C, must be either 1000 MΩ or equal to or greater than the values shown in the Table 5.4, or a minimum of one half or more of factory test values. If the corrected test values at 20°C are less than the minimum of the values discussed above, then the transformer insulation condition is questionable. In the absence of reliable previous test data, the following formula may be used for single-phase transformers, or single winding of a three-phase transformer for calculating the IR values.

$$\mathrm{IR} = \frac{CE}{\sqrt{\mathrm{kVA}}}$$

TABLE 5.4

Dry-Type Transformer IR Values

Transformer Coil Rating Type (V)	Minimum DC Test Voltage	Minimum IR (MΩ) Dry-Type Transformer
0–600	1000	500
601–5000	2500	5,000
Greater than 5000	5000	25,000

Source: From NETA Maintenance Testing Specification, Table 100-5, 2005. (Courtesy of National Electrical Testing Association.)

Note: In the absence of consensus standards, the NETA Standards Review Council suggests the above representative values. See Table 2.1 in Chapter 2 for temperature correction factors.

where

IR is the minimum 1 min 500 V DC IR in MΩ from winding to ground, with other winding or windings guarded, or winding to winding with core guarded

$C = 30$ at 20°C measurements ($C = 16$ for tests of winding with other winding or windings grounded)

E is the voltage rating of winding under test

kVA is the rated capacity of winding under test

If the transformer under test is of the three-phase type, and all three individual windings are being tested as one, then:

E is the voltage rating of one of the single-phase windings (phase-to-phase for delta-connected units and phase-to-neutral for star-connected units

kVA is the rated capacity of the three-phase winding under test

Polarization index (PI) test: This is an extension of the IR test. In this test, the two IR measurements are taken, the first reading at 1 min and the second reading at 10 min. Then the ratio of the 10 min reading to 1 min reading is calculated to give the PI dielectric absorption value. A PI of winding-to-winding and winding-to-ground should be determined. A PI below 2 is indicative of insulation deterioration and cause for further investigation.

AC hi-pot (dielectric) test: The dielectric test imposes a stress on the insulation since the dielectric test voltage is higher than the normal operating voltage. The IR test must be successfully completed immediately before performing the dielectric test to prevent the possibility of transformer failure due to moisture. The dielectric test supplements the IR tests by determining the suitability of the transformer for operation at rated voltage. Field test voltages should not exceed 75% of factory test values. The hi-pot test set must be variable to allow a gradual increase of test voltage from zero and a gradual decrease after the test is completed. These test values are shown in Table 5.5.

Transformer turns ratio (TTR) test: The TTR test is used to determine the turns ratio of the transformer. It measures the number of turns of the primary winding with respect to the number of turns in secondary winding. The accepted values of the TTR test shall be not greater than 0.5% as compared with calculated values.

Insulation power factor (PF) (dissipation factor) test: This test measures the watt loss in the insulation under test. Since it is an AC voltage test, it accurately indicates the wetness of the winding insulation and corona problems. This test can be conducted as PF tip-up test for dry type transformers to further distinguish between a moisture or carbonization problem (see Chapter 3).

TABLE 5.5

Dielectric Test Value for Acceptance and Periodic Maintenance of Dry-Type Transformers

Transformer, Winding Rated, AC Voltage (kV)	Factory Test, AC Voltage (kV)	Acceptance Field Test, AC Voltage (75%) (kV)	Maintenance Periodic Test, AC Voltage (65%) (kV)
1.2 and below	4	3.0	2.6
2.4	10	7.5	6.5
4.16	12	9.0	7.8
4.8	12	9.0	7.8
6.9	19	14.25	12.35
7.2	19	14.25	12.35
8.32	19	14.25	12.35
12.0	31	23.25	20.15
12.47	31	23.25	20.15
13.2	31	23.25	20.15
13.8	31	23.25	20.15

5.7.2.4 Maintenance

Like other electric equipment, these transformers require maintenance from time to time to assure successful operation. Inspection should be made at regular intervals and corrective measures taken when necessary to assure the most satisfactory service from this equipment. The frequency of inspection depends on operating conditions. For clean, dry locations, an inspection annually, or after a longer period, may be sufficient. However, for other locations, such as may be encountered where the air is contaminated with dust or chemical fumes, an inspection at 3 or 6 month intervals may be required. Usually, after the first few inspection periods, a definite schedule can be set up based on the existing conditions.

With the transformer de-energized, covers over openings in the case should be removed. Inspections should be made for dirt, especially accumulations in insulating surfaces or those which tend to restrict air flow, for loose connections, for the condition of tap changers or terminal boards, and for the general condition of the transformer. Observation should be made for signs of overheating and of voltage creepage over insulating surfaces, as evidenced by tracking or carbonization. Evidence of rusting, corrosion, and deterioration of the paint should be checked and corrective measures taken where necessary. Fans, motors, and other auxiliary devices should be inspected and serviced.

Cleaning: If excessive accumulations of dirt are found on the transformer windings or insulators when the transformer is inspected, the dirt should be removed to permit free circulation of air and to guard against the possibility of insulation breakdowns. Particular attention should be given to cleaning top and bottom ends of winding assemblies and to cleaning out ventilating ducts.

The windings may be cleaned with a vacuum cleaner, blower, or with compressed air. The use of a vacuum cleaner is preferred as the first step in cleaning, followed by the use of compressed air or nitrogen. The compressed air or nitrogen should be clean and dry and should be applied at a relatively low pressure (not over 25 psi). Lead supports, tap changers and terminal boards, bushings, and other major insulating surfaces should be brushed or wiped with a dry cloth. The use of liquid cleaners is undesirable because some of them have a solvent or deteriorating effect on most insulating materials.

Testing for routine maintenance: Following are the tests that are required for routine maintenance of dry-type transformers.

- IR test of winding-to-winding and winding-to-ground. This test is similar to the test listed under installation and acceptance.
- Dielectric absorption test should be made winding-to-winding and winding-to-ground for 10 min. The PI should be above 2.0 for acceptable limits.
- Turns ratio test (TTR) should be conducted similarly to that under acceptance.
- AC overpotential test should be made on all high- and low-voltage windings-to-ground. This is an optional test for routine maintenance testing. The recommended values of test voltage are shown in Table 5.4.
- Insulation PF test can be conducted for each winding-to-ground and winding-to-winding. The acceptable value is less than 3%.

5.7.2.5 Drying-Out Methods

For the purpose of drying out, transformers can be considered as consisting of core and coil assembly. When it is necessary to dry out a transformer before installation or after an extended shutdown under relatively high humidity conditions, one of the following methods may be used.

- External heat
- Internal heat
- External and internal heat

Before applying any of these methods, free moisture should be blown or wiped off the windings to reduce the time of the drying period.

Drying by external heat: External heat may be applied to the transformer by one of the following methods:

By directing heated air into the bottom air inlets of the transformer case

By placing the core and coil assembly in a nonflammable box with openings at the top and bottom through which heated air can be circulated

By placing the core and coil assembly in a suitably ventilated oven

By placing incandescent lamps in the transformer enclosure

It is important that most of the heated air be blown through the winding ducts and not around the sides. Good ventilation is essential in order that condensation will not take place in the transformer itself or inside the case. A sufficient quantity of air should be used to assure approximately equal inlet and outlet temperatures.

When using either of the first two external heating methods, heat may be obtained by the use of resistance grids or space heaters. These may either be located inside the case or box or may be placed outside and the heat blown into the bottom of the case or box. The core or coil assembly should be carefully protected against direct radiation from the heaters. It is recommended that the air temperature should not exceed 110°C.

Drying by internal heat: This method is relatively slow and should not be used if one of the other two methods is available. The transformer should be located to allow free circulation of air through the coils from the bottom to the top of the case. One winding should be short circuited, and sufficient voltage at normal frequency should be applied to the other winding to circulate approximately normal current.

It is recommended that the winding temperature not be allowed to exceed 100°C, as measured by resistance or by thermometers placed in the ducts between the windings. The thermometers should be of the spirit type, because mercury thermometers give erroneous readings due to the generation of heat in the mercury as a result of induced eddy currents. The end terminals of the windings (and not the taps) must be used in order to circulate current through the entire winding. Proper precautions should be taken to protect the operator from dangerous voltages.

Drying by external and internal heat: This is a combination of the two methods previously described and is by far the quickest method. The transformer core and coil assembly should be placed in a nonflammable box, or kept in its own case if suitable; external heat is applied as described in the first method, and current is circulated through the windings as described in the second method. The current required will be considerably less than when no external heating is used but should be sufficient to produce the desired temperature of the windings. It is recommended that the temperatures attained do not exceed those stated in previous two methods. Drying time depends on the condition of the transformer, size, voltage, amount of moisture absorbed, and the method of drying used.

The measurement of IR is of value in determining the status of drying. Measurements should be taken before starting the drying process and at 2 h intervals during drying. The initial value, if taken at ordinary temperatures, may be high even though the insulation may not be dry. Because IR varies inversely with temperature, the transformer temperature should be kept approximately constant during the drying period to obtain comparative readings. As the transformer is heated, the presence of moisture will be evident by the rapid drop in resistance measurement. Following this period the IR will generally increase gradually until near the end of the drying period, when it will increase more rapidly. Sometimes it will rise and fall through a short range before steadying, because moisture in the interior of the insulation is working out through the initially dried portions. A curve with time as abscissa and resistance as ordinate should be plotted and the run should be continued until the resistance levels off and remains relatively constant for 3 to 4 h.

IR measurements should be taken for each winding-to-ground, with all windings grounded except the one being tested. Before taking IR measurements, the current should be interrupted and the winding should be short circuited and grounded for at least 1 min to drain off any static charge. All readings should be for the same time of application of test voltage, preferably 1 min.

Constant attendance during the drying process is desirable. It is advisable to have a suitable fire extinguisher convenient for use in the event of an emergency.

5.7.2.6 Storage

Ventilated dry-type transformers preferably should be stored in a warm dry location with uniform temperature. Ventilating openings should be covered to keep out dust. If it is necessary to leave a transformer outdoors, it should be thoroughly protected to prevent moisture and foreign material from entering. Condensation and the absorption of moisture can be prevented or greatly reduced by the immediate installation of space heaters or other small electric heaters. If more convenient, incandescent lamps may be substituted for the space heaters. For three-phase transformer rated at 750 kVA and below, use six 150 W lamps; above 750 kVA three phase, use six 300 W lamps or the equivalent. Two lamps should be located under each coil, one on each side of the core. Lamps or heaters should be kept 4–6 in. from transformer coils and should never be allowed to come in contact with transformer coil insulation.

5.7.3 Liquid-Type Transformer

The following guide covers general recommendations for installation and maintenance of liquid-filled transformers. Many factors listed for dry-type transformers are also applicable to liquid-filled transformers and will not be discussed further.

5.7.3.1 Installation

The transformer should be installed in accordance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Document 70, NEC Article 450. Because of the ban on askarel for use as a transformer insulating fluid, liquids such as silicone, RTemp, and others are being used. These new liquids have a fire point of not less than 300°C and the NEC has classified these fluids as less flammable. The oil filled transformers, if installed indoor have to be installed in a fireproof vault in accordance with NEC Article 450. Therefore, they are usually installed outdoors with an oil pit (oil containment enclosure) filled with gravel or stones to contain the oil in case of spill. The gravel and stones serve the purpose of inhibiting the oil from pooling in case of fire (see Figure 5.15). It is very important that local and NEC regulations be followed when installing transformers filled with these fluids.

One factor of importance for transformer installation is ventilation. Adequate ventilation should be provided in transformer rooms and vaults to carry transformer heat away. Self-cooled transformers should have adequate (2 to 3 ft) space between each unit to provide free air movement. The ventilation should be dust-free, dry, and noncorrosive, and should not contain any detrimental contaminants. As with dry-type transformers, precautions should be taken to prevent leakage of water into transformer rooms. The tank of the transformer should be permanently grounded by means of 4/0 cable or larger to the substation grounding bus. The transformer should be protected against lightning and other overvoltage conditions by proper lightning arresters.

FIGURE 5.15
A three-phase oil filled power transformer.

5.7.3.2 Inspection

New transformers should be inspected when received for damage during transit. Examination should be made before unloading from the shipping carrier for indication of rough handling and injury to the transformer. After the transformer is removed from the truck or railcar, an internal inspection should be made for displacement of parts, broken or loose connections, dirt or foreign material, and the presence of water or moisture. If oil or transformer fluid was installed at the factory, check the transformer for leaks. Also check for positive gas pressure if the transformer is equipped with an inert gas. Inspection should include the examination of the transformer case, bushings, anchor and tie rods, grounding straps, drains, covers, valves, and other accessories shipped with the transformer. If internal inspection of the transformer tank is to be conducted, make sure there is enough ventilation in the transformer tank before entering the tank. It is essential that there be at least 16% oxygen content before entering the transformer tank. The inspection port cover should not be opened under wet conditions. It is good practice not to expose the transformer liquid to the atmosphere if the relative humidity is above 65%.

5.7.3.3 Acceptance Tests

Before a transformer is energized, it should be given the following tests for acceptance.

IR test: The IR test is valuable for determining if the transformer is in good condition and also to establish a benchmark for future comparative tests. The IR values measured are a function of temperature, whether the coils are immersed in the transformer liquid or not, or whether the windings are cold or hot. The measured values should be corrected to 20°C by multiplying them by correction factors given in Table 2.1 of Chapter 2. The method of measuring IR is by a megohmmeter, commonly called Megger, which indicates the IR directly in million of ohms (or megohms). A Megger having a minimum voltage range of Table 5.6 is recommended for the various voltage-rated transformers. In the absence of consensus standards on what constitutes a good IR value, the Nation Electrical Testing Association (NETA) suggests the values of Table 5.6 be used for acceptance and maintenance testing of transformers.

The measured IR values should be compared to factory test values if available for purposes of evaluating the results. It is advisable to watch for the trend to asses whether the measured values remain stable or are heading downward. Although the measured values may be above the minimum value, a downward trend over a period of time may indicate changes which justify further investigation. In the absence of reliable previous test data, the following formula may be used for single-phase transformers, or single transformer winding of three-phase transformer

TABLE 5.6

Liquid-Filled Transformer IR Values

		Minimum IR (MΩ)
Transformer Coil Rating Type (V)	**Minimum DC Test Voltage**	**Liquid-Filled Transformer**
0–600	1000	100
601–5000	2500	1000
Greater than 5000	5000	5000

Source: From NETA Maintenance Testing Specification, Table 100-5, 2005. (Courtesy of National Electrical Testing Association.)

Note: In the absence of consensus standards, the NETA Standards Review Council suggests the above representative values. See Table 2.1 in Chapter 2 for temperature correction factors.

$$\mathrm{IR} = \frac{CE}{\sqrt{\mathrm{kVA}}}$$

where

IR is the minimum 1 min 500 V DC IR in megohms from winding-to-ground, with other winding or windings guarded, or winding-to-winding with core guarded

$C = 30$ at 20°C measurements ($C = 0.8$ for tests of winding with other winding or windings grounded)

E is the voltage rating of winding under test

kVA is the rated capacity of winding under test

If the transformer under test is of the three-phase type, and all three individual windings are being tested as one, then:

E is the voltage rating of one of the single-phase windings (phase-to-phase for delta-connected units and phase-to-neutral for star-connected units

kVA is the rated capacity of the three phase winding under test

Insulating liquid dielectric test: The insulating liquid should be sampled in accordance with ASTM D-923 standard and tested for determination of its dielectric strength, acidity, moisture, interfacial tension, color, and PF. These tests are performed to ensure that the insulating liquid has not varied from its established levels or that the dielectric strength has not been lowered through accumulation of contaminants and deterioration. The samples for oil and Rtemp are taken from the bottom of the tank, where as the samples for askarel and silicone are taken from the top of the tank.

TTR: The TTR is performed to ensure that the turns ratio of the transformer is correct, that is, none of the transformer windings are shorted out. Basically it compares the number of turns in winding 1 with the number of turns in winding 2. The test should be performed for each tap position for transformers equipped with tap changers. The TTR test can also verify the polarity of the transformer. The TTR test value for acceptance should not be greater than 0.5% as compared to calculated values (see Section 5.8.2).

Hi-pot test: The hi-pot test (also called the overpotential test) should be made on all high- and low-voltage windings of the transformer to ground. Either AC or DC voltage can be used. However, the accepted practice is to apply either an AC or DC hi-pot test to transformers up to 34 kV. For transformers above 34 kV, only the AC hi-pot test is used. For acceptance of the transformer, the AC hi-pot test can be applied at rated transformer voltage for 3 min. This is a go or no-go test. If the hi-pot voltage is held without any failure or malfunction of the transformer, the transformer is considered to have passed the test (see Section 5.8.1).

PF (dissipation factor) test: This test should be performed on important and/or large transformers. This test stresses the insulation in proportion to the stresses produced in normal service because it is an AC voltage test. The PF tests are discussed in great detail in Chapter 3 and the reader is urged to refer it (see Section 3.6.1).

Frequency response analysis (FRA): FRA is performed on large power transformers to assess mechanical properties of the windings and core. The purpose of the test is to detect changes in the physical characteristics of the transformer caused by through faults, shipment, repair, or other forces. A voltage signal is applied to the transformer terminals over a wide frequency range and the reflected response is measured. Various techniques for this test are currently being studied. Even so, FRA is beginning to gain wide acceptance in the industry. Refer to Section 5.8.5 for additional information on FRA.

5.7.3.4 Maintenance

The objective of transformer maintenance is to safeguard against breakdowns by detecting potential causes and eliminating them. Therefore, periodic transformer maintenance will ensure many years of trouble-free operation. The transformer is a very simple, rugged device and is often ignored and forgotten until transformer failure occurs. However, transformers are a vital link in the electrical distribution system and should be given proper care and attention. Transformer maintenance schedules should be determined according to the critical or noncritical nature of the transformer and the load that is connected to it. Large power transformers are obviously more important than small lighting and distribution transformers; thus they warrant more attention and care. Proper maintenance of the transformer should include routine inspection and repair, transformer liquid maintenance and testing, transformer winding insulation maintenance and testing, and any other special maintenance that is recommended by the manufacturer of the transformer. A power transformer maintenance and testing guide with recommended frequency is given in Table 5.7.

Routine inspection and repair: Routine inspection and repair of the transformer involve the visual observation of the operating conditions of the transformer and necessary repair. The frequency of these observations depends upon the critical importance of the transformer, the environmental

TABLE 5.7

Transformer Inspection and Maintenance Checklist

General inspection items	*Frequency*
Load current	Hourly or use recording meters
Voltage	Hourly or use recording meters
Liquid level	Hourly or use recording meters
Temperature	Hourly or use recording meters
Protective devices	Yearly
Protective alarms	Monthly
Ground connections	Every 6 months
Tap changer	Every 6 months
Lightning arresters	Every 6 months
Pressure-relief devices	Every 3 months
Breather	Monthly
Auxiliary equipment	Annually
External inspection	Every 6 months
Internal inspection	5 to 10 years
Insulating liquid	*Frequency*
Dielectric strength	Annually
Color	Annually
Neutralization number	Annually
Interfacial tension	Annually
PF test	Annually
Moisture content	Annually
Gas-analysis test	Annually
Solid insulation (winding)	*Frequency*
IR	Annually
PF	Annually
FRA	Annually
PI	Annually
Hi-pot (AC or DC)	Five years or more
Induced voltage	Five years or more
Polarization recovery voltage	Annually
DC winding resistance	Annually

conditions, and/or the operating conditions. Various organizations such as the NFPA, NETA, and manufacturers of transformers have published guides for interval of inspection and what to inspect. Following are typical schedules for conducting a routine inspection.

Load current: The transformer loading determines the heating of the transformer. The temperature of the transformer determines its life expectancy, and it is important on large units to monitor load on an hourly basis. For proper loading of transformers, refer to ANSI standard C57.92 for liquid-immersed transformers and ANSI C57.96 for dry-type transformers. For small power transformers, a reading can be taken on a daily or weekly basis.

Voltage: The voltage of the transformer should be monitored similarly to load current. To maintain rated secondary voltage, proper primary voltage would have to be applied. Voltage readings can be taken in conjunction with load current or recording voltmeters can be used. On transformers of lesser importance, voltage readings can be taken on a weekly basis.

Liquid level: Liquid level is important since it not only supplies the cooling medium but also insulates the windings. Liquid loss may occur due to the evaporation of the fluid or due to leakage. Liquid-level readings can be taken when load readings are being taken. Any liquid lost by the transformer should be replaced promptly.

Temperature: The load-carrying ability of the transformer is dependent upon its thermal capability. The total temperature of the transformer is the sum of the ambient temperature, winding insulation temperature, and hot-spot temperature. Normally, the average ambient is 30°C; the temperature rise above ambient for class A insulation is 55°C with a permissible hot-spot rise of an additional 15°C, which then gives a total temperature of 100°C. Any time the transformer is operated above its temperature rating, loss in transformer life can be expected. An 8°C rule or class A insulation and 12°C rule for class B insulation are quoted in the industry for determining the transformer life. In other words, if transformers with class A insulation are operated above their temperature ratings by 8°C, the transformer life can be expected to be cut in half; likewise, operating transformers with class B insulation 12°C above their temperature ratings will cut the transformer life in half. To monitor the temperature for large critical transformers, it is recommended that the following readings be taken on a daily basis.

Liquid temperature
Ambient air temperature
Water temperature (for water-cooled transformers)
Oil temperature (for forced oil-cooled transformers)

Protective devices: Basic transformer protection is covered by the NEC. This protection is supplemented with additional protective relays and devices.

It is important that protective devices are inspected and maintained on a regular basis to ensure that these devices will operate in case of transformer malfunction or failure. The following protective devices along with other protective devices not listed here should be inspected and maintained on an annual basis.

Overcurrent phase and ground relays
Differential relays
Sudden pressure relays
Under- and overvoltage relays
Alarm and auxiliary relays
Wiring and current-transformer associated with the protective relays

Protective alarms: Transformers come with various types of alarms, such as overtemperature, liquid temperature, and pressure-relief devices. These are usually open-type contacts that can be connected to either alarm or trip the circuit breaker. The alarm contact and associated wiring should be inspected on a monthly basis.

Ground connections: The transformer tank is always solidly grounded to eliminate electric shock per the NEC. The grounding straps for transformer tanks should be checked for loose, broken, or corroded connections. The ground resistance of the substation will depend upon the type and size of the substation. The ground resistance may vary from less than 1 Ω for large-sized substations to 25 Ω for very small-sized substations. The frequency of this inspection and test should be annual.

Lightning arrester: When transformers are supplied from overhead lines, lightning arresters are used to protect the transformer from lightning and other surges. Lightning arresters should be inspected for looseness, broken parts, dirt, and other deposits. All dirt and deposit should be cleaned, loose connections tightened, and broken parts replaced during this check. The inspection of the lightning arrestor and its grounding system should be done annually.

Pressure-relief device: Most sealed transformers are equipped with pressure-relief devices to relieve excessive pressure in the tank due to the internal arcing. This device is set to open at a pressure of 10–15 psi. Routine inspection of pressure-relief devices should include checking for leaks around joints, diaphragm cracking, and the like. This inspection should be done quarterly.

Breather: Many transformers have breathers of either the open type or dehydrating type. The function of the dehydrating agent is to prevent moisture from entering the transformer tank. Most dehydrating breathers contain silica gel, which will change from blue when dry to pale pink when wet. Inspection can be made through a glass window provided for the purpose. The breathers should be checked monthly and the dehydrating agent replaced or reconditioned if found restrictive or wet.

Auxiliary equipment: Auxiliary equipment required for cooling, such as fans. oil pumps, control devices, and wiring, should be checked on an annual basis. The equipment should be cleaned and damaged parts replaced.

External inspection: The transformer should be given an external inspection on a semiannual basis. The inspection should include checking the tank, radiators, auxiliary equipment, gasket leakage, and metal parts for corrosion. Also, the electrical connection should be checked for tightness and overheating. Transformer bushings should be checked for mechanical damage, cleanness, and leakage. Bushings should be wiped clean on a regular basis to minimize flashovers.

Internal inspection: This inspection involves the internal investigation of the tank and core. On liquid-filled transformers, the covers can be removed to examine for evidence of moisture or rust around the bushing supports and transformer top cover. To examine the tank and core, the liquid can be drained out. Examination of the core should be made to check for sludge deposits, loose connections, and any damage to the transformer parts. Evidence of carbon may indicate internal problems. The winding inspection should be checked for damage to terminal panels, barriers, loose connections, and overall connection of the winding. Obviously, such things as untanking the transformer for internal inspection would have to be judiciously made and would depend on the age of the transformer and its overloading and trouble history. The frequency of this inspection should be 5 to 10 years or more.

Transformer fluid: All transformer fluids are subject to deterioration, and the main contaminants are air, moisture, and heat. These contaminants react with transformer fluid and produce acids and sludge. The acid, in turn, attacks the winding insulation, and sludge deposits tend to decrease cooling. Moisture in the transformer fluid tends to lower the dielectric strength of the fluid, which combined with sludge, will lower the flashover value of insulators and terminal boards inside the transformer tank. As discussed earlier, regular inspection of the transformer is needed to maintain the fluid in a contaminant-free state. For proper maintenance of insulating fluids refer to Chapter 4.

5.7.3.5 Drying-Out Methods

Similar to dry-type transformers, the liquid insulating transformer can be considered as consisting of core and coil assembly, except that the assembly is immersed in an insulating fluid. Elaborate measures are taken to prevent and detect the infiltration and increase of moisture content in the transformer. Before the transformer liquid becomes saturated with water, the paper insulation of the winding in a transformer has already absorbed a concentration of moisture because of its great affinity for water. The water in the paper insulation accelerates the degradation of the insulation and lowers its electrical integrity.

We have discussed in the previous sections several tests to judge the dryness of the transformer, such as IR, PI, and PF. One simple method for detecting the water content in the transformer oil can be made by an approximate method known as the cloud test. It consists of cooling a test tube sample of oil in an ice bath. If a cloud appears in the test tube above 0°C, the transformer contains excessive moisture. Confirmation of the water content in the transformer can be made by a laboratory test.

The distribution of moisture in the transformer is always in a state of unequilibrium. Through the cooler range of temperatures, the solid insulation of the transformer winding will tend to absorb more moisture than the transformer liquid. However, as the transformer is loaded, the rise in winding temperature will release this moisture. This change due to varying loads and temperature is constant, regardless of whether there is an excess of water or only a very small quantity of moisture in the transformer. Also, transformer liquids such as oil tend to hold more water with an increase in temperature. In other words, there will be more moisture in the transformer oil when it is carrying a load than when it is unloaded. Other factors, such as decomposition of paper insulation and contaminants, will tend to generate more moisture in the transformer liquid. When it becomes necessary to dry out liquid transformers, the following methods can be used: (1) heat alone, or (2) heat followed by vacuum.

Heat alone: This method involves application of heat to the transformer alone. One form of heat application is oven drying, which can be done at any of the service shops of major manufacturers. When the transformer is oven dried in the service shop, it is important to monitor the winding resistance to see when the transformer, reaches oven temperature (100°C–120°C). PF and IR measurements should be made at about 6 h intervals to see when drying is achieved, that is, when at least four readings are of the same value.

Heat followed by vacuum: The heating of the transformer with liquid can be performed by applying short circuit to the transformer or by circulating hot oil by means of an external system. As in the previous method, PF and IR measurement should be made at about 6 h intervals. Completed drying is indicated by at least four readings that are the same. The field drying methods may involve heating the transformer liquid, removing the liquid, and immediately applying high vacuum. Another method may involve removing the liquid and heating the transformer by circulation of hot air. Once the winding reaches 90°C–100°C a high vacuum of about 0.5 Torr is applied. When the temperature drops below 50°C, drying is stopped. The normal length of time to apply heat and vacuum may be a week or more, depending on the size of the transformer. Once the transformer is dried and the vacuum pulled, clean transformer liquid can be introduced into the transformer. Precautions to observe during this process are as follows:

Before the vacuum is pulled, make sure the tank is braced for full vacuum

The air temperature for drying should not exceed 100°C

If new undried coils are used for replacement purposes, the coil clamps should be checked after drying is complete since shrinkage may occur during drying.

When drying is performed on an energized transformer, precautions should be taken to prevent formation of bubbles during the degassing phase. Otherwise, immediate failure may occur.

The transformer liquid level should be carefully watched because unintentional lowering of transformer liquid level may cause a transformer failure.

5.7.3.6 Storage

Transformers should be stored in a safe, dry, ventilated location with uniform temperature. In locations where no controls for uniform temperature exist, condensation and absorption of water can be minimized by installation of space heaters or incandescent lamps.

Because of new regulations on the use, disposal, and storage of askarel, transformers using askarel as an insulating liquid will require special storage facilities. The reader is urged to consult regulations put out by the EPA.

5.7.3.7 Transformer Diagnostic Guide

For troubleshooting purposes, a diagnostic guide and causes of transformer failures (Table 5.8) are provided. This information is by no means complete, and the reader is urged to check and test for the problem and its cause. Refer to Section 1.8.2 for failure modes of transformers. In general, the following conditions will cause the troubles indicated:

Overtemperature: Overtemperature can be caused by an overcurrent, overvoltage, insufficient cooling, low liquid level, sludge in the transformer liquid, high ambient, or short-circuited core. In dry-type transformers, this condition can be due to clogged ducts.

Winding insulation failure: This is an electrical fault in the transformer winding insulation where it can involve phase-to-ground, phase-to-phase, three-phase and/or ground, or turn-to-turn-type short circuit. The causes for this type of failure may be due to a short-circuit fault, lightning, overload or overcurrent condition, or transformer liquid containing moisture and contaminants.

Incorrect secondary voltage: This condition can be due to improper turns ratio, abnormal primary voltage, and/or shorted turns in the transformer.

Bushing failure: Bushing failure can be caused by flashover due to dirt accumulation and/or lightning strikes.

Internal arcing: Internal arcing can be caused by low liquid level exposing live parts of the transformer, loose connections, or failure of the transformer dielectric. Usually, internal arcing can become audible and cause radio interference.

Core failure: This condition is due to the failure of core laminations, core, bolts, clamps, and so on.

TABLE 5.8

Causes of Transformer Failures

Winding failures	*Terminal board failures*
Turn-to-turn failures	Loose connections
Surges	Leads (open)
Moisture	Links
External faults	Moisture
Overheating	Insufficient insulation
Open winding	Tracking
Deterioration	Short circuits
Improper blocking of turns	
Grounds	
Phase-to-phase faults	
Mechanical failures	
Tap changer failures	*Core failures*
Mechanical	Core insulation failures
Electrical	Ground strap broken
Contacts	Shorted laminations
Leads	Loose clamps, bolts, and wedges
Tracking	
Overheating	
Short circuits	
Oil leaks	
External faults	
Bushing failures	*Miscellaneous failures*
Aging	CTs failures
Contamination	Metal particles in oil
Cracking	Damage in shipment
Flashover due to animals	External faults
Flashover due to surges	Bushing flange grounding
Moisture	Poor tank weld
Low oil or fluid	Auxiliary system failures
	Overvoltage
	Overloads
	Other unknown problems

High exciting current: Usually, high exciting currents are due to short-circuited core and/or open core joints.

Low dielectric strength: This condition can be caused by condensation and penetration of moisture due to improper ventilation, broken relief diaphragm, leaks around transformer accessories, or cooling coil leakage.

Oxidation of oil: Oxidation usually results in the formation of acids and sludge in the transformer liquid. It is mainly due to exposure to air and high operating temperatures.

Pressure-relief diaphragm broken: This is due to an internal fault causing excessive internal pressures or the transformer liquid level being too high or excessive internal pressure due to loading of transformer.

Discoloration of transformer liquid: Discoloration is mainly caused by carbonization of the liquid due to switching, core failure, or contaminations.

Leakage of transformer liquid: Leakage can occur through screw joints, around gaskets, welds, casting, pressure-relief device, and so on. The main causes are improper assembly of mechanical parts, improper filters, poor joints, improper finishing of surfaces, defects in the material used, or insufficient tightness of mechanical parts.

Moisture condensation: The main causes for moisture condensation are improper ventilation in open-type transformers and a cracked diaphragm or leaking gaskets in sealed-type transformer.

Gas-sealed transformer troubles: In gas-sealed transformers, additional problems can be the loss of gas, oxygen content above 5%, or gas regulator malfunctions. These problems are caused by gas leaks above the oil, leaky valve seats, insufficient gas space, and/or insufficient flushing of gas space with nitrogen.

Transformer switching equipment troubles: Many transformers are equipped with tap chargers and other switching equipment. The problems associated with these transformers may be excessive wearing of contacts, mechanism overtravel, moisture condensation in mechanism liquid, and others. Excessive contact wear is due to loss of contact pressure from weakened springs or a contact-making voltmeter set at too narrow a bandwidth or insufficient time delay. Mechanism overtravel usually is due to defective or improper adjustment of controller contacts. Moisture condensation is due to improper ventilation, and carbonization is due to excessive operation and lack of filtering. Other problems such as control fuse blowing and mechanism motor stalling are due to short circuits in the control circuit, mechanical binding, or low-voltage conditions in the control circuitry.

5.8 Transformer Testing

Transformers may be tested with AC or DC voltage. Overall, AC voltage is preferable to DC voltage for testing transformers because AC voltage simulates the internal stress that the transformers experience during operating conditions.

The following tests are routinely conducted in the field on the transformer:

IR test
AC or DC hi-pot test (optional)
Insulation PF test
TTR test
Polarity test
Excitation current test
Induced potential test (optional)
Insulating fluid dielectric tests
Dissolved gas analysis (DGA) tests
Polarization recovery voltage test
Transformer core ground test
Frequency response analyzer (FRA)/sweep FRA (SFRA)
DC winding resistance

The IR and DC hi-pot tests are discussed in Chapter 2; the PF and excitation tests are discussed in Chapter 3; the transformer insulating fluid and dissolved gas tests are discussed in Chapter 4; and the remaining tests listed above are discussed next.

5.8.1 AC Hi-Pot Test

The AC hi-pot test is applied to evaluate the condition of transformer windings. This test is recommended for all voltages, especially those above 34.5 kV. For routine maintenance testing of transformers, the test voltage should not exceed 65% of factory test voltage. However, the hi-pot test for routine maintenance is generally not employed on transformers because of the possibility of damage to the winding insulation. This test is commonly used for acceptance testing or after repair testing of transformers. The AC HV test value should not exceed 75% of the factory test value. When AC hi-pot testing is to be used for routine maintenance, the transformer can be tested at rated voltage for 3 min instead of testing at 65% of factory test voltage. The AC hi-pot test values for voltage systems up to 69 kV are shown in Table 5.9. Testing procedures and test connections are similar to the DC hi-pot tests described in Chapter 2.

5.8.2 TTR Test

The TTR test applies voltage to one winding of a transformer and detects the voltage being generated on another winding on the same core.

In the case of a low voltage hand-crank powered TTR, 8 V AC is applied to the low-voltage winding of the transformer under test and a reference transformer in the TTR set. The HV windings of the transformer under test and the TTR reference transformer are connected through a null detecting instrument. After polarity has been established at 8 V, when the null reading is zero, the dial readings indicate the ratio of the transformer under test.

TABLE 5.9

AC Dielectric Test for Acceptance and Routine Maintenance for Liquid-Filled Transformers

Transformer Winding Rated Voltage (kV)	Factory Test AC Voltage (kV)	Acceptance Field Test AC Voltage, 75% (kV)	Maintenance Periodic Test, 65% (kV)
1.20	10	7.50	6.50
2.40	15	11.20	9.75
4.80	19	14.25	12.35
8.70	26	19.50	16.90
15.00	34	25.50	22.10
18.00	40	30.00	26.00
25.00	50	37.50	32.50
34.50	70	52.50	45.50
46.00	95	71.25	61.75
69.00	140	105.00	91.00

In the case of an electronic TTR test set, a voltage (typically 80 V AC) is applied to the HV winding of the transformer under test. The voltage generated on the low-voltage winding is measured and the voltage ratio between high and low windings is calculated. Voltage ratio is proportionally equal to turns ratio. The hand-crank powered TTR, the handheld electronic TTR, and the three-phase electronic TTR are shown in Figure 5.16a through c, respectively.

The TTR test provides the following information:

- It determines the turns ratio and polarity of single- and three-phase transformers, one phase at a time.
- It confirms nameplate ratio, polarity, and vectors.
- It determines the ratio and polarity (but not voltage rating) of transformers without markings. Tests include all no-load tap positions on a transformer. Tests include all load taps on load, tap changer (LTC) transformers if connected for voltage ratio control. On LTC transformers connected for phase angle control, ratio and polarity are performed in neutral positions only. If tested on load taps, readings may be taken for reference for future comparison, but will deviate from nameplate ratings. LTC taps may be confirmed by application of low three-phase voltage and reading volts and the phase angle for each.
- Identify trouble in transformer windings, such as open-circuit and short-circuits of turn-to-turn sensitivity. The standard deviation as defined by ANSI/IEEE C57.12.00-2006, Section 9.1 states that results should be within 0.5% of nameplate markings, with rated voltage applied to one winding. The TTR with accuracy of 0.1% is accepted as a referee.

(a) (b)

(c)

FIGURE 5.16
TTR testers: (a) hand-crank TTR; (b) handheld electronic TTR; and (c) three-phase electronic TTR. (Courtesy of Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

The following procedures are used for conducting the TTR test:

Transformer is isolated and tagged and leads disconnected
Read transformer nameplate
Observe the polarities and vectors (phasors)
Calculate ratios for each no-load and load tap position

Set up data test form as follows:
Make the null check, zero ratio check, and unity ratio check on the hand-crank TTR.

Null check

Set dials to 0.000, anvils (C clamp) open; clip H_1 and H_2 together
Crank to 8 V
Null detector should not deflect more than 1/16 in.

Zero ratio check

All dials at zero, close anvils
Clip the H_1 and H_2 leads together. Crank to 8 V
Null should read zero

Unity ratio check

Set dials to 1.000; connect H_1 and X_1, and H_2 and X_2, Crank to 8 V
Null should balance at 1.000 ratio
The test connections are shown in Figure 5.17a through c
In the case of an electronic TTR, a unity ratio check is also performed, but null and zero checks are unnecessary

5.8.2.1 Alternative Test for TTR

In case a TTR test set is not available, a quick and rough test can be performed to check the continuity and phase identification of transformer windings. The test consists of the following. The equipment needed for this test is a 100 W lamp with socket and an extension cord for connection to a 120 V 60 Hz power supply, with which three test procedures are performed.

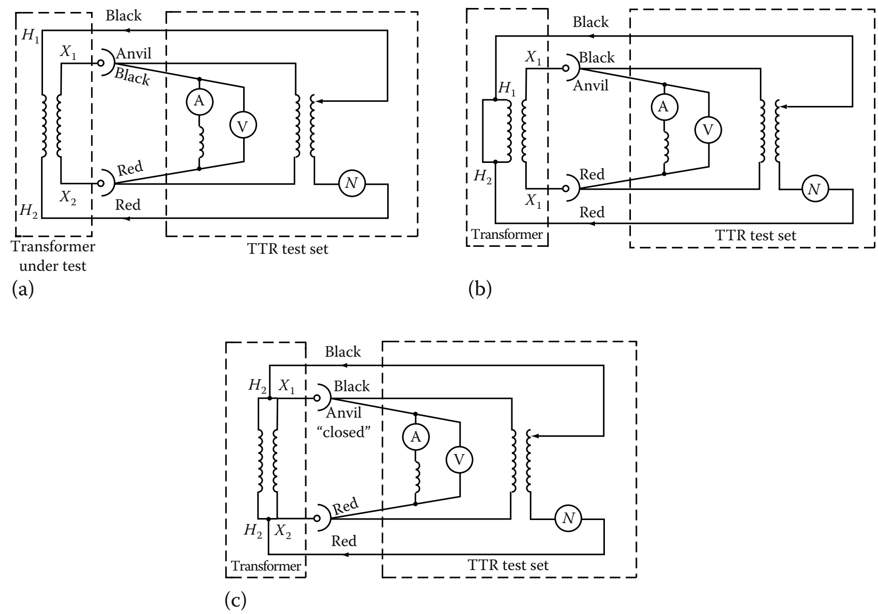


FIGURE 5.17
(a) TTR test set connections; (b) test connections for null check for TTR; and (c) test connections for zero check for TTR.

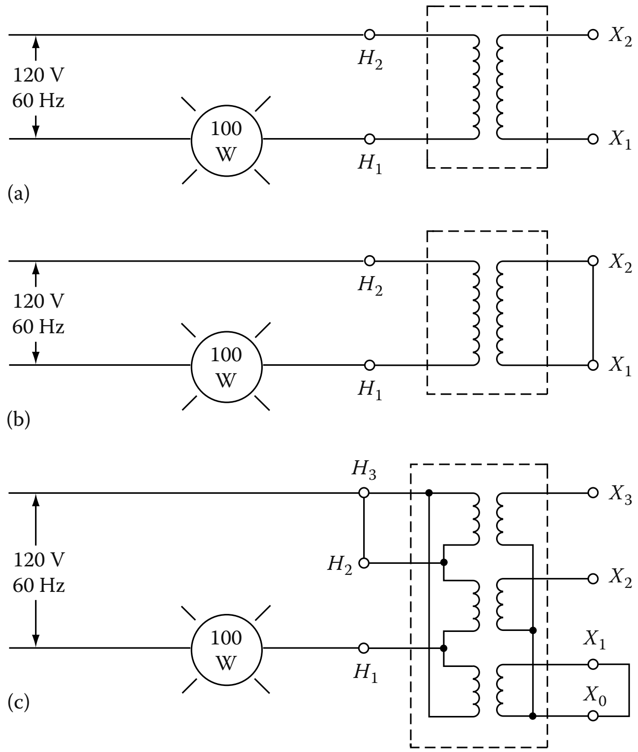


FIGURE 5.18
(a and b) Continuity check for transformer winding; (c) continuity and phase check for three-winding transformer.

Test 1: Connect the 120 V, 60 Hz power through the lamp to the transformer primary, terminals as shown in Figure 5.18a. Leave the transformer secondary winding open. The lamp will burn dimly.

Test 2: Maintain connections as described in test 1, but now short the secondary winding. The lamp should burn with great brilliance. If the lamp still burns with somewhat less than full brilliance, investigate for problems in the transformer winding. Connections for this test are shown in Figure 5.18b.

Test 3: This test is similar to tests 1 and 2, but as applied to a three-phase transformer for phase identification and phase continuity check. Conduct tests 1 and 2 for each winding of a three-phase transformer individually with the remaining windings left open. The test connections are shown in Figure 5.18c.

5.8.2.2 TTR Capacitor

The TTR test may be performed at higher voltages using a capacitor in combination with the PF test set. With the addition of the TTR capacitor,

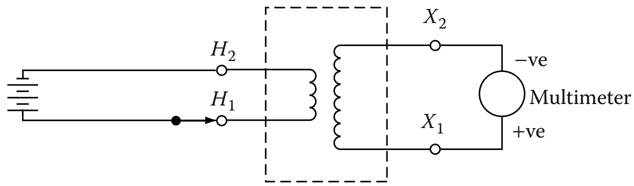


FIGURE 5.19
Polarity check using the kick method.

the Doble's PF test set M4100 (discussed in Chapter 3) can measure the turns ratio of power transformers at potentials up to 10 kV. Using the capacitor in place of the standard TTR test set, allows a higher test voltage, up to 10 kV, to be applied to the primary winding. Most TTR test sets are limited to less than 100 V which greatly reduces the voltage on the secondary windings. The benefits of the HV TTR tests are that it identifies problems and anomalies in the electric and magnetic circuit (i.e., core and coils) of the transformer that are not revealed with the low-voltage TTR tests.

5.8.3 Polarity Test

The polarity test can be performed with the TTR on power, distribution, and potential transformers. However, for current transformers the TTR test is not used. Instead a test commonly known as the kick test, consisting of applying a DC battery and multimeter is used. The kick test can also be used for power distribution, and potential transformers; however, the TTR test is preferred. The connections for a kick test for a current transformer are shown in Figure 5.19. The DC battery voltage is usually about 7.5 V, and the multimeter voltage range is set for 3 V full-scale. The negative terminal of the battery is connected to current transformer terminal H_2 and the positive side is left hanging for the time being. The multimeter positive terminal is connected to the transformer secondary terminal X_1 and negative terminal to X_2. To conduct the test, touch the positive side battery jumper to transformer terminal H_1 and notice the multimeter scale indication, if the multimeter scale kick is up scale, the transformer is connected in subtractive polarity. If the kick is down scale, it is connected in additive polarity.

5.8.4 Induced Potential Test

The induced potential test is a proof test and performed at higher voltage levels than normal operating voltages. Under this test, turn-to-turn insulation and phase-to-phase insulation are stressed at 65% of factory test voltage at higher frequency than 60 Hz, such as 200–300 Hz. The frequency of conducting this test should be 5 years or more for large transformers.

The induced potential test for transformers which receive the full standard applied potential test is made by applying between the terminals of one

TABLE 5.10

Frequency versus Duration of Test

Frequency (Hz)	Duration (s)
120 and less	60
180	40
240	30
300	20
400	18

winding a voltage of twice the normal voltage developed in the windings. It is applied for 7200 cycles, and the duration should not exceed 60 s.

As the induced potential test overexcites the transformer, the frequency of the applied potential should be high enough to prevent the exciting current of the transformer under test from exceeding about 30% of its rated load current. Ordinarily this requirement necessitates the use of a frequency of 120 Hz or more, when testing 60 Hz units.

When frequencies higher than 120 Hz are used, the severity of the test is abnormally increased and for this reason the duration of the test should be reduced as shown in Table 5.10.

The voltage should be started at one-quarter or less of the full value and be brought up gradually to full value in not more than 15 s. After being held for the time specified in Table 5.10, it should be reduced slowly (in not more than 5 s) to one-quarter of the maximum value or less, and the circuit opened.

When transformers have one winding grounded for operation on a grounded-neutral system, special care should be taken to avoid high electrostatic stresses between the other windings and ground.

In the case of transformers having one end of the HV winding grounded during the induced potential test, the ground on each winding may be made at a selected point of the winding itself or of the winding of a step-up transformer which is used to supply the voltage or which is merely connected for the purpose of furnishing the ground.

Three-phase transformers may be tested with single-phase voltage. The specified test voltage is induced, successively, from each line terminal to ground and to adjacent line terminals. The neutrals of the windings may or may not be held at ground potential during these tests.

When the induced test on the winding results in a voltage between terminals of other windings in excess of the low-frequency test voltage specified, the other windings may be sectionalized and grounded. Additional induced tests should then be made to give the required test voltage between terminals of windings that were sectionalized.

5.8.5 FRA

The FRA test may be performed as an impulse response or as a SFRA test. The impulse method estimates the frequency response whereas sweep frequency response method measures the response over a range of frequencies of interest. Both the FRA and SFRA methods are nondestructive tests used to detect if deformation (displacement) of core and coils has taken place. Sweep frequency response is a major advance in transformer condition analysis, allowing visualization of the inside of the transformer's tank without costly detanking. The standard definition of FRA is the ratio of a steady sinusoidal output from a test object subjected to a steady sinusoidal input. SFRA is a proven technique for making accurate and repeatable measurements. There is a direct relationship between the geometric configuration of the winding and core, and the series and parallel impedance network of inductance, capacitance, and resistance. This network can be identified by its frequency-dependent transfer function.

FRA testing by the sweep frequency response method uses network analysis tools to determine the transfer function. Changes in the geometric configuration alter the impedance network, and in turn alter the transfer function. This enables a wide range of failure modes to be identified. Analysis of SFRA test results relies, in part, on comparison between phases and against previous test results. Commonality between transformers of the same design is also expected. The SFRA tests are actually a series of many tests over a band of frequencies from 20 Hz to 2 MHz. The SFRA test results can be referred to as traces that are shown on a graph. The x-axis of the graphs is the test frequency and the y-axis is the magnitude in decibels (db). These traces show the ratio of the output voltage to the input voltage of the transformer circuit under test at each of the frequencies. It has been shown that these traces are a signature that is related to the distributed resistance, inductance, and capacitance (RLC) of the components within the transformer. They should follow certain general shapes and favorable comparisons should exist among the phases of a transformer, with previous test results, and among transformers of identical design. The first, or benchmark, traces also provide a valuable tool to identify winding movement in the future.

As compared to the "impulse" technique, SFRA is preferred for frequency domain measurements. It covers the full dynamic range and maintains the same energy level for each frequency, providing accurate, consistent results. A high signal-to-noise ratio across the entire 20 Hz to 2 MHz frequency range ensures valid measurements. Sweep frequency response analyzers (Figure 5.20) detect mechanical failure or movement of windings due to short circuits, mechanical stresses, or transportation. These tests are used to ensure transformer performance, reduce maintenance cost, and increase service life. System faults, short circuits, aging, or even handling during transportation can compromise a transformer's mechanical structure. Since these problems are difficult to detect, they usually go unnoticed and worsen over time, leading to loss of performance and possibly failure. Until recently, the options for dealing with these critical problems were limited. If such damage was suspected in a transformer, the options were limited. These problems could be ignored and hope for the best, or detank the transformer to make a costly and time-consuming visual inspection. Even that might not reveal the damage.

FIGURE 5.20
Sweep frequency response analyzer M5300. (Courtesy of Doble Engineering Inc., Watertown, MA.)

The sweep frequency response analyzer adds a powerful tool to the quality control and maintenance toolkit, allowing a look inside the transformer to detect even subtle changes in the mechanical structure of the core and windings—without costly detanking. This is the most effective diagnostic tool for detecting mechanical problems in power transformers. The instrument sends an excitation signal into the transformer and measures the returning signals. Comparing this response to baseline and other results (such as from similar units) allows identification of deviations. Typical internal mechanical problems identified in transformers with FRA are:

- Core movement
- Winding deformation and displacement
- Faulty core grounds
- Partial winding collapse
- Hoop buckling
- Broken or loosened clamping structures
- Shorted turns and open windings

These test methods are generally used on large HV power transformers because they are sensitive tests to detect winding distortion and deformation (i.e., in coils, layers, turns, and leads) in power transformers. A significant amount of deformation can occur in the windings as a result of high through fault currents which can go undetected before an actual failure occurs. The voltage stress changes in the winding insulation structure after the onset of initial winding deformation. Over time the winding deformation will lead to partial discharges and gassing. However, by the time partial discharge and subsequent gassing appear degradation of the transformer has already occurred. Winding deformation is one of the first and fundamental precursors to indicate a degraded condition in the transformer windings. The FRA tests are performed at the factory and also in the field on transformers off-line. The results are compared to determine if changes have occurred in the transformer. Specialized test equipment is required to perform FRA or SFRA tests. In general, the procedure requires the transformer to be de-energized and isolated. Each individual phase of every winding is tested. One set of tests is done by injecting the signal at one end of the winding and measuring the other end. Another test is done by injecting the signal at one end of a primary winding and measuring the corresponding secondary winding.

5.8.6 DC Winding Resistance

This test measures the DC resistance of the transformer leads and windings and is made with a low-resistance ohmmeter or a Kelvin bridge. Winding resistance will change due to shorted turns, loose connections, or deteriorating contacts in tap changers. One of the problems associated with measuring the DC resistance of a transformer is the inductive circuit that must be energized. The inductance must be charged and stabilized in order to allow an accurate reading to be made. Special low-resistance ohmmeters are available specifically for the purpose of performing this test. A low-resistance ohmmeter specifically made for measuring transformers winding resistance is shown in Figure 5.21.

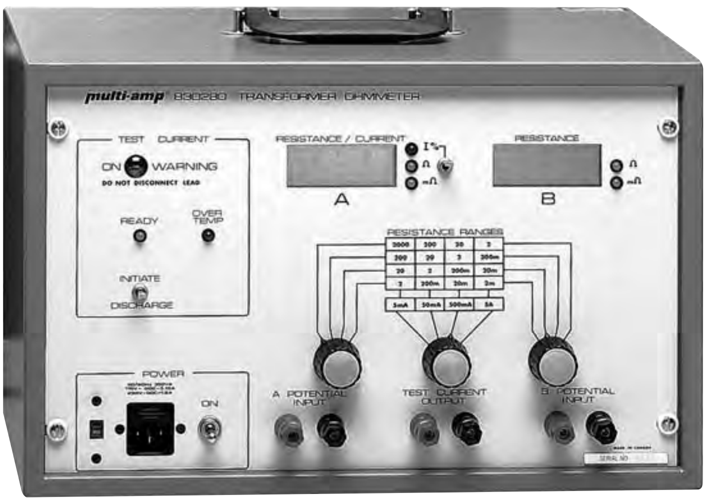


FIGURE 5.21
Low-resistance transformer ohmmeter. (Courtesy of Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

The test procedure for measuring DC winding resistance requires the transformer to be de-energized and isolated. Both the primary and secondary terminals should be isolated from external connections, and measurements made on each phase of all windings. The measured resistance should be corrected to a common temperature such as 75°C or 85°C using the following formula:

$$R_C = R_M \times \left(\frac{\mathrm{CF} + \mathrm{CT}}{\mathrm{CF} + \mathrm{WT}}\right)$$

where
R_C is the corrected resistance
R_M is the measured resistance
CF is the correction factor for copper (234.5) or aluminum (225) windings
CT is the corrected temperature (75°C or 85°C)
WT is the winding temperature (°C) at time of test

Measurements should be made on all tap changer positions (if present) and compared to previous or factory test values. The test values after temperature correction should be compared with the factory test values or previous years' test results for evaluating the condition of the transformer windings and leads. The acceptance criteria for the field-measured values after temperature correction should be within 2% of the factory values. A change greater than the acceptance criteria is indicative of short-circuited turns, poor joints, or bad tap changer contacts. This test should be performed during acceptance testing and when other maintenance electrical tests are conducted.

5.8.7 Transformer Core Ground Test

An IR measurement is made to determine the presence of unintentional core grounds. In general, the laminated cores of power transformers are insulated from ground, and intentionally grounded at a single point. Typically this grounding point can be accessed at the top of the transformer, either externally at a small bushing or internally behind a manhole cover.

Unintentional core grounds can develop due to shipping damage, though faults, or deterioration of core insulation. Any of these factors can cause excessive localized heating through circulating currents in the core and surrounding structure, leading to the generation of specific gases in the insulating oil.

The procedure for the test requires the transformer to be de-energized and isolated. The intentional core ground connection is lifted and the DC IR test is made between the core connection and the grounded transformer enclosure. Acceptable readings are 100 MΩ or greater. An IR tester (megohmmeter or Megger) for performing this test is shown in Figure 5.22.

5.8.8 Polarization Recovery Voltage Test

The transformer insulation systems are composites of two insulating materials: cellulose fiber (paper) and insulating oil. This structure shows

FIGURE 5.22
IR tester (megohmmeter). (Courtesy of Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

space-charge polarization effects which are strongly influenced by the moisture content and aging products. These cause a reduction of the time constant. The time constant caused by space-charge polarization exceeds 10 ms and, in the case of new dry insulation, even 1000 s.

Figure 5.23a shows the circuit of a recovery voltage meter (RVM). Switch S_1 is closed for a time t_c and DC voltage source U, applies a certain charge to the capacitor (test object), Switch S_1 then opens and switch S_2 closes for a time t_d (normally $t_d = t_c/2$). Part of the capacitor charge is dissipated, then switch S_2 also opens and the residual capacitor charge produces a voltage at the capacitor electrodes (Figure 5.23b).

Two typical parameters of this so-called recovery voltage are its maximum value (V_{max}) and initial slope (tan δ). If the time t_c is systematically increased, together with time t_d from a small initial value, a different value of V_{max} and initial slope tan δ will be obtained for each time t_c.

Figure 5.23c shows the variation of V_{max} with t_c; it is easily proved that the V_{max}/t_c curve peaks at the time constant value, i.e., $t_{critcal} = T$. This result shows that the V_{max}/t_c curve also represents a polarization spectrum with maximum value at the insulation time constants.

5.8.8.1 The Measuring Instrument

The Tettex RVM 5462 (Figure 5.24) was developed for automatic execution of the series of measurements required for determination of the polarization spectra. It is a portable microprocessor-controlled automatic system suitable for field use. Measurement results are displayed in digital or diagrammatical form. Operation and adjustment of the instrument is through a menu-driven program, with provision for fully automatic measurement sequences or single manual measurements where required. The instrument has an LCD screen display and an alphanumerical printer for test data results.

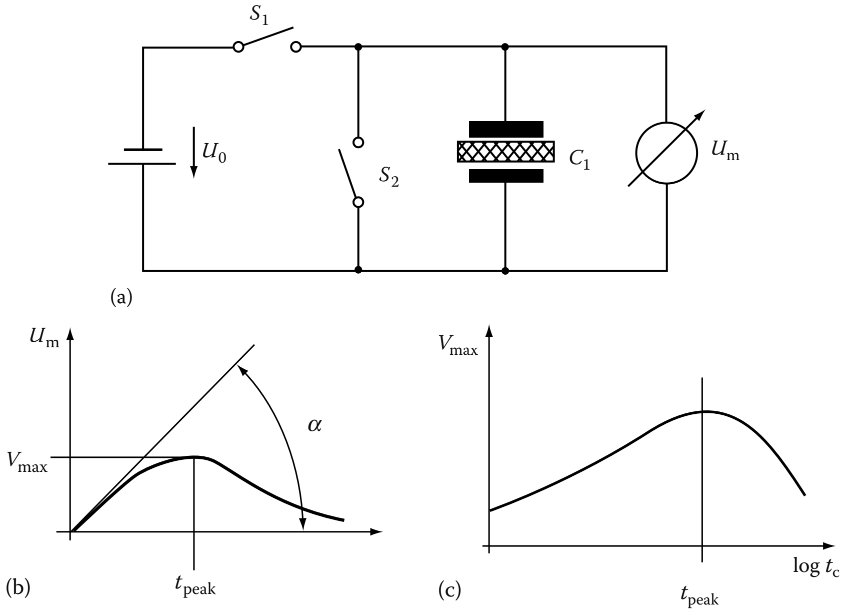


FIGURE 5.23
(a) The principle circuit of time t_c recovery voltage measurement; (b) RVM measurement cycle and the quantities recorded during one cycle; and (c) recovery voltage V as a function of time t_c.

Standard options include an RS232C interface and screened two-core HV cable for connection to the test object. Analysis software interprets the data and produces definitive moisture content as a percentage (%) of paper mass and a qualitative interpretation of polarization spectrum.

The standard settings in the automatic measurement program ensure effective acquisition of the significant part of the polarization spectrum for power transformer oil/paper insulation.

In automatic measurement mode the instrument displays:

- Recovery voltage peaks and initial slopes with, corresponding charge time t_c
- All measured parameters (U_{max}, $\tan\delta$, t_c, etc.), the characteristic values (t_c/t_d) will be memorized, displayed, and/or printed out

5.8.8.2 Test Setup for Recovery Voltage Measurement on Power Transformers

As shown in Figure 5.25, the terminals of the transformer must be disconnected from the system. The ends of the low-voltage windings must all be joined and connected to the HV core of the instrument test lead. The ends of all other windings must be joined together and connected to the tank ground and the low-voltage core of the test lead. The instrument has the capability of charging voltage at 2000 V DC, $t_c/t_d = 2$, and t_c time range of 10 ms to 10,000 s.

FIGURE 5.24
Recovery voltage meter RVM 5462. (Courtesy of Haefely Technology/Tettex Instruments, Basel, Switzerland.)

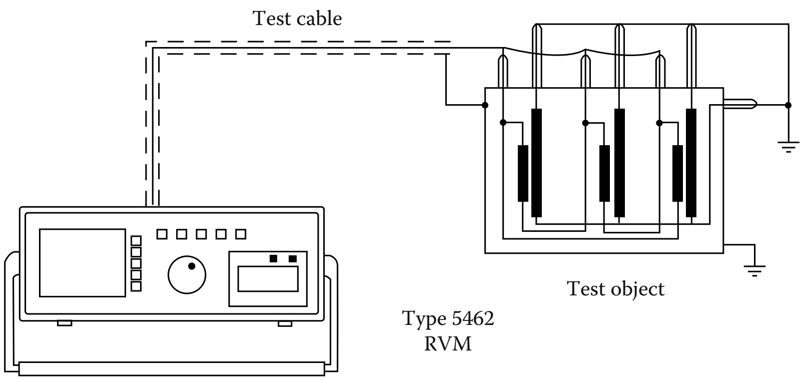


FIGURE 5.25
Test setup of RVM on a power transformer.

5.8.8.3 Evaluation of Measured Polarization Spectra

The electrical properties and reliability of the oil/paper insulation used on most power transformers depend very heavily on the state (aging and moisture content) of the oil and, even more so, on that of the paper. Oil state is fairly easily assessed by conventional oil sample analysis methods such as Karl-Fischer moisture measurement, PF, etc., but these provide very little information on the state of the paper insulation.

As will be seen from the following examples, the state of oil-impregnated paper can be ascertained directly from the polarization spectrum without any need to take and analyze an oil sample.

Figure 5.26 shows spectra measured at constant temperature on oil-impregnated paper insulation laboratory models.

The curves in Figure 5.26a show spectra recorded at varying moisture content on the insulation model. Figure 5.26b shows similar curves obtained under artificial aging of varying duration.

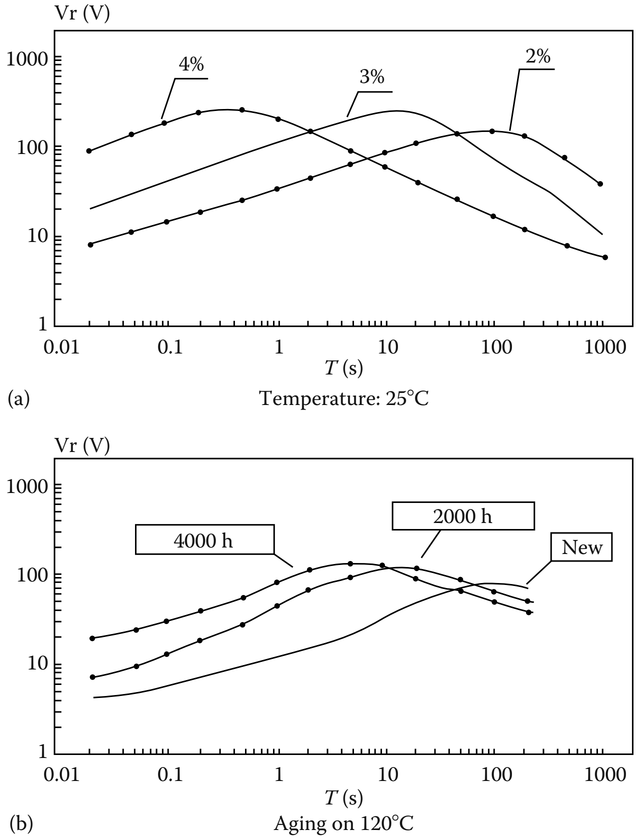


FIGURE 5.26
Polarization spectral curves relative to (a) moisture at 25°C and (b) aging at 120°C.

These curves clearly show that the behavior of the spectrum (especially displacement of the curve peak toward small time constants) closely reflects changes of state, i.e., degradation of the dielectric, i.e., oil/paper insulation.

5.9 Online Condition Monitoring of Transformers

Power transformers are critical and costly assets in the electric power system beginning with the grid, transmission, and down to the plant. They are one of the most important electric apparatus for providing reliable energy flow. As an asset class, transformers constitute one of the largest investments in a utility's system or in an industrial complex. For this reason transformer condition assessment and management is a high priority. Each entity is unique and investment levels in asset condition and assessment management varies according to risk level and investment return models. While the models are different for each entity, the common element in them is that transformers are stratified according to the criticality of individual transformers. The variability and uniqueness lies in where the prioritization lines are drawn and the investment amounts allocated for condition monitoring for each level. Typically this approach has the most critical transformers receiving the highest investment of condition assessment and management tools and less-critical or noncritical transformers receiving decreasing level of asset allocations.

A simplified model below shows one approach to transformer condition management:

Critical: Those transformers that, if failed, would have a large negative impact on grid stability, utility revenue, and service reliability of the critical facility. For example, generator step-up transformers (GSU) and transmission transformers that are part of critical power flows fall in this level, or the main transformers in a critical facility.

Important: Those transformers that, if failed, would have a significant negative impact on revenue and service reliability of a utility system, or the production of the plant. Transmission substation transformers and major distribution substation transformers are generally in this level.

Recoverable: Those transformers that, if failed, would have low impact on revenue and reliability or the production of the plant. These are mainly smaller distribution substation transformers.

Transformer reliability is more important today than was in the past. Transformers do not last as long they used to in the past. In the United States, the average life of a transformer is 40 years, and many transformers installed in the 1960s and 1970s are now approaching the end of their design life. Higher loads placed on transformers, in a market that demands more electricity, have also taken their toll on transformer longevity. Because of consolidation and deregulation of the electric industry, the budgets for maintenance and condition monitoring have been reduced. Therefore, the need to more closely manage transformer assets becomes even more important these days. Utility and plant managers by choosing the appropriate transformer condition monitoring tools can avoid unplanned failures, lower maintenance costs, and defer capital expenditures in replacement cost. Condition management is all about choosing the right monitoring tools for transformers.

5.9.1 Online Monitoring of Transformers

There are several online monitoring systems that can be used for continuously assessing the condition of large important and critical power transformers. The online monitoring systems that are available on the market are DGA, PF monitoring of bushing, leakage current monitoring of lightening arrestors, and FRA of transformer windings. The bushing and lightening arrestors are externally mounted auxiliaries on a transformer therefore they are more susceptible to varying environmental conditions. A failure in the bushing or lightening arrestor of a transformer is a failure of the transformer. As discussed earlier, the online testing offers yet another management tool for condition monitoring and assessment of the most critical and important transformers.

DGA: The DGA is one of the many tests that are used in monitoring the health of oil-filled power transformers. The off-line DGA tests are discussed in Chapter 4. The off-line DGA tests have been traditionally carried out using laboratory DGA analysis performed at periodic intervals, such as on quarterly, semi-annually, or yearly basis. DGA of transformer oil is the single best indicator of overall condition of the transformer and is carried out without taking it out of service. This is a universal practice today that got started in earnest in the 1960s. The following is a brief summary of the evolution of the practice of DGA.

While laboratory or portable DGA is the traditional practice, the use of online DGA tools has gained in popularity. The reason for this is the need for utilities to maintain or improve their reliability in the presence of decreased capital expenditures and an aging infrastructure. Something more than periodic laboratory or portable DGA is needed to be successful in the current environment and the two approaches (online DGA and laboratory DGA) now coexist at many utilities. Online DGA helps utilities avoid unplanned failures, adopt lower cost condition-based maintenance, and defer capital expenditures by extending the transformer's useful life.

First generation products (1970s), as well as some current online DGA products available today, provided total combustible gas (TCG) or single gas (hydrogen) monitoring. These products provide indication of developing problems in the transformer but offer no legitimate diagnostic capability. Online DGA offerings in the market have evolved from this early approach to include multigas monitors that detect and analyze some or all of the eight fault gases identified in the IEEE standards as well as provide diagnostic capability.

Newer online DGA products have the unique ability to continuously trend multiple transformer gases and correlate them with other key parameters such as transformer load, oil, and ambient temperatures as well as customer-specified sensor inputs. This capability enables utilities to relate gassing to external events, a key to meeting utility reliability and financial goals in the current environment. In fact, some online DGA tools may offer better accuracy and repeatability than laboratory DGA. This can improve the transformer asset manager's decision timeliness and confidence when incipient faults are detected.

With the advent of online DGA monitoring, there has also been new learning about the nature of developing faults in transformers. Online DGA monitoring has produced multiple case studies that document the development of critical faults, which could cause catastrophic transformer failure if left undetected, in timeframes from a few days to a few weeks. There is a low probability of capturing these rapidly developing fault conditions with a laboratory or portable-based transformer DGA testing program.

Recently, the ability to automatically supplement traditional DGA diagnostic tests with online DGA tests is available in the market. This new development offers users of online DGA monitors unprecedented insight into the nature and identification of developing faults. The tools are typically ratio-based and the online data set enables trending of fault gas ratios over time rather than the traditional static snapshots. Diagnostic outcomes can now be determined quickly and with more certainty than in the past. Neural network diagnostic approaches utilizing DGA data are also new to the market and promise more accurate diagnoses but have not yet been included in industry standards.

One of the online tools that have recently become available for condition monitoring of transformers is the online DGA, such as Siemens Gas Guard 8 and TMDS 2000 L shown in Figures 5.27 and 5.28, respectively. The Gas Guard 8 is a self-contained fully automated closed-loop gas chromatograph designed to be mounted on or near the subject transformer. Through chromatography the Gas Guard 8 generates individual measurements of each of the eight critical fault gases (hydrogen, nitrogen, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, methane, ethane, ethylene, and acetylene) found in transformer oil. The accuracy of the measurements are commensurate with what one would expect to receive from a traditional laboratory.

The TDMS 2000 L DGA monitoring system allows condition assessment data to be incorporated into the configuration of alarms and recommended loading to mitigate the risk of failure while preserving operation. Although no system, including the TMDS 2000 L, can guarantee avoidance of failure, the TMDS 2000 L can utilize the results of field-based condition assessments and advanced monitoring and diagnostic technology to provide a comprehensive tool to support any asset management strategy. The TMDS 2000 system provides contextual information on maintenance activity to address abnormal operation, on potentially related or causal relationships between transformer components and the alarmed condition, reduces time consuming data analysis and delivers statistically relevant abnormal operating data and alarm conditions.

The following discussion provides some of the decision criteria for employing online DGA monitors.

FIGURE 5.27
Gas Guard 8 monitor. (Courtesy of Siemens USA Corp., Atlanta, GA.)

Selecting online DGA tools: The last few years have seen a new array of DGA tools enter the market and this poses challenges for utility and plant managers to understand and choose an approach that best meets their needs. Transformer asset managers have important decisions to make based

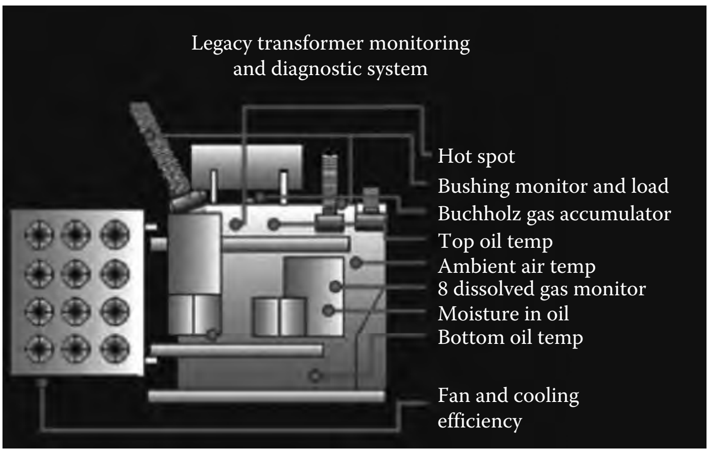


FIGURE 5.28
The TDMS 2000L diagnostic system for monitoring transformer. (Courtesy of Siemens USA Corp., Atlanta, GA.)

on DGA information, including whether or not to take a transformer off-line in order to avoid a catastrophic failure. These decisions can significantly affect service reliability, revenue, and production. The aging infrastructure and increasing electricity demand placed on existing transformer assets is exacerbating the problem. Higher loading on older transformers is causing faults that can lead to catastrophic failure to develop faster and more often. The transformer reliability bathtub curve shows that new transformers are not immune to failure either. This puts pressure on transformer asset managers to make critical reliability and revenue decisions more quickly and more often than in the past. Each transformer asset manager must choose the amount and type of transformer condition data they require for each level in their condition management model to make these big decisions. In response to this need the vendor community has developed products that better support the asset manager's decision integrity by supplying timely, accurate and certain transformer DGA data and diagnostic tools.

The increasing variety of online DGA tools, while helpful to the industry overall, presents transformer asset managers with the problem of matching the right product to their needs. A framework for decision making is required. The first step is to determine a transformer condition management model. For purposes of this discussion, the model discussed above will serve the purpose. The model discussed above has three levels of transformer assets identified; critical, important, and recoverable. Table 5.11 contains a list of attributes for various online DGA product categories relevant to online DGA tool selection and how it could be applied to the three levels of transformer assets. This list of attributes should be considered when applying online DGA to the various condition management model levels. Online DGA tools can be categorized by attributes directly

TABLE 5.11

Attributes of Online DGA Categories

	Number of Gases			
Attribute	**8**	**3**	**2**	**1**
Gases	All IEEE fault gases	CH_4, C_2H_4, and C_2H_2	C_2H_2 and H_2	H_2
Fault coverage	Best All faults detected with DGA	Better Partial discharge, arching and thermal faults	Minimal Arching, all other faults undetermined	Poor Undetermined faults
Price	Higher	Low	Lower	Lowest
Transformer assets	Critical GSU, major transmission transformers	Important Transmission and major distribution substation transformers	Recoverable Smaller distribution substation transformers	

Note: H_2, Hydrogen; CH_4, methane; C_2H_4, ethane; and C_2H_2, acetylene.

resulting from the number of gases measured. Most modern online DGA tools offer the ability to measure other parameters such as moisture-in-oil. These other parameters are not included in the table as they are common for most.

Diagnostics: Fault coverage and diagnostics capabilities are the critical attributes that transformer asset managers should consider when choosing online DGA tools for the various levels in their stratification models. Price is also a consideration, but the relative value of the solution, as defined by the fault coverage and diagnostic capabilities, is the more important measure. In other words, some solutions may have a higher price, but the value provided (through superior transformer condition knowledge) in terms of improved utility service reliability and revenue far outweighs the higher price.

The selection of online DGA tools for each level of transformer assets identified reflects the approach of making the highest investment in online DGA tools for the most critical transformers and less investment in tools for lower levels in the stratification model. Notice that this approach utilizes the online DGA tools with the most fault coverage and diagnostics for the critical and important transformers in the fleet. Utilities will find more appropriate returns on investment for their critical and important transformers with online DGA tools that offer good fault coverage and diagnostics capability rather than with the lowest cost, poor fault coverage tools that lack diagnostic support.

The current environment of higher loading on aging transformers, deferred capital expenditures as well as increased service reliability requirements suggests that transformer asset managers should take advantage of the improved online DGA offerings (i.e., better fault coverage and diagnostics) in the market to get the best protection for its biggest asset class—at all levels. Appropriate online DGA monitoring and diagnostic tools will help utilities avoid unplanned failures, lower maintenance costs, and extend transformer useful life.

5.10 Online Monitoring of Bushings and Lightning Arrestors

The deterioration of oil and paper insulation in HV equipment is a matter of continuous concern. Normal aging of HV equipment is a slow process that takes place over 30–40 years due to thermal, electrical, and environmental effects. With regard to transformer bushings, the most common type of bushing failure occurs due to a failure in the internal bushing capacitive layers. These failures occur slowly over time with one layer slowly failing and burning through the kraft paper. A failed capacitive (condenser) bushing is shown in Figure 5.29. Premature failure on the other hand is often a relatively sudden process that is not detected by periodic off-line tests discussed in Sections 3.6.2 and 3.6.5 in Chapter 3. The use of the Scherring bridge technique using the voltage is very responsive to type of condition, and can detect these millivolt level changes. The millivolt level changes are far too small for an off-line test to detect and react to it in the early stages of failure. This prompted

FIGURE 5.29
A failed capacitive (condenser) bushing. (Courtesy of On-Line Monitoring Corp., Exton, PA.)

the need for continuous online insulation condition monitoring to manage the risk of premature bushing failures and to initiate maintenance procedures based on the condition of the bushing insulation.

The On-Line Monitoring Corporation has developed PF Live Plus system for online PF (tan δ) testing of transformer bushings and lightening arrestors while the transformer remains energized. The PF calculation in the PF Live Plus system is based on the conventional Schering bridge used in laboratories. Data is acquired under software control from transducers connected to the bushing PF/capacitive tap associated with a transformer and then the data is compared to data from another electrical phase to produce a PF value. Damaged or deteriorated dielectric is associated with increased dielectric losses (I^2R) with other sources of heating that may eventually fuel a mechanism of thermal runaway. The eventual breakdown of insulation is a rapid avalanche of failing dielectric layers. PF is a measure of dielectric losses, partial discharges, and treeing. High levels of partial discharge are reflected in the PF and are usually only present just after lightning or switching impulses and just before and during insulation failure.

The PF Live Plus is a continuous online monitoring system, for monitoring PF in HV capacitive bushings, and is now available with an optional leakage current monitor for HV lightning arresters. The system includes a minimum set of three sensors permanently connected to a series of capacitive bushing taps, or lightning arresters. It is based on the field proven SOS Tan Delta system. The system is capable of monitoring up to 32 direct-connected sensors, and up to 256 wireless sensors. The system acquires, analyzes, and trends data pertaining to AC insulation PF of bushings and/or HV current transformers, and leakage current of lightning arresters. The PF Live Plus system can also interface to signals from other devices, or IED's, such as: temperature sensors, DGA, or any 0–10 V DC, 10 V peak, 4–20 mA, or 0–1 mA signal, providing a single point access of transformer mounted sensors. Data can be downloaded on-site, or remotely. The concept of measuring PF is based on the derivation of the phase shift between two voltage signals. The method is similar to the standard bridge methods, but software is used for angle difference determination. The measurement of PF of insulation is accepted as part of well-established laboratory testing procedures to determine the quality of insulation at the factory before commissioning new and refurbished HV equipment. PF as a parameter is by nature a relatively slow-changing value and is an integral characteristic depending on

- Design, materials, and production technology
- Operating voltages and temperatures
- Aging of insulation related to design and operating conditions such as overvoltages, loading conditions, etc.
- Climatic/weather-related phenomenon

The system calculates the PF of a unit as a relative value compared with a reference voltage from another unit in service, thereby eliminating the need for a standard capacitor. The reference device does not have to be associated with the same phase since PF Live Plus will automatically make the proper phase angle adjustments. Relative measurements and evaluation can reduce the effect of influences such as ambient temperature, operating voltages, loading conditions, different aging characteristics, different designs, operating conditions, etc. The system uses a principle of cross-referencing units in a closed loop to confirm all measurements and increase the confidence of isolating a defective unit. Because the system uses relative measurements, the minimum number of units to be monitored is three. All measurements are tested for integrity against three parameters: rms and mean of the signal, and the PF value calculated. Only measurements passing the integrity tests are stored in the database. The default monitoring period is once every 5 min. This setting can be changed from once a minute, to once per day. The sensors are configured into the graphical user interface by the user during installation. Each monitored device is entered into the database with an acquisition channel number, and descriptive text. The condition of each monitored device is displayed on the monitor screen.

FRA: The off-line FRA test is discussed in Section 5.8.5. Recently, the National Electric Energy Testing, Research and Application Center (NEETRAC) has developed a method to perform this test while the transformer is in service. Online FRA data can provide an up-to-date condition assessment of large, essential transformers. Online FRA provides yet another tool to analyze the physical structure of the coils and their dielectric surroundings while the transformer remains in service. NEETRAC's online FRA method uses normal system-switching operations, such as capacitor bank and reactor operations, along with lightning from local thunderstorms for the FRA test-signal source. NEETRAC's patented technology can perform FRA signatures on transformer windings using a variety of input waveforms with different time and amplitude characteristics.

6

Cables and Accessories

6.1 Introduction

The generation, transmission, and distribution of power involve electrical facilities, apparatus, and components to carry the electrical energy from its generating site to where it is utilized. An important part of this power system is the medium-voltage cable system that is used exclusively to carry power from the main substation to secondary substations at load centers. Low-voltage cable is used to distribute power from the load centers in conduits and ducts, even though other methods such as cable trays, direct burial for outdoor applications, and aerial cable are used. Electrical, mechanical, and environmental considerations are the main factors in selecting and applying cable systems for distribution and utilization of electrical power. The splices and terminations of medium-voltage cables or connections of different type of cables (such as aluminum and copper) require careful consideration and evaluation during installation, as well as throughout their service life. Correct installation and preventive maintenance of cable systems will assure continued electrical power service.

6.2 Cable Construction and Classification

It is difficult to select and apply cables to power systems without some knowledge of the cable insulation system and of cable components. Therefore, it is important to review some basic considerations and fundamentals of cables for their application to power systems. The following materials are presently used for cables.

Copper conductor
The copper material used in the manufacture of cable is pure electrolytic copper, which has 100% conductivity. This means that a wire 1 ft long and one circular mil (1/1000 of in.) in cross-sectional area has a resistance of 10.371 Ω at 20°C. Tinning of copper is also required for many rubber and rubber-like insulation compounds to prevent corrosion of copper due to the sulfur that is used in the vulcanizing process.

Aluminum conductor

Aluminum conductors are made from 99% pure aluminum, which has a conductivity of 61%. Normally, three-fourths aluminum is used for construction of aluminum conductors. Three-fourths hard drawn aluminum has strength of 17,000–22,000 psi. Some of the disadvantages of aluminum are low conductivity; high resistance of aluminum oxide, which forms very rapidly when aluminum is exposed to air; cold flow characteristics; and galvanic action when connected to dissimilar materials.

6.2.1 Types of Conductors

The following types of conductors are in use in power distribution systems.

Solid conductors: Normally, solid conductors are available up to size 6 American wire gauge (AWG). However, they can be made available up to size 4/0 AWG.

Stranded conductor: Most systems use concentric stranding for the applications discussed here.

Overhead cable conductors

The strandings available for this application are type AA and A confined to bare conductors.

Power cable conductors

The concentric stranding is most commonly used for power cable conductors. The construction of concentric-type cable consists of a central core surrounded by one or more layers of helically applied wires. The first layer has six wires and each subsequent layer has six more wires than the preceding layer. In this type of cable construction, the core consists of single wire and all of the strands have the same diameter. The first layer over the core contains 6 wires, the second contains 12 wires, the third 18, and so on. The following types of strandings are used in this application.

Class B: This class of stranding is used exclusively for industrial power cables for application in 600 V, 5 kV, and 15 kV power systems. The cable stranding usually consists of 7 (#2 AWG), 19 (#4/0 AWG), 37 (500 kcmil), or 61 (750 kcmil) strands.

Classes C and D: These classes are used where a more flexible cable is required. Class C uses 19, 37, 61, or 91 strands and class D uses 37, 61, 91, or 127 strands for the #2 AWG, #4/0 AWG, 500 kcmil, and 750 kcmil cable construction, respectively.

Classes G and H: These classes are used to provide more flexible cable than class D. Classes G and H are also known by rope or bunch stranding. Class G uses 133 strands and class H uses 259 strands for cable construction. Examples of cables in these classes are welding and portable wire for special apparatus or large cables.

Utility-type cable

Cables used for utility systems are of somewhat specialized construction. Some of these are as follows:

Compact strand (compact round): This type of construction allows for smaller diameter and less weight than solid conductor.

Annular: This construction uses a hollow space or rope core in the center of the cable.

Segmental: Consists of four segments stranded together and operated in parallel.

Concentric cable: Consists of an inner and outer conductor with equivalent cross sections, which are separated by insulation.

Sector: A multiconductor cable in which the conductor is shaped like a sector in a circle.

6.2.2 Conductor Arrangement

Conductors may be arranged in various ways to form a cable. The common arrangements used in power system applications are the following:

Single-conductor cable: A single conductor of either shielded or nonshielded construction.

Three-conductor cable: Three single conductors bound together with a nonmetallic tape. Three-conductor cables may also be bound together by interlocking galvanized steel, aluminum, or bronze tape. This type of cable is known as interlocked armor cable. Three-conductor cables may come with ground wires, which are used for system ground or equipment ground. Ground wires are usually located in the interstices of the three-conductor cable. Three-conductor cable can be either shielded or nonshielded.

6.2.3 Cable Types

Power cables are classified with respect to insulation as follows:

Laminated type: This type of cable uses paper, varnished cambric, polypropylene, or other types of tape insulation material. Insulation formed in layers, typically from tapes of paper or other materials or combination of them. An example of this type of cable is the paper-insulated lead-covered (PILC) cable.

Extruded type: This type of cable uses rubber and rubber-like compounds, such as polyethylene (PE), cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE), ethylene propylene rubber (EPR), etc., applied using an extrusion process for the insulation system.

6.2.4 Insulations

The 2008 National Electrical Code (NEC), Table 310-13A, "Conductor Application and Insulations Rated 600 Volts" lists insulation types including the trade names (type letter), polymer name, maximum operating temperature, sizes of conductors, thickness of insulation in mils, jackets, and application. Similarly, NEC Table 310-13C, lists similar information for conductor application and insulation rated 2001 V and higher. In general, cables are classified according to their insulation system as follows:

1. Paper
2. Varnished cambric
3. Asbestos
4. Rubber and rubber-like compounds (polymeric insulation)
5. Mineral-insulated (MI) cables
6. Teflon

Each of these materials has unique characteristics that render it suitable for a given application.

Paper insulation
Paper can be wound onto a conductor in successive layers to achieve a required dielectric strength, and this insulation is generally used for cables operating at 10,000 V and higher. Paper can be impregnated in different ways, and, accordingly, cables so insulated can be subdivided into solid and oil-filled types.

Solid paper: Insulated cables are built up of layers of paper tape wound onto the conductor and impregnated with viscous oil over which is applied a tight-fitting, extended lead sheath. The three-conductor cables are of either belted or shielded construction.

Belted construction: Consists of three separately insulated conductor cables wrapped together with another layer of impregnated paper or belt, before the sheath is applied.

Shielded construction: Each conductor is individually insulated and concentrically covered with a thin overlapping metallic nonmagnetic shielding tape; the three conductors are then cabled together, wrapped with metallic or nonmetallic binder tape, and sheathed. The purpose of the metallic shielding tape around each conductor is to control electrostatic stress, reduce corona formation, decrease thermal resistance, minimize circulating currents, and limit power under normal operating conditions. Shielding tape of only 3 mils thickness is used in cable construction.

Oil-filled cables: Oil-filled paper-insulated cables are available in single- or three-conductor cables. Single-conductor oil-filled cable consists of a concentric stranded conductor built around an open helical spring core, which serves as a channel for the flow of low-viscosity oil. This cable is insulated and sheathed in the same manner as the solid paper-insulated cable. Three-conductor oil-filled cables are all of shielded design and have three oil channels composed of helical springs that extend through the cable in the space normally occupied by filler material.

Varnished cambric

A thin plain cotton or linen fabric of fine, close weave that is applied as tape; it has a high dielectric strength, low dielectric losses, excellent resistance, good flexibility, good mechanical strength, and fair resistance to moisture. It can be used outdoors above ground and is always covered with an impervious jacket, such as flamenol. Underground installations using this type of cable require a lead sheath. It has a maximum operating temperature of 85°C at 5 kV and below 77°C at 15 kV. The maximum short-circuit is 200°C for this cable.

Asbestos

Asbestos-insulated wire and cable can have their principal usefulness in locations where the ambient temperature is high (over 50°C or 60°C). Their use is imperative in ambient over 85°C since this is the maximum safe operating temperature of most commonly used insulating materials, except silicone insulation.

Rubber and rubber-like compounds (polymeric insulation)

This type of cable can be classified as follows:

1. NEC compounds
2. Elastomers
3. Thermoplastics
4. Thermosettings

The rubber and rubber-like insulated cables enjoy their popularity owing to moisture resistance, ease of handling, ease of splicing, and extreme flexibility. Elastomers are materials that can be compressed, stretched, or deformed like rubber and yet retain their original shape. The thermoplastics materials soften when they are reheated, whereas thermosetting-type insulation has very little tendency to soften upon reheating after vulcanization. The earlier oil-based natural rubber compounds have been replaced by synthetic materials, which have better electrical and mechanical characteristics. The following synthetic rubber-like compounds are in use today:

Ethylene propylene rubber (EPR), an elastomer compound: EPR is commonly used in power cables, but is also gaining use in telecommunications and other types of cables. EPR possesses good chemical, mechanical, and electrical properties. However, it is not inherently flame retardant. It has a maximum operating temperature of 90°C, and maximum rated voltage (phase–phase) of 138 kV.

Neoprene, an elastomer compound: Neoprene is one of the most common materials in use for cable jackets. It is used where service conditions are usually abrasive. Since neoprene is not inherently flame retarding, it is usually compounded with the necessary flame retarding chemicals when used as cable jackets.

Hypalon, an elastomer compound: Hypalon is also a commonly used material for cable jackets. It has properties similar to neoprene, and in addition exhibits better thermal stability and resistance to ozone and oxidation.

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), a thermoplastic compound: It is flexible, has good electrical properties, and requires no external jacket. Cables using this insulation are rated up to 600 V; maximum operating temperature is 60°C for power applications; maximum short-circuit rating temperature is 150°C. NEC designation is T, TW. It is available in several colors and is mainly used as low-voltage cable systems.

Polyethylene (PE), a thermoplastic compound: It melts at very low temperatures (i.e., 110°C). It is also severely affected by corona. It has a high coefficient of thermal expansion. However, it has excellent electrical and moisture-resistance properties. It has a low cost. Its maximum operating temperature is 75°C and maximum short-circuit temperature is 150°C. It is used in low- and medium-voltage applications.

Buna, a thermosetting compound: It combines the most desirable properties of low-voltage insulation. It has the advantages of heat and moisture resistance, excellent aging qualities, and good electrical characteristics. However, it lacks resistance to ozone. NEC designation is RHW. Its maximum operating temperature is 75°C and short-circuit temperature is 200°C.

Butyl, a thermosetting compound: It has a high resistance to moisture, heat, and ozone. NEC designation is RHH. It has a maximum operating temperature of 90°C and short-circuit temperature of 200°C.

Silicone rubber, a thermosetting compound: It is extremely resistant to flame, ozone, and corona. It has a maximum operating temperature of 125°C and a maximum short-circuit temperature of 250°C. It has poor mechanical strength.

XLPE, a thermosetting compound: It has excellent electrical properties and high resistance to moisture and chemical contaminants. It is severely affected by corona and has an operating temperature of 90°C. Its short-circuit temperature is 250°C. It can be applied on up to 35 kV distribution systems.

Mineral insulated (MI) cables

The design of MI cable differs very widely from conventional types of cable. Basically, it consists of a single- or multiple-conductor insulated cable with magnesium oxide and sheathed with copper tubing. NEC operating temperature designation for this cable is 85°C. However, it can be used up to 250°C operating temperature.

Teflon
Teflon is used where high temperatures, moisture, and chemicals are present. Teflon is also resistant to oils. It is rated up to 200°C.

6.2.5 Shielding and Semiconducting Tape

Power cables at voltages above 2000 V usually have shielding and semiconducting tape. Cable shielding system consists of "strand shield" and "insulation shield system."

Insulation shield system
The insulation shield system is comprised of two conductive components: a semi-conductive layer called "semi-con" and metallic (conductive) layer. The insulation shield system is installed on the outer surface of the insulation and hence is called "the outer shield." The purpose of the semi-con is to remove air voids between the metallic shield and the insulation.

Shielding is accomplished by wrapping a thin (0.005 in.) copper tape spirally around the insulation to form a continuous shield along the entire length of the cable. This tape may or may not be perforated to reduce losses and is held to ground potential by suitable grounding.

Shielding is necessary on medium and HV cables to

1. Prevent damage from corona.
2. Confine dielectric field to the inside of cables or conductor insulation.
3. Give symmetrical stress.
4. Reduce induced voltages.
5. Provide increased safety to human life.

The shield must be grounded at one end and preferably at more than one point. The usual practice is to ground the shield at each termination and splice. Shielding is discussed in more detail under Section 6.6.

Strand shielding (semiconducting tape)
Except on 600 V rubber and varnished cambric cables, semiconducting tape is used to separate the conductor from the rubber insulation to prevent possible damage of the insulation from corona and ionization. The solid line in Figure 6.1 shows how voltage stress may develop in the air spaces between conductor strands and insulation, thereby causing the ionization of air and breakdown of cable insulation. The application of semiconducting tape smooths the voltage stress, as shown by the dashed lines, and keeps such voltage stress constant and to a minimum. This application of the semiconducting tape is known as "strand shielding." Modern cables are generally constructed with an extruded strand shield.

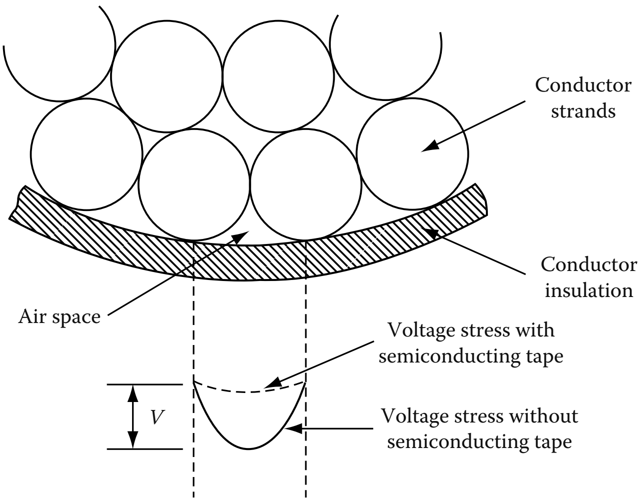


FIGURE 6.1
Distribution of voltage stress in the air gaps between conductor strands and insulation.

6.2.6 Finishes and Jackets

A wide variety of finishes are used; they are referred to as jackets, sheaths, armors, and braids. These coverings are required primarily because of the physical or chemical characteristics of the particular insulation involved and the required mechanical protection. Finishes can be divided into two categories: (1) metallic finishes and (2) nonmetallic finishes.

Metallic finishes
Metallic armor should be applied where a high degree of mechanical protection is required along with protection from rodents, termites, and the like. All metallic sheaths are subject to electrolytic damage. Metallic finishes are subdivided into the following:

Lead sheaths: One of the earliest types of metallic sheaths still in use.

Flat-band armor: Consists of jute bedding, two helical tape wraps, and a protective jute covering over the tapes. The tape may be either galvanized or plain steel.

Interlocked armor: Consists of galvanized steel, aluminum, or bronze strip (0.750 in. wide and 0.020–0.030 in. thick) over the cable in such a way as to provide excellent protection.

Aluminum-sheathed cable: A recently introduced cable that offers advantages such as lightweight, resistance to fatigue, good corrosion resistance, and positive moisture barrier.

Wire armor: Available in two types, round and basket-weave or braided wire.

Round wire armor offers extremely strong cable and has high tensile strength for vertical applications. Braided or basket-weave wire armor consists of a braid of metal wire woven directly over the cable as an outer covering where additional mechanical strength is required.

Nonmetallic finishes

Most of the nonmetallic finishes include PVC, PE, neoprene, hyplon, and EPR.

1. *PVC:* This covering (i.e., finish) offers excellent moisture-resistance characteristics, but does not provide mechanical protection.
2. *PE:* It has excellent resistance to water, ozone, and oxidation. It is resistant to gasoline, solvents, and flames.
3. *Neoprene:* It is commonly recommended where service conditions are usually abrasive and extreme. By itself, it is not flame retardant.
4. *Hyplon:* It possesses similar properties as neoprene, but also has better thermal stability and resistance to ozone and oxidation.
5. *EPR:* It exhibits excellent weathering properties and is resistant to ozone. It has good chemical and mechanical properties, but is not inherently flame retardant.
6. *Braids:* Generally, present-day trends are away from the use of nonmetallic braid coverings. Braids may be of the following types:
   a. Heat- and moisture-resistant cotton braid
   b. Flame-resistant cotton braid
   c. Asbestos braid

6.2.7 Cable Construction

Low-voltage cables (less than 2000 V): The low-voltage cable consists of the center conductor surrounded by an insulation layer which provides the electrical insulation. The insulation may be covered by a protective jacket. This type of cable construction is also known as nonshielded construction.

Medium-voltage cables (2001–35,000 V): The majority of medium-voltage cables are constructed as shield construction. However, it is not uncommon to find medium-voltage cables up to 5 kV being of nonshielded construction. The shielded construction cable can be classified into two major types. For direct burial use, such as underground rural distribution (URD), the cable is known as concentric neutral cable. It consists of the conductor, strand shield (semiconductor), insulation, neutral, and jacket as shown in Figure 6.2a. The other shielded construction-type cable consists of the conductor, strand shield (semiconductor), insulation, insulation shield (semiconductor), metallic shield, and jacket as shown in Figure 6.2b. The purpose of the strand shield is to minimize corona by equalizing the voltage gradients across the air gap

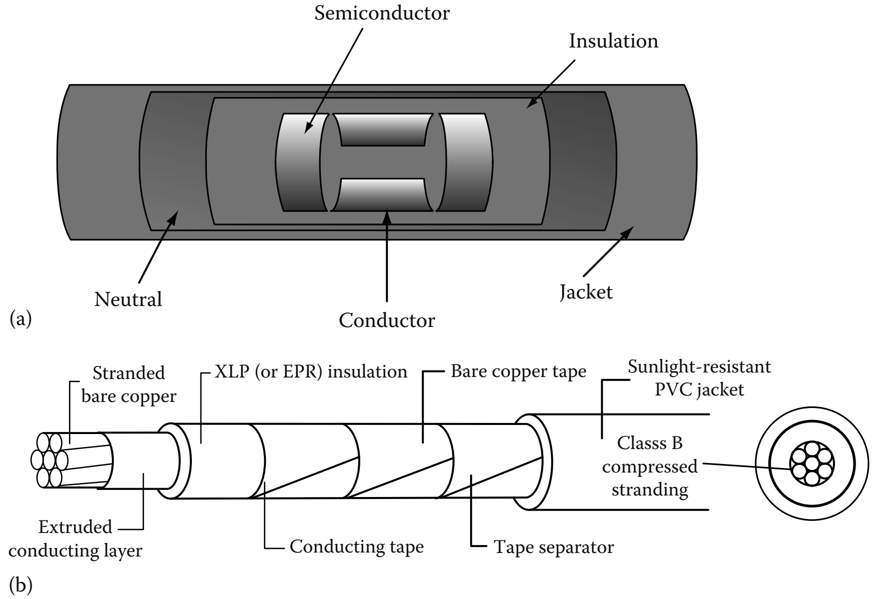


FIGURE 6.2
(a) Concentric neutral cable and (b) medium-voltage shielded cable.

between the conductor strands as explained in Section 6.2.5. The semiconductor over the insulation serves a similar purpose as the strand shield by enclosing the insulation completely and equalizing the electric field within the cable. The metallic shield serves as an electric shield which equalizes and confines the electric field inside the cable. By equalizing the electric field in the cable, the voltage stress is uniformly distributed around the cable, thereby eliminating any high points of voltage stress in the cable. This enhances the cable life and reliability.

6.3 Cable Characteristics

The electrical characteristics of cables are concerned with the electrical constants most commonly required for power system calculations. These electrical constants, such as positive sequence impedance (Z_1), negative sequence impedance (Z_2), and zero sequence (Z_0), are used in the application of symmetrical components for calculations of short-circuit currents, unbalanced voltages, and their phase relationships among sheaths and conductors, which are important in the calculation of reactance, capacitance, insulation resistance, and dielectric loss. The cable geometry for single- and three-conductor cable is shown in Figure 6.3. The cable

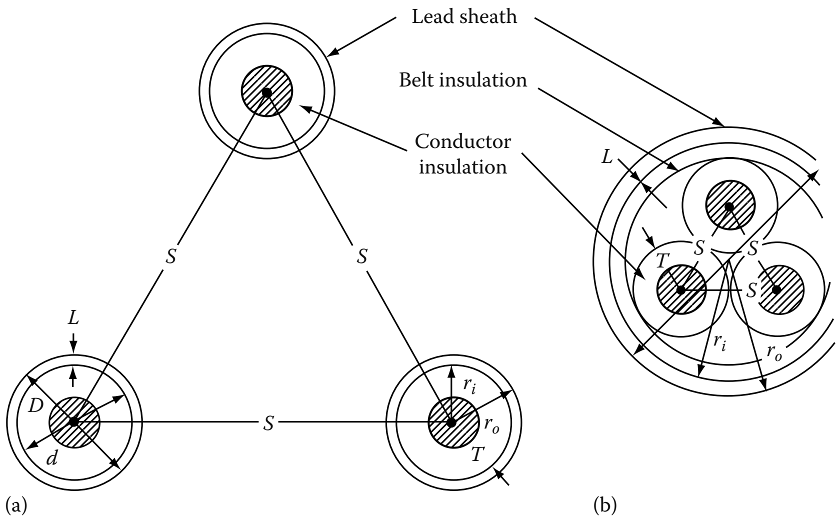


FIGURE 6.3
Cable geometry: (a) single-conductor cable and (b) three-conductor cable.

ratings provide the basic information regarding its application and use. A basic knowledge of cable ratings is essential for correct selection and application of cables. Exceeding cable ratings or their misapplication can be hazardous to property and personnel, as well as to successful operation of the plant or facility.

Cable properties
The two properties of cables, as mentioned, are geometry of cables and electrical constants. A general rule is that regardless of the complexity of mutual inductive relations between component parts of individual phases, the method of symmetrical components can be applied rigorously whenever there is symmetry among phases. All three-conductor cables satisfy this condition by the nature of their construction; single conductor cable may or may not. However, the error is very small when they are treated similarly as three-conductor cables. The space relationship among sheaths and conductors in a cable circuit is a major factor in determining reactance, capacitance, charging current, insulation resistance, dielectric loss, and thermal resistance. The physical characteristics of cables can be determined from the geometry of cables, which is described next.

Geometric mean radius
The geometric mean radius (GMR) is a property usually applied to the conductor alone, and depends on the material and stranding used in its construction. One component of conductor reactance is normally calculated by evaluating the integrated flux linkages both inside and outside the conductor within an overall 12 in. radius. Consider a solid conductor that has some of

the flux lines lying within the conductor and contributing to the total flux linkages, even though they link only a portion of the total conductor current. Now consider a tubular conductor having an infinitely thin wall substituted for the solid conductor; it has a flux that would necessarily lie external to the tube. Therefore, a theoretical tubular conductor, to be inductively equivalent to a solid conductor, must have a smaller radius so that the flux linkages present inside the solid conductor, but absent within the tube, will be replaced by additional linkages between the tube surface and the limiting cylinder of 12 in. radius. A solid copper conductor of radius $d/2$ is equivalent to a tubular conductor radius $0.779d/2$. This equivalent radius is called the GMR of the actual conductor. This quantity can be used in reactance calculations without further reference to the shape or makeup of the conductor. The factor by which actual radius must be multiplied to obtain GMR varies with stranding and hollow-core construction.

Geometric mean distance (GMD)

Spacing among conductors or between conductors and sheaths is important in determining total circuit reactance. The total flux linkage surrounding a conductor can be divided into two components, one extending inward from the cylinder of 12 in. radius and the other extending outward from this cylinder to the current return path beyond which there are no net flux linkages.

The flux linkages per unit conductor current between the 12 in. cylinder and the return path are functions of the separation of the conductor and its return path. GMD is therefore a term that can be used in the expression for the external flux linkages, not only in the simple case of two adjacent conductors, where it is equal to the distance between conductor centers, but also in the more complex case where two circuits, each composed of several conductors, are separated by an equivalent GMD.

The positive or negative sequence reactance of a three-phase circuit depends on separation among phase conductors. If the conductors are equilaterally spaced, the distance from one conductor center to another is equal to the GMD among conductors for that circuit. The GMD for three-conductor cable is $\text{GMD}_{3c} = S$ for an equilateral circuit where S is the distance between each conductor. If the conductors are arranged other than equilaterally as shown in Figure 6.4, but transposed along their length to produce a balanced circuit, the equivalent separation may be calculated by deriving the GMD from the cube root of three distance products. This is expressed as follows:

$$\text{GMD}_{3c} = \sqrt[3]{S_{ab}S_{bc}S_{ca}}$$

The component of circuit reactance caused by flux outside a 12 in. radius is widely identified as the reactance spacing factor (X_d) and can be calculated directly from GMD.

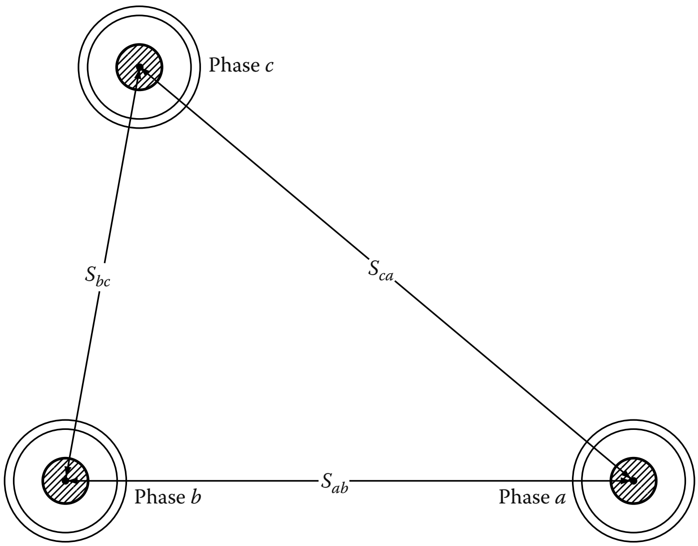


FIGURE 6.4
Single-conductor cable unsymmetrically spaced but perfectly transposed.

$$X_{\mathrm{d}} = 0.2794 \frac{f}{60} \log_{10} \frac{\mathrm{GMD}_{3c}}{12} \ \Omega/\text{phase mile}$$

When equivalent separation is less than 12 in., as can occur in cable circuits, the reactance spacing factor is negative so as to subtract from the component of conductor reactance due to flux out to a 12 in. radius.

The zero-sequence reactance of a three-phase circuit may depend on spacing among conductors and sheath.

Geometric factor
The relation in space between the cylinders formed by the sheath internal surface and conductor external surface in a single-conductor lead-sheath cable can be expressed as a geometric factor. The factor is applicable to the calculation of cable characteristics such as capacitance, charging current, dielectric loss, leakage current, and heat transfer. The mathematical expression for geometric factor G in a single-conductor cable is

$$G = 2.303 \log_{10} \frac{2r_{\mathrm{i}}}{d}$$

where

r_{i} is the inside radius of sheath
d is the outside diameter of conductor

6.4 Electrical Constants

The following electrical constants are used in the application of power cables.

Positive- and negative-sequence resistance
The resistance of a conductor to positive- and negative-sequence currents is affected by the following factors.

Skin effect: This effect is due to unequal distribution of alternating current (AC) flowing in a conductor because of the tendency of the current to flow more on the outside than inside strands of the conductor. This results in a higher resistance to AC than direct current (DC). Usually this effect can be neglected in smaller conductors.

Proximity effect: This effect is due to alternating magnetic flux produced by circulating current in a conductor caused by the current flowing in a neighboring conductor. This effect increases the resistance of a conductor. It can become pronounced where cables are installed parallel to metal beams, plates, walls, and the like.

Sheath currents: The alternating current (AC) flowing in a sheathed single conductor induces voltage in the sheath. Since the sheath is bonded and grounded at both ends, currents flow longitudinally, causing I^2R losses. One way to account for these losses is to increase the resistance of the conductor.

Positive- and negative-sequence reactance
The reactance of a single lead-sheath conductor to positive- and negative-sequence current can be calculated by taking into account the effect of sheath currents. It can be expressed mathematically by the following:

$$X_1 = X_2 = X_a + X_d - X_s \ \Omega/\text{mile/phase}$$

where
X_1 is the positive-sequence reactance
X_2 is the negative-sequence reactance
X_a is the self-reactance of conductor at 1 ft radius
X_d is the reactance of conductor beyond 1 ft radius
X_s is the equivalent reactance value due to sheath currents

For three-phase conductors, X_s can be neglected and the positive and negative reactances are $X_1 = X_2 = X_a + X_d$ Ω/mile/phase.

Zero-sequence resistance and reactance
When zero-sequence currents flow in the three-phase system, the return path is usually either through the earth ground, sheath, ground wire, or

a combination of these paths. In actual installation, the following combination of paths should be considered:

1. All currents in the ground, none in sheath
2. All currents in the sheath, none in ground
3. All currents in sheath and ground

When low-voltage cables are installed in magnetic ducts, the zero-sequence resistance and reactance are influenced by the magnetic material surrounding the conductor. No methods have been developed yet to accurately calculate the zero-sequence impedance. However, test data are available to give the required zero-sequence impedance data in standard reference handbooks on transmission and distribution of electrical power for various sizes of cables.

Shunt capacitance reactance

The positive-, negative-, and zero-sequence shunt capacitive reactances of cable are the same and can be expressed mathematically as follows:

$$C_1 = C_2 = C_0 = \frac{0.0892K}{G}\,\mu\text{F/phase/mile}$$

or

$$X_1 = X_2 = X_0 = \frac{1.79G}{fK}\,\text{M}\Omega\text{/phase/mile}$$

where

K is the dielectric constant

X_1, X_2, and X_0 are positive-, negative-, and zero-sequence reactances

C_1, C_2, and C_0 are positive-, negative-, and zero-sequence capacitive reactances

G is the conductance of the cable

f is the frequency of the power system

$$I_1 = I_2 = \frac{0.97fK\,\text{kV}}{1000G}\,\text{A / phase / mile}$$

$$I_0 = \frac{0.323fK\,\text{kV}}{1000G_0}\,\text{A/phase/mile}$$

where I_1, I_2, and I_0 are positive-, negative-, and zero-sequence charging currents.

Insulation resistance

The insulation resistance of the cable is very difficult to calculate because of varying insulation properties. However, a generalized formula can be expressed in terms of the power factor (PF) of the insulation system. For single-conductor cable,

$$r_1 = r_2 = r_0 = \frac{0.597G \times 10^6}{fK \cos\theta}$$

and for three-conductor belted cable,

$$r_1 = r_2 z = \frac{0.597G \times 10^6}{fK \cos\theta}$$

where

r_1, r_2, and r_0 are positive-, negative-, and zero-sequence shunt resistances
G is the geometric factor
K is the dielectric constant
$\cos\theta$ is the insulation PF per unit

6.5 Cable Ratings

A basic knowledge of cable ratings is very important in order to select and apply cables for distribution and utilization of power. The following brief description of cable ratings will provide the basis for selecting and applying cables.

Continuous current-carrying rating
The current-carrying capacity of cable is affected by several factors:

1. Maximum allowable temperature
2. Total watt loss (I^2R_c) of the cable
3. Ability to dissipate heat
4. Ambient temperature

The maximum conductor temperature is determined by the maximum temperature the insulation system can withstand for extended periods of time without damage. The maximum temperature in turn can be affected by the ability to dissipate heat and the ambient temperature of the medium in which the cable is installed to operate. The sum of ambient temperature and temperature rise in the insulation system should not exceed the total allowable temperature of the conductor for safe operation. Aluminum conductors can be expressed in terms of copper conductors for purposes of current-carrying capacity. The conversion factors to convert the current capacity of the same size aluminum conductor as copper can be expressed in terms of the resistance ratio of copper to aluminum, that is, R_{Cu}/R_{Al}, where R_{Cu} and R_{Al} are, respectively, the resistance of copper and aluminum conductors at rated temperature. The effect of temperature on current rating is shown in Figure 6.5. As the temperature of the conductor goes up, so does its resistance. The total loss of the cable is a function of the effective resistance of the conductor at maximum allowable temperature.

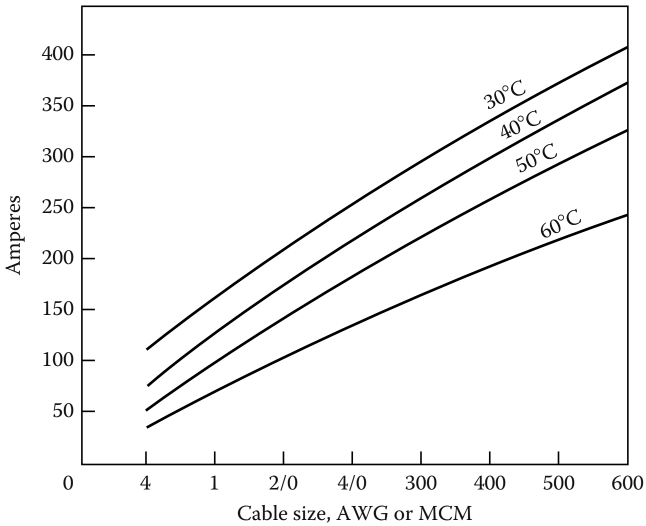


FIGURE 6.5
Effect of ambient temperature on current rating. (From *G.E. Cable Data Book*.)

Emergency current-carrying rating
The service life of cable is based upon its normal loading limits and normal operating temperature. The normal life expectancy of a cable insulation system is approximately 30 years. However, if the cable system is operated at 5°C–10°C above its temperature rating, it is to be expected that the cable life expectancy will be halved and its average rate of failure doubled. Another disadvantage in operating cables over their temperature rating is that copper loss is directly proportional to the square of current and resistance. Furthermore, because of increased resistance and current, the voltage drop may be excessive and may jeopardize equipment and service continuity. Any program to operate the cables beyond the limit of their current and temperature ratings must be judiciously undertaken. To calculate the emergency rating of cables, the following formula may be used:

$$J_0 = j_c\sqrt{\frac{(t_0 - t_a)}{(t_c - t_a)} \times \frac{R_c}{R_0}}$$

where:
- J_o is the emergency overload current
- j_c is the continuous current
- t_o is the emergency overload temperature
- t_a is the ambient temperature
- t_c is the maximum operating temperature
- R_c is the conductor resistance at maximum operating temperature
- R_o is the conductor resistance at emergency overload temperature

Overloading should be less than 100 h/year. Rubber-insulated cables may be operated at overloading temperature in accordance with Table 6.1.

TABLE 6.1

Emergency Overload Temperature of Rubber-Insulated Cables

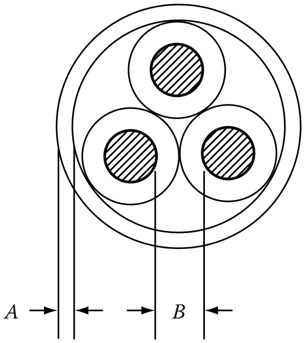
Voltage Rating	Type of Cable	Maximum Operating Temperature (°C)	Emergency Overloading Temperature (°C)
600 V	PVC	60	75
	Butyl	90	125
	Silicone	125	150
	Polyethylene	75	85
1–5 kV	PVC	75	85
	Butyl	90	125
	Silicone	125	150
15 kV	Butyl	85	105
	Silicone	125	150

Voltage rating

The voltage ratings of cables are specified as the line-to-line voltage that they can withstand. However, the insulation thickness is based upon line-to-ground voltage. To specify the system voltage for procurement and installation of cables is not sufficient. It is necessary to specify also the type of system that the cable will use. Assume a cable application on a grounded 15 kV system, for which the insulation will be based upon line-to-ground voltage, that is 15/1.73 = 8.66 kV. Whereas on a 15 kV ungrounded system, the insulation thickness will be based on 15 kV because that is the voltage imposed on unfaulted conductors. The basis for voltage thickness for 15 kV belted cable operating at 13.8 kV grounded system is illustrated in Figure 6.6.

Short-circuit rating

All cable systems have thermal limitations, which are specified in terms of short-circuit withstand temperatures and current ratings. Under a short-circuit condition, the temperature of the conductor rises very rapidly. If the conductor is not sized to withstand the available short-circuit current, it will melt, resulting in cable failure. Because of the insulation sheath surrounding the conductor and its characteristics, it will cool off very slowly after the fault has been removed. The temperatures shown in Table 6.1 should not be exceeded per standards of the Insulated Cable Engineering Association (ICEA) for more than 10 s. Cable manufacturers publish current-withstand ratings for all sizes of conductors. The NEC requires that systems should be designed to have full withstand capability. Every cable installation should be checked for short-circuit withstand rating; otherwise, severe damage or complete failure may result. Failure may be accompanied by fire and smoke, thus resulting in danger to personnel and property. Also, because of thermal expansion due to intense heat under short-circuit conditions, the cable may be permanently damaged if not correctly selected for this purpose.



In this type of construction each conductor insulation is based on one-half line-to-line voltage. The belt insulation is based upon the difference of line-to-ground voltage minus one-half the line-to-line voltage. The overall thickness of insulation is the sum of the belt and conductor thickness.
Insulation required at *A* and *B* is:

$$A = \frac{13.8\text{ kV}}{1.73} \quad \frac{13.8\text{ kV}}{2} = 2.0\text{ kV}$$

$$B = \frac{13.8}{2} = 6.7\text{ kV}$$

The insulation thickness required for the 13.8 kV grounded system is $A + B = (2.0 + 6.7)\text{ kV} = 8.7\text{ kV}$

FIGURE 6.6
Insulation thickness for three-phase belted cable.

6.6 Cable Selection and Application

It is essential to know cable construction, characteristics, and ratings to understand problems related to cable systems. However, to correctly select a cable system and assure its satisfactory operation, additional knowledge is required. This knowledge may consist of service conditions, type of load served, mode of operation and maintenance, and the like. The key to the successful operation of a cable system is to select the most suitable cable for the application, make a correct installation, and perform the required maintenance. In this section, discussion is based on the correct selection and application of a cable system for power distribution and utilization. Cable selection can be based upon the following five factors:

1. Cable installation
2. Cable construction
3. Cable operation (voltage and current)
4. Cable size
5. Shielding requirements

Cable installation
Cables can be used for outdoor or indoor installations depending upon the distribution system and the load served. Installation of a cable system will be discussed later.

Cable construction
Selection and application of cable involves the type of cable construction needed for a particular installation. Cable construction involves conductors, cable arrangement, and insulation and finish covering.

Conductors
Conductor materials such as copper and aluminum should be given consideration with regard to workmanship, environmental conditions, and maintenance. The requirements for aluminum conductors with regard to these factors are more critical than for copper conductors. Cable conductors should be selected based upon the class of stranding required for a particular installation.

Cable arrangement
Conductors can be arranged to form single-conductor or three-conductor cable. There are certain advantages and disadvantages to both types of arrangements. Single conductors are easier to install, easier to splice, and allow the formation of multiple-cable circuits. On the other hand, they have higher reactance than three-conductor cable. Shielded single conductors carry high shield currents, and consideration must be given to preventing overheating of the cable. Single-conductor cables are subject to considerable movement owing to the mechanical stresses produced by the short-circuit currents or high inrush currents. Three-conductor cable with an overall jacket has the lowest reactance, and voltage stress distribution is balanced owing to equivalent spacing between conductors.

The availability of ground wire in three-conductor cable or a separate ground wire with single-conductor cable is an important consideration. Since the ground conductor in three-conductor cable construction provides the lowest impedance path, it offers a good system ground. Similarly, a separate ground in the same conduit as the power conductors provides a better ground return path than a ground path via the equipment or building steel. The selection and application of a cable system should be based on correct selection of the type of cable arrangement required for the purpose.

Insulation and finish covering
The selection of cable insulation and finish covering is normally based on the type of installation, ambient operating temperature, service conditions, type of load served, and other criteria as applicable. In many installations unusual conditions may be prevalent, such as corrosive atmosphere, high ambient temperature, insect and rodent hazard, presence of oil and solvents, presence of ozone, and extreme cold. In certain applications, two or more of these unusual conditions may be present, in which case the selection of suitable cables becomes much more difficult.

Cable operation
The insulation of the cable must be able to withstand the voltage stresses experienced during normal and abnormal operating conditions. Therefore the selection of the cable insulation should be made on the basis of the applicable phase-to-phase voltage and the general system category which

are classified as either 100%, 133%, or 173% insulation levels. These insulation levels are discussed as follows:

100% level: Cables in this category may be applied where the system is provided with relay protection which normally clears ground faults within 1 min. This category is usually referred to as the grounded systems.

133% level: Cables in this category may be applied where the system is provided with relay protection which normally clears ground faults within 1 h. This category is usually referred to as the low resistance grounded, or ungrounded systems.

173% level: Cables in this category may be applied where the time needed to de-energize the ground fault is indefinite. This level is recommended for ungrounded and for resonant grounded systems.

The current capacity that the cable needs to carry is determined by the load it serves. The NEC is very specific in terms of sizing conductors for systems operating below 600 V. The current-carrying ability of cable is based upon an operating ambient temperature. When cables are installed in multiple duct banks, it is essential to derate the cable current capacity in order not to exceed its thermal rating. In cases where cables may be load cycled, the current-carrying capacity may be calculated by the following formula:

$$I_{eq} = \frac{EI^2t}{T}$$

where
I_{eq} is the equivalent current-carrying capacity
I is the constant current for a particular time period
t is the time period of constant current
T is the total time of duty cycle
E is the voltage of the cable

The equivalent current-carrying capacity should be used for selecting the conductor size for thermal withstand.

Cable size
The selection of cable size is based upon the following factors:

1. Current-carrying capacity
2. Voltage regulation
3. Short-circuit rating

These factors should be evaluated before selecting a cable size. In many instances voltage regulation and short-circuit rating factors are overlooked. This oversight can result in danger to property and personnel, as well as destruction of the cable itself.

Current-carrying capacity

The current-carrying capacity of a cable is based upon its thermal heating. The NEC publishes tables listing the current capacity for various-sized cables. The ICEA publishes current ratings for various types of insulations and installation conditions. If it is required to carry capacity larger than 500 MCM, it is normal practice to parallel two smaller conductors. The current rating of cable is based upon certain spacing to permit thermal dissipation. If this spacing is smaller where the cable is to be installed, then derating of cable is required.

Voltage regulation

In correctly designed electrical power systems, voltage regulation is usually not a problem. Voltage drops for excessively long runs at low voltage should be checked to ensure correct load voltage. In rotating loads, checks should be made both on steady-state voltage regulation and during starting. The NEC specifies a 5% limit of voltage drop for electrical power distribution systems.

Short-circuit rating

The cable size selected should be checked for short-circuit withstand capability, which should be based upon the circuit opening time for short-circuit condition. In other words, the cable should hold without any thermal damage to it until such time as the fault can be removed by the switching device, such as a circuit breaker or fuse.

Shielding

In selecting and applying cables at medium voltage, a major consideration involves whether the cable should be shielded or nonshielded. Shielding was briefly discussed previously in Section 6.2.5 as to why it is necessary at medium voltages. The conditions under which shielded cable is to be selected and applied need further discussion. The application of shielded cable involves the following considerations:

1. Type of insulation system
2. Whether the system neutral is grounded or ungrounded
3. Safety and reliability requirements of the system

In power systems where there is no shield or metallic covering, the electric field is partly in the air and partly in the insulation system. If the electric field is intense, such as in the case of high and medium voltage, surface discharges will take place and cause ionization of the air particles. The ionization of air causes ozone generation, which can deteriorate certain insulations and finish coverings. In the application of nonshielded cable on ungrounded systems, damage to insulation or jackets can be caused by leakage current if the surface of the cable is moist or covered with soot, grease, dirt, or other conducting film.

In duct-type installations where nonshielded, nonmetallic cable is used, the external electric field may be high enough to pose a safety hazard to personnel working on single cable in multicircuit installations. In cases where portable cables, cable assemblies, or exposed overhead cable installations are used and may be handled by personnel, serious safety hazards may exist if nonshielded cable is used. Shielding should be considered for nonmetallic cable operating in excess of 2kV where any of the following conditions exist:

1. Damp conduits
2. Connection to aerial wires
3. Transition from a conducting to a nonconducting environment, such as from moist to dry earth
4. Dry soil
5. Dirty environment containing soot, salt, and other contaminants
6. Where safety to personnel is required
7. Where radio interference is expected

The ICEA has set up voltage limits above which insulation shielding is required for rubber and thermoplastic-insulated cables. These values are shown in Table 6.2. The insulation shield must be grounded at least at one end and preferably at two or more points. The cable shield must be grounded also at all terminations, splices, and taps with stress cones. The shield should be operated at ground potential. Multiple grounding will ensure safety and reliability of the cable circuits. The ground path from the shield should be of low resistance to keep the shield near ground potential.

TABLE 6.2

Insulation Shielding Requirements for Rubber and Thermoplastic-Insulated Cables

		Single Conductor		Three Conductor	
No.	**Cable Type**	**Grounded (kV)**	**Ungrounded (kV)**	**Grounded (kV)**	**Ungrounded (kV)**
1	Sheathed cable	5	5	5	5
2	Interlocked cable	5	5	5	5
3	Fibrous covered cable	2	2	2	2
4	Nonozone resistant	2	2	2	2
5	Ozone resistant				
	In metallic conduits	5	3	5	5
	Ungrounded conduits	3	3	5	5
	Aerially in ties	3	3	5	5
	Aerially with metallic binder	5	5	5	5
	Direct buried	3	3	5	5

6.7 Installation of Cables

After having made the correct selection of cable to meet load requirements and other system characteristics, it is important that cables be installed and maintained correctly. A good understanding of local conditions, installation crews, and maintenance personnel is essential to assure that the selected cable system will operate satisfactorily. Many times cable insulation is damaged or weakened during installation by applying the incorrect pulling tensions. Designs of conduit systems not only should minimize the number of conduit bends and distances between manholes but also should specify the pulling tensions. The inspection personnel should ensure that installation crews do not exceed these values during installations. It is also important that correct bending radius be maintained in order to avoid unnecessary stress points. Once a correct installation is made, routine inspection, testing, and maintenance should be carried out on a regular basis to chart the gradual deterioration and upkeep of the cable system. Cable systems are the arteries of the electric power distribution system and carry the energy required for the successful operation of a plant. Following is a brief discussion on cable installation and maintenance.

There are several types of cable systems available for carrying electrical energy in a given distribution system. The selection of a particular system may be influenced by local conditions, existing company policies, or past experience. No set standards or established guidelines can be given for the selection of a particular system. Following is a general discussion of the various types of installations, bending data, and pulling tensions that, combined with sound engineering judgment, will be helpful in selecting a system for a particular installation.

6.7.1 Outdoor Installations

Cable can be installed underground or overhead. Today most cable is installed underground in conduit banks or direct burial, even though the trend for outdoor overhead installation is becoming popular. The underground installation of cables in nonmetallic ducts will result in smaller impedance than for cables in metallic ducts. Since conduits may become flooded, only cable insulations approved for this purpose should be installed in ducts. Cable failures in underground ducts are difficult to locate and repair. Therefore, maintenance personnel should be trained and equipped with correct equipment to troubleshoot cable faults and make repairs.

Several types of cable construction are available for direct-burial service. Cable selected for direct-burial service should have excellent mechanical strength in order to withstand rough environmental surroundings. Cables without jackets should be avoided for direct-burial service.

Low- and medium-voltage aerial cable lashed to a supporting steel messenger cable is becoming popular for overhead installations because of its many advantages, such as low reactance, adaptability, better appearance, and voltage regulation. Another type of overhead installation that is gaining popularity is interlocked armor installed in racks or cable trays because of

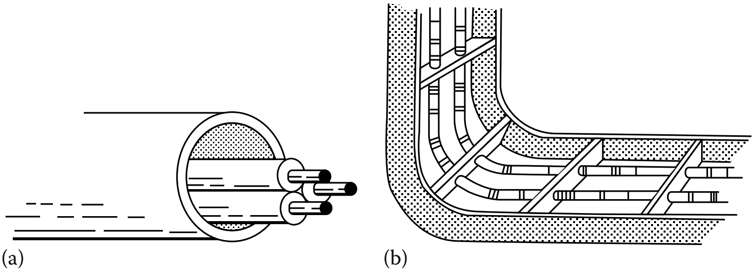


FIGURE 6.7
(a) Cable in conduit and (b) interlocked armor cable in racks.

advantages such as flexibility, ease of installation, and good mechanical and chemical protection.

6.7.2 Indoor Installations

The conventional installation of indoor cables has been in conduit (Figure 6.7a). However, interlocked armor cable is gaining popularity recently, especially in industrial plants. This cable can be installed overhead in racks or cable trays (Figure 6.7b), thus eliminating the expensive conduit systems. The racks bonded together provide the ground circuit similar to the conduit system.

Because of this cable being installed in open air, it has higher current rating. An overall jacket of PVC is available for this cable for installations where corrosive atmosphere may be present.

6.7.3 Bending Data

The ICEA recommended values of minimum bending radii for rubber and rubber-like compounds and varnished cambric cables are given in Table 6.3. As mentioned before, it is important to install cables without sharp bends to minimize stress points. The ICEA recommended bending data do not apply to conduits in which cables may be pulled under tension. In cases of conduit bends, larger radius bend should be required.

6.7.4 Pulling Tensions

Since cables can be damaged by applying excessive pulling tension or by sharp bends in poorly constructed duct banks, the following are some of the cautions that should be considered to minimize damage to cables during installation.

1. Do not exceed the required fill as set by the NEC.
2. Calculate the jam ratio for the selected cable and conduit sizes.
3. Avoid sharp bends of the cable during pulling.
4. Use adequate lubrication to avoid friction. (Use the correct kind of lubricant.)

TABLE 6.3

Recommended Bending Data for Cable

		Minimum Bending Radii as a Multiple of Cable Diameter		
Type of Cable	**Insulation Thickness (in.)**	**1 in. or less**	**1.01–2.00 in.**	**2.00 in. and over**
Thermosetting and thermoplastic without metallic shielding	10/64 and less	4	5	6
	11/64 to 20/64	5	7	7
	21/64 and over	—	7	8
Varnished cambric cable without armor, single conductor, and nonbelted multiconductor	Up to 10/64	5	6	7
	11/64 to 20/64	6	6.5	7
	Over 20/64	6.5	7	7
Multiconductor	All thicknesses	5	6	7
Thermoplastic and thermosetting with shielding or armor				
Multiconductor interlocked armor, 7× diameter	Flat tape and wire armored, 12× diameter	Tape shield, 12× diameter up to 15 kV; 10× diameter up to 35 kV	Portable cable over 5 kV, 8× diameter	Portable cable below 5 kV, 6× diameter
Varnished cambric armored cables				
Interlocked armor cambric, 7× diameter			Flat tape and wire armored cable, 12× diameter	

5. Check end seals for intactness after installation.
6. In rack-type installation, use rollers to prevent cable from dragging on the rack.

In duct and conduit runs, the tension for a straight pull can be calculated by the formula

$$T = Lwf$$

where
T is the pulling weight
L is the length to feet pulled
w is the weight of cable (lb/ft)
f is the friction coefficient, approximately = 0.5

To pull cables in conduits and ducts, the cables can be gripped directly by a pulling eye or basket-weave pulling grip. The basket-weave grip is usually used for relatively light pulls, whereas pulling eye is used for heavier pulls. The following tension limitations apply when pulling cables:

Direct pull of conductor: When pulling force is applied directly to the conductor, the maximum pull should not exceed 0.008 lb/circular mil area of cross section for copper 0.008 for hard-drawn, 0.006–0.008 for three-fourth hard-drawn, 0.003–0.004 for one-half hard-drawn, 0.002–0.004 for soft aluminum and 0.75 for hard-drawn aluminum.

Grip over lead sheath: When a grip is applied over lead-sheathed cables, the pulling force shall be limited to 1500 psi of sheath cross section.

Grip over nonmetallic sheath: When a grip is applied over a nonmetallic sheathed cable, the pulling force should not be over 1000 lb provided it does not exceed the force calculated in a direct pull of conductor.

Pulling around bends: The pulling force around bends in conduit should not exceed 300 times the radius of the bend in feet.

6.8 Maintenance of Cables

Visual inspection of the cable, conduit, manholes, and so on, and electrical maintenance testing are the major maintenance procedures for cable systems.

Visual inspection

Visual inspection can be made on energized cables, but if cables are to be touched or moved they should be de-energized. Cables in vaults, substations rooms, manholes, and at other locations should be inspected for the following on a yearly basis:

1. Physical damage, sharp bends, and excessive tension
2. Oil leaks, soft spots, and insulation swelling
3. Poor ground connections, metallic-sheath bonding deterioration, corroded cable supports, and continuity of main grounding system
4. Cracked jackets of nonleaded cables
5. Damage to fireproofing
6. Tracking or corona
7. Soft spots in terminations and splices
8. Inspect the manhole for spalling concrete and standing water
9. Potheads should be inspected for oil or compound leaks (dirt and grime should be cleaned off and connections checked for tightness)

Aerial cables should be inspected for mechanical damage caused by vibration or deterioration of support and suspension system. Inspection should be made of cables for insulation abrasion and cable being bent or pinched.

6.9 Cable Failures and Their Analysis

Cables can fail due to many reasons. The cable failure modes, stressors and effects were discussed in Section 1.8.1.5 in Chapter 1 to provide some insights on cable failures. Some of the major causes for cable failures are discussed next.

Mechanical failures
Mechanical failures can be due to breaks and defects of sheath material, mechanical punctures by people or machines, or cracks due to sharp bending or vibration. Whenever mechanical damage occurs in the cable sheath, the entrance of moisture will produce slow deterioration of insulation material, resulting in eventual failure of the cable. It is important therefore to take every precaution that either direct or indirect mechanical damage be eliminated or minimized by correct selection, installation, and maintenance of cable systems.

Corrosion of sheath
Sheath corrosion can occur due to the following factors:

1. Dissimilar soil effects
2. Galvanic action
3. Acidity and alkali in conduits
4. Chemical contamination in the soil

Corrosion of sheath will eventually allow moisture to penetrate into the insulation system and cause an eventual failure. Sheath corrosion can be minimized by correct application of cathodic protection, application of insulating paints, providing adequate drainage, and removing the source of chemical contamination.

Moisture in the insulation
Because of mechanical damage or for other reasons, entrance of moisture into the insulation system will deteriorate the cable, and all precautions should be taken to prevent such entrance. Damage due to moisture can be indicated by the following:

1. Bleached or soggy paper
2. Resistance to tearing of tapes
3. Stain on the inside surface of the sheath
4. Visible water
5. Whitish powder on aluminum conductor

Heating of cables
As explained in the Section 6.5 on cable rating, increased heat rise in the cable results in insulation degradation. Heat can be due to overloading, high ambient temperatures, insufficient ventilation, manual heating due to cables being

installed too close to each other, or external sources of heat. Care must be taken not to exceed the temperature rise of the cable insulation system. This can be done by first identifying the various environmental and operating factors that will determine the correct selection of the cable insulation and conductor size. Once correct selection and installation are made, routine maintenance and inspection of cable will ensure safe and long operating life of the cable.

Fire and lightning surges
Fire in conduit or manholes can cause cable failure in adjacent manholes and junction boxes. Barriers can be installed between large groups of conductors to prevent fire damage. Lightning arresters should be installed to protect the cable where it is connected to overhead lines to minimize failures of cable due to lightning surges.

Electrical puncture
Once the insulation is weakened owing to any of the reasons already discussed, it may fail electrically. That is, the insulation system cannot confine the flow of electrical current to the conductor inside the insulation system. Failure may be line-to-ground or three line-to-ground or line-to-line faults. Obviously, if the failure is a short-circuit due to defective conductors, it will be detected by the circuit protective device. Some of the not-so-easy-to-detect electrical failures can be indicated by the following:

1. Bulging of the sheath
2. Tree design marking (dendritic)
3. Polymerized compound (wax)
4. Lack of compound in the insulation

The cable failures discussed in Section 6.9 can be further classified into two classes as follows: (1) inherent causes and (2) noninherent causes.

Inherent causes
Inherent causes can be classified as follows:

1. Sheath or jacket defects
2. Insulation defects
3. Conductor defects

Sheath or jacket defects
Sheath defects are due to the following:

1. Thin lead (splits under pressure)
2. Eccentric lead thickness less than 85%
3. Structural defects: radial splits, laminations, gas pockets, and others
4. Cracked, embrittled, soft sports, bulge, cuts, bruises, or gauges

Insulation defects
These defects are due to the following:

Defects in workmanship: These can be indicated by the following:

1. Wrinkling or creasing of tapes
2. Torn tapes
3. Excessive registrations
4. Knotted or misplaced fillers
5. Soft walls

High dielectric loss: This can be indicated by the following:

1. Scorching or carbonizing of paper
2. Happens in one or more spots
3. Can be determined by PF at 60°C or higher

Incomplete saturation: This can be indicated by the following:

1. Scarcity of the compound in spaces between adjacent tape edges and surfaces
2. Paper is void of the compound

Unstable compound: This can be indicated by the following:

1. Visible change in the compound
2. Wax, in case of mineral oil

Ionization: This can be indicated by the following:

1. Carbonized paths (tree design)
2. Strings or flakes of darkened wax containing carbon

Conductor defects
Conductor defects can be indicated by the following:

1. Irregular strands
2. Sharp corners
3. Missing strands
4. Burrs on the strands
5. Poor brazing

Noninherent causes
Corrosion of sheath: Corrosion usually proceeds either to complete penetration of the sheath or weakness of the sheath, so that the sheath breaks open.

Electrical breakdown takes place owing to admission of moisture. Corrosion of the sheath can be due to the following:

1. Positive potential (anodic), indicated by rough, pitted surface and very thin deposits of white crystals
2. Negative potential (cathodic), indicated by heavy deposit of lead oxides colored red, yellow, or orange
3. Local galvanic action
4. Chemical action
5. Other causes

Local galvanic action
Galvanic corrosion may occur in the presence of an electrolyte and some other metal that is connected electrically to the sheath elsewhere. Such failures are indicated by corroded sheath, which may be identical with either type of corrosion depending on whether the sheath is anode or cathode.

Chemical action
Chemicals such as alkali attack cable insulation, which comes about from incompletely cured concrete; acetic acid, rotting wood, jute, and other materials. Usually, these can be identified by the chemical known to be present for a particular installation.

External fire and HV surges
These are due to fire in cable circuits and lightning strikes and surges.

Overheating
This is mainly due to heating of a cable that is overloaded or external heat and high temperature.

Mechanical damage
Mechanical damage can be due to the following:

1. Vibration
2. Expansion and contraction
3. External causes
4. Injury during installation

Other causes
These can be classified as follows:

1. High internal pressure
2. Migration of compound on a slope or riser
3. Moisture admitted through defective joints, terminations, and bonds

6.10 Field Testing of Medium-Voltage Cables

6.10.1 Cable Degradation and Diagnostic Tests

This overview is provided as an insight into understanding of the nature of in-service cable degradation and some of the more commonly used diagnostic techniques commercially available for performing tests in the field on extruded, medium-voltage, shielded power cables. The objective of any diagnostic test is to identify, in a nondestructive way, a potential problem that may exist with a cable, so that preventative action can be taken to avoid a possible in-service failure of that cable. This assessment applies to cable systems comprising of the cable itself and the associated accessories such as splices and terminations. Field diagnostic tests can be performed on cables during various stages of their existence. The IEEE std 400-2001 defines these tests as follows:

Installation test: Conducted after the cable is installed but before any accessories (joints/splices and terminations) are installed. These tests are intended to detect any manufacturing, transport, and installation damage that may have occurred to the cable.

Acceptance test: Performed after the installation of all cable and accessories, but before energizing the cable with system voltage. Its purpose is to detect installation damage in both the cable and cable accessories.

Maintenance test: Also referred to as after-laying tests that are performed during the operating life of the cable system. Its purpose is to assess the condition and check the serviceability of the cable system so that suitable maintenance procedures can be initiated.

The IEEE std 400-2001 also defines cable field tests into two main groups, Type 1 and Type 2 tests.

Type 1 field tests: These tests are normally performed at elevated voltages and are a pass/fail type test. The traditional high-potential (hi-pot) test is an example of a Type 1 field test. The cable either passes or fails the test, but one establishes little knowledge of the condition of the cable other than whether the cable system withstood the voltage for the duration of the test or not. This test is beneficial in that it is normally able to root out severe defects in a cable. Many defects, however, may pass undetected during a pure voltage-withstand test.

Type 2 field tests: These cable diagnostic tests are performed at test voltages above and/or below the normal operating voltage of the cable. These tests assess the condition of the cable system and try to establish the remaining service life. There are two categories of Type 2 cable diagnostic tests available: (1) Tests that assess the overall (integral) condition of the cable; and (2) tests that detect and locate discrete defect locations in a cable system.

In recent years, a great deal of research and development has focused on field cable diagnostic tests. This effort was due in part to the fact that many of the new PE and XLPE cable systems installed in the late 1960s, 1970s, and early 1980s were prematurely failing as compared to the PILC predecessors. Traditional DC hi-pot testing was not only found to be ineffective in trying to diagnose the failure mechanism before cable failure occurred, but the presence of these elevated DC test voltages was also found to be potentially damaging to PE and XLPE service-aged cables. Whereas many PILC cables were lasting well over 50 years before being replaced, some of the originally installed PE/XLPE cables were experiencing failures within 10–12 years of their service life. A concerted effort to determine and diagnose the root cause of these cable failures in the field was therefore undertaken. To determine which cable diagnostic technique to apply to a particular cable system, the type of cable insulation is an important criterion. Cables are classified into two main cable insulation groups:

Extruded/solid dielectric cable: These cables are whose insulation is extruded on the conductor and include cables, such as PE, XLPE, and EPR cables.

Laminated cable: These are cables whose insulation is made up of laminated layers, such as PILC cable.

The research investigating the premature failure of extruded dielectric insulated cables pointed to water tress and partial discharges (PDs) in the void cavity of the insulation as the main cause of these cable failures. Water trees are tree-like structures which, through a process of electrophoresis, grow and mature in extruded cables. Water trees do not occur in laminated insulated cables because these laminated cables do not have cavity voids as the extruded insulated cables.

The extruded solid dielectric cables are susceptible to voids during manufacturing of these cables. After these cables are installed in the ground (i.e., in duct banks or direct buried), the voids over time will fill-up with water or water vapor. Therefore, water filled voids in the extruded insulation are referred to as water trees because these voids when examined under a microscope resemble like a tree, i.e., each void has a trunk and branches. Research has shown that water treeing is the most important form of degradation that may afflict older XLPE and high-molecular weight PE-extruded cables. As a result, the phenomenon of water treeing has been studied extensively, including means by which the degree of water tree-induced degradation can be assessed. Water treeing can be described as a self-propagating dendritic pattern of electrooxidation, which reduces the AC and impulse breakdown strengths of extruded insulation and is the primary mechanism of degradation of extruded medium-voltage power cables. Although studied extensively, the initiation and growth mechanisms of water treeing are not clearly understood; they are not a single mechanism but complex interactions of chemical, electrical, and mechanical phenomena that depend on the material and applied stresses. The visible manifestation of water treeing is strings of water-filled microcavities. The water-filled microcavities are connected by electrooxidized tracks, which are usually less than 0.1 μm in diameter, which is too small to see.

Water trees do not generate partial discharges (PD) by themselves. However water trees can lead to electrical trees as a result of a lightning impulse, or applied AC voltage, or during fault locating activities, or during DC high-voltage (HV) testing. The likelihood of causing a preexisting water tree to lead to an electrical tree may increase during a cable testing with high test voltages and the test duration. In general, electrical trees are more difficult to initiate than to grow, so that an electrical tree, once initiated, tends to grow to failure by PDs. Thus one can conclude that growing water trees do not generate PD signals, unless they give rise to an electrical tree. Any PDs at a water tree imply the existence of one or more electrical trees at that water tree. In order for water trees to grow in extruded insulated cables, four factors need to be present in extruded cable insulation. These four factors are electrical field, time, water in void cavity, and entry point into the cable. Water trees slowly migrate across the insulation, ultimately bridging adjacent voids across the insulation of the cable. Literally thousands of these trees grow to form electrooxidized channels which are extremely small in diameter. Intuitively, as these water tree channels start to bridge the insulation, the losses dissipated through the insulation increases and thus lead to cable failure over time.

This loss can be determined by measuring the dissipation factor (DF). Although other methods are available to determine the degree of water treeing in cables, the most widely used method is the measurement of DF (or PF) of the cable insulation. A perfect cable can be electrically modeled by a single capacitor. The longer the cable, the larger the capacitance of this capacitor. As water trees start to bridge the once-perfect cable insulation, this capacitor now starts to have some resistive (water tree) paths in parallel with it. The result is that the resistive loss component (in-phase component) of the total current loss increases which is measurable by measuring the DF or the PF of the cable. The DF readings (measurements) can be compared with previous test measurements and trended to assess the cable health. The reader should refer to Chapter 3 for further reading on DF and PF testing of an insulation system.

In performing a DF test, the applied voltage is usually stepped up from below operating voltage to slightly above operating voltage. Cables with poor insulation have higher DF ($\tan \delta$) values than normal, and will exhibit higher changes in the tangent delta values with changes in applied voltage levels. Good cables have low individual tangent delta values and low changes in tangent delta values with higher applied voltages levels. In practice a very low-frequency (VLF) HV test is often used as the voltage excitation source to perform the tangent delta tests. VLF as an energizer source is preferred for two reasons: (1) the increased load capability in field applications in which 60 Hz is too bulky and expensive, and (2) the increased sensitivity and effectiveness of measuring DF in the low frequency range for extruded cable. Tangent delta testing is also independent of the length of the cable, as it is a ratio of resistive losses to capacitive losses (the cable itself). Since XLPE and some EPR cables have very low tangent delta values when in good condition, the tangent delta resolution of the measurement equipment should be at least 1×10^{-4} to get accurate, meaningful results. In addition, a guard circuit to drain off surface leakage currents at the terminations should be used to give true tangent delta results during a measurement. This normally requires a VLF test instrument with a virtual ground return, instead of a solidly grounded VLF generator. Refer to Section 6.10.3.4 for detail discussion on VLF and tan δ tests.

PD is defined as a localized electrical discharge that only partially bridges the insulation between two electrodes/conductors. It is important to note that this is a partial breakdown in the insulation of a cable and, therefore, would not be detectable using conventional fault location equipment. PD can occur from a number of locations within a cable system, such as within gas voids, in an electrical tree channel, along an interface (e.g., in a splice), between the concentric neutral to outer semiconducting layer, etc. When these PDs occur within the insulation section of XLPE cables, complete cable failure is imminent. During off-line field testing of cables with PD equipment, it is possible to elevate the applied voltage to detect one or multiple PD sites that may only discharge above certain voltage levels. The voltage at which a site starts to partially discharge is called the PD inception voltage (PDIV). If the PDIV values approach close to system-operating voltage levels, the cable will probably fail in service.

The erosion of the insulation by PD activity leads to what is referred to as an electrical tree. The PD and subsequent electrical trees rapidly lead to complete cable failure within XLPE cables. It should be noted, however, that some materials are more resistant to PD than others. Joints and terminations, for example, have a great ability, at least for a while, to fend off PDs in their insulation. Therefore, the location of the PD site is an important criterion to determine whether that site will lead to imminent failure or not.

PD measurements on cables traditionally were performed by cable manufacturers as a final quality control test. The PD tests are usually conducted in a shielded PD free test room. It is only within the last 5–10 years that advances in technology have allowed this diagnostic method to be used in the very noisy field environments. The ability to detect and locate sites of PDs down to 10 pC in cables in the field is now available. It should be noted that there are no PDs associated with water trees by themselves unless the water trees become electric trees. Therefore, unless water tree in the cable becomes an electrical tree (due to excessive electric stresses being present on the tree structure), PD testing is not able to detect it. Electrical trees and water trees have completely different properties, and the diagnostic methods used to detect them are also completely different. In many cases, cables with very poor DF test results, indicating the presence of severe water treeing, show no PD activity. PD is useful in finding installation defects in the cable system and, in particular, in the accessories, however, PDs must be present in order to detect any PD. A wet splice may, for example, have a high leakage current but may not exhibit any PD. So, which method should be used to determine the health of the cable system? The diagnostic method applied will depend on a number of factors, including the age of the cable, type of insulation, maintenance strategy, etc. In order to diagnose the condition of a new installation, a PD test is very effective in locating installation defects that may have occurred. A poorly installed splice or an outer shield compromised during the installation of the cable will lend itself more to a PD test than a tangent delta test, since no insulation aging (such as water trees) would be present in the new cable. For maintenance testing of older installations, a tangent delta test would be of most beneficial to determine the degree of insulation aging in the cable. If the cable is very critical in nature and even a single cable fault is to be avoided, then a combination of a PD and a tangent delta test is the best option.

Most utilities/cable owners are concerned about spending large amounts of unnecessary resources repairing cables that have a succession of repetitive failures. This is particularly true if the cable is globally deteriorated. The utilities/cable owners would rather replace such a cable at the outset. In such a case, a tangent delta test will be most beneficial. Although it may not detect a singular defect in an otherwise good cable, it will detect a globally aged cable that could be the source of many future failures. As in most effective maintenance strategies, a combination of more than one diagnostic test is often the best way of establishing the condition of a cable system. Cable diagnostic systems that include a combination of both tangent delta and PD diagnostic measurements in one integrated test instrument are now available to fulfill all these requirements.

6.10.2 Safety Practices and Grounding

When testing cables, personnel safety is of utmost importance. All cable and equipment tests shall be performed on isolated and de-energized systems, except where otherwise specifically required and authorized. Some switches may be connected to a cable end and serve to isolate the cable from the rest of the system. The ability of the switch to sustain the VLF test voltage while the other end is under normal operating voltage shall be checked with the manufacturer. The safety practices shall include, but not be limited to, the following requirements:

1. Applicable user safety operating procedures
2. IEEE std 510-1983 (reaffirmed in 1992)
3. NFPA 70E Standard for Electrical safety requirements for employee workplaces
4. Applicable state and local safety operating procedures
5. Protection of utility and customer property while testing, one or more cable ends will be remote from the testing site, therefore, before testing is begun, the following precautions shall be taken:

a. Cable ends under test must be cleared and guarded
b. Cables must be de-energized and grounded
c. At the conclusion of HV testing, attention should be given to discharge cables and cable systems including test equipment
d. Grounding requirements for cables and test equipment to eliminate the aftereffects of recharging the cables due to dielectric absorption and capacitance characteristics

Cable systems can be considered de-energized and grounded when a conductor and metallic shield are connected to system ground at the test site and, if possible, at the far end of the cable.

When testing, a single system ground at the test site is recommended. The shield or concentric conductor of the cable to be tested is connected to a system ground. If this connection is missing, deteriorated, or has been removed, it must be replaced at this time. A safety ground cable must connect the instrument case with the system ground. If the test instrument is a HV device, the safety ground cable should be at least a braided or stranded #2 AWG (34 mm^2) copper cable capable of carrying available fault current. Only after the safety ground cable is in place, should the test cable be connected to the conductor and metallic shield; the conductor-to-ground connection shall now be removed. Should a local ground be advisable or required for the test equipment, the case ground must remain connected to the system ground in order to maintain an acceptable single-ground potential. Care should be taken to ensure that all ground connections could not be disconnected accidentally.

6.10.3 Cable Testing Methods

After a new cable has been installed and before it is energized, acceptance proof testing (HV tests) should be performed. In general, acceptance proof test are conducted at 80% of final factory test voltage. Also, routine maintenance HV tests may be conducted in the field on installed cables as maintenance tests. The maintenance HV tests are conducted at 60% of final factory test voltage. The following tests may be performed in the field for acceptance and maintenance of cables.

6.10.3.1 Insulation Resistance and DC Hi-Pot Testing

In the past, insulation resistance and DC HV (hi-pot) tests have been used for acceptance (proof) and maintenance testing of cables. When testing cables with DC voltage, it should be understood that DC voltage creates within the cable insulation system an electrical field determined by the conductance and the geometry of the cable insulation system. However, the normal service voltage applied to cable is AC 60 Hz voltage, thus during normal service conditions the AC voltage creates an electrical field that is determined by the dielectric constant (capacitance) of the insulation system. Therefore the electric stress distribution with DC voltage will be different than with AC voltage. Further, conductivity is influenced by temperature to a greater extent rather than the dielectric constant, therefore comparative electric stress distribution under DC and AC voltages will be affected differently by changes in temperature in the insulation. The DC voltage tests are effective in detecting failures that are triggered by thermal mechanism. The value of the DC voltage diagnostic tests for extruded-type insulation are somewhat limited because failures under service AC voltage conditions are most likely to be caused by PDs in the voids of extruded insulation rather than by thermal mechanism. On the other hand, the DC voltage diagnostic tests are very meaningful for laminated-type insulation system where the failure is most likely to be triggered by thermal mechanism. The current trend is to minimize the use the DC hi-pot tests on extruded insulation for the reasons discussed above and because of potential adverse charging effects of DC hi-pot tests on extruded insulation. The reader should refer to Section 2.5 for performing insulation resistance and the DC hi-pot tests on cables.

6.10.3.2 AC Hi-Pot Testing

Cables and accessories may also be field tested with 60 Hz AC voltage, although this is normally not done because of the requirement for heavy, bulky, and expensive test equipment that may not be readily available or transportable to a field site. The most common field tests performed on cables are DC hi-pot or VLF tests, such as one-tenth of hertz frequency tests in lieu of AC hi-pot tests. However, if AC hi-pot acceptance and maintenance tests are to be conducted on cables, then it should be borne in mind that this test is not very practical in the field. Further, the AC hi-pot test can only be conducted as go-no-go test, and therefore it may cause extensive damage should the cable under test fails, i.e., a disruptive discharge through the insulation takes place during the test. On the other hand, AC hi-pot test has a distinct advantage over other test methods of stressing the insulation comparably to normal operating voltage. Further, this test replicates the factory test performed on the new cable. When performing the AC 60 Hz hi-pot test consideration should be given to the adequacy of the test equipment for successfully charging the test specimen. The AC test equipment should have adequate volt-ampere (VA) capacity to supply the required cable charging current requirements of the cable under test. The VA capacity of the AC hi-pot test equipment may be determined by the following formula.

$$\mathrm{VA} = 2\pi fcE^2 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathrm{kVA} = 2\pi fcE^2 \times 10^{-3}$$

where
- c is capacitance (μf/mile)
- f is the frequency (Hz)
- E is the test voltage (kV) of the test set

The test voltage values recommended for acceptance and maintenance tests are 80% and 60%, respectively, of the final factory test voltage. The test connections are similar to the connections indicated in Section 2.5, for DC testing of cables.

6.10.3.3 PF and DF Testing

PF and DF may be performed on shielded cable systems to determine insulation degradation to reduce in-service cable failures. The PF tests for shielded or sheathed cables and accessories are discussed in Section 3.6.8. These tests are described as diagnostic testing techniques for field testing of service-aged cable systems. For lossless insulation, the cable capacitance (*C*) per unit length can be defined by the following equation:

$$C = 2\pi k e_0 \ln\left(\frac{d_\mathrm{i}}{d_\mathrm{c}}\right)$$

where
- k is the dielectric constant of the insulation
- e_0 is the permittivity (capacitance) of free space (air)
- d_i is the diameter over the insulation
- d_c is the diameter of the conductor
- ln is the natural logarithm (log to the base e)

For cable with conventional insulating materials, the cable conductance (*G*) per unit length can be defined by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{G} = 2\pi fC \tan\delta$$

The quantity $\tan\delta$ gives the losses in the insulation when subjected to an electric field and is known as DF or the loss angle of insulating material. The table below provides typical values of dielectric constant k and $\tan\delta$.

Type of Insulation	k	**tan** δ
Impregnated paper	3.5	2.3×10^{-3}
Impregnated PPP	2.7	0.7×10^{-3}
PVC	5.8	0.7×10^{-2}
XLPE	2.3	0.1×10^{-3}
HDPE	2.3	0.1×10^{-3}
EPR	2.8	3.5×10^{-3}

When a voltage V is applied to the loss-free insulation system (dielectric), the total current I_T drawn by the dielectric is the sum of the capacitive charging current I_C and loss current (resistive) I_R. As was discussed in Section 3.2.2, Figure 3.1, the angle formed by the current I_T and I_C is δ, and the angle formed by the I_T and voltage E is θ where $\cos\theta$ is the PF of the dielectric. The DF ($\tan\delta$) test allows an evaluation of an insulation system at operating voltage level and frequency. The $\tan\delta$ test can also be performed at frequency other than 60 Hz, such as at VLF of 0.1 Hz during proof test conducted at such frequency. According to IEEE std 400-2001, tests conducted on 1500 miles of XLPE insulated cable have established a figure of merit for XLPE at $\tan\delta = 2.2 \times 10^{-3}$. If the measured $\tan\delta$ is greater than 2.2×10^{-3}, then the cable insulation is degraded by moisture in the form of water trees (voids in the insulation filled with water), and it is recommended that additional hi-pot tests, such as VLF test be conducted to identify the defects in the cable insulation. The $\tan\delta$ test for each conductor with respect to ground should be made. The evaluation should be based upon comparative analysis with previous test results or correlated with test results of similar types of cables.

6.10.3.4 VLF Tests

Very low frequency (VLF) test is conducted with an AC voltage at frequency ranging from 0.01 to 1 Hz. VLF test can be classified as withstand or diagnostic test, i.e., it may be performed as a proof test for acceptance or as a maintenance test for assessing the condition of the cable condition.

For the withstand test, the insulation under test must withstand a specified applied voltage that is higher than the service voltage across the insulation for a specified period of time without breakdown of the insulation. The magnitude of the withstand voltage is usually greater than that of the operating voltage. If the VLF test is performed as a diagnostic test, it is performed at lower voltages than withstand tests, and therefore may be considered as nondestructive test. Diagnostic testing allows the determination of the relative amount of degradation of a cable system, and by comparison with previous test data, whether a cable system is likely to continue to perform correctly in service. It should be noted that values of the diagnostic quantity measurements obtained during VLF tests may not correlate with those obtained during power frequency tests. For example, the PF and DF tests are conducted at power frequency (60 Hz) which is much higher than at 0.1 Hz, and PD may differ in terms of magnitude and inception voltage. When a cable system insulation is in an advanced condition of degradation, the VLF diagnostic tests can cause breakdown of the cable before the test can be terminated. The VLF withstand test for cable systems may be conducted with the following waveforms:

1. With cosine-rectangular waveform
2. With sinusoidal waveform
3. With bipolar rectangular waveform
4. With alternating regulated positive and negative DC step voltages

The diagnostic test using VLF methods for cable systems are

- VLF dissipation factor ($\tan\delta$) measurement (VLF-DF)
- VLF differential dissipation factor measurement (VLF-DTD)

- VLF dielectric spectroscopy (VLF-DS)
- VLF loss current harmonics (VLF-LCH)
- VLF leakage current (VLF-LC)
- VLF partial discharge measurement (VLF-PD)

The most commonly used, commercially available VLF test frequency is 0.1 Hz. Other commercially available frequencies are in the range of 0.0001–1 Hz. These frequencies may be useful for diagnosing cable systems where the length of the cable system exceeds the limitations of the test system at 0.1 Hz, although there is evidence that testing below 0.1 Hz may increase the risk of failure in service following the test. The internal impedance of the test set can limit the available charging current, preventing the cable under test from reaching the required test voltage. Cable manufacturer may be consulted when selecting an initial test voltage level and testing time duration for a particular cable length. VLF test voltages with cosine-rectangular and the sinusoidal wave shapes are most commonly used. While other VLF wave shapes are available for testing of cable systems, recommended test voltage levels have not been established.

During a VLF test an electrical tree at the site of an insulation defect is forced to penetrate the insulation. Inception of an electrical tree and channel growth time are functions of test signal frequency and amplitude. For an electrical tree to completely penetrate the insulation during the test duration, VLF test voltage levels and testing time durations have been established for the two most commonly used test signals, the cosine-rectangular and the sinusoidal wave shapes.

The voltage levels (installation and acceptance) are based on most-used practices worldwide of between two times rated voltage and three times rated voltage for cables rated between 5 and 35 kV. The maintenance test level is about 80% of the acceptance test level. One can reduce the test voltage another 20% if more test cycles are applied. Tables 6.4 and 6.5 list voltage levels for VLF withstand testing of shielded power cable systems using cosine-rectangular and sinusoidal waveforms. For a sinusoidal waveform, the rms is 0.707 of the peak value if the distortion is less than 5%.

The recommended testing time varies between 15 and 60 min, although the average testing time of 30 min is usually used. The actual testing time and voltage may be defined by the supplier and user and depend on the testing philosophy, cable system, insulation condition, how frequently the test is conducted, and the selected test method. When a VLF test is interrupted, it is recommended that the testing timer be reset to the original time when the VLF test is restarted.

The $\tan\delta$ may be performed with VLF equipment at 0.1 Hz sinusoidal to monitor the aging and degradation of extruded insulated cables. The $\tan\delta$ test provides an assessment of the water tree damage in the cable insulation. The $\tan\delta$ measurement with 0.1 Hz sinusoidal waveform provides comparative assessment of the aging condition of PE-, XLPE-, and EPR-type insulation

TABLE 6.4

VLF Test Voltages for Cosine-Rectangular Waveform per IEEE 400-2004 (See Note 1)

Cable Rating Phase-to-Phase RMS Voltage (kV)	Installation Phase-to-Ground (See Note 2) RMS Voltage/Peak Voltage	Acceptance Phase-to-Ground (See Note 2) RMS Voltage/Peak Voltage	Maintenance Phase-to-Ground (See Note 3) RMS Voltage/Peak Voltage
5	12	14	10
8	16	18	14
15	25	28	22
25	38	44	33

Notes: 1. For cosine-rectangular waveform the rms is assumed to be equal to the peak value. For sinusoidal VLF, the voltages are given in both rms and peak values where the rms value is 0.707 of the peak value if distortion is less than 5%.
2. The results of field tests on over 15,000 XLPE cable circuits tested showed that ~68% of the recorded failures occurred within 12 min, ~89% within 30 min, ~95% after 45 min, and 100% after 60 min.
3. For a 0.1 Hz VLF test voltage, the suggested maintenance voltage duration is 15 min.

systems. The tan δ should be performed at normal operating service voltage to prevent insulation breakdown. The tan δ test conducted at 0.1 Hz sinusoidal waveform is mainly determined by water tree damage in the insulation system and if the tan δ measurement is greater than 4×10^{-3}, the service-aged cable should be evaluated for replacement. If the δ measurement is less than 4×10^{-3}, the cable should be further tested with VLF at three times the service voltage for 60 min.

TABLE 6.5

VLF Test Voltages for Sinusoidal Waveform (see Note 1) per IEEE 400.2

Cable Rating Phase-to-Phase RMS Voltage (kV)	Installation Phase-to-Ground (See Note 2) RMS/Peak Voltage	Acceptance Phase-to-Ground (See Note 2) RMS/Peak Voltage	Maintenance Phase-to-Ground (See Note 3) RMS/Peak Voltage
5	9/13	10/14	7/10
8	11/16	13/18	10/14
15	18/25	20/28	16/22
25	27/38	31/44	23/33
35	39(55)	44(62)	33(47)

Notes: 1. For cosine-rectangular waveform the rms is assumed to be equal to the peak value. For sinusoidal VLF, the voltages are given in both rms and peak values where the rms value is 0.707 of the peak value if distortion is less than 5%.
2. The results of field tests on over 15000 XLPE cable circuits tested showed that ~68% of the recorded failures occurred within 12 min, ~89% within 30 min, ~95% after 45 min, and 100% after 60 min.
3. For a 0.1 Hz VLF test voltage, the suggested maintenance voltage duration is 15 min.

The advantages and disadvantages of VLF testing are listed below.

Advantages

- The 0.1 Hz cosine-rectangular waveform has polarity changes similar to those at power frequency. Because of the sinusoidal transitions between the positive and negative polarities, traveling waves are not generated, and because of continuous polarity changes, dangerous space charges are less likely to be developed in the insulation.
- Leakage current can be measured.
- Cables may be tested with an AC voltage approximately three times the rated conductor-to-ground voltage with a device comparable in size, weight, and power requirements to a DC test set.
- The VLF test can be used to test cable systems with extruded and laminated dielectric insulation.
- The VLF test with cosine-rectangular/bipolar pulse and sinusoidal waveform works best when trying to locate a few defects from otherwise good cable insulation.

Disadvantages

- When testing cables with extensive water tree degradation or PDs in the insulation, low frequency withstand testing alone may not be conclusive. Additional diagnostic tests that measure the extent of insulation losses will be necessary.
- Cables must be taken out of service for testing.

6.10.3.5 PD Test

A PD is an electrical discharge that occurs in a void within the extruded cable insulation, at interfaces or surfaces such as shield protrusion and the insulation, or in a water tree within cable insulation when subjected to moderately HV. PD occurs as a series of PD pulses during each half cycle of an AC waveform. The rise time of the PD pulses is in the order of nanoseconds to tens of nanoseconds. The PD pulses tend to set an electromagnetic field which propagates in both directions along the cable with a velocity of propagation based on the dielectric constant of cable insulation. PD characteristics depend on the type, size and location of the defects, insulation type, voltage, and cable temperature. The insulation of full reels of extruded cables is tested for PDs at the factory at power frequency. This test is known to detect small imperfections in the insulation such as voids or skips in the insulation shield layer. It seems logical to perform PD measurements on newly installed and service-aged cables to detect any damage done during the installation of new cable or in-service degradation of cable insulation due to PDs.

There are two approaches that can be used for detecting PDs from installed cables in the field. They are on- and off-line detection system. There are several commercial off-line systems available for measuring PD in medium-voltage systems (up to 35 kV). The online measuring system is based on measuring PDs at the cable-operating voltage. On the other hand, in the off-line system the PD measurements are done at a higher voltage than cable-operating voltage. This is due to the fact that the off-line testing requires the cable to be de-energized which results in cessation of any active PD activity. In order to activate the PD activity again in the de-energized cable during off-line testing, a higher voltage is needed to reinitiate the PD activity. The test instruments for PD testing for online or off-line comprise of the power supply, sensors and noise reduction, signal detection, and signal processing equipment. The power supply can be 60 Hz voltage, oscillating voltage, or VLF (0.1 Hz) voltage source. The sensors can be inductive couplers, capacitive couplers, or an antenna along with noise treatment and amplification equipment. The signal detection and processing equipment includes digital oscilloscope, spectrum analyzer, wave form digitizer, time-domain reflectometer (TDR) (time resolved) and/or frequency resolved.

Although it is difficult to conduct a PD measurement in the field because of external noise, this test can be performed in the field where conditions warrant it is worth the time and expense to do so. The PD test gives the most convincing evidence whether the cable is in good condition and suitable for service or needs to be repaired or replaced. The PD test is useful for both the laminated and extruded cable insulation systems. This test can be performed at power frequency or at any other frequency, such as 0.1 Hz (VLF).

To perform an off-line PD test the cable is disconnected from the network at both ends and correctly isolated. A voltage source and a coupling device, or sensor, are connected at one of the ends (near end), whereas the remote end is left open. The coupling device could be capacitive or inductive. The coupling device is connected to the PD detecting and processing systems. Variations of this setup include a measuring system with sensors at both ends and means to communicate the far end data to the near end processing devices or, in the case of a branched system, sensors placed at the end of each branch. Multiterminal testing also has the advantage of greater sensitivity in the PD testing of very long cable lengths as the pulse travel distances are considerably shorter and consequently the related attenuation of pulse amplitude will be less. The following steps are implemented:

1. Low-voltage TDR is used to locate cable joints (splices) and other irregularities
2. Sensitivity assessment
3. PD magnitude calibration
4. PD testing under voltage stress
5. Test data analysis and documentation

Sensitivity assessment
The purpose of this step is to determine the value in picoCoulomb (pC) of the smallest PD signal detectable under the test conditions. In extruded dielectric cables PD activity in the range of several pCs is required, otherwise inadequate detection sensitivity may mask the existence of serious defects with low PD magnitudes. Inability to detect low levels of PD may result in false-negative situations that are expected to lead to unexpected post-testing service failures. In addition incorrectly identified PD may lead to false-positive situations leading to unnecessary cable replacement. Therefore, a calibrated pulse, such as 5 pC, is injected at the near end. The PD estimator detects and records the response. If the reflected signal cannot be seen above the filtered noise level, a larger signal, such as 10 pC, is injected. This process is repeated until the reflected signal is observable. This determines the smallest PD signal that can be resolved under the test conditions.

PD magnitude calibration
The calibrated pulse generator is connected to the cable remote end. A large signal, such as 50 or 100 pC, is injected. The corresponding signal recorded at the near end is evaluated by integrating it with respect to time. The constant k is adjusted until the PD magnitude read is 50 or 100 pC. The instrument is now calibrated for measuring the apparent charge, q, of the PD.

PD testing under voltage stress
Off-line tests can be carried out using different voltage sources. There is a good technical basis for testing up to 1.5 to 2.5 times of rated voltage to ensure that the PDIV of the cable is sufficiently high enough to activate the PD activity. There is an increased risk of initiating damage at defects in aged cable systems that are innocuous at operating voltage if testing is carried out at voltages greater than 2.5 times of rated voltage. There is also an increased risk of failures during the PD testing. However, some utilities will request testing up to a maximum of three times of rated voltage on new cables, either on the reel or newly installed, to ensure that there was no damage during transportation or installation. In addition, some utilities will test up to three times of rated voltage, even though there is a significantly higher probability of failure during the testing, of the following cable systems:

- Cable circuits with generic defects that may cause high failure rates, e.g., some silane-cured cables can cause severe corrosion of aluminum conductors.
- Cable circuits that are being considered for silicone injection, the rationale being that all cables with electrical trees will fail at higher test voltages. The higher test voltages could also initiate new electrical trees.
- Cable circuits that may have suspect accessories and/or cables to ensure operation during high load periods, e.g., during the summer months in some urban areas. The voltage in power frequency tests

may be applied for up to a maximum of 15 min to ensure that electrons are available in cavities to initiate PD. However, once PDs are detected, the voltage should be applied long enough to collect sufficient data up to a maximum of 15 s. Some PD testing organizations will decrease the voltage very soon after the onset of steady PD when testing extruded dielectric cable circuits.

As an example, the following steps are conducted for testing for voltage stress. The voltage is rapidly raised to the cable operating level (1.0 p.u.) at which it is maintained for several minutes as a conditioning step. The voltage is ramped to its maximum value (such as 2.0 or 2.5 p.u.). It then is returned to zero as quickly as possible. During this stress cycle, several sets of data are captured, each set encompasses an entire 60 Hz period. The rising and falling parts of the voltage help determine the PDIV and PD extinction voltage (PDEV), respectively. It should be apparent that off-line testing using higher voltages (elevated stress) than cable operating voltage may be a destructive test.

In summary, it is not possible to standardize a specific test protocol at the current time for either online or off-line tests. This may become possible as more data are collected. For off-line tests, the amplitude of the test voltage can be varied. For heavily aged systems, a maximum test voltage of 2 p.u. is suggested. As the anticipated condition of the cable improves, the test voltage may be increased to as much as 2.5 p.u. New cables, either on the reel or newly installed, may be tested to a maximum of 3 p.u. at the concurrence of the cable owner and cable manufacturer. The test duration should be long enough to allow the availability of electrons to initiate PDs, but once PDs are detected, the voltage should be applied long enough to collect sufficient PD data.

PD test data analysis and documentation

The PD test provider should provide cable users with a report of the cables tested and the PD test results. The PD test provider should give the cable user recommendations on possible corrective action to be taken. The report of the test results should include the value of PD detection sensitivity and a reference to the method used in obtaining this value. The PD site location results must also be provided with an assessment of the accuracy limits within which these results can be interpreted under the conditions of the specific test. This becomes critical where the location is at or near a splice. Details to be included in the report are as follows:

Cable system identification

1. Name of cable manufacturer
2. Cable section identification (i.e., substation name, from switch number to switch number)
3. Cable voltage class
4. Cable insulation (if mixed, specify)

5. Operating voltage (phase-to-neutral)
6. Conductor type and size (if mixed, specify)
7. Cable length
8. Location of splices
9. Cable vintage or year placed in service
10. Neutral type, for example, concentric wires, metal tapes, or flat strap, and size
11. Type of construction, i.e., direct buried, duct, aerial, jacketed, unjacketed, and so on
12. Splice type, if available
13. Termination type, i.e., pole-top, switching cabinet live-front/dead front, premolded, heat-shrink, and so on

PD test results

1. Test date.
2. Date of the most recent previous test.
3. Estimated cable length.
4. Splice location.
5. Background noise level.
6. Minimum resolvable PD signal pC magnitude (sensitivity) and how it was determined. If the sensitivity is lower than expected, provide the reason(s).
7. Test voltage levels.
8. At each test voltage level, the location of each PD site, along with the limits of accuracy.
9. At each voltage and site location, the number of PD events per second or per cycle of a sinusoidal excitation voltage.
10. At each voltage and site location, a phase-resolved PD representation (pC vs. phase angle for each PD event recorded), provided the excitation voltage is sinusoidal. Specify the number of cycles included in the phase-resolved diagram.
11. For a frequency-domain measurement, describe the spectral characteristics and the estimated location for each PD site. Specify the limits of accuracy.
12. Any other diagnostic results pertinent to the test method used.
13. An indication of the severity of the PD behavior, if PDs are detected, and recommendations on possible corrective action to be taken.
14. The format of data reporting may vary. For instance, some prefer reporting individual PD events in a three-dimensional (3D) form

with location, pC level, and phase angle at which each PD is initiated.

15. Variations of this 3D representation are also possible. Others prefer a set of two-dimensional representations, showing PD location with PDIV, and apparent charge (pC) versus phase angle for each PD site, at each voltage level, and PD repetition rate for each PD site at each voltage level.

6.10.3.6 AC Resonance Test

The resonant test systems are used to test cable and other electrical apparatus with AC voltage at power frequencies (50 or 60 Hz). This method has the advantage over other test methods, of stressing the insulation similar to normal operating conditions. In the past to test electrical apparatus at power frequency required bulky and expensive test equipment that was not portable for on-site field testing applications. The resonant test systems were developed that can be handled easily on-site for testing. Since the mid-1990s, the resonant test systems have been used for testing medium and HV cables in Europe and United States. This method can be used to test cable consisting of either XLPE, oil-impregnated paper and EPR, or a combination of these insulating materials. As the name implies, this test method is based on using AC at the operating frequency (50 or 60 Hz) as a test source using the principle of resonance. Resonance is defined as the condition at which the net inductive reactance cancels the net capacitive reactance at operating frequency. The resonant circuit must have both capacitance provided by the cable under test and inductance provided by the reactor of the test set. When resonance occurs, the energy absorbed at any instant by one reactive element is exactly equal to that released by another reactive element within the system. In other words, energy pulsates from one reactive element to the other. Therefore once the system has reached a state of resonance, it requires no further reactive power since it is self-sustaining. The total apparent power is then simply equal to the average power dissipated by the resistive elements in the inductor and cable system. Either parallel or series resonant circuits are normally used for conducting this test.

The series resonant test consists of a voltage regulator of an autotransformer type (Toroidal, CTVT or Thoma) is connected to the supply voltage. The regulator provides a variable voltage to the exciter transformer. The exciter transformer is fed by the output of the voltage regulator. This transformer steps the voltage up to a usable value by the HV portion of the circuit. The HV reactor L and the load capacitance C represent the HV portion of the circuit. The inductance of the HV reactor can be varied by changing the air gap of the iron core. The load capacitance C consists of the capacitance of the load. The coupling capacitance for PD measurement, stray capacitance and, in the case of tank-type (T) sets, the HV bushing. When testing, the HV reactor is adjusted so that the impedance of

L corresponds to the impedance of C at the frequency of the supply voltage. Thus the circuit is tuned to series resonance at 50 or 60 Hz. The Q of the basic resonant circuit or with a low loss test specimen (e.g., XLPE cable, sulfur hexaflouride switchgear, bushing, etc.) is typically 50 to 80. The HV reactor is designed for a minimum Q of 40. The system Q is designed around the anticipated load. In case of a flashover during testing on the HV side, the resonant circuit is detuned and the test voltage collapses immediately. The short-circuit current is limited by the impedance of the HV reactor. This means that the short-circuit current of a series resonant system with a Q of 40 is 2.5% of the load current to which it is tuned. The series resonant mode is well suited for sensitive PD measurements. Harmonics from the supply are better suppressed than in parallel mode.

The parallel resonant mode provides a more stable output voltage with test specimens, such as large generator windings, or other specimens with corona losses. The test voltage rate of rise is stable in parallel mode, independent of the degree of tuning and the Q of the circuit. Furthermore, parallel mode allows the test set to be energized to full voltage without a load. This is useful for calibrating the instrumentation and checking for the PD level of the test equipment. The test voltage rate of rise is stable in parallel mode, independent of the degree of tuning and the Q of the circuit. Furthermore, parallel mode allows the test set to be energized to full voltage without a load. This is useful for calibrating the instrumentation and checking for the PD level of the test equipment. The average power absorbed by the system will also be at a maximum at resonance. The commonly used measure of the quality in a resonant circuit is the quality factor, or Q. The power source of resonant circuits operating in the resonant mode (exciter and regulator) is used to supply the dissipated energy. Q is approximately equivalent to the ratio of the output kVA to the input kVA. Given kVA requirements of the load and the Q of the test system, the input power can be obtained by dividing the kVA by the Q. The correct mode of operation must be chosen according to the test objects and the measurements to be carried out. The parallel resonant mode provides a more stable output voltage with test specimens, such as large generator windings, or other specimens with corona losses.

Resonant test system are available that use variable inductance and variable frequency resonant and pulsed resonant test sources. A brief description of the variable frequency resonant test system is as follows. The resonant test system with variable frequency mainly consists of the frequency converter, the exciting transformer, the coupling capacitors, and HV reactors with fixed inductance. The frequency converter generates a variable voltage and frequency output which is applied to the exciter transformer. The exciter transformer excites the series resonant circuit consisting of the reactor's inductance L and the cable capacitance C. The resonance is adjusted by tuning the frequency of the frequency converter according the formula:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}(LC)^{1/2}$$

The tuning range of the test system is determined by the converter's frequency range:

$$\frac{C_{\max}}{C_{\min}} = \left(\frac{f_{\max}}{f_{\min}}\right)^2$$

The average power absorbed by the system will also be at a maximum at resonance. The commonly used measure of the quality in a resonant circuit is the quality factor, or *Q*. The power source of resonant circuits operating in the resonant mode (exciter and regulator) is used to supply the dissipated energy. *Q* is approximately equivalent to the ratio of the output kVA to the input kVA. Given kVA requirements of the load and the *Q* of the test system, the input power can be obtained by dividing the kVA by the *Q*. The correct mode of operation must be chosen according to the test objects and the measurements to be carried out. The series resonant mode is well suited for sensitive PD measurements as well.

6.10.3.7 Summary of Testing Methods

The purpose of summarizing cable testing methods is to cite the advantages and disadvantages of these tests so that the reader can quickly determine the test method best suited for his application. The cable tests can be categorized into three categories: (1) hi-pot withstand tests, (2) general condition assessment (GCA) tests, and (3) PD tests. These tests can further be viewed from the perspective of being destructive or nondestructive tests. Any test that uses the test source voltage to be higher than the in-service operating voltage could be classified as destructive test because during testing the cable insulation will be subjected to a higher voltage than what it will see in service. Therefore, all hi-pot withstand tests would fall into this category. However, during a hi-pot test, if the voltage is applied in a steps and the leakage current is monitored, then the test may be classified as being nondestructive. The reasoning for this is that the test can be aborted before the insulation gets to a failure point since at every step of voltage application the leakage current is being monitored and evaluated before proceeding to the next step. An application of this test procedure is the step-voltage DC hi-pot withstand test. The same cannot be said of AC hi-pot withstand test since there is no way to evaluate the leakage current, therefore this test would be considered as go-no-go test and considered to be destructive. The GCA tests and PD tests are classified as nondestructive since the voltage applied during these tests is either the same, or lower than, or slightly above the in-service operating voltage. The advantages and disadvantages of the tests are as follow:

Hi-pot withstand tests
Under this category, cable tests that use HV source are listed. These tests are: DC hi-pot tests, AC hi-pot, AC resonant test, and VLF test. The advantages and disadvantages of the test that use hi-pot voltage source are

DC hi-pot test:
Advantages:

1. Has a long history of use
2. Very portable and convenient for field test
3. Low power requirements
4. Is a good for conductive type defects (water in laminar cables)

Disadvantages:

- Demonstrated to induce space charge which aggravates defects in aged extruded cable long after the test's conclusion
- Is blind to high impedance defects such as voids and cuts
- Stress distribution is not the same as in-service conditions
- Cannot be compared to factory tests

60Hz hi-pot test and AC resonant test
Advantages:

- Is good for conductive and high impedance defects
- Does not induce space charge, thereby minimizes the propagation of defects in extruded cable
- Replicates steady-state in-service conditions
- Can be compared to factory tests

Disadvantages:

- Most expensive and not practical for field tests
- Highest power requirement except for AC resonant test
- Grows certain type of defects

VLF hi-pot tests
Advantages:

- Portable for field testing
- Relatively low power requirements
- Is a good for conductive-type defect and high-impedance defects
- Does not induce as much space charge as DC hi-pot in aged extruded cable
- Causes some defects to grow rapidly resulting in shorter test time

Disadvantages:

- Aggravate defects in aged cable without failing them
- Does not replicate service conditions
- Cannot be directly compared to factory tests
- Not recommended for aged cable with multiple defects
- Stress distribution is not the same as in-service conditions
- Does not replicate normal stress distribution conditions with wet regions

GCA tests
GCA tests are those which determine the overall health of the cable insulation. These tests include: DF/tan δ/PF, PD tests, dielectric spectroscopy, depolarization-return voltage, and depolarization-relaxation current. Each of these tests has their own advantages and disadvantages. Some of these tests are not covered in this book since they are beyond the scope. In general, the following can be stated for PF/DF and PD tests.

PF/DF (tan δ)
Advantages:

- Considered to be nondestructive to cable insulation
- Tests are conducted at in-service voltage levels
- Monitor the overall condition of the cable insulation
- Effective in detecting and assessing conduction-type defects
- Can be compared to factory tests
- Portable for field testing

Disadvantages:

- Require prior cable types and data for comparison
- Temperature dependant in extruded cables
- Blind to high-impedance defects such as cuts, voids, and PD
- Cannot detect singular defects in extruded insulation, such as water tree
- Not an effective test for mixed dielectric or newly installed cable
- Equipment is costly compared to hi-pot equipment

PD tests
Two type of PD tests are considered, that is online PD testing and off-line PD testing. PD diagnostics tests are considered to be effective in locating defects in shielded power cables.

PD diagnostics tests
Advantages:

- Considered to be nondestructive
- Can detect and locate high-impedance defects such as void, cuts, electrical trees, and tracking
- Can be performed online in limited applications
- Effective at locating defects in mixed dielectric systems

Disadvantages:

- Limited to cables with a continuous neutral shield
- Requires a trained analyst to interpret measurements
- Cannot detect or locate conduction-type defects
- Not effective for branched network applications

Online PD diagnostics
Advantages:

- Performed while circuit is energized
- Detect and locate some accessory defects and some cable defects
- Does not require an external voltage source

Disadvantages:

- Detects only 3% or less of cable insulation defects in extruded cable
- Not a calibrated test, therefore the test results are not objective
- Cannot be compared to factory tests
- Not effective by statistically significant data correlating results to actual cable system defects or failures
- Requires access to the cable every few hundred feet depending on the cable construction
- Requires that manholes be pumped to access cable
- Cannot be applied to long directly buried cables

Off-line PD diagnostics
Advantages:

- Can be readily compared to factory baseline tests
- Replicates steady-state and transient operating conditions
- Can locate electrical trees with PDs
- Locates all defect sites in one test from one end of the cable

- Is effective with mixed dielectric cables
- Can test up to 1 to 3 miles of cable depending on the cable construction
- Provides onsite report of the test results

Disadvantages:

- Need circuit outage for test to be performed
- Equipment is expensive when compared to other tests

6.11 Latest Trends in Cable Condition Monitoring and Aging Assessment

6.11.1 Electronic Characterization and Diagnostic (ECAD®) System

The ECAD system is a fully automated electrical characterization and diagnostic system that is used in the nuclear industry for monitoring the conditions of the instrumentation and control cables installed in nuclear power plants. The ECAD system, is a PC-driven data acquisition system. It measures various standard electrical characteristics as well as providing the TDR signature. The ECAD system measures DC and AC resistance, impedance, capacitance, DF, inductance, quality factor, phase angle, and TDR signature of the cables. This computer-based storage/retrieval system provides capability for accurate, lumped data comparison with previous historical information on the same device. The TDR signature permits easy and quick identification of faults in both magnitude and location of the cable. The ECAD system can be used for condition monitoring, troubleshooting, and trending of the measured data. The ECAD system maintains the data in a retrievable format. Reports can be generated quickly with built-in analysis packages to perform the necessary checks on each type of circuit.

6.11.2 Cable Indentor

Traditional electrical tests, such as insulation resistance and hi-pot testing, are not sensitive enough to detect the level of age-related deterioration in cables. Present electrical tests do not detect aging-induced cracks in the insulation that penetrate to the conductor if the cable is dry. Therefore, measurement of the mechanical properties of the cable polymers is the best way to track the vulnerability of cables to age-induced cracking, which could lead to a cable failure in a moist or wet environment. The cable indentor aging monitor developed by the Franklin Research Center and the Electric Power Research Institute (EPRI) is used to perform the in situ, nondestructive test for assessing age-induced degradation. The cable indentor consists of an anvil that is pushed against the surface of the cable jacket or insulation and, depending on the depth of penetration of the indentor for a given force, the hardness of the cable insulation is determined. It is expected that the depth of penetration for a given force will decrease as the cable materials age, thereby indicating the age of the cable insulation.

6.11.3 Oscillating Wave (OSW) Testing

This method was selected by a CIGRE task force as an acceptable compromise using the following criteria:

1. Ability to detect defects in the insulation that will be detrimental to the cable system under service conditions, without creating new defects or causing any aging
2. Degree of conformity between the results of tests and the results of 50 or 60 Hz tests
3. Complexity of the testing method
4. Commercial availability and costs of the testing equipment

The purpose of the OSW testing method is to detect defects that may cause failures during service life without creating new defects that may threaten the life of the cable system. Although OSW testing does not have a wide reputation with respect to cable testing, it is already used for testing in metal-clad substations and is being recommended for gas-insulated cable testing. The following description is based on the information given in IEEE std 400-2001, "IEEE guide for field testing and evaluation of the insulation of shielded power cables systems."

General description of test method
The test circuit consists of a DC voltage supply that charges a capacitance and a cable capacitance. After the test voltage has been reached, the capacitance is discharged over an air core coil with a low inductance. This causes an oscillating voltage in the kilohertz range. The choice of and depends on the value of to obtain a frequency between 1 and 10 kHz.

Advantages:

- OSW method is based on an intrinsic AC mechanism
- Principal disadvantages of DC (field distribution, space charge) do not occur
- Method is easy to apply
- Method is relatively inexpensive
- For both HV and MV cable systems, f* OSW/DC is low (0.2 to 0.8), indicating the superiority of OSW over DC voltage testing

Disadvantages:

- Effectiveness of the OSW test method in detecting defects is better than with DC but worse when compared with AC (60 Hz)
- In particular for medium-voltage cable systems, the factor f^* OSW/60 Hz voltage is approaching 1, indicating the mutual equivalence
- For HV cable systems, f^* OSW/60 Hz is significantly higher (1.2–1.9), which means that OSW is less effective than 60 Hz

Note: f^* OSW/60 Hz is the ratio of breakdown values for a dielectric containing a standard defect when using, respectively, OSW voltage and 60 Hz voltage.

Test apparatus
The cable is charged with a DC voltage and discharged through a sphere gap into an inductance of appropriate value so as to obtain the desired frequency. The voltage applied to the cable is expressed as:

$$V(t) = V_1 e \exp(-\alpha tLC)\cos(2\pi ft)$$

where
V_1 is the charging voltage provided by the generator
α is the damping ratio
C is $C1 + C2$
f is $1/2\pi(LC)^{1/2}$

Test procedure
Most of the tests carried out so far are of an experimental nature. Artificial defects like knife cuts, wrong positions of joints, and voids in the insulation were created and subjected to different testing procedures of which one method was the OSW testing. These test procedures were intended to obtain breakdown as a criterion for comparison. The general testing procedure is as follows:

1. Start to charge the cable with a DC voltage of about one or two times the operating voltage
2. Increase with steps of 20–30 kV
3. Produce 50 shots at each voltage level
4. Time interval between shots to be 2–3 min
5. Proceed until breakdown occurs

6.11.4 Broadband Impedance Spectroscopy Prognostic/Diagnostic Technique

The broadband impedance spectroscopy (BIS) technique was developed by the Boeing Company under the sponsorship of the U.S. Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) to monitor the condition of installed aircraft wiring.

Under the sponsorship of the U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC), the BIS technique was evaluated for application to electric cables used in nuclear power plants. Cable samples, which are representative of a commonly used type of low voltage instrumentation and control cable in nuclear power plants, were prepared and received accelerated aging to simulate various types of degradation expected in actual plant service conditions, including the following:

- Global thermal degradation
- Global thermal degradation plus localized hot spots
- Thermal degradation with cracking
- Abrasion damage

The cable samples were then tested in the laboratory using the BIS method, and the data were analyzed to draw conclusions on the effectiveness of the method. Several test configurations were evaluated, including

- Constant temperature and humidity along the cable with no load attached
- Constant temperature and humidity along the cable with a load attached
- Varying environments along the length of the cable with no load attached

The results of the NRC sponsored research demonstrated that the BIS method can be used on nuclear power plant cables, or on cables used in industrial plants. This method may represent a breakthrough in the prognostics and diagnostics of installed cable systems. The technique provides a nondestructive means of monitoring cable systems in their installed configuration. Age-related degradation can be detected in an incipient stage prior to failure.

The following are the specific conclusions from this research:

- The BIS method was clearly able to detect the presence of thermal degradation associated with the cables used in this study. Specifically, the impedance phase spectra of the cables tested were observed to increase as the amount of thermal degradation on the cable increased. This increase can be used as an indicator of global thermal degradation.
- The BIS method was able to detect the presence of localized thermal degradation, or hot spots on the cables. Specifically, a shift in the zero crossings of the impedance phase spectra was observed when a hot spot was present on the cable.
- An approach was developed for locating hot spots within a cable using models of the cable electrical properties. The models were able to predict the hot spot locations within ±10%.
- The BIS method was not sensitive enough to distinguish between the different severities and sizes of hot spots simulated at low

frequencies. However, high-frequency data were able to distinguish between the severity levels. Additional research is warranted to establish the sensitivity limits for this technique.

- The BIS method was able to detect and locate the presence of abrasion-related damage on a cable. The models and approach used are similar to that for detecting and locating thermal hot spots.
- The BIS method was demonstrated to be effective for detecting and locating degradation on cables with an attached load. This is important since it is desirable to have a technique that can test cables in their installed configuration, without having to disconnect them from attached equipment.
- The BIS method was able to detect simulated cracking damage on cables. However, the simulation method used in this study was determined not to accurately represent the cracking phenomena. Additional research is warranted to more accurately evaluate the BIS method on actual cable cracking.
- The BIS method was able to detect the presence of localized thermal degradation, or hot spots on the cables even with a varying environment along the external surface of the cables.

While the BIS method shows great promise as a prognostic and diagnostic technique for installed cable systems, additional research is continuing before this method can be applied in the field to power cables.

6.12 Cable Fault Locating Methods

This section describes the existing methods and techniques used for fault location. Faults may vary widely, and similar faults may exhibit different symptoms depending upon the cable type, operating voltage, soil condition, and so on. Basically, faults can be considered to be shorts, opens, or nonlinear. A short is defined as a fault when the conductor is shorted to the ground, neutral, or another phase with a low impedance path. This type of fault is also referred to as a shunt fault. An open fault is defined as when the conductor is physically broken and no current flows at or beyond the point of break. The nonlinear type of fault exhibits the characteristics of an unfaulted conductor at low voltages but shows a short at operating or higher voltages. This nonlinear fault is also known as a high-resistance fault. These fault types are shown in Figure 6.8.

Fault location methods can be divided into two general categories: terminal techniques and tracing techniques.

6.12.1 Terminal Techniques

These involve measuring some electrical characteristics of the faulted conductor from one of the cable terminals and comparing it with unfaulted

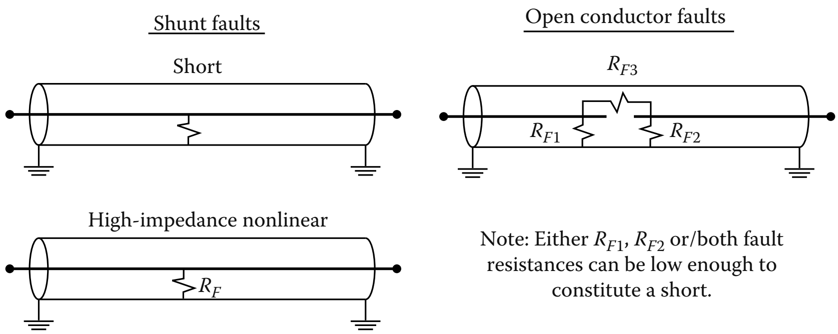


FIGURE 6.8
Types of cable faults.

conductor characteristics in terms of the distance of the fault. The effectiveness of this method is a function of the accuracy of installation records. The terminal techniques category can be further subdivided in terms of the actual methods employed, which are bridge, radar, and resonance methods. Terminal methods do not pinpoint faults, however they localize faults.

Bridge methods

Various types of bridge configurations may be used to locate faults. The most common are the Murry loop and the capacitance bridge. The Murry loop bridge uses a proportional measure so that it is not necessary to know the actual cable resistance. Its principle of operation involves a continuous loop of cable to form the two arms of the bridge. It is necessary to have an unfaulted conductor available to form such a loop. Also, it requires a low-resistance jumper to be installed at the far end of the cable. The Murry loop bridge connections are shown in Figure 6.9. When the bridge is balanced, the distance to the fault can be found by the following expression:

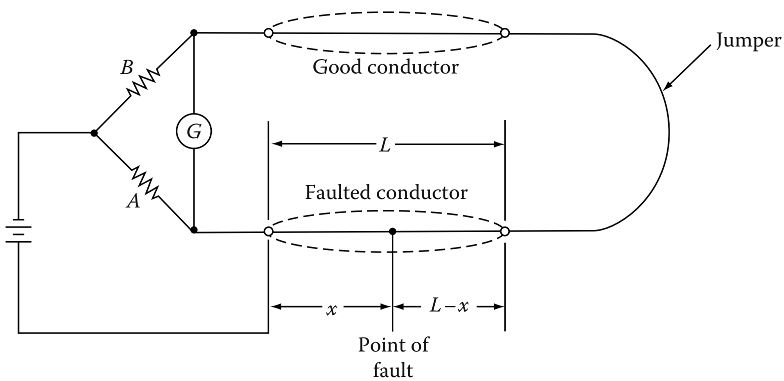


FIGURE 6.9
Murry loop bridge method.

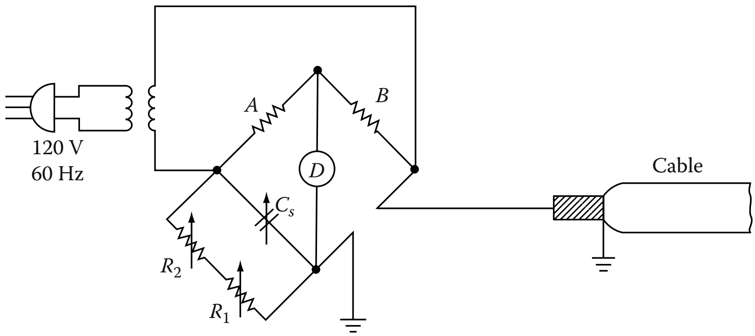


FIGURE 6.10
Capacitance bridge measurement method.

$$X = 2 \times L\left(\frac{A}{A+B}\right)$$

The capacitance bridge technique simply measures the capacitance from one end of the faulted cable to ground and compares it in terms of the distance with the capacitance of the unfaulted conductor in the same cable. The connection diagram for a capacitance bridge is shown in Figure 6.10.

In lieu of a bridge, the charging current of faulted cable and unfaulted cable can be compared, using several hundred volts or several thousand volts of 60 Hz supply voltage. The connection diagram is shown in Figure 6.11. The distance L_1 to the fault is given by the expression $L_1 = L_2(I_1/I_2)$, where I_1 is the current in the faulted conductor, I_2 is the current in the unfaulted conductor, and L_2 is the length of the unfaulted conductor.

The application of bridge methods can be used on all types of cables. The Murry loop bridge is effective where the parallel fault resistance is low or the bridge voltage is high. It is ineffective on open faults. Open faults can be located with the capacitance bridge. The major drawbacks of the bridge method are the following:

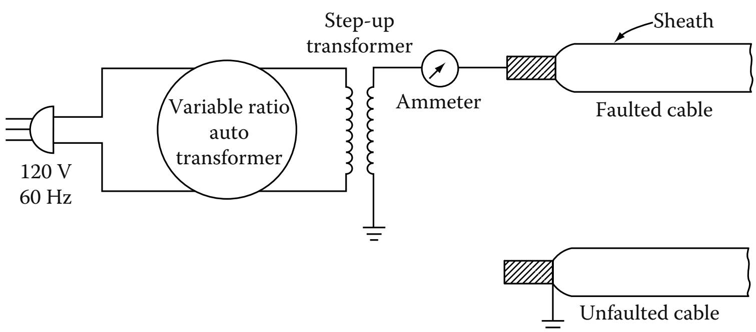


FIGURE 6.11
Charging current method for fault location.

1. Requires access to both ends of the cable
2. Connection must be of low resistance
3. All lead lengths must be accounted for
4. Cables must be of the same size
5. Requires considerable operator skill
6. Difficult to use on branched systems

Radar method

The radar (reflection or pulse-echo) method is based upon the measurement of the time that it takes the pulse to reach a fault and reflect back. The distance d of the fault for uniform cable can be obtained from the expression $d = vt/2$, where v is propagation velocity and t is the time it takes for the pulse to travel to the fault and back. There are two types of output pulse duration employed in radar methods.

The short duration pulse type is most commonly used in radar test sets for testing power cables. The pulse duration is short in comparison to propagation time to the fault. The width of the pulse is usually wide enough to be able to be observed on the oscilloscope. Practically, the pulse width must be greater than 1% of the transit time for the entire cable length under test. Most commercial equipment has provisions for changing the pulse width depending on cable length. The pulse magnitudes are very small, usually on the order of few volts. The short pulse does not lend itself well to the interpretation of data because of reflections from splices or the nonuniformity of cable size.

The long-pulse system employs long step pulses as compared to the transit time of signal from one end of the cable to the fault and back. Any discontinuities in cable are seen as changes in the voltage level of the step pulse. It is easier to interpret the data in a long-pulse system; that is, the faults can be differentiated from splices, and changes in cable size can be easily observed.

In radar systems the scope trace shows the transmitted and reflected signal. The separation of the two signals is measured and multiplied by the scope calibration to give the transit time. The reflected wave can be expressed in terms of the transmitted wave and circuit constants as follows:

$$l_{\mathrm{r}} = \frac{R-Z}{R+Z} l_{\mathrm{t}}$$

where

l_{r} is the reflected wave
l_{t} is the transmitted wave
R is the resistance at the end of the line
Z is the impedance of the line

If the line is open-circuited, then $R = \propto$ and the reflected wave is $l_{\mathrm{r}} = l_{\mathrm{t}}$. Therefore, the reflected wave is of the same magnitude and same polarity as thetransmitted wave. If the line is short-circuited, $R = 0$ and the reflected

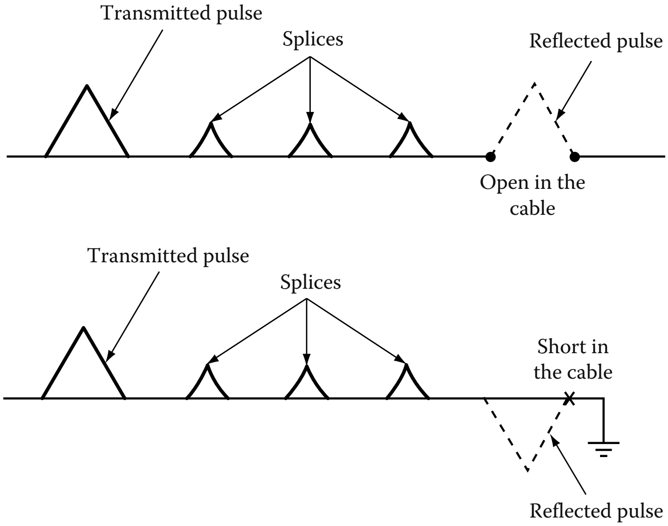


FIGURE 6.12
Typical wave forms for open- and short-circuit conditions in cable.

wave is $l_r = -l_t$. Therefore, the reflected wave in this case is of equal magnitude to the transmitted wave but 180° out of phase. These two conditions are shown in Figure 6.12.

The radar can be applied to all types of cable systems provided the propagation velocity is constant along the length of the cable. The radar system does not work very well with nonlinear faults. However, it can be used when the nonlinear fault impedance is burned to a low resistance value. To provide this flexibility, three major variations of radar systems are available: the arc radar system, the free oscillation system, and the differential radar system. The arc radar uses a HV pulse system so that the high-impedance (nonlinear) faults can be burned down until they appear as shorts and the radar pulse can be reflected from the arc short. The free oscillation system is also used for high-impedance faults in which the breakdown of the arc causes a pulse to be transmitted down the cable. In this method the cable end at which measurements are made is terminated in a high impedance (i.e., open) so that the pulse formed at the arc is reflected from the open end to the short at the arc and back to the open end. This reflection back and forth continues until the energy is completely absorbed by the cable. The period of signal is four times the transit time of the pulse as it travels the distance of the fault. Therefore, the distance to the fault is one-fourth the product of the propagation velocity and transit time. Differential radar is applicable for fault location on branched systems. It is based on the fact that a faulted cable phase is almost always paralleled by an identical unfaulted phase. The radar prints of two phases will be identical, except that part of the print associated with the fault itself. The differential radar signal is applied to both phases simultaneously and the return signals are subtracted. The radar pulse input shows at the point of the fault.

Resonance method

The resonance technique is based on the principle of wave reflection. The resonance method for fault location measures the frequency at which the length of the cable between the terminal and the fault resonate. The resonant frequency is inversely proportional to the wavelength. The distance *d* of the fault can be determined by the following expression:

$$d = \frac{V}{f_r N}$$

where

V is the propagation velocity
f_r is the resonant frequency
N is the number of quarter- or half-wavelengths

Normally, quarter-wave resonance is used for locating shorts, in which case $N = 4$, and half-wave resonance is used for locating opens, in which case $N = 2$. The resonance technique uses a frequency generator (or oscillator), which is connected to the end of the faulted cable. The frequency is varied until resonance is reached. At resonance, the voltage changes rapidly from voltage at nonresonance frequency. The voltage will increase for shorts and decrease for opens, respectively.

The minimum frequency required is determined by the cable length, and the maximum frequency is determined by the distance to the nearest point at which a fault may occur. For insulated cable the phase shift governs the speed of the transmitted and reflected wave to the fault and back. The phase shift is a function of the dielectric constant of the insulating material. Usually, the velocity of propagation for insulated cables varies between one-third and one-fourth of the velocity of propagation of bare conductors, which is 984 ft./μs. Therefore, the velocity for cable will be somewhere between 328 and 246 ft./μs. Therefore, for each insulating medium its dielectric constant must be known for fault location. The relationship between frequency and distance to the fault is given by the following expression:

$$d = \frac{466N}{f_r K}$$

where

N is the number of quarter- or half-wavelengths
f_r is the resonance frequency (MHz)
K is the dielectric constant of cable
d is the distance to the fault

This method can be used on all types of cables and works will on branched systems. It does not work very well with nonlinear faults.

6.12.2 Tracer Techniques

Trace techniques are those that involve placing an electrical signal on the faulted feeder from one or both ends, which can be traced along the cable length and detected at the fault by a change in signal characteristics. The following methods are available under this classification:

1. Tracing current
2. Audio frequency (tone tracing)
3. Impulse (thumper) voltage
4. Earth gradient

Tracing current method

In this application both DC and AC methods are employed. This method can be used for fault location on a branched system as well as on a straight uniform cable system. The fault current is injected into the circuit formed by the faulted conductor and the ground, and a detector is then used to measure the cable current at selected manhole locations. This technique is applicable where fault resistance is low or the voltage of the test set is high enough to send sufficient current through the faulted conductor. This method is mostly applicable for duct line installations because it is sufficient to know the fault between manholes, since the entire section of cable between manholes must be replaced when faulted.

The major consideration for use of this method is to assure that substantial amount of return current is via the ground path rather than the neutral. If all the current flows through the neutral, current seen by the detector is canceled for three-conductor cables, and there is no output from detector. This is very important for insulated neutral cables, such as PILC, where it is necessary to assure neutral to ground contact between the point of the measurement and the fault.

The tracing DC method uses a modulated DC power supply ranging from 500 V to 20 kV and current ranging from 0.25 to 12.5 A. The detector can be either an electromagnetically coupled circuit using a pickup coil and a galvanometer to detect directional signal, or test prods may be used on the cable sheath, using a drop-of-potential circuit with a galvanometer for signal-direction detection.

The tracing AC method uses a 25 or 60 Hz modulated transmitter consisting of 100% induction regulation or a constant-current transformer. The detectors can consist of either a split core current transformer and an ammeter or a sheath drop detection circuit consisting of test prods and a millivolt meter. The test set range is from 15 to 450 kVA, and audio amplifiers are available with output meters, headsets, or speakers.

This method applies to direct buried, insulated cable for a short-to-ground fault. It is not very effective for other types of faults or cable configurations. Audio frequency (tone tracing) can be used to locate phase-to-ground faults (or to neutral) in concentric neutral cables if the neutral can be isolated from the ground so that the fault return current flows through the ground. If the neutral cannot be isolated, substantial fault return current may flow through the neutral, canceling the magnetic fields and thus reducing the pickup sensitivity. This technique can be used equally well to locate and identify cables. Because of its application to insulated cable, audio frequency is most commonly used for finding secondary faults. This method is very effective for faults that are near zero resistance. It is not as effective for resistance faults above a few ohms. This method is particularly applicable to low-voltage class systems.

Audio frequency (tone tracing) method

In this method, audio frequency is injected in the fault circuit formed by the faulted cable and the ground. The flow of current through the conductor causes a magnetic field, which exists both in air and ground. The magnetic field can be sensed by using a simple magnetic loop antenna. Moreover, the magnetic field can be resolved into horizontal and vertical components for predicting antenna orientation. The loop antenna that responds to the horizontal component of the magnetic field has maximum excitation directly above the cable, whereas the loop antenna that responds to the vertical component of the magnetic field has minimum excitation. Also, the magnetic field varies in the vicinity of the fault. The magnetic field characteristics change beyond the fault because of no current flow, and therefore the horizontally polarized antenna output falls off rapidly. The change in characteristics of the vertical component of the magnetic field is not as pronounced when moving beyond the point of the fault location. The magnetic fields are a function of the current in the cable and therefore essentially constant along the cable route.

The receiver sensitivity is a function of antenna gain to obtain maximum output. The receiver employs high-gain amplifiers for the same purpose. The detectors are usually made of exploring coils.

Impulse (thumper) method

This method consists of using a charge capacitor to transmit a high-energy pulse between the faulted conductor and ground. The pulse creates an arc at the fault, which in turn heats the surrounding air, and the energy is released as an audible thump. The fault location can be found by listening to the acoustical thump or by tracing the magnetic field generated by the arc. A functional diagram of fault location using the impulse is shown in Figure 6.13.

The impulse source is a capacitive discharge circuit consisting of power supply, capacitor bank, and HV switch. Typical capacitor discharge (thumper) test sets are shown in Figure 6.14. The impulse signal can be detected by means of a magnetic loop antenna, a microphone, an earth gradient detector, or a seismic transducer. The relationship between signal loudness and duration depends on the physical sensation. The tendency is for the loudness to increase with the duration; however, beyond a certain point the impact on the loudness is negligible. This method has been applied to both secondary and HV systems.

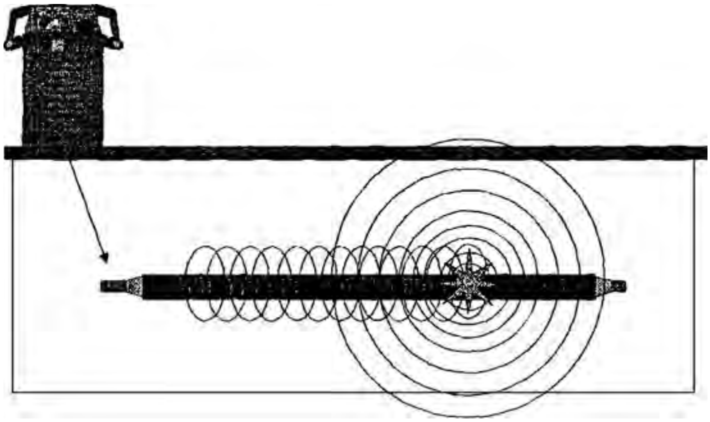


FIGURE 6.13
Impulse (thumper) method for fault location.

The major application of the impulse method is to faults where an arc is readily formed. This method can be made effective for faults down to zero resistance (dead shorts), depending upon the source of surge tracing methods because a dead short fault does not produce a thump. Signal detection can be divided into the following methods:

FIGURE 6.14
Capacitor discharge (thumper) test sets, 20 kV with 60 mA burn capacity. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

Acoustic signal pickup: In this case the fault of high resistance is arcing over due to the periodic voltage pulses, which makes a very loud thumping sound. Detection can be very simply accomplished by patrolling the line and listening to the noise of the voltage discharge. Audio amplifiers with suitable pickup of electronic type, headphones, or a stethoscope can be used.

Electromagnetic pickup: When a fault of zero resistance (i.e., fault impedance is low compared to surge impedance) is being located, then of course there will be no noise. Also, even faults of high resistance when surrounded by mud and water will not give off loud noise. Faults of line-to-line or conductor-to-sheath, where the outer sheath is not broken, will not give off any loud noise. For these cases, a detector that traces the impulse signal to the fault by electromagnetic coupling can be used. It consists of pickup coil and a detector. The detector amplifies the signal, and detection can then be made by galvanometer. It is effective for duct lay and nonlead buried cable.

Impulse current pickup: In this method impulse current signals are derived from a linear coupler, which can be incorporated in the surge generator, or an external linear coupler can be used with any surge generator or HV DC test set. The linear coupler in both cases is in the earth return (cable sheath) circuit to the surge generator or HV DC test set. High-resistance, flashing, and intermittent flashing faults are located using the external pulses generated by the HV surge generator. The signals generate1d are stored digitally in the memory of the test set. The stored wave form can be extracted continuously from the digital memory and displayed on a low-speed oscilloscope. Measurements of fault position can be directly measured digitally in microseconds, thus calculating an accurate estimate of the distance of the fault location by the following formula:

$$\text{Distance to fault } L = \frac{T \times V_{\text{p}}}{2}$$

where

T is in microseconds

L is in feet

V_{p} is the velocity of propagation of electromagnetic waves for the cable dielectric. It should be noted that the propagation factor varies with distance to the fault. Consequently this weakness in the method limits the accuracy.

Arc-reflection method

The arc-reflection method combines an impulse generator to a TDR through an arc reflection filter. This combination of equipment provides an integrated system to locate all cable faults. For high resistance (nonlinear) faults, arc reflection applies an oscillatory, HV impulse to the cable under test. The high impulse causes the high-resistance fault to break down, thus causing a low-resistance arc at the fault. The arc-reflection analyzer simultaneously applies high-frequency, low-voltage pulses to the cable to reflect from the low-resistance arc. The reflected pulses are displaced as intermittent negative reflections on the arc-analyzer screen. The arc reflection filter protects the analyzer against the HV of the impulse generator. The filter also limits the applied HV to just enough to create breakdown at the point of the fault. The arc-reflection method can detect open neutrals or phases, low-resistance faults (<200 Ω) between phases or between a phase and the neutral, water saturation, and good versus bad splices. The trace on the analyzer screen will display a characteristic signature for each of the above conditions. To determine the location of the fault, the reflection analyzer will automatically display the distance to the fault in feet or meters based on the velocity propagation constant of the cable.

Earth gradient method

This method locates faults by injecting a fault current into the faulted circuit formed by the conductor and earth return. The current spreads into the ground, and potential is developed in the ground between fault and current injection point. The voltage drop between any two points on the ground surface can be measured. Usually, the direction of the voltage drop points toward the fault location. As the fault is approached by moving along the cable length, the voltmeter deflection decreases until the null point is achieved directly over the fault location. However, when the fault location is passed, the voltmeter deflection increases again. In this method precise location of the cable is necessary for pinpointing the fault location.

Where precise routing of cable is not known, a DC or pulsed fault current source may be used to locate the fault using the earth gradient technique. In this case the meter direction will always be toward the fault location. To minimize difficulties and make judicious use of time in locating the fault, a simple procedure is usually followed; the negative probe is always inserted first and the positive probe is moved to obtain maximum positive deflection of the voltmeter. By following this procedure the deflection will then always be in the general direction of the fault, and fault tracing can proceed in sequence until the fault is located. This method at best is time consuming, and at worst it will not work at all, especially when cable lay is not known. The limitation of this method is the measurement sensitivity, because ground potential is a function of both cable depth and fault distance.

The fault current source can be an AC tone, a pulse, or DC voltage. With an AC tone, the voltmeter will show an amplitude of large magnitude on either side of the fault, whereas the amplitude will fall off as the fault location is passed. Also, care must be taken to minimize 60 Hz interference. The DC source is most commonly used, which provides sufficient current flow through nonlinear faults. The pulse source is also similar to the DC source, except that it offers higher fault currents. The earth gradient technique is used to locate conductor-to-ground faults. This method may not be applicable

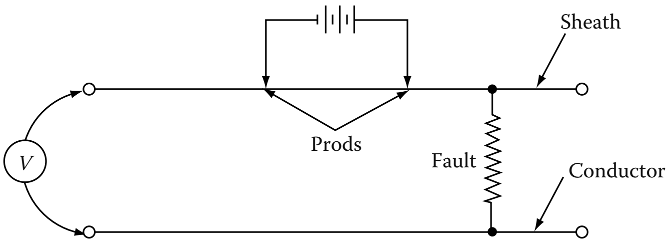


FIGURE 6.15
DC sheath potential difference method.

to concentric neutral cables because much of the current returns through the neutral rather than the ground, making measurements rather difficult. Therefore, the earth gradient method is most applicable to insulated wire cables, which are usually found in secondary distribution systems.

A special application of the earth gradient method is the DC sheath potential difference method. In this method a DC from a 6V battery is passed through a short length of a faulted lead sheath cable. A voltage drop appears between the faulted conductor and the lead sheath, which can be measured at one of the cable terminals. This connection is shown in Figure 6.15. If the fault resistance is low enough or the internal resistance of the voltmeter is high enough, a voltage will be measured on the unfaulted side of the battery. Therefore, to locate the fault the battery contacts can be moved in the fault direction until fault is located.

6.12.3 Application Guide for Cable Fault Locating

Cable fault locating in the past has been more of an art than a science. The tools used were megohmmeter, shovels, and hacksaws. The common technique for locating faults was the halving technique, which can be described as follows: "Cut cable at halfway point after excavation of a hole, check resistance with a megohmmeter. If the value of resistance is acceptable, move to one-quarter the length of the line, then to one-eighth length, and so on. Repeat the same procedure on the second half of the remaining length of the cable until the precise point of fault is found." The halving technique is time consuming and costly compared to the modern methods that are now available for fault location. Instruments are available today to, first, find the fault, second localize the fault, and third, pinpoint the fault. To achieve these objectives, the following practical application guide is offered for fault locating using the terminal and tracer methods on transmission and distribution circuits. A summary is given in Table 6.6.

Locate faults in primary cable

The strategy for finding cable faults in primary cable consists of the following steps:

TABLE 6.6
Summary of Cable Fault Locating Methods

Method	Criteria	Parallel Fault (Shorts)	Series Fault (Open)
Terminal measurement techniques			
Bridge: Murry loop	Uses cable length sensitivity	Low resistance ($\leq$200 MΩ)	—
Capacitance bridge	Uses capacitance from conductor to sheath	High resistance	High resistance
Radar: Pulse	Produces a short-duration pulse	Low resistance ($\leq$200 MΩ)	High resistance
Resonance	Produces a standing wave	Low resistance	High resistance
Tracer techniques			
Tracing current	DC current	Low resistance	—
	AC current	Low resistance	—
Audio frequency	Transmitting audio tones	Low resistance	—
Impulse (thumper)	Transmission of high-energy pulse	Low resistance	High resistance
Earth gradient	Drop at potential	Low resistance	—

1. Test using an insulation resistance tester
2. Analyze
3. Localize
4. Locate

After a section of cable has been de-energized and isolated in preparation for cable fault locating, it is strongly recommended that a fixed strategic plan be followed for locating the fault. Although most faults are "shorts" between conductor and ground, conductor-to-conductor "shorts" and series opens also occur. Helpful information can be gathered by characterizing the fault with an insulation resistance tester.

Make a series of measurements with the insulation resistance tester using Figure 6.16 as follows:

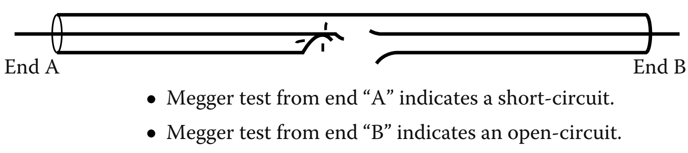


FIGURE 6.16
Locate fault in primary cable.

1. From side "A," connect the insulation resistance tester between the faulted conductor and ground (sheath or concentric neutral and ground if the outside layer of cable is jacketed). Record the reading.
2. From side A connect the insulation resistance tester between each of the other phases (one at a time) and ground (if the cable is three-phase).
3. Repeat all insulation resistance tests from side "B" and record all readings.

Analyze the data

If the insulation resistance of the faulted conductor is less than 50 Ω or more than 1 MΩ, the fault will be relatively easy to locate. For values between 50 Ω and 1 MΩ, the fault will be more difficult to locate. Some reasons for the difficulty with these faults are the possible presence of oil or water in the faulted cavity and the presence of multiple faults. Multiple faults are frequently encountered on buried cable that has been abandoned for several years or more.

If the insulation resistance tester indicates insulation resistance values less than 10 Ω, it may not be possible to create a flashover at the fault site when subsequent capacitive discharge methods are used. This type of fault is often referred to as a bolted or metal-to-metal fault.

Whenever possible, perform insulation resistance tests from both ends of the cable. Test results will often allow the user to improve his or her understanding of the characteristics of the fault. For example, if a measurement of 10 Ω is made from side A and 250 MΩ from side B, it could be reasoned that the cable is blown open (severed) and that the part connected to side A is shorting to ground but side B is not shorted. Thumping from side B would likely produce better results.

Localize the fault (prelocate/approximate)

Selection of a localizing technique is based on the character of the fault. Several techniques will be discussed as follows:

1. Divide and conquer—all faults
2. Bridge-single shorts <200 MΩ
3. TDR—shorts <200 Ω and all opens
4. Arc reflection—all faults that will breakdown
5. Surge current reflection—all faults that will breakdown
6. Electromagnetic impulse detection—all shorts and some opens

1. *Divide and conquer—all faults*

   1. This technique was described as the "halving technique" in Section 6.12.3. Refer to Figure 6.17 and locate a position halfway down the cable path and dig down to the cable.
   2. Cut the cable and perform insulation resistance tests each way. Record readings and splice the cable.

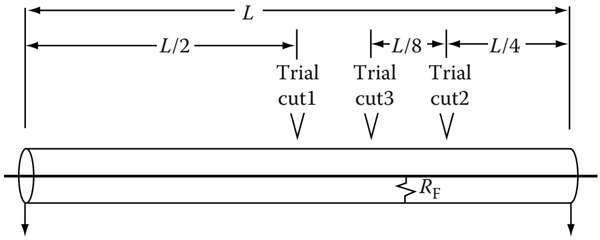


FIGURE 6.17
Divide and conquer method.

3. Locate a position halfway down the cable path in the direction indicated by the insulation resistance test set to contain the fault.
4. Continue the above until the fault is isolated on a very short portion of the cable.

Advantages:

- All you need is a hacksaw, a shovel, a splice kit, an insulation resistance tester, and a lot of time.

Disadvantages:

- Expensive, destructive, time consuming, and inefficient.

2. *Bridge-single short to ground <200 MΩ*

In order to make use of a bridge, often referred to as the resistance ratio method, the fault must be a fault to ground and only one fault is allowed on the section of cable under test. Also, a good second conductor, preferably the same size, must be available to provide the return path in parallel with the faulted conductor. When these conditions are met, the measurement can be made in only a few steps with most modern high resistance manually operated bridges. Although some automatic resistance bridges are available, they are limited to faults of a few megohms. When all conditions are met, a good manually operated bridge can provide accuracies in the order of 6 in. in a loop length of 500 ft (for example). The bridge method is shown in Figure 6.18.

Advantages:

- Localizes faults to ground with resistance up to 200 MΩ

Disadvantages: The accuracy of this method is affected by

- Presence of more than one fault
- Variations in cable size along the loop

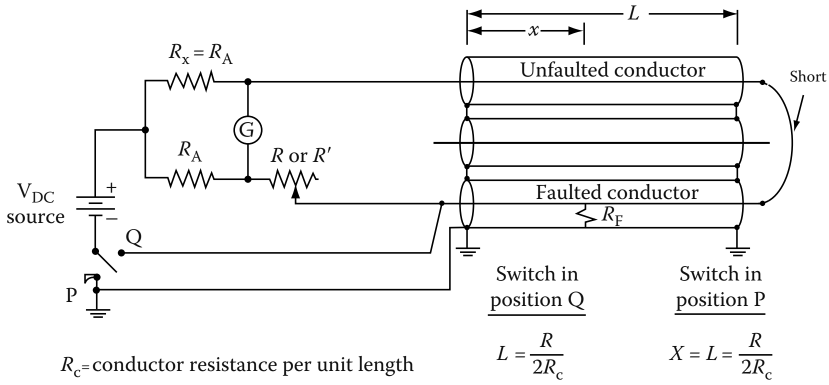


FIGURE 6.18
Bridge method of cable fault locating.

- Variations in the temperature of the copper or aluminum conductor along the loop
- Must have a spare good cable to create a loop circuit

3. *TDR—shorts <200 Ω and all opens*

TDRs send a high-frequency pulse down the surface of the conductor under test. When this pulse reaches a point where the characteristic impedance changes, some or all of the pulse's energy is reflected back to the TDR where it is displayed on an oscilloscope screen. The TDR measures the time required for the pulse to get to the impedance change plus the time it takes to return, takes the actual speed of the pulse into account and displays the resultant distance in feet (or meters) to the impedance change. It is necessary to tell the TDR how fast the propagated pulse travels through the insulation in use, so that the correct distance figure can be calculated and displayed automatically. A high-quality TDR will display almost all impedance changes on the cable under test. It will not display faults to ground which measure higher than 200 Ω on power cable. For resistance values of 200 Ω and higher other localizing techniques such as arc reflection can be used successfully. The TDR method of cable fault locating is shown in Figure 6.19.

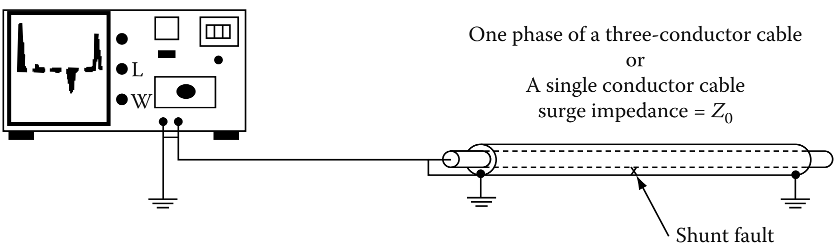


FIGURE 6.19
TDR method of fault locating.

As explained earlier, it is a good idea to shoot the cable from both sides. The extra effort often rewards the user with critical additional information.

Advantages:

- Easy and fast fault finding
- Safe low test voltage

Disadvantages:

- Cannot find faults to ground with resistance greater than about 200 Ω

4. *Arc reflection—all flashing faults*

A fault that can be broken down, sometimes referred to as a flashing fault, is essentially a zero resistance fault for the duration of the flash (sometimes referred to as arc over). With this in mind, a filter was designed that allows the TDR to send pulses down a faulted conductor at the same time that an impulse generator sends a breakdown voltage down the same conductor. The TDR's pulse is reflected from the momentary arc and is subsequently displayed momentarily on the TDR screen. In this way, the TDR is able to reflect pulses from all faults that can be broken down. The arc-reflection method is shown in Figure 6.20.

Advantages:

- All faults that can be broken down can be localized.
- The number of capacitive discharges required for subsequent pin-pointing is minimized.

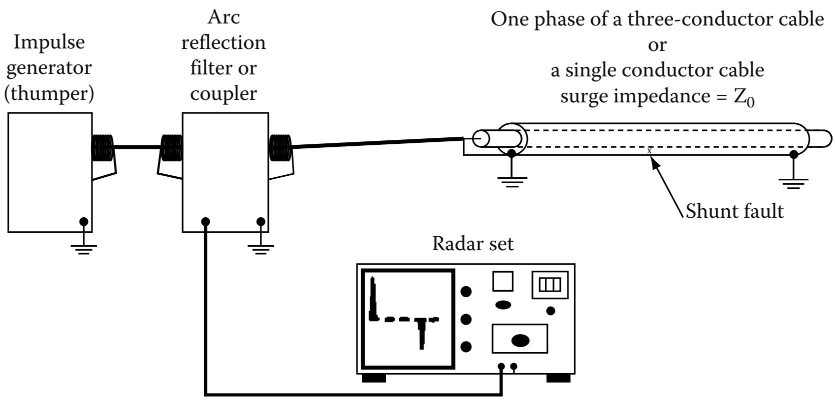


FIGURE 6.20
Arc-reflection method of fault locating.

- Output voltage to the cable under test during the use of arc reflection is automatically regulated by the system to an absolute minimum required to break the fault down.
- Pinpointing time is greatly reduced because only the relatively short localized length of cable needs to be patrolled during the pinpointing operation.

Disadvantages:

- Does not localize faults that do not break down

5. *Surge pulse method*

When discharging an impulse generator into a faulted cable, the voltage step travels along the cable. The pulse first passes the faulted region and reflects off of the end of the cable, back toward the fault. The inrush current causes the fault to establish a low-resistance arc and generates a new wave front. This new wave front travels back toward the impulse generator. When this new wave front reaches the impulse generator, it sees the generator's capacitor as a short-circuit and reflects back toward the fault, which also appears as a short-circuit during breakdown. The wave front will continue to propagate backwards and forwards between the impulse generator and the fault, slowly diminishing in amplitude. The result of this traveling wave is current and voltage transients. An inductive pickup is used to display the transients on a storage oscilloscope. The surge pulse method is shown in Figure 6.21.

Advantages:

- Will localize faults in water or oil, and very long cable

Disadvantages:

- Much more difficult to operate than arc reflection, and is less accurate

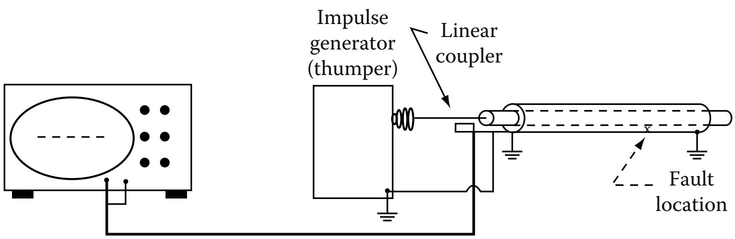


FIGURE 6.21
Surge pulse method of cable fault locating.

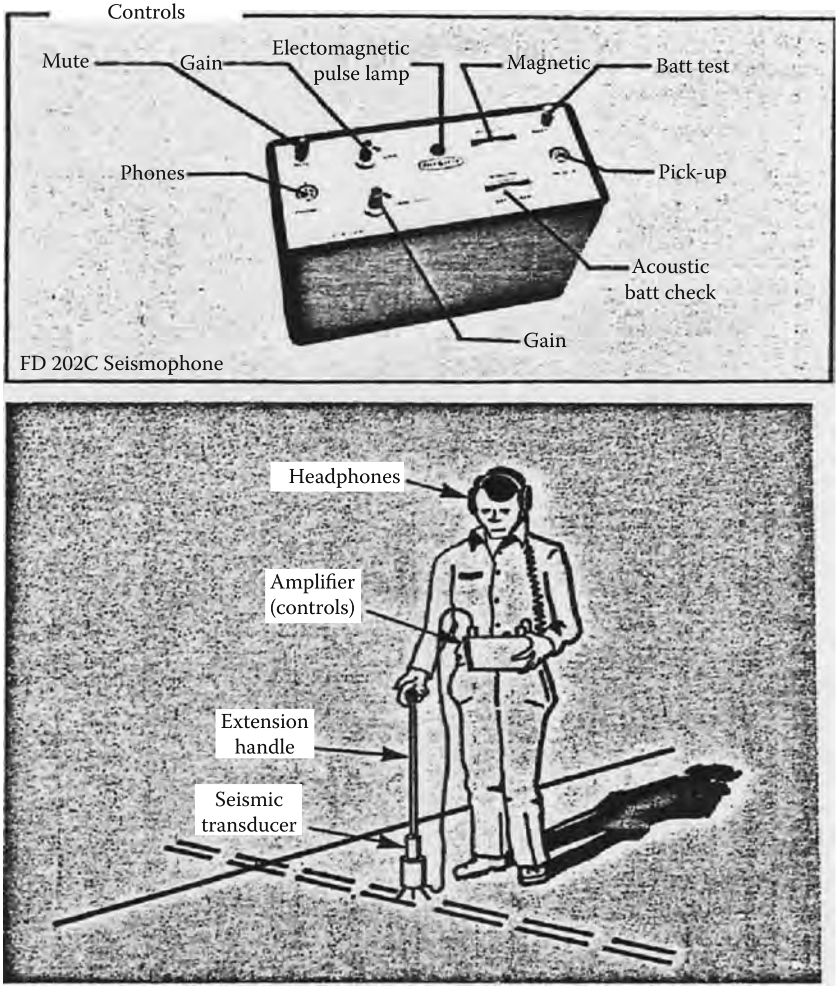


FIGURE 6.22
Electromagnetic impulse detection technique using a polarized meter and seismic transducer.

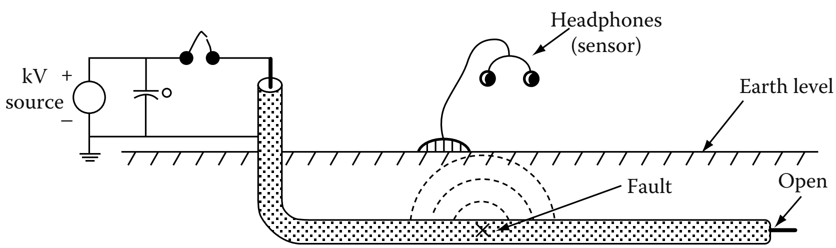


FIGURE 6.23
Electromagnetic impulse detection technique.

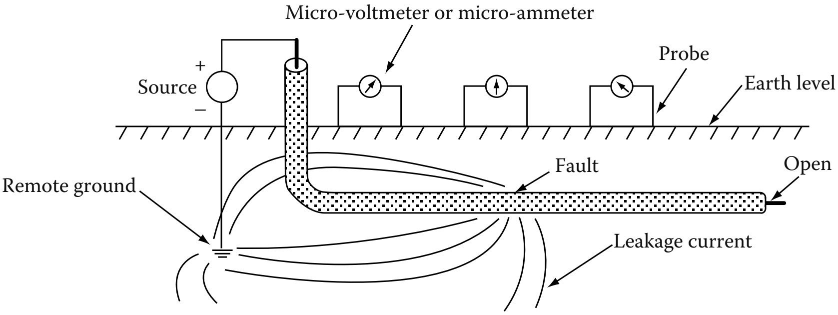


FIGURE 6.24
Voltage gradient method.

6. *Electromagnetic impulse detection*

The impulse current from an impulse generator follows the center conductor, goes through the fault to the lead sheath and ground bonds and subsequently returns to the thumper. The magnitude of the current going out on the center conductor differs from the current returning on the lead sheath by the current leaving through the ground bonds just ahead of and just after the fault. The net electromagnetic field produced is detected by the sheath coil and is displayed on a zero-center meter. Through careful application of the sheath coil and by productive interpretation of the polarized meter indication, the operator can identify the section of cable with the fault. The electromagnetic impulse detection technique is shown in Figure 6.22 using a polarized meter and seismic transducer.

Locate or pinpoint faults in primary cable

Locating, often referred to as pinpointing, is necessary before digging up direct buried cable. After the fault has been localized, an impulse generator is connected to one end of the faulted cable. A second repairman proceeds to the localized area and listens for the telltale thump from the fault. When the thump is not loud enough to hear, it may be necessary to use an acoustic impulse detector to finally pinpoint the fault as shown in Figure 6.23.

Locate faults in buried secondary cable

Voltage gradient test sets are effective in finding faults on direct-buried secondary cable. This method depends on the fault occurring between conductor and Mother Earth. When the cable is contained within conduit, a different method must be used. TDRs find faults when they occur between two conductors or between conductor and metal conduit. When a single conductor is contained within a plastic conduit, shorts cannot occur unless water gains access through a crack or other entry point. When a fault develops, leakage current flows from the conductor through the break in insulation, and then follows the water to the break in the conduit to earth. If voltage gradient is used, the location of the crack in the conduit could be found, but the location of the fault in the insulation would remain unknown. The voltage gradient method is shown in Figure 6.24.

7

Medium-Voltage Switchgear and Circuit Breakers

7.1 General

Switchgear is a commonly used name for metal-enclosed distribution apparatus of modular, cubicle-type construction. Despite this commonly used name, there are technical and physical distinctions between various classes of switchgear assemblies. The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) have published standards for electrical equipment. These standards are followed by most manufacturers of electrical switchgear. The ANSI lists switchgear assemblies into three main categories, which are further classified into subcategories as shown in Table 7.1.

7.2 Medium-Voltage Switchgear

Medium-voltage (MV) metal-enclosed power switchgear is defined as a switchgear assembly completely enclosed on all sides and top with sheet metal (except for ventilating and inspection openings) containing primary power circuit switching and/or interrupting devices with buses and connections, and may include control and auxiliary devices. The rated voltage and insulation levels for MV-class metal-enclosed switchgear assemblies are shown in Table 7.2.

7.2.1 Construction Features

Switchgear is a general term used to define switching (and/or interrupting), protective, regulating, and metering devices, including all associated controls and interconnections, and accessories used for generation, transmission, and distribution of electrical power. As shown in Table 7.1, switchgear equipment comes in various forms and ratings that can be used to perform particular functions. There are some fundamental differences among the various types of equipment available in the MV class. These differences are important from a maintenance and operation point of view and are discussed in the following sections.

TABLE 7.1
ANSI Classification of Switchgear Assemblies

Metal-Enclosed Power Switchgear	Metal-Enclosed Bus	Switchboards: Control	Switchboards: Power
Metal clad	Nonsegregated	Enclosed and dual duplex	Enclosed
Metal-enclosed interrupter	Segregated	Vertical panel	Dead front
Station-type cubicle	Isolated phase	Benchboard	Live front
Low-voltage power circuit breaker		Control desk	
		Dual benchboard	
		Duplex benchboard	

7.2.1.1 Metal-Clad Switchgear

Metal-clad switchgear consists of indoor and outdoor types with power circuit breakers rated from 4.16 to 13.8 kV, 1200 to 3000 A, 75 to 1000 MVA interrupting capacity as shown in Tables 7.3 and 7.4. Metal-clad switchgear has the following additional features:

TABLE 7.2
Metal-Enclosed Switchgear Assemblies Voltage and Insulation Ratings

Switchgear Assembly	Voltage (rms, kV): Nominal Rated	Voltage (rms, kV): Maximum Rated	Insulation (rms, kV): 60 Hz, 1 min Withstand	Insulation (rms, kV): Basic Impulse Level[a]
Metal-clad switchgear	4.16	4.76	19	60
	7.20	8.25	36	95
	13.80	15.00	36	95
	34.50	38.00	80	150
Metal-enclosed interrupter	4.16	4.76	19	60
	7.20	8.25	26	75
	13.80	15.00	36	95
	14.40	15.50	50	110
	23.00	25.80	60	125
	34.50	38.00	80	150
Station-type cubicle	14.40	15.50	50	110
	34.50	38.00	80	150
	69.00	72.50	160	350

[a] This is the crest value of the impulse voltage, such as lightning and other transients that the switchgear is required to withstand without failure.

TABLE 7.3

Power Circuit Breaker Ratings and Characteristics, ANSI C37.06-1971

Identification			Rated Values									Related Required Capabilities		
												Current Values		
			Voltage		Insulation Level		Current					K Times Rated Short-Circuit Current		Closing and Latching Capability 1.6K Times Rated Short-Circuit Current (rms, kA)
					Rated Withstand Test Voltage									
ANSI Line Number	Nominal Voltage Class (rms, kV)	Nominal Three-Phase MVA Class	Rated Maximum Voltage[a] (rms, kV)	Rated Voltage Range Factor, K[b]	Low Frequency	Impulse kV Crest	Rated Continuous Current at 60 Hz (rms, A)	Rated Short-Circuit Current (at Rated Maximum kV)[c,d] (rms, kA)	Related Interrupting Time Cycles	Rated Permissible Tripping Delay, Y (s)	Rated Maximum Voltage Divided by K (rms, kV)	Maximum Symmetrical Interrupting Capability[e] (rms, kA)	3 s Short-Time Current-Carrying Capability (rms, kA)	
1	4.16	75	4.76	1.36	19	60	1200	8.8	5	2	3.5	12	12	19
3	4.16	250	4.76	1.24	19	60	1200	29.0	5	2	3.85	36	36	58
4	4.16	250	4.76	1.24	19	60	2000	29.0	5	2	3.85	36	36	58
5	4.16	350	4.76	1.19	19	60	1200	41.0	5	2	4.0	49	49	78
6	4.16	350	4.76	1.19	19	60	3000	41.0	5	2	4.0	49	49	78
8	7.20	500	8.25	1.25	36	95	1200	33.0	5	2	6.6	41	41	66
9	7.20	500	8.25	1.25	36	95	2000	33.0	5	2	6.6	41	41	66
11	13.80	500	15.00	1.30	36	95	1200	18.0	5	2	11.5	23	23	37
12	13.80	500	15.00	1.30	36	95	2000	18.0	5	2	11.5	23	23	37
13	13.80	750	15.00	1.30	36	95	1200	28.0	5	2	11.5	36	36	58
14	13.80	750	15.00	1.30	36	95	2000	28.0	5	2	11.5	36	36	58

(continued)

TABLE 7.3 (continued)

Power Circuit Breaker Ratings and Characteristics, ANSI C37.06-1971

Identification			Rated Values									Related Required Capabilities			
			Voltage		Insulation Level: Rated Withstand Test Voltage		Current					Current Values			
												K Times Rated Short-Circuit Current			
ANSI Line Number	Nominal Voltage Class (rms, kV)	Nominal Three-Phase MVA Class	Rated Maximum Voltage[a] (rms, kV)	Rated Voltage Range Factor, K[b]	Low Frequency	Impulse kV Crest	Rated Continuous Current at 60 Hz (rms, A)	Rated Short-Circuit Current (at Rated Maximum kV)[c,d] (rms, kA)	Related Interrupting Time Cycles	Rated Permissible Tripping Delay, Y (s)	Rated Maximum Voltage Divided by K (rms, kV)	Maximum Symmetrical Interrupting Capability[e] (rms, kA)	3 s Short-Time Current-Carrying Capability (rms, kA)	Closing and Latching Capability 1.6K Times Rated Short-Circuit Current (rms, kA)
15	13.80	1000	15.00	1.30	36	95	1200	37.0	5	2	11.5	48	48	77
16	13.80	1000	15.00	1.30	36	95	3000	37.0	5	2	11.5	48	48	77

Note: ANSI C37.06 symmetrical rating basis is supplementary to ANSI C37.6 (total current rating basis) and does not replace it. When a changeover from the total current basis of rating to the symmetrical basis of rating is affected, the older standards will be withdrawn. In accordance with ANSI C37.06, users should confer with the manufacturer on the status of the various circuit breaker ratings.

[a] Maximum voltage for which the breaker is designed and the upper limit for operation.

[b] K is the ratio of rated maximum voltage to the lower limit of the range of operating voltage in which the required symmetrical interrupting capabilities vary in inverse proportion to the operating voltage.

[c] To obtain the required symmetrical interrupting capability of a circuit breaker at an operating voltage between $1/K$ times rated maximum voltage and rated maximum voltage, the following formula should be used:

Required symmetrical interrupting capability = rated short-circuit current × (rated maximum voltage/operating voltage)

For operating voltages below $1/K$ times rated maximum voltage, the required symmetrical interrupting capability of the circuit breaker shall be equal to K times rated short-circuit current.

[d] With the limitation stated in 04-4.5 of ANSI C37.04, all values apply for polyphase and line-to-line faults. For single phase-to-ground faults, the specific conditions stated in 04-4.5.2.3 of ANSI C37.04 apply.

[e] Current values in this column are not to be exceeded even for operating voltages below $1/K$ times rated maximum voltage. For voltages between rated maximum voltage and $1/K$ times rated maximum voltage, follow footnote 3 above.

TABLE 7.4

Power Circuit Breaker Rating and Characteristics, ANSI C37.6-1964

Nominal Three-Phase MVA Class	Rated (kV)	Maximum Design (kV)	Minimum Operating kV at Rated MVA	Insulation Level: Withstand Test: Low Frequency (rms, kV)	Insulation Level: Withstand Test: Impulse Crest (kV)	Current Ratings (A): Cont. at 60 Cycles	Current Ratings (A): Short-Time: Momentary	Current Ratings (A): Short-Time: 4 s	Interrupting Ratings: Three-Phase Rated MVA	Interrupting Ratings: In rms Total Amperes: At Rated Voltage	Interrupting Ratings: In rms Total Amperes: Maximum Rating	Rated Interrupting Time Cycles (60-Cycles Basis)
50	4.16	4.76	2.3	19	60	(600) (1200)	20,000	12,500	50	7,000	12,500	8
100/150	2.4/4.16	4.76	2.3/3.5	19	60	(600) (1200) (2000)	40,000	25,000	100/150	21,000	25,000	8
150/250	2.4/4.16	4.76	2.3/3.5	19	60	(1200) (2000)	60,000	37,500	150/250	35,000	37,500	8
250	7.2	8.25	4.6	36	95	(1200) (2000)	51,000	32,000	250	20,000	32,000	8
300	7.2	8.25	6.6	36	95	(1200) (2000)	70,000	44,000	500	40,000	44,000	8
150	13.8	15.0	6.6	36	95	(600) (1200)	20,000	13,000	150	6,300	13,000	8
250	13.8	15.0	6.6	36	95	(1200) (2000)	35,000	22,000	250	10,600	22,000	8
500	13.8	15.0	11.5	36	95	(1200) (2000)	40,000	25,000	500	21,000	25,000	8

- The interrupting and switching device (i.e., breaker) is removable and can be physically moved into disconnect, test, or operating position.
- The primary bus conductors and connections are insulated.
- All live parts are enclosed within grounded metal compartments.
- Automatic shutters close off and prevent exposure of the primary circuit elements when the circuit breaker is removed from operating position.
- The primary and secondary contacts are self-aligning and self-coupling.
- Mechanical interlocks are provided to ensure a proper and safe operation.
- The circuit breaker housing cell door may be used to mount relays, instruments, and wiring. The relays, control devices, and associated wiring are isolated by grounded metal barriers from primary conductors.
- The elements of primary circuits such as circuit breakers, buses, and potential transformers are completely enclosed by grounded metal barriers.

7.2.1.2 Metal-Enclosed Interrupter Switchgear

Metal-enclosed interrupter switchgear consists of indoor and outdoor types with or without power fuses, voltage rating from 4.16 to 34.5 kV, and current rating of upto 1200 A. This switchgear is characterized by the following features:

- The primary buses and connections are uninsulated.
- The disconnecting device is an interrupter switch that may be removable or stationary.
- This switchgear may have instrument transformers, control wiring, and accessory devices.

7.2.1.3 Station-Type Cubicle

The station-type cubicle switchgear consists of indoor and outdoor types with power circuit breakers rated from 14.4 to 34.5 kV, 1200 to 5000 A, 1500 to 2500 MVA interrupting capacity. This switchgear has the following features:

- Power-operated stationary circuit breaker
- Bare buses having continuous carrying capacity equal to the service required
- Bare connections having current-carrying capacity equal to that of the power circuit breaker

- Each phase of primary is segregated and enclosed by metal
- Three-pole, single-throw, group-operated disconnect switches that are interlocked between power circuit breaker and front door giving access to primary compartment
- A set of instrument transformers
- Control wiring, terminal blocks, ground bus, and accessory devices

7.2.2 Short-Circuit Considerations and Power Circuit Breaker Ratings

To understand the rating basis of power circuit breakers, it is important to understand how the circuit breaker will perform under conditions where the short-circuit current varies with time. The rating structure of a power circuit breaker is complicated because of the opening time of the circuit breaker during a short-circuit condition. The total operating time of the circuit breaker is based on the following:

- Protective relay operation time
- Circuit breaker operation time

The protective relay operation time is a function of relay type and its setting. The types of relays and their operating characteristics are discussed in Chapter 9. The breaker operation time (i.e., mechanical time) consists of the following:

- Circuit breaker trip coil to energize its operating mechanism
- Circuit breaker contact parting time
- Circuit breaker to quench the arc in the arc chamber (or in the vacuum bottle in case of vacuum interrupters)

High mechanical stresses are produced instantaneously in the circuit breaker during the interruption of a short circuit. These stresses vary as the square of the current and are greatest at maximum current. The fault current magnitude varies from short-circuit inception to the time when it reaches a steady-state condition. This variation depends on the instantaneous value of the system voltages at the instant the fault occurs, also known as the closing angle; the dynamic change in alternating current (AC) impedance as the energy balance changes and the decay in the direct current (DC) component of the fault current. Consequently, the circuit breaker interrupts the fault current at some time (usually a few cycles) after the short circuit occurred. Therefore, power circuit breaker ratings are established on two bases:

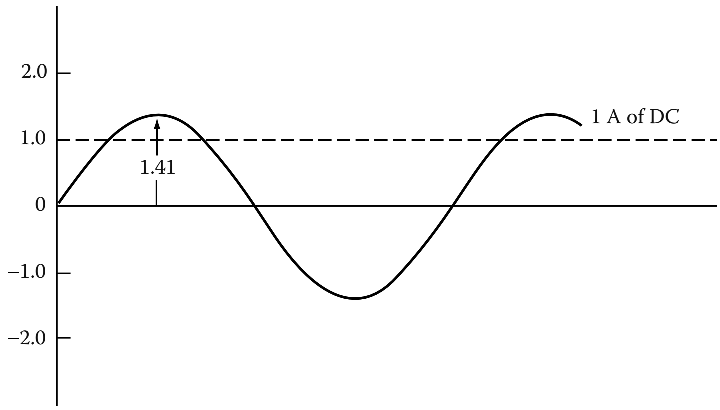


FIGURE 7.1
AC and DC effective values.

- Momentary rating, that is, circuit breaker ability to close and latch on the maximum short-circuit current available without mechanical damage.
- Interrupting rating, that is, circuit breaker ability to interrupt the flow of fault current without mechanical damage.

The fault current is highly asymmetrical from the time of fault inception to several cycles later. It becomes symmetrical after it reaches steady-state conditions. To understand fully the varying phenomena of short-circuit current, let us briefly review short-circuit definitions and the kinds of current available in a fault.

Root-mean-square (rms) (effective) value: This is an effective value of AC and is usually expressed as $0.707I_m$, where I_m is the AC peak value. This rms current value is shown in Figure 7.1.

Peak value (crest): This is the maximum value of the AC wave peak.

Average value: The average value of an AC wave is zero because the positive and negative loops have the same area. However, the average value of the positive loop of a symmetrical wave can be expressed in terms of peak value. For sine wave the average value is expressed as $0.636I_m$, where I_m is the peak value.

Instantaneous (momentary) value: It is difficult to manipulate analytically the instantaneous value of alternating wave forms. In general, for short-circuit considerations the instantaneous value (or momentary value) is the peak value of the sine wave occurring at first half-cycle.

Symmetrical current: A symmetrical current wave is symmetrical about the time axis (zero axis) of the wave. This is shown in Figure 7.2.

Asymmetrical current: An asymmetrical current wave is not symmetrical about the time axis. The axis of symmetry is displaced or offset from the

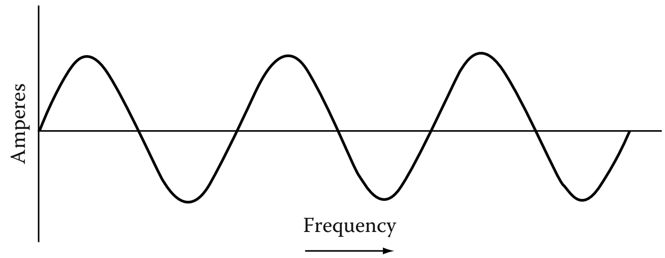


FIGURE 7.2
Symmetrical current wave.

time axis. This is shown in Figure 7.3. An asymmetrical wave can be partially offset or fully offset. Offset waves are sometimes called displaced waves.

DC component: The axis of symmetry of an offset wave resembles a DC, and symmetrical currents can be readily handled if considered to have an AC and a DC component. Both of these components are theoretical. The DC component is generated within the AC system and has no external source. Figure 7.4 shows a fully offset asymmetrical current with a steady DC component as its axis of symmetry. The symmetrical component has the zero axis as its axis of symmetry. If the rms or effective value of the symmetrical current is 1, the peak of the symmetrical current is 1.41. This is also the effective value of the DC component. We can add these two effective currents together by the square root of the sum of the squares and get the effective or rms value of asymmetrical current.

The rms value of a fully offset asymmetrical current is 1.73 times the symmetrical rms current. It is readily apparent that the peak asymmetrical current is twice the peak symmetrical current: $2 \times 1.41 = 2.82$.

Total current: The term total current is used to express the total or sum of the AC and DC components of an asymmetrical current. Total current and total asymmetrical current have the same meaning and may be expressed in peak or rms amperes.

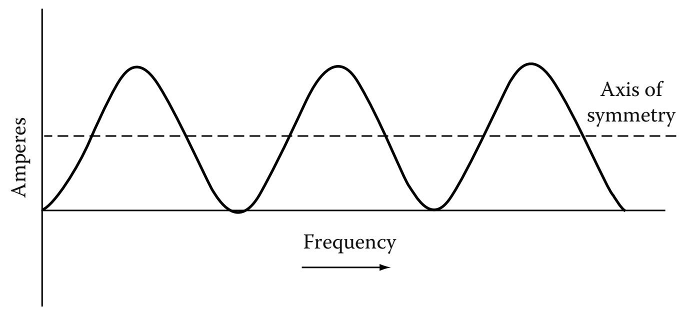


FIGURE 7.3
Asymmetrical current wave, fully offset.

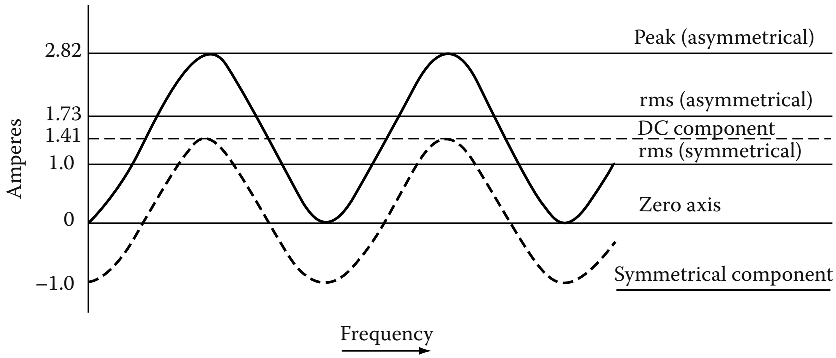


FIGURE 7.4
Fully offset asymmetrical wave with DC component.

Decay: Unfortunately, fault currents are neither symmetrical nor fully asymmetrical but somewhere in between. The DC component is usually short-lived and decays after several cycles. In Figure 7.5, the DC component decays to zero in about four cycles. The rate of decay is called decrement, and depends upon the circuit constants. The DC component would never decay in a circuit having reactance but zero resistance and would remain constant forever. In a circuit having resistance but zero reactance, the component would decay instantly. These are theoretical conditions; all practical circuits have some resistance and reactance, and the DC component disappears in a few cycles. In practice when performing short circuit analyses the X/R ratio is computed to give a practical estimate for determining how quickly the DC component will decay. For more detail, see definition of X/R in this chapter.

Closing angle: A short-circuit fault can occur at any point on the voltage wave. So far we have avoided discussing voltage characteristics, but the voltage wave resembles the current wave. The two waves may be in phase or out

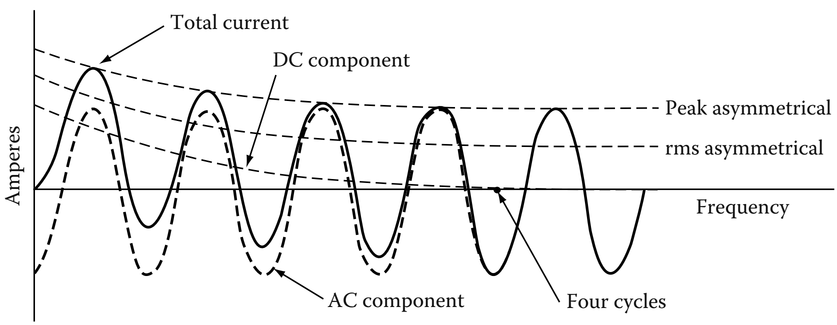


FIGURE 7.5
DC and AC component currents.

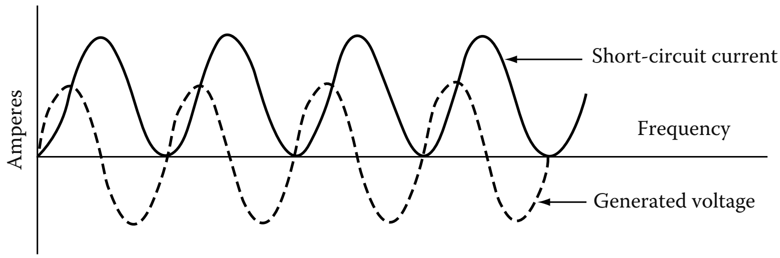


FIGURE 7.6
Asymmetrical current wave when fault occurs at zero voltage.

of phase, and the magnitude and symmetry of the current wave of a short circuit depends on the point on the voltage wave at which the fault occurs. This is known as the closing angle of the fault.

Random closing: In real life, faults occur at any and every point on the voltage wave. In a laboratory, this can be duplicated by closing the circuit at random. This is known as random closing. The following is true of a short circuit having negligible resistance:

- If the fault occurs at zero voltage, the current wave is fully asymmetrical, as shown in Figure 7.6
- If the fault occurs at maximum voltage, the current wave is completely symmetrical, as shown in Figure 7.7

Most natural faults occur somewhere in between these two extremes.

Available short circuit (first half-cycle current): What is the available short-circuit current value of a wave that is neither symmetrical nor asymmetrical? Referring to Figure 7.8, the current wave is symmetrical about four cycles after the DC component becomes zero. We can also determine the total rms asymmetrical current at one, two, or three cycles or at any other time after the short circuit started. The accepted practice is to use the current that is available one half-cycle after the short circuit starts. For a fully offset wave, the maximum current

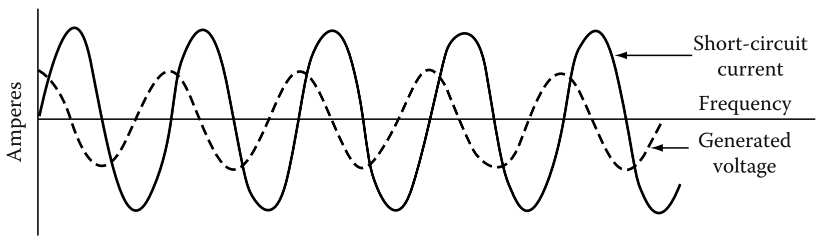


FIGURE 7.7
Symmetrical current wave when fault occurs at maximum voltage.

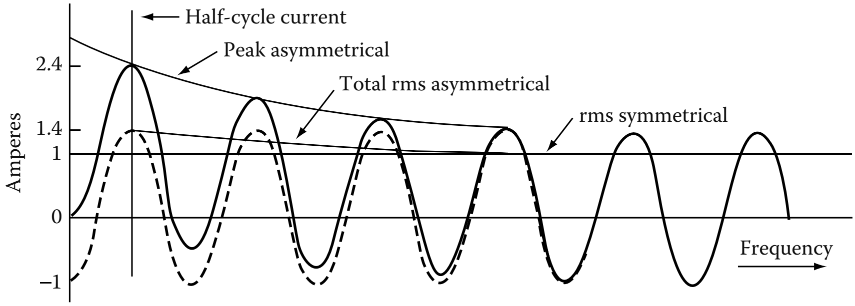


FIGURE 7.8
First half-cycle current.

does occur at the end of the first half-cycle of time. Because this is the worst case, we should determine the peak and rms currents at this point.

As already mentioned, the rate of decay depends upon the circuit constants. A study of actual circuits of 600 V or less indicates that the proper half-cycle value for rms asymmetrical current is 1.4 times the rms symmetrical current, and the peak instantaneous current is 1.7 times the rms asymmetrical current. Half-cycle available current is 1.7 × 1.4 = 2.4 rms symmetrical current.

Current limitation: Current-limiting fuses and circuit breakers do not allow the short-circuit current to reach the full available value. They interrupt the circuit in less than one half-cycle before the current builds up to the maximum value. The various times associated with fuses are the following:

- *Melting time:* Time required to melt the fusible link
- *Arcing time:* Time required for the arc to burn back the fusible link and reduce the current to zero
- *Total clearing time:* Sum of the melting and arcing times, or the time from fault initiation to extinction

Figure 7.9 shows the current-limiting action of the fuse.

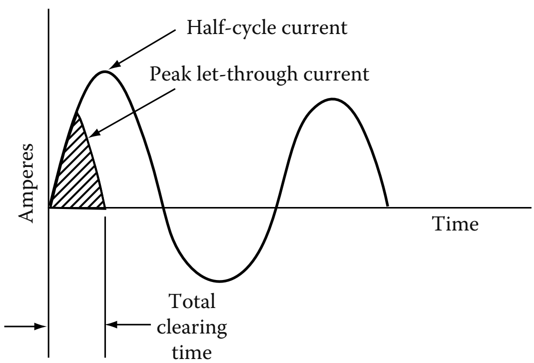


FIGURE 7.9
Current-limiting fuse action.

Let-through current: The maximum instantaneous or peak current that passes through the fuse is called the let-through current. This can be expressed in rms amperes, also.

Triangular wave: The rise and fall of the current through a current-limiting fuse resembles an isosceles triangle, and can be assumed to be a triangle without introducing appreciable error. Since this is not a sine wave, the rms value of the let-through current cannot be determined by taking 0.707 of the peak value as is done for a sine wave. The effective or rms value of a triangular wave is equal to the peak value divided by $\sqrt{3}$.

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{I_{\text{peak}}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{I_{\text{peak}}}{1.73}$$

The let-through current of a current-limiting fuse varies with the design, ampere rating, and available short-circuit current. Fuse manufacturers furnish let-through curves for the various types of current-limiting fuses.

Three-phase short circuit: Three-phase short-circuit currents can be determined in exactly the same way as single-phase currents if we assume the three phases are symmetrical. The three phases have different current values at any instant. Only one can be fully asymmetrical at a given time. This is called the maximum or worst phase, and its rms current value can be found by multiplying the symmetrical rms current by the proper factor. The currents in three phases can be averaged, and the average three-phase rms amperes can be determined by multiplying the symmetrical rms current by the proper factor, which is determined by the X/R ratio of the power system.

X/R ratio: Every practical circuit contains resistance (R) and inductive reactance (X). These are electrically in series. Their combined effect is called impedance (Z). When current flows through an inductance (coil), the voltage leads the current by 90°, and when current flows through a resistance, the voltage and current are in phase. This means that X and R must be combined vectorially to obtain impedance. The impedance triangle relating X, R, and Z is shown in Figure 7.10.

The resultant angle θ is the angle between the voltage and current waves and is called the phase angle. The voltage leads the current or the current lags the voltage by an amount equal to the phase angle. The asymmetrical current may be obtained from known symmetrical current by multiplying with a multiplying factor for a known X/R ratio. The multiplying

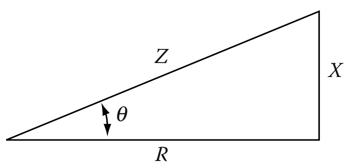


FIGURE 7.10
Impedance triangle.

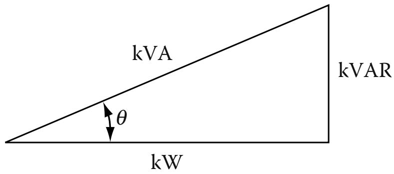


FIGURE 7.11
Power triangle.

factors for commercial and industrial systems vary between 1.0 and 1.6 depending on the X/R ratio.

Power factor: Power factor is defined as the ratio of real power (kW) to apparent power (kVA).

$$\mathrm{PF} = \frac{\mathrm{kW}}{\mathrm{kVA}} = \frac{\text{real power}}{\text{apparent power}}$$

Kilowatts are measured with a wattmeter. Kilovolt-amperes are determined with a voltmeter and an ammeter, and the voltage and current waves may be in phase or out of phase. The relationship of kilowatts, kilovars, and kilovolt-amperes is shown in Figure 7.11.

Power circuit breaker rating: The ANSI ratings for power circuit breakers are expressed by two rating structures. The older standard ANSI C37.6 expresses the interrupting rating of AC high-voltage (HV) breakers megavolt-amperes (MVA) based on total or asymmetrical current at the time of contact parting. The newer standard ANSI C37.06, which was introduced in 1964, expresses the interrupting of AC HV breakers based on total rms symmetrical currents at the time of contact parting. The rating and characteristics of the ANSI C37.06 and ANSI C37.6 are shown in Tables 7.3 and 7.4, respectively.

The standards define that a circuit breaker shall be capable of performing the following in succession:

1. Close and immediately latch at normal frequency current, which does not exceed its momentary capability
2. Carry its maximum rated symmetrical current at specified operating voltage for duration of its rated permissible tripping delay
3. Interrupt all currents not greater than its rated symmetrical interrupting current at a specified operating voltage and its related asymmetrical current based on its rated contact parting time

The typical short-circuit current consists of the following:

1. Symmetrical AC wave shape
2. DC component
3. Total current

TABLE 7.5

Comparison of Calculated MVA Values Based on ANSI Standards

Voltage (kV)	Breaker	ANSI C37.06	ANSI C37.6
11.5	1200 A, 13.8–500	$23{,}000 \times 1.73 \times 11.5$ $= 460\,\text{MVA}$	$25{,}000 \times 1.73 \times 11.5$ $= 500\,\text{MVA}$
13.8	1200 A, 13.8–500	$18{,}000 \times \dfrac{15}{13.8} \times 1.73 \times 13.8$ $= 468\,\text{MVA}$	$21{,}000 \times 1.73 \times 13.8$ $= 500\,\text{MVA}$
15	1200 A, 13.8–500	$18{,}000 \times 1.73 \times 15$ $= 468\,\text{MVA}$	$19{,}000 \times 1.73 \times 15$ $= 500\,\text{MVA}$

Let us now compare the rating structure of the two standards by making calculations for a 13.8 kV, 1200 A, 500 MVA rated breaker. The calculations for short-circuit interrupting MVA capability using ANSI C37.06 and C37.6 are made for power circuit breakers operating at minimum, nominal, and maximum voltages. These values are shown in Table 7.5.

It is interesting to note from Table 7.5 that the maximum interrupting MVA calculated based on ANSI C37.06 is less than the MVA rating based on ANSI C37.6. The MVA based on ANSI C37.06 also varies for different operating voltages as compared to ANSI C37.6 MVA values. The standards committee developing new standards developed a more stringent basis for the short circuit ratings as stated in ANSI C37.06, 2000. The emphasis under the ANSI C37.06 is to rate the circuit breakers in rms amperes rather than MVA, as is the case in the ANSI C37.6. The rms symmetrical rating system is based on the symmetrical component of the short-circuit current at the time of contact opening. Since the short-circuit current is varying from fault inception until it reaches steady-state conditions, some fixed relationship must be defined (or calculated) between symmetrical and asymmetrical currents based on breaker opening time. This fixed relationship is defined in ANSI C37.04-4.5.2.2 by the *S* curve, which is shown in Figure 7.12.

In summary, the ANSI C37.06 standard requires that the proper breaker should be selected by calculating the total symmetrical rms current at contact parting time. The reason for selecting the contact parting time as the basis of fault interrupting rating is that the breaker should be able to withstand the high mechanical stresses imposed upon it by the first half-cycle fault current, if the breaker is closed in on a fault. The contact parting time of a circuit breaker is the sum of one half-cycle tripping delay plus the operating time of the circuit breaker. For breakers rated at eight, five, three, and two cycles of interrupting time, the related standard contact parting times are four, three, two, and one and a half cycles, respectively.

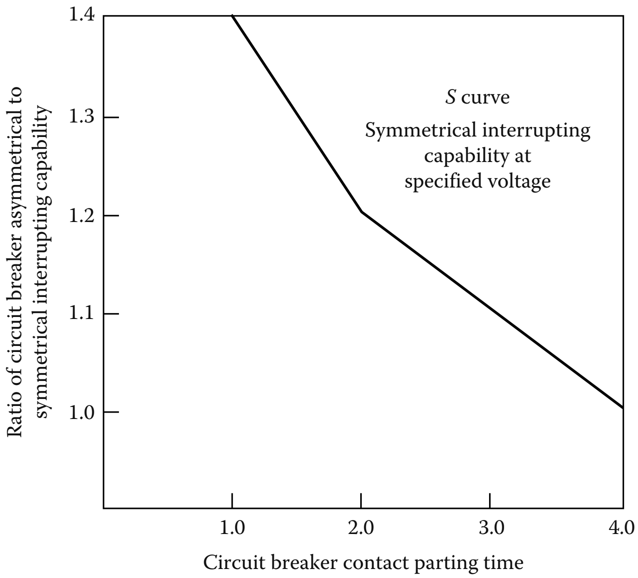


FIGURE 7.12
S curve per ANSI C37.04-4.

7.2.3 Selection and Application of Power Circuit Breakers

The application of power switchgear is relatively a simple procedure in most cases whether the switchgear is metal-clad or fused interrupter switches. The following steps are usually considered in applying this equipment:

- Selection of switching scheme
- Calculation of available fault current for breaker or fused interrupter selection
- Main bus continuous current rating selection
- Current and potential transformer selection
- Protective relay selection
- Circuit breaker control power selection
- Other special considerations

Many different switching schemes are available in power switchgear to meet the desired reliability or operational flexibility. A choice should be made based on system requirements, maintenance considerations, reliability, and future expansion.

The selection of the power circuit breaker or fused interrupter switch involves the calculation of available fault current for interrupting duty purposes. Insofar as the interrupting of the circuit breaker is concerned, the following limits should not be exceeded:

- Interrupting rms symmetrical amperes between the operating voltage limits.
- Total fault current that is available at contact parting time in terms of symmetrical rms amperes.
- Momentary current that is available during the first half-cycle. The standards allow the momentary rating of circuit breakers to be 1.6 times the rms interrupting rating at an *X/R* ratio of 10. In general industrial systems, where *X/R* ratios can approach 15–20, the next higher (standard) interrupting duty may have to be applied even though the RMS symmetrical currents may be similar to those where the *X/R* is 10 or less.
- The continuous current that the breaker is rated to carry.
- The operating voltage limits, that is, the minimum and maximum design voltages of the circuit breaker.
- The breakers used for reclosing or repetitive duty should be derated in accordance with NEMA SG 4-2005 standards in order to be applied properly.

7.3 Electrical Switchgear Maintenance and Care

Switchgear components, such as circuit breakers, disconnect switches, fuses, and insulators, require regular inspection and maintenance. Switchgear can be of indoor or outdoor type and can be from different manufacturers. However, the maintenance of all types of switchgear can be carried out by following the basic maintenance operations. Also refer to Section 8.7.1, Chapter 8 on general guidelines for inspection of switchgear that may be used when inspecting medium voltage switchgear. This section provides the fundamental maintenance instructions for an overall maintenance program for switchgear. In cases where detailed instructions are required, the reader is advised to consult the recommendations of the manufacturer of the particular equipment under consideration for maintenance.

7.3.1 MV Switchgear

7.3.1.1 Power Circuit Breakers

MV circuit breakers consist of air-magnetic circuit breakers either of horizontal drawout type or vertical lift type, oil circuit breakers, and vacuum circuit breakers. The following procedures should be carried out before new power circuit breakers are placed in service.

a. Receiving, handling, and storage
    - Inspect the circuit breaker for damage that may have occurred in transit. Check the nameplate data and the packing list provided with the equipment delivered.

- Inspect the arc chutes of the air-magnetic breaker for cracks, damage, or foreign material.
- Inspect the shield on each of the fixed arcing contacts of the air-magnetic breaker for cracks.
- Lift and let down circuit breakers slowly. Do not use the bushing as handles when handling the breaker. Always roll and maneuver the breaker by grasping the top edge of the breaker cover. Avoid any sudden jerks when moving the breaker.
- If the breaker must be stored before it is put into service, keep it in a clean, dry, and noncorrosive place. Coat all bare metal surfaces with grease to prevent rusting or oxidation. If the breaker is to be installed outdoors, make sure power is available for space heaters and that they are working.
- In cases where a breaker is stored for a long period of time, it should be inspected regularly for rusting.

b. Installation

- Make an overall examination of the entire breaker to ensure that there are no damaged parts.
- Use a dry, clean cloth to remove dirt and moisture that might have collected on the circuit breaker.
- Cycle the breaker by opening and closing the breaker manually and electrically. Check for proper operation.
- To ensure that no damage has occurred during shipment, perform a high-potential (hi-pot) test on each breaker pole (or vacuum interrupter) while the breaker is in the open position. Test results should be evaluated on a go, no-go basis by slowly raising the test voltage to the values shown in Table 7.6. Hold the final test value for 1 min, if using an AC test method. If you are using a DC test method, you can operate the test using a Megger Vidar that takes only 5–10 s. If you do not get good results when testing a vaccum interrupter using the DC method, then first retest the vacuum bottle using reverse polarity. At that point, if the bottle fails again, then you will have to check it with an AC hi-pot instrument.
- Visually inspect the breaker before installation to make sure that all test jumpers or leads, specialized breaker tools or maintenance accessories have been removed before installing the breaker in its cubicle.
- Install the breaker into its cubicle in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Check for proper operation by manually cycling the breaker with control power off. This should be done while the breaker is in the test or disconnected position.

TABLE 7.6

Hi-Pot Values for Acceptance Testing of Breakers[a]

Voltage Class (kV)	Test Value (AC) (kV)[b]	Test Value (DC) (kV)[c]
5.0	14	20
7.2	27	37
13.8	27	37
23.0	45	—
38.0	60	—
Over 38.0	Consult manufacturer	—

[a] *Caution*: Some manufacturers discourage the use of high DC voltages when testing circuit breakers with vacuum bottles. Consult the manufacturer's installation and maintenance instructions manual for specific details regarding the acceptance tests when vacuum interrupter assemblies are involved.
[b] The values shown in this column are 75% of the factory AC voltage test values.
[c] The values shown in this column are DC equivalent of 75% of the factory AC voltage test values.

7.3.1.2 Maintenance

Power circuit breakers, like other electrical equipment, require preventive maintenance to avoid equipment problems. The schedule for preventive maintenance can vary for each facility depending upon operating and environmental conditions. Frequent inspection and maintenance should be performed if the following factors are present:

- Corrosive atmosphere
- Excessive dust or dirt
- High ambient temperature and high humidity
- Older equipment
- Excessive repetitive duty
- Frequent fault interruption

Generally, the frequency of inspection should be based upon service and operating conditions. As a guide, inspect equipment about 6 months after it is installed and the follow up with scheduled maintenance every 1–3 years. In the performance of maintenance routines, all safety precautions should be followed.

Preventive maintenance should include the following areas:

1. Circuit breaker
   a. Contacts
   b. Arc chutes
   c. Mechanical parts
   d. Auxiliary equipment

2. Cell enclosure
   a. Cell joints (i.e., bus joints)
   b. Cell contacts
   c. Insulation

The following routine maintenance instructions are offered as a general guide for the maintenance of power circuit breakers. If special detailed instructions are required, consult the manufacturer.

7.3.2 Air-Magnetic Circuit Breakers

Before inspecting or performing any maintenance on either the breaker or its mechanism, be sure the breaker is in the open position, is disconnected from all electrical sources, and is removed from the cubicle (Figure 7.13a, b, and c). Both the closing and opening, springs should be discharged or blocked mechanically before any maintenance is done. The old air magnetic breakers, in many cases have been retrofitted (replaced) with vacuum breakers in the same switchgear. The vacuum breaker retrofit is a direct one-for-one replacement without involving any other equipment conversions. For maintenance of vacuum breakers in retrofit applications, refer to Section 7.3.4 for guidelines and instructions on vacuum breakers.

1. Record the number of operations and perform a general visual inspection of the breaker. Report any unusual signs of problems.
2. Put circuit breaker in test position and, using a test coupler, operate breaker electrically. Check the operation of all electrical relays, solenoid switches, motors, control switches, and indicating devices.
3. Remove circuit breaker from enclosure and perform visual inspection as follows:

(a) (b) (c)

FIGURE 7.13
An ITE air magnetic breaker components. (a) Front view showing arc-chutes, (b) side view showing bushing and operating mechanism, and (c) back view showing disconnecting stubs and cluster fingers.

a. Remove box barriers.
b. Wipe clean of smoke deposit and dust from all insulating parts, including the bushings and the inside of the box barrier. Use a clean, dry, lint-free cloth; a vacuum cleaner would be helpful.
c. Inspect the condition of bushing primary disconnect stubs and finger cluster.
d. Inspect the condition of bushing insulation; it should be clean, dry, smooth, hard, and unmarred.
e. Check breaker and operating mechanism carefully for loose nuts, bolts, or retaining rings, and ensure that mechanical linkage is secure.
f. Inspect insulation and outside of arc chutes for holes or breaks; small cracks are normal.
g. Inspect magnetic blowout coils (if used) for damage.
h. Inspect all current-carrying parts for evidence of overheating.

Functional inspection

- Sand throat area of arc chutes with garnet paper or other nonconductive, abrasive paper until thoroughly clean.
- Ensure that arc chutes are clear of contamination and have no significant damage on grids or ceramics. If ceramics or fins are broken, replace arc chutes.
- Ensure that all brazed, soldered, or bolted electrical connections are tight.
- Inspect contacts of control relays for wear and clean as necessary.
- Check actuator relays, charging motor, and secondary disconnects for damage, evidence of overheating, or insulation breakdown.
- Check that all wiring connections are tight and for any possible damage to the insulation.
- Replace any wire that has worn insulation.
- On stored-energy breakers, operate the breaker slowly. By using the spring blocking device, check for binding or friction and correct if necessary. Make sure contacts can be opened or closed fully.
- Inspect the arcing contacts for uneven wear or damage. Replace badly worn contacts. Measure the arcing contact wire, using an ohmmeter. Make adjustment if necessary. Refer to the appropriate instruction book.
- Inspect primary contacts for burns or pitting. Wipe contacts with clean cloth. Replace badly burned or pitted contacts. Rough or galled contacts should be smoothed with a crocus cloth or file lightly. Resilver where necessary.

- Inspect primary disconnect studs for arcing or burning. Clean and lightly grease arcing contacts.
- Check primary contact gap and wipe. Make adjustment as per appropriate instruction book. Grease contacts with an approved grease and operate breaker several times.
- Check operation and clearance of trip armature travel and release latch as per appropriate instruction book. Replace worn parts.
- Inspect all bearings, cams, rollers, latches, and buffer blocks for wear. Teflon-coated sleeve bearings do not require lubrication. All other sleeve bearings, rollers, and needle bearings should be lubricated with SAE 20 or 30 machine oil. All ground surfaces coated with dark molybdenum disulfide do not require lubrication. Lubricate all other ground surfaces such as latches, rollers, or props with an approved grease.
- Install box barriers.
- Measure insulation resistance of each bushing terminal to ground and phase to phase. Record readings along with temperature and humidity.
- Perform hi-pot test for breaker bushing insulation (optional).
- Check closed breaker contact resistance (optional).
- Perform power factor test (optional).
- Perform corona test (optional).
- Using test box, operate breaker both electrically and manually. Check all interlocks.
- Insert and operate breaker in cabinet. Watch for proper operation of the positive interlock trip-free mechanism. (Breaker should trip if not fully in or in test position.)
- Remove breaker from cubicle and check primary disconnect wipe; refer to appropriate instruction book.
- Perform visual inspection and check for proper operation as discussed under Section 7.3.1.1.b before inserting breaker into cubicle ready for energization.

7.3.3 Oil Circuit Breaker

The oil circuit breaker should be maintained on a periodic basis similar to the air-magnetic circuit breakers. To maintain the circuit breaker, mount it on the inspection rack and untank it to expose the internal parts. Check for the following and make adjustments and repairs in accordance with the instruction book.

- Wipe clean all parts, including any carbon markings. Insulating parts should be inspected for damage such as warp age and cracks; replace damaged parts.
- Inspect the contacts for alignment and wear. Replace pitted and burned contacts and file rough contacts. Adjust contacts to ensure that contacts bear with firm and even pressure.

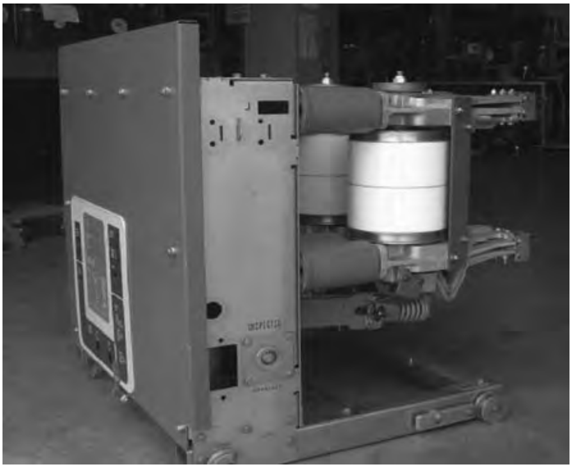
- Take an oil sample and make a dielectric test as explained in Chapter 4 under testing of insulating liquids. If visible carbon particles are evident in the oil, filter oil regardless of the dielectric strength.
- Wipe inside of tank, barriers, and tank linings to remove carbon.
- Inspect and clean operating mechanism similar to that described in Section 7.3.2.
- Check the breaker operation by slowly closing with the closing device similar to the air-magnetic breaker. Also check its electrical operation.
- Replace tank with proper oil level and make sure that all gaskets, tank nuts, and flange nuts are tightened properly to prevent leakage.

7.3.4 Vacuum Circuit Breaker

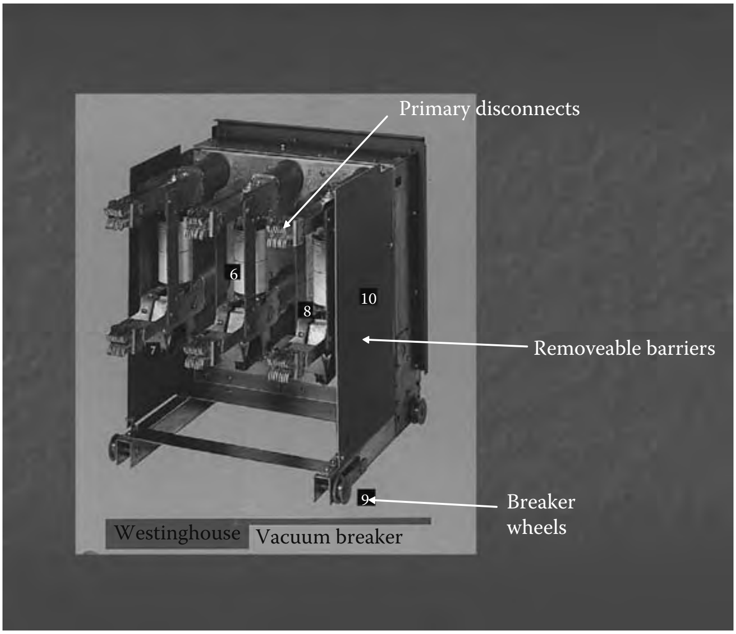
The vacuum circuit breaker (Figure 7.14a and b) maintenance schedule should be based upon operating experience and environmental conditions. If such a schedule has not been determined, it is recommended that the breaker be inspected at least once a year or every 2000 operations, whichever occurs earlier. However, a breaker should be inspected every time after a severe fault interruption. The following checks should be performed for the vacuum circuit breaker:

- Check for contact erosion. To determine contact erosion, remove breaker from enclosure. Close the breaker and measure the spring plate overtravel. Consult the manufacturer's instruction book for allowable overtravel. If the specified overtravel is exceeded, the vacuum interrupter must be replaced.
- To check the condition of the vacuum, perform a hi-pot rest. Consult the manufacturer's instruction book for test value or use 60% of the final factory test value.
- Using a clean, dry cloth remove all dirt and moisture from the outside of vacuum interrupters and all insulating parts.
- Check the entire operating mechanism similar to the air-magnetic circuit breaker.
- Lubricate ground surfaces such as cams, gear teeth, rollers, and pawls when performing maintenance. See the manufacturer's guide on lubrication methods and time periods.
- Operate the breaker manually and electrically several times to make sure that the breaker is operating properly.

Electrical tests of the vacuum bottle integrity can be performed using either an AC or DC method. Also, vacuum bottle integrity can be checked using a DC Megger Vidar Instrument. The test using a Vidar only takes 5–10 s. A Megger Vidar instrument is shown in Figure 7.15.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 7.14
Medium voltage power/vacuum circuit breaker. (a) Side view showing vacuum bottles and (b) back view showing primary disconnect fingers.

7.3.5 Switchgear Enclosure and Bus

An inspection of the switchgear bus and enclosure should be made every year. However, inspection frequency can be increased or decreased depending on operating and environmental conditions. It is good practice to follow the

FIGURE 7.15
A DC Megger Vidar instrument. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

manufacturer's recommendations regarding maintenance procedures. The following are suggestions to supplement the manufacturer's recommendations:

- Check the enclosure housing to ensure that all hardware is in place and in good condition. The purpose of enclosure is to protect the equipment from outside contaminants and prevent exposure of personnel to live parts. A maintenance program should assure that these features are maintained. Lubricate hinges, locks, latches, and so on.
- For outdoor assemblies, check for roof or wall leaks, as well as for damage from previous leaks.
- After the power has been turned off and the bus has been grounded, remove dust and dirt by wiping with a dry, clean cloth or by vacuuming.
- Check for all unnecessary floor openings and any water pools at the base of enclosures. Seal such openings with duct seal. Check for signs of moisture accumulation, such as droplet depression on dust-laden surfaces and dust patterns. Prevent moisture accumulation by providing heat and ventilation. Therefore, make sure that space heaters and fans are functioning properly.
- Check that ventilators are clear of obstruction and air filters are clean and in good condition.
- The surface of all insulating members should be inspected before any cleaning or dusting, as well as after cleaning for signs of electrical

distress, tracking, corona, and thermal heating. Damage caused by electrical distress will usually be evident on the insulating surface as corona markings or tracking parts. The areas most susceptible to electrical distress are

a. Splices and junction points
b. Boundaries between adjoining insulators
c. Edges of insulation surrounding mounting hardware grounded to the metal structure
d. Bridging paths across insulating surface
e. Boundaries between an insulating member and the grounded metal surface
f. Hidden surfaces such as adjacent edges between upper and lower members of split bus supports
g. Sharp edges in switchgear that are not insulated

- Check for loose bolted connections in bus bars, splices, and the like, for signs of heating. Tighten in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- Examine grounding connections and ground bus for tightness and cleanliness.
- Check alignment and contacts of primary disconnecting devices for abnormal wear or damage. Check for sulfide deposits and use a solvent such as alcohol for removal of these deposits.
- Remove any paint damage or finishes.
- After cleaning and adjusting, run an insulation resistance test to measure resistance to ground. Compare the values of test readings with previous readings for any sign of weakening of the insulation system. Readings should be normalized to a common temperature and humidity base before comparison is made.
- Compare equipment nameplate information with latest one-line diagram and report discrepancies.
- Check tightness of accessible bolted bus joints by calibrated wrench method. Refer to manufacturer recommendations for proper torque values.
- Test key interlock systems physically to ensure the following:

  a. Closure attempt should be made on locked-open devices
  b. Opening attempt should be made on locked-closed devices
  c. Key exchange should be made with devices operated in off-normal positions

- Check for cracks in extruded red sleeving bus insulation made from Lexan or Noryl. Repair cracked insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations.

7.4 Electrical Switchgear Testing

The design of the insulation system for metal-enclosed switchgear is based upon life expectancy of about 30 years. However, environmental conditions such as dirt, moisture, and corrosive atmosphere can shorten the design life. Moisture combined with dirt is the greatest deteriorating factor for insulation systems because of leakage and tracking, which will result in eventual failure. Therefore, it is important to maintain the switchgear insulation and to chart the condition of the primary insulation system by routine testing.

The electrical switchgear may be tested with AC or DC voltage to check the condition of the insulation of switchgear and circuit breakers. Before conducting any other tests, an insulation resistance test (Megger) should always be conducted first to determine if it is safe to conduct other HV tests. Also when testing circuit breakers, it is important to check the condition of the circuit breaker contacts and circuit breaker operating mechanism to assure that the circuit breaker is opening and closing as designed. These tests are listed and discussed as follows:

- Insulation resistance test
- DC or AC hi-pot test
- Power factor or dielectric loss test
- Circuit breaker contact resistance test
- Circuit breaker time–travel analysis test

7.4.1 Insulation Resistance Measurement Test

The insulation resistance measurement test may be conducted on all types of electrical switchgear using the insulation resistance megohmmeter commonly known as the MEGGER.* The Megger S1-5010 is shown in Figure 7.16 that may be used to perform this test.

The insulation resistance test consists of applying voltage (600–10,000 V DC) to the apparatus to determine the megohm value of resistance. This test does not indicate the quality of primary insulation. Several factors should be remembered when performing this test. The first is that this test can indicate low values of insulation resistance because of many parallel paths. The other is that an insulation system having low dielectric strength may indicate high resistance values. In view of this, the test results should only be interpreted for comparative purposes. This does not indicate the quality of the primary insulation system from the point of view of dielectric withstandability. The connection diagram for making this test on a power circuit breaker is shown in Figure 7.17. When performing insulation testing, it is recommended that auxiliary equipment, such as potential transformers and lightning arresters, be removed from the stationary switchgear.

* Megger trademark for megohmmeter.

(a)

(b)

FIGURE 7.16
Megger S1-5010 for making insulation resistance tests. (a) Megger S1-5010; (b) Megger S1-5010 being used in the field. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

Insulation resistance tests are made with the circuit breaker in open and closed position, whereas the insulation test for the switchgear bus is made with one phase to ground at a time, with the other two phases grounded. The procedure for this test is as follows:

- *Circuit breaker open:* Connect HV lead to pole 1. Ground all other poles. Repeat for poles 2 through 6, in turn, with other poles grounded.
- *Circuit breaker closed:* Connect HV lead to pole 1 or 2, as convenient, with either pole of phase 2 and 3 grounded. Repeat for phases 2 and 3 with other phases grounded.
- *Stationary gear (buses):* Connect HV lead to phase 1 with phases 2 and 3 grounded. Repeat the same for phases 2 and 3 with other phases grounded. Also, perform IR tests between phase 1 and 2 with phase 3

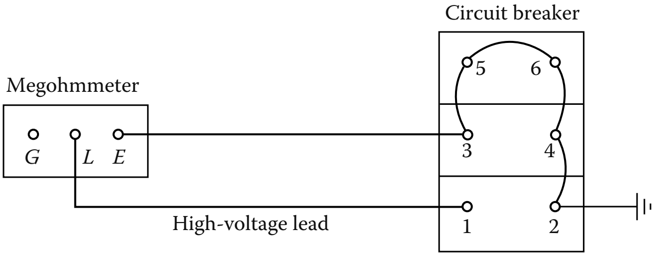


FIGURE 7.17
Typical connection for insulation resistance test of circuit breaker in open position.

TABLE 7.7

DC Hi-Pot Maintenance Test Values

Rated Operating Voltage (V)	1 min DC Test Voltage
240	1,600
480	2,100
600	2,300
2,400	15,900
4,160	20,100
7,200	27,600
13,800	38,200
23,000	63,600
34,500	84,800

grounded, phase 2 and phase 3 with phase 1 grounded, and phase 3 and 1 with phase 2 grounded.

7.4.2 DC Hi-Pot Test

The DC hi-pot test is normally not made for AC electrical switchgear and therefore may be considered only when AC hi-pot cannot be performed. The hi-pot testing of switchgear involves testing of the circuit breakers and switchgear buses separately. This is a major test and determines the condition of the insulation of the switchgear assembly. The DC hi-pot test is not preferred for testing AC switchgear because the application of DC voltage does not produce similar stress in the insulation system as is produced under operating conditions. Moreover, the DC hi-pot test produces corona and tracking owing to concentration of stress at sharp edges or end points of buses. The corona and tracking are more pronounced in older equipment, and it is therefore recommended that DC hi-pot testing be avoided on such equipment.

The test procedures for DC hi-pot testing are similar to those of AC hi-pot testing and are described in detail in Chapter 2. If DC hi-pot testing is to be performed, the DC voltage test values shown in Table 7.7 are recommended for various voltage-class equipment.

The hi-pot test should be conducted under conditions similar to those of commercial testing. The switchgear should be wiped, cleaned, and restored to good condition before the hi-pot test is conducted. Temperature and humidity readings should be recorded and the test reading corrected when conducting DC tests.

7.4.3 AC Hi-Pot Test

This test should be conducted separately for circuit breakers and switchgear buses (stationary gear). It should be made only after the DC insulation resistance measurement test has been passed satisfactorily and all cleanup has been finished. The AC test will stress the switchgear insulation similarly to the

TABLE 7.8

Hi-Pot Test Values

Rated Operating Voltage (V)	AC Factory Proof Test (V)	AC Test Maintenance Values (V)
240	1,500	1,130
480	2,000	1,500
600	2,200	1,650
2,400	15,000	11,300
4,160	19,000	14,250
7,200	26,000	19,500
13,800	36,000	27,000
14,400	50,000	37,500
23,000	60,000	45,000
34,500	80,000	60,000

stresses found during operating conditions. The maintenance test voltages should be 75% of final factory test voltage. These values are shown in Table 7.8.

Hi-pot tests are made with the circuit breaker in both open and closed positions. The hi-pot test should be the last test conducted after all repairs have been made, cleanup is finished, and the insulation resistance test has been successfully passed. Procedures for the hi-pot test of the circuit breaker are as follows:

- The test connection for the hi-pot test is as shown in Figure 7.18.
- *Circuit breaker in open position:* Connect HV lead to pole 6. Ground all other poles. Repeat for poles 1 through 5, in turn, with all other poles grounded. Apply the desired high voltage in each case in accordance with Table 7.8.
- *Circuit breaker in closed position:* Connect HV lead to pole 1 or 2 or phase 1 as convenient with either pole of phases 2 and 3 grounded. Repeat for test for phases 2 and 3 with other phases grounded.

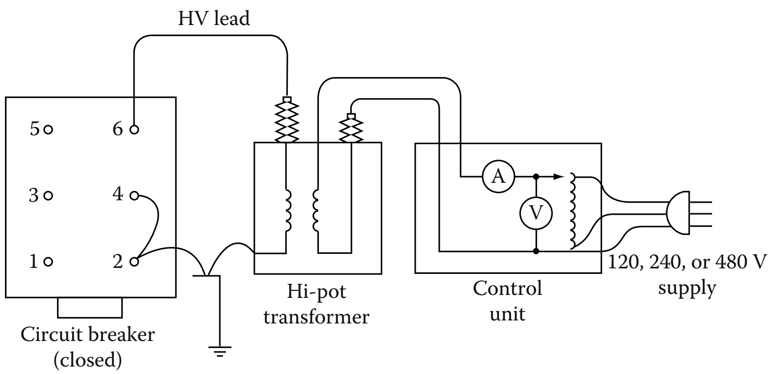


FIGURE 7.18
Typical connection for hi-pot test for circuit breaker in closed position.

- *Stationary gear (buses):* Connect HV lead to phase 1 as convenient with phases 2 and 3 grounded. Apply the recommended voltage. Repeat the test for phases 2 and 3 with other phases grounded.

7.4.4 Power Factor Testing

The power factor testing of an insulation system is useful in finding signs of insulation deterioration. The absolute values of power factor measured have little significance. However, comparative analysis of values from year to year may very well show insulation deterioration. Therefore, when a power factor test is made, it should be made under the same conditions of temperature and humidity. If differences exist in the temperature and humidity from year to year, this should be taken into consideration when evaluating the test data. Generally, higher temperature and humidity result in higher power factor values. As a general rule, only the air circuit breaker bushing should be power factored, and the arc chutes, operating rods, and so on, should be disconnected when conducting this test. A significant change, especially an increase in watts loss or percent of power factor indicates deterioration, which should be monitored. As a general rule, a power factor below 1% indicates good insulation. Any value above 1% warrants investigation. Power factor tests are discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

7.4.5 Circuit Breaker Contact Resistance Measurement Test

Stationary and moving contacts are built from alloys that are formulated to endure the stresses of electrical arcing. However, if contacts are not maintained on a regular basis, their electrical resistance due to repeated arcing builds up, resulting in a significant decrease in the contact's ability to carry current. Excessive corrosion of contacts is detrimental to the breaker performance. One way to check contacts is to apply DC and measure the contact resistance or voltage drop across the closed contacts. The breaker contact resistance should be measured from bushing terminal to bushing terminal with the breaker in closed position. It is recommended that for MV and HV the resistance test be made with 100 A or higher DC. The use of a higher current value gives more reliable results than using lower current values. The resistance value is usually measured in microohms (μΩ). The average resistance value for 15 kV class circuit breakers is approximately between 200 and 250 μΩ. Several companies make good, reliable microohmmeters to perform this testing. One such instrument is the Megger DLRO 200. It can generate test currents from 10 to 200 A and can measure resistances ranging from 0.1 μΩ to 1 Ω. The Megger DLRO 200 is shown in Figure 7.19.

7.4.6 Circuit Breaker Time–Travel Analysis

This test is usually performed on MV and HV circuit breakers, usually 34 kV and above, to detect problems in the breaker operating mechanism. This test can be conducted with a mechanical or electronic time–travel analyzer. Today, the electronic time–travel analyzers are replacing the old mechanical

FIGURE 7.19
Megger DLRO 200. (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Valley Forge, PA.)

time–travel analyzers. With either analyzer information on the breaker operating mechanism is provided in form of charts or graphs which can be used to assess the mechanical and electrical condition of the breaker. There are nine tests that are usually conducted on the breaker with the circuit breaker analyzer. These tests are (1) closing time and opening time, (2) contact bounce, (3) opening and closing synchronization, (4) closing and opening speed (velocity and displacement), (5) trip operation, (7) trip-free operation, (8) close operation, and (9) trip-close operation.

Closing and opening time: In the example below, the closing time of the contacts is shown to be 31.4 ms (phase A), 30.2 ms (phase B), and 31.8 ms (phase C).

Parameters	Value	Unit
001 Close time A	31.4	ms
060 Bounce time A	0.0	ms
001 Close time B	30.2	ms
060 Bounce time B	1.1	ms
001 Close time C	31.8	ms
060 Bounce time C	0.8	ms
010 Diff A – B – C	1.6	ms
016 Cls speed	8.40	m/s

Also closing times of a breaker can be viewed in a graph form as displayed in Figure 7.20.

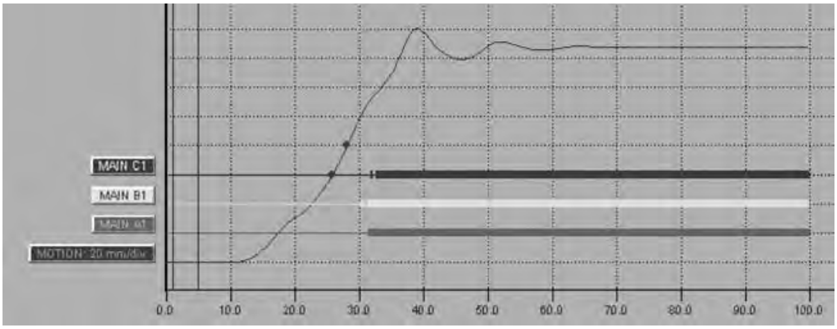


FIGURE 7.20
Graph showing closing time of contacts of a breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

Contact bounce: If we expand the *x*-axis in Figure 7.20, we can actually view the contact bounce associated with the above breaker operation as shown in Figure 7.21.

It is clear to see that there is 0.8 ms bounce associated with the contact movement in phase C. These series of contact bounces can be compared with future tests to see if there is any degradation to the actual mechanism associated with breaker contacts.

Opening and closing synchronization: The breaker opening and synchronization can be viewed as a group, i.e., the operation of all three phases together for breaker open and close cycle. This information will indicate whether the breaker contacts open and close together or how far apart the three-phase contacts are relative to each other during the close and open cycle as shown in the example below. The normal maximum time difference between all three phases should not be more than 2 ms for most breakers.

010	Diff A – B – C	1.6	ms

The synchronization of a breaker is defined as the time difference between the fastest and slowest phase (contact make and break) during the breaker open and close operation.

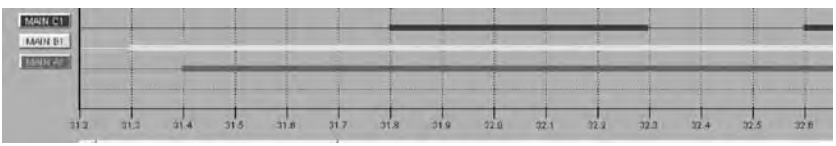


FIGURE 7.21
Graph showing contact bounce of a breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

Total opening and closing speed: All breakers have specific speed, opening and closing times; therefore, it is important that breakers operate within their opening and closing time. For example, if a breaker is slow to open due to ageing or degradation, it may compromise the protection and coordination scheme of the protective relays, and thereby cause unwanted power interruption and equipment damage. Further, all breakers have specified closing speed which is defined as the average speed calculated between two defined points on the motion curve as indicated below.

016	Cls speed	8.40	m/s

These two points will be specified by the breaker manufacturer and define where to set both points for accurate speed measurements. For example, they will define the first point to be set to a distance above the open position and a distance below the upper point where the contact motion stops as indicated below.

Upper point		**Lower point**	
Distance above open position	80.0 mm	Distance below upper point	20.0 mm
Distance below closed position	10.0 mm	Distance below upper point	10.0 mm

Trip operation: The trip operation of a breaker is another name for an open operation. Most utility companies and plant owners want to perform a trip (or open) operation to monitor the speed of the opening mechanism and contacts to make sure there is enough energy in the spring mechanism to open under a fault condition. The graph for a trip is similar to the one for a close operation, except the motion of the mechanism is going in the opposite direction, i.e., from closed contacts to fully open position as seen in Figure 7.22.

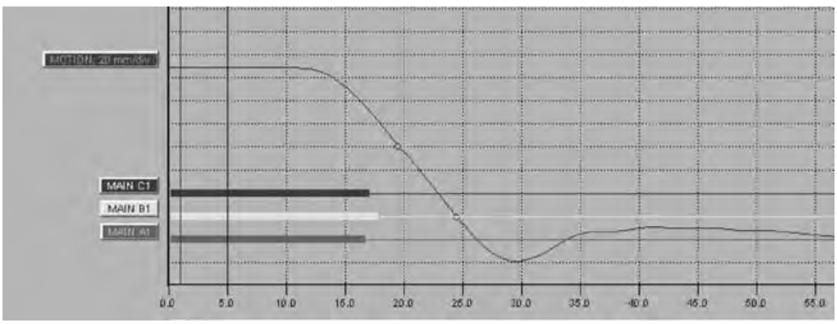


FIGURE 7.22
Graph showing speed of the contacts opening for trip (or open) operation of a breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

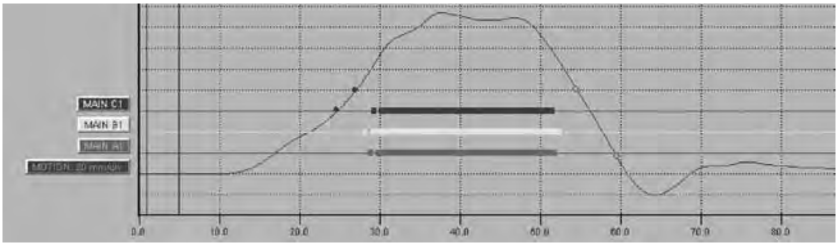


FIGURE 7.23
Graph showing trip-free operation of a breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

Trip-free operation: This operation simulates the condition when an open breaker is closed into a fault and then it is tripped free by a protective relay. Trip-free is an operation where the breaker contacts are in the open position and the breaker is operated to perform a close–open sequence. In this operation, the breaker is closed and then immediately sent a control command to open. This operation confirms whether a breaker, if closed into a fault, can clear it. The graph for a trip-free operation is shown in Figure 7.23.

Close operation: This test is performed to verify a breaker's closing mechanism. The graph for close operation of a breaker is shown in Figure 7.24 which is similar to the graph of Figure 7.20.

Trip-reclose operation: In this test, the reclose operation of the breaker is checked to assure that the breaker closing time is within specified limits after a trip operation. The reclose time is measured either in milliseconds or cycles. The trip-reclose operation of the breaker is shown in Figure 7.25.

The problems usually detected with this test are faulty dashpots, faulty adjustments, weak accelerating springs, defective shock absorbers, buffers and

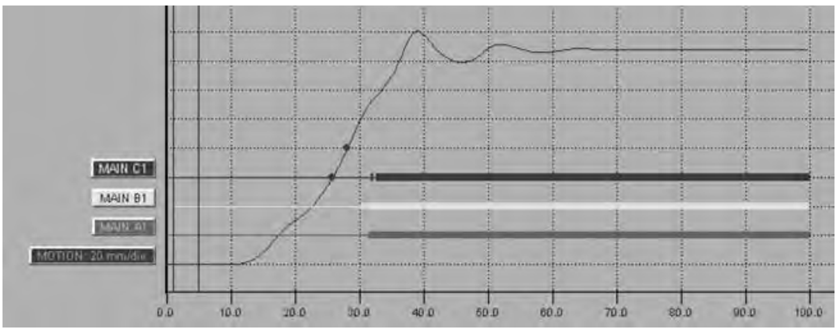


FIGURE 7.24
Graph showing close operation of a breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

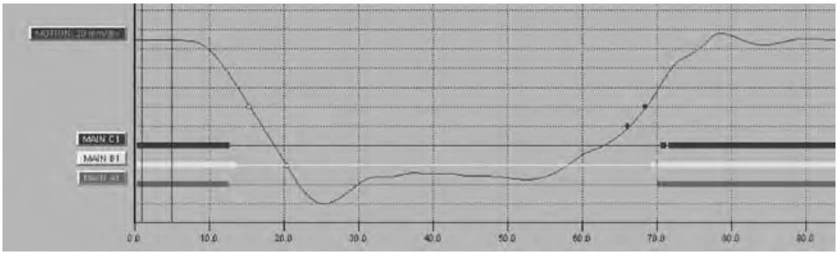


FIGURE 7.25
Graph showing trip-reclose operation of a breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

closing mechanisms, or broken parts. This test should be performed during acceptance tests and then during maintenance tests about every 3 years.

The breaker opening and closing parameters can easily be measured with a Megger Programma EGIL breaker analyzer or its equivalent manufactured by other vendors. The EGIL is designed to test MV breakers that have a common operating mechanism and a single break per phase. All three phases can be tested at the same time giving both individual phase timing and combined measurements for all three phases. The EGIL analyzer is shown in Figure 7.26.

FIGURE 7.26
The EGIL breaker analyzer. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

7.4.7 Dynamic Capacitance Measurement of HV Breakers

The latest trend in HV circuit breaker timing is DualGround testing using a method called dynamic capacitance measurement (DCM). DualGround is the trade name of Megger Programma, but other manufacturers making a similar instrument may call it Dual Earth testing. The DCM method can be explained as follows.

All HV circuit breakers exhibit the characteristics of a capacitive circuit when they are in the open state. As the breaker contacts start to move, the capacitance changes accordingly until the time at which they make contact and the circuit becomes a resistive circuit. The DCM test method measures the change in capacitance of the breaker during close cycle and quantifies it so it can be displayed with other breaker timing measurements. This DCM test may be performed with a full featured circuit breaker analyzer such as the Programma TM-1800 shown in Figure 7.27.

The DCM method of breaker timing is primarily used for HV breakers, such as 220 kV and above. The test results of a DCM test are presented in the same manner as a normal breaker tests. A typical timing graph of a HV breaker is shown in Figure 7.28.

This test method was developed to improve the safety of the test personnel in the HV substations. When using this method, safety grounds are placed on both sides of the breaker while performing the test as is shown in Figure 7.29.

FIGURE 7.27
The Programma TM-1800 for testing HV circuit breakers. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

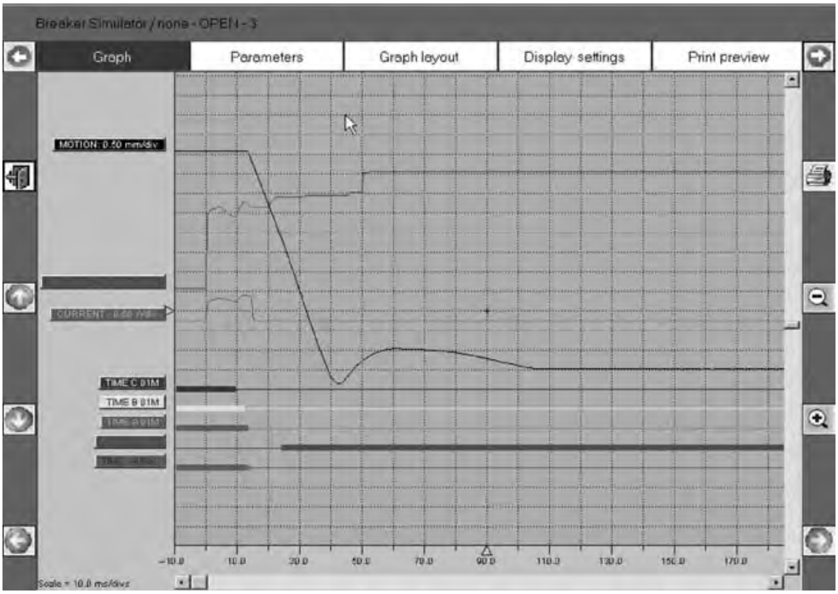


FIGURE 7.28
Graph showing the breaker timing of a HV breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

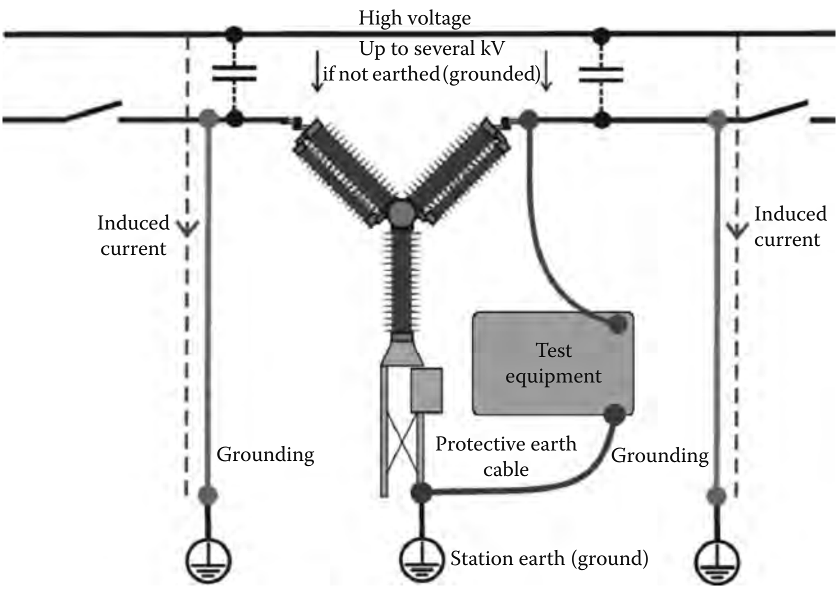


FIGURE 7.29
Safety grounds being applied for testing of the HV breaker. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

By leaving both grounds in place while testing, an effective safe zone is created around the breaker for the test personnel. This will protect both the test equipment and more importantly protect the test personnel from any unwanted induced currents and voltages in the test circuit from adjacent energized lines.

7.5. Control Power for Switchgear

This section covers the requirements, selection, and maintenance of control power for MV switchgear.

7.5.1 Control Power Requirements

The requirements for any control power equipment are that it has sufficient capacity to deliver maximum power at rated voltage under all operating conditions. This can be particularly troublesome in locations where the incoming line voltages are subject to large fluctuations or where reliable control is needed for energizing a downstream piece of equipment that has an unusually large inrush current, or need to trip a breaker during a fault conditions. Although standards are in place for circuit breaker close and trip coils, they do not cover many of the interposing devices that may be found in modern sequence and control schemes. The most important requirement of a control power source is that it must provide tripping power to circuit breakers. In addition to tripping power, it should also provide closing power. It is not uncommon to include other loads, such as indicating lamps, emergency lights, excitation power to synchronous motors, space heaters, fans, and remote lights, in the control power requirements. All these requirements must be considered when selecting a control power system.

Two main types of control voltages are used for MV switchgear: (1) DC control and (2) AC control. The source of DC control is storage batteries, whereas transformers are used for AC control. When AC control is used for closing, the tripping power is obtained from a capacitor trip device or a separate tripping battery. The choice between AC and DC control power depends on the following factors:

- Number of circuit breakers in the switchgear
- Number of breakers operating simultaneously
- Number of auxiliary equipment connected
- Degree of reliability required
- Future expansion requirements
- Environmental conditions
- Maintenance of system
- Cost of the system

TABLE 7.9

NEMA Standard Voltages and Operating Ranges for Power Circuit Breakers

	Operating Ranges (V)			
	Stored-Energy Mechanism		Solenoid Mechanism	
Nominal Control Voltage (V)	Spring Motor and Closing Spring Release Coil	Tripping Coil	Closing Coil	Tripping Coil
DC 24	—	14–30	—	14–30
48	36–52	28–60	—	28–60
125	90–130	70–140	90–130	70–140
250	180–260	140–280	180–260	140–280
AC 115	95–125	95–125	—	95–125
230	190–250	190–250	190–250	190–250

NEMA standards have established standard voltages and operating ranges for the switchgear circuit breakers, which are shown in Table 7.9.

7.5.1.1 Circuit Breaker Tripping

Power circuit breakers are equipped for manual tripping (pistol-grip handle or push button) and for electrically actuated tripping via a trip coil. The trip coil opens the breaker automatically when energized by a protective relay or manually by an operator via the manual handle. Tripping devices used for power circuit breakers are discussed as follows.

7.5.1.2 DC Battery Trip

The battery is probably the most reliable source of control power when it is properly maintained and serviced. It uses single contact protective relays to energize the breaker trip coil. It is unaffected by voltages and current during fault conditions. Generally, a 125 or 250 V battery is recommended for MV switchgear when both closing and tripping is required. When such is not available, a 48 V battery may be used for tripping only. However, it must be sized to meet the required load of the switchgear. A battery trip circuit is shown in Figure 7.30a. Long service can be obtained from batteries when they are serviced regularly, fully charged, and the electrolyte level maintained at the proper level.

7.5.1.3 Capacitor Trip

The capacitor trip device is commonly used where a DC battery source is not available or uneconomical, such as in outdoor switchgear or where only few circuit breakers are installed. The capacitor device simply consists of a capacitor and half-wave rectifier charged from an AC control power transformer. When using a capacitor trip device, a separate capacitor trip unit is required for each breaker.

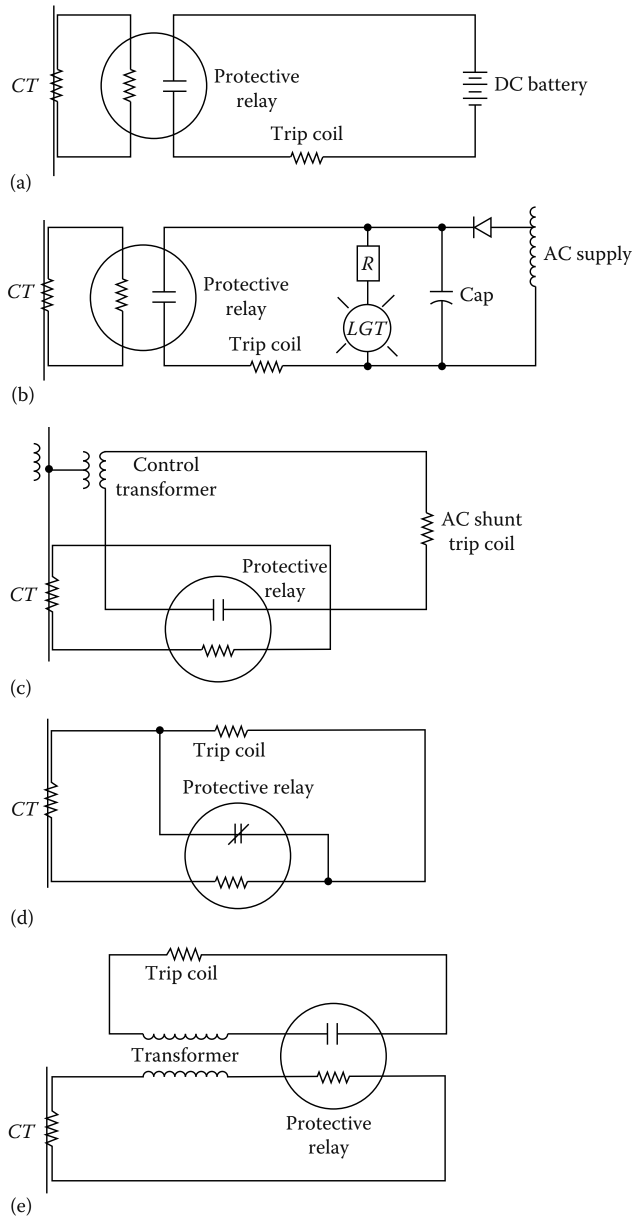


FIGURE 7.30
Various methods of tripping for circuit breakers: (a) battery trip; (b) capacitor trip device; (c) AC shunt trip coil, (d) circuit opening relays; and (e) tripping transformer relay.

The capacitor trip device comes in two types: nonautocharge and autocharge. The nonautocharge retains adequate charge for a short time (about 30 s) after the AC supply is lost. The autocharge consists of a regulated charge. It contains a voltage amplifier, a battery, and a battery charger. In case of loss of

AC supply, the voltage amplifier steps up the battery voltage to maintain an adequate charge of the capacitor for several days. The simple capacitor trip device circuit is shown in Figure 7.30b.

7.5.1.4 AC Methods of Tripping

The AC methods of tripping are used when sufficient current is always available during fault conditions. The tripping energy is obtained from the faulted circuit via the current transformers. This tripping is always associated with overcurrent protection. A potential trip coil is provided for each breaker for normal switching operations through a breaker control switch. The following AC trips are used in switchgear:

- AC shunt trip
- Circuit opening relays
- Tripping transformers

In the AC tripping schemes, three AC trip coils are used, one in each phase to ensure that under all fault conditions the breaker will have adequate current to trip. The AC trip circuits are shown in Figure 7.30c through e.

7.5.1.5 Circuit Breaker Closing

The closing power for a circuit breaker can be either DC or AC voltage. However, it is desirable to have closing power independent of voltage conditions on the power system. For this reason the DC battery is a preferable source of closing power. The choice may be dependent on economics, particularly where the switchgear consists of only a few circuit breakers or the investment in battery power could not be justified. The factors that influence the choice of closing power are the following:

- Need to close breakers with power system de-energized
- Maintenance of the closing power
- Availability of space to house the control power equipment
- Degree of reliability required
- Expansion plans

All these factors must be considered in the evaluation of the closing power before a final decision is made on what equipment is best suited for a particular installation. The following basic methods for closing power are available for switchgear applications:

1. Stored-energy mechanism
   a. DC battery
   b. 230 V control power transformer
   c. 230 V lighting or power panel

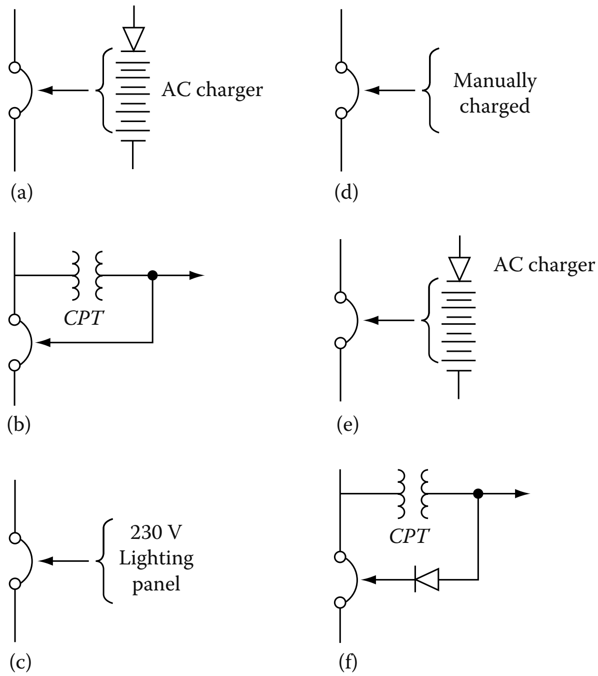


FIGURE 7.31
Basic control closing methods of circuit breakers: (a) DC battery close; (b) 230 V close; (c) 230 V close; (d) manually close; (e) DC battery close; and (f) AC rectifier close.

2. Solenoid-operated mechanism
   a. Manually (stored-energy close)
   b. DC battery close
   c. 230 V AC rectifier close

The basic methods of closing circuit breakers are shown in Figure 7.31a through f. The current required for closing of stored-energy-mechanism breakers can be either DC or AC. The power required for the next close operation is stored in the springs with the preceding close operation of the breaker. The AC power must be present to initiate the control circuit to the spring-release solenoid for automatic close operation of the breaker. For non-automatic operation, the spring release can be initiated manually. If needed, the stored-energy breaker close mechanism can be manually charged. The AC source for solenoid breakers requires a separate closing rectifier for each breaker.

When selecting a control power source for breaker closing, the maximum closing load must be calculated. The number of breakers required for simultaneous closing must be known so that the system can provide the required energy. In addition, any other loads that are connected to the system must be known. The selection of control power involves the sizing and selection of DC battery and AC control power transformer equipment.

7.6 DC (Battery) Control Power Equipment

The following is offered as a general guide for the selection and application of DC battery equipment.

7.6.1 Sizing

The duty cycle imposed on the battery will depend on the DC system design and the load requirements. The duty cycle showing the battery loads in amperes and the lengths of time for which they must be supported will determine the sizing of the battery. Loads may be classified as continuous or noncontinuous. Continuous loads are classified as steady-state loads and noncontinuous loads lasting 1 min or less are known as momentary loads or short-time loads. Continuous loads are energized throughout the duty cycle and are normally supplied by the battery charger. Examples of typical continuous loads are

- Lighting
- Indicating lights
- Continuously energized coils and operating motors
- Inverters and annunciator loads

Examples of typical noncontinuous loads are

- Circuit breaker operations
- Motor operated valves
- Inrush currents of motors or other devices
- Field flashing of generators or synchronous motors

To size a control power source, each type of load must be known. For batteries, the steady-state and short-time loads must be converted to a common rate base. Also, the long-time loads must have specified time periods, since the battery is not a continuous source when the charger is off. After all the loads have been totaled, the next higher size of control power source should be selected. The reader is urged to consult IEEE standard 485-1997 (P485/D5, May 2008), "IEEE recommended practice for sizing large lead storage batteries for generating stations and substations" when selecting a battery for control power or other usage.

The capacity of the battery is usually expressed in ampere-hours, that is, the product of discharge current and time in hours. The basic rate is normally expressed for 8 h; however, many other rates are used to express battery capacity. In switchgear application, the short-time rates, such as 1 min rate per cell, is frequently used to express the terminal voltage drop early in the discharge period. The manufacturer's data are usually given for cells at 25°C (77°F), and when the battery is at a lower temperature than the stated temperature, the battery rating must be reduced. The voltage drop due to discharge current specified in terms of 1 min rate per cell for a nickel–cadmium battery is 1.14 V, and 1.75 V for the lead–acid battery, at 25°C.

To convert the 1 min rate loads to the equivalent ampere-hours rate, the battery or switchgear manufacturer should be consulted. For sizing the capacity of a battery for switchgear, the worst case should be assumed. The worst case occurs when the battery has carried steady-state load for 8 h and then is subjected to maximum load involving 1 min rate. However, it is not uncommon for some installations to require batteries to be sized to carry the anticipated control and tripping loads for up to 24 h. For indoor locations, the battery temperature is assumed to be 25°C, and for outdoor application, −10°C.

7.6.2 Types of Batteries

For switchgear applications, two types of batteries are used: lead–acid batteries (flooded cells and valve regulated) and nickel–cadmium batteries. Lead–acid batteries are made in several types:

- *Pasted plate with lead–antimony grids:* This is a basic lead–acid battery, similar to the common automobile battery. However, for switchgear control work thicker plates and lower gravity of acid provide longer life. It is also suitable for long-time float charging. The expected life of this battery is from 6 to 14 years depending upon the plate thickness. It is also the lowest-cost battery.
- *Lead–calcium:* This is basically pasted-plate construction, with antimony replaced by calcium for additional grid strength. It has an expected life of about 25 years. Because of pure lead electrochemical characteristics, it requires slightly different charging voltages.
- *Tubular positive:* This is also known as an iron-clad battery. These batteries are suitable for large stations and long-time load applications.
- *Plante:* This is a long-life battery, with expected life of 20–25 years. In this battery, the positive plate is formed form pure lead. Its short-term rates are somewhat higher and ampere-hours slightly less as compared to pasted-plate types. This is the most expensive lead–acid battery.
- *Valve-regulated lead–acid (VRLA):* This is also known as maintenance-free battery. The cells of this battery are sealed with the exception of a valve that opens to atmospheric pressure by a preselected amount. This battery provides means for recombination of internally generated oxygen and the suppression of hydrogen to limit water usage. The cells of this battery are sealed from the environment unless internal pressure operates the release valve.
- *Round cell battery:* This is a pure lead–acid battery which has round cells instead of rectangular cells as found in the conventional battery. The geometrical shape assures uniform growth, while the pure lead grid provides for slower plate growth as compared to lead–calcium or lead–antimony.

The nickel–cadmium battery is constructed with pocket-plate cells for switchgear applications. The battery plates have three different construction thicknesses. Medium or thin plate construction is used for switchgear applications. The maintenance of nickel–cadmium battery is less than the maintenance for lead–acid. Its low-temperature discharge currents are higher, and it can be charged more rapidly than lead–acid batteries. The cost of the nickel–cadmium battery is higher than the lead–acid battery.

7.6.3 Battery Chargers

Two types of battery chargers are available for switchgear control power. One is known as the trickle-charge, which is the unregulated type, and the other is the regulated type. The regulated charger provides longer life, especially for lead–acid batteries. The regulated charger is recommended for switchgear applications. The selection of charger equipment should satisfy the following functions simultaneously:

- Steady-state loads on the battery
- Self-discharge losses of the battery
- Equalizing charges

Steady-state loads are those that require power continuously. Self-discharge losses are due to trickle current, which starts at about 0.25% of the 8 h rate for lead–acid batteries. Self-discharge losses increase with the age of the battery. The equalizing charge is an extended normal charge and is given periodically to ensure that the cells are restored to the maximum specific gravity. All lead–acid batteries require a monthly equalizing charge except the lead–calcium type. Nickel–cadmium batteries do not require the equalizing charge; however, it is recommended for occasional boosting. In the sizing of charger equipment, the steady-state loads, equalizing-charge current, and self-discharge current should be added to arrive at the capacity of the charger. Select a charger with ratings that exceed or equal the sum of currents required.

7.7 AC Control Power Equipment

The following is a general guide for the selection and application of AC control power equipment.

7.7.1 Sizing

For sizing the capacity of an AC control potential transformer, all the loads should be totaled. These loads may be steady state, breaker closing, and tripping. If the tripping is provided by a capacitor trip device, the tripping demand may not be included. The closing demand of breakers that require simultaneous closing should be totaled and included in sizing the control transformer.

The total load should then be compared to the available sizes of control power transformers, and the next larger size should be selected.

7.7.2 Application

It is recommended that the control power be supplied from a separate transformer strictly used for control purposes. This will minimize inadvertent loss of control power. The transformer should be connected to the bus or the line side of the circuit to minimize control power interruption. For multiple services, each service should have its own control power source. Circuits that are not exclusively associated with either source should be supplied control power automatically from either of the control power transformers in case of loss of one control source.

7.8 Maintenance and Care of Batteries for Switchgear Applications

The monitoring and maintenance of batteries for switchgear applications is very important from the point of view of service reliability. The consequences of electrical failures are catastrophic in cases where no control power is available for tripping the circuit breakers. Proper maintenance is the key to dependable battery operation. The reader is referred to IEEE standard 450-2002, "IEEE recommended practice for maintenance, testing, and replacement of vented lead–acid batteries for stationary applications" for maintenance and testing procedures that can be used to care for these batteries. The following is a summary of battery maintenance procedures derived from the above referenced standard that are offered as a guide to ensure long life and dependable service. Refer to Section 8.9 for detailed inspection checklist on batteries installed for UPS applications since there are many similarities common to both of these battery systems.

7.8.1 Inspections

Periodic inspection can provide information on the battery conditions and its state of health. All inspections should be made under normal float conditions. Inspection should be made at least once a month (and more frequently, such as weekly depending on service), and should include the following checks:

- Float voltage at battery terminals
- Charger output current and voltage
- General appearance and cleanliness of the battery
- Electrolyte levels, cracks in jars, and leakage of electrolyte
- Evidence of corrosion at terminals, connectors, racks, or cabinets

- Voltage, specific gravity, and electrolyte temperature of pilot cells
- Ambient temperature and ventilation
- Unintentional battery grounds

The monthly inspection should be augmented once every quarter with the following checks:

- Voltage of each cell and total battery terminal voltage
- Specific gravity of 10% of the cells of the battery
- Temperature of electrolyte of 10% of the cells of the battery

The yearly inspection should include the following checks:

- Detail visual inspection of each cell to determine its condition
- Specific gravity, voltage, electrolyte level, and temperature of each cell of the battery
- Contact resistance of cell-to-cell and terminal connections
- Impedance measurements of the battery cells
- Structural integrity of the battery rack and cabinet

7.8.2 Equalizing Charge

The station batteries are sized in terms of their discharge capacity, which is usually stated in ampere-hours. The ampere-hours are based on supply current during an 8 or 4 h period with electrolyte temperature at 25°C. To maintain a constant voltage at the battery terminals, the charger is connected in parallel with the battery and the load circuits. The purpose of the float charge voltage is to prevent the internal discharge of the battery. The practical float voltages are listed in terms of volts per cell (VPC). Following are the VPC values for the various types of batteries:

- Nickel–cadmium: 1.4–1.42 VPC
- Lead–calcium: 2.17–2.25 VPC
- Lead–antimony: 2.15–2.17 VPC
- Plante: 2.17–2.19 VPC

When the battery is equipped with a constant voltage charger, it is automatically charged after an emergency discharge. In the case of lead–acid batteries, a periodic equalizing charge is required when the specific gravity, corrected for temperature, of an individual cell falls below the manufacturer's lower limit (or below its full-charge value by 0.001), or the individual cell float voltage(s) deviate from the average value by ±0.05 V (typical value of lead–antimony cells is ±0.03 V). As an alternative, when an individual cell corrected for temperature is below 2.13 V (typical for nominal 1.215 specific gravity cells), equalizing charge to the entire battery should be initiated immediately.

However, it is often more convenient to apply the equalizing charge to the individual cell if there is one or few cells out of limit. The frequency for equalizing charging varies, but is usually from a minimum of 3 months to 1 year. Also, an equalizing charge should be given to a battery after the addition of water to the battery. Different types of batteries require different lengths of time for the equalizing charge. The length of time is a function of cell temperatures. A normal electrolyte value for specific gravity based on a temperature of 77°F is taken to be 1.15 for a fully charged lead–acid battery. Battery performance is affected by electrolyte temperature. Generally, for every 3°F below 77°F, the battery performance can be evaluated by subtracting 0.001 from the specific gravity. Similarly, for every 3°F above 77°F, add 0.001 to the specific gravity. Specific gravity readings may not accurately indicate state of battery charge following discharge or following addition of water. The most accurate indicator of return to full charge is stabilized charging or float current.

7.8.3 Battery Tests

The following tests are performed to

- Determine whether the battery meets its specifications or the manufacturer's rating or both
- Periodically determine whether the performance of the battery, as found, is within acceptable limits
- Determine whether the battery, as found, meets the design requirements of the system to which it is connected, i.e., whether it has the capacity and capability to power the loads connected to it

7.8.3.1 Acceptance Test

This is the test to determine whether the battery meets a specific discharge rate and duration in accordance with manufacturer's ratings. This test is normally made at the factory or upon initial installation.

7.8.3.2 Performance Test

In IEEE standard 450-2002, it is recommended that the battery capacity test should be made within the first 2 years and followed by a test interval not to be greater than 25% of the expected service life. Assuming a service life of 25 years for a vented cell battery, then this test should be conducted every 5 years or less until the battery shows signs of degradation. Similarly, in IEEE standard 1188-2005 it is recommended that the performance test interval for VRLA batteries should not be greater than 25% of the expected service life or 2 years, whichever is less. Further, annual performance test should be conducted on any battery that shows signs of degradation or has reached 85% of its service life. Degradation is indicated if the battery capacity falls more than 10% from its capacity on the previous performance test, or 90% of the manufacturer's rating.

7.8.3.3 Battery Service Test (Load Test)

A service test of the battery is normally made to satisfy that the battery can meet its load profile, that is, its duty cycle. This test is also known as load cycle test. When a service test is conducted on a regular basis, it will indicate whether the battery indeed can perform its intended function. Therefore, this test may be conducted on an annual basis. Trending battery voltage during the critical periods of the load test can provide information when the battery will no longer meet its design requirements. In IEEE standard 450-2002 and IEEE standard 1188-2005, this test is referred to as service test and it is recommend that this test be conducted between the cycle of the performance tests. When a service test is also being used on a regular basis it will reflect maintenance practices and the health of the battery to meet its design requirements. When a battery shows signs of degradation, service testing should be continued to be performed on its normal frequency. Several manufacturers have built programmable battery load testers and market them for conducting the service (load) test. The Torkel Programmable Load Unit Battery load tester, manufactured by Megger Instruments is shown in Figure 7.32.

FIGURE 7.32
Torkel Programmable Load Unit Battery tester. (Courtesy of Megger Instruments, Valley Forge, PA.)

7.8.3.4 Connection Resistance Test

The connection resistance of the intercell connections and terminal connections can be made with the use of digital low-resistance ohmmeter to assess the integrity of the current (conduction) path. Normal connection resistance varies with the cell size and connection type, and ranges from less than 10 μΩ for a large battery to as much as 100 μΩ for a smaller battery. Periodic measurements should be made, such as annually, and compared to previous years value to determine the need for corrective action for maintenance. A 20% change from the previous years baseline values, or values that exceed the manufacturer's limits should initiate the need for corrective action. Refer to IEEE standard 450-2002 for more details on this method.

7.8.3.5 Battery Impedance Test

This test is based on the principle that the electrical properties of the battery, such as impedance changes proportionally with a battery's age and discharge history. The relative internal impedance of a cell increases due mainly to losses of active material as its capacity decreases. As the cells age naturally, a life curve can be plotted for a cell and compared to a generic curve of similar cell to indicate degradation or life expectancy. The intercell impedance can be measured by using a low-frequency current source. The object of the test is to pass current through the battery string and measure the resultant voltage drop across each cell, and then compute the cell impedance. This test can be performed during float conditions without disconnecting the battery. The impedance tester, manufactured by Megger Instruments is shown in Figure 7.33. When interpreting test results, it should be noted that change in cell impedance is also affected by other factors, such as temperature, state of the charge, load conditions, or combination of all these. These conditions should be monitored and recorded before making measurements.

Impedance readings for the individual cells can be used in the short-term to compare with the average impedance reading for the entire battery. Individual cell values that vary by more than ±20% of the battery average typically indicate a problem with that cell. Impedance readings of the entire battery can be used in the long-term to determine the need for replacement. Battery cell impedance values should be recorded and compared to previous readings to determine the position of the cell on the curve of impedance versus cell life. A sample curve for a generic lead–acid cell is shown in Figure 7.34. Curves may differ for other manufacturer batteries and battery chemistries. The reader may want to consult Megger Instruments who maintains a database of cell impedance values for many battery manufacturers at various temperatures, applications, and cell age.

7.8.4 Addition of Water

Due to charging, the battery will normally lose water through evaporation and chemical action. Distilled water must be added to the battery, preferably before the equalizing charge is applied.

FIGURE 7.33
Battery impedance tester (BITE). (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Dallas, TX.)

7.8.5 Acid Spillage

When acid is spilled on the battery exterior, it should be wiped clean with a cloth dampened in baking soda solution. Furthermore, the battery exterior

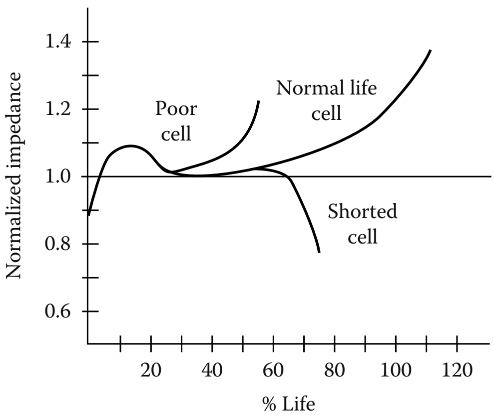


FIGURE 7.34
Impedance versus cell life (lead–acid battery). (Courtesy of Megger, Inc., Dallas, TX.)

should be wiped dry after wiping with a water-dampened cloth following the initial cleaning.

7.8.6 Loose Connections

Battery terminal connections and intercell connections should be checked periodically as discussed in Section 7.8.3.4.

7.8.7 Corrosion

All corrosion on battery terminals should be removed by applying baking soda solution and the terminals cleaned by using a brass brush. Antioxidant coating should be applied before reconnecting.

7.8.9 Other Maintenance Hints

- Do not ground the electric storage battery, because a second accidental ground on the ungrounded polarity of any circuit fed by the battery would cause the control circuit fuse to blow
- New batteries after initial charge should be kept on float charge for a week
- Take weekly readings of the voltage of selected cells and total battery voltage
- Take monthly readings of electrolyte level, cell voltage, specific gravity, and temperature
- Every 3 months to 1 year, take a complete set of cell readings

8

Low-Voltage Switchgear and Circuit Breakers

8.1 Low-Voltage Switchgear

Low-voltage switchgear is a commonly used name for metal-enclosed or metal-clad low-voltage power circuit breaker switchgear rated for 600 V alternating current (AC) and below. The metal-enclosed switchgear assembly is completely enclosed on all sides and top with sheet metal (except for ventilating openings and inspection windows) and contains stationary primary power circuit switching or interrupting devices, or both, with buses and connections. The metal-clad low-voltage switchgear contains circuit breakers of removable (rack-out) types which are housed in individual grounded metal compartments. The construction features of metal-enclosed and metal-clad switchgear were described previously in Chapter 7. The service conditions for the design and performance of low-voltage switchgear are based upon ambient temperature from –30°C to +40°C, altitude not to exceed 6000 ft, and switchgear installed in nonexplosive atmosphere.

There are two basic types of low-voltage switchgear structures, they are indoor and outdoor types. Indoor switchgear consists of a front section containing circuit breakers, meters, relays and controls, bus section, and cable entrance section. The outdoor section is similar to the indoor switchgear except a structure that is provided around it for weatherproofing. Bus bars are available either in copper or aluminum. When aluminum bus is specified, bolted joints should be made with Belleville washers to minimize cold flow characteristics and maintain tight connections. Generally, bare bus bars are used. However, insulation can be specified on special orders. The normal clearance between phase to phase and phase to ground is 2 in. to minimize creepage for 600 V rated equipment. The standard high-voltage withstand is 2200 V AC for phase to phase and phase to ground for a period of 1 min.

Totally enclosed low-voltage switchgear, in its present form, began to gain acceptance through the 1950s. The manufacturers of the time marketed three-pole circuit breakers and their enclosures as equipment that was safer for the user's personnel, more reliable, and as having advantages over fuses; namely, prevention of single phasing on three-phase AC systems. Today, low-voltage switchgear takes on many specialized forms and functions that combine metering, monitoring, control, protection, and distribution. Major manufacturers, i.e., original equipment manufacturers (OEMs), and specialty panel shops now provide a wide variety of low-voltage switchgear designs, some of them very custom, to suit the user's needs. These may or may not be Underwriters Laboratory (UL)-labeled. It is common to find installations where several different kinds of circuit breakers, automatic controls, and monitoring devices, and even automatic transfer switches, will be combined in the same line-up.

This trend in integration has started to confuse the issue as to what low-voltage switchgear really is. It should be borne in mind that switchgear is still some principal combination of metal enclosures with multipole circuit breakers. There are many metal-enclosed, dead front, assemblies offered that are switch and fuse combinations. Although they look like and commonly are referred to as switchgear, they are really modern versions of equipment known as switchboards, and are called that by most manufacturers. Like their forerunners, these switchboards do not address the problems with single phasing on branch feeders due to a blown fuse; however, the incoming device may have phase loss or blown fuse detection included in it. Regarding current-carrying capacity, both fuses and switches have roughly kept pace with the developments in circuit breaker technology.

Low-voltage AC switchgear designs are still widely applied to low-voltage direct current (DC) distribution centers up to 250 V. Previously, manufacturers provided two-pole, draw-out circuit breakers for DC switchgear. Today, the same three-pole design, and three-phase bus arrangement, is provided for both DC and AC applications; with the extra pole either unused or placed in series with one of the others according to the particular manufacturer's application preferences. As of this writing, direct-acting overcurrent trip devices are not offered for the new low voltage power circuit breakers. The direct-acting and electromechanical trip devices have been replaced by microprocessor based (electronic) trip devices for overcurrent protection. However, in the molded and insulated case low voltage circuit breakers both electronic and thermal-magnetic overcurrent trip devices are offered. The electromechanical and dicect-acting trip devices are still available in the secondary market as replacement for the older low voltage power circuit breakers.

Low-voltage generator paralleling switchgear continues to become more commonplace as utilities and consumers strike agreements for cogeneration or load curtailment contracts. Although similar in form to unit substation type switchgear, it is vastly more sophisticated in the areas of protection and control. It is common today to see low-voltage switchgear with protective relaying that used to be found only on medium-voltage switchgear in a utility's generating station.

8.2 Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers

Low-voltage circuit breakers that may be found in switchgear, distribution centers, and service entrance equipment are of three types: (1) molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs); (2) insulated-case circuit breakers; and (3) fixed or draw-out power circuit breakers.

8.2.1 MCCBs

MCCBs are available in a wide range of ratings and are generally used for low-current, low-energy power circuits. The breakers have self-contained overcurrent trip elements. Conventional thermal-magnetic circuit breakers employ a thermal bimetallic element that has inverse time–current characteristics for overload protection and a magnetic trip element for short-circuit protection. Conventional MCCBs with thermal-magnetic trip elements depend on the total thermal mass for their proper tripping characteristics. This means that the proper sized wire and lug assemblies, which correspond to the rating of the trip element, must be used on the load terminals of such breakers. Many manufacturers are now switching over from bimetallic elements to power sensor (electronic) type trip elements. Magnetic-trip-only breakers have no thermal element. Such breakers are principally used only for short-circuit protection. Molded-case breakers with magnetic only trips find their application in motor circuit protection. This arrangement is desirable for smaller motors where their inrush current can ruin a delicate thermal element but where protection for winding failure is still needed. The breaker provides the instantaneous (INST) protection and fault interruption, and other overload devices in the starter handle the long-time overload protection. Nonautomatic circuit breakers have no overload or short-circuit protection. They are primarily used for manual switching and isolation.

8.2.2 Insulated-Case Circuit Breakers

Insulated-case circuit breakers are molded-case breakers using glass-reinforced insulating material for increased dielectric strength. In addition, they have push-to-open button, rotary-operated low-torque handles with independent spring-charged mechanism providing quick-make, quick-break protection. A choice of various automatic trip units is available in the insulated-case breakers. Continuous current ratings range up to 4000 A with interrupting capacities through 200,000 A. The principal differences between insulated-case breakers and heavy-duty power circuit breakers are cost, physical size, and ease of maintenance. Insulated-case breakers are not designed with easy troubleshooting or repairs as the principal feature; whereas, draw-out power circuit breakers are. To partially compensate for this drawback, many manufacturers now offer a variety of accessories for insulated-case breakers that can duplicate the features of their more expensive counterparts. Nevertheless, insulated-case breakers are generally suited to light industry or commercial buildings where frequent or numerous operations are not expected.

8.2.3 Power Circuit Breakers

Heavy-duty power circuit breakers employ spring-operated, stored-energy mechanisms for quick-make, quick-break manual or electric operation. Generally, these breakers have draw-out features whereby individual breakers can be put into test and fully de-energized position for testing and maintenance purposes. The electrically operated breakers are actuated by a motor and cam system or a spring release solenoid for closing. Tripping action is actuated by one or more trip solenoids (shunt trip coil) or flux-operated devices; generally one for the protective devices on the breaker itself, and another for externally mounted controls or protective devices. The continuous frame ratings for these breakers range from 400 to 4000 A. Some manufacturers have introduced breakers with 5000 and 6000 A frames; however, the long-term benefits and overall reliability of these designs have yet to be proven in the field. Short-circuit interrupting capabilities for these breakers are usually 50,000–85,000 A root-mean-square (rms) for frame sizes up to 4000 A. Larger designs have approached 100 kA. These breakers can be extended for applications up to 200 kA interrupting when equipped with assemblies or trucks designed to hold Class L, current-limiting power fuses.

8.2.4 Fused Power Circuit Breakers

The trend toward larger unit substation transformers and larger connected kVA loads on such substations has given way to power circuit breakers in tested combination with current-limiting fuses. This is routinely done in order to increase the short-circuit interrupting rating of the switchgear. This combination can be used for all frame sizes. The fuses cause the same problems with single phasing as fuses in the switchboards; however, there are numerous features that compensate for this problem. First, most fuse assemblies are attached directly to the breakers themselves so fuses cannot be removed or installed unless the breaker is out of service. Most manufacturers solve the single-phasing problem by either an electrical or a mechanical means of blown fuse detection, which in turn causes the breaker to trip immediately after the fuse has cleared. On the largest frame sizes, where the fuses must be mounted apart from the breaker cubicle, the fuse assembly is on a truck or roll-out which is mechanically interlocked with the breaker it serves. It should be noted that the overcurrent protection for overloads is still handled by the breaker's overcurrent trip devices, and that the fuse is not expected to clear except for the most severe short circuits.

8.3 Overcurrent Protective Devices

The low-voltage overcurrent protective devices are direct-acting (electromechanical) trip (series trip) and static (electronic) trip. These overcurrent protective devices are used in the power circuit breakers as discussed above.

8.3.1 Direct-Acting Trip

The direct acting overcurrent trip device is also known as series trip, electromechanical and dashpot trip device This device utilizes the force created by the short-circuit current flowing through it to trip its circuit breaker by direct mechanical action. These devices are operated by (1) an electromagnetic force created by the short-circuit current flowing through the trip device coil (the trip coil is usually connected in series with the electrical circuit or in some instances to the secondary of current transformers) or (2) a bimetallic strip actuated by the head generated by the fault current. The bimetallic strip is usually connected in series with the circuit.

A combination of thermal (bimetallic strip or equivalent) and INST magnetic trip is commonly used on molded-case breakers to provide time delay operation for moderate overcurrents (overloads) and INST operation for high-magnitude of short-circuit current. The thermal trip is usually nonadjustable in the field or there are some devices that have limited range of adjustment, such as 0.8 to 1.25, whereas the instantaneous (INST) trip is available as adjustable or nonadjustable. The adjustable-trip range varies from low to high with several intermediate steps. The number of steps available may vary for different designs and sizes.

Direct-acting trips on insulated-case and heavy-duty power circuit breakers are of the electromagnetic type. Three trip devices are available: (1) long time delay (LTD), (2) short time delay (STD), and (3) INST. Any combination of the three types is available to provide protection for overcurrents. A trip device is installed in each phase of the electrical circuit. The LTD, STD, and INST trip devices are available in minimum, intermediate, and maximum time bands to facilitate the coordination of various trip devices in series. All these units have adjustable settings.

The time delay bands are accomplished by the action of the solenoid's pull against springs, pneumatic, or hydraulic devices. Since these elements are purely mechanical, different characteristics cannot be supplied in a single trip device. Although some calibration points and some effects on the time can be changed by adjustments, completely different delay bands can be selected only by physically changing out the trip devices with others of the desired type. Direct-acting trips are still used on some applications, and are still required on power circuit breakers used on DC unit substations.

8.3.2 Static- and Electronic-Trip Units

Static-trip devices are completely static; that is, there are no moving parts. These devices use semiconductor-integrated circuits, capacitors, transformers, and other electric components. Static-trip devices operate to open the circuit breaker when the current–time relationship exceeds a preselected value. The energy required to trip the breaker is obtained from the circuit being protected. No external power, such as DC batteries, is required. The complete static-trip system is comprised of (1) primary circuit current transformers, (2) the static logic box, and (3) the tripping actuator (a magnetically held latch device).

The current transformer sensors are of toroidal type mounted one per phase on the primary studs of the circuit breaker. These transformers provide a signal to the static-trip device proportional to the primary current.

The static logic box receives the signal from the primary current transformer. It monitors the signal, senses overloads or faults, and executes the required action in accordance with preselected settings. The tripping actuator receives the output signal from the static logic box and in turn causes the circuit breaker contacts to open.

Manufacturers have made great strides in the development and application of solid-state trip devices over the past 10 years or so. The motivation for this effort has been to bring protective devices to market that offer improved features over the original direct-acting designs yet preserve the totally self-contained concept exhibited by their forerunners. When the static trips were first introduced, manufacturers struggled to provide reliable and repeatable devices that would prove to be lower maintenance items than the ones they replaced. Their difficulties were not easy to overcome. The main problem has always been related to a consistent and accurate method to both derive operational power from the signals resulting from current flowing through the breaker, and to accurately measure the current at the same time. The developments came one by one. For some time, most manufacturers still had to rely on a magnetic device to get an INST function. The designs of that time did not allow an electronic device to build up sufficient power to trip the actuator fast enough to be called INST.

Some designs have used (and may still use) two sets of current sensors, or one set of sensors with dual secondary windings, in order to derive a signal to monitor and another to act as the power supply. Additional sensors may be required for a function that direct-acting trips could not offer—ground fault. Both three-phase, three-wire; and three-phase, four-wire ground fault detection systems are offered. The signals from either the three or four sensors are processed to determine if all INST currents add up to zero (Kirchoff's current law applied to three-phase AC systems). Therefore, it should be apparent that if grounding conductors are used, they should not be included along with any neutral connections. When current returns to its source via a ground conductor, the monitored currents no longer add up to zero and the trip device activates. The connections and current sensors used for a three-phase, four-wire, plus ground conductor on a feeder breaker are shown in Figure 8.1.

Advances and enhancements are continually being made on static and electronic-trip devices. For example, the older type static- and electronic-trip elements measured peak and/or average currents and then scaled these currents to rms values based on the properties of pure sine wave. Therefore, the older static- and electronic-trip elements along with the electromechanical analog-type trip elements are susceptible to tripping problems due to harmonic currents generated by nonlinear loads. The nonlinear loads are variable speed drives, switch-mode power supplies, electronic ballasts, and the like. The current electronic units are truly microprocessor based and are programmed to sample the current waveform at required intervals to calculate the effective rms value of the load currents. Microprocessor trip elements with rms sensing avoid false tripping problems due to harmonic current peaks and sense

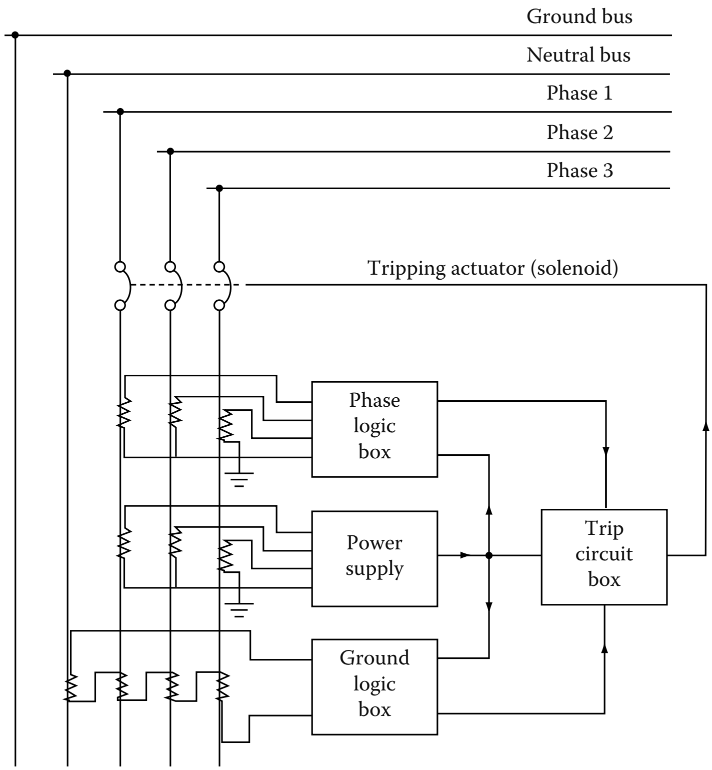


FIGURE 8.1
Functional diagram of static-trip device.

the true heating current in the circuit. In addition, microprocessor trip elements provide the capability for digital readouts of voltage, currents, kilowatts, kilowatt demands, kilowatt hours, kilovars, power factor, frequency, and so on. These readouts can be local or can be interfaced to a remote location via digital communication network. Some microprocessor protection packages can provide additional protection features that were originally available only by means of installing additional protective relays.

Also, the current microprocessor trip elements have less energy requirements for static-trip logic. In general, most designs now use fewer and smaller current sensors than would have been supplied for the breaker whose schematic is shown in Figure 8.1. A good example of a modern static-trip device is the Micro-VersaTrip, RMS-9 Programmer (MVT) offered by General Electric distribution and control which is shown in Figure 8.2. Not only does this device offer all of the features mentioned above but also it has the ability to measure the true rms current. This makes the breaker immune to false tripping due to current waveforms with high distortion or harmonic content. The MVT system consists of the following parts.

FIGURE 8.2
Micro-VersaTrip Plus, static-trip device.

Three current sensors are mounted on the breaker and provide the self-powered input to the protection programmer. Where four-wire ground fault is specified, a fourth current sensor is mounted near the neutral bar in the cable compartment. Sensors are constructed of molded epoxy for added protection against damage and moisture. Optional current sensors with four taps are available to increase the flexibility and range of the system. In the current designs rating plug is provided for a given sensor and breaker to establish the continuous current carrying capability (rating) of the breaker.

A flux-shift device is automatically powered and controlled by the protection programmer and causes the breaker to trip on command. This low-energy positive action tripping device is located near the trip bar on the breaker. This device automatically resets when the moving contacts on the breaker have fully opened.

The protection programmer has a programmable microelectronic processor with laser-trimmed custom-integrated chips that form the basis of the flexible, precise MVT protection system. MVT protection programmers may be furnished with

- Up to nine adjustable time–current functions
- Three local and remote mechanical fault indicators
- Local and remote long-time pickup light emitting diode (LED) indicator

- Zone selective interlocking
- Integral ground-fault trip

All adjustable programmer functions are automatic and self-contained and require no external relaying, power supply, or accessories.

8.3.3 Monitoring and Protection Packages

A natural outgrowth of the move to static-trip devices has been to provide devices that can display the quantities they are monitoring. This trend has come in response to user's concerns regarding the convenience in monitoring loads and in troubleshooting a given distribution system. Low-voltage switchgear generally has space constraints within its breaker cubicles; consequently, mounting space (if any) for additional current transformers is limited. Manufacturers are beginning to offer monitoring packages that take advantage of the signals already made available by the protection devices. The information can be displayed on the trip device or sent to a cubicle door mounted display. Automated data processing centers and cogeneration sites have set up elaborate monitoring systems by taking advantage of the communications functions that are now offered. Almost every feeder at a user's site can be monitored and all of its electrical performance data sent back to a central system. The trend in interfacing this basic electrical monitoring with communications to field programming units (FPUs); remote terminal units (RTUs), programmable controllers (PLCs) used as sequence controllers, data collectors, or concentrators; and sequence control and data acquisition (SCADA) systems is expected to continue. Many of the elements used in these systems are now installed directly in the switchgear.

8.4 Fuses

Two basic families of fuses are current limiting and noncurrent limiting. The current-limiting fuse melts and extinguishes the arc in a half-cycle or less. The noncurrent-limiting type may melt in less than a half-cycle when subjected to very high values of short-circuit current, but is unable to extinguish the arc in a half-cycle. Since the arc is a flexible conductor, the noncurrent-limiting-type fuse will allow the short-circuit current to reach its maximum peak value. The current-limiting type of fuses are constructed with mechanisms to extinguish the arc, thereby preventing the short-circuit current from reaching its maximum peak value. The fuses are used in conjunction with circuit breakers, motor starters, disconnect switches, and the like to provide protection similar to the circuit breaker overcurrent trip devices. However, fuses have fixed time–current relationships and therefore do not provide the same flexibility as the overcurrent relationships and therefore do not provide the same flexibility as the overcurrent trip devices. Fuses cannot open and close a circuit by themselves. They must be combined with some supplementary device, such as a disconnect switch, a circuit breaker, or a contactor. Fuses can be divided into medium- and low-voltage fuses.

8.4.1 Low-Voltage Fuses

Low-voltage fuses are divided into four broad categories:

1. Cartridge fuses, designed for the protection of circuits
2. Plug fuses, designed for the protection of circuits
3. Supplementary fuses, designed for the protection of small appliances, electronic equipment, and the like
4. Special fuses, designed for the protection of electrical equipment such as capacitors, welders, and rectifiers

The standards applicable to these fuses are NEMA FU-1 dated 2002, and ANSI/UL 248-1 through 248-15 dated 2000. In particular, the ANSI/UL 248-8 dated 2000 covers the class J fuses and ANSI/UL 248-10 dated 2000 covers class L fuses. Furthermore, UL has classified fuses as current limiting and non-current limiting, as shown in Table 8.1. Further, classes R, J, L, T, and CC fuses

TABLE 8.1

Current and Noncurrent-Limiting Fuses

Noncurrent limiting	
Plug fuses (Edison base, C and S) (ANSI/UL 248-11-2000)	*Class H* (248-6 & 7-2000)
Voltage rating, 125 V AC	Voltage rating, 250 and 600 V AC
Current rating, 0–30 A	Current rating, 0–600 A
Interrupting rating, not more than 10,000 A	Interrupting rating, not more than 10,000 A
Current limiting	
Class J (ANSI/UL 248-8-2000)	*Class L* (ANSI/UL 248-10-2000)
Voltage rating, 600 V AC	Voltage rating, 600 V AC
Current rating, 0–600 A	Current rating, 601–6000 A
Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym	Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym
Class K (K-1, K-5, and K-9) (ANSI/UL 248-9-2000)	*Class R* (ANSI/UL 248-12-2000)
Voltage rating, 250–600 V AC	Voltage rating, 250 and 600 V AC
Current rating, 0–600 A	Current rating, 0–600 A
Interrupting rating, 50,000–200,000 A sym	Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym
Class T (ANSI/UL 248-15-2000)	*Class G* (ANSI/UL 248-5-2000)
Voltage rating, 300 and 600 V AC	Voltage rating, 300 V AC
Current rating, 0–600 A	Current rating, 0–60 A
Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym	Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym
Class RK1	*Class RK5*
Voltage rating, 250–600 V AC	Voltage rating, 250–600 V AC
Current rating, 0–600 A	Current rating, 0–600 A
Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym	Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym

TABLE 8.1 (continued)

Current and Noncurrent-Limiting Fuses

Class CC (ANSI/UL 248-4-2000)	*Class C* (ANSI/UL 248-2-2000)
Voltage rating, 600 V AC	Voltage rating, 600 V AC
Current rating, 0–30 A	Current rating, 0–1200 A
Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym	Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym
Class CA/CB (ANSI/UL 248-3-2000)	
Voltage rating, 300 or 600 V AC	
Current rating, CA: 0–30 A; CB: 0–60 A	
Interrupting rating, 200,000 A sym	

Source: From UL 248.1–248.16-2000, UL Standard for Safety for Low-Voltage Fuses, Part 1–Part 16.

are designated as branch circuit fuses suitable for protection of distribution systems, wiring, or equipment.

Because fuses are single-phase interrupters, they provide good protection for single-phase circuits. However, for multiphase circuits, these single-phase interrupters can cause problems such as single phasing, backfeeding, and ferroresonance. Single phasing can be detrimental to motors owing to the flow of negative-sequence currents, which can cause excessive heating of the motor rotor, causing motor failure or reducing its normal life. The degree of motor life reduction is a function of motor temperature and elapsed time between single-phase occurrence and motor de-energization.

The term back feeding is used to describe the condition when fault current continues to flow from the remaining energized phases, most probably at a reduced value owing to the additional impedance that has been inserted in the current path. The degree of fault current reduction will determine the time of response of the fuses in the remaining phases. As fuse interrupting time increases, the degree of damage also increases. Today's switchgear designs employing fuses as overcurrent protective devices use anti-single phase protection features. The anti-single phase feature in the fused switchgear open all three phases due to a single fuse blowing, thereby averting the adverse effects of single phasing discussed earlier.

8.5 Disconnect Switches

Disconnect switches are commonly used in low- and medium-voltage systems. The application of disconnect switches can be divided into low-voltage (600 V and below) and medium-voltage (601 V through 15 kV) classes. The medium-voltage switches are discussed in Chapter 7.

8.5.1 Low-Voltage Switches

Low-voltage switches can be classified into three broad categories: (1) isolating switches, (2) safety switches, and (3) interrupter switches. The isolating switch has no interrupting or load-carrying capability. It serves only to provide isolation of the circuit or load by manual means after the power flow is cut off by the circuit protective device.

The safety switch is a load-break switch having a quick-make and quick-break contact mechanism. Safety switches are used in small power systems with limited short-circuit capacity. The safety switch may be fused or unfused.

The interrupter switch is of quick-make, quick-break type and is capable of interrupting at least 12 times its continuous current rating. They are assigned horsepower rating. These switches are available in continuous rating from 30 to 1200 A and can be installed in switchboards, panelboards, and grouped motor control centers. The interrupter switch may be utilized with or without fuses depending upon the application.

Some light industrial systems or commercial buildings will use switchgear or switchboards with a high pressure or bolted pressure, three-pole switch acting as incoming service main disconnects. The principal feature of these switches is their continuous current capacities of up to 3000 or 4000 A. At these currents, very high contact pressure is required on the conducting surfaces in order to hold temperature rises to reasonable levels. The switches themselves carry an interrupting rating similar to those for three-pole interrupter switches but not as high as that for power circuit breakers. Interrupting capability for short circuits is almost always handled by current-limiting fuses, which are an integral part of the switch. Most manufacturers provide single phase, blown fuse, and ground fault accessories so that the switches can be used on low-voltage service entrances. Unlike trip devices applied to circuit breakers, these protective devices are not self-powered. Rather, they take operating voltage from a small control power transformer on the source side of the switch. Generally, the mechanical design of these switches is based on a minimum of operations. The number of operations is expected to be less than for insulated-case breakers; usually limited to isolation during maintenance or for serious ground faults not cleared successfully by other means.

8.6 Selection and Application of Low-Voltage Equipment

The modern distribution system has high short-circuit current available and therefore requires special consideration so that equipment may be applied within its rating. Furthermore, the switchgear should be protected against all types of faults, from low-level arcing faults to bolted faults. The protection system should be selective; that is, the fault at a remote location in the system should be localized without unnecessary tripping of either the main breaker system or any intermediate breakers. The distribution system should be planned to provide continuity and reliability of service. This can be achieved by using two or more separate distribution systems instead of one large system. The continuous current rating of the main protective device should be adequate for the load to be served. Protective devices should not be paralleled to obtain a higher rating. As a general rule, the bus bars are rated on the basis of not more than 800 A/in.^{2} of aluminum or 1000 A/in.^{2} of copper. The operation of protective devices is based upon an ambient temperature of 40 °C, and if these devices are to be applied at higher temperature, the manufacturer should be consulted. The short-circuit rating of a bus is limited to the interrupting rating of the lowest rated protective device, and the available short-circuit current should not exceed this value.

The application of circuit breakers and fuses must be considered to determine which offers the most appropriate protection. Consideration should be given to anti-single-phase devices when three-pole interrupter switches with fuses are used, because fuses are single-pole interrupter switches. An arcing fault may not be stopped by a single-pole interruption. It can be backfed from the other energized phases. Because of this condition, severe equipment burndowns may occur. Ferroresonance is the result of interaction between the reactance of a saturable magnetic device, such as a transformer, and system capacitance. Ferroresonance can also occur due to a single phasing condition. This phenomenon occurs mostly in high- and medium-voltage systems and results in a very high voltage on the order of three to five normal system voltage which is imposed on the circuit involved, causing equipment failure.

Always keep in mind that fuses should be applied in systems where the system voltage is compatible with the fuse voltage rating. The reason for this is that the arc voltage generated by a fuse when interrupting is several times its voltage rating and, if misapplied, could subject the system to overvoltage conditions, causing equipment failure.

The current-limiting features of current-limiting fuses are definite strong pluses for many applications; however, use the fact wisely, for they do not limit current for all values of fault current. If the fault current magnitude is equal to or greater than the fuse threshold current, they will always be current limiting. However, if the fault current magnitude is less than the fuse threshold current, but greater than the current magnitude indicated at the intersection of the maximum peak current curve and fuse curve, the fuse may or may not be current limiting. For fault current magnitude indicated by the above curve intersection, the fuse is never current limiting.

For this reason and arc-voltage considerations, when applying current-limiting fuses to increase the interrupting rating of other protectors, the fusing recommendations of the product manufacturers, not the fuse manufacturer, should be followed. Fused equipment can be opened and closed manually or electrically to provide circuit protection. However, the fuse and equipment should be coordinated and tested as a combination. The fuse's adequate performance as a circuit protector and switching device should be certified by one manufacturer.

When fused switches are electrically controlled, caution is required not to let the switch open due to fault conditions. The fault current, if not sufficient to cause interruption before the switch contacts or blades open, could be greater than the contacts' or blades' interrupting capability. This would result in a hazardous condition. Fused switches basically require the same application considerations as previously outlined in this section.

Fused motor starters applied in medium- and low-voltage systems avoid the ferroresonance problem owing to their location in the system. Auxiliary devices can be supplied with motor starters to provide a complete overload protection and anti-single-phasing protection. The selection and application of switchgear should be approached on an engineering basis. To provide reliability, ease of maintenance, and continuity of service, properly rated equipment and adequate circuit protection are necessary throughout the entire system, from the place where the power system enters the facility down to the smallest load.

8.6.1 Assessing Service Life of Low-Voltage Breakers

The National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), American Standards National Institute (ANSI), and Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) standards for low-voltage power circuit breakers and MCCBs contain performance criteria for assessing the service life of manufactured products. The pertinent industry standards for low-voltage breakers are ANSI/IEEE C37.16-2000, C37.26-2003, C37.50-2000, C37.51-2003, NEMA AB-1-2002, and AB-4-2003. In addition, the MCCBs are tested at the manufacturer's production facility and/or at UL facilities in accordance with standards promulgated by the industry and UL-489-2002. The performance criteria contained in these standards can also help users anticipate the need for maintenance testing, inspections, refurbishment, and/or replacement of the manufactured products. This section provides an overview of the requirements covered in the referenced industry standards and the methods typically used by manufacturers in making the products. It is expected that an understanding of the endurance requirements covered in the standards should provide insights that can be used to inspect and evaluate the health for continued reliable operation (i.e., the service life) of low-voltage power circuit breakers and MCCBs. There are four basic electrical ratings and endurance requirements for switchgear components and assemblies such as circuit breakers.

8.6.1.1 Maximum Voltage Rating or Nominal Voltage Class

Low-voltage power circuit breakers are marked with the maximum system voltage at which they can be applied. Standard maximum voltage ratings are 635, 508, and 254 V for application of the breakers in 575, 480, and 208 V electrical power systems, respectively. A low-voltage breaker can be used in a circuit that has a nominal voltage rating less than the breaker's maximum voltage rating. For example, a 635 V rated circuit breaker can be applied in a 208, 240, 480, or 600 V rated circuit. For fused breakers, the 635 V maximum voltage rating becomes 600 V to match the voltage rating of the fuses.

8.6.1.2 Continuous Current Rating

The continuous current rating of a circuit breaker, isolator switch, load-break switch, switchgear assembly, or motor control center is the number of amperes; that the device can carry continuously without the temperature of any insulation component becoming greater than its rated temperature. For low-voltage power circuit breakers and MCCBs, the continuous current rating of the breaker's frame is called the frame size. For any low-voltage power circuit breaker that can accept a replaceable trip device, installation of a trip device that has a continuous current rating that is less than the frame size reduces the continuous rating of the circuit breaker. It is not permissible to install a trip device that has a continuous current rating that is greater than the breaker's frame size.

8.6.1.3 Rated Short-Circuit Current (Circuit Breakers)

Low-voltage circuit breakers are designed and manufactured with one or more interrupting ratings (rated short-circuit current), often called interrupting ampere capability (AIC). These interrupting ratings are the maximum values of available (prospective) short-circuit current (fault) that the breaker is able to interrupt (short-circuit duty cycle) at different maximum voltage values. Available current is defined in the industry standards as the expected rms symmetrical value of current at a time one half-cycle after short-circuit initiation. The maximum fault in a power system occurs at one half-cycle time. The low-voltage breakers are fast acting and begin to part contacts at about one half-cycle time which is point of maximum short-circuit current. Therefore, as the breaker contacts begin to part, i.e., as the breaker begins to interrupt the short-circuit current it is subjected to the maximum asymmetrical current. The asymmetry of the short-circuit current is a function of the X/R ratio, or the power factor of the short-circuit current. The ANSI/UL standard 489, "Standard for molded case circuit breakers and circuit breaker enclosures" along with AB-1 contain the criteria for performing interrupting ability tests for molded-case breakers. These standards specify the power factor of the test circuit with the required current flowing that is to be used for establishing the asymmetry of the short-circuit current. The NEMA AB-1-2002 and UL 489-2002 standards have established three asymmetry categories (i.e., power factor) of short-circuit current interrupting capabilities. The three asymmetry categories (short-circuit current and power factor) given in NEMA AB-1 and UL 489 are shown in first two columns of Table 8.2. The associated X/R ratio and the accompanying multiplying factors are shown in columns 3 and 4 of Table 8.2. What the UL 489 and relevant industry standards are saying is that the asymmetry is greater for fault currents at the locations where the short-circuit current is high, and it is smaller at locations where the short-circuit current is less. Another way of stating this criterion is to say that the breakers applied closer to the substations will experience higher short-circuit currents with higher asymmetry in the fault current, thereby subjecting a breaker to undergo a higher short-circuit duty while interrupting the fault. The opposite is true for breakers applied further away (downstream) from the substation because such breakers will see lower short-circuit currents and lower asymmetry in the short-circuit current.

TABLE 8.2

Power Factor of Test Circuits—NEMA-AB-1-2002 and UL-489-2002

			Multiplying Factors	
Test Circuit (A)	**Power Factor**	**X/R**	M_A	M_M
NEMA-AB-1-2002				
10,000 or less	0.50	1.732	1.026	1.013
10,001–20,000	0.30	3.15	1.130	1.064
Over 20,000	0.20	4.87	1.247	1.127
UL-489-2002				
10,000 or less	0.45–0.50	1.98–1.732	1.041–1.026	1.021–1.013
10,001–20,000	0.25–0.30	3.87–3.15	1.181–1.130	1.092–1.064
Over 20,000	0.15–0.20	6.60–4.87	1.331–1.247	1.172–1.127

Sources: From NEMA-AB-1-2002, Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case Switches and UL-489-2002, Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures.

Note: M_A (three-phase fault) = (Average three-phases – asymmetrical rms amperes)/(Average three-phases – symmetrical rms amperes). M_M (1 – phase fault) = (Asymmetrical rms amperes)/(symmetrical rms amperes).

What this all means is that power factor is lower (or X/R ratio is higher) near the substations and power factor is higher (or X/R ratio is lower) further away from the substation. It should be noted that the maximum asymmetry for the low-voltage circuit breakers is capped at power factor of 0.15, X/R ratio of 6.6. However, examination of the manufacturer and UL data shows that most breakers are tested at a maximum power factor of 0.20 or X/R ratio of 4.87. The low-voltage breaker's short-circuit interrupting capability is indicated in symmetrical amperes since the asymmetry is already included in the test circuit current when the breakers are tested for interrupting capability. Also, note that the short circuit duty cycle is a specific test that is performed on a prototype model of a circuit breaker. A detailed explanation of this test can be found in ANSI/IEEE standards C37.16, C37.50, UL 489, and NEMA AB-1. Table 8.3 shows

TABLE 8.3

Preferred Short Circuit Ratings in rms Symmetrical Amperes

7,500	20,000	35,000	85,000	200,000
10,000	22,000	42,000	100,000	
14,000	25,000	50,000	125,000	
18,000	30,000	65,000	150,000	

Sources: From NEMA-AB-1, Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case Switches.

the interrupting symmetrical ampere capabilities published in NEMA AB-1 for the breakers manufactured by NEMA member companies.

Each model of circuit breaker can have a different set of interrupting current capabilities listed in Table 8.3. The interrupting capability of a low-voltage breaker varies with the applied voltage. For example, a 1600 A-rated breaker applied at 240 V might have an interrupting capability of 65 kA at 240 V, whereas the same breaker applied at 480 V would have an interrupting capability of 50 kA. The interrupting capability also changes if the breaker's automatic trip device has a short-time trip function rather than an INST trip function. For example, a 4000 A-rated circuit breaker that has an INST trip might have an interrupting capability of 150 kA at 240 V, whereas the same breaker equipped with a short-time trip has an interrupting capability of 85 kA at 240 V. Any low-voltage power circuit breaker that is equipped with current-limiting fuses (current limiters) has short-circuit current rating equal to 200 kA. Rated short-circuit current is also influenced by the ability of a circuit breaker to close and latch against, carry, and subsequently interrupt, a fault current. Breakers have closing and latching capabilities, sometimes called momentary rating, relate to the breaker's ability to withstand the mechanical and thermal stress of the first half-cycle of a fault current, i.e., asymmetrical short-circuit current. Low-voltage power circuit breakers and MCCBs display no nameplate information concerning momentary rating. These types of breakers are traditionally tested and applied according to their interrupting current capability in RMS amperes. The reason that momentary ratings do not appear on their nameplates is that these breakers are tested with the asymmetry already included in the symmetrical amperes of the test circuit that was discussed earlier. For those few system applications that have a greater asymmetrical value than the asymmetry of test circuit current (i.e., $X/R = 6.6$), a circuit breaker of higher interrupting current rating should be applied.

8.6.1.4 Short-Circuit Current Ratings—Panelboards, MCCs, and Switchgear Assemblies

A panelboard has a short-circuit current rating shown on its nameplate. A panelboard is not allowed to be applied in any circuit whose available fault current is greater than its short-circuit current rating. The short-circuit current rating of a panelboard is limited to the lowest value of rated short-circuit current for any circuit breaker that is installed within the panelboard. The short circuit withstand rating of a motor control center is the average rms current that its busses can carry for 2 s. A motor control center is not allowed to be applied in any circuit whose available fault current is greater than its short-circuit withstand rating. The rated momentary current of metal-enclosed or metal-clad switchgear represents the maximum rms current that it is required to withstand during a test of 10 cycles duration. This test is conducted on a prototype model. The rated short-time current of metal-enclosed or metal-clad switchgear is the average rms current that it can carry for a period of 2 s.

8.6.1.5 Endurance Requirements for Low-Voltage Breakers

The ANSI/IEEE standard for switchgear C37.16-2000 provides endurance requirements of low-voltage power circuit breakers and AC power circuit protectors. Although primarily used by manufacturers who have an interest in assuring a durable product, these endurance requirements can also help equipment users to anticipate the need for maintenance or replacement. In order to verify that a particular design of circuit breaker meets the endurance requirements, a manufacturer performs all endurance tests on a single circuit breaker. Table 8.4 appears in the standard and represents the number of times that the circuit breaker is required to make and subsequently break line currents that are 600% of the breaker's rated continuous current. The test method includes specifications for how much time can elapse between switching operations. The breaker components that are most likely to become worn during this endurance test are arcing tip and arc chutes.

Table 8.5 also appears in the ANSI 37.16-2000 and represents the number of open–close or close–open operations that the breaker's operating mechanism is required to endure when making and breaking 100% of its rated current (electrical endurance) and no current (mechanical endurance). The components that are most likely to become worn during this endurance test are latches, cam, rollers, bearings, pins, clamps, and threaded hardware. In order to pass this test, adjusting, cleaning, lubricating, and tightening are allowed at the intervals shown in column 2 of Table 8.5. The numbers in this column contain a clear implication that maintenance is required in order to allow a circuit breaker's operating mechanism to realize its full lifetime. An examination of the Annex A ANSIC37.16-2000 reveals several comments that relate strongly to breaker maintenance. These comments are (1) The circuit breaker should be in a condition to carry its rated continuous current

TABLE 8.4

Overload Switching Requirements for LowVoltage AC Circuit Breakers

Line No.	Frame Size Amperes	Number of Make–Break Operations
1	225	50
2	600	50
3	800	50
4	1600	38
5	2000	38
6	3000	—
7	3200	—

Source: From ANSI 37.16-2000, Low-Voltage Power Circuit Breakers and AC Power Cicuit Protectors Preferred Ratings, Related Requirements, and Application Recommendations.

TABLE 8.5

Endurance Requirements for Low-Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers

	Number of Make–Break or Close–Open Operations			
Circuit-Breaker Frame Size (A)	**Between Servicing[a]**	**Electrical Endurance**	**Mechanical Endurance**	**Total No. of Operations**
600	1750	2800	9700	12,500
800	1750	2800	9700	12,500
1600	500	800	3200	4,000
2000	500	800	3200	4,000
3000	250	400	1100	1,500
3200	250	400	1100	1,500
4000	250	400	1100	1,500

Source: From ANSI C37.16-2000, Low-Voltage Power Circuit Breakers and AC Power Circuit Protectors Preferred Ratings, Related Requirements, and Application Recommendations.

[a] Servicing shall consist of adjusting, cleaning, lubricating, and tightening.

at maximum rated voltage and perform at least one opening operation at rated short-circuit current. After completion of this series of operations, functional part replacement and general servicing may be necessary, (2) If a fault operation occurs before the completion of the listed operations, servicing may be necessary, depending on previous accumulated duty, fault magnitude, and expected future operation, (3) Servicing consists of adjusting, cleaning, lubricating, tightening, and the like, as recommended by the manufacturer. When current is interrupted, dressing of contacts may be required as well. As indicated in the standards, the breaker operations listed for endurance are based on servicing at intervals of 6 months or less.

The implication for maintenance is that a power circuit breaker might not be suitable for continued service after it has interrupted a fault current at or near its short-circuit current rating. Unless the magnitude of a fault current is known to have been significantly less than rated short circuit value, it is good practice to perform a physical inspection on a breaker before it is used to reenergize a power circuit. Physical inspections at periodic maintenance intervals will reveal wear of components and parts before a circuit breaker looses its ability to interrupt an overload current or a fault. For circuit breakers that are equipped with a monitoring system, the number of overload operations can be automatically recorded in a data log that can subsequently be analyzed to determine whether a circuit breaker is in need of an inspection.

The requirements for conducting endurance tests for MCCBs are given in NEMA AB-1 and UL-489 and the criteria differ somewhat from the ANSI C37.16 requirements. The categories of electrical operations are referred to as operation with current and the mechanical tests are referred to as operation without current. The requirements for the endurance tests for MCCB are shown in Table 8.6.

TABLE 8.6

Endurance Requirements for MCCBs

	Number of Make–Break or Close–Open Operations			
MCCB Frame Size (A)	No. of Operations/ Minute[a]	With Current	Without Current	Total
100	6	6000	4000	10,000
150	5	4000[b]	4000	8,000[b]
225	5	4000	4000	8,000
600	1	500	3000	3,500
1200	1	500	2000	2,500
2500	1	500	2000	2,500
6000	1[c]	400	1100	1,500

Source: From UL-489-1991, Standard for Safety Molded-Case Cricuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures.

[a] For circuit breakers rated more than 800 A, the endurance test may, at the option of the manufacturer, be conducted in groups of 100 load operations. No-load operations may be conducted between groups of load operations at the option of the manufacturer.

[b] Where tests are required on samples having ratings of 100 A or less, 250 V or less, the number of operations is to be the same as for the 100 A frame.

[c] Rate of operation: 1 cycle per minute for first 10 operations; thereafter in groups of 5, at 1 cycle per minute, with an interval between groups that is agreeable to the submitter and the testing agency.

8.7 Low-Voltage Switchgear Maintenance and Care

The low-voltage switchgear discussed in this section involves power circuit breakers and enclosures of indoor or outdoor type. The frequency of inspection and maintenance should be 3–6 months when new equipment is installed and 1–2 years for existing equipment. However, if problems with switchgear are encountered, the frequency can be shortened. Similarly to medium-voltage switchgear, the conditions that call for frequent inspection and maintenance are high humidity and temperature, corrosive atmosphere, excessive dirt or dust, frequent fault interruption, and age of the equipment. The following guide is provided for the general maintenance of low-voltage equipment; where necessary it should be supplemented by the manufacturer's detailed instructions.

8.7.1 General Guidelines for Inspection and Maintenance of Switchgear

The ultimate long-term performance of switchgear depends on the reliability of its insulation system. An important factor in the insulation reliability is its regular switchgear inspection and maintenance program. The frequency of inspection should be based on the number of scheduled shutdowns, frequent emergency shutdowns, long periods of sustained overloading or abnormal operating conditions, numerous switching operations, number of fault occurrences, and extremes in atmospheric conditions. The following guide is offered on how to inspect and what to look for when inspecting switchgear. This guide may also be used for inspecting medium-voltage switchgear.

On energized equipment

- Listen for popping, spitting, or cracking sounds produced by electrical discharges—also humming noises or vibration produced by resonance.
- With lights out, look for blue or purple corona halos. Orange or red sputter arcs are created by intermittent sparking.
- Ozone, produced by corona or overheating of organic materials, can usually be detected by their odors.

On de-energized equipment

- Look for physical damage—cracks, breaks, delaminations, warping, blisters, flaking, or crazing of insulated parts.
- Check for foreign objects and loose hardware, warped or distorted insulated bus, and rusty or bent structural framework.
- Powdery deposits, carbon tracks, moisture stains or rust, flaking paint, or varnish are signs that moisture is, or has been, present; look for probable source of entry.

Specific areas to inspect
Although the inspector should check the whole insulating structure, there are a number of specific areas where distress is more likely to occur.

- Boundaries between two contiguous insulating members
- Boundaries between an insulating member and the grounded metal structure
- Taped or compounded splices or junctions
- Bridging paths across insulating surfaces; either phase-to-phase or phase-to-ground
- Hidden surfaces, such as the adjacent edges between the upper and lower members of split type bus supports, or the edges of a slot through which a bus bar protrudes
- Edges of insulation surrounding mounting hardware—either grounded to the metal structure or floating within the insulating member

Physical damage
Broken or cracked insulating supports can allow the supported components to be subjected to mechanical stresses for which they were not designed, resulting in ultimate failure. Damaged or contaminated insulation materially reduces voltage striking and creepage distances, ultimately resulting in a flashover. Physical damage can stem from several causes:

- Mishandling of the switchgear during shipment, installation, overloading, or maintenance
- Mechanical forces induced by heavy faults
- Thermal cycling of insulating members
- Strains induced by improper mounting of insulating members
- Combinations of the above

Heat

Temperatures (even slightly over design levels) for prolonged periods can significantly shorten the electrical life of organic insulating materials. A prolonged exposure to higher than rated temperatures will cause physical deterioration of organic materials, resulting in lower mechanical strength. Localized heating (hot spots) sometimes occur. They are hard to detect because the overall temperature of the surroundings is not raised appreciably. Loosely bolted connections in a bus bar splice or void spaces (dead air) in a taped assembly are examples of this.

Since power is usually removed prior to inspection, it is unlikely that apparatus temperature can be relied upon as an indicator of damaging heat. But observed conditions can be used as the basis for determining heat damage. The signs of heating are as follows:

- Discoloration—usually a darkening of materials or finishes
- Crazing, cracking, or flaking of varnish coatings
- Embrittlement of tapes and cable insulation
- Delamination of taped conductors or laminated insulation
- Generalized carbonization of materials or finishes
- Melting, oozing, or exuding of substances from within an insulating assembly

Moisture

The term moisture, usually associated with water, includes vapors which can readily conduct leakage currents. They are often present as air pollutants in industrial atmospheres. The main source of moisture is highly humid air which is subject to climatic type cycling. The drop in temperature between daytime and dark can cause relatively still air to pass through a dew-point, resulting in condensation. Sudden temperature drops can cause condensation, even inside of buildings housing switchgear. Detection of moisture usually depends on signs, rather than the presence of actual moisture. Look for these indications:

- Droplet depressions (or craters) on a heavily dust-laden bus
- Dust patterns, similar to those on an auto subjected to a light rain shower after driving on a dusty road
- Deposits which remain if a film of dirty water evaporates on a flat surface

- Excessive rust anywhere in the metal housing
- Actual condensation on metallic surfaces, even though the insulation is apparently dry

Tracking

Tracking is an electrical discharge phenomenon caused by voltage bridging insulating members—phase-to-phase or phase-to-ground. Normally considered to be a surface phenomenon, it can occur internally in some materials. Materials that are known to track internally are never applied in metal-clad switchgear. Tracking may be detected in various ways:

- Active streamers or sputter arcs may occur on insulating surfaces adjacent to high-voltage conductors. These arcs are very tiny, usually intermittent or random in nature, and of variable intensity. One or more irregular carbon lines (trees) eroded into the insulating surface is a sign that tracking has occurred.
- Materials specifically designed for track resistance seldom, if ever, exhibit carbon lines. Instead, these materials usually develop erosion craters after extensive bombardment by electrical discharges.
- Tracking can propagate from either the high voltage or ground terminal. It will not necessarily progress in a regular pattern or by the shortest possible path.

For tracking to occur, five conditions must exist simultaneously. Remove any one condition and tracking will cease. These conditions are

- Appropriate temperature
- High local field intensity or gradient
- Contamination on the insulating surface
- Moisture on the insulation surface
- Susceptible insulating material, forming a bridging link over which leakage current can flow; phase-to-phase or phase-to-ground

Corona*

Corona is an electrical discharge phenomenon occurring in gaseous substances. High electrical gradients, exceeding the breakdown level of the gas, lead to corona discharges. Pressure, temperature, humidity, and the type of gas affect breakdown levels. In metal-clad switchgear, corona (if it occurs) is usually localized in the tiny air gaps between the high-voltage bus bar and its insulation or between to contiguous insulating members or at sharp

* It should be noted that corona usually occurs in switchgear rated at 5 kV and higher. Corona is not a problem in 600 V switchgear. The inspection for corona is listed here only for completeness since this inspection guide may also be used for inspecting medium- and high-voltage switchgear.

corners of the uninsulated bus bars. Corona can be detected in various ways without using instruments as follows:

- A visible, pulsating, blue or purple haze (or halo) may surround the overstressed air gap. The halo is generally of low light intensity and invisible, except in the dark.
- Popping, spitting, crackling, or frying noises may accompany the corona discharge.
- Corona ionizes the surrounding air, converting the oxygen to ozone. It has a distinctive penetrating odor.
- Its presence may be indicated by erosion of the organic materials adjacent to an overstressed air gap. A white powdery deposit is often present along the edges of the eroded area. In some materials, corona deterioration has the appearance of worm-eaten wood.
- Interference with radio reception may be a sign of corona. If the audible noise level increases as a radio is moved closer to switchgear, corona could be the cause.

Corona discharges create problems in a number of different ways:

- Ionization of the air releases ions and electrons. These bombard nearby organic materials affecting their molecular or chemical structure.
- Ozone, formed by corona, is a strong oxidizing agent; it can also react with many materials.
- Nitrogen in the air will also react to ionizing. When ionized under humid conditions, it forms nitric acid which is harmful to insulation.

Insulations are generally selected from materials having acid resistance, but acids can become the conducting fluids causing the tracking phenomenon. Although switchgear is designed for corona-free performance, there have been cases, in specific applications, where corona has developed.

8.7.2 Maintenance of Power Circuit Breakers

It is generally recommended that low-voltage power breakers (see Figure 8.3) should be maintained annually. Moreover, a breaker should be serviced after a severe fault interruption. The inspection, maintenance, and tests can be classified as mechanical and electrical and should be conducted on the breaker (the testing of protective devices is covered separately in Section 8.8) on a regular (such as annual) basis.

Mechanical maintenance factors:

- Operating mechanism
- Contact pressure and alignment
- Contact erosion

- Lubrication of the operating mechanism
- Lubrication of the current-carrying components
- Arc chute and interphase inspection

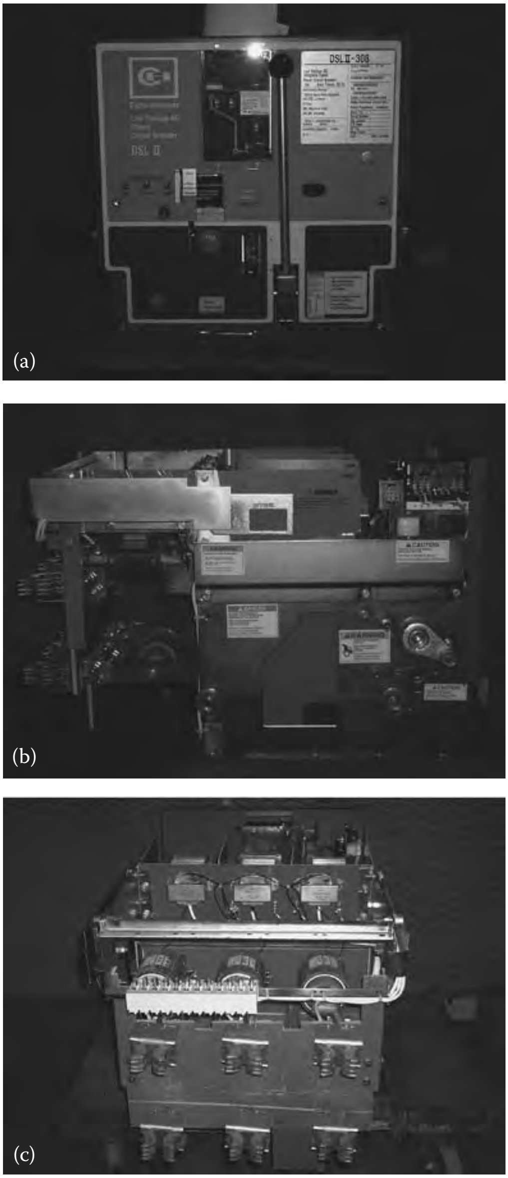


FIGURE 8.3
Low-voltage draw-out power circuit breaker. (a) Front view showing name plate of CH-DSLII and protective trip devices, (b) side view showing operating mechanism, and (c) back view showing disconnect stubs and finger cluster, and CLF fuses.

Electrical maintenance factors:

- Primary circuit (contact) resistance test
- Insulation resistance test
- AC or DC dielectric withstand test

The described mechanical and electrical maintenance factors are in Section 8.7.2.1.

8.7.2.1 Mechanical Maintenance Factors

8.7.2.1.1 Operating Mechanism

The operating mechanism of a circuit breaker is typically checked by performing the following operations:

- Closing and opening the breaker's interrupters several times to verify consistency of operation.
- Verifying the trip-free function (when applicable).
- Adjusting the trip latch overlap (when applicable).
- Adjusting the spring release or close latch overlap (when applicable). Consistency of operation is defined by the mechanism's ability to successfully latch closed and trip open every time a manual or electrical signal is initiated. Trip-free operation is verified by attempting to close the interrupters while maintaining a trip signal at the same time. The main contacts should not touch as the stored energy of the breaker's mechanism discharges. The trip-free feature may not be a part of every circuit breaker. Some circuit breaker's main contacts will momentarily touch if a closing signal is initiated at the same time as a tripping signal. The specific procedure for adjusting trip latch overlap or close latch overlap is different for each model of circuit breaker. If these latches are not correctly adjusted, a circuit breaker might not latch when a close signal is initiated (a rapid close–open action) or might fail to trip when a trip signal is initiated. Some power circuit breakers have a trip latch or close latch adjustment.

8.7.2.1.2 Contact Pressure and Alignment

Consult the manufacturer's instructional manual for specific procedures of inspecting and adjusting the pressure and alignment of the main and arcing contact of a power circuit breaker. Pressure inspections do not necessarily involve an actual measurement of force or pressure. More typically, dimensional measurements are specified that assure contact springs are compressed to an adequate amount. Additionally, springs are visually inspected to verify that they have a normal color. Discoloration indicates that the metallurgical properties of a spring are compromised. Alignment checks are typically dimensional measurements that assure sufficient penetration of moving contacts into the areas of fixed contacts.

8.7.2.1.3 Contact Erosion

Air circuit breakers and magnetic-air circuit breakers have separately replaceable sets of arcing and main contacts. The arcing contacts are expected to erode at a rate that depends on the number of interruptions and the value of current that is interrupted. The main contacts are not expected to erode. The arcing contacts should be replaced when they are eroded badly. The main contacts should be inspected for discoloration, pitting, burning, and deposits of foreign materials. The main contact should not be sanded but they could be dressed with a burnishing tool. If the main contacts are severely pitted, burned, or eroded, they should be replaced.

8.7.2.1.4 Lubrication of the Mechanism

Mechanism of all power circuit breakers need periodic renewal of lubrication. There are several factors that influence how often breaker mechanism need to be lubricated. These factors are

- Continuous current rating of the circuit breaker
- Number of operations (close–open) and time since last lubrication
- Environment where breaker is installed

The ANSI/IEEE C37.16 establishes endurance requirements for low-voltage power circuit breakers and were discussed in Section 8.6.1. These requirements relate the minimum number of close–open operations that a breaker must be able to accomplish before requiring service. One of the limiting factors is the need to renew lubrication in a circuit breaker's mechanism. In general, the larger the breaker, the more frequent is the need for the required breaker service and lubrication. The manufacturer's manual for the breaker may suggest a higher number of operations than the number given in the ANSI/IEEE standards. For example, although an 800 A rated circuit breaker is required by the ANSI/IEEE standard to endure 500 operations before service is needed, the manufacturer's instruction book indicate that an 800 A would require renewal of lubrication after 1750 operations. If a circuit breaker operates only a few times each year, a 500- or 1750-operation count might never happen within the useful life of the breaker. However, a need to renew lubrication will be needed owing to the fact that lubrication materials deteriorate over time when exposed to environment. The deterioration of the replacement materials, such as lubricants, is accelerated by harsh environmental conditions such as elevated ambient temperature or the existence of airborne contaminants. Most users establish programs to lubricate critical circuit breakers based on a fixed time interval. Many breaker malfunctions and/or failures have been attributed due to lack of, or dried, lubrication in as little as 5 years of normal service. The lubrication points that typically require critical attention are a circuit breaker's trip latch, spring-release latch, and cam-follow roller.

In all cases, the manufacturer's instructional literature should be consulted to determine which components require lubrication. There is a large variety of materials that are used to lubricate a circuit breaker's mechanism. More than one type of lubrication might be used in the same mechanism at different specific points. Additionally, the material that is recommended for renewal of lubrication is sometimes not the same material that was installed at the factory. For example, many models of circuit breakers have molybdenum disulfide in a lithium base installed at the factory, but the breaker's instruction book recommends light machine oil to be applied to these same lubrication points for maintenance. In all cases, it is important to use the material that is specified in a circuit breaker's instruction book. Although newer and better lubrication materials are available on the market, circuit breaker manufacturers seldom requalify circuit breakers using new lubricants by conducting standard endurance tests after the time of initial introduction for sale.

8.7.2.1.5 Lubrication of Current-Carrying Components

A manufacturer's breaker manual sometimes recommends renewal of lubrication for specific current-carrying components of a circuit breaker. These components include main contacts, primary-circuit finger clusters and bus studs. Care must be taken when assessing which current-carrying components should be lubricated and which components should not be. Manufacturer's instruction book on the particular breaker type should be consulted for lubrication of current-carrying components.

8.7.2.1.6 Arc Chute and Interphase

The arc chutes and interphase barriers of a circuit breaker are inspected visually to detect broken or contaminated components. Broken components are replaced. The contamination that is caused by arc products can be cleaned by various methods such as sand blasting or using a flexible aluminum-oxide coated paper disc. Soot and dust is typically removed with a pressure-regulated jet of air. Some arc chutes may contain asbestos components such as rope, cement, or shields. Arc chutes having asbestos components should not be cleaned unless correct breathing apparatus is worn by the personnel cleaning the arc chutes.

8.7.2.2 Electrical Maintenance Factors

8.7.2.2.1 Primary Circuit Resistance Check

This test is also known as millivolt drop test or contact resistance (DC resistance) measurement test. This test is performed to assess the condition of the main contacts and connections of the current-carrying components of a breaker. If desired, the DC resistance of the primary circuit may be measured by closing the breaker and passing DC current (at least 100 A) through the breaker. With a low-resistance instrument, measure resistance across the studs on the breaker side for each pole. The resistance should not exceed 60, 40, and 20 $\mu\Omega$ for 1200, 2000, and 3000 A breakers, respectively. If no data is given in a manufacturer's instructional literature on primary circuit resistance (contact resistance) values, then evaluate by comparing readings of the past years test readings with present readings to detect a trend. A reading that increases by a factor of 2 is considered a significant sign of deterioration. Also, compare the primary circuit resistance of the three poles against each other and readings that differ by more than 50% should be investigated. Primary circuit resistance measurements are generally made before and after cleaning operations are performed on the main contacts.

8.7.2.2.2 Insulation Resistance Tests

Insulation resistance measurements of the primary insulation of a power circuit breaker can be used to detect deterioration such as absorption of moisture, contamination, or thermal aging. This test is performed to check the insulation integrity of the breaker, i.e., the insulation of the bushing, interphase barriers, and arc chutes. Measurements taken over a period of months or years can reveal a deteriorating trend. A change representing a factor of 10 over a period of 1 year is considered a reason to conduct additional inspections of an insulation system such as visual inspections or applied-potential tests. Insulation resistance tests are useful just before returning a circuit breaker to service is to confirm that moisture has not condensed on insulation surfaces and components of the breaker. A typical criterion for returning a breaker to service is that its insulation resistance should not be less than 90% of the value that was measured in previous years when the insulation was new and known to be dry. Refer to Section 2.10 and Table 2.8 for additional information on insulation resistance testing and quantifying good insulation resistance values.

8.7.2.2.3 AC Dielectric Withstand and Low-Frequency Withstand Tests

An AC dielectric withstand test, known as a low-frequency withstand test, an applied potential test, or a high-potential (hi-pot) test, can be used to detect a gross failure of an insulation, the presence of a foreign object within an insulation system, or insufficient clearance between energized components and ground. Breaker manufacturer's literature typically recommends that an AC dielectric withstand test should be conducted on a circuit breaker before initially placing it into service, after repairs, and on a periodic basis as part of a maintenance inspection. There are several ways for conducting a dielectric withstand test. The method outlined in ANSI/IEEE standard C37.50-2000, recommends that with the circuit breaker in open position, apply the desired test voltage to (1) all upper and lower primary terminals (six breaker bushings) with respect to the metal parts (frame or ground), (2) all primary terminals with respect to the secondary terminals, and (3) all upper primary terminals with respect to all lower terminals of the breaker. The test procedure is similar to the procedure for conducting insulation resistance measurement test. Refer to Sections 2.6 and 7.4 for test method and connections.

8.7.2.3 Inspections Procedure

To conduct maintenance and inspection, withdraw the circuit breaker from its enclosure and perform the following:

- Inspect alignment of movable and stationary contacts. Make adjustments as recommended in manufacturer's book. Do not unnecessarily file butt-type contacts. Silver-plated contacts should never be filed, if these contacts are in degraded condition they should be replaced.
- Wipe bushings, barriers, and insulating parts. Remove dust, smoke, and deposits.
- Check arc chutes for damage and blow-out dust (refer to Section 8.7.2.1.6 regarding arc chutes containing asbestos). Replace damaged, cracked, or broken arc chutes.
- Refer to Section 8.7.2 for inspection of breaker-operating mechanism for broken, loose, or excessively worn parts. Clean and relubricate operating mechanism with light machine oil. Use nonhardening grease for lubrication of rollers, cams, latches, and the like. Adjust breaker operating mechanism if required.
- Check control devices and replace if needed. Also replace badly worn contacts.
- Check breaker control wiring and ensure that all connections are tight.
- Operate breaker in fully opened and closed positions after it has been serviced. Check for any binding, and operate breaker manually and electrically before putting back in service.
- Check other items, such as switches, relays, and instruments, during servicing of the breaker.

8.7.3 MCCBs

The maintenance of molded-case breakers consists of inspection of the breaker, its mounting, electrical connections, and electrical tests. The reader is referred to NEMA standard publication AB-4-2003, Guidelines for Inspection and Preventive Maintenance of Molded Case Circuit Breakers Used in Commercial and Industrial Applications, for more detail list on preventive maintenance of MCCB. Similar to the low-voltage power circuit breakers, the maintenance of MCCB can be addressed as mechanical and electrical factors. The following steps are recommended as a guide:

8.7.3.1 Mechanical Factors

8.7.3.1.1 Repair or Replacement of UL Listed Components

The majority of MCCBs have labels (paper sticker or silver-white stencil) that identify them as being listed or approved for use in a listed assembly by the UL. For listed or approved breakers, the kinds of repairs or component replacements that can be made by the user are limited. The presence of a paper label that would have to be broken to remove a cover or mounting screw of a breaker is an indication that no components under that label can be replaced or repaired without making the breaker's UL listing or approval void. This UL label is not the same as the factory warranty label that might also be present.

A hard putty sealant over any screw head has the same function. The basic set of components that can be replaced by the user typically includes replaceable types of terminals (including lugs), replaceable types of trip devices, and rating plugs. Some manufacturers and independent service organizations offer repair services that include a revalidation of the UL labeling. MCCBs that are not labeled have a greater variety of internal components that can be replaced.

Any component of a UL-listed panelboard or motor starter must be replaced with a component of the same manufacturer and same type.

8.7.3.1.2 Replacement Circuit Breakers

A replacement circuit breaker is a MCCB that is manufactured specifically to fit into an obsolete style electrical assembly without the need to physically or electrically modify the assembly. It is not permissible to install a replacement circuit breaker into a newly constructed assembly.

8.7.3.1.3 Replacement of an Automatic Trip Device or Rating Plug

Some MCCBs have a replaceable automatic trip device (thermal-magnetic types) or a replaceable rating plug (solid-state types). The ability to replace trip devices provides a flexible system for the application of circuit breakers according to National Electrical Code. An additional benefit is the ability to replace an automatic trip device that has become defective. Most MCCBs have built-in safeguards that prevents the installation of a trip device whose continuous-current rating is greater than the continuous-current rating of the breaker's frame.

8.7.3.1.4 Tightening of Connectors

The compression screws of the terminals (lugs) or bus connectors of a MCCB should be tightened periodically. Any terminal kit of recent manufacture is supplied with a paper label that lists the appropriate lb-ft or Newton-meter values of torque for each compression screw. This label has an adhesive back and is intended to be affixed onto the inside of the sheet metal cover of the compartment in which the circuit breaker is installed. Compression screws and mounting bolts are not intended to be tightened while a circuit breaker is energized.

8.7.3.1.5 Periodic Exercising

A MCCB must be operated open and closed with sufficient frequency to ensure that its main contacts are cleaned by wiping action and that the lubrication materials within its mechanism remain evenly spread. For any circuit breaker that is not operated in its normal service, a periodic open–close exercise should be implemented. Most of the failures and/or malfunction of MCCBs are due to lack of exercise of the operating mechanism.

8.7.3.1.6 Mechanical Operation

Before making any electrical connections, the circuit breaker should be checked by manually turning the breaker on and off several times. This check is to ensure that all mechanical linkages are operating.

8.7.3.1.7 Connection Test

This is a visual test that is conducted to assure that there is no overheating and/or that arcing is present in the electrical joints. An infrared (IR) gun may also be used to spot heated joints instead of visual observation. If signs of arcing or excessive heating are present, the connections should be removed and thoroughly cleaned. Also, during installation, proper attention should be given to electrical connections to minimize damage to the aluminum lugs and conductors.

8.7.3.2 Electrical Factors

8.7.3.2.1 Insulation Resistance Measurement Test

This test is made to verify the condition of the insulation of the circuit breaker. A minimum of 1000 V test voltage should be used for low-voltage (600 V class) breakers for making this test. It would be preferable to use a DC test voltage that is at least 1.5–1.6 times the peak AC voltage of the circuit breaker. Tests should be made between pole to ground, between adjacent poles with circuit breaker contacts closed, and between phase-to-load terminal with breaker in open position. A minimum value of 1 MΩ is considered safe to prevent a flashover. Resistance values below 1 MΩ should be investigated for possible trouble.

8.7.3.2.2 Millivolt Drop Test (Contact Resistance)

This is the primary circuit resistance test that was discussed in Section 8.7.2 for low-voltage power circuit breakers. This test consists of applying a DC across the closed circuit breaker contacts and measuring the voltage drop due to the contact resistance. Excessive voltage drop indicates abnormal conditions such as contact and/or connection erosion and contamination. This test is similar to the circuit breaker contact resistance measurement test described in Section 7.4.5 for medium-voltage breakers. The manufacturers of MCCBs should be consulted in order to find the acceptable millivolt drop values for particular breakers being tested. It is recommended that large breakers be tested with DC of at least 100 A and smaller breakers be tested at rated (or below rated) currents. The measured values should be compared among three phases of the breaker under test, or with values of breakers of similar size or with manufacturer's recommended values to assess whether the contacts need to be replaced or dressed.

8.7.3.2.3 AC Dielectric Withstand Tests

This is the same test that was discussed in Section 8.7.2.2 for low-voltage power circuit breakers. This is a hi-pot test, and conducted to detect a gross failure of an insulation, the presence of a foreign object within an insulation system, or insufficient clearance between energized components and ground. This test maybe conducted to verify the MCCB withstand voltage capability.

8.7.3.3 Inspections Procedure

To conduct maintenance and inspection of MCCB, perform the following:

- Clean all external contamination to permit internal heat dissipation.
- Inspect all surfaces for cracks or damage.
- Check for loose connections, and tighten circuit breaker terminals and bus bar connections. Use the manufacturer's recommended torque values.
- Manually switch on and off the breaker in order to exercise the mechanism.
- Check for high-humidity conditions since high humidity will deteriorate the insulation system.
- Check for hot spots typically caused by overheating due to termination or connections being loose, high contact resistance, or inadequate ventilation.

8.7.4 Switchgear Enclosure

The following steps are recommended for servicing the switchgear enclosure, in addition to the maintenance recommendations made under medium-voltage switchgear:

- Turn power off and ground the bus. All dust and dirt should be vacuumed from the switchgear enclosure and components. Wipe clean buses, insulators, cables, and the like.
- Inspect bus work and disconnect for overheating. Tighten all mounting and splice bolts. Examine all connections for tightness.
- Check for alignment and seating of contacts of disconnecting devices. Look for abnormal wear or damage.
- Clean and lubricate draw-out mechanism. Check operation of shutters, interlocks, and auxiliary devices.
- Clean ventilating openings and filters.
- After servicing, perform an insulation resistance test from phase to ground on each bus. Compare the results with previous tests to see any weakening tendency.
- Refinish damaged paint surfaces.

8.7.5 Air Disconnect Switches, Fuses, and Insulators

The low-voltage class electrical distribution system is comprised of equipment such as disconnects, fuses, insulators, lightning arresters, in addition to transformers, circuit breakers, and the like. The recommended frequency for maintenance of electrical equipment is a function of environmental conditions.

The frequency of maintenance for equipment in dirty, wet, and corrosive environments will always be more frequent than for equipment in clean areas. A general guide for maintaining this equipment is given in the following section.

8.7.5.1 Air Disconnect Switches

Air disconnect switches come in many varieties and ratings. The disconnect switches are normally not de-energized during routine maintenance of substations and therefore should be approached with caution. Also, service disconnect switches are seldom operated. However, the interrupter switches are specifically designed for making and breaking specified current. The function of the interrupter switch is similar to the circuit breaker, and the maintenance of this switch should be similar to the procedures listed under power circuit breakers.

The air disconnect switch should be inspected and maintained as follows:

- Close the switch several times to ensure the simultaneous closing of the blades and complete seating of the contacts. Check to see if the closing latch is in the fully closed position. Make adjustments if required in accordance with the instruction manual.
- Inspect the contacts for burns, pitting, pressure, and alignment. Also inspect arcing horns for excessive burn marks. If the contacts show minor damage, dress the contact surface with smooth sandpaper. Badly burned contacts and arcing horns should be replaced.
- Inspect the linkages and operating rod for bending or distortion.
- Check all safety interlocks for proper operation.
- Check for any abnormal conditions such as insulation cracks, chemical deposits if the switch is installed in a corrosive environment, flexible braids, and slip ring contacts.
- Perform special inspection and maintenance when the switch has carried heavy short-circuit current.

8.7.5.2 Power Fuses

The application of power fuses in electrical distribution system is quite common. There are many classes of fuses, such as current limiting or non-current limiting with various time–current characteristics, silver sand, liquid filled, or vented expulsion type. The frequency of fuse inspection and maintenance must be determined depending upon the environmental conditions of fuse location. Before fuses are removed or installed, de-energize the fuse holders (i.e., the total fuse assembly is disconnected from the power source). The following general procedures are suggested for inspection and maintenance of power fuses.

- Inspect the fuse unit and renewable element (if the fuse is a renewable type) for corrosion, tracking, and dirt. Replace those units that indicate deteriorated condition.
- Inspect for dirt, dust, salt deposits, and the like, on insulators for the holders to prevent flashover. Also look for cracks or burn marks on insulators.
- Inspect the seal on the expulsion chamber for vented expulsion-type fuses to ensure that no moisture has entered the interrupting chamber of the fuse.
- Check for any missing or damaged hardware, such as nuts, bolts, washers, and pins.
- Clean and polish contact surfaces of clips and fuse terminals that are corroded or oxidized.
- Tighten all loose connections and check to see if the fuse clips exert sufficient pressure to maintain good contact.
- Generally fuses that show signs of deterioration, such as loose connections, discoloration, or damaged casing, should be replaced.

8.7.5.3 Insulators

Insulators are used in all switchgear assemblies and equipment. Insulators separate the current-carrying parts from noncurrent-carrying parts. The integrity of insulators is therefore very important. The following procedures are recommended for maintaining insulators.

- Inspect insulators for physical damage such as cracks or broken parts. Replace those parts that have incurred damage.
- Inspect insulators for surface contamination such as dirt, grime, and dust. Wipe clean all contaminated insulators.
- Check for all hardware to ensure that the insulators mounting assembly is tight.

8.8 Maintenance and Testing of Low-Voltage Protective Devices

Low-voltage protective devices consist of protective devices for low-voltage MCCBs, insulated case circuit breakers, draw-out power circuit breakers, overload relays, and ground fault protective (GFP) devices. The protective devices are integral parts of the circuit breakers, and motor starters and their maintenance and testing should be coordinated with the maintenance of the circuit breakers, motor starters, and switchgear assemblies. Low-voltage protective devices are classified as low-voltage power circuit breaker trips, MCCB trips, overload relays, and ground fault sensing and relaying equipment.

8.8.1 Power Circuit Breaker Overcurrent Trip Devices

Protective devices for power circuit breakers consist of electromechanical type and solid-state (electronic) types. The routine maintenance tests for these breaker overcurrent trip devices comprise of testing overcurrent trip units, insulation integrity, and quality of contacts.

8.8.1.1 Overcurrent Trip Units

8.8.1.1.1 Electromechanical Trips

These are hermetically sealed units that provide time-delay and INST overcurrent protection. The maintenance and testing of these devices involve checking the operation of the trip device and evaluating their trip characteristics. Before any field tests are made, the tester should be thoroughly familiar with the operating and maintenance procedures of these devices. He should also check that the breaker mechanism and trip latch are properly functioning. Ensure that the breaker is de-energized and perform the following maintenance and tests:

Mechanical check: Perform a mechanical check on the trip device to assure a successful tripping operating just before the armature reaches its fully closed air gap position. Consult the manufacturer's information on the unit under test for conducting this check. Also assure that the time-delay escapement is operative. Visually check for missing hardware, evidence of leaking oil, and cracked trip paddles. Use manufacturers' manuals for cleaning methods for trip units.

Overcurrent test: The purpose of this test is to determine that the trip device will open the circuit breaker to which it is applied. This test can usually be performed by injecting 150%–300% current of the coil rating into the trip coil. The test equipment used should be able to produce the required current and be reasonably sinusoidal. Two low-voltage AC test sets, one capable of testing small size breakers and the other large frame breakers, are shown in Figures 8.4 and 8.5. The following test procedure is offered as a general guide.

- Connect the test set to the upper and lower studs of one pole of the breaker. Set the LTD trip unit at 100% setting. Close the breaker and adjust the current of the test set to the desired value (i.e., 150%–300%) required for the particular trip device. Consult the manufacturers' recommendations for exact values of the test current value.
- Shut off the test set and allow the trip device to reset. After the trip device has reset, again apply the current to it until it trips. Record the trip time and trip current.
- If repeat tests are required, allow the device to cool sufficiently between each test.
- Compare the trip time measured at the test current values with the manufacturer's curve for the trip device being tested. Make adjustments to bring the trip device within factory trip curve values. However, do not exceed adjustable ranges of the trip unit when making field adjustments.

FIGURE 8.4
Low-voltage AC high current injection test set, Programma Model Oden At, capable of producing 20,000 A and testing up to 1600 AF breakers. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

FIGURE 8.5
Low-voltage AC high current injection test set, Model DDA 6000, capable of producing 100,000 A and testing up to 6000 AF breakers. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

In view of the wide variation in test conditions between field tests and factory tests, it will be difficult to duplicate the factory trip curves. Judgment should be used when evaluating the test data as to whether the trip unit is functioning within specified limits. The STD and INST tripping units may be tested similarly. The setting of these units should not be indiscriminately changed because the protection provided by these units may be compromised.

8.8.1.1.2 Solid-State Trip Units

The field testing and calibration of solid-state trip units can be performed by either primary current injection method or secondary current injection method.

Primary current injection tests

The primary current injection method is usually preferred because it is expected that this method verifies the current sensors, wiring, and the current conduction path in the breaker. However, this method has a shortcoming in that it will not detect sensor wiring and polarity problems. This is because the primary injection test is conducted on one phase of the breaker at a time, whereas the solid-state trip logic of the breaker works on processing the signals from the three-phase sensors simultaneously. In order to identify sensor- and wiring-related problems, it is recommended that the primary current injection test be conducted simultaneously on all three phases when testing breakers with solid-state trip units. If three-phase primary injection test cannot be conducted, then it is recommended that the sensors and wiring of the breaker be tested separately to ensure that these components are working properly.

The correct functioning of the trip devices of low-voltage power circuit breakers can be tested using primary current injection as discussed above. However, because primary current injection testing is a relatively expensive service, it is usually performed only on circuit breakers that are components of a critical process or engineered safety system. Circuit breakers that have thermal-magnetic or electropneumatic trip devices are more likely to be tested using primary current injection because it is the only means available for verifying their correct functioning. Circuit breakers that have solid-state trip systems can be tested using secondary current injection, which is less expensive and uses less time to perform the test. Since, secondary current injection test cannot verify the correct functioning of the current sensors of a solid-state trip system, primary current injection is used during commissioning (start-up) to supplement a program of periodic secondary-current testing. The method of primary current injection testing is to make a programmed sequence of overload and fault magnitude currents flow in a circuit breaker and measure the periods of time that are required for the trip device to activate. When these tests are performed at a factory or repair facility, current is injected into all three poles of a circuit breaker at the same time. Start-up and maintenance tests are performed using a primary current injection test set that is specifically designed to be lighter in weight and more portable than factory test equipment. Consequently, this portable test set has insufficient capacity, in most cases, to inject current into all three interrupters of a circuit breaker simultaneously. Because of this shortcoming and other factors that make field testing generally less accurate than factory testing, single-pole testing of low-voltage circuit breakers is almost universally accepted as a reasonable compromise. A complete description of the methods and interpretation of field testing of MCCBs can be found in NEMA standard AB-4-2003. The test set has a built-in high-current transformer that supplies the simulated overload or fault current. Test sets are built with current ratings ranging from 500 to 100,000 A.

Secondary current injection
The secondary current injection test of solid-state units can be performed by a specially designed power supply unit. It should be noted that the secondary current injection method only tests the solid-state trip unit logic and components, and does not test the current sensors, wiring, or the breaker's current-carrying components as is done during primary current injection method. Therefore, in this respect the primary current injection test method is superior to the secondary current injection method. Most solid-state trip units have terminal blocks that are equipped with test plug terminals for making the calibration test. The test set allows checking of the solid-state trip unit operation without using primary current method. The test set will pass enough current to check any desired calibration point. The breaker must be disconnected from the bus before checking the operation of the solid-state trip units. If the test set shows that the solid-state trip unit is not functioning properly, the trip unit should be replaced and the defective unit returned to the manufacturer for repairs. It is recommended that the reader refer to the instructions of a particular secondary current injection test set for operating procedures.

Secondary current injection tests are performed for the same reason as primary current injection current tests, i.e., to verify the correct functioning of breaker trip devices during startup inspections or maintenance inspections. Secondary current tests can be performed on the solid-state trip and electronic trip devices as follows:

Using the self-test facilities of solid-state trip devices: Solid-state trip devices and protective relays of recent manufacture contain built-in self-test facilities. Typically, a self-test can be conducted in two different modes:

1. *No-trip mode:* The trip functions of the solid-state electronic trip device can be tested, but the trip device will not send a trip signal to the circuit breaker's trip actuator. Because a no-trip test will not cause the circuit breaker interrupters to open, it can be performed while the circuit breaker is energized (i.e., carrying load current).
2. *Trip mode:* The functions of the solid-state electronic circuit are tested in the same way as in a no-trip mode test, but the trip device will send a trip signal to the circuit breaker's trip actuator. Because a trip test will open a circuit breaker, it is typically performed only when a circuit breaker is withdrawn from its compartment and therefore disconnected from the switchgear bus. For a circuit breaker

that cannot be withdrawn from its compartment, an interruption of power must be expected. Self-tests are easier to perform and can be performed more frequently. For example, no-trip tests can be performed monthly. A trip test is very useful for troubleshooting a suspected circuit breaker malfunction. Like secondary current injection tests, self-tests do not verify the correct functioning of the trip system's current sensors and the associated current wiring. Additionally, some of the internal components of the trip device that carry secondary current cannot be functionally tested. For these reasons, self-testing is occasionally supplemented with secondary current injection testing or primary current injection testing. Many modern solid-state trip devices continually execute a programmed sequence of self-diagnostic checks. A distinguishable change on the display panel of the trip device, such as the cessation of the flashing of a status lamp or the appearance of an alpha-numeric fault message is an indication of potential problems in the trip unit. Additionally, the trip device is able to communicate its alarm or fault condition via a built-in relay contact or digital communication system if such a feature is bought with the trip unit.

Functional tests of the electric controls: Before installing a new circuit breaker or returning it to service after a maintenance inspection, it should be installed in its test position in its compartment and operated closed and open electrically from as many control devices as practical. Checking the correct functioning of a circuit breaker's electric control verifies the integrity of control wiring, control components, and the source of control power. When a circuit breaker is in its test position in its compartment, closing its interrupters will not connect the associated load circuit with the switchgear's power source circuit. It should be noted that the functional testing described in this section may not be performed while personnel are performing work on electrical equipment that is connected to the breaker's load circuit.

8.8.2 Molded-Case Breaker Trips

MCCBs are low-voltage protective devices that are available in a wide range of sizes and ratings. They are used widely in the industry to provide a resettable circuit interrupting device. MCCBs have a good record of reliability when they are maintained and calibrated regularly and properly. A general guide on the field and verification testing of MCCBs is offered below. For a more detail discussion on the test procedures on MCCBs, the reader is referred to NEMA standard AB-4-2003, "Guidelines for inspection and preventive maintenance of molded case circuit breakers used in commercial and industrial applications." MCCBs having thermal-magnetic trips are tested with primary current injection method. Unlike other circuit breakers, the tolerances for minimum trip current values and trip times that are displayed on the time–current plots provided by the breaker's manufacturer cannot be accurately replicated using field test methods and field test equipment. For this reason, NEMA standards publication AB-4-2003 should be used as a guide for field testing of MCCBs.

MCCBs that have solid-state trip devices can be tested by secondary current injection using a test set made specifically for this purpose by the breaker's manufacturer, or primary current injection method. The primary current injection method for testing MCCBs is described in more detail in the following sections.

8.8.2.1 Protective Trip Testing

The testing of protective trips involves the calibration of overload (thermal) and magnetic overcurrent trips to verify that the trip units are functioning as expected and open the circuit breaker automatically. This is important from the viewpoint of protection and system selectivity.

8.8.2.1.1 Overload (Thermal Element) Test

The overload trip characteristics (i.e., time–current relationship) can be verified by selecting a certain percentage of breaker current rating, such as 300%, and applying this current to each pole of the circuit breaker to determine if the breaker will open in accordance with the manufacturer's specified time. The obvious goal is to see if the circuit breaker will automatically open and, further, to see if it opens within the minimum and maximum range of operating time bands. For example, ANSI/IEEE standard 242-2001, Section 15.3 specifies a test tolerance of –15% for the minimum operating time band and +15% for the maximum operating time band.

For specific values of operating times, refer to the manufacturer's manual for breakers under test. The evaluation of test results is based upon the following:

Minimum trip times: If the minimum tripping times are lower than indicated by the manufacturer's published data plus –15% for the breaker under test, the breaker should be retested after it has been cooled to 25°C. If the values obtained are still lower after retest, the breaker manufacturer should be consulted before reenergizing.

Maximum tripping time: If trip time of the breaker exceeds the maximum tripping time as indicated in the manufacturer's published data plus +15% for the breaker under test, recheck the test procedure and conditions (as shown under verification testing), and retest. If the test still indicates higher values than maximum tripping, further check the breaker for maximum allowable tripping time.

Maximum allowable tripping time: If the breaker does not trip within the allowable maximum time, the breaker should be replaced. However, if the breaker tripping time is below the maximum allowable but higher than the maximum tripping time, the breaker should be checked to see if it is below the tripping time for cable damage. If so, the breaker is providing an acceptable level of precaution.

8.8.2.1.2 INST (Magnetic) Test

The magnetic (INST) trip should be checked by selecting suitable current to ensure that the breaker magnetic feature is working. The difficulty in conducting this test is the availability of obtaining the required high value of test current. Again, to verify the breaker trip characteristics, precise control of test conditions is necessary; otherwise, different test results will be obtained. Moreover, due to large values of test current, the trip characteristics of the breaker can be influenced by stray magnetic fields. Also, the current wave shape can influence the test results. Therefore, when conducting this test, stray magnetic fields should be minimized and true sinusoidal test wave shape should be used. The magnetic trip unit may be tested as follows:

In the run-up method, one pole of the breaker is connected to the test equipment and approximately 70% of the tripping current is injected into the breaker gradually until the breaker trips. The injection of current into the breaker has to be done skillfully so that it is neither too slow nor too fast. If the injection of current is too slow, the breaker may trip owing to the thermal effect and not provide a true value of tripping current. Whereas if the current is injected too quickly, the meter reading will lag the actual current owing to damping of the meter and thus provide an erroneous test result. It is very difficult to obtain true test results from this test.

The pulse method requires equipment with a pointer stop ammeter or an image-retaining oscilloscope. This method is generally considered more accurate than the run-up method. The current to the circuit breaker under test is applied in short pulses of 5- to 10-cycle duration until the breaker trips. The current is then reduced just below this value, and the pointer stop on the ammeter is adjusted by repeated pulses until the pointer movement is barely noticeable. The current is then raised slightly and the tripping value of current rechecked. One disadvantage of this test is that it is subject to DC offset when conducted in the field. The DC offset may be as high as 20%, and therefore the tripping current indicated by the ammeter may be 20% lower.

Because of the inherent errors in the field testing of protective trips, test results may vary from the manufacturer's published values. Therefore, the main thrust of any field testing of molded-case breakers should be to ensure, first, that the breaker is functional and, second, that its trip characteristics are within the range of values for that particular type of circuit breaker. NEMA AB-4-2003 provides recommended tolerances for testing INST trip units in the field. These tolerances are summarized in Table 8.7.

8.8.2.2 Verification Testing

The verification testing of MCCBs in the field is intended to check the circuit breaker performance against manufacturer's published test data. When performing field verification testing of MCCBs the important issue is how field testing is conducted compared to the testing done at the factory to develop the MCCB time–current curves. All low-voltage MCCBs that are UL listed are tested in accordance with UL standard 489 and NEMA AB-1.

TABLE 8.7
INST Trip Tolerances

		Trip Tolerance	
Type of INST Trip	**Breaker Rating (A)**	**High Setting and Other Settings (%)**	**Low Setting (%)**
Adjustable	250	+40	+40
		−25	−30
	>250	+25	+30
		−25	−30
Nonadjustable	All		+40
			−30

The following is a summary of conditions under which the manufacturers and UL calibration tests are conducted to obtain the trip–time curves.

- Time–current curves are based on 40°C ambient temperature
- Time–current curves are based on current flowing in all three poles
- Circuit breakers are tested in open air
- Trip values of circuit breaker are measured from cold start
- Calibration tests are made with UL specified size conductors connected to line and load terminals
- Current must be held constant without variation over the entire test period
- Rated maximum interrupting current for testing magnetic trip is 5000 A or more
- Current intended for testing the MCCBs shall be essentially sinusoidal and of symmetrical waveform

When performing verification testing in the field, the conditions as stated in UL standard 489 and NEMA AB-1 must be simplified. But the simplified testing must recognize the differences in testing results that are obtained for various test setups in the field. Attempting to reproduce laboratory test conditions in the field can be expensive and difficult to achieve. The overload trip test performed at 300% current should confirm that the breaker trips within the tolerances shown in the time delay region plus some tolerances to account for the differences between the field and factory test conditions. The INST trip test should demonstrate that the breaker will trip before the high end limit of the INST trip is reached, and will not trip prematurely before the low end of the INST trip range. In other words, the breaker should trip somewhere within the expected band which is comprised of lower limit and upper limit of breaker time–current curves. The INST trip test is prone to significant variation and duplicating the manufacturer's curves may not be straightforward process. If the data measured under the verification tests vary significantly for the INST trip, the test conditions must be verified or the manufacturer should be consulted before discarding the breaker.

8.8.3 Overload Relays

Overload relays usually found in motor starters or other low-voltage applications require the same attention and calibration as do low-voltage circuit breaker trips. Overload relays should be given an overcurrent test to determine that the overloads will open the starter contacts to provide protection to the motor at its overload pickup value. These test procedures are similar to the test conducted for low-voltage circuit breakers, except that the current injected into the overload relay should be limited to 350% or less. The frequency for testing and calibration should be checked to assure that it is selected properly. In addition, the trip setting of the relay should be evaluated to account for any ambient variations between motor location and starter location. A motor overload test set is shown in Figure 8.6.

8.8.4 Testing of Ground Fault Sensing and Relaying Equipment

Ground fault sensing and relaying equipment is covered by UL standard 1053. It classifies ground fault protection into class I and class II. Class I

FIGURE 8.6
A motor overload test set, Model MS-2, capable of producing 750 A. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

ground fault protection is intended to be used with disconnecting devices at high levels of fault current, whereas class II ground fault protection is used with disconnecting devices with limited interrupting current capacity. This testing application guidance is directed toward class I ground fault relaying.

In accordance with NEMA Publication PB2.2-2004 (*Application Guide for Ground Fault Protective Device and Equipment*), manufacturers are required to perform design and production tests. The design tests include calibration, temperature rise, overvoltage, overload, dielectric withstand, endurance, and the like. The production tests are conducted to determine if calibration settings are within performance limits, control circuits are working properly, and current sensors have correct turns ratio. The field testing of GFP relaying equipment is discussed in the following section.

8.8.4.1 Preparation for Fielding Training

- Review the electrical drawings for the power system, as well as the manufacturer equipment drawings, to ensure that ground fault equipment is installed as designed.
- With the power off, remove the disconnect link on the switchboard to isolate the neutral of the wiring system from both supply and ground. Measure the insulation resistance of the neutral to ground with the main disconnect open to ensure that no ground connections exist downstream of the GFP devices being checked. For a dual fed (double-ended) power system, remove all the disconnect links to isolate the neutral from both the supply and ground before measuring the insulation resistance.
- Visually inspect the wiring system to confirm there is an adequate grounding connection at the service equipment upstream of any ground fault sensor, and that the neutral connection is run from the supply transformer to the service equipment in accordance with the National Electric Code. Where dual power sources are involved, confirm that the main grounding connection at the service equipment is in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- Once these steps have been accomplished, return all neutral and ground connections to their normal intended operating condition.

8.8.4.2 Field Testing

- Field testing should be limited to only those tests that are necessary to determine that the installation is correct and the ground fault protection system is operational. Because of the many variables involved, field testing cannot be considered as an accurate check of the calibration of any sensing relay. Field test current sources can introduce errors owing to nonsinusoidal wave shapes, power source regulation problems, and metering accuracy. In addition, timing measurements often include additional delay times owing to the use of auxiliary relays and timers. Field testing should be limited to a go/no-go type of testing, which confirms the serviceability of the system involved.

- Before field testing is initiated on any ground fault sensing and relaying equipment, the manufacturer's installation and instruction literature should be reviewed and understood. The manufacturer's field test recommendations should be followed. Although some manufacturer's test setups may be difficult to perform in the field, the configuration is very important in order to obtain good results. If a particular device is self-powered, considerable current (100–700 A for a 4000 A device) may be required to activate it. This is especially true where multiple sensors are being used in a vector summation scheme. It should not be assumed that inducing current on a ground return or neutral sensor alone will be sufficient to activate the device and get accurate time–current characteristics. This practice can lead to finding a device defective when nothing is actually wrong with it. However, as noted below, there are systems that use external control power for which this practice is acceptable.
- Ground fault sensing and relaying equipment utilizing either ground return or vectorial summation sensing methods can be checked in the field by passing a measured test current directly through the sensing transformer or test windings. To confirm the proper functioning of the equipment while it is installed in the switchboard or panelboard. The following tests can be performed.

Simulated ground fault test using sensors without built-in test windings

- Turn off all power to the switchboard section or panelboard. Set the relay to its minimum current setting.
- Loop a test coil of wire having sufficient current-carrying capacity through the sensor window. Prefabricated multiturn test cables may be used for convenience.
- Provide control power only and close the disconnect associated with the GFP device being tested.
- Apply sufficient test current so that the ampere turns of the test winding numerically equal or exceed 125% of the relay current setting. The relay should trip the disconnect. Immediately return the test current to zero.
- Turn off all power, remove the test winding, and restore all equipment to the operating condition.
- Reset the relay to the predetermined setting, reestablish control power, and turn on main power as needed.

Simulated ground fault test using sensors with integral (built-in) test windings
A go/no-go test for the proper tripping of the GFP devices and the interconnections between the sensor, the relay, and the disconnect mechanism can be made by following manufacturer's test instructions. The manufacturer usually provides for a test current >125% of the maximum current setting, so a test can be made anytime without disturbing the current settings. If there is any question concerning the ability of the GFP device to operate at its minimum setting and for low ground fault currents, a test as described in simulated ground fault tests using sensors without built-in test windings can be made immediately following installation. Periodic tests using the manufacturer's test circuit should be adequate after installation.

Equipment with built-in test circuitry but without a built-in test winding
Following installation, the GFP devices should be tested in accordance with "Simulated ground fault test using sensors without built-in test windings" to confirm that sensors and interconnections to the ground fault relay are functioning. Thereafter, the manufacturer's test circuit can be used to check the operation of the GFP relay and the tripping circuitry.

Test buttons and indicators
Operate test buttons to check the functions described in the manufacturer's instructions. Pilot lights and other indicators should signal ground-fault tripping or other functions as described in the manufacturer's instructions.

Zone selective interlocking function
The manufacturer should be consulted for specific instructions when this test is to be performed in the field.

8.9 Uninterruptible Power Supply Commissioning and Testing

8.9.1 Background

It cannot be guaranteed that an electrical power supply that is free from voltage and frequency variations is going to be available during all times. The occurrence of faults or other electrical anomalies in the users' installations or in the utility distribution system is undeniable and unpredictable. Since data centers for information technology (IT) and other high-technology companies' installations are particularly sensitive to power supply fluctuations and distortions, they typically rely on an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) for clean power and as well as for backup or standby power. Some installations even include a second UPS supplied by a separate feeder, and a standby generator that can be set to start automatically few minutes after detecting a power interruption. If the risk from weather or other local occurrences is great enough, some facilities will manually switch

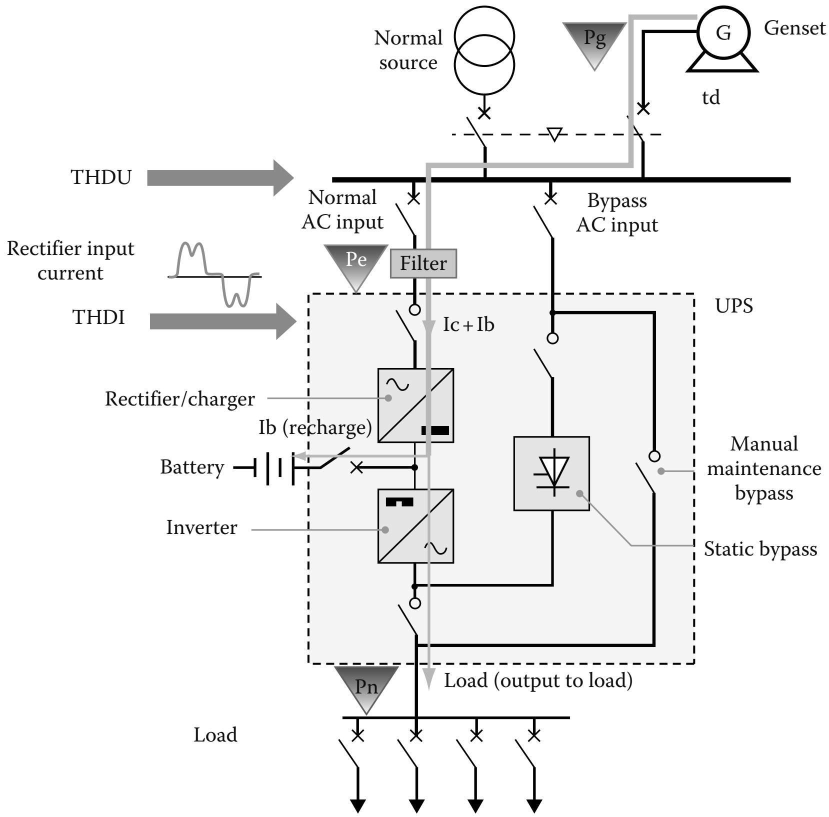


FIGURE 8.7
System configuration diagram for a UPS-standby generator combination.

over to backup generation, ahead of time. Figure 8.7 illustrates a typical UPS-standby generator system configuration for supplying backup power to critical installations. To assure that the UPS system will function as designed, the following tests should be performed during installation and then periodically (monthly or quarterly, depending on contractual agreements) after the system is commissioned. Tests during installation phase are divided into two stages:

1. Preinstallation (or commissioning)—test before connecting the critical loads
2. Combined—connect critical loads and test while cutting standby generator in and out

8.9.2 Preinstallation Checks and Tests

UPS functional and alarms tests: The purpose of this test is to check the UPS functionality, LED display, and alarm messages.

TABLE 8.8

Unbalanced Load Testing Sequence

Sequence	Phase 1 (%)	Phase 2 (%)	Phase 3 (%)
1	100	100	0
2	0	0	100
3	100	50	100
4	50	100	50

UPS specification test: The purpose of this test is to check the UPS specifications to ensure that the installed equipment meets the hardware and functional requirements. Perform the test using two three-phase power analyzer instruments, such Fluke 435s, or equal. The procedure is outlined as follows: record voltage, current, real power, apparent power, power factor, voltage, and current total harmonic distortion (THD) at both the input and output. Vary the loads from 0% to 100% in 25% steps for balanced load testing. For unbalanced load testing, follow the load matrix shown in Table 8.8.

UPS burn-in test: The purpose of this is to verify that the UPS system can operate at the rated load under ambient room temperature conditions.

Procedure: Load the UPS to rated load and operate for 8–24 h, depending on contractual requirements. Monitor phase currents, voltages, power, and attributes mentioned earlier including the temperature.

UPS step load and bypass loss transient tests: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the transient response of the UPS module. During this test, the three phase voltage should remain stable and not vary much despite the changes in load current. Record data and compare against specification for deviations.

Procedure: Measure UPS transient response for

1. 0% to 100% to 0% load steps
2. 0% to 50% to 0% load steps
3. 50% to 100% to 50% load steps
4. UPS running with loss of bypass mains

UPS start and stop test: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the correct operation when the UPS is switched on and off with full load.

Procedure: With the module running at 50% and 100% load, switch the inverter OFF and ON. Record transients, load voltage, load current, mains 2 current, and mains 1 current.

UPS full load battery discharge test: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the correct UPS operation for the time duration of the UPS batteries (such as 15 min) at full load during a power failure.

Procedure: Measure battery cells before and after discharge using a battery monitoring system.

UPS loss and return of mains test: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the correct operation during loss and return of the mains.

Procedure: Run module at normal load and switch the UPS main input ON and OFF. Record transients, load voltage, load current, and mains 1 current.

UPS loss and return of battery test: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the correct operation during loss and return of UPS batteries.

Procedure*:* Run module at normal load and switch the UPS main battery breaker ON and OFF. Record transients, load voltage, load current, and mains 1 current.

UPS load transfer test: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the correct operation during load transfer.

Procedure*:* Run module at normal load and switch UPS OFF and ON until the load is on static bypass. This procedure is reversed from static bypass to UPS. Record load voltage, load current, and bypass current.

UPS transfer to bypass and back test: The purpose of this test is to demonstrate the correct operation with external bypass.

Procedure*:* Transfer the load to external bypass and back to UPS. Record load voltage and load current.

8.9.3 Combined Test (UPS with the Generator)

Connect the critical loads and standby generator and repeat the same tests discussed above at 0% and 100% load conditions. Monitor transfer between the mains supply, UPS, and standby generator to ensure that transients and waveform distortion stays within acceptable limits.

8.9.4 Maintenance Test

Conduct periodic (monthly) maintenance tests throughout the life of the UPS-generator power supply system. Follow the combined test procedure for everything except the standby generator—it may not need to be tested as frequently as the other components of the UPS system including its battery system.

8.9.4.1 UPS Battery System

In a critical power system, knowing and understanding the condition of a stationary battery is important. Inspection and testing of the battery system should be undertaken to assess the following:

- Interconnection integrity
- State of charge
- The overall correctness of the installation
- Benchmark values for comparison to future tests
- Data to aid troubleshooting when performance is less than designed or anticipated

If basic information is not collected, analyzed, and understood before initial charging and dynamic testing, the results are unpredictable. There is a very real possibility that the battery could suffer damage if a major problem is not diagnosed in advance. Some possible consequences are

- Terminal failure due to loose connections
- Reduced capacity due to incomplete state of charge
- Damaged cells due to incorrect polarity orientation
- High connection resistance due to incorrectly prepared mating surfaces
- Schedule delays and extra costs to replace or repair damaged items

A correctly performed inspection, therefore, is very important for assuring battery reliability.

8.9.4.1.1 Battery System Inspection

The procedures, processes, and methods discussed here focus on the vented lead–acid stationary battery installed on racks. The smaller valve-regulated lead–acid (VRLA) batteries normally installed in cabinets may be inspected in the similar manner. Battery system installation inspections can be performed by the installing contractor, by a third-party battery service provider or by the battery manufacturer's authorized representatives. The completed inspection report should be available to those responsible for the battery and thoroughly reviewed. Any necessary corrective action as a result of the inspection should be carried out before the battery receives its initial charge.

The inspection of the battery system is performed in three areas:

1. Mechanical inspection
2. Precharge electrical inspection
3. Electrochemical inspection prior to load testing

Mechanical inspection

These steps should be carried out prior to initial charging.

1. Check all rack hardware for tightness. This is best accomplished before racks are loaded with cells. Missing hardware should be replaced before racks are loaded. Never loosen hardware on a loaded rack because it may collapse.
2. Inspect the battery for general cleanliness. The battery should be free of spilled electrolyte, construction debris, heavy dirt, and excessive dust. Heavily soiled battery systems should be cleaned before being placed in service.
3. Inspect the rack rails and jar undersides for chemical residue. It has been observed that increasing numbers of installing contractors use

various compounds to lubricate the tops of the rails. This practice makes it easier to slide jars along the rails. Unfortunately, not all compounds react benignly with jar materials. Most oil-based products—even those as mild as cooking spray—react with jar materials. In one well-publicized case, a contractor used cable-pulling grease on the frame rails; within weeks, virtually all the jars were leaking. The first sign of such a reaction is the cracking and crazing of the plastic jar material. Generally, once a reaction is observed, the cell must be replaced. To avoid this situation, installers must be familiar with the battery makers' recommendations and use only compounds approved or recommended by them. To be on the safe side, many manufacturers recommend using plain water; it provides some amount of lubrication and evaporates afterward without leaving an oily residue.

4. All jars and covers should be examined for cracks and leaks. Leaking cells should be replaced at the earliest possible time. Leaking cells quickly contaminate racks. This can cause ground fault alarms to trip and present a safety hazard to service personnel.
5. All flame arrestors should be intact and installed securely. Batteries should never be charged unless all flame arrestors are properly installed. VRLA battery pressure relief valves should be in place and secure as well. The perimeter of the vent well and flame arrestor seal ring should be clean and dry before flame arrestors are installed. This will prevent electrolyte migration from inside the cell to outside the gasket area.
6. Check all intertier, interrack, and interaisle connecting cables for excessive stress on terminals, as evidenced by twisting and leaning of posts and terminals. Cable must not cause stress to these components. Corrective action is necessary when stress is observed.
7. A corrosion inhibiting compound is generally supplied with a battery and should be applied per manufacturer instructions. "No-Oxide A" grease is commonly used, although some manufacturers specify the use of other similar compounds. The primary function of these compounds is to seal the critical contact area from oxygen exposure, thereby slowing the corrosion process. This can increase the time intervals between costly system interconnection reworks. Proper contact surface preparation is very important.

Precharge electrical inspection

After the mechanical inspection is complete and prior to charging the battery, the following steps should be performed:

1. Verify that all cells are arranged in the proper series connection. A common installation error is interconnecting cells with like polarities.
2. Check all bolted interconnections for tightness to the proper value per manufacturer specifications. Errors have been observed to include

(a) an incorrect torque setting and (b) a wrench graduated in foot pounds instead of the more common inch-pounds unit of measure.

3. Establish a connection resistance benchmark. This is very important. It is recommended that a technician disassemble, clean, and remake several intercell connections at random. This will verify the effectiveness of the preparation method used by installation personnel. Average the sum of the readings of the specimen connections and use that value as the system benchmark. IEEE 484-2002, "IEEE recommended practice for installation design and installation of vented lead–acid batteries for stationary applications," recommends a 10% allowable upward deviation from the average. For example, a system whose intercell connection average value is 40 μΩ can tolerate a maximum of 44 μΩ. Reworking the connection usually reduces an out-of-tolerance resistance. This procedure should be conducted for intertier, interrack, and interaisle cable connections also. Only connections of the same geometry can be compared to one another.
4. After a resistance benchmark has been established, measure and record all interconnection resistances.
5. Reference the readings to the benchmark standards and make note of any connections requiring corrective action based on the acceptance criteria from item 3 above.
6. Measure and record total battery voltage at the open circuit potential. Divide that reading by number of cells in the string. The resulting per-cell value should be close to the calculated open circuit voltage (OCV) as given in Table 8.9. If the tasks above have been completed and meet the acceptance criteria, initial charging of the battery may then begin. Items that do not conform to the battery manufacturer or IEEE standards must be noted on the inspection report and corrected. Corrective action should be taken as soon as possible. The amount of time a battery requires to reach a fully charged state for testing is a function of several conditions:
   - Applied charging voltage
   - Ambient temperature

TABLE 8.9

Gravity versus OCV

Rated Gravity	OCV
1.170	2.010
1.215	2.055
1.225	2.065
1.250	2.090
1.275	2.115
1.300	2.140

- Battery state of charge prior to commissioning
- Physical size of the cells

The commissioning charge, also referred to as a freshening or initial charge should be determined based on the requirements and tolerances of both battery and the equipment to which it is connected. Determine the required applied voltage by multiplying the number of cells by the per-cell charge recommendations in the battery manufacturer operating instructions. This value must not exceed the charging system capability.

Electrochemical pretesting
In pretest, the following tasks should always be completed prior to load testing the battery system:

1. Before load tests can take place, the battery must be fully charged and the state of charge must be verified. This cannot be overemphasized. Generally, a battery is considered to be fully charged when the voltage of lowest cell in the string stops rising over three consecutive hourly readings while on equalize charge and the lowest specific gravity measurement is within the nominal rating by ±10 (0.010) specific gravity points. This can be used as a guideline during charging. Refer to the battery manufacturer's specific instructions for more detail.
2. Find the lowest cell and verify the state of charge as described above. If the cell voltage continues to rise with the next hourly reading, continue the equalize charge until it stops rising. When that cell voltage stops rising, the battery should then be returned to normal float status. Monitor cell temperature while on charge. Do not exceed the maximum allowable temperature or cells may be damaged.
3. IEEE 450-2002, "IEEE recommended practice for maintenance, testing, and replacement of vented lead–acid batteries for stationary applications," states a battery should receive an equalize charge and be returned to normal float potential for no less than 3 days, but not longer than 30 days prior to testing. This 3 day period will allow time for all the hydrogen gas bubbles (formed on the plates during equalize charging) to be released from the surface of the plates. Until all the bubbles are released, the full surface area of the plates is not available for chemical interaction with the electrolyte, and the battery could appear to have diminished capacity.
4. When items 2 and 3 are satisfied, measure and record the specific gravity of each cell in the battery just prior to the load test. If the gravity readings are within the manufacturer's recommended values, (usually ±10 points), they are considered acceptable. For specific details regarding allowable gravity values, refer to the battery manufacturer installation and operating instructions.
5. Measure and record the electrolyte temperature of every sixth cell, with not less than 10% of the total number of cells in the battery. Battery

performance data is referenced to 77°F (25°C). Cooler temperatures will cause diminished battery capacity. Higher temperatures will result in increased capacity, but reduce service life. Temperature considerations are a frequently overlooked when load testing the battery system.

Correcting for temperature

If the cell temperature is other than 77°F, some amount of compensation should be factored into the load test procedure. Unless the purchase specification called for a different operating temperature, the UPS battery was sized by the manufacturer for operation at 77°F. Therefore, battery performance will be diminished at cooler temperatures and artificially increased at higher temperatures. The simplest way to compensate for temperature is to increase or decrease the kW setting of the load bank and then testing to see if the batteries meets the originally specified time duration before being fully discharged. Correction factors for cell temperature are listed in Table 8.10. To illustrate their use, let us take a sample UPS system rated at 750 kVA and 600 kW (rated kW), and assume the cell electrolyte temperature was measured at 67°F. Table 8.10 shows a temperature correction factor (T_c) of 1.064. Load bank setting (AC kW) can be expressed by the formula:

TABLE 8.10

Temperature Correction Factors for Lead–Acid Batteries

Cell Temperature		Correction	Cell Temperature		Correction
°C	°F	Factor (T_c)	°C	°F	Factor (T_c)
−3.9	25	1.520	25.6	78	0.994
−1.1	30	1.430	26.1	79	0.987
1.7	35	1.350	26.7	80	0.980
4.4	40	1.300	27.2	81	0.976
7.2	45	1.250	27.8	82	0.972
10.0	50	1.190	28.3	83	0.968
12.8	55	1.150	28.9	84	0.964
15.6	60	1.110	29.4	85	0.960
18.3	65	1.080	30.0	86	0.956
18.9	66	1.072	30.6	87	0.952
19.4	67	1.064	31.1	88	0.948
20.0	68	1.056	31.6	89	0.944
20.6	69	1.048	32.2	90	0.940
21.1	70	1.040	35.0	95	0.930
21.7	71	1.034	37.8	100	0.910
22.2	72	1.029	40.6	105	0.890
22.8	73	1.023	43.3	110	0.880
23.4	74	1.017	46.1	115	0.870
23.9	75	1.011	48.9	120	0.860
24.5	76	1.006	51.7	125	0.850
25.0	77	1.000			

$$\text{AC kW} = \frac{\text{Rated kW}}{T_c}$$

$$\text{AC kW} = \frac{600\text{ kW}}{1.064}$$

$$\text{AC kW} = 564\text{ kW}$$

The original 77°F AC kW would have been 600 kW. The corrected load bank setting indicates a difference of 36 kW (6% of rated capacity). Had the battery been tested at the full 600 kW load, the battery would have lasted less than the time specified, i.e., it would have reached its discharged state before its specified time.

8.9.5 Maintenance and Testing

Refer to Section 7.8 on routine maintenance and testing of switchgear batteries since there are many similarities that are common to the UPS battery systems. The battery tests listed in Section 7.8 are applicable to the UPS batteries.

8.9.6 Summary

Many tests are involved when commissioning and maintaining an UPS system. Many parameters (three-phase voltage and current, power, power factor, harmonics, and transients) must be logged simultaneously over 8–24 h and documented in report format. Use a power quality analyzer with data logging and reporting capabilities, such as the Fluke 435 or an equal to make the required tests.

Also, it is critical to ensure battery system integrity before it is load tested. It must be fully charged, properly installed and its condition verified in order to minimize the likelihood of retests and equipment damage. When compared with the cost of downtime, delays, retests, and hardware failures, the cost of battery inspection is a bargain, well worth the expense and time added to a project. The above installation and maintenance guide is based on vented lead–acid batteries; however, many facilities may have VRLA batteries for their UPS installations. Many of the checklist items listed for the vented lead–acid batteries also apply to the VRLA batteries. It is recommended that the IEEE standards on the VRLA batteries be consulted for installation and maintenance. These standards are

1. IEEE 1187-2002, "IEEE recommended practice for installation design and installation of valve regulated lead–acid batteries for stationary applications."
2. IEEE 1189-2007, "IEEE recommended practice for maintenance, testing, and replacement of valve regulated lead–acid batteries for stationary applications."
3. IEEE 1189-2007, "IEEE guide for selection of valve regulated lead–acid batteries for stationary applications."

8.10 Infrared Inspection of Electrical Equipment

Infrared (IR) thermographic scanning is commonly used as a part of the electrical preventive maintenance program. IR scanning can be used easily and safely on energized electrical equipment and apparatus to diagnose electrical problems in their early stages, which then can be corrected before they become major problems. IR scanning is most useful when equipment is under heavy load because certain types of hot spots cannot be detected while the equipment is at partial load or light load. Also, many maintenance personnel conduct an IR scanning inspection before a major preventive maintenance shutdown to identify electrical problems that can be then corrected during the shutdown.

8.10.1 Types of Thermographic Scanners

A variety of IR thermographic systems are available for conducting IR scanning to identify heat-related problems in energized electrical equipment. The instruments range from hand-held radiometers to imaging systems or scanners. These instruments are very compact and portable. These instruments detect radiation in a narrow section of the IR band at a frequency just below the visible light given out by heat. The radiometers are noncontact IR thermometers which have temperature readouts and are usually mounted on gun-stock. These instruments are ideal for spot checking of heated electrical equipment, lines, wires, and the like. The scanners use optical components and use different detectors as noted below.

Thermal detectors

The thermal detector responds to temperature change in the detector and displays actual scene with temperature superimposed as a red graph. Coolest ambient temperature is graph baseline, and the height of trace line indicates warmer temperature. The temperature range of the thermal detector is 10°C–1000°C and it can detect temperature differences of 0.5°C. It has a slow response. The main advantage of this unit is that it requires no external cooling.

Evaporation detectors

In these detectors, a germanium lens focuses radiation from an object on thin membrane coated with gold black. The black surface is in vacuum with a few drops of oil. The oil evaporates, and condenses on the membrane forming a thermal image. It is very slow but provides quantitative judgment. There is no cooling required for this unit.

Photon detectors (argon cooled)

These types of detectors are completely self-contained and contain argon gas-filled cylinders used for the detector coolant. The view is red on black, the brighter the red, the hotter the object. This detector uses six IR photo detectors, six LEDs, and a 10-segment, double-sided rotating mirror which converts the LED output into 60-line scan image. The temperature resolution is 0.1°C at 22°C between closely adjacent objects and between objects and their background.

Photon detector (nitrogen cooled)
These detectors use liquid nitrogen to cool the detector. The view is white on black, the brighter the white, the hotter the object. Also, these detectors come where the view is in color. The temperature resolution is 0.2°C. These units use camera scanner and video display. The brightness can be referenced to actual temperature.

Photon detector
These units are similar to the above units, but the image is green on black. These units do not have reference graph between brightness and temperature. These units do not require external cooling.

8.10.2 Conducting an IR Thermographic Inspection

When an IR inspection is conducted, it is recommended to follow the current path, and it should be done under normal operating conditions—the heavier the loading the better an indication of the hot spots. During these surveys, it is obvious that the IR scanner detects temperature differences. A hot spot detected in an electrical equipment can be caused not only by excessive temperature due to faulty equipment (excessive resistance) but also may come about due to reflections, solar gain, normal loading, emissivity variations, and eddy current inductive heating. The person conducting IR scanning surveys should be familiar and be aware of these factors in order to identify a true hot spot. Also, additional factors such as wind, rain, snow, and strong magnetic fields can affect the IR survey results when conducting an IR scan of outdoor substations and switchyards.

After the IR survey is completed, the appraisal of the IR scan data is normally evaluated to assess whether the equipment surveyed is working properly or whether it has problem areas due to overheating. Over the years, different appraisal systems and techniques have evolved which maintenance personnel have used to determine priority of maintenance and repair actions. These are discussed next and have been summarized from a paper* presented at the National Electrical Testing Association (NETA) Annual Conference.

8.10.2.1 Delta-T Temperature Rating Systems

For years, IR thermographers have used delta-T temperature ratings to assess the severity of overheating electrical components. These tables are commonly broken into three or four severity categories that indicate repair priorities: the larger the temperature rise above a similar component or ambient temperature, the greater potential for failure. There are a wide variety of delta-T charts versus severity/repair urgency charts commonly used by thermographers. Table 8.11 shows a delta-T temperature rating chart commonly used

* Paper presented by Paul Grover, Director of Infraspection Institute at the NETA Annual Conference, 1993.

TABLE 8.11

An Example of Delta-T Temperature Criteria to Determine Priority of Maintenance Scheduling Based on Temperature Rise of Component Relative to Ambient Temperature

Temperature Rise of Component Relative to Ambient Temperature	Recommended Actions
High-voltage power distribution equipment	
0°C–10°C	Corrective measures should be taken at next maintenance period
10°C–20°C	Corrective measures required as scheduling permits
20°C–40°C	Corrective measures required ASAP depending upon the class of load carried and the severity of temperature rise in this range
40°C and above	Corrective measures required IMMEDIATELY
Low-voltage distribution and control equipment	
0°C–10°C	Corrective measures required at next scheduled maintenance period or as scheduling permits
10°C–20°C	Corrective measures required on a PRIORITY scheduling basis
20°C–30°C	Corrective measures required ASAP
30°C and above	Corrective measures required IMMEDIATELY

in the electrical industry whereas Table 8.12 shows the delta-T criteria used by the NETA and similar criteria given in Section 21.17.5.6 of NFPA 70B, "Electrical equipment maintenance."

On the plus side, such delta-T ratings have worked quite well in the field. They do indicate some relative degree of severity that enable repairs to be prioritized. On the negative side, there are a great number of temperature classifications and none of them are traceable to nationally recognized standards for electrical equipment. This lack of traceability has been questioned in some industries, such as in the highly regulated nuclear power industry. The other major shortcoming of using delta-T classification systems is that they do not account for the actual load and ambient temperature upon the equipment at the time of the IR inspection. For example, an overheating cable under 70% load would be assigned the same severity rating if it was under a 10% load. Ideally, load and ambient temperature differences should be accounted for in a temperature rating system for determining accurate repair priorities.

TABLE 8.12

Thermographic Survey Suggested Actions Based on Temperature Rise

Temperature Difference (T) Based on Comparisons between Similar Components under Similar Loading	Temperature Difference (T) Based on Comparisons between Component and Ambient Air Temperatures	Recommended Action
1°C–3°C	1°C–10°C	Possible deficiency; warrants investigation
4°C–15°C	11°C–20°C	Indicates probable deficiency; repair as time permits
—	21°C–40°C	Monitor until corrective measures can be accomplished
>15°C	>40°C	Major discrepancy; repair immediately

Source: From NETA MTS-2005, Table 100.18. With permission.

Note: Temperature specifications vary depending on the exact type of equipment. Even in the same class of equipment (i.e., cables) there are various temperature ratings. Heating is generally related to the square of the current; therefore, the load current will have a major impact on ΔT. In the absence of consensus standards for ΔT, the values in this table will provide reasonable guidelines.

8.10.2.2 Standards-Based Temperature Rating System

In the United States, there are over 26 organizations that publish temperature standards for electrical equipment. However, ANSI, IEEE, and NEMA are particularly well known and referenced. The standards published by these organizations on various electrical equipment contain temperature data which consists of the standard ambient temperature, the maximum temperature rise allowed above the ambient, and the total allowed temperature, which is the sum of the ambient and the maximum temperature rise allowed. A typical electrical equipment standard might be expressed as follows:

		Rated Temperature (°C)		
Equipment	**Component**	**Ambient**	**Rise**	**Total**
Cable insulation, thermoplastic	All polyethylene	30[a]	45	75

Source: From ANSI/IEEE Std 242-2001, IEEE Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

[a] Note that 30°C ambient is for tray and conduit installation.

The key formula: Mostly all temperature standards specify the standard ambient temperature and they assume that the circuit is under 100% load. However, electrical equipment is often run in a different ambient temperature and is rarely at 100% of rated load. So, for these standards to be meaningful,

TABLE 8.13

ANSI/IEEE/NEMA Temperature Standards References

NEMA	AB-1	Molded case circuit breakers
ANSI/IEEE	C37.04-2006	Rating structure for AC high-voltage circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical current basis
ANSI/IEEE	C37.010-2005	Application guide for AC high-voltage circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical current basis
ANSI/IEEE	C37.13-1995	Standard for low-voltage AC power circuit breakers used in enclosures
ANSI/IEEE	C37.14-2002	Standard for low-voltage AC power circuit breakers used in enclosures
ANSI/IEEE	C37.20.1-2006	Standard for metal-enclosed low-voltage power circuit breaker switchgear
ANSI/IEEE	C37.20.2-2005	Standard for metal-clad and station-type cubicle switchgear
ANSI/IEEE	Standard C37. 16-2000	Low-voltage power circuit breakers and AC power circuit protectors preferred ratings, related requirements, and application recommendation
ANSI/IEEE	C37.20.3-2001	Standard for metal-enclosed interrupter switchgear
ANSI/IEEE	C37.23-2003	Guide for metal-enclosed bus and calculating losses in isolated-phase bus
ANSI/IEEE	C37.30-1997	Definitions and requirements for high-voltage air switches, insulators, and bus supports
ANSI/IEEE	C37.40-2003	Service conditions and definitions for high-voltage fuses, distribution enclosed single-pole air switches, fuse disconnecting switches, and accessories
ANSI/IEEE	Standard 242-2001	IEEE recommended practice for protection and coordination of industrial and commercial power systems
ANSI/IEEE	Standard 141-1993	IEEE recommended practice for electrical power distribution system for industrial plants (Red Book)
ANSI/IEEE	Standard 241-1997	IEEE recommended practice for electrical power distribution system for commercial buildings (Gray Book)

the temperatures need to be adjusted or corrected for ambient temperature and load deviations from the stated assumptions. Several of the reference standards listed in Table 8.13 include a formula for making these corrections. This formula using simplified symbols and terminology can be written as follows:

$$T_{\mathrm{tc}} = (T_{\mathrm{rt}} - T_{\mathrm{ra}})(I_{\mathrm{m}}/I_{\mathrm{r}})^{n} + T_{\mathrm{ma}}$$

where

T_{tc} is the total allowable temperature, corrected for measured load and ambient temperature

T_{rt} is the total rated temperature

T_{ra} is the rated ambient temperature

I_{m} is the measured current (A)

I_{r} is the rated current (A)

T_{ma} is the measured ambient temperature
n is the exponent, average of 1.8 (varies between 1.6 and 2.0)

Using the formula: First, we need to determine the temperature standards applicable to the equipment we are inspecting. We also need to know the maximum rated current for the equipment we are inspecting. Then, we need to measure the ambient air temperature and the actual load on the equipment. When we enter these numbers into the formula, we end up with the total corrected temperature (T_{tc}). This number (T_{tc}) is the corrected maximum allowable temperature for this equipment and has been adjusted for the measured ambient temperature and down-rated for the measured load. The thermographer then compares his/her measured equipment temperature to this total corrected temperature. If the measured temperature is greater than the T_{tc}, the equipment temperature is over the specification. If it is less than the T_{tc}, the equipment temperature is within the specification. While this formula and procedure may look formidable, it is easily run on a simple computer. You only need to know the temperature standards, the ambient temperature, and the rated and measured loads. Of course, the thermographer needs to know how to accurately measure the temperature of the equipment so that it can be compared to the total corrected temperature (T_{tc}). Below is an example of using this method.

Example:

A thermographer has located an abnormally warm 100 A starter breaker. The accompanying electrician measures a load of 30 A on the breaker. The thermographer measures an ambient air temperature of 20°C and determines that hottest part of the breaker, the terminal lug on the load side of phase C, is 31°C. Is the equipment running within temperature specification?

SOLUTION:

The information given on the starter breaker is
Rated load of breaker (I_r) = 100 A
Measured load (I_m) = 30 A
Measured ambient temperature (T_{ma}) = 20°C

From the temperature standards for a low-voltage circuit breaker, terminal connection to bus (or cable), the following information is obtained

		Rated Temperatures (°C)		
Equipment	**Component**	**Ambient, T_{ra}**	**Rise**	**Total, T_{rt}**
Low-voltage circuit breaker	Terminal connection to bus (or cable)	40	55	95

Source: From ANSI/IEEE C37.13-1995, Standard for Low-Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers Used in Enclosures.

Using the formula:

$T_{tc} = (T_{rt} - T_{ra})\,(I_m/I_r)^2 + T_{ma}$ (for illustration, we use an exponent of 2)
$T_{tc} = (95-40)\,(30/100)^2 + 20$
$T_{tc} = (55)\,(.3)^2 + 20$
$T_{tc} = (55)\,(.09) + 20$
$T_{tc} = (4.95) + 20 = 24.95°C$

We compare our measured temperature of 31°C to the T_{tc} of 24.95 and find that the heated terminal is 6.05°C above the T_{tc} specification which was corrected for measured ambient temperature and load.

Therefore, this example illustrates that there is a problem with this breaker and this problem will get worse as the load or the ambient temperature increases on the 100 A starter breaker.

Comparing the rating systems: Assuming that the temperatures of other two phases of this breaker were at ambient temperature, you will note that the Delta-T method of rating this potential problem would give you a temperature difference of $31 - 20 = 11°C$. In most Delta-T classifications, this would warrant a low-to-moderate severity rating. The standards-based system and formula has determined that the equipment is over specification. In comparing the two rating systems to many similar problems, we find that that the standards-based system is almost always more conservative than the Delta-T system. In other words, the standards-based system will almost identify a problem before the Delta-T system will.

8.10.3 Conducting a Thermographic Survey

The NETA (*2005 NETA Maintenance Testing Specifications*, Section 9) and NFPA 70B (Section 20.17) contain guidance for conducting thermographic (IR) surveys and inspection. It is a necessary requirement that the person performing the thermographic inspection be thoroughly trained and experienced in the apparatus and systems being evaluated, as well as knowledgeable of thermographic principles and methodology.

The following summary of the NETA and NFPA guidance on thermographic surveys and inspection is offered for the reader.

Visual and mechanical inspection: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1°C at 30°C. Equipment shall be capable of detecting emitted radiation and convert detected radiation to visual signals. Perform thermographic surveys under maximum loading conditions. Remove all necessary covers prior to performing IR inspection. Use appropriate caution, safety devices, and personal protective equipment when conducting the thermographic surveys.

Report: Provide a report of the thermographic survey and result including the following: description of equipment to be tested; discrepancies found; temperature difference found between the area of concern and the reference area and ambient temperature; provide probable cause of temperature

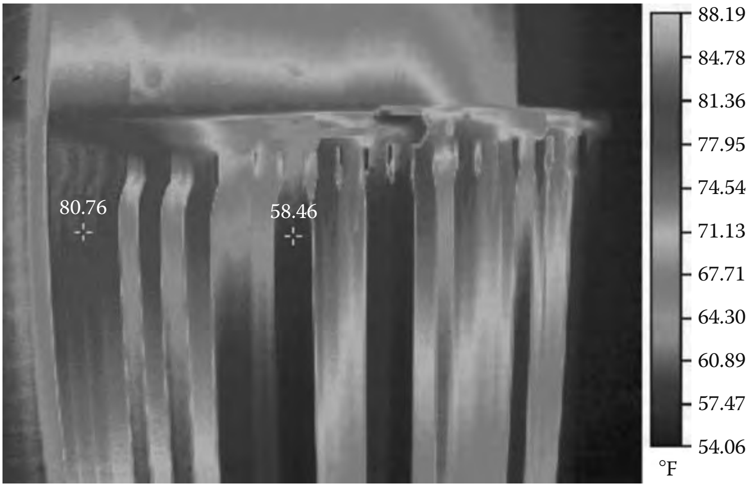


FIGURE 8.8
Thermographic picture of a transformer radiators. (Courtesy of Black and Associates, Inc., Sparks, MD.)

difference as witnessed during the survey; identify inaccessible and/or unobservable areas and/or equipment and identify load conditions at time of inspection. Provide photographs and/or thermograms of the areas of concern with recommended actions.

8.10.4 Examples of Thermographic Findings

Three examples of thermographic findings are documented to familiarize the reader with the overheating problems relating to electrical equipment.

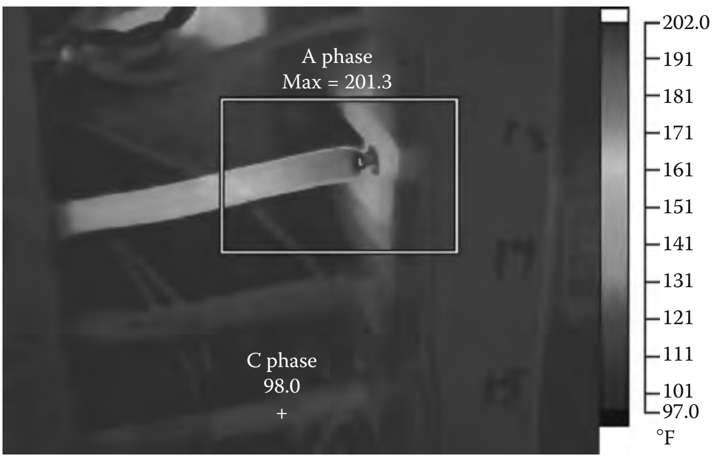
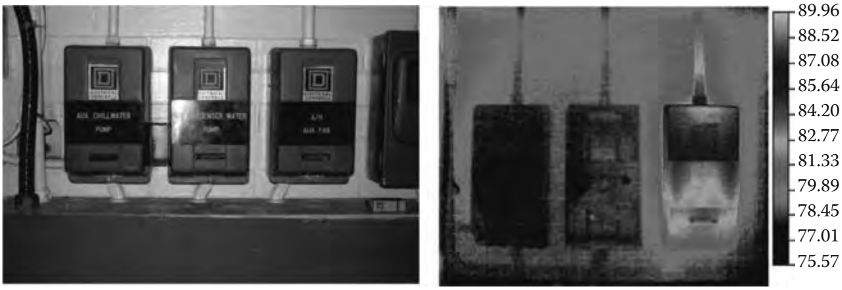


FIGURE 8.9
Thermographic picture of a three-phase 480 V breaker lug overheating. (Courtesy of Black and Associates, Inc., Sparks, MD.)



(a) (b)

FIGURE 8.10
Thermographic picture of an overheated motor controller. (Courtesy of Black and Associates, Inc., Sparks, MD.)

1. The first example is shown in Figure 8.8 which shows transformer radiators being blocked. As can be seen in the survey photograph, the radiators showing darker color are not carrying any oil, i.e., these radiators are blocked. The temperature of radiators on the left-hand side of transformer is measured to be 80.76°F compared to the temperature of 58.46°F for the radiators in blue color. If this condition is not corrected, then over time more radiators become blocked and the transformer will overheat.
2. The second example shows an overheated three-phase 480 V breaker in Figure 8.9. In this picture, phase A conductor and lug are overheated and show a temperature of 201.3°F compared to 98°F for the other two phases. Apparently the phase A lug and conductor are overheated which could be due to loose connections or high resistance built up at the lug. As discussed earlier just comparing the temperature of the three phases will be a good indication of the actual conditions. However, the Delta-T temperature, or standard-based temperature rating system could be used to provide more detail analysis of the problem.
3. The third example of three motor controllers is shown in Figure 8.10a and b. In Figure 8.10a, three motor controllers are shown mounted side by side and were surveyed with IR camera without removing the covers. In Figure 8.10a, the left hand side controller supplies chilled water pump, the middle controller supplies condensate pump and the right hand side controller supplies auxiliary fan. It is apparent from the thermographic picture, as shown in Figure 8.10b, the auxiliary fan controller has excessive heat compared to the other two controllers. Note that the excessive heat is not visible to the naked eye in the picture shown in Figure 8.10a, but is very apparent in the thermographic picture shown in Figure 8.10b. It is obvious that the auxiliary fan controller needs further investigation to determine the cause of excessive heating.

9

Testing and Commissioning of Protective Relays and Instrument Transformers

9.1 Introduction

This chapter outlines a program for testing and commissioning of protective and overcurrent relays and instrument transformers used in switchgear and/or standalone applications. The frequency of testing of these devices may be dependent upon many factors; however, an annual schedule of inspection and maintenance is recommended for electromechanical and induction relays; and inspection and testing of solid-state and microprocessor relays when trouble is indicated or upon unanticipated operation of these relays. Before a successful maintenance and inspection program can be implemented, it is essential that the personnel performing or evaluating inspection and maintenance should be thoroughly familiar with the types of protective relays, devices, and auxiliary equipment. Therefore, in this section a brief overview of protective and overcurrent relays, and instrument transformers is given for the reader to become familiar with the system equipment. The maintenance and testing of electromechanical and induction relays involves inspection, mechanical adjustment, and electrical tests. Similarly, the maintenance and testing of solid-state and microprocessor relays involves inspection and self-diagnostics and tests. Since the protective equipment plays such an important role for the safety of personnel and property, they should be given special attention. Moreover, since these devices operate during abnormal conditions on the power system, the only way to assure correct operation is by a comprehensive inspection, maintenance, and testing program.

9.2 Instrument Transformers

Instrument transformers are essential parts of many electrical metering and relaying systems. The quality of instrument transformers will affect directly the overall accuracy and performance of these systems. Instrument transformer performance is critical in protective relaying, since the relays can only be as good as the instrument transformers. They serve two basic functions:

- To change the magnitude (but not the nature) of primary voltage and current to secondary values to 120 V and 5 or 1 A where relays, meters, or other devices can be applied
- To provide isolation between primary and secondary circuit for equipment and safety of personnel

When relays compare the sum or difference of two or more currents or the interaction of voltages and currents, the relative direction of the current must be known. The direction of current flow can be determined by knowing the instrument transformer polarity. Polarity markings are normally shown on instrument transformers; however, they can be determined in the field if necessary. Several aspects of current and voltage instrument transformers are discussed next.

9.2.1 Current Transformers

Current transformers (CTs) are designed for connection in the primary circuit (either in series or around the primary circuit). The secondary current of the transformer bears a known relationship with the primary current. Any change in the primary current is reflected in the secondary circuit. Relays, meters, and other devices are connected to the secondary terminals of the CTs. CTs are made in many different ratios, different voltage insulation systems, and for different environmental conditions such as indoor or outdoor use. Generally, the following types of construction are used for CTs.

- *Wound type:* In this type more than one primary turn is frequently used to obtain low exciting current and high accuracy. The usual current ratings for this type of transformer are 800 A and below.
- *Bar-primary type:* In this type, the primary consists of a single bar extending through the core, which is connected in series with the circuit conductor. This type of construction is suited to withstand the stresses of heavy overcurrent. The usual current rating for this type of transformer is 1200 A or above in order to provide sufficient ampere-turns for good accuracy.
- *Window type:* The window-type CT contains no primary winding. The CT has an insulated hole through the core and secondary windings. The circuit conductor is inserted through the window of the CT, and thus this conductor then becomes the primary of the CT.
- *Bushing type:* The bushing-type CT is similar to the window-type. It has a circular core that is designed to fit on the bushing of a power transformer, circuit breaker, or other apparatus. The secondary windings are wound on the circular core and can be tapped to give multiple ratios. This transformer is mostly used for relaying purposes where high accuracy at normal current value is not extremely important.

- *Double-secondary type:* A double-secondary transformer is actually two transformers, each transformer having its own core. This type of transformer occupies less space than two single-secondary winding transformers. The double-secondary winding transformer permits instruments, relays, or other devices to be separated if required.
- *Split-core type:* This is a window-type CT with hinged cores, which permit them to be installed on buses or other circuits.
- *Air-core type:* The air-core CT is used where saturation of the iron core due to high fault currents is a problem. The air-core transformer has relative constant error over a wide range of overcurrent and transient conditions.
- *Tripping transformers:* Several types of small and inexpensive transformers are available for protective control functions. These transformers are not made with the same accuracy as instrument transformers.
- *Auxiliary transformers:* Auxiliary transformers are used to adjust the difference in ratio between different CTs. These transformers are connected in the secondary circuits of main CTs.

9.2.1.1 CT Accuracy Standards

CTs can be divided into two categories for purposes of establishing accuracy standards: (1) accuracy standard for metering CTs, and (2) accuracy standard for relaying CTs. Since accuracy is a function of the burden on the CT, standard burdens have been established. Accuracy has been established at various burden values. The standard burdens established by American National Standard Institute (ANSI) C57.13-1993(R2003) are shown in Table 9.1. The performance rating is based on 5 A secondary current unless otherwise specified.

TABLE 9.1

Standard Burdens for CTs

	Characteristics for 60 Hz and 5 A		
Standard Burden Designation	**Impedance (Ω)**	**Volt-Amperes at 5 A**	**Power Factor**
B-0.1	0.1	2.5	0.9
B-0.2	0.2	5.0	0.9
B-0.5	0.5	12.5	0.9
B-1	1.0	25.0	0.5
B-2	2.0	50.0	0.5
B-4	4.0	100.0	0.5
B-8	8.0	200.0	0.5

Source: ANSI C57.13-1993.06.01 (R2000). Standard Requirements for Instrument Transformers.

9.2.1.2 Accuracy Classes for Metering

The ANSI accuracy classes for metering state that the transformer correction factor (TCF) should be within specified limits when the power factor of the metered load is from 0.6 to 1.0 lagging for a specified standard burden, at 100% of rated primary current. CTs for metering service have accuracy classes of 0.3%, 0.6%, and 1.2%.

9.2.1.3 Accuracy Classes for Relaying

The ANSI standard 57.13-1993 has standardized on the accuracy classes and the conditions under which instrument transformers are to be applied. Prior to 1968, the accuracy classes and the conditions under which the instrument transformers were applied were based on ANSI standard C57.13-1954. The ANSI standard 57.13-1954 was revised in 1968 and this standard set one accuracy class, instead of the two that was in the older standard. The revised standard also changed the designations for the older class of CTs. Hence, the ANSI 57.13-1968 standard is different than the older standard of ANSI 57.13-1954 in many respects. Since many older CTs and voltage transformers (VTs) are still in use today, it is appropriate to discuss the older and revised ANSI C57.13 standards.

Older standard (ANSI C57.13-1954): In this standard, the accuracy ratings were on the basis of the standard secondary terminal voltage, a transformer would deliver without exceeding a standard percent ratio error. The classification of CT performance was based on the ratio error at 5 to 20 times secondary current. Therefore, the CTs were divided into classes, H and L. Class H had a nearly constant percentage ratio error when delivering a fixed secondary voltage over a wide range of secondary current. Class L had a nearly constant magnitude error (variable percentage error) when delivering a fixed secondary voltage over a wide range of secondary current. Standard percent ratio error classes for class H CTs were 2.5% and 10%, whereas for class L CTs, the standard percent ratio error was 10%. Secondary voltages were 10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 400, and 800 V. For example, CTs were classified as 2.5 H 200 or 10 L 200. The first term described the maximum percent ratio error, the second term (H or L) described the transformer performance characteristics, and the third term described the secondary voltage. The class H transformer could deliver a secondary voltage equal to its voltage class at 5 to 20 times secondary rated current. A class L CT, on the other hand, could only deliver a secondary voltage within its voltage class at 5 to 20 times secondary rated current at fixed burden. In other words, class L cannot be used with proportionately higher burdens at lower secondary current without exceeding its classified ratio error.

Newer standard (ANSI 57.13-1968): A relaying accuracy under the new standard is designated by symbols C and T.

- C-type CTs have single primary turn and distributed secondary windings. For C-type CTs the ratio error can be calculated. Majority of these CTs are bushing type and are rated at 600 V since they do not have any physical connection with the primary circuit.

- T-type CTs are constructed with more than one primary turn and undistributed windings. The primary windings are insulated and braced for the primary voltage. Because of the physical space required and the fringing effects of nonuniformly distributed winding, because there is flux that does not link both the primary and secondary windings. The leakage flux has significant effect on the CT performance and it is not possible to calculate the ratio correction error using the burden and excitation characteristics. Therefore, the ratio correction must be determined by test for the T-type CTs.
- The secondary terminal voltage rating for the C-type and T-type CTs is the voltage which the transformer will deliver to a standard burden (as listed in Table 9.1) at 20 times normal secondary current.
- The transformer ratio error must be limited to 10% for all currents from 1 to 20 times normal current for burdens not to exceed those listed in Table 9.1.
- *K-type:* The K classification was established in the 1993 revision of the C57.13 standard. The K-type CTs are designed to have knee-point voltage at least 70% of the secondary terminal voltage rating. The K-type is similar to C-type CTs, i.e., their design is based on the principle that the leakage flux in the core does not have an appreciable effect on the ratio of the CT within the limits of current and burden.

To specify a CT under the new standards, one needs only to select either a class C or T transformer and then specify the burden. The first term of the burden classification of a CT identifies the construction type of CTs as discussed in Section 9.2.1, and the second term describes the voltage rating that can be delivered by the full winding at 20 times rated secondary current without exceeding 10% ratio correction (error). The ANSI voltage rating applies to the full winding, and if less than full winding is used, the voltage rating is then reduced in proportion to turns used. As an example, a CT C200 or T200 means that a ratio correction error will not exceed 10% for values from 1 to 20 times rated secondary current (5 A) with a standard 2.0 Ω burden.

- The C classification covers bushing transformers, and the T classification covers any other transformer
- The secondary voltage values are 10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 400, and 800 V based on 1 to 20 times the normal current standard burdens listed in Table 9.1

9.2.2 Voltage (Potential) Transformers

VTs are designed for connecting line-to-line or line-to-neutral. The purpose of the VT is to provide an isolated secondary voltage that is an exact

TABLE 9.2

ANSI Standard Burdens for VTs

Burden	Volt-Amperes at 120 V	Burden Power Factor
W	12.5	0.70
X	25.0	0.70
Y	75.0	0.85
Z	200.0	0.85
ZZ	400.0	0.85

proportionate representation of primary voltage. However, transformers draw core-magnetizing current from the primary circuit, and a constant error results independent of the burden connected to it. Also, variable error results due to load or burden current flowing through the effective impedance of the transformer. The total error is the sum of these two errors under any burden condition. The ANSI standard C57.13-1993(R2003) lists the classification of VTs encountered in service as W, X, Y, Z, and ZZ. The standard burden designations are shown in Table 9.2 for these VTs.

Accuracy classes are based on the requirement that the TCF be within specified limits when the power factor of the metered load is between 0.6 and 1.0 lagging for a specified burden and at voltages from 90% to 110% of rated transformer voltage. The ANSI accuracy classes for VTs are shown in Table 9.3.

The ratings of VTs encompass the following:

- Insulation class and basic impulse level
- Rated primary voltage and ratio
- Accuracy ratings at standard burdens
- Thermal burden, that is, the maximum burden the transformer can carry at rated secondary voltage without exceeding its temperature rise, above 30°C ambient

9.2.3 Polarity of Instrument Transformers

Instrument transformers are marked to indicate the instantaneous direction of primary and secondary currents. Usually, one primary and one secondary

TABLE 9.3

ANSI Accuracy Classes for VTs

Accuracy Class (%)	Limits of TCF	Limits of Power Factor of Metered Load
1.2	1.012–0.998	0.6–1.0
0.6	1.006–0.994	0.6–1.0
0.3	1.003–0.997	0.6–1.0

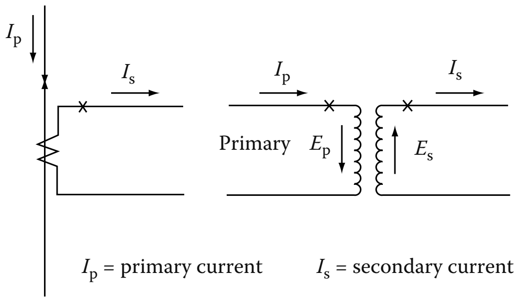


FIGURE 9.1
Polarity marking of transformers.

terminal are marked with a cross (×) or a dot (•) or a square (■) to indicate the polarity. The following conventions apply to either current or VTs with subtractive or additive polarity.

- The current flowing out at the polarity marked terminal on the secondary side is nearly in phase with the current flowing in at the polarity marked terminal on the primary. This is shown in Figure 9.1.
- The voltage drop from the polarity to the nonpolarity marked terminals on the primary side is nearly in phase with the voltage drop from the polarity to the nonpolarity marked terminals on the secondary side.

9.2.3.1 Testing for Polarity of Instrument Transformers

The polarity of instrument transformers can be determined by direct current (DC) or alternating current (AC) tests.

DC test

Connect a DC permanent magnet ammeter of 5 A capacity or less (depending on the transformer ratio) across the CT secondary terminal. The marked secondary terminal of the transformer should be connected to the plus (+) ammeter terminal. Then connect a 7.5 V battery to the primary side such that the negative terminal is connected to the unmarked primary terminal of the transformer. Make an instantaneous contact with the positive battery terminal to the marked terminal of the transformer. A kick or deflection will be noticed on the ammeter. If the kick is in the positive direction (i.e., upscale) upon making the contact, the transformer leads are correctly marked. If the initial kick is in the negative direction (i.e., downscale), the polarity markings are not correct. See Figure 9.13 (also refer to Figure 5.19 in Chapter 5) for connections of this test.

VTs can be tested by using a DC permanent magnet moving-coil-type voltmeter having a 150 V scale. The test is performed in a manner similar to the test for CTs, except that the voltmeter is connected across the high-voltage terminals of the transformer first, and then the battery voltage is applied to the low-voltage terminals.

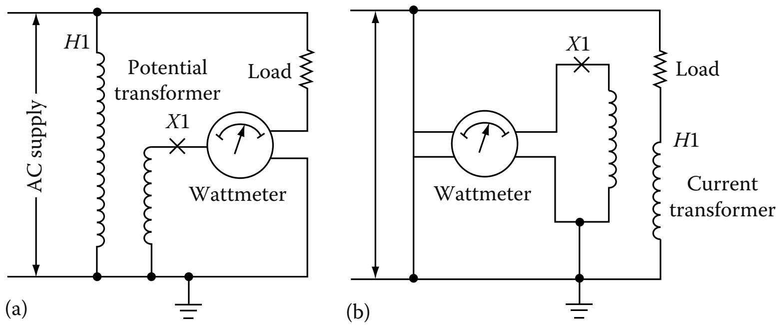


FIGURE 9.2
Connection for substitution method.

AC tests
The following AC methods are used for determining polarity.

Excitation test
This test consists of exciting the transformer high-voltage winding with low voltage and comparing the voltage across the winding with voltage across both windings in series. This method is not very practical with transformers with high ratios such as 100:1, because the difference between the two voltages is very small, which cannot be measured with ordinary instruments. Moreover, there is always a danger of exciting the low-voltage winding instead of the high-voltage winding, thereby producing dangerous voltages on the transformer.

Substitution method
This method involves using a transformer with known polarity. Make connections as for the known polarity transformer, as shown in Figure 9.2a and b, and then connect the transformer whose polarity is to be determined. If the ammeter needle deflects in the same direction in both cases, the polarities of two transformers are the same. By knowing the polarity of the first transformer, the polarity of the second transformer is then determined.

Differential method
The differential method involves exciting the primaries of both transformers (known and unknown polarities) and making a differential measurement with an ammeter or voltmeter. When the secondaries of two VTs are connected in series, the readings should be the sum of the voltages of two transformers. Similarly, when the two current secondaries of the transformers are connected in parallel, the ammeter should read the sum of the currents in two transformers. The connections are shown in Figure 9.3a and b.

9.2.4 Testing for Ratio of Instrument Transformers

The ratio of instrument transformers can be determined by two generally accepted tests.

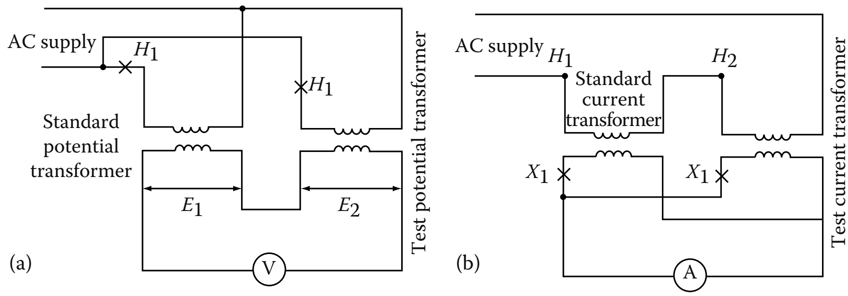


FIGURE 9.3
Connection for differential method.

Voltage method test
A suitable AC voltage, below saturation i.e., below the knee point of the CT saturation curve, is connected to the full secondary winding and a high impedance (20,000 Ω/V or greater) low-range voltmeter is connected in the primary of the CT. The primary voltage is read on the low-range voltmeter as the secondary voltage is applied to the CT. The turn ratio is approximately equal to the voltage ratio. In most low and medium-ratio bushing CTs, the saturation level is achieved at about 1 V per turn. The saturation level may be lower than 0.5 V per turn in high-ratio generator CTs and window-type CTs used in metal clad switchgear. For very high-ratio CTs, an application of test voltage even lower than 0.5 V per turn may be required to avoid personnel hazard and possible damage to equipment.

Current method test
This method requires a source of high current and an additional CT of known ratio with its own ammeter and a second ammeter for the CT under test. The test is conducted by injecting the high current test source to a series of values over the desired range and recording the two secondary current readings. The ratio of the CT under test is equal to the turns ratio of the reference CT multiplied by the ratio of the reference CT secondary current to the test transformer secondary current. When conducting this test avoid using multiple turns of the test conductor through the center of the window-type CT to reduce its ratio because it may produce an abnormal secondary leakage reactance and misleading results in the ratio measurement. The effect is unpredictable and although small with distributed winding CTs with low secondary burden, it may be produce a large error in older CTs particularly when high burdens are connected.

Excitation test
Excitation voltage and current tests can be made on both C (distributed winding) and T class (nondistributed winding) CTs in order to assess if the CT is performing correctly and to determine if deviations are present. To perform this test, an AC voltage is applied to the secondary winding

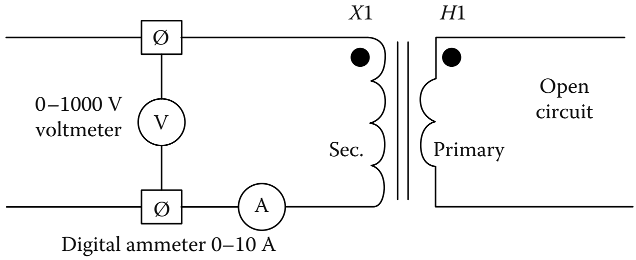
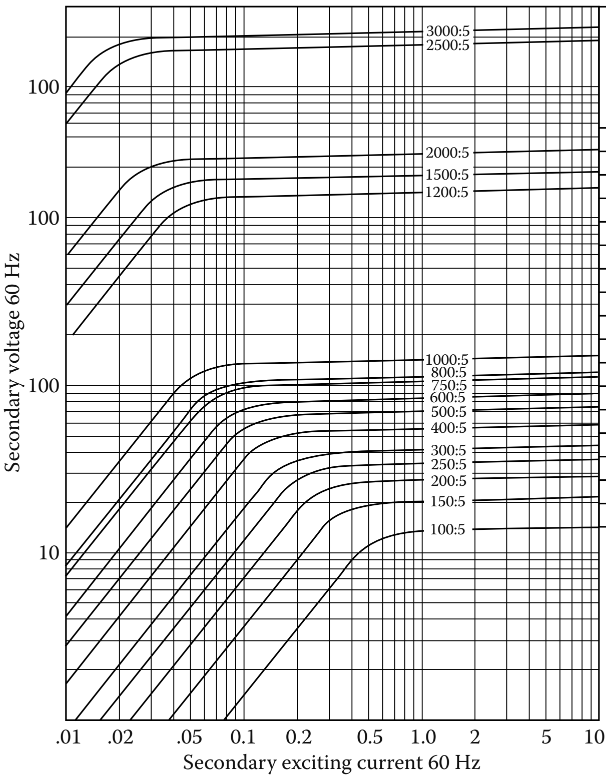


FIGURE 9.4
Excitation test circuit of a CT.

with the primary winding open-circuited as is shown in Figure 9.4. The voltage applied to the secondary winding is varied, and the current drawn by the winding at each selected voltage value is recorded. A curve is plotted of the secondary voltage versus current for comparison with the original manufacturer's excitation (saturation) curve. A sample of excitation curves of multiratio CT are shown in Figure 9.5. The readings near the



Current ratio	Secondary winding resistance (Ohms@75°C)
100:5	0.033
150:5	0.052
200:5	0.070
250:5	0.087
300:5	0.104
400:5	0.139
500:5	0.174
600:5	0.209
750:5	0.261
800:5	0.278
1000:5	0.348
1200:5	0.392
1500:5	0.490
1600:5	0.522
2000:5	0.653
2500:5	0.807
3000:5	0.969

FIGURE 9.5
Typical excitation curve for C class, multiratio CT. (Courtesy of Instrument Transformers, Inc., Clearwater, FL.)

knee of the excitation curve are important when plotting this curve. For multitap ratio CTs, the highest tap should be used provided that the current transformer can be saturated at the selected tap with the test equipment available. The ammeter used for this test should be an root-mean-square (rms) instrument and the voltmeter should be an average reading voltmeter calibrated to give the same numerical indication as an rms voltmeter. Deviations from expected results or in comparison to the manufacturer data may indicate a turn-to-turn short, distorted waveform of test voltage, or the presence of a conducting path around the CT core. Caution should be taken to minimize energizing the CT at voltages above the knee of the excitation curve any longer than is necessary to take the readings. This test can also be conducted by energizing the CT primary winding from a high-current test source and plotting the data as primary exciting current versus secondary open-circuited voltage. The current must be divided by the CT ratio for comparison with the manufacturer's excitation curve data.

9.2.5 Winding and Lead Resistance Measurements

The internal resistance of CT windings and external impedance (including lead resistance) are required for relay setting calculations, and for calculating ratio correction error when applying CTs. The internal winding resistance and the lead resistance can be calculated or measured with a resistance bridge. If it is desired to separate the winding resistance and lead resistance, the resistance of a full winding and of a tap then should be measured. All measurements should be made at the CT short-circuiting terminal block. After completion of this test, the CT should be demagnitized to remove any residual magnetism as discussed under Section 9.2.7.

9.2.6 Burden Measurements

For relay applications and for calculating CT ratio correction factors, burden measurements may be necessary. In such cases, the total burden of the circuit, which is the sum of the internal CT burden and the external connected burden must be determined. The internal burden is the resistance of secondary winding and the lead resistance from the winding to the short-circuiting terminal block as discussed in Section 9.2.5. The internal burden can be converted to volt-amperes at rated secondary current. The external burden can be measured in volt-amperes by measuring the voltage required to drive the rated current through the connected burden (load).

9.2.7 CT Remanence

The residual magnetism of a CT is known as remanence. The performance of both class C and T CTs is influenced by remanence. The core of the CT is subject to hysteresis, i.e., when current is interrupted the flux density in the core does not become zero when current does. When flux in the core is high due to high current or because the current contains a high DC component and when this current is interrupted, the residual magnetism in the core will be high, possibly being above the flux equivalent of the knee point on the excitation curve as shown in Figure 9.5. When the CT is next energized, the flux changes will begin from the remanence value and therefore may lead to the saturation of the CT. When this occurs, much of the primary current is used for exciting the core, and thereby significantly reducing and distorting the secondary output. This condition can be corrected by demagnitizing the core of the CT. This can be accomplished by applying a suitable variable alternating voltage to the secondary, with initial magnitude sufficient to force the flux density above the saturation point, and then decreasing the applied voltage slowly and continuously to zero. Test connections are identical to those as shown in Figure 9.4 for performing this test.

9.2.8 Grounding of CT

It is common practice to connect the secondary of the instrument (current and voltage) transformers to the station or substation ground system. The primary purpose of grounding is for personnel safety and correct performance of the instrument transformers, relays, meters, and other equipment connected to the instrument transformer secondaries. The grounding point in the instrument transformer secondary circuit should be located electrically at one end of the secondary winding of each instrument transformer and physically at the first point of switchboard or relay panel of the instrument transformer secondary circuit. The following are some examples for grounding instrument transformers.

1. A single instrument transformer secondary winding should be connected to a single ground.
2. Where more than one instrument transformer is used, such as three single-phase transformers wye-connected to form a three-phase connection, the common point of the secondary windings of all instrument transformers should be connected to a single ground.
3. The secondary circuit of multi-instrument transformers where no common point of connection is available for all of the transformer secondaries, such as delta-connected transformers, should have the common point between the greatest number of the secondary windings connected to ground.
4. When secondary windings of more than one instrument transformers are interconnected and do not have a common neutral connection, then the common secondary neutral connection for the greatest number of these transformers should be the point of connection to ground.
5. The grounding conductor for instrument transformers should be as large, or larger than the secondary phase conductors. The grounding

conductor should never be smaller than number 12 AWG copper, or equal, for grounding of instrument transformers.

6. CTs that are not used should have the full winding shorted at the CT location and grounded.

9.2.9 Maintenance and Testing of Instrument Transformers

The following general recommendations are offered to supplement the manufacturer's instructions.

General maintenance

- If instrument transformers are allowed to remain out of service for a long period of time, they should be dried before being put into service
- Instrument transformers containing oil or synthetic dielectrics should be tested periodically to determine the breakdown voltage remains at 26 kV or above
- The secondaries of CTs that are not connected to relays, meters, and the like, should have their secondaries shorted and grounded as mentioned in Section 9.2.8
- The secondary circuits and cases of all instrument transformers should be grounded with at least a number 12 AWG conductor as discussed earlier in Section 9.2.8

Testing
Routine testing as described below should be performed on instrument transformers.

General purpose instrument transformers

- Ratio and phase angle tests should be made on CTs for metering at 100% and 10% of rated primary current, when energized at rated frequency with maximum standard burden for which the transformer is rated
- The turns ratio and polarity tests should be made on CTs for relaying to ensure that they have the correct turns ratio and relaying accuracy

Revenue metering instrument transformer

- Calibrate all meters at 10%, 50%, and 90% of full scale. Instruments used for calibration of test equipment should have precision of no more than 50% of the instrument being tested.
- Calibrate watt-hour meters to 0.5%.
- Verify all instrument multipliers.

9.3 Protective Relays

Protective relays are used in power systems to assure maximum continuity of service. They are constantly monitoring the power system to detect unwanted conditions that can cause damage to property and life. They can be considered as a form of insurance designed to provide protection against property and personnel loss and as devices responsible for maintaining maximum possible continuity of service. Protective relays are found throughout small and large power systems from generation through transmission, distribution, and utilization. A better understanding of their application, operation, and maintenance is essential for the operating and maintenance personnel in order to understand how they fit into modern power systems.

9.3.1 Classification of Relays

ANSI C37.90 classifies relays associated with power apparatus into the following categories:

- Protective relays
- Auxiliary (slave) relays
- Programming relays
- Verification relays
- Monitoring relays

In addition to these generalized categories, protective relays can be further divided by input, operating principles, and performance characteristics. The input can consist of current, voltage, pressure, temperature, frequency, and so on; the operating principles can consist of thermal, electromagnetic, product of voltage and current, percentage, restraint, and so on; and the performance characteristics can consist of time delay, directional, differential, distance, phase or ground, comparison of operating quantities, and so on.

9.3.2 Overview of Protective Relays—Construction and Types

The evolution of protective relays from the perspective of construction and application can be described by four generations of relay designs. The four generations are categorized as following:

- Electromechanical and induction relays (first generation)
- Static relays (second generation)
- Solid-state relays with integrated circuits (third generation)
- Microprocessor relays (fourth generation)

The construction types of the above listed categories are discussed as follows:

9.3.2.1 Electromechanical and Induction Relays (First-Generation Relays)

Electromechanical and induction protective relays have lot of mechanical parts. These relays do not have the capabilities of autotesting of internal parts or providing an alarm in case a failure. The electromechanical and induction protective relay construction principles are based upon basic fault-detecting units, which are called basic relay units. The electromagnetic and induction relay chassis can be removed from the flexitest case for testing and maintenance purposes.

Most relays of this type used either electromagnetic attraction or electromagnetic induction principle for their operation. The electromagnetic, such as plunger type were instantaneous-type relays used for detecting overcurrent conditions. The induction-type relays provided overcurrent protection with time delays. Two or three input induction-type relays are used for directional or distance protection. Balanced-beam relays are used for differential protection, distance protection, or for overcurrent protection with low relay burden. For a general discussion, electromechanical relays can be classified into instantaneous (magnetic attraction) and time-delay (torque-controlled) units.

Instantaneous units

This type of relay unit consists of the plunger, solenoid, hinged armature, and balance beam types in which by magnetic attraction the armature is attracted into a coil or to a pole face of an electromagnet. Relays of this construction type can be applied in either AC or DC power systems. The plunger-type construction is shown in Figure 9.6.

Time-delay units

This type of induction-disk unit consists of the induction-disk or induction-cup type in which, owing to magnetic induction, a torque is produced in a movable rotor (i.e., disk or cup), which rotates between two pole faces of an

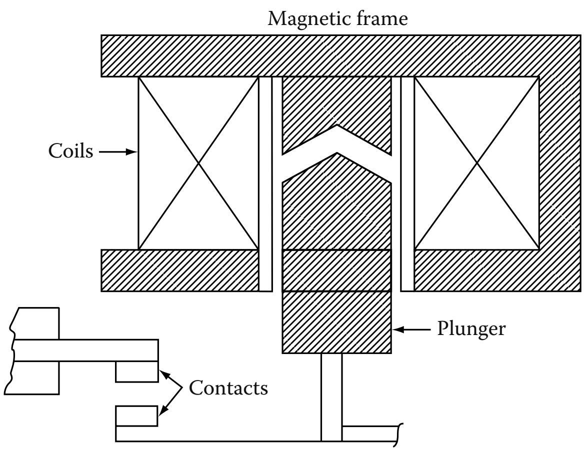


FIGURE 9.6
Plunger-type relay.

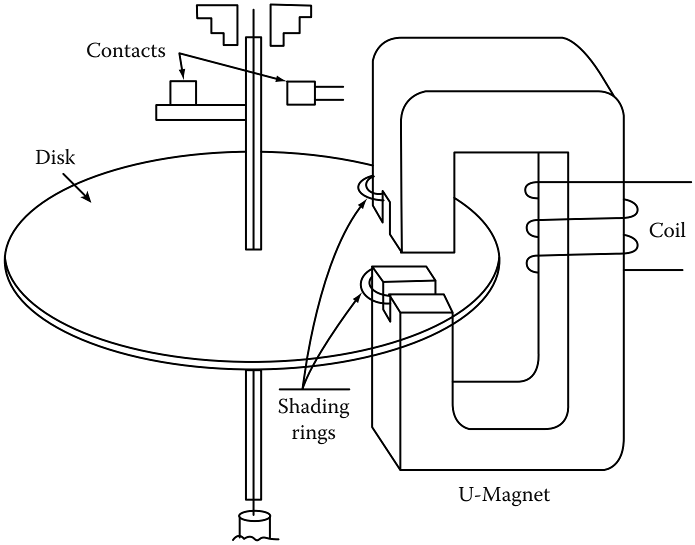


FIGURE 9.7
Induction-disk type of relay.

electromagnet. Obviously, this type of relay can only be applied in AC power systems. The induction-disk type of construction is shown in Figure 9.7. The preceding types of basic relay units are the electromagnetic type, however today these basic units can also be obtained in the solid-state (static) type.

9.3.2.2 Static Relays (Second-Generation Relays)

Static relays have been around for many years as far back as the early 1960s. These relays were also known as electronic or discrete solid-state relays. These relays used electronic components, such as unijunction transistors, thyristors, four layer diodes, and like components to provide protective functions similar to those provided by electromechanical relays. These relays were referred to as static relays because they employed discrete solid-state electronic components and had no moving elements or mechanical parts. Early versions of solid-state relays were very simple devices that typically provided a single function, such as voltage, current, frequency, or phase angle measurement similar to electromechanical relays. The static relays were built with eight groups of circuits broken into six functional categories. The function categories are: (1) amplifying, (2) interfacing or buffering, (3) sensing or data processing, (4) timing, (5) annunciating, and (6) power supply. The static relays were usually mounted in a steel or steel and phenolic cases with draw out cradle. The relay unit (draw out cradle) is made of a steel frame which houses the motherboard, magnetics chassis and all of the electronic components used for the specific relay. The benefits of using solid-state components are that they are less affected by dirt, vibration, humidity, and other environmental conditions. As the technology improved, solid-state relays began to include multiple functions, such as distance measurements and reclosing. The complexity of these devices also increased dramatically. Most of the static relays employ series shunt, or switch mode power supplies for their operation. Most static relays do not have the capability to detect failure of power supply and autotesting of internal parts, or provide an alarm in case a failure is detected.

9.3.2.3 Solid-Sate Relays (Third-Generation Relays)

These relays were introduced in the 1970s. These relays utilized integrated circuit boards and were more complex than the static relays. These relays performed many different functions for logic and control. As technology advanced, microprocessors were used to monitor certain conditions of the solid-state relay, such as power supply output voltages. As much of the logic was done in the microprocessor, these relays became smaller and more compact. In addition, they provided many more functions such as scheme selection, back up elements like time overcurrent elements, and control. The use of these relays was relatively short lived as digital relays became much more accepted. Solid-state relays came rack mounted, consisting of many printed circuit boards, as compared to electromagnetic and static types, which are permanently mounted on a switchboard. The solid state relay printed card can be removed from the case for testing and maintenance purposes. For example, in the late 1960s, solid-state protection schemes were developed that required an entire 19 in. wide, 7 ft tall rack to contain all of the components and logic cards. The schemes were extremely fast and were primarily used on extra-high-voltage (EHV) circuits. These relays do not have the capability to detect failure of power supply and autotesting of internal parts, or provide an alarm in case a failure is detected similar to the second generation of solid-state relays.

9.3.2.4 Microprocessor Relays (Fourth-Generation Relays)

Microprocessor-based or digital relays were marketed in the 1980s. However, these relays did not incorporate the complex algorithms of today in the earlier designs of these relays for protection. Over time these relays began incorporating multifunction protective functions that reduced the product and installation cost drastically. Today these relays include common hardware platforms, software platforms to perform many different functions and integrating protection with substation control. Although the basic protection principles have remained the same, the evolution of the digital relays using microprocessors has provided many benefits with a few shortcomings. Microprocessor relays are also referred to as numerical relays especially if they calculate the algorithms numerically. Digital relays are built using a microprocessor, an AC signal data acquisition system, memory components containing the relay algorithms, contact inputs to control the relay, and contact

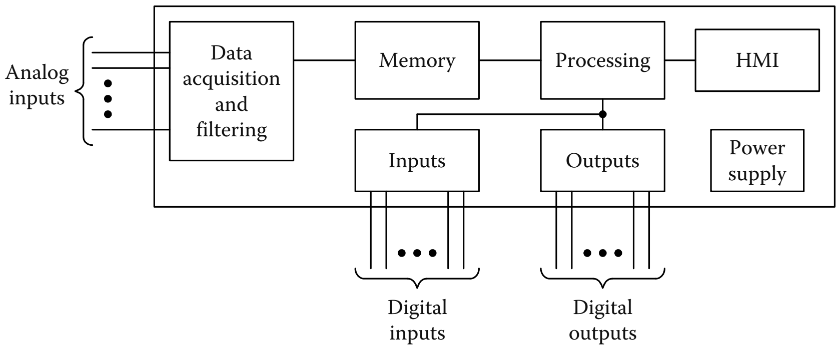


FIGURE 9.8
Simplified digital relay block diagram.

outputs to control other equipment. The algorithms and settings contained in the relay memory define the protection characteristics. Figure 9.8 shows a hardware block diagram for a typical digital relay design.

Analog values, currents and voltages are connected to the data acquisition and filtering block. Here the voltages and currents are reduced to low-level signals, typically ±5 V, so they can be converted to digital signals. Step-down instrument transformers provide isolation and from high voltage transients that may occur on the secondary wiring. The analog signals are filtered using a low-pass filter to remove high-frequency components and to prevent aliasing in the digital filtering process. The signals are then converted to digital values through an analog-to-digital (a/d) converter and multichannel multiplexer.

The output of the data acquisition block is mapped to memory areas. The data are stored for later use and are also passed to the processing block. The processing block reads and writes data to the memory block. This data is internal relay element status, digital input status, and digital output status. The processing unit also monitors the human machine interface (HMI), which typically consists of targeting light-emitting diodes (LEDs), pushbuttons, and a liquid crystal display (LCD). The power supply provides all of the control voltages that are required for operation of the electronic circuitry. Digital relays usually include automatic self-test functions. These self-tests verify correct operation of critical relay components. If a self-test detects an abnormal condition, the relay can close an output contact, send a message, or provide some other indication of the failure. The relay disables trip and control functions on detection of certain self-test failures. Since self-tests are executed often in the digital relay, they detect component failures soon after they occur. As a minimum, digital relay self-tests include tests of memory chips, a/d converter, power supply, and microprocessor. Figure 9.9 shows a high-speed line protection (SEL-421) digital relay manufactured by Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories, Incorporated (SEL).

FIGURE 9.9
High-speed line protection digital (microprocessor) relay SEL 421. (Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

9.4 Relay Application and Principles

The application of protective relays involves factors such as reliability, selectivity, speed of operation, complexity, and economy. Obviously, compromises need to be made among these factors to achieve a protection system that offers the most protection at minimum cost. The information needed to evaluate the application factors is the following:

- One-line system diagram
- Degree of protection required
- Short-circuit study
- Load currents
- Transformer and motor data
- Impedance data for the system equipment
- Operating procedures
- Existing protection and/or difficulties
- Ratios of CTs and VTs

The function of protective relaying can be classified as primary or back up relay protection. Primary relaying is the first line of defense when trouble occurs on the power system. The primary relaying provides the first line of protection and when it fails then back up relaying takes over to provide the second line of protection. Primary relaying should operate as fast as is technically and economically feasible. Prompt removal of faults minimizes equipment damage and helps maintain system stability. Primary relaying may fail because of the following:

- Control power for tripping failure
- Protective relay malfunction
- Breaker failure to open
- Relay and control wiring failure
- CT and/or VT failure

Therefore, back up relaying should be arranged so that anything that causes primary relaying to fail will not cause the back up relaying to fail. Back up relaying should be as completely separated from primary relaying as is possible, including control power, control circuits, and instrument transformers.

The relay operation is a function of the input quantities, such as current, voltage, impedance, and/or phase angle. The relay can be made to respond to either a single quantity or combination of two or all input quantities. When the relay is operated by a single quantity, its response is strictly a function of time, whereas when the relay is operated upon by two or more quantities, its operation is a function of the relative magnitude and phase angle difference of those quantities. Each relay then can be made to respond to its input quantities, known as the operating or relay characteristics. Relay characteristics are very useful in determining the relay setting, which in turn will determine relay speed, sensitivity, and selectivity for protection from power system short-circuits.

Relay application practices can be classified according to relay characteristics and the special requirements of various elements. They are discussed next.

Overcurrent relays

When excessive current flows in a circuit, it is necessary to trip the circuit breaker protecting that circuit. This type of protection is usually provided by either time delay or instantaneous overcurrent relays. The instantaneous relay, although inherently fast, requires a short time to operate, whereas time-delay relays have intentional time delay built into them to provide coordination with other overcurrent relays for selectivity. The selectivity is obtained by adjustment of current setting (sensitivity) and time, using the most applicable of several time characteristics. The relay time characteristics differ by the rate at which the time of operation of the relay decreases as the current increases. The time characteristics for each family of overcurrent relay consist of inverse, very inverse, extremely inverse, definite time, short time, and long time. These curves are shown in Figure 9.10. The application of overcurrent relay is generally more difficult and less permanent than that of other types of relaying. This is because the operation of overcurrent relays is affected by variations of short-circuit current magnitudes. These magnitude variations in short-circuit current are caused by changes in power system elements, operation, and system configuration.

Over–under voltage relays

The over–under voltage relays have characteristics similar to the overcurrent relays. The actuating quality in the operating element is voltage instead of current. Voltage relays often combine the under–over voltage elements in one relay, with contacts for either an undervoltage or overvoltage condition. These relays

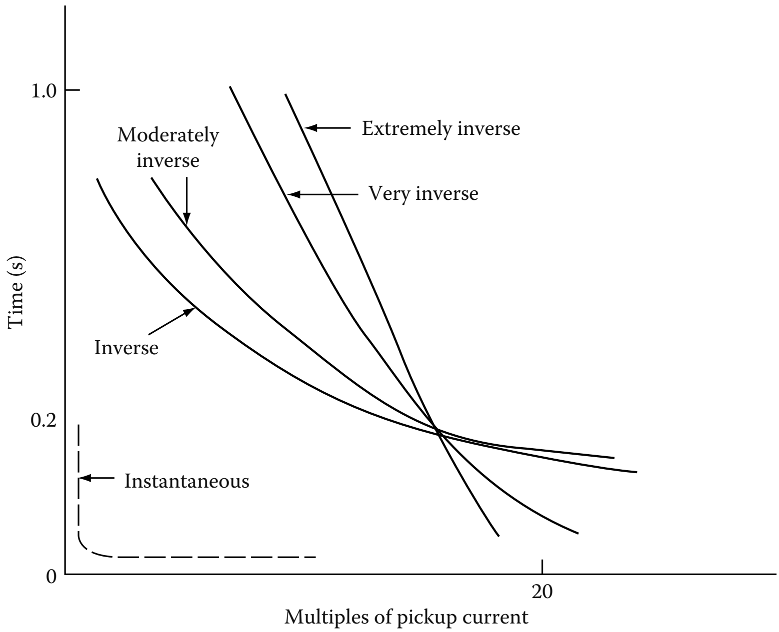


FIGURE 9.10
Time–current characteristics of various families of overcurrent relays.

may be used to trip the breaker or sound an alarm in case of the voltage exceeding a predetermined limit or falling below a predetermined value.

Directional relays
Directional relays are used when it is desirable to trip the circuit breaker for current flow in one direction only. That is, the direction is made responsive to the directional flow of power or current. This is achieved by making the relay distinguish certain differences in phase angle between current and reference voltage or current. The directional relay has a current winding and directional winding. The current winding is connected to the CT, whereas the directional winding is connected to the VTs to provide the circuit voltage for polarizing the unit. Therefore, the pickup of the relay is dependent on the magnitude of current and voltage and the phase relationship between them. The directional relay thus establishes one boundary of the protected zone; that is, it protects the circuit only in one direction. Directional relaying is often used where coordination becomes a problem, such as in tie lines between two supply substations or to provide protection against the motoring of a generator.

Current- or voltage-balance relays
Current-balance relays compare the magnitudes of current (or voltage) in two circuits (where these quantities vary within restricted limits) to detect an abnormal condition. The current-balance relay has two torque-producing elements actuated by currents (or voltage) from two different circuits or phases. Current-balance relaying between the phases of a motor is used to

protect the machine against overheating in case phase currents become unbalanced owing to short-circuits or fuse blowing. Current balance can be set with sufficient time delay to provide coordination with other relaying.

Distance relaying

The principal application of distance relaying is for transmission lines. A distance relay operates by comparing the voltage with the current at its location that is measuring the impedance of the line. The relay is designed to operate whenever the impedance under an abnormal condition becomes less than a predetermined value. Since the impedance is a function of line length, the relay operates when a fault (short-circuit) occurs within the given length of line that the relay is set to protect. Distance relays are built in three different types: (1) impedance, (2) admittance (mho), and (3) reactance.

Differential relaying

Differential relaying provides selectivity by providing a zone of protection by correct connection of the CTs. CTs having the same ratio are installed in all the connections to the component to be protected, and the secondaries of the CTs are connected in parallel to the relay restrain and operating coil. A typical one-phase differential connection is shown in Figure 9.11. As long as the current flow through the protected component is unchanged in magnitude and phase, the relay does not pick up. Such a condition would occur for a short-circuit fault outside the zone of relay protection. However, should a fault occur inside the zone of relay protection (that is, between the CTs), the differential relay would receive current in the operating coil. To obtain differential protection, almost any relay type can be used. However, differential relays are constructed to provide very sophisticated, fast short-circuit protection. A differential relay has two restraint coils, or more, and an operating coil. The restraint coils prevent the undesired relay operation for fault outside the differential zone, as well as CT errors. Maximum

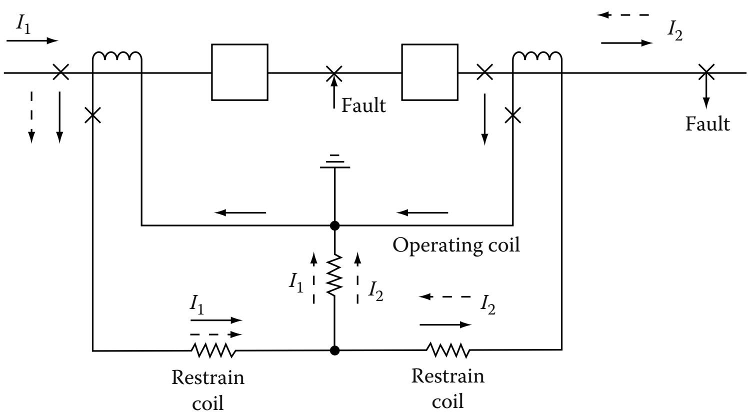


FIGURE 9.11
Typical differential relay connection.

restraint is produced if the current is in the same direction in the two restraint coils, and minimum restraint is produced if currents are in opposite directions in the two restraint coils. The current flowing through the operating coils (i.e., $I_1 - I_2$) must exceed a certain percentage of the through current (I_2) before the relay will operate. Because it is inherently selective, differential relaying is used as primary relaying on power system components and equipment.

Pilot wire relaying

Pilot wire relaying is a form of differential relaying normally used for protection of longer lines. The pilot wire employs a wire channel to compare currents entering and leaving the protected line between two terminals. The wire pilot channel can consist of the following:

- *Wire pilot*, consisting of a two-wire circuit between the ends of the line.
- *Carrier-current pilot*, wherein one conductor of the line and the earth comprise a pilot circuit for superimposed high-frequency currents.
- *Microwave pilot*, which is an ultrahigh-frequency radio channel between the ends of the line.

For external faults the currents are balanced at the two terminals of the line, whereas for internal faults the currents are not balanced and therefore relay pickup would occur.

9.5 Types of Relay Tests

The goal of protective relay testing is to maximize the availability of the protection and minimize the risk of undesired operation. Therefore, we must define adequate testing and monitoring methods with appropriate intervals to ensure availability and security are maximized. An electromechanical relay can fail without any external indication. Typically, the only way to detect a failure in an electromechanical relay is through routine maintenance or an undesired operation (i.e., a nuisance-trip or failure to trip). A modern digital relay performs self-diagnostics on key elements to ensure reliable operation. As a minimum, digital relay self-tests include tests of memory chips, a/d converter, power supply, and microprocessor. However, a digital relay failure may result in an undesired operation if the self-test routines do not detect the failure in time. Most failures are significant enough to either generate a self-test failure or cause the user to recognize the problem during routine operation.

Acceptance tests

When a utility engineer selects a new relay design, it is essential to perform tests of the selected relay to ensure correct operation for the intended application. These tests are referred to as type tests and are usually implemented on a single representative relay from the manufacturer. During type tests, utility staff is introduced to new relay models and functions. If there are specific application questions, utility staff discusses these questions with the relay manufacturer until there is a clear understanding of all the protective functions. Type tests include detailed tests of the relay characteristics such as mho circle plots, time–overcurrent curve plots, relay element accuracy, etc. The main objective of the type test is verification of the relay algorithms and characteristics.

Commissioning and start-up tests

Utilities typically require tests of each relay prior to placing relays in service. These tests are referred to as commissioning or installation tests. Once the utility accepts the results of the digital relay type tests, the requirement for commissioning testing is reduced. The operating characteristics of microprocessor-based relays are consistent. This allows us to rely on the type tests for detailed characteristic tests and focus the commissioning tests on simple tests of the relay hardware and implementation of the settings in accordance with the coordination study for the facility or substation.

Relay commissioning tests may be limited to include tests for calibration for implementing the new settings, input/output functionality, simple element accuracy tests, etc. Commissioning tests should also verify the effectiveness of calculated relay element and logic settings. Greater reliance on the type tests for the detailed relay characteristic tests is well justified because those characteristics are fixed in the relay algorithms.

Maintenance tests

The goal of routine maintenance is to verify that the protective relay will not operate unnecessarily and will operate when required. How can routine testing find problems in protective relays? In order to find problems that might be present, it is helpful to examine the type of problems that can occur in both classes of relays. Then, examine the types of tests being performed to see if they are exercising the relays in meaningful ways. Routine maintenance is necessary for the electromechanical relays since these relays are susceptible to environmental contamination and drift over time. These relays should be inspected, cleaned, and calibrated every year or every two years to ensure that they are functioning correctly. The maintenance frequency may be adjusted based on the problems found during the first few maintenance cycles.

Troubleshooting

Digital relays do not require any adjustment or calibration. The manufacturer performs all calibration before the product is delivered, field calibration or adjustment is not required. Digital relays usually include automatic self-test functions. These self-tests verify correct operation of critical relay components. If a self-test detects an abnormal condition, the relay can close an output contact, send a message, or provide some other indication of the failure. The digital relay disables trip and control functions on detection of certain self-test failures. On self-test failure, the relay should be removed from service and returned to the manufacturer for repair.

Electromechanical relays require periodic inspection, calibration, and adjustment. These adjustments may simply be adjustment of the spring tension or as complex as replacing coil, resistors, or capacitors. Electromechanical relays have been in use for many years and users have developed instructions for troubleshooting techniques for these relays. Another good source of information is the manufacturer's documentation for a particular device.

9.6 Testing and Maintenance of Electromechanical Protective Relays

The reliability of protective relays in isolating faulted equipment is dependent on correct installation and maintenance. After protective relays are correctly installed and tested, the maintenance testing objective should be to achieve maximum performance with minimum testing. Relays usually operate for an extremely short time during their long life. Therefore, the question arises as to whether the relay will operate under fault conditions. The answer is to routinely test all protective relays. However, overtesting should be avoided, because testing can potentially add more trouble than is corrected. All relay test programs should include tests that simulate normal operating conditions. The test program should include acceptance, installation, routine, and repair. Before meaningful tests can be conducted, advance preparation should be undertaken in order that the testing personnel become familiar with the relays or relay systems.

9.6.1 Relay Inspection and Tests

General

The installation, maintenance, and small repair testing are done in the field, whereas acceptance and major repair testing are conducted in the laboratory. To minimize the potential liability of adding trouble to the relays or relay system, the following general procedures are recommended.

Advance preparation

- Study the protection scheme (station prints, relay instruction manuals)
- Obtain and review results of previous tests and other pertinent information
- Arrange for test equipment to perform all tests
- Make outage request and switching arrangements
- Schedule remote tripping and load tests, when required

Daily preparation

- Set up test equipment. Observe precautions in selection and connection to low-voltage service
- Operating or test personnel perform switching, as arranged, according to approved outage requests

Open and isolate, TEST DEAD, and ground if required; place "Keep Out" tag, and report "On" the circuit; complete operating log entries.

If test personnel are not present when switching is performed, verify the isolation, grounding, tag placement, and TEST DEAD before reporting "On" the circuit.

- Isolate control circuits; that is, remove control fuses, open test switches, and/or operate selector controls as required. *Caution:* Be aware of overlapping and interconnecting protective circuits associated with operating equipment. Take measures necessary to keep such schemes in operation. Isolate control, current, and voltage transformer secondary circuits to protect against an unintentional operation from tests on the tagged circuit.

Tests and inspections

- Perform and record results of as found tests. Confirm calibrations and settings with a system protection study or relay setting and manufacturer's instructions. Record any defects found; discrepancies should be reported promptly to a supervisor or person in charge and resolved, if necessary.
- Verify printed information on the routine inspection sheet (RIS) test forms from previous tests. Prepare other RIS forms, if required.
- Perform visual and mechanical inspections.

Check tightness, clearance of exposed lugs, and condition of wiring on panels and switchboards. Check clips of fuse holders for tightness and alignment. Inspect and perform minor repairs on relays and auxiliary devices. Observe clearances, mechanical freedom, condition of contacts and control springs, condition of internal insulation, and tightness of internal connections. Clean magnets. Check targets and reset mechanisms. Clean glass covers, inspect and replace cover gaskets as needed.

- Inspect and test CT and VT, related auxiliaries, and associated wiring.
- Inspect for evidence of corona.
- Check nameplate information with test forms and other data sources available on the equipment.
- Perform CT secondary winding impedance and continuity (backfeed test).

Electrical tests on VT secondary windings normally are not necessary. VT performance is assured by in-service observations and primary fuse monitoring schemes.

- Perform "as left" relay tests. Record results on test forms. Make necessary electrical and mechanical adjustments to achieve desired results.
- Calibrate local indicating and recording instruments, and adjust as necessary. Record results on instrument test forms. Calibrate and adjust supervisory telemetering transducers.
- Perform complete tripping and operational tests to verify all control and protective functions and alarms. Include supervisory, remote tripping, and bus differential trip circuits.
- Complete test forms. Make necessary corrections for circuit designation changes and other changes that may have occurred but were not previously recorded. Include man-hours required to make the tests.

After completion

- Replace covers, switchgear plates, remove test leads, jumpers, and separators, close test switches, replace fuses, inspect circuit equipment, and set up control and selector switches preparatory to switching.
- Make inventory of tools, jumpers, separators, instruments, and other equipment used. When completed, instruct crew members to consider the circuit as energized and the tag holder to advise that he is ready to report "Off" the circuit.
- Report "Off" the circuit and arrange for circuit restoration.
- Operating or testing personnel remove protective grounds and perform switching to restore the circuit to service.
- Perform desired tests under load. Replace covers when completed.
- Restore all station controls to normal, complete station operating log and "Keep Out" tag entries.

After tests completed on all circuits

- Most of the following items may be performed progressively during the total test period.
- Make necessary field corrections to station prints. Arrange for follow up in order that corrections are made in permanent records.
- Arrange for necessary changes or additions to panel or other circuit designations.
- Complete entry of the relay test records in station ledger if such a ledger is available.
- Prepare a list of items that were not complete or tests not performed. Include items that may need to be referred to other groups. Submit

this list along with completed test forms to your supervisor or persons in charge.

- Inspect station to confirm that prints and records are secured and various equipment accessories and spare parts are correctly stored.

9.6.2 Protective Relay Test Procedures and Circuits

The testing of protective relays and associated circuitry can be carried out by following recommendations outlined in manufacturer's bulletins or the user's own test procedures. These procedures should always be updated based upon a review of past relay performance, test equipment evaluation, and testing methods.

The test interval can be adjusted based upon experience. Otherwise, testing of relays on a yearly or two yearly bases is recommended. The test methods used for relay testing consist of relay functional tests (i.e., relay equipment is separated from power equipment) and only secondary tests are made. The following general guidelines are recommended for electrical testing of protective relays, associated instrument transformers, and wiring.

General protective relay calibration and checklist

- Perform insulation resistance test on each relay coil to frame. Do not perform this test on solid-state relays. Check manufacturer's instructions to verify if any other precautions are required.
- Perform the following tests on the nominal settings specified.

  Pickup parameters on each operating element.

  Timing tests should be performed at three points on the time dial curve.

  Pickup target and seal-in units.

  Special tests as required to check operation of restraint, directional, and other elements per manufacturer's instruction manual.
- A zero check test should be conducted on any relay that has a time dial. The purpose is to determine proper time dial position when the relay is fixed and moving contacts are closed by the manual rotation of the time dial toward zero.
- Perform phase angle and magnitude contribution tests on all differential- and directional-type relays after energizing to vectorially provide correct polarity and connection.

9.6.3 Relay Test Points and Test Circuits

Time Overcurrent Relays

Most of the time overcurrent relays have three torque-producing elements. They are control spring which restrains the unit from operating and is the fine adjustment for pickup current; the drag magnet which retards the unit's operating time; the "U" or the electromagnetic which produces operating torque and is the coarse adjustment for pickup. The shape of the time–current curve is essentially a function of the electromagnetic iron circuit. As the current through the coil increases, the flux increases, thereby increasing the torque and thus decreasing the operating time. However, at current levels above pickup, the iron begins to saturate, resulting in less torque (flux) being produced for a corresponding increase in current. Also, the effect of iron saturation is to produce nonsinusoidal currents. Thus the relay operating time becomes fixed (i.e., time–current curve flattens out) regardless of current magnitude. The saturation of the iron increases the reluctance of the iron and thus flux is spilled out of the iron. The relay case normally acts as a shunt for this flux and the flux is passed through the case and not through the relay disk. If the relay is tested in its case, the relay published time–current curves will be duplicated and in-service conditions duplicated as well. However, if the relay is tested outside its case, the published time–current curves may not be duplicated including the service conditions accurately. Therefore, from a preventive maintenance point of view, testing the relay out of the case can yield results that will not check the performance of the relay accurately for in-service conditions, or previous and future results.

The first test on the overcurrent relay should be to check minimum pickup. Pickup is defined as that value of current which will just close the relay contacts with the relay set at the lowest time dial position. The minimum pickup should be within ±5%.

The next test should be to check the relay calibration at minimum of three timing points, such as at 2 × tap, 4.5 × tap, and 6 × tap settings. The periodic inspection pickup tolerance is ±5% of tap value for nongeared relays and ±7% for geared relays. For new relays, the tolerance is ±1% of tap value. Check the relay for dropout or reset by reducing the current until the relay drops out or fully resets. This test will indicate excessive friction in the jewel bearing. If the relay is sluggish in resetting or fails to reset completely, then the jewel bearing and pivot should be inspected for cracks in the jewel and dirt. If dirt is the problem, the jewel can be cleaned with an orange stick while the pivot can be wiped clean with a soft, lint free cloth.

Check the instantaneous unit pickup by gradually applying the current. Also check the target seal-in unit by blocking the main overcurrent contacts. The testing of an overcurrent relay is done one phase at a time. The ground relay is tested similarly to the phase relays.

Directional overcurrent relays

The overcurrent unit of a directional relay should be checked similarly to the overcurrent relay, with the directional unit blocked closed. The directional relay should be tested for minimum pickup, maximum torque angle, contact gap, and clutch pressure. If the phase power supply is not available, the directional unit can be tested by applying single-phase voltage and current in phase. Usually, this test will give large variations in in-phase pickup, because of in-phase angle being far different from maximum torque angle.

Differential relays
The test conducted on differential relays is to check minimum pickup values using operating and differential currents. The slope (differential characteristic) and harmonic restraint should also be checked. It may also be desirable to trip all circuit breakers from differential relays as a regular testing procedure.

Distance relays
The distance characteristics of the relay are checked near the fault and load angles. Similar to the directional overcurrent relays, the pickup, maximum torque angle, clutch pressure, and contact gap tests should be made.

Pilot wire relays
The pilot wire relay schemes should be tested for shorts, continuity, and grounds in the pilot wires. The operating values are checked along with supervisory and alarm relays used in pilot wire schemes.

Plunger-type relays
These types of relays are instantaneous and/or auxiliary relays, such as PJC, SC, HFA, etc. These relays are tested for operating pickup and dropout values by gradually increasing of decreasing the operating current or voltage.

Current-balance relays
Check pickup of each coil as explained under section on overcurrent relays. Check for no-trip condition by applying equal amounts of current to opposing coils. Also check operation of the target indicator coil similar to an overcurrent relay.

Overvoltage relay
Check minimum pickup of overvoltage coil similar to overcurrent relays. Select three timing points on the specified time dial. Pickup and timing points should be within ±1% for new installations and within ±5% on existing installations. Check the instantaneous (if applicable) pickup and target indicator coil.

Undervoltage relay
Check dropout of relay and time relay trip when voltage is suddenly reduced from rated voltage to dropout voltage settings or to zero. Dropout and timing points should be within ±1% for new installations and within ±5% for existing installations. The instantaneous unit should be checked for dropout and target indicator coil.

Thermal overload relays
The thermal overload relays minimum pickup value should be checked using some convenient multiple of tap settings. Because of long time characteristics, the relay pickup point below 200% of tap setting may take a considerable time. Therefore, for test purposes, check pickup at about 200% to 400% of tap settings. Similar to overcurrent relays, the relay time should be checked for several points on the time dial curve. The acceptable time should be within ±10% of specified values. Also check the instantaneous pickup values and target indicator coil.

Voltage-restrained or voltage-controlled overcurrent relays
The overcurrent unit is checked and calibrated much the same as a simple time overcurrent relay. In the case of a voltage-restrained relay, the current pickup of the relay will change with the voltage applied to the voltage sensing coil. In the case of the voltage- or torque-controlled relay, the overcurrent element will not function at all until the voltage element drops out. Care should be taken when working with any of the voltage circuits on switchgear where these relays are applied because loss of sensing voltages will cause the relays to operate on what would otherwise be considered normal current flow.

Under–over frequency relays
The settings for these relays must be derived by a careful, engineering analysis; and not be guessed at or estimated as they will affect the entire system's continuity of service. The relays generally require three calibration functions: (1) voltage cutoff or drop out; (2) over or under frequency pickup points; and (3) time delay before trip after frequency set point has been sensed. The delay times are not necessarily equal.

Synchronism check relays
Setting and calibrating these relays requires test equipment similar to that used in distance relaying. The permissible window of the angle between the bus and line voltages must be accurately determined during the calibration or maintenance tests. These relays generally have delay times associated with the angle pickup points, and a set of condition switches that dictate relay action when one or more of the sensing voltages is (are) not present.

9.6.4 Instrument Transformers Calibration

As part of the relay testing and calibration, instrument transformers, such as CT, VT, and capacitive potential devices, should be given excitation, ratio, polarity, and continuity checks. These tests are discussed in detail in Section 9.2 however a brief overview of these tests is as follows:

Ratio check—CTs
The connections for the ratio check test are shown in Figure 9.12. Apply current to the primary to give 1 A in the secondary. For example, in the connection diagram, 120 A is applied to the primary of a 600/5 CT. For a correct ratio check, 1 A should be measured by the ammeter connected in the CT secondary circuit.

Polarity check
The connection diagram for polarity check is shown in Figure 9.13. The negative side of the 7.5 V battery is connected to the nonpolarity side of the CT. Connect a DC voltmeter or low-reading ammeter in the secondary of the CT; the positive side of the battery terminal is left unconnected. To verify polarity connections, momentarily touch the battery positive terminal as shown in the diagram. If the meter needle deflects in the positive direction, polarity is true as connected. If the meter needle deflects in the negative direction, then polarity connections are not as shown connected.

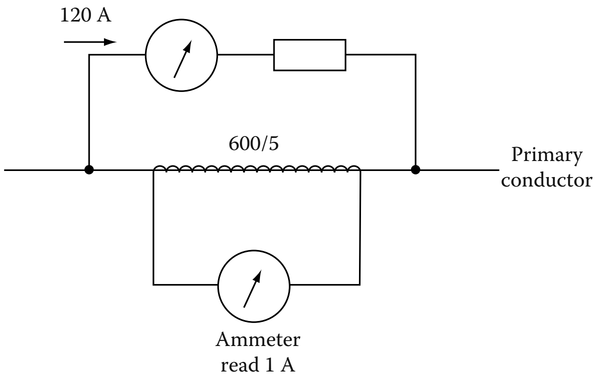


FIGURE 9.12
CT ratio check.

The tests for CTs discussed above may be conducted using a CT test sets made by Megger Limited. These test sets are model CTER-91 and MCT-1600 which are very portable, and use the voltage comparison method for testing CTs. Both of these models can be used to test single and multiratio CTs in accordance with IEEE Standard C57.13.1 using a variable voltage source and precision instrumentation.

These test sets can automatically perform saturation, ratio, and polarity tests all at the same time and display results, including saturation curves on a graphical display. Test results can also be printed directly or stored in an electronic file for future comparison or trending purposes. The MCT-1600 is a newer test set which can produce up to 1 A at 1600 V and up to 5 A at 40 V. This allows saturation testing of most large bushing CTs and burden testing of external CT load circuits. Multiratio CTs should be tested on the individual taps to verify specific saturation and ratio settings applicable to desired relaying schemes.

All of the three tests discussed above, saturation, ratio, and polarity, can be performed without changing any leads. The advantage of using these test sets is that CTs may be tested in their equipment configuration, such as being

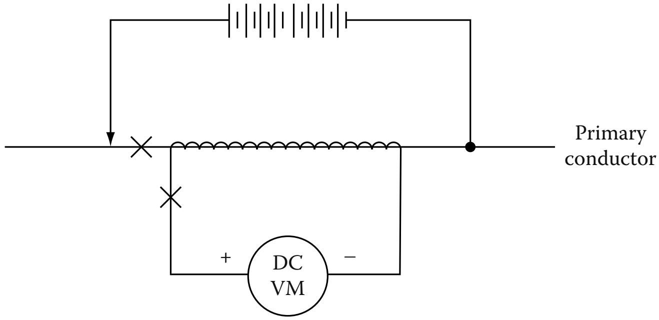


FIGURE 9.13
CT polarity check.

FIGURE 9.14
MCT-1600 test set for testing CTs. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

mounted in transformers, oil circuit breakers, or switchgear. This eliminates the need to remove bushings or remove CTs from their mounting. Of course, it is necessary for the equipment to be deenergized and totally isolated from the electrical system prior to making these tests. The MCT-1600 model is shown in Figure 9.14.

Grounding CT and VT circuits
The CT and VT circuits should be grounded at only one point. Relay misoperations can be caused by grounding the neutral at two points, such as one ground at the switchyard and another at the relay panel. At least once every 3 years with the primary de-energized, the known ground should be removed and the overall circuits should be checked for additional grounds and insulation breakdowns.

Open-secondary sircuits

WARNING: Secondary circuits of CTs must not be open while primary current flows. Extreme care should be taken to avoid breaking the secondary circuit while primary current is flowing. If the secondary is open-circuited, the primary current raises core flux density to saturation and induces a high voltage pulse in the secondary every half cycle. This high voltage pulse can be four to six times normal voltage and can endanger human life, and damage connected apparatus and leads. If it is necessary to change secondary conditions while primary current is flowing, the secondary terminals must be short-circuited while the change is being made. *Caution* should be exercised when working with differential circuits as shorting a CT in an energized differential relaying circuit could result in a relay operation. It is recommended that the secondaries of all CTs be kept short-circuited at all times when not installed in a circuit such as being held in stock or being transported.

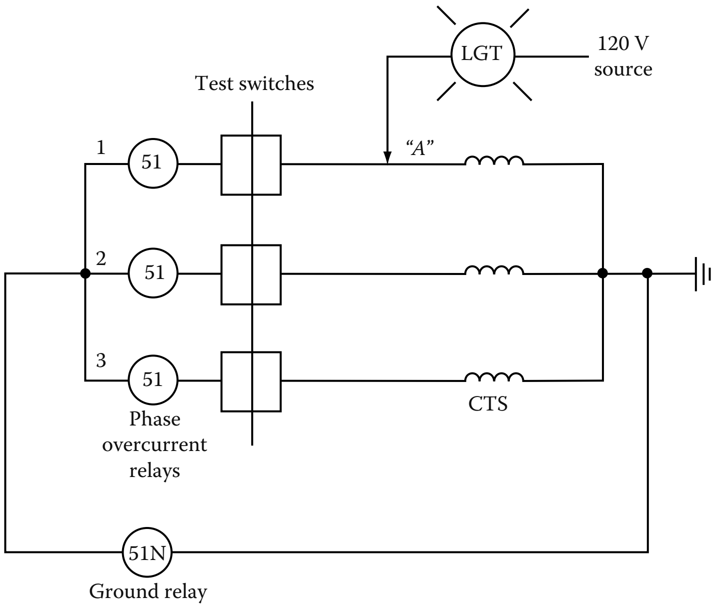


FIGURE 9.15
Continuity check for CTs and associated wiring.

Continuity check (backfeed test)

This test is conducted to check the CT windings and the wiring from test switch to CT (backfeed) for the three phases. The relay test connection diagram is shown in Figure 9.15. Conduct tests as follows:

- Apply 120 V low current (about 3 A) or a 20 V source with a 100 W lamp at point A. Point A is the test switch location where the protective relay is isolated from CTs with the relay ground maintained. If the lamp has no glow or no current reading is observed, the CT windings are checked.
- Next, jumper to ground the hot side of the CT. The lamp will glow brightly (or 3 A will read on low-ampere source). This indicates that relay circuit wiring is continuous without any shorts or open.
- Measure the insulation resistance of transformer secondary windings and CT leads with a 500 V megohmmeter.
- Measure the transformer primary insulation with applicable potential test apparatus.
- Repeat the preceding test to check all three phases.
- Verify the connection of the secondary VT leads by applying a low voltage to the leads and checking for this voltage at applicable devices.
- Check for a VT secondary load with secondary voltage and current measurements. Make sure that the load is less than the rating of the VT.

9.7 Testing and Commissioning of Static and Digital Relays

The differences between static (second and third generation) and digital relays (fourth generation) were listed in Sections 9.3.2.2 through 9.3.2.4, respectively. As it was mentioned, the earlier versions of static relays are not equipped with automatic self-test features therefore they may require more attention than the digital relays having self-test features. The inspection and maintenance of static and digital relays can be addressed under each relay type. The following is a guide for inspecting and testing static relays.

Static relays
Static relays should be tested in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations given in relay instruction books. As there are no moving parts in static relays, there is no physical wear due to usage and no need for lubricants. Prime causes of failure in electronic components are heat, vibration, and moisture. Overheating can be caused by voltage transients, current surges, excessive power, or high ambient temperature. Vibration can loosen or break leads and connections and can crack component casings or insulation resulting in equipment failure. Moisture can result in corrosion of metallic elements which can result in circuit discontinuities, poor contact, or shorts. Preventive maintenance of static relays should be directed toward removing causes of failure listed above by doing the following:

- Keep equipment clean by periodic vacuuming or blowing out of dirt, dust, and other surface contaminants
- Keep the equipment dry and protected against moisture and corrosion
- Inspect to see that all connections, leads, and contacts are tight and free as possible from effects of vibration
- Check to see that there is adequate ventilation to conduct heat away efficiently

Preventive measures should not be applied unnecessarily as this may contribute to failures. For example, printed circuit cards should not be pulled from their racks to be inspected if there is no real need. Operating test switches unnecessarily may introduce damaging voltage transients.

Digital relays
Digital relays are built using a microprocessor, an AC signal data acquisition system, memory components containing the relay algorithms, contact inputs to control the relay, and contact outputs to control other equipment. Digital relay operating characteristics are defined by the algorithms and settings contained in the relay memory.

As mentioned earlier, digital relays are often equipped with automatic self-test functions. These self-tests verify correct operation of critical relay components. If a self-test detects an abnormal condition, it can close an output contact, send a message, or provide some other indication of the failure. When the alarm occurs, a technician can be dispatched to repair or replace the device quickly.

The analog input section is typically monitored by automatic self-testing. This may be somewhat limited because a steady-state condition cannot be fully defined. With a protective relay, there are often many steady-state conditions possible under each mode of operation. Since the analog input portion of the digital relay is only partially self-tested, routine maintenance assists in verification of the analog measuring components.

Many digital relays offer metering features which give the user a convenient means of verifying the accuracy of the relay analog input section. The user can verify metering quantities and be assured the relay is using valid data for its relay element computations. This practice is sound if the digital relay uses the same measuring circuitry for both metering and relaying. On the other hand, if the relay uses separate circuitry for its metering functions, the metering data checks only the components common to both the metering and relaying circuitry.

The contact input/output circuitry is another part of the digital relay which allows only partial automatic testing. For this reason, it may be appropriate to implement a routine trip check. Many digital relays provide a trip feature which allows the user to locally or remotely trip the relay. The trip check verifies the trip circuit wiring and the integrity of the trip coil. This trip command feature provides a convenient means of tripping the circuit breaker without the need to inject a simulated fault to the relay. If the relay is routinely operating for faults, the actual relay operations may be adequate verification of the relay input/output functions.

The digital processing section, typically a microprocessor, is the interface between the analog input section and the contact input/output section. Since the analog and contact input/output sections cannot function without the processing section, normal relay use and maintenance checks act as routine verification of the microprocessor. Additionally, manufacturers are able to offer very thorough self-tests to continually monitor the status of the computer.

Engineers should work closely with relay vendors to determine what relay functions are not checked by relay self-tests and how those functions should be checked in the field. In the case of the processing section, there are typically no special tests required.

Many of the maintenance features are executable by remote command and often could replace routine maintenance altogether. Also, consider the analysis of digital relay fault data comparable to routine relay maintenance. Those relays which do not encounter faults may require more thorough routine maintenance checks.

Digital relay routine testing practices should verify relay functions that cannot be fully verified by the relay self-testing. Figure 9.16 shows how all relay failures can be detected using a regime consisting of:

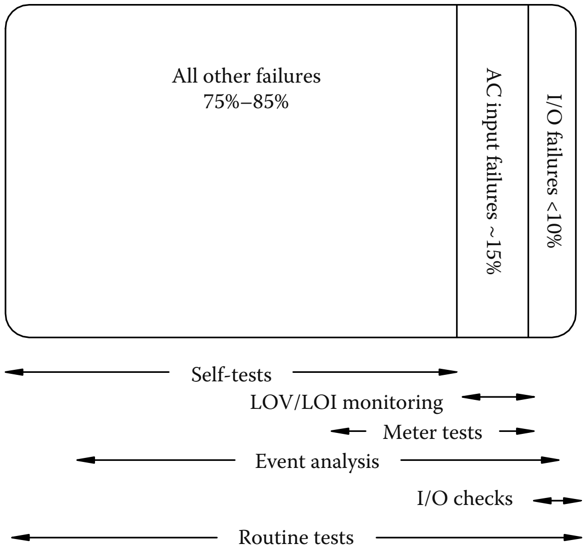


FIGURE 9.16
Digital relay self-testing and monitoring functions entirely replace traditional routine tests. (From Kumm, J., et al., Assessing the effectiveness of self-tests and other monitoring means in protective relays, *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 4, 1995. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

- Self-test alarm monitoring
- Loss of signal (loss of voltage [LOV] and loss of current [LOI]) monitoring
- Review of relay event reports
- Periodic checks of relay inputs and outputs
- Periodic calibration check by comparison

Relay self-testing and event data analysis detect the majority of relay failures. Monitoring LOV and LOI functions, executing meter tests and input/output checks verify the balance of relay functions. Taken together, this regime replaces complex routine tests. These simple tests can be performed quickly, minimizing the need for complex test equipment.

9.7.1 Test Methods

Test methods can be separated into three primary categories:

- Steady-state testing
- Dynamic testing
- End-to-end testing

Steady-state testing is the most common method for testing a digital relay. As the name implies, steady-state values are applied to characterize the relay performance or verify settings. For example, when testing a distance element a fixed voltage level is applied to the relay and the current is slowly increased until the element operates. The relay accuracy, characteristics, timing, and operation of internal logic can easily be verified. Note that steady-state testing does not truly represent a faulted condition on the power system. Sudden changes in current and voltage magnitudes, phase angles, and DC offset are not used.

Steady-state testing requires that the tester or the test developer have an understanding of the internal relay logic, especially in a multifunction digital relays. Again, referring to the distance element example, many supervisory elements are included in the distance element final output. If the relay experiences a loss of the source voltage, the distance element is blocked from operation. During steady-state testing it is likely that a loss of voltage element would set and block the distance element output thus making it appear that it is not operating correctly. Fortunately, most digital relays allow the user to disable these supervisory functions for test purposes.

Dynamic testing is designed to represent the actual power system conditions the relay may see in the application. In this case, normal load conditions are applied to the relay before a fault is applied. Normal load conditions could mean nominal voltages and currents, or just nominal current, depending upon the type of relay. Power system parameters are used to determine the fault quantities. Line and source impedances are entered into a program to calculate the fault currents and voltages at certain locations on the protected line. The test is performed by applying the prefault current and voltages for a period of time, then suddenly changing to the fault values. Some test sets have the capability of supply DC offset current to more accurately represent the power system conditions.

End-to-end testing is similar to dynamic testing. The same types of signals that are used to perform dynamic testing are also used for end-to-end testing. The primary difference is that the relays are tested at their respective installation sites with all of the equipment connected to the relay. For example, circuit breakers, communications equipments, and other auxiliary devices. The test sets are time synchronized using a satellite clock signal providing a high accuracy time source. The test sequences are initiated at all locations simultaneously and the response of the relay is evaluated as if the test were an actual fault condition.

9.7.2 Commissioning Methods

The purpose of commission tests is to verify that the relay has been set correctly and that all functionality is operating as expected. Unlike electromechanical relays, the operating characteristic of the digital relay does not change, therefore, it is unnecessary to do a complete series of test verifying all of the operating characteristics. Commissioning tests should be focused in the following areas:

- Settings
- Protection function checks
- Communication checks
- Auxiliary power checks
- Other checks

Testing should be complete enough to verify that the relay settings have been entered correctly. Comparison of the expected settings against the entered setting is relatively easy to do with the support of a settings manager or program. Tests should verify that the elements operate at the specified settings. Check pickup of overcurrent elements, time delays, distance element reaches, and custom logic. It is not necessary to check unused functions. In addition, testing should be limited to that required to verify settings, it is not necessary to test the complete operating characteristic of the relay. For example, it is not necessary to test the entire circular characteristic of a mho distance element. The pickup at the maximum reach and the maximum torque angle setting only need to be checked. Another example would be a time overcurrent element. Check pickup setting and two or three points on the timing curve to verify that the correct curve shape and time dial have been selected.

Digital relays include many functions and features, this is one of the advantages of using digital relays, however, it can also make them somewhat complex and difficult to test. Testing should be focused on the functions that are used in the specific application. In many cases, customized logic is implemented to meet specific application needs. As recommended previously, it is unnecessary to test all of the internal protection logic. Instead, test the logic that requires user input, for example, output logic, trip logic, input logic, etc.

Digital relays also provide various means of communications. Communications can be used for data and status information for a SCADA system, engineering access for events and setting changes, and communications between devices for high-speed protection schemes. Communication is typically via a serial port, either RS232 or RS485, however, many relays also offer Ethernet communications. Communications logic and data should be verified through the entire system. For example, SCADA communications through a DNP master should be verified to the control center. The appropriate information and data should be sent and confirmed. Digital communications between devices should also be verified. Some schemes require delays to account for communications channel and these should be checked to ensure secure operation.

Verify the battery system and all connected devices. Also verify the current and voltage circuits, this includes checking monitoring functions like loss-of-potential detection.

Develop a test plan when testing digital relays. A well thought out test plan ensures that all of the aspects of the scheme will be correctly tested and documented. Use AC and DC schematics, communications diagrams, and the relay settings to determine what and how the relay should be tested. Developing a checklist for verification and testing is very helpful in assuring that everything is thoroughly tested and documented. For example, a test list for a line protection system may include items such as

- Primary protection function checkout
- Auxiliary protection function checkout
- Control functions
- Relay logic; fixed and user programmed
- Physical mounting
- Electrical connections
- Setting verification
- Communications; protection and data monitoring
- Security
- In-service checks

Customize the checklist to suite the specific application. A well thought out test program will have long-term benefits in reuse and troubleshooting in the future.

9.7.3 Commissioning Examples

The following two examples show commissioning practices for a bus protection scheme and a transformer differential scheme.

Bus protection scheme

The first example illustrates commissioning of microprocessor relays for a fast bus transfer protection system using a protection processor. Figure. 9.17 shows a one-line diagram of a distribution bus protection scheme using a fast bus trip scheme.

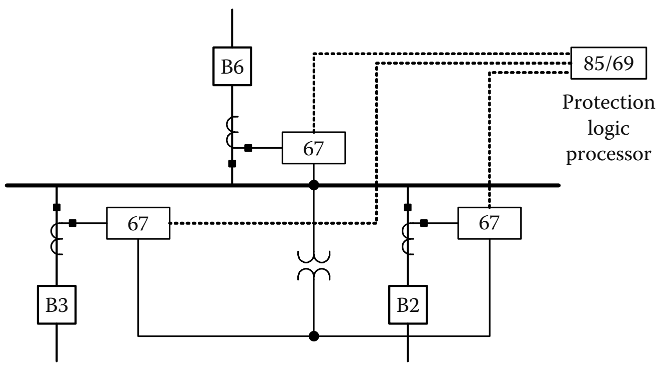


FIGURE. 9.17
Fast bus trip one-line diagram. (From Zimmerman, K., Commissioning of protective relay systems, *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 1, 2007. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

Most of the logic for the protection of this scheme is developed in the settings of a protection logic processor (85/69 device). Thus, to successfully commission this scheme, we need to verify the performance of the following:

- Directional overcurrent elements (67)
- Performance of the communications path
- CT and VT connections and polarities of the inputs to the 67 devices
- Fast bus trip and block logic settings in relays and protection logic processor
- Breaker trip/DC control circuit

The directional overcurrent elements can be tested and validated by applying test values from system faults (e.g., internal bus fault, external line faults).

CT and VT polarities, phasing, and ratios are usually checked through manual field measurements at commissioning. One improvement is to use synchrophasor data from the relays, if available. Phasor measurements take a precise snapshot of the currents and voltages at the same instant in time.

Commissioning the communications path and logic settings is more complex and requires that the logic be broken out into logic diagrams.

Ideally, we would like to test the scheme all the way through. The best environment for this is a laboratory simulation with all three relays and the protection logic processor connected with complete AC voltage and current and the entire communications scheme connected.

For example, individually test directional overcurrent elements (67) for breakers 2, 3, and 6. Then apply fault simulations for each scenario to verify the internal and external fault logic (expected results are shown in parentheses):

1. Breakers 3, 6 internal, breaker 2 external (no trip).
2. Breakers 2, 6 internal, breaker 3 external (no trip).
3. Breakers 2, 3 internal, breaker 6 external (no trip).
4. Breakers 2, 3, 6 internal (trip within 25 ms).
5. Verify transient reversal block logic by applying test 1, then test 4 in short intervals, e.g., apply test 1 for two cycles, then test 4 for four cycles, etc. (no trip).
6. Verify disable fast bus trip logic by applying loss of potential (LOP) and relay out of service conditions, then apply test 4 (no trip).

By performing a thorough laboratory simulation of the complete logic, we can then install and commission this system. In the field, we check the CTs and VTs, verify the integrity of the communications path, and perform breaker trip tests to validate the DC control circuit.

Transformer differential scheme

The example shows a method for commissioning microprocessor relays for a transformer differential scheme. Commissioning transformer differential protection schemes involves several levels of testing:

- Hardware tests verify transformer turns ratio, CT turns ratios, and CT polarity.
- Functional tests validate the performance of the relay elements with the installed settings and test the DC control circuits. Trip tests verify that the relay operates the correct lockout relays and breakers.
- In-service or commissioning tests verify the primary and secondary AC current circuits. We must take into account the transformer ratio and connection; the CT ratio, wiring, and connections; and the relay settings.

The last item is, by far, the most challenging aspect of assuring certainty in commissioning. modern transformer differential relays have settings that compensate for the difference in the secondary currents, adjusting for the transformer connection (e.g., delta–wye) and removing zero-sequence current.

In order to perform commissioning tests, we must apply balanced three-phase currents to the primary system. Some users energize the transformer to the system and begin to apply load. Ideally, we prefer to perform this test without connecting to the power system. For example, use a portable generator or a station service transformer to supply a reduced voltage three-phase power supply to one of the windings of the transformer and apply a short-circuit to the remaining winding. An example test setup is shown in Figure 9.18.

Through this procedure, we can check the following:

- The phase rotation and angle of the currents
- Secondary current magnitudes
- The relationship of the high-side currents to the low-side currents
- The operating or differential current (should be nearly zero)

For the transformer shown in Figure 9.18, given a 240 V AC source, we can calculate expected relay currents (magnitude and angle). Using relay metering data, we then observe the measured currents, as shown in Table 9.4. If the measured (actual) currents do not match the calculated (expected) currents and/or we observe differential current, we must perform troubleshooting to systematically check CT wiring, connections, and relay settings to correct the discrepancy.

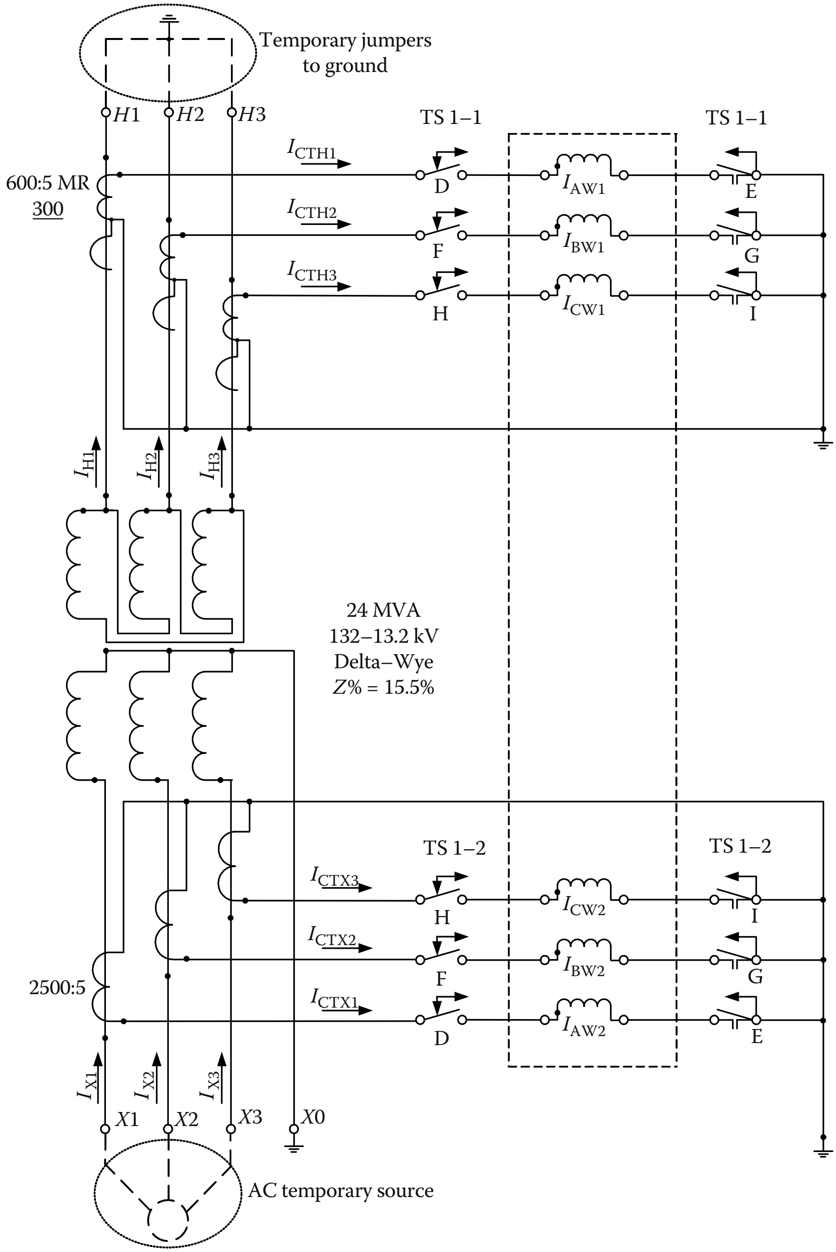


FIGURE 9.18
Three-line diagram of primary injection test. (From Zimmerman, K., Commissioning of protective relay systems, *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 4, 2007. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

TABLE 9.4

Commissioning Test Worksheet Quantities: Compare Expected Currents with Actual Currents

	Expected Currents	Actual Currents
I_{CTX1} (I_{AW2})	246 mA at +150°	0.27 at 149.7°
I_{CTX2} (I_{BW2})	246 mA at +30°	0.25 at −90.5°
I_{CTX3} (I_{CW2})	246 mA at −90°	0.25 at 29.8°
I_{CTH1} (I_{AW1})	205 mA at 0°	0.22 at 0.0°
I_{CTH2} (I_{BW1})	205 mA at −120°	0.21 at −119.7°
I_{CTH3} (I_{CW1})	205 mA at +120°	0.21 at 120.3°

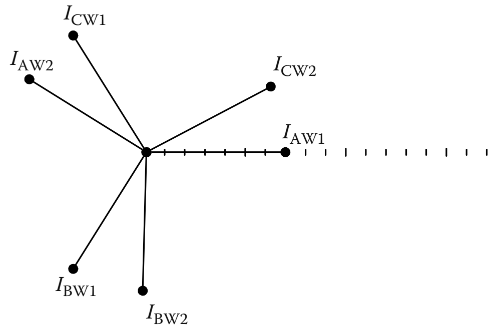


FIGURE 9.19
Plots of measured currents during commissioning test. (From Zimmerman, K., Commissioning of protective relay systems, *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 5, 2007. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

Sometimes it helps to plot the currents, as shown in Figure 9.19. Winding 2 B-phase and C-phase currents in this system appear to be reversed.

9.8 Event Reporting

Event reporting is a standard feature in most microprocessor-based protective relays. The data and information saved in these reports are valuable for testing, measuring performance, analyzing problems, and identifying deficiencies before they cause future misoperations.

Event reports indicate whether the protective relay operated as expected. In addition, analysis identifies whether all associated components of the protection system were installed and operated correctly. Power system models, settings, wiring, auxiliary relays, circuit breakers, current and VTs, communications equipment, the DC battery system, and connected loads can all be measured and monitored by analyzing event report data.

Every time the power system faults and relays capture data, you have readymade test reports. By analyzing actual relay and system performance, you can save money by extending or eliminating traditional routine tests.

```
FEEDER 1                          Date : 02/11/97        Time: 09:54:14.881
STATION A                                                                    Firmware
                                                                             identifier

FID = SEL-351-X111-Vf-D970128     CID = 1F00                          Firmware checksum
                                                                      identifier

                                                                   Out      In
  Currents (Amps Pri)        Voltages (kV Pri)                     135791   1357

     IA     IB     IC   IN      IG     VA     VB     VC     VS Vdc  Freq24680A2468
[1]
    188   -291    102    0      -1    8.0  -11.8    3.8    0.0 126 60.00...... b...
    226     50   -278    0      -2    9.0    2.5  -11.5   -0.0 126 60.00...... b...
                                                                        One cycle of data
    189    290    102   -1      -1   -8.0   11.8   -3.8   -0.0 126 60.00...... b...
   -227    -51    277   -1      -1   -9.0   -2.5   11.5    0.0 126 60.00...... b...

                                                              > Arrow indicates trigger row
             [Cycles 2 and 3 not shown in this example]       corresponding to the date and
[4]                                                           time stamp above
    190   -290    100    0      -1    8.1  -11.8    3.7    0.0 126 60.00...... b...
    225     52   -279    0      -2    9.0    2.6  -11.5   -0.0 126 60.00...... b...
    437    269    -84   -1     622   -7.6   11.7   -3.8    0.0 126 60.00...... b...
   -914    -52    251    0    -716   -7.7   -3.1   11.0    0.0 126 60.00>...... b...
[5]                                                           Trip by inst phase o/c
                                                              element, OUT1 closes
  -1228   -227     68    0   -1387    5.8  -11.0    4.2    0.0 126 59.72  ......b...
   1985     47   -211   -1    1821    6.0    3.8  -10.3    0.0 126 59.72 1 .....b...
   1390    205    -71   -1    1524   -4.5   10.5   -4.7   -0.0 125 59.72 1 ..... b...
  -2369    -43    196    0   -2216   -5.7   -4.0   10.2    0.0 124 59.72 1 ..... b...

          [Cycle 6 not shown in this example]

[7]
  -1382   -206     70    0   -1519    4.5  -10.4    4.6    0.0 120 60.02 1 ......b...
   2373     43   -197    0    2219    5.7    4.0  -10.2   -0.0 120 60.02 1 .....b...
   1379    205    -70   -1    1514   -4.5   10.4   -4.6   -0.0 120 60.00 1 ..... b...  See Figure 2 and 3
                                                                                     for details on
  -2376    -44    196    0   -2224   -5.7   -4.0   10.2    0.0 120 60.00 1 ..... b...  one cycle of phase A
[8]                                                                                  (channel IA) current
  -1375   -206     69    0   -1511    4.5  -10.4    4.6   -0.0 120 60.00 1 ......b...
   2380     44   -197    0    2226    5.6    4.1  -10.2    0.0 120 60.00 1 .....b...
   1367    205    -69   -1    1503   -4.6   10.4   -4.6   -0.0 120 60.00 1 ..... b...
  -2385    -45    197   -1   -2233   -5.6   -4.1   10.2    0.0 120 60.00 1 ..... b...
[9]                                                                     * Star indicates maximum
                                                                         phase current row for
  -1358   -205     68    0   -1495    4.6  -10.4    4.5    0.0 120 60.00 1 ......b... summary below
```

FIGURE 9.20
Example of an event report. (From Costello, D., Understanding and analyzing event report information (WPRC 2000), *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 2–4, 2000. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)
(continued)

```
 2391    45  −198   0    2238   5.6    4.1  −10.2     −0.0 121  60.00* 1.....b...
  737   150   −28  −1     859  −5.1   10.6   −4.4      0.0 122  60.00  1.....b...
−1592   −37   130  −1   −1499  −6.9   −3.7   10.8      0.0 123  60.00  1.....b...
[10]
 −62    −48    −6   0    −116   7.0  −11.2    3.8      0.0 124  60.32  1.....b...
 394     14   −32   0     376   8.4    3.0  −11.5     −0.0 125  60.32  1.....b...
   0     −1    −1  −1      −1  −8.4   11.8   −3.4     −0.0 126  60.32  1.....2...  IN1 deasserts indicating the
                                                                                 breaker has opened
  −1     −1    −1  −1      −2  −8.7   −2.9   11.6     −0.0 126  60.32  1.....2...

            [Cycles 11 through 15 not shown in this example]

Protection and Control Elements

51  50  32  67  Dm  27    59   25   81  TS      Lcl  Rem  Ltch      SELogic
                           V    5    2  ih ZLV            Variable
     P  PN       PN    P   P1   9S  71357mo    lOd  13571357O1357
ABCPNGQPP QG PNGQ QG PPSPPQNS VFA B246 9et dPc 24682468C2468 1234567890123456
[1]
••••••••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
••••••••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
••••••••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
••••••••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
            [Cycles 2 and 3 not shown in this example]
[4]
••••••••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
••••••••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
•••••p•••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
•••p•p•••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
[5]                                                Overcurrent elements
                                                   asserting; reclosing element
                                                   changes from reset to cycle
•••p•p•••  ••  ••••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  R.0  •••  ••••••••••••  •••••••••••••••
•••p•p•A•  ••  1•••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  C.0  •••  ••••••••••••  p••••••••••••••
•••p•p•A•  ••  1•••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  Cr0  •••  ••••••••••••  p••••••••••••••
•••p•p•A•  ••  1•••  ••  •••••••  •••  ••••  Cr0  •••  ••••••••••••  p••••••••••••••

            [Cycles 6 through 15 not shown in this example]
```

FIGURE 9.20 (continued)

```
Communication Elements

 S     PZ    EE      ZDNS     TMB     RMB     TMB    RMB     RRCL      PWR
3O   T3KKCWU   3SSTB     A         A         B        B         OBBB      A  B   C
PT    PRREETFB   XTTOT   1357     1357    1357    1357     KAAO     131313
OF   TXBYYTCB  TRRPX    2468     2468     2468    2468      DDK       242424

[1]
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......

[2]
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......
..         ........       .....       ....       ....       ....       ....       b...       ......

            [Cycles 3 through 15 not shown in this example]

Event: AG T  Location:    2.41  Shot: 0  Frequency:  60.00
Targets: INST 50
Currents (A Pri), ABCNGQ:   2749   210   209    0  2690  2688
```

Summary information, includes phases involved, front-panel targets, fault location, and maximum currents

```
Group 1

Group Settings:
```

Event data are followed by relay settings

```
RID       = FEEDER 1                     TID   = STATION A
CTR       = 120     CTRN    = 120     PTR     = 180     PTRS     = 180
Z1MAG = 2.14     Z1ANG = 68.86
Z0MAG = 6.38     Z0ANG = 72.47     LL         = 4.84
E50P      = 1         E50N      = N         E50G     = N       E50Q       = N
E51P      = 1         E51N      = N         E51G     = Y       E51Q       = N
E32        = N         ELOAD = N          ESOTF = N        EVOLT     = N
E25        = N         EFLOC   = Y          ELOP     = Y        ECOMM = N
E81        = 1         E79        = 2          ESV       = 1        EDEM      = THM
```

FIGURE 9.20 (continued)

(continued)

[Remainder of settings not shown in this example]

SELogic group 1

Settings are followed by Boolean logic programmable equations

SELogic Control Equations:

```
TR       =51PT + 51GT + 81D1T + LB3 + 50P1 * SH0 + OC
TRCOMM   =0
TRSOTF   =0
DTT      =0
ULTR     =!(51P + 51G)
```

[Remainder of logic settings not shown in this example]

FIGURE 9.20 (continued)

When faults or other system events occur, protective relays record sampled analog currents and voltages, the status of optoisolated inputs and output contacts, the state of all relay elements and programmable logic, and the relay settings. The result is an event report, a stored record of what the relay saw and how it responded. With readily available information from product instruction manuals, the user is provided with all the necessary tools to determine if the response of the relay and the protection system was correct for the given system conditions.

Event reports are formatted ASCII text files that are read vertically. Time increments as we read down the page, and data are displayed in columns. Each horizontal row represents a particular point in time. Figure 9.20 displays an example event report from a distribution relay.

The analog data in Figure 9.20 are reported every quarter-cycle or 90 electrical degrees. This makes it simple to take one sample, the oldest or previous, as the y-component and the next sample, the newest or present, as the x-component of a phasor current or voltage. Modern relays, including the one that generated the event report in Figure 9.20, are capable of sampling much faster, as much as 16 to 64 samples per cycle, for better resolution and oscillography. However, the relays continue to offer the analyst a choice of display rates: 16 samples per cycle for generating detailed oscillography or four samples per cycle for quick visual analysis.

Figure 9.21 shows how the event report AC current column data relate to the actual sampled waveform and rms values. Note that any two rows of data, taken one quarter-cycle apart, can be used to calculate rms values. If an event report is displayed in a 16-sample per cycle format, every fourth row of data

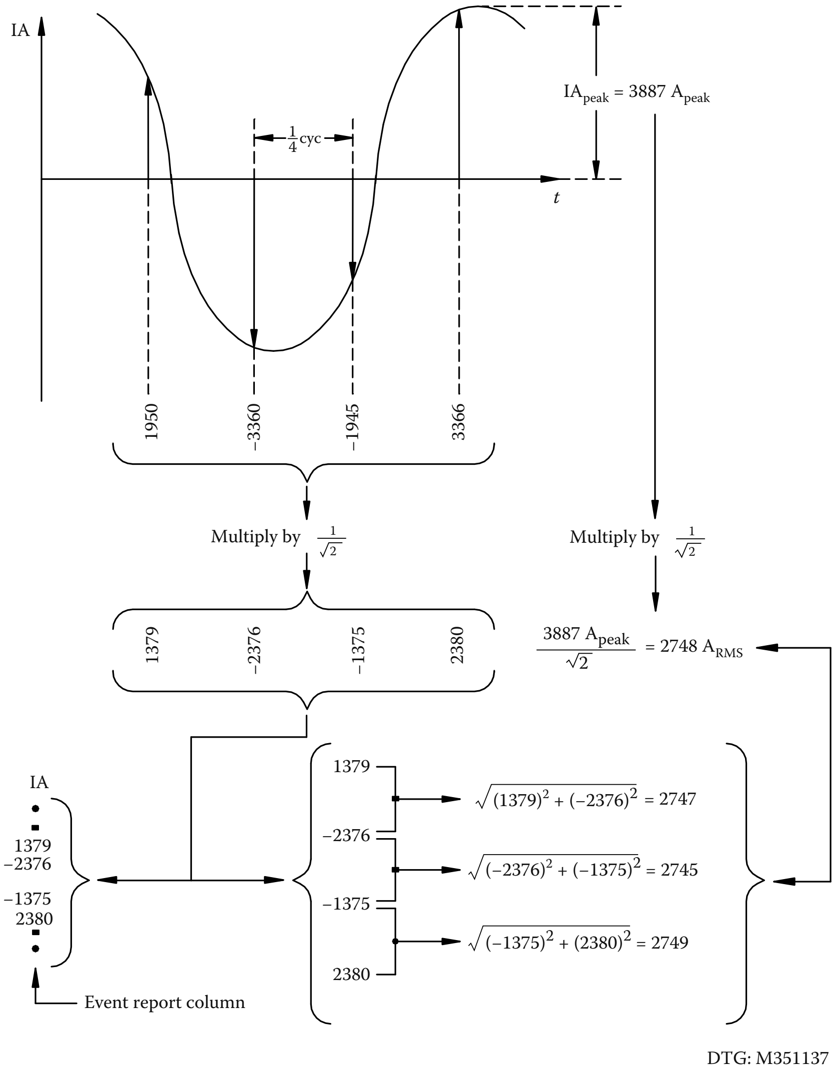


FIGURE 9.21
Derivation of current and rms current values from sampled waveform. (From Costello, D., Understanding and analyzing event report information (WPRC 2000), *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 5, 2000. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

could be used to calculate rms values. Figure 9.22 shows how to convert the event report current column data to phasor rms values. Process voltages similarly.

Event report analysis can reveal problems with power system models, settings, breakers and auxiliary contacts, instrument transformers, and more. In the past, these problems would go undetected until they were either caught during routine maintenance or more serious consequences

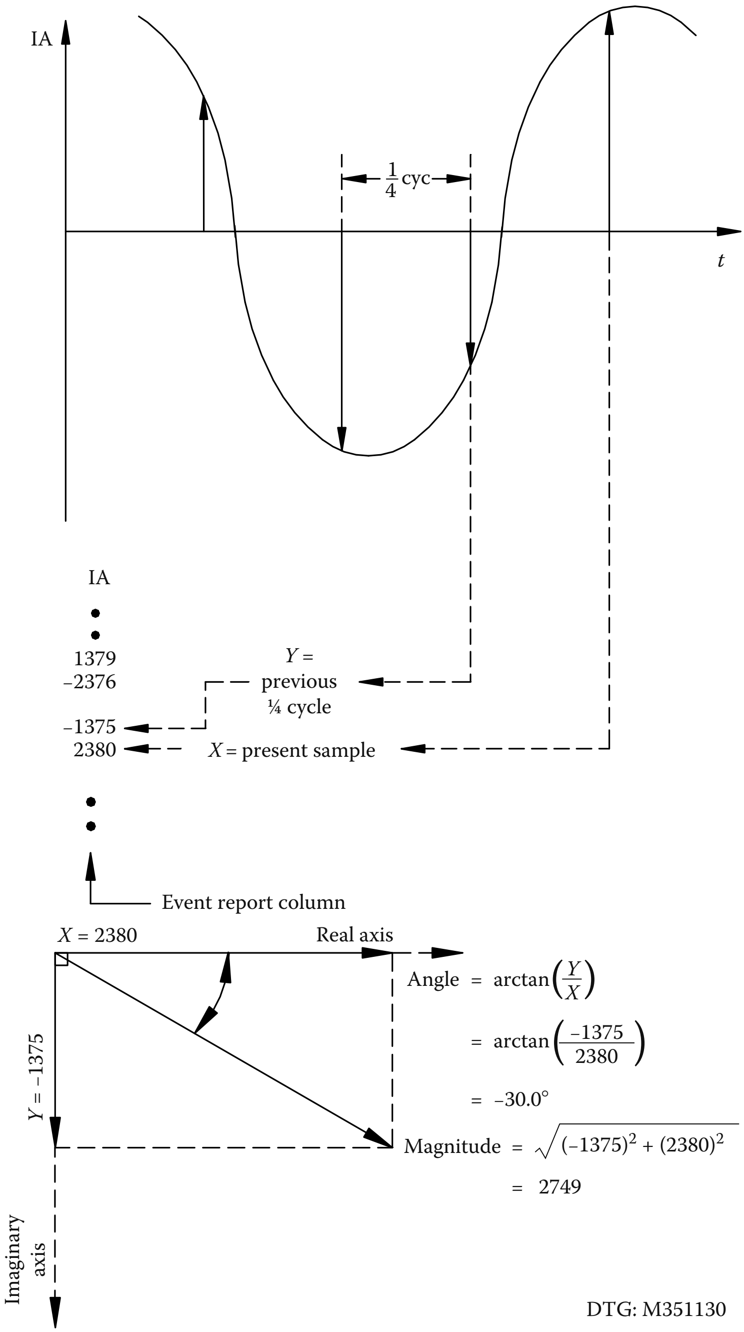


FIGURE 9.22
Derivation of phasor rms current values from sampled waveform. (From Costello, D., Understanding and analyzing event report information (WPRC 2000), *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 6, 2000. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

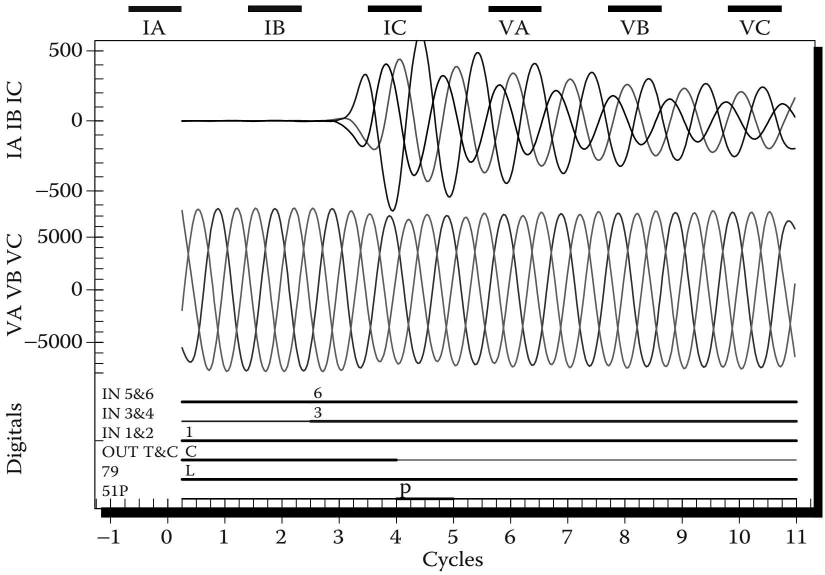


FIGURE 9.23
Manual close of a failed distribution recloser. (From Costello, D., Understanding and analyzing event report information (WPRC 2000), *SEL Technical Papers*, p. 28, 2000. Courtesy of SEL, Inc., Pullman, WA.)

occurred. It is a good practice to examine every event report to see if the operation was normal or exceptional.

The Figure 9.23 shows a graphical plot of a typical event report. Analog and digital information can be analyzed using readily available software. The graphical plots are very useful for observing the actual waveforms and timing of the digital elements.

Event reports are useful in monitoring the following protection system components: protective relays, substation batteries, DC wiring, auxiliary tripping relays, circuit breakers, trip and close coils, breaker auxiliary contacts, CTs, AC wiring, VTs, communications equipment, settings and logic, power system models, and more.

10

Motors and Generators

10.1 General

Motors and generators must be installed, operated, and maintained correctly. Motors and generator are referred to as rotating machines or rotating apparatus. The rotating apparatus ranges from very small to very large machines. Consequently, the attention and care provided in the selection, installation, operation, and maintenance varies for different units. Many precautions must be taken, especially for large rotating apparatus, to avoid damage because most of this equipment is expensive and hard to replace. The scheduled maintenance, overhauls, or repair of large rotating apparatus may require partial or extensive disassembly. Therefore, maintenance personnel assigned to perform the work should be familiar and knowledgeable with all aspects of the apparatus. This chapter discusses the selection, application, mechanics, maintenance, troubleshooting and testing of motors and generators.

The rotating apparatus is an energy-conversion device. That is, it converts mechanical energy into electrical energy, or vice versa. It can be designed precisely to perform the service expected. But to perform best, it must be correctly installed, protected, ventilated, and maintained. The objective in applying a motor or generator is to select rating and features so that it can carry the load without exceeding its temperature limits. Since many motor and generator applications will have a bearing on other equipment, it is important to review the engineering information on it. The National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) has published standards titled MG1-2006, Motors and Generators, that list all the pertinent details of this equipment.

10.2 NEMA Classification of Motors and Generators

Under NEMA MG1 standards, all machines are classified according to size, application, electrical type, environmental protection and method of cooling, and variability of speed. A machine is an electrical apparatus which depends on electromagnetic induction for its operation and which has one or more component members capable of rotary movement. These machines are generally referred to as motors and generators.

10.2.1 According to Size

- *Small (fractional) machine:* A machine built with frame size having two-digit numbers or a machine built in a frame smaller than that of an integral-horsepower motor.
- *Medium (integeral) machine:* is an alternating-current (AC) or direct current (DC) medium machine, (1) built in a three-or four-digit frame number series. The AC medium machines have synchronous speed from 451 to 3600 RPM, continuous rating from 125 HP up to 500 HP for motors, and 100 kW up to 400 kW for generators. The DC medium machines have continuous rating up to and including 1.25 HP per rpm for motors or 1.0 kW per rpm for generators.
- *Large machine:* An AC large machine is a machine having a continuous power rating greater than that of medium machine for synchronous speed ratings above 450 rpm; or having a continuous power rating greater than that of small machine for synchronous speed ratings equal to or below 450 rpm.

  A direct-current large machine is a machine having a continuous rating greater than 1.25 horsepower per rpm for motors or 1.0 kilowatt per rpm for generators.

10.2.2 According to Application

- *General-purpose AC motor:* An induction motor, rated at 200 hp or less, and of open construction; it is continuously rated, has a service factor of 1.15 for integral-horsepower motors, and has class B insulation system.
- *General-purpose DC motor:* An integral-horsepower motor of mechanical construction suitable for industrial applications under usual service conditions and has ratings and constructional and performance characteristics applying to direct-current small motors.
- *General-purpose generator:* is a synchronous generator of mechanical construction suitable for general use and has ratings and constructional characteristics for performance under usual service conditions.
- *Industrial DC generator:* A generator of mechanical construction suitable for industrial application under usual conditions.
- *Definite-purpose motor:* A motor designed and constructed in standard ratings for service conditions other than usual or for use on a particular type of application.
- *Part-winding-start motor:* A motor arranged to start with part of the winding, subsequently energizing the remainder of the winding in one or more steps.
- *Special-purpose motor:* A motor with special characteristics and/or mechanical construction and not falling under the definition of a general-purpose and definite-purpose motor.

- *General DC industrial motor:* Motors designed for all general industrial service with speed operation (when specified) above base speed by field weakening.
- *Metal rolling mill motor:* Motors designed for metal rolling mill service and known as class N or S types.
- *Reversing hot mill motor:* Motors designed for application to reversing hot mills.

10.2.3 According to Electrical Type

10.2.3.1 AC Motors

AC motors are of three types: induction motors, synchronous motors, and series motors. They can be defined as follows:

- *Induction motor:* An AC motor in which the primary winding (the stator) is connected to the electric power source and the secondary winding (the rotor) carries induced current. Induction motors are of two types: squirrel-cage induction motors and wound-rotor motors. In the squirrel-cage induction motor, the secondary circuit consists of a squirrel-cage winding suitably dispersed in slots in the secondary core. In the wound-rotor induction motor, the secondary circuit consists of polyphase windings or coils whose terminals are either short circuited or closed through suitable external circuits.
- *Synchronous motor:* An induction motor that is equipped with field windings in the secondary circuit and excited with DC voltage. The synchronous motor is started as an induction motor and synchronized with the rotating magnetic field after the rotor circuit reaches excitation at the appropriate time. It is operated at synchronous speed (i.e., at the speed of the rotating magnetic field).
- *Series-wound motor:* A motor in which the field circuit and armature circuit are connected in series.

Both induction and synchronous motors are built as polyphase or single-phase motors.

10.2.3.2 Polyphase Motor

Polyphase motors are constructed with multiphase stator windings and rotor. The rotor is constructed in two types: the cage rotor and the form-wound rotor. Both types of rotor have a laminated cylindrical core with parallel slots in the outside circumference to hold the windings in place. The cage rotor has an uninsulated bar winding, whereas the form-wound rotor has a two-layer distributed winding with preformed coils. In the polyphase motor, the rotor currents are supplied by electromagnetic induction. The stator windings contain two or more out-of-time-phase currents, which produce corresponding magnetomotive forces (mmfs). These mmfs establish a rotating magnetic field across the air gap. This magnetic field rotates continuously at constant speed regardless of the load on the motors. The revolving magnetic field produced by the stator cuts across the rotor conductors, inducing a voltage in the conductors. This induced voltage causes rotor currents to flow. This action is known as mutual induction (similar to transformer action), which takes place between the stator and the rotor under operating conditions.

Polyphase motors range in horsepower rating from fractional- to integral-horsepower to large-apparatus motors. The fractional- and integral-horsepower motors are generally cage-rotor type. Large-apparatus induction motors are of cage-and would-rotor types, where the synchronous motors are of the salient pole and cylindrical rotor type.

In accordance with NEMA standards, polyphase squirrel-cage integral-horsepower induction motors are designated by design letters:

- *Design A:* A squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop a starting torque of 110%–120%, starting locked rotor current of 6–10 times rated, and having a slip at rated load of less than 5%.
- *Design B:* Similar to design A motor with the same starting torque, however, the locked rotor current is limited to five times.
- *Design C:* A squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting, developing a high starting torque of 200% and locked rotor current less than the standard type of motor, and having a slip at rated load of less than 5%.
- *Design D:* A squirrel-cage motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting, developing a very high locked rotor torque of 300%, low lock rotor current, and having a slip at rated load of 5% or more.
- *Design F:* A squirrel-cage motor built to withstand full-voltage starting, developing a low starting torque, very low locked rotor current, and a slip at rated load of less than 5%.

10.2.3.3 Single-Phase Motor

Single-phase motors are not self-starting because they have only one primary (stator) winding and cage rotor. The single primary winding when excited from a single source produces a pulsating magnetic field in the motor air gap, and with the rotor at standstill no breakaway torque is produced. However, if the rotor is brought up to speed by external means, the induced currents in the rotor will combine with the stator currents to produce a revolving field. The revolving field in turn causes the rotor to continue to run in the direction in which it was started. Several methods are used to provide the single-phase induction motor with starting torque. These methods identify the motor as a particular type of single-phase motor. Some of the important single-phase motors are split-phase, capacitor start and run, repulsion, and shaded pole. Single-phase motors are constructed as induction, wound rotor, and synchronous motor types.

Alternating single-phase motors designated by design letters similar to polyphase motors. These design letters are the following:

- *Design N:* A single-phase fractional-horsepower motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and with a locked rotor current not to exceed the values shown in NEMA standard MG1.
- *Design O:* A single-phase fractional-horsepower motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and with a locked rotor current not to exceed the values shown in MG1.
- *Design L:* A single-phase integral-horsepower motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and to develop a breakdown torque as shown in NEMA standards MG1 and locked rotor current not to exceed values shown in MG1.
- *Design M:* A single-phase integral-horsepower motor designed to withstand full-voltage starting and to develop a breakdown torque as shown in NEMA standards MG1 and locked rotor current not to exceed values shown in MG1.

10.2.3.4 Universal Motor

A universal motor is a series-wound motor designed to operate at approximately the same speed and output on either DC or single-phase AC of frequency not to exceed 60 Hz. There are two types of universal motors:

- *Series-wound motor:* A commutator motor in which the field circuit and armature circuit are connected in series.
- *Compensated series motor:* A motor with compensating field winding.

10.2.3.5 DC Motors

DC motors are of three types:

- *Shunt-wound motor:* A shunt-wound motor is either a straight shunt-wound motor or a stabilized shunt-wound motor. The difference between the two shunt fields is that the stabilized shunt-wound motor has a light series winding to prevent a rise in speed or to obtain a slight reduction in speed from no-load to full-load conditions.
- *Series-wound motor:* A series-wound motor has the field circuit and armature circuit in series. The torque and speed are load dependent. Generally, a series-wound motor should not be operated at full voltage while uncoupled from its load.
- *Compound-wound motor:* A compound-wound motor has two separate field windings, one connected in the shunt field and the other connected in series in the armature.

10.2.3.6 DC Generators

DC generators are of two general types:

- *Shunt-wound generator:* A generator in which the field is connected in parallel with the armature or to a separate source of excitation.
- *Compound-wound generator:* A generator that has two separate field windings, one usually the predominating field, connected in parallel with the armature and the other connected in series with the armature.

10.2.4 According to Physical Protection (Enclosure) and Methods of Cooling

The machine is provided with an enclosure to give physical protection from external sources of motor damage. The following standard enclosures have been adopted by NEMA:

- *Open enclosure:* An enclosure with ventilating openings that permit passage of external cooling air over and around the windings of the machine.
- *Drip-proof enclosure:* An open enclosure in which ventilating openings are so constructed that successful operating is not interfered with when drops of liquid or solid particles strike or enter the enclosure at any angle from 0° to 15° downward from the vertical.
- *Splash-proof enclosure:* An open enclosure in which ventilating openings are constructed so that successful operation is not interfered with when drops of liquid or solid particles strike or enter the enclosure at any angle not greater than 100° downward from the vertical.
- *Guarded enclosure:* An open enclosure in which all openings giving direct access to live metal or rotating parts are limited in size by structural parts or by screens, baffles, grilles, or other means to prevent accidental contact with hazardous parts.
- *Externally ventilated enclosure:* An open closure that is ventilated by a separate motor-driven blower mounted on the enclosure.
- *Pipe-ventilated enclosure:* An open enclosure with provision for connecting inlet ducts or pipes. It is called force-ventilated when the air through the enclosure is driven by an external blower.
- *Weather-protected type 1 enclosure:* An open enclosure with ventilating passages constructed and arranged to minimize the entrance of rain, snow, and airborne particles to the live and rotating parts.
- *Weather-protected type 2 enclosure:* An open enclosure with ventilating passages at both intake and discharge constructed and arranged to permit high-velocity air and airborne particles to be discharged without entering the internal ventilating passages of the enclosure.

- *Totally enclosed enclosure:* This enclosure prevents free exchange of air between the inside and outside of the enclosure. This enclosure is not airtight.
- *Totally enclosed nonventilated enclosure:* An enclosure that is not equipped for cooling by means external to the enclosing parts.
- *Totally enclosed fan-cooled enclosure:* An enclosure that is equipped for exterior cooling by means of a fan or fans integral with the enclosure but external to the enclosing parts.
- *Explosion-proof enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure designed and constructed to withstand an explosion of a specified gas or vapor that may occur within it and to prevent the ignition of gas or vapor surrounding the machine by sparks.
- *Dust-ignition-proof enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure constructed in a manner to exclude ignitable amounts of dust or amounts that might affect the performance or rating, and which will not permit heat, arcs, or sparks liberated inside the enclosure to cause ignition of exterior accumulations or atmospheric suspensions of a specific dust on or in the vicinity of the enclosure.
- *Waterproof enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure so constructed that it will exclude water coming externally from a hose. Leakage around the shaft is allowed provided it does not enter the oil reservoir. A check valve or drain is provided at the lowest part of the enclosure for drainage.
- *Totally enclosed pipe-ventilated enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure except for openings arranged for inlet and out-ducts or pipes for connection to the enclosed for admission and discharge of ventilating air.
- *Totally enclosed water-cooled enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure cooled by circulating water or water pipes coming in direct contact with the motor parts.
- *Totally enclosed water–air-cooled enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure cooled by circulating air, which in turn is cooled by circulating water, the heat exchanger medium.
- *Totally enclosed air–air-cooled enclosure:* A totally enclosed enclosure cooled by circulating internal air through heat exchangers, which, in turn, are cooled by circulating external air.

10.2.5 According to Variability of Speed

- *Constant-speed motor:* A motor that operates at constant or near constant speed, from no load to full load.
- *Varying-speed motor:* A motor whose speed varies with the load, ordinarily decreasing as the load increases.
- *Adjustable-speed motor:* A motor whose speed is adjustable over a considerable range and is not affected by load.

- *Adjustable varying-speed motor:* An adjustable-speed motor as described previously, but whose speed will vary as a function of load.
- *Multispeed motor:* A motor that can operate at one or two or more definite speeds, each speed being practically independent of the load.

10.2.6 Terminal Marking of Machines

The terminal markings of machines are made in accordance with NEMA standards. Terminal markings use a combination of capital letters and Arabic numerals. The letters and symbols as shown in Table 10.1 are used for AC motors and generators in accordance with NEMA standards. (Refer to NEMA MG1-2006 for A.C. Machines Terminal Markings.)

The terminal markings and connection procedure for single-phase motors is based upon three general principles:

- *Principle 1:* The main winding of a single-phase motor is designated by T_1, T_2, T_3, and T_4. The auxiliary winding is designated by T_5, T_6, T_7, and T_8. This is done to distinguish it from a quarter-phase motor, which uses odd numbers for one phase and even numbers for the other phase.
- *Principle 2:* When odd-numbered terminals of each winding are connected together, they will provide a lower voltage, that is, a parallel connection. When odd-to-even-numbered terminals of each winding are connected to odd-numbered, they will provide a higher voltage, that is, a series connection.
- *Principle 3:* The rotor of a single-phase motor is represented as a circle, even though there are no external connections to it. It also

TABLE 10.1

Terminal Marking for AC Motors and Generators

Line	L_1, L_2, L_3, etc.
Stator	T_1, T_2, T_3, etc.
Rotor windings	M_1, M_2, M_3, etc.
Resistors	R_1, R_2, R_3, etc.
Field	F_1, F_2, F_3, etc.

Notes: The numerals 1, 2, 3, etc., indicate the order in which the voltages of a synchronous motor at the terminals reach their maximum positive value with clockwise shaft rotation when facing the connection end of the coil windings. The terminal markings of polyphase induction machines are not related to the direction of rotation. The standard direction of rotation for all AC single-phase motors, all synchronous motors, and all universal motors is counterclockwise when facing the end of the machine opposite the drive. The standard direction of rotation for alternating generators is clockwise when facing the end of the machine opposite the drive.

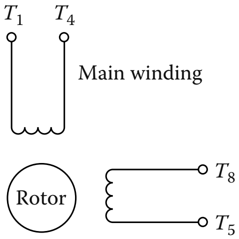


FIGURE 10.1
Single-phase, single-voltage terminal marking.

serves to distinguish it from a quarter-phase motor in which the rotor is never represented.

Based upon these three principles, the single- and dual-voltage single-phase motors can be represented as in the following sections.

10.2.6.1 Single-Voltage Motors

T_1 and T_4 are assigned to the main winding and T_5 and T_8 to the auxiliary winding. The standard direction is obtained when T_4 and T_5 are joined to one line and T_1 and T_8 to the second line. This is shown in Figure 10.1.

10.2.6.2 Dual-Voltage Motors

For the purposes of terminal markings, the main winding is considered to be divided in two halves. One half is assigned T_1 and T_2, and the other half is assigned T_3 and T_4. Similarly, the auxiliary winding is divided into two halves with one half assigned terminal markings T_5 and T_6, and the other half T_7 and T_8. The standard direction of rotation is obtained when the main winding terminal T_4 and auxiliary winding terminal T_5 are connected or when an equivalent circuit connection is made between the main and the auxiliary windings. The terminal marking is shown in Figure 10.2.

10.2.6.3 Polyphase Motors

The marking of polyphase motors is based on the principle that they show the electrical relationship between the various circuits inside the motor.

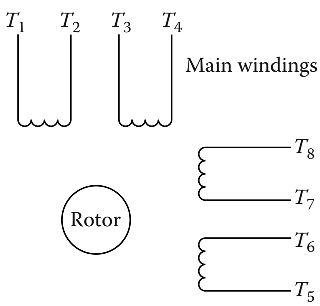


FIGURE 10.2
Single-phase, dual-voltage terminal marking.

Therefore, the NEMA standards employ a system that uses a clockwise rotating spiral with T_1 and the outer end and finishes with the highest number at its inner end as a means of determining the sequence of numerals. Such a numbering system does not imply standardization of the direction of rotation of the motor shaft. This principle will now be used to show the terminal marking of a three-phase single-speed induction motor in Figure 10.3a through f.

Step 1: Draw a schematic vector diagram showing an inverted wye connection with two individual circuits in each phase arranged for series connection with correct polarities.

Step 2: Starting with T_1 at the outside and top of the diagram, number the ends of the circuits consecutively in a clockwise direction, proceeding on a spiral toward the center of the diagram. This is shown in Figure 10.3b.

Step 3: Show the schematic vector diagram of the particular interconnection of the circuits for the (two circuits per phase) motor and terminal markings as determined in Steps 1 and 2. Arrange the vector diagram to give the correct polarity relation of the circuits. For example, connect the two circuits in parallel per phase; the vector diagram is shown in Figure 10.3c.

Step 4: When two (or more) terminals are permanently connected together, the highest terminal number is dropped and only the lowest number is retained. In our example, suppose that it is desired to have three line leads and three neutral leads brought out; the terminal markings are as shown in Figure 10.3d. If it was desired to have the windings in series or multiple connections with the neutral point brought out, the vector diagram and terminal markings are as shown in Figure 10.3e.

Step 5: Where the ends of three coils are connected together to form a permanent neutral, the terminal markings of the three leads so connected are dropped. If the neutral point is brought out, it is always marked as T_0.

Step 6: Where the windings are to the connected delta, the inverted-wye diagram shown in Figure 10.3a is rotated 30° counterclockwise. The outer end of the top leg is assigned the terminal marking T_1 and the remaining windings are numbered in accordance with Step 2. The vector schematic is then constructed in which the T_1 leg of the rotated delta becomes the right side of the delta, the T_2 becomes the bottom (horizontal side), and T_3 the left side of the delta. This is shown in Figure 10.3f.

Many polyphase motors have dual voltage and are connected as wye or delta connections. The same principles as discussed can be applied to achieve the terminal markings for these types of motors. The wye and delta connections for dual-voltage motors are shown in Figure 10.4a and b.

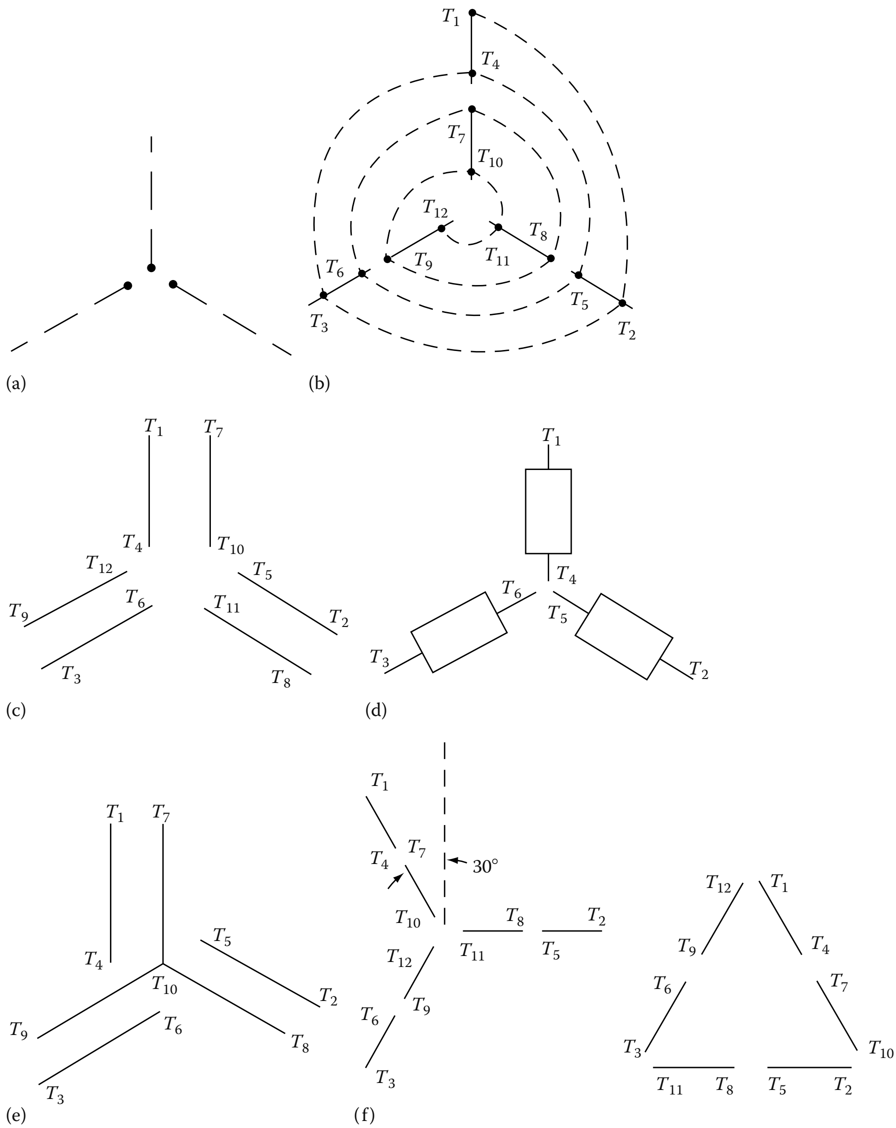


FIGURE 10.3
(a) Diagram for two circuits per phase (Step 1); (b) terminal markings for two circuits per phase (Step 2); (c) terminal markings for two circuits in parallel per phase (Step 3); (d) terminal markings for two windings in parallel per phase, permanently connected (Step 4); (e) terminal markings with neutral brought out (Step 5); and (f) terminal markings for two circuits per phase, delta connection (Step 6).

10.3 Applications of Motors and Generators

Motors and generators are applied on the basis that they can carry the rated load and withstand the environmental conditions during their rated life

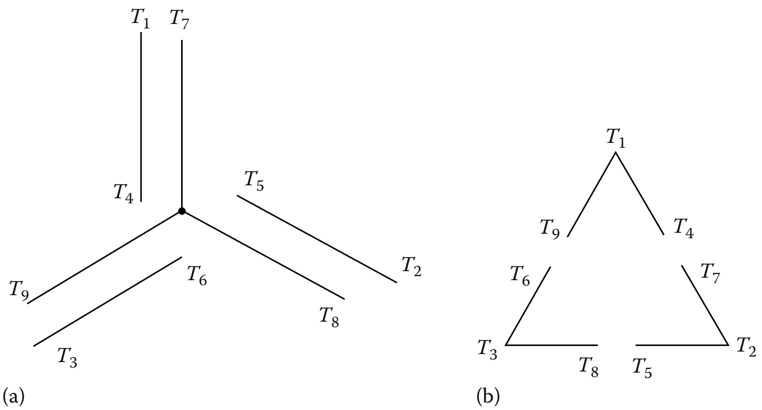


FIGURE 10.4
(a) Wye-connected dual voltage and (b) delta-connected dual voltage.

reliably. Because of the different requirements of various industries for motors, each industry has over the years developed different application criteria for motors. Therefore, a wide variety of motor insulation and construction classes are available (manufactured in accordance with NEMA MG1 standards) to satisfy these needs. The actual life and reliability of motors are determined by combining the experience of industry requirements and electrical characteristics. The reliability of a machine can be defined in terms of its electrical and mechanical integrity, which are explained next.

10.3.1 Electrical Integrity

The electrical integrity of a machine can be stated in terms of the dielectric and load-time ratings.

10.3.1.1 Dielectric Rating

Dielectric rating can be defined as the ability to correctly maintain the separation of the conducting and nonconducting parts from the power system supply voltage. To achieve the required dielectric integrity, various insulation systems are used, depending on the type of motor and service conditions. To provide the highest reliability, insulation materials must have a degree of thermal, voltage, mechanical, and environmental endurance. Therefore, insulation systems used for motors and generators are classified on the basis of their ability to withstand the total temperature during the life of the machine without deterioration. The insulation systems of motors and generators are discussed in Section 10.8.

Most equipment manufacturers have standardized on roughly the same set of dielectric strengths for their insulation systems given the operating conditions most frequently encountered, and the requirements of NEMA.

For installations where commercial or industrial power sources are used, the established practices have worked very well. Recently, with the introduction of variable frequency induction motor drives using pulse width modulated (PWM) switching technology, some standard 600 V class machines have experienced insulation failures. The reasons for such failures must be evaluated on case by case basis; however, the most common problem results from failure to consider the drives' modulating frequency and the length of the motor leads between the drive's output terminals and the motor itself. At frequencies in the several kilohertz to tens of kilohertz range, the supply cables to the motor no longer act as simple conductors as they do at 60 Hz. If the cables are too long, they tend to act as incorrectly tuned transmission lines, which lead to a significant reflected voltage wave each time the current is switched. This buildup tends to concentrate at the first few turns of the motor winding. Manufacturers are approaching these applications in several ways: (1) by specifying the maximum lead length for a given horsepower, voltage and modulating frequency and using a standard, NEMA design motor; (2) by applying snubber/RC-filter assemblies at key locations and keeping the standard, NEMA design motor; (3) by offering motors for PWM service whose dielectric designs have been enhanced in order to withstand the additional electrical stress produced by the PWM sources. In cases where the motor and drive are supplied by different manufacturers, each should be given the full nameplate information of the motor, the approximate length of cable between the controller and the motor, and the nature of the load to be driven. This will allow one or both suppliers to offer components that will work as a coordinated system.

10.3.1.2 Load–Time Rating

The load rating relates to the ability of the machine to carry a load over a period of time. Load ratings can be classified as service-factor duty, short-time duty, and overload duty.

Service-factor duty is defined as the multiplier that is multiplied by the nameplate horsepower; the result is used for temperature testing with continuously applied load until the temperature equilibrium is reached. For example, a service factor of 1.0 means that the motor cannot carry an overload on a sustained basis without exceeding the insulation temperature. A service factor of 1.15 has been established as a standard for open and drip-proof general-purpose motors below 200 hp. Larger motors have a service factor of 1.0. A service factor of 1.15 usually translates into a 10°C higher temperature with 15% overload.

Short-time duty is defined by a motor operating at continuous load over a period of time less than that required to reach thermal equilibrium. The short-time duty ratings are usually 15, 30, or 60 min. Motors should be allowed to cool down to ambient temperature when they are operated in this manner before the next load cycle is applied; otherwise, the motor will overheat.

Overload duty is defined as the ability of the motor to continuously carry an overload for an extended period of time. A common rating is an overload of 25% for 2 h. It is expected that the motor will not reach thermal equilibrium for the time specified for the overload rating.

10.3.2 Mechanical Integrity

Mechanical integrity involves mechanical stresses, vibrational forces, and the ability to keep moving parts separate from stationary parts. The mechanical stresses imposed on motors are due to motor torques and loads. Motors that are switched frequently are more susceptible to these stresses. Vibrations are a result of incorrect alignment, incorrect mounting, and incorrect installation, which will tend to deteriorate the motor life performance.

However, the most critical mechanical part of the motor is the bearings, where stationary and rotating parts meet. To ensure optimum performance, the bearings should be correctly matched to the load, kept clean, lubricated, and aligned correctly. Motor bearings include babbitted, sleeve, and ball types. The fatigue life of ball bearings varies inversely with the cube of the load. The load usually imposes a side force on the shaft extension owing to driven-equipment connections such as belts, gears, or chains. The fatigue life of sleeve bearings is infinite due to the fact that the oil film supports the shaft; and if maintained correctly, they will last indefinitely.

Motors and generators conforming to NEMA standards are designed to operate in accordance with ratings under the usual service conditions as listed in NEMA MG1 standards. Motors and generators operated under service conditions other than those specified in NEMA MG1 standards, may involve some hazard. The severity of this hazard depends upon the degree of departure from the usual conditions. Hazards usually result from overheating, abnormal deterioration of the insulation, mechanical failure, corrosion, and fire. Therefore, the manufacturer should be consulted for further information concerning the usual service conditions.

10.4 AC Motors

Criteria used as guidelines for the application of AC motors are discussed next.

10.4.1 Environmental Conditions

The usual service conditions that a motor is exposed to are the following:

- Ambient temperature not to exceed 40°C and areas with adequate ventilation
- Altitude not to exceed 3300 ft
- Machine installed on a rigid mounting and with belt, chain, or gear drive

Unusual service conditions for motor operation or exposure can be listed as the following:

- Combustible, explosive, abrasive, or conducting dust
- Excessively dirty operating conditions where accumulation of dirt will interfere with motor ventilation
- Chemical fumes and explosive or flammable gases
- Abnormal shock, vibration, or mechanical loading from external sources
- High humidity areas, oil vapors, steam, or salt-laden air
- Excessive departure from rated voltage, frequency, or both
- Supply voltage is unbalanced
- Operation above rated speed
- Poor ventilation

10.4.2 Direction of Rotation

Synchronous, universal, single-phase, and nonreversing DC motors have counterclockwise rotation when facing the end of the machine opposite the drive. For AC and DC generators, the rotation is clockwise.

10.4.3 Operation at Altitudes above 3300 ft

The temperature rises for motors and generators are based on a maximum altitude of 3300 ft with a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C. Motors and generators having a Class A or B insulation system will operate satisfactorily at altitudes above 3300 ft with ambient temperatures as shown in Table 10.2.

10.4.4 Voltage and Frequency

- General-purpose induction and synchronous motors are designed for a rated voltage, frequency, and number of phases. The supply voltage must be known in order to select the correct motor. For AC motors, the motor nameplate voltage will normally be less than the nominal power system voltage, as shown in Table 10.3 for three-phase 60 Hz motors.

TABLE 10.2

Ambient Temperature versus Altitude

Ambient Temperature (°C)	Maximum Altitude (ft)
40	3300
30	6600
20	9900

TABLE 10.3

Motor Voltage Ratings

Nominal Power System Voltage (V)	Motor Utilization (Nameplate) Voltage (V)
208	200
240	230
480	460
600	575
2,400	2,300
4,160	4,000
6,990	6,600
13,800	13,200

- *Voltage and frequency variations:* When the voltage at the terminals of a motor varies from nameplate rating, the performance or life of the equipment may be sacrificed. The effect may be serious or minor depending upon the amount the voltage deviates from the nameplate rating. NEMA standards provide a ±10% tolerance from the nameplate rating for operation of induction general-purpose motors. However, even small deviations of voltage from nameplate ratings have an effect on the performance of the motor. The following are some of operating results caused by variations of frequency and voltage.

High voltage on induction motor: The most significant effects of too high a voltage are increased torque, starting current, and heat, and decreased power factor (PF).

Low voltage on induction motor: The most significant effects of too low a voltage are reduced starting torque, increased PF, and increased heating. The increased heating at low voltage and full load reduces the life of the insulation system of the motor.

High and low frequency of induction motor: An increased frequency of the induction motor above the rated frequency will usually improve the PF, decrease locked rotor torque, and increase the speed, friction, and windage loss. A decreased frequency below nameplate rating will have the opposite effects. When variations of frequency and voltage occur at the same time, the effects are superimposed. NEMA standards allow a combined voltage and frequency deviation of ±10%.

Voltage unbalance: The voltage supplied to the motor should be equal because voltage unbalance will produce circulating negative sequence currents, which in turn produce heating in the motor. Two to three percent unbalance voltages to the motor will produce the same heating as a 10% overload on the motor. A motor should be derated when the unbalance reaches 4%.

10.4.5 Horsepower, Torque, and Speed Considerations

The horsepower of a motor can be defined as the capability of the motor to do a given amount of work. Motors are rated as fractional or integral horsepower. The torque of a motor can be defined as the turning force developed by the motor, or it can be referred to as the resistance offered to the turning force by the driven load. Usually, torque for motors is expressed in terms of percentage of rated full-load torque. The speed of the motor is expressed as rpm, that is, a rate of measure of motion. The several definitive speed terms (as outlined in the section on the classification of motors according to variability of speed) that are common to all motors are standardized in order to relate the delivery of torque at a given speed for purposes of application. For AC motors the synchronous speed can be calculated as

$$\text{Synchronous speed (Ns)} = 120 \times \left\{\text{frequency/(no. of poles)}\right\}$$

Induction motors, however, operate at actual speeds that are less than the synchronous speed because of losses in the motor. The difference between synchronous and actual speed is knows as slip. Slip is usually expressed as a percentage of synchronous speed and can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Slip (\%)} = &\{\text{Synchronous rpm} - \text{actual rpm} \times 100\}\\ &/\{\text{Synchronous rpm}\}\end{aligned}$$

The horsepower of the motor can be stated in mechanical or electrical terms. One horsepower (1 hp) is equal to 33,000 ft. lb/min. The torque produced by an electric motor can be calculated as

$$\text{Torque} = \{5252 \times \text{hp}\}/\{\text{actual speed}\}$$

Also

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Horsepower (hp)} &= \text{Watts}/746 = \text{kW}/0.746\\ &= \{\text{torque} \times \text{actual speed}\}/\{5252\}\end{aligned}$$

A typical torque–speed curve for a motor is shown in Figure 10.5. The various NEMA design motor torque–speed curves are shown in Figure 10.6.

In order to apply motors, the first thing to determine is the desired full-load speed and the desired horsepower at that speed. Other factors required when applying motors are type of torque required by the load and the starting current limitations. Motor torque characteristics must match those of the load from starting to the time when the motor reaches its rated speed. The motor must develop net accelerating torque for every point on the load curve in order to reach its actual speed.

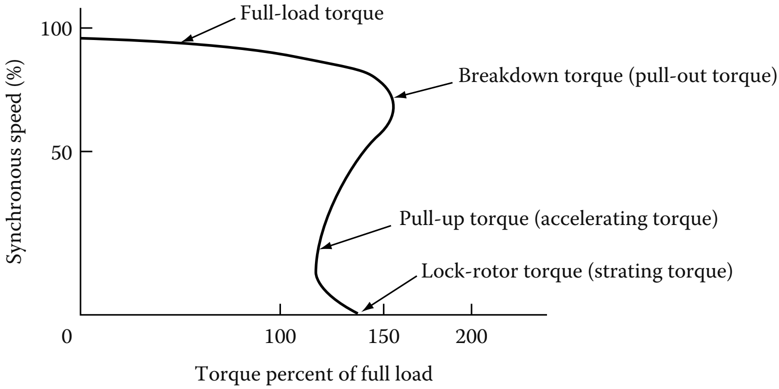


FIGURE 10.5
Typical torque–speed curve.

To understand the torques developed by the various motors, the following definitions are given; they are shown in Figure 10.5 for each design type of motor.

- *Lock-rotor torque (starting torque):* The minimum torque developed by the motor for all angular positions of the rotor when the primary winding (stator winding) is energized with AC power supply.
- *Accelerating torque:* The torque developed with rated power input during the period from standstill to full speed. This is the net positive torque available to the motor beyond the torque required by the load.

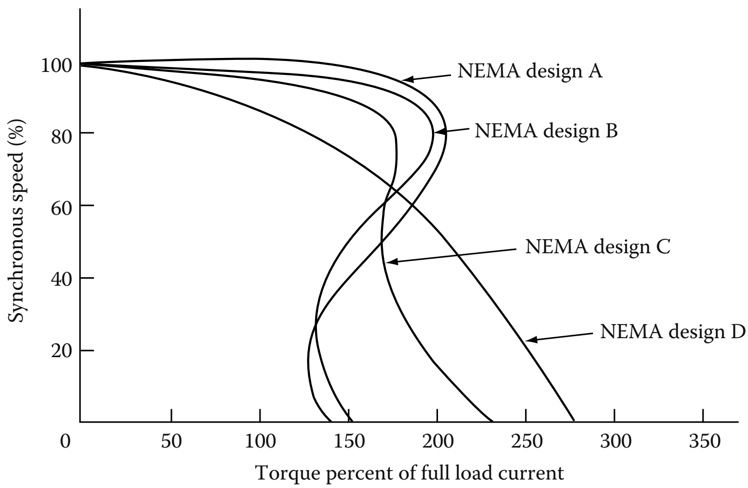


FIGURE 10.6
NEMA design motors torque–speed curves.

- *Breakdown torque (maximum torque):* The maximum torque developed by the motor at rated power input without an abrupt change in speed.
- *Pull-out torque:* The maximum torque developed by a motor for 1 min without stalling. It is frequently referred to as the breakdown torque.
- *Pull-in torque:* The torque developed during the transition from rated speed (slip speed) to synchronous speed.
- *Pull-up torque:* The minimum torque developed with rated power input during the period of acceleration from standstill to rated speed.
- *Full-load torque:* The torque developed at rated speed with rated power input.

Torque characteristics of various motors can best be described by comparing one motor type with another. Torques are classified as very high, high, medium, low, and very low. The torque–speed curves for the various NEMA motor designs as listed under classification according to application shown in Figure 10.6.

10.4.6 Power Factor

The connected motor load in a facility is usually a major factor in determining the system PF. Low system PF results in increased losses in the distribution system. Induction motors inherently cause a lagging system PF and, under certain circumstances, they can cause a very low system PF.

The PF of an induction motor decreases as the load decreases. When the load on the motor is increased, the rated load PF increases; that is, a fully loaded motor has a higher PF. Several induction motors, all operating at light load, can cause the electrical system to have a low PF. The PF of induction motors at rated load is less for low-speed than for high-speed motors.

A small increase in voltage (10%) above rated voltage will decrease the PF, and a small decrease in voltage (10%) below rated voltage will improve the PF of an induction motor. However, other performance characteristics may be adversely affected by such a change in voltage. Therefore, operation as close as possible to the nameplate voltage and horsepower ratings is recommended.

The PF of synchronous motors can range from 1.0 to approximately 0 PF leading, depending on the rated PF and the load for which they are built. Standard designs are usually rated for unity, 0.8 lagging, or 0.8 leading PF. As previously stated, synchronous motors have the capability of improving the PF of the electrical system.

10.4.7 Motor Selection

Induction motor: The selection of the induction motor depends on the performance characteristics of the driven machine, and these, in turn, determine the operating characteristics of the motor. Some machines, such as most fans, blowers, centrifugal pumps, and unloaded compressors, require a relatively low starting torque. After starting, the required driving torque increases with increasing speed up to the full-load speed and torque. A design B motor is frequently selected to drive this type of application.

Other machines, such as reciprocating air compressors and loaded conveyors, require high starting torque. The torque needed to start the machine is sometimes greater than the torque required at full-load speed. A design C motor is frequently selected to drive this type of application. For driven machines that impose pulsating loads or require frequent starting of the motor, such as punch press and well pumping, and hoist applications, a design D is often used.

Synchronous motors: In general, large synchronous motors can be applied to any load that induction motors with design B or C characteristics can handle. They have a higher efficiency than an induction motor of the equivalent rating and are capable of improving the system PF. When efficiency is a primary consideration in choosing a relatively large motor, a 1.0 PF synchronous motor may provide the solution. Where system PF improvement is a primary consideration, the use of a 0.8 leading PF synchronous motor may provide the solution.

Multispeed motors: Multispeed motors can be designed to have speed–torque characteristics similar to those of design A, B, C, or D motors of the equivalent rating. They can be designed for variable torque, constant torque, or constant horsepower. For the highest efficiency, it is important to select the correct multispeed motor characteristic for the load at all operating speeds. Typical examples of variable-torque loads are fans and centrifugal pumps. Constant-torque motors are used to drive apparatus such as conveyors, positive displacement pumps, and compressors. Machine tools and winches are examples of drives requiring the use of constant-horsepower motors.

10.5 AC Generators

Application criteria for AC generators are discussed next.

10.5.1 Service Conditions

Ac generators, like AC motors, should be correctly selected with respect to their service conditions. The usual and unusual conditions are the same for generator applications as those listed for AC motors. Some generators may operate in accordance with their ratings under one or more unusual service conditions. However, where some unusual service condition exists, a special-purpose generator may be required. Even though in such cases past experience may be the best guide in selecting the machine, it is recommended that the manufacturer be consulted concerning the mechanical and thermal duty of the machine.

10.5.2 Ratings

The continuous basis of rating synchronous generators is in kilowatts (kW) or kilovolt-amperes (kVA) at 80% PF. The ratings of kVA, speed, voltage, frequency, and so on, are expressed in NEMA MG1 standards for three-phase and single-phase machines. The excitation voltages for the field windings are also stated in the same NEMA standards; they are 62.5, 125, 375, and 500 V DC. These excitation voltages apply to machines with brushes only. Synchronous generators are capable of carrying a 1 min overload of 50% of normal rated current with the field set at normal rated load excitation. A synchronous generator is designed to withstand three-phase short-circuit current at its terminal for 30 s operating at rated kVA and PF, at 5% overvoltage with fixed excitation. The phase current due to faults other than three-phase faults must be limited by external means to a value that does not exceed the maximum phase currents obtained from three-phase fault.

The kW output of the machine depends upon the voltage, armature current, and PF. Also, the synchronous generator kVA ratings may be stated at definite voltage and frequency. The permissible load output of the synchronous generator depends upon the balance of the load. It is maximum for balanced loads and minimum for single-phase loads.

10.5.3 Temperature Rise

The temperature rise under rated load conditions for synchronous generators is based on the insulation system used for the machines. The temperature rise is determined in accordance with the latest IEEE std 115-1995, IEEE guide: *Test Procedures for Synchronous Machines*. The method of temperature determination may be resistance or embedded resistance temperature detector (RTD). Table 10.4 lists the various temperature rises for the various generator sizes and insulation systems.

TABLE 10.4

Temperature Rise for Synchronous Generators

Machine Component	Method of Temperature Measurement	Temperature Rise (°C)			
		A	B	F	H
Armature windings					
All kVA ratings	Resistance	60	80	105	125
1563 kVA and less	RTD	70	90	115	140
Over 1563 kVA					
7000 V and less	RTD	65	85	110	135
Over 7000 V	RTD	60	80	105	125
Field windings	Resistance	60	80	105	125

Note: NEMA standard MG1.

The standard ambient temperature is taken as 40°C, and where the ambient temperature is higher than the standard, it is recommended that the temperature rise of generators be reduced as follows:

- For increases in ambient temperature above 40°C up to and including 50°C, decrease the temperature rise by 10°C
- For increases in ambient temperature above 50°C up to and including 60°C, decrease the temperature rise by 20°C

10.5.4 Variation in Voltage

Synchronous generators can operate at rated kVA, frequency, and PF at voltages above and below the rated voltage not to exceed 5%. The maximum voltage any synchronous generator can produce at a definite frequency depends upon the permissible pole flux and field heating. To maintain a rated voltage output, specific field excitation is necessary at some specified load and PF.

10.5.5 Regulation

Regulation of a synchronous generator at any given PF is defined as a percentage rise in voltage, a constant frequency at excitation, when rated kVA load is removed. The regulation depends upon armature reactance, armature effective resistance, change in leakage flux with change in load, and armature reaction.

10.6 DC Motors

Application criteria for DC motors are discussed next.

10.6.1 Service Conditions

Similar to AC motors, the DC motors should be selected with regard to their environmental conditions. The service conditions may be usual or unusual and may involve environmental as well as operating conditions. The service conditions listed for AC motors also apply to the application of DC motors.

10.6.2 Operation of DC Motor on Rectified AC

The performance of a DC motor operating on rectified AC is different than if it were operating on a DC source having the same effective value of voltage. The reason for this is due to the continuous ripple or pulsation of the output voltage from the rectified AC voltage source. The ripple effect appears in the motor armature current and thus affects its performance. The effect of the rectified voltage on the motor armature current becomes significant when the rectifier pulse number is less than 6 or the amount of phase control is more than 15%. Also, when a DC motor is operated from an unfiltered rectifier power supply, bearing currents may result. Ripple currents may flow to ground by means of capacitive coupling between rotor winding and core. Even though these currents are small in magnitude, they may cause damage to antifriction and sleeve bearings under certain circumstances. Measures should be taken to minimize these currents to avoid damage to the motor.

10.6.3 Operation of the DC Motor below Base Speed

When a DC motor is operated below base speed by means of reduced armature voltage, the motor will heat up if rated full-load torque is maintained. To avoid overheating of the motor, reduce the load to compensate for the overheating of the motor. The speed of the DC motor is directly proportional to the armature voltage, and the torque is directly proportional to the armature current. Overheating can result due to the insufficient heat dissipating ability of the motor at these speeds.

10.6.4 Operation of the DC Motor above Base Speed

DC motors are built so that in case of an emergency they can withstand an overspeed of 25% above rated full-load speed without mechanical injury.

10.6.5 Overload Capability

The general industrial motors of open, forced ventilation, and totally enclosed water–air-cooled types are capable of carrying, with successful commutation, 115% of rated horsepower load continuously at rated voltage throughout their speed range. Refer to NEMA standard MG1, Sections 23.10, 23.11, and 23.28 for overload capability, momentary load capability, and rate of change of load current, respectively, on these types of motors.

10.7 DC Generators

Application criteria for DC generators are discussed next.

10.7.1 Service Conditions

The DC generators should be correctly selected with respect to their service conditions. These conditions may be usual or unusual, involving environmental and operating conditions. The typical service conditions that have been listed under Section 10.4 also apply to DC generators.

10.7.2 Ratings

The DC generators are classified into industrial DC and other DC integral-horsepower generators and large-apparatus DC generators (larger than 0.6 kW/rpm) of open type. The industrial generator ratings range from 0.75 to 720 kW, speeds range from 720 to 3450 rpm, and voltages range from 125 to 500 V. The large-apparatus DC generator ratings range from 125 to 6400 kW, speeds range from 200 to 900 rpm, and voltages range from 250 to 700 V. Refer to NEMA standards MG1, Section II, Part 15 and MG1, Section III, Part 24 for specific information on generator size, speed, and voltage ratings.

10.7.3 Temperature Rise

The temperature rise of DC generators under rated load conditions is dependent on the type of insulation system and enclosure used for the various parts of the machine. Either the thermometer or the resistance method is used for the measurement of temperature rise. Refer to NEMA standards MG1, Section II, Part 15 and MG1, Section III, Part 24 for specific information on temperature rise for the two types of generators.

10.7.4 Overload Capability

Industrial-type generators are capable of carrying overload for 1 min, with successful commutation loads of 150% of the continuous rated load amperes at rated load excitation. Large-apparatus DC generators of open type are capable of carrying 115% of rated current for 2 h and 200% of rated current for 1 min at rated speed and rated or less than rated voltage.

10.7.5 Voltage Excitation

Large-apparatus DC generators, when operated at less than rated voltage, shall carry currents equal to those corresponding to their kilowatt and voltage ratings. The load voltage at rated load of a self-excited, flat, compound-wound, drip-proof industrial generator, rated at 50 kW and smaller and employing class B insulation, shall not exceed 112% of the rated voltage at rated load.

10.7.6 Overspeed

DC generators are constructed so that, in an emergency, they will withstand overspeed of 25% without mechanical injury.

10.8 Motor and Generator Insulation Systems

10.8.1 Machine Insulation System

Insulation is obviously a limiting factor in the design of an electrical machine. If the thickness of the insulation is increased, the space available for the current carrying conductor is reduced and the conduction of heat from the conductor to the iron is restricted. Requirements of an insulation system for machine stator windings are

1. High dielectric strength
2. High resistance to partial discharges (PD)
3. High thermal conductivity
4. Good resistance to abrasions
5. Good resistance to tape separation caused by thermal heating
6. Good resistance to moisture and oil vapor

Machine insulation system is made up of five major insulation subsystems as discussed below.

Turn-to-turn insulation system: Turn-to-turn insulation is located between separate wires in each coil. This is usually in the form of an enamel coating on the wire. Glass over enamel is used on severe applications both for formed and random-wound coils.

Phase-to-phase insulation system: Phase-to-phase insulation is located between adjacent coils in different phase groups.

Phase-to-ground insulation system: Phase-to-ground insulation is located between windings, as well as between windings and the ground or structural parts of the motor. A sheet material such as the liner used in stator slots provides both dielectric and mechanical protection.

Slot wedge insulation system: Slot wedge which holds conductors firmly in the slots is referred to as slot wedge insulation.

Impregnation insulation system: Impregnation is used to bind all of the other components together and to fill in the air spaces. A total impregnation applied in a fluid form and hardened, provides protection against contaminants.

The various insulation systems that make up the machine insulation system are shown in Figure 10.7. Refer to Section 1.7 in Chapter 1 for additional information on insulating materials used for electrical equipment. The insulation systems used for machine windings are classified by NEMA and are listed below:

Class O: This insulation is rated for a total temperature of 100°C. It is made of materials or combinations of materials such as cotton, silk, and paper without impregnation.

Class A: This insulation is rated for a total temperature of 105°C. It is made of materials or combinations of materials such as cotton, silk, and paper when suitably impregnated or coated or when immersed in a dielectric liquid such as oil.

Class B: This insulation is rated for a total temperature of 130°C. It is made of materials or combinations of materials such as mica,

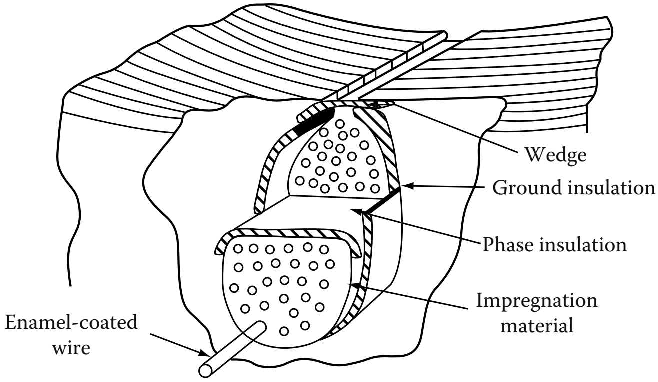


FIGURE 10.7
Cross section of the machine winding coils and insulation system.

glass fiber, asbestos, etc., with suitable bonding substances capable of operation at 130°C.

Class F: This insulation is rated for a total temperature of 155°C. It is made of materials or combinations of materials such as mica, glass fiber, asbestos, etc., with suitable bonding substances capable of operation at 155°C.

Class H: This insulation is rated for a total temperature of 180°C. It is made of materials or combinations of materials such as silicone elastomer, mica, glass fiber, asbestos, etc., with suitable bonding substances such as appropriate silicone resins and other materials capable of operation at 180°C.

Class C: This insulation is rated for a total temperature of 220°C. It is made of materials or combinations of materials such as Teflon and other natural or synthetic materials capable of operation at 220°C.

The industry standards, such as IEEE standards 112 and NEMA MG1 describe methods of temperature-rise measurements in rotating machinery. They are (1) measurements by thermometer and (2) resistance methods. Briefly, the resistance method is based upon the ambient and the total temperature rise, which is shown in Figure 10.8b. The thermometer method is based on four factors: (1) the standard ambient temperature of 40°C, (2) a service factor, (3) the measured temperature rise, and (4) the allowable hot spot. This is shown in Figure 10.8a. The various insulation systems normally used for machines are shown in Table 10.5.

The temperature determined by the resistance method gives an indication of the average total temperature of the motor windings. The life of the insulation system is dependent on both the temperature rise and the total temperature of the motor windings. The total temperature for the various insulation classes is shown in Table 10.5. The motor temperature measurement by resistance

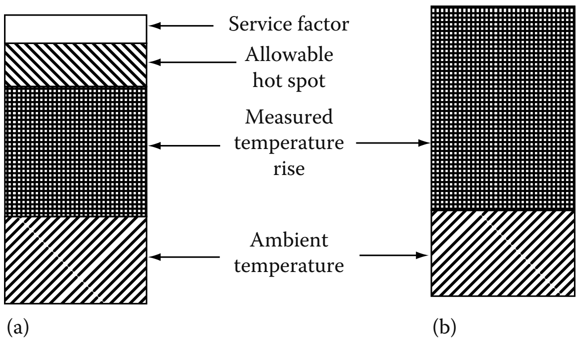


FIGURE 10.8
Total temperature measurements by (a) thermometer and (b) resistance methods.

method takes into consideration only two factors: the ambient temperature and the temperature rise measured by resistance at service-factor load. The sum of these two temperatures makes up the basis of total temperature of the insulation system. The resistance method eliminates the consideration of hot spot allowance, the 10°C allowance for service factor, and temperature rise measured by thermometer at nameplate load. Under the resistance method, the insulation system needed for the motor can simply be specified in terms of the operating ambient temperature and the service factor of the motor.

The use of the resistance method for the measurement of insulation temperature does not change the limitation imposed on the various classes of insulation systems. The resistance method has simplified the specification

TABLE 10.5
Insulation System Temperatures (°C) for Motors with 1.15 Service Factor

		Thermometer Method				
		Temperature Rise				
Insulation Class	Ambient Temperature (Standard)[a]	Measure Rise	Service Factor	Hot Spot Allowance[b] (Average)	Resistance Method	Total Temperature
O	40	50	—	—	—	90
A	40	40	10	15	65	105
B	40	65	10	15	90	130
F	40	90	10	15	115	155
H	40	115	10	15	140	180
C	40	155	10	15	180	220

[a] The standard ambient is 40°C, whereas for higher temperature applications, 65°C, 90°C, and 115°C ambient temperatures are standard.
[b] The hot spot allowance is a temperature allowance for the difference between the measured temperature rise of the winding and the estimated hottest location in the winding. This number varies from 5°C to 25°C with measured rise, enclosure, and temperature measurement method.

of the insulation temperature rating system for machine windings. As a result of this change in the temperature measurement method, the class B insulation system has been adopted as a standard for motor windings.

10.9 Motor and Generator Maintenance

This section deals with the inspection and maintenance of motors and generators of all sizes except steam and gas turbines. To obtain maximum efficiency and reliability of motors and generators, they have to be operated and maintained correctly. When motors and generators are maintained, many precautions must be followed to avoid damage. Usually this damage results from maintenance personnel lacking thorough knowledge of motor design, construction, application, and correct maintenance. The purpose of this section is to provide general maintenance and failure mechanism information common to most types of motors and generators. The information is divided into several subsections; the first two sections provide information on the failure mechanism and overall general inspection for all types of machines. Also, the reader should refer to Section 1.8 in Chapter 1 for additional information on causes of insulation degradation and failure modes of motors. The remaining sections deal with particular types of machines and components.

10.9.1 Failure Mechanisms

The failure mechanisms of the machine are divided into stator winding, rotor winding, and exciter. These are discussed in Sections 10.9.1.1, 10.9.1.2, and 10.9.1.3.

10.9.1.1 Stator-Winding Insulation

The failure mechanisms of stator winding are (1) age deterioration, (2) electrical cause, (3) mechanical causes, (4) thermal causes, and (5) environmental contamination.

The age-related deterioration causes brittleness, shrinkage, and cracks in insulation. The electrical causes are corona, slot discharge, lightning, switching surges, single-phasing, unbalance voltages, overheating effects, and test failures. The single phasing and voltage unbalance can be caused by either problems in the utility distribution system or the in-plant distribution system. Voltage unbalance causes negative sequence currents, which cause overheating of the remaining phase windings and the stator. The negative sequence currents also cause rotor overheating, which in turn causes stator induced currents that can lead to stator-winding failure. Rotor heating may result in rotor vibration and shaft/bearing overheating, which can result in machine-bearing failure. Similarly, the overloading problems can be caused by low voltage on the incoming utility line supplying the plant or facility, or problems in the in-plant distribution system. The effects of overloading are stator-winding overheating, mechanical stresses on winding end turns and individual coils. This in turn results in deterioration of the turn-to-turn, coil-to-coil, phase-to-phase, and coil-to-ground insulation. The mechanical causes are vibration, loose ties and wedges, broken amortisseur bars, fan blades, loose iron, loose connections, close-in, or out-of-step synchronizing, and foreign objects. The thermal causes are overloading, overheating from short-circuited laminations, thermal cycling, loss of cooling, overheating from failure of strand insulation, and tape separation. The environmental and contamination causes are conducting dust or particles, moisture, oil, and magnetic particles.

10.9.1.2 Rotor-Winding Insulation

The failure mechanisms of rotor insulation are (1) age deterioration, (2) electrical causes, (3) mechanical causes, (4) thermal causes, and (5) environmental contamination.

The age deterioration causes are the same as discussed for the stator. The electrical causes are starting transients, switching surges, and high voltage induced from the stator faults. The mechanical causes are vibrations, high resistance connections, cracked or broken lead support insulators, collar deterioration, broken amortisseur bars, close-in unbalanced faults, broken banding wire, and loose mechanical parts. The thermal causes are excessive field current, loss of cooling and unbalanced faults. The environmental factors are moisture, bridging of magnetic pole gaps, or groups of energized parts by foreign objects or conductive dust.

10.9.1.3 Exciter Insulation

The failure mechanisms of exciter insulation are age deterioration, electrical causes, mechanical causes, thermal causes, and environmental contamination as discussed under stator and rotor insulation.

10.9.2 General Inspection

The fundamental justification for the inspection and maintenance of motors and generators is to prevent service interruptions resulting from equipment failure. A definite program of inspection and maintenance should be organized so that all apparatus is assured of attention at stated periods; these periods should be adjusted to meet the actual need that experience over a number of years as indicated is necessary. To assure adequate inspection, it is essential that an inspection record be kept for each piece of apparatus.

Maintenance should be supplemented by visual inspection of all areas that experience has shown to be vulnerable to damage or degradation. Obviously, this necessitates scheduling disassembly of the apparatus at the time the electrical tests are made. Following is a general maintenance guide that is applicable to all motors and generators.

10.9.2.1 Visual Inspection

The most significant parts on which inspection should be made are the (1) armature (or stator) windings, (2) field winding (or rotor), (3) brush rigging and collector rings or commutator surfaces.

Armature windings
Check for the following signs of deterioration:

- Deterioration or degradation of insulation resulting from thermal aging. Examination of coils might reveal general puffiness, swelling into ventilation ducts, or a lack of firmness of the insulation, suggesting a loss of bond with consequent separation of the insulation layers from themselves or from the winding conductors or turns.
- Girth cracking or separation of the ground wall from wound coils. This is most likely to occur on long stator coil having asphaltic-type bonds. Particular attention should be paid to the areas immediately adjacent to the ends of the slots. Where considerable cracking is observed, it is recommended that the wedges at the ends of the slots be removed, as dangerous cracks may also have occurred just within the slots.
- Contamination of coil and connection surfaces by substances that adversely affect insulation strength, the most common being carbon dust, oil, and moisture contamination.
- Abrasion or contamination of coil and connection surfaces from other sources, such as chemicals and abrasive or conducting substances. Such effects are aggravated in the case of motors used in adverse atmospheric industrial applications, such as chemical plants, rubber mills, and paper manufacturing facilities, and wastewater treatment installations.
- Cracking or abrasion of insulation resulting from prolonged or abnormal mechanical stresses. In stator windings, looseness of the bracing structure is a certain guide to such phenomena and can itself cause further mechanical damage if allowed to go unchecked.
- Eroding effects of foreign substances embedded or lodged against coil insulation surfaces. Particularly damaging are magnetic particles that vibrate with the effects of the magnetic field in the machine.
- Insulation deterioration due to corona discharges in the body of the medium voltage machine or end windings. These are evidenced by white, gray, or red deposits and are particularly noticeable in areas where the insulation is subject to high electrical stresses. Some experience is required to distinguish these effects from powdering, which can occur as a result of relative vibratory movement between hard surfaces and which can be caused by loose end-winding structures.

- Loose slot wedges or slot fillers that, if allowed to go uncorrected, may themselves cause mechanical damage or reduce the effectiveness of stator coil retention against short-circuit and other abnormal mechanical forces.
- Effects of overspeeding may be observed on DC armatures by distortion of the windings or commutator rises, looseness or cracking of the banding, or movement of slot wedges.
- Commutators should be checked for uneven discoloration, which can result from short-circuiting of bars, or for pinholes and burrs resulting from flashover.
- Risers (connections between commutator bars and coils in slots) may collect carbon deposits and cause electrical leakage and subsequent failure.

Field windings

In addition to insulation degradation from causes similar to those listed under armature windings, close attention should be paid to the following in field windings:

- Distortion of coils due to the effects of abnormal mechanical, electrical, or thermal forces. Such distortions might cause failure between turns or to ground.
- Shrinkage or looseness of field-coil washers. This permits coil movement during periods of acceleration and deceleration, with the probability of abrading turn insulation, and breaking or loosening of connections between coils.
- Breakage or distortion of damper bars due to overspeed or abnormal thermal gradients between bars and the connecting end ring. Such breaks are often difficult to observe in machines that have operated in contaminated conditions and usually occur near the end ring or at the end of the pole piece. Low-resistance measurements between bar and end ring by means of a micro-ohmmeter, or digital low resistance ohmmeter, or similar instrument provides a means of detection.
- Loose damper bars with related burning of the tips of the pole-piece laminations. Among other cases, this could occur as a result of incorrect swaging or other means of retention of the bar during manufacture.
- In cylindrical-pole (or round motor) windings, evidence of heating of wedges at their contact with the retaining-ring body and half-mooning or cracks on the retaining rings can be caused by high circulating currents due to unbalanced operation or sustained single-phase faults close to the generator, such as in the leads or generator bus.
- Condition and tightness of end-winding blocking, signs of movement of the retaining-ring insulating liner, and any other looseness should be noted.

- Powered insulation in air ducts is evidence of coil movement. Red oxide at metallic joints is evidence of metal parts.
- Check tightness of field lead connections and condition of collector lead insulation.

Brush rigging

- Brush rigging should be checked for evidence of flashover.
- Before disassembly, the brush boxes should be checked to ensure that the clearance from the collector or commutator surface is in line with the manufacturer's recommendations. They should be checked to see whether the brushes are free riding and that excessive carbon buildup is not present.
- Brushes themselves should be checked to see whether any excessive edge chipping, grooving, or double facing is evident.
- Brush connections should also be checked.

Voltage checks

- Unbalanced voltage or single-phase operation of polyphase machines may cause excessive heating and ultimate failure. It requires only a slight unbalance of voltage applied to a polyphase machine to cause large unbalanced currents and resultant overheating. In such cases, the power supply should be checked and rectified if even the slightest unbalance is found.
- Single-phase power applied to a three-phase motor will also cause excessive heating from failure to start or from unbalanced currents.
- Unbalanced currents may also be caused by attempts to operate machines having one or more coils disconnected or cut out of one or more phases. If the unbalance is appreciable, the machine should be rewound.

10.9.3 DC Motors and Generators and Repulsion-Induction Motors

The following recommendations are given for DC motors; they also apply to repulsion-induction motors used on AC circuits.

10.9.3.1 Cleanliness

One of the principal causes of malfunction and eventual failure in DC and repulsion-induction rotating equipment is dirt, either from an accumulation of day-to-day dust or from contamination by particles from nearby machinery, such as metallic dust, lint, oil vapors, and chemicals. This is particularly true of this type of electrical apparatus because of its commutators, brushes, and brush rigging, which can become fouled with dirt, resulting in unsatisfactory performance, arcing, and subsequent burning.

The electrical conductors in all electrical equipment are separated from the mechanical components by insulation. Insulation is used on coils to isolate individual turns and to separate the coils from the core. Insulation is used in commutators to separate the bars from each other and, on the brush rigging, to isolate it from the frame or end bracket. Here again, the importance of cleanliness must be stressed since electrical insulation materials are nonconducting only when clean and dry. Accumulations of dust and dirt not only contribute to insulation breakdown but they operate to increase temperature through the restriction of ventilation and by blocking the dissipation of heat from the winding and frame surfaces.

10.9.3.2 Armature

The armature is the heart of the DC motor. The line current flows through the armature and, if the machine is overloaded, it is the first component to show evidence of damage. If given reasonable attention by scheduled periodic inspection and cleaning, it should give little or no trouble if the unit is operated within its normal rating. Repairs should be entrusted only to a competent entity.

When the armature is removed from the frame for either maintenance or repair, the following precautions should be observed to ensure that the armature is not damaged:

- Steps should be taken at all times to protect the commutator and shaft-bearing surfaces.
- Armature should not be rolled about the floor since injury to the coils or banding may result.
- Armature should be supported or lifted only by its shaft if possible. Otherwise, a lifting belt should be used under the core.
- Weight of the armature should never be allowed to rest on the commutator or coil heads.

Periodic inspection, varnish treatment, and curing will prolong the life of the winding. Loose slot wedges and banding should be replaced before varnish treatment and curing. Cleaning, varnish treatment, and curing should include the operations listed under Section 10.9.6. Treatment of this type is definitely recommended for equipment that is subjected to excessive temperatures or contaminants and is desirable even though the equipment is not subject to adverse conditions. Windings dry out and loosen in operation, and loose windings fail rapidly when subjected to centrifugal stresses and vibrations. Varnish treatments fill the pores and crevices. They help to preserve flexibility in the insulation and hold the coils solidly in the slots, thereby keeping failures to a minimum.

If the armature is to be rebanded with steel wire, it is necessary to duplicate very closely the banding originally furnished by the manufacturer with respect to material, diameter of the banding wire, width, and position of each band. Any change in banding width, position, or material could cause heavy current in the bands sufficient to overheat and melt the solder.

Recent developments and tests of the use of resin-filled glass for the banding of armatures have eliminated many of the risks inherent in the use of the metal bands. When correctly applied, the strength factor of resin-filled glass is equal to that of steel bands; therefore, replacement of the original banding by resin-filled glass bands can be accomplished in the space provided for steel bands if the magnetic field is not disturbed. Since resin-filled glass is a good insulator, additional heavy insulation under the band is not required and eddy currents are nonexistent. It is imperative that resin-filled glass banding be applied under tension by an expert utilizing the correct equipment as the forces the banding must withstand under full-speed and full-load conditions are significant.

Commutation

Commutation is the process of collecting current from a commutator, which, at the same time, short-circuits those coils in which the current is reversed (Figure 10.9). Since there is voltage (even though small) generated in each of these short-circuited coils, a circulating current is present in the face of the carbon brush in addition to the load current. The voltage causing this circulating current is proportional to the load current and the speed, and, as the speeds and ratings of modern machines are increased this becomes a more serious factor. Since this voltage, under some conditions, becomes so high as to cause excessive sparking, it is the designer's problem to control this reactive voltage by designing the machine to minimize the effect of the flux generated in the

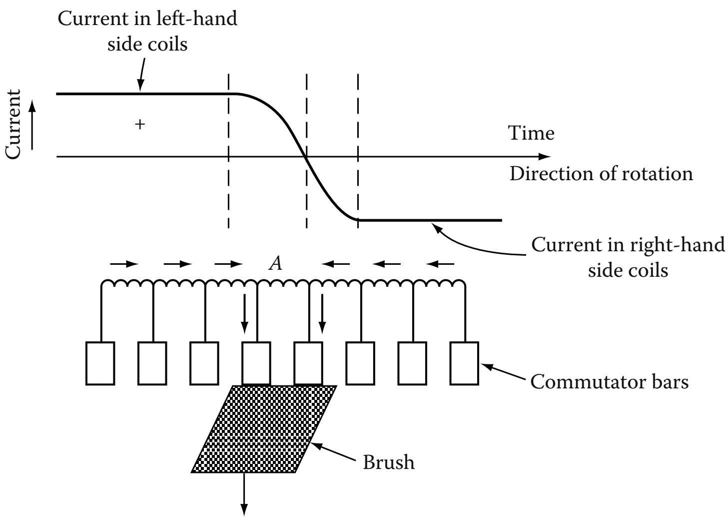


FIGURE 10.9
Coil A undergoing commutation.

armature circuit and by the judicious use of commutating poles, sometimes called interpoles. Successful commutation also requires a good continuous contact between the brush and the commutator surface.

It is obvious that successful commutation is not a function of the brush alone or of the commutator or electrical circuit alone but results from optimum electrical and mechanical brush-to-commutator conditions, and the correct electromechanical position of the brush rigging.

Commutation is such a complex problem that it is necessary to keep the many adverse variables at a minimum. Commutation may be adversely affected by dust, dirt, gases, oil vapor, and the like, and varying atmospheric conditions such as high temperature or low humidity. Where a commutation problem exists owing to one or more of these ambient conditions, it is sometimes possible to arrive at a solution by altering the unit to offset the condition. If the commutation of a unit is not satisfactory and a change in brush grade is indicated, the manufacturer should be consulted. However, in general, this is not a true solution.

The mechanical condition of the unit can also greatly affect commutation. Commutators should be periodically checked for high bars, which will cause flashing and generally poor commutation. Both commutators and slip rings should be smooth, round, and concentric with the axis of rotation. If there is any appreciable vibration, the cause should be determined and corrected.

Some of the most common service problems with commutator are shown in the commutator check chart (Figure 10.10). Frequent visual inspection of the commutator can indicate when any of the conditions shown in the Figure 10.10 are developing so that corrective actions can be taken. The causes of poor commutator condition are shown in Table 10.6.

Frequent visual inspection of commutator surfaces can warn you when any of the above conditions are developing so that you can take early corrective action. Table 10.6 may indicate some possible causes of these conditions, suggesting the correct maintenance. There are several causes of commutator problems. High commutator bars generally produce sparking, noisy operation, and chipped or broken brushes. The causes are usually a loose commutator, incorrect undercutting, open or high resistance connections, or electrical shorts. Streaking or threading of the commutator surface causes rough surfaces with associated sparking. Primary faults can be

- Low average current density in brushes due to light machine loading
- Contaminated atmosphere
- Oil on commutator or oil mist in air
- Low humidity
- Lack of film-forming properties in brush
- Brushes too abrasive

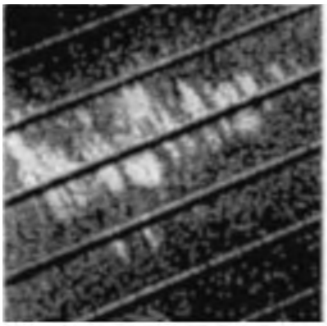
Bar etching or burning produces a rough commutator with associated sparking and eventual flashover. Such burning often results from

- High mica
- Operation of machine with brushes off neutral
- Dirty commutator
- Incorrect spring tension
- Machine operating overloaded or under rapid load change such as plugging

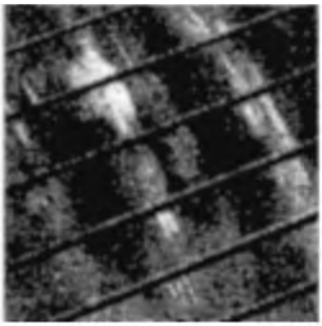
Bar marking at pole pitch spacing produces a rough commutator with associated sparking and eventual flashover. This burning is generally caused by electrically shorted commutator bars or coils, open armature of field circuits, severe load conditions, misalignment of the coupling, and vibration. The burning in the early stages is generally evident at one-half the number of poles.

Bar marking at slot spacing produces rough bars at regular intervals around a commutator. Since several coils are embedded in each armature slot, all the coils may not be equally compensated. The energy unbalance is

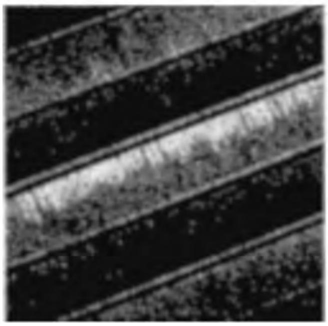
Satisfactory commutator surfaces



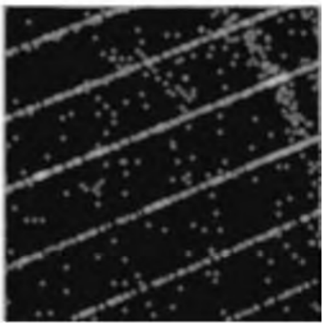
Light tan film over entire commutator surface is one of many normal conditions often seen on a well-functioning machine.



Molted surface with random film pattern is probably most frequently observe condition of commutators in industry.



Slot bar-marking, a slightly darker film, appears on bars in a definite pattern related to number of conductors per slot.

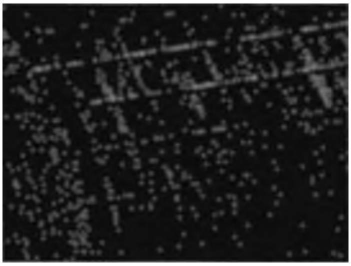


Heavy film can appear over entire area of efficient and normal commutator and, if uniform is quite acceptable.

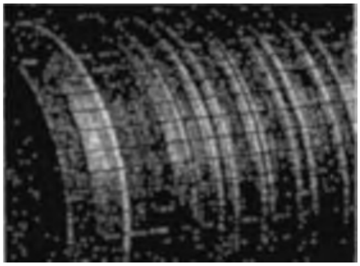
(a)

FIGURE 10.10
Commutator check chart.

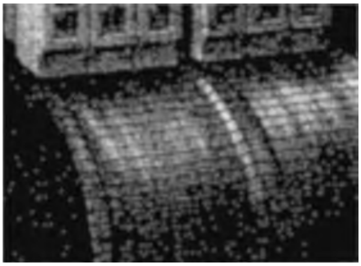
Watch for these danger signs



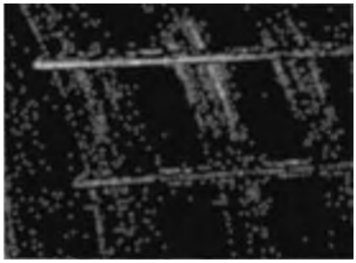
Streaking on the commutator surface signals the begining of serious metal transfer to the carbon brush. Check the chart below for possible causes.



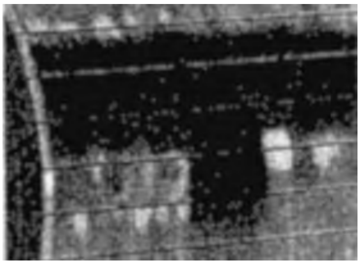
Threading of commutator with fine lines results when excessive metal transger occurs. It usually leads to resurfacing of commutator and rapid brush wear.



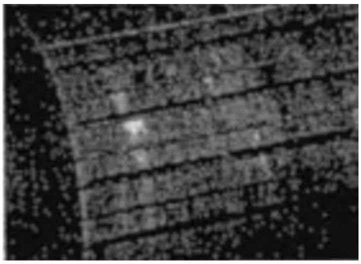
Grooving is a mechanical condition caused by abrasive material in the brush or atmos phere.It grooves form, start corrective action.



Copper drag, an abnormal build-up of commutator material, forms most often at trailing edge of bar. Condition is rare but can cause flashover if not checked.



Pitch bar-marking produces low or burned spots on the commutator surface. The number of these markings equals half or all the number of poles on the motor.



Heavy slot bar-marking can involve etching of trailing edge of commutator bar. Pattern is related to number of consusctors per slot.

(b)

FIGURE 10.10 (continued)
Commutator check chart.

reflected into the last coil in the slot to undergo commutation and will result in a spark at the brush. Such a spark will cause burned spots on the bars equally spaced according to the bars per slot ratio.

Selective commutation can occur on machines with more than one brush per brush stud if the resistance path of one brush is lower with respect to the other brushes on the same stud. Due to higher spring pressure, incorrect staggering of brushes, or a breakdown of the commutator film in one path, the brush with the low contact drop will have a tendency to carry more than its share of the current.

TABLE 10.6
Causes of Poor Commutator Condition

								Type of Brush in Use		Contamination	
	Electrical Equipment	Electrical Overload	Light Electrical Overload	Armature Connection	Unbalanced Shunt Field	Brush Pressure (Light)	Vibration	Abrasive Brush	Perous Brush	Gas	Perous Dust
Streaking			X			X		X	X	X	X
Threading			X			X			X	X	
Grooving								X			X
Cooper drag						X	X	X		X	
Pitch bar-marking				X	X	X	X	X			
Slot bar-marking	X	X								X	

The exposed portion of the front vee-ring insulation is normally the target for moisture, oil, and dirt, which may cause flashovers and breakdowns to ground. It is, therefore, essential that the exposed surface of the mica be kept clean and protected by means of other insulation. There are various ways to apply extra insulation at this point, depending upon the individual ideas of the machine designer. In general, however, this consists of a cord or tape of cotton or glass wound in tight layers over the surface of the exposed section of the mica cone or veering. The exposed surface is then treated with several coats of varnish suitable for the operating temperature of the machine. These multiple coats of varnish are applied to obtain a smooth, easily cleanable surface. The purpose is to obtain extra insulation that will protect the vee-ring insulation and, so far as possible, seal the joint between the commutator bars and the vee ring.

10.9.3.4 Field Windings

If the field winding of any type of DC motor is open circuited, the motor will fail to start or it will operate at excessive speed at light loads and serious sparking will occur at the commutator. It should not be concluded that a field is defective until rheostats, switches, and other devices in the motor circuit have been carefully inspected.

To check for grounded fields, a conventional high-potential transformer may be used. If the field circuit is free of grounds and shorted shunt field is suspected, comparative resistance measurements should be made of the individual coils and compared with the resistance of a similar coil that is known to be in good condition. Such a comparative check should preferably be made when the field windings are hot or near their normal operating temperature. A shunt field coil may show the correct resistance when it is cold but may show a lower value when it is hot or near its normal operating temperature. This is due to defective insulation between turns of adjacent conductors, and short circuits may not occur until expansion has taken place because of the increased temperature. If the correct resistance value of good coils is not known, comparative checks made with either a Wheatstone bridge or by the voltmeter method will usually provide a reliable indication of shunt field resistance. If neither a bridge nor an ammeter is available, a check as to the condition of the coils may be obtained by connecting all shunt coils in series to a source of constant potential and measuring the voltage drop across individual coils. For short circuits in series and commutating field coils, where the resistance is necessarily low, the use of more sensitive instruments may be necessary to detect defects.

A common cause of field coil failure is overheating, which may result from the following:

- Operation of the machine at low speed, preventing correct ventilation
- Full field current left on the machine continuously while it is shutdown

- Excitation voltage too high
- Overloading machine
- High ambient temperature

Faulty performance, indicated by poor commutation, incorrect speed, and overheating, is frequently traceable to defective field coils or to incorrectly connected field windings.

In removing a shunt or series field coil, the coil should be disconnected from the adjacent coils, and the bolts that secure the pole pieces to the frame should be removed. This will make it possible to remove the pole piece and coil, after which the pole piece, with a new or reinsulated coil, can be installed. Particular care should be taken in replacing the pole with its coil to be sure that the same steel or nonmagnetic shims between the frame and the back of the pole are in the same position to ensure the same air gap that was present in the machine when it was new.

When reconnecting the coil, the correct polarity must be maintained. A simple means of testing the polarity is by the use of a compass, a magnetized needle, or a piece of magnetized steel wire suspended from the middle by a string. The polarity should be alternatively north and south around the frame. When the compass needle is brought within the magnetic field of any pole, one end of the needle will point toward this pole and this end should be repelled by the next pole, and so on around the frame. If this reversal of the needle does not occur, there is a faulty connection of one or more of the field coils.

Since there is a possibility of reversing the poles of a compass with a strong field, similar results can be obtained by putting the compass on a work bench, placing a steel scale against the pole of the machine, and then setting the scale against the compass. The readings will, of course, be reversed as compared to the direct reading with a compass.

10.9.4 Induction Motor

There are two types of AC induction motor construction: squirrel cage and wound rotor. Stator design is the same for both; they differ mainly in rotor design. There are no external rotating or secondary connections on a squirrel-cage motor; most wound rotors have three-phase winding connected through collector rings to an adjustable secondary resistance.

Today's induction motor, especially the squirrel-cage type, is a highly efficient machine whose periods of trouble-free service can be considerably prolonged by systematic care. Correct application and installation will minimize maintenance requirements.

Essentially, maintenance of squirrel-cage induction motors centers on the stator windings and bearings. Rotors require little or no special care in normal service, except to make certain that bolts or other fasteners remain tightly secured. For wound-rotor types, rotor construction with the associated brush rigging requires additional maintenance.

Stator windings differ in induction motors, depending on the size of the stator frame. Smaller motors, generally, are known as mush wound and are sometimes called random or wire wound. Mush-wound coils are made by looping wire in an elliptical form without exact dimensions. Coils are inserted, a few wires at a time, in semiclosed stator slots.

Larger motors utilize form-wound coils, constructed by winding magnet wire in a loop, which is then formed to an exact shape to meet specific dimensions of width, height, and pitch. Coils are fitted in open slots in the stator iron.

Since the life of a motor is limited largely by that of its insulation, proper care can greatly extend its service reliability. Maintenance of winding insulation is mostly a matter of keeping the machine clean and dry, providing it with an adequate supply of cool, dry, ventilating air, and operating the machine within its rating.

10.9.4.1 Stator Windings

A regular schedule of inspection can prevent costly shutdowns and repairs by revealing small defects, which can be corrected before they develop into serious faults. The operating temperature of the machine should be checked a regular intervals. Open-type machines must be inspected more frequently than closed types, with the machines shutdown if possible.

The interior of larger machines is often inaccessible because of the end covers, air baffles, and fans. These obstructions should be removed at regular intervals to permit a closer inspection.

The best way to evaluate the condition of insulation is to measure the insulation resistance at regular intervals when the machine is hot. A sudden decrease in the insulation resistance may indicate an approaching break down, which may be avoided if the cause is located and corrected in time.

10.9.4.2 Air Gap

A small air gap is characteristic of induction motors and has an important bearing on the machine's PF. Anything that may affect the air gap, such as grinding the rotor laminations or filing the stator teeth, may result in increased magnetizing current and lower PF.

The air gap should be periodically checked with a feeler gauge to ensure against a worn bearing that might permit the rotor to rub against the stator core. Even slight rubbing of the rotor against the stator will generate enough heat to destroy the coil insulation.

Measurements should be made on the drive end of the motor. Openings are provided in the end shields and inner air baffles of some machines for the insertion of feeler gauges for this purpose. This check is needed particularly for sleeve-bearing motors. A change in air gap seldom occurs in antifriction-bearing motors unless the bearing fails. For small sleeve-bearing motors without feeler gauge openings, a check of bearing wear using a dial indicator on the shaft extension should be considered.

A record of air gap checks should be kept, especially on larger machines. Four measurements should be taken approximately 90° apart. One point of the measurements should be made in the direction of load. A comparison of periodic measurements will permit early detection of bearing wear.

10.9.4.3 Wound-Rotor Windings

Rotor windings of wound-rotor motors have many features in common with stator windings, and the same comments apply to their care and maintenance. However, the rotor requires additional consideration because it is a rotating element.

Most wound rotors have a three-phase winding and are susceptible to trouble from single-phase operation and open circuits. The first symptoms of these faults are lack of torque, slowing down in speed, growling noise, or perhaps failure to start the load.

The first place to look for an open secondary circuit is in the resistance or the control circuit external to the rotor. Short-circuiting the rotor circuit at the slip rings and then operating the motor will usually determine that the trouble is in the control circuit or in the rotor itself.

Some rotors are wave wound, with windings made up of copper strap coils with clips connecting the top and bottom halves of the coil. These end connections should be inspected for possible signs of heating, which could be an indication of a partial open circuit. Faulty end connections are a common source of open circuits in rotor windings. The open circuit may be at one of the stud connections to the collector rings.

A ground in a rotor circuit will not affect motor performance except that in combination with another ground, it might cause the equivalent of a short circuit. This would have the effect of unbalancing the rotor electrically. Reduced torque is a symptom; others might be excessive vibration of the motor, sparking, or uneven wear of the collector rings. A test for this condition can be made with a megohmmeter.

Another fairly successful method of checking for short circuits in the rotor windings is to raise the brushes off the collector rings and energize the stator. A rotor winding that is free from short circuits should have little or no tendency to rotate, even when disconnected from the load. If there is evidence of considerable torque or a tendency to come up to speed, the rotor should be removed and the winding opened and examined for the fault. In making this test, it should be noted that some rotors having a wide tooth design may show a tendency to rotate even though the windings are in good condition.

With the rotor in place, the stator energized, and the brushes raised, the voltages across the collector rings should be check to see if they are balanced. These voltages bear no particular relation to the line voltage and may be considerably higher. For example, they may be as high as 500 for a 200 V stator. To make sure that any inequality in voltage measurements is not due to the relative positions of the rotor and stator phases, the rotor should be moved to several positions in taking these voltage measurements.

10.9.4.4 Brushes and Rings

Brushes and collector rings on wound rotors need special care. Although a certain amount of wear is inevitable, conditions that lead to grooving of rings (concentration of wear in narrow rings or ruts) should be prevented, and abrasive dust should be wiped off the rings at regular intervals.

Rough or uneven ring surfaces should be remedied as soon as possible, before sparing, pitting, and accelerated brush wear result. Allowing the rotor to oscillate axially will distribute wear more evenly. Unevenly worn brushes should be replaced to assure best operation.

10.9.4.5 Centrifugal Switches

Basically, all single-phase motors are designed with a special arrangement of winding for starting. To accomplish this, some method is used to automatically change the electrical connections of a motor. This may be one of the following:

- Starting and running windings, with centrifugally operated switches to disconnect the starting winding.
- Central switch to disconnect or change capacitor circuits.
- Potential relay (occasionally used instead of centrifugal switches).
- Repulsion-induction-type motor with wound rotor and commutator, which utilizes a centrifugally operated switch to short-circuit the commutator at a predetermined speed.
- Repulsion-inductor-type motor with wound rotor and commutator and a squirrel-cage rotor winding that automatically come into use near full speed needs no transfer device.

It is usually more practical to replace defective centrifugal switches than to repair them.

10.9.4.6 Squirrel-Cage Rotors

Squirrel-cage rotors are more rugged and, in general, require less maintenance than wound rotors. Open circuits or high-resistance joints between the end rings and the rotor bars may give trouble. The symptoms of such conditions are generally the same as with wound-rotor motors, that is, slowing down under load and reduced starting torque. Look for evidence of heating at the end ring connections, particularly when shifting down after operating under load.

Fractures in the rotor bars usually occur between the point of connection to the end and the point where the bar leaves the laminations. Discolored rotor bars are evidence of excessive heating.

Brazing or replacing broken bars requires considerable skill. Unless a capable serviceman is available, the manufacturer or an experienced service shop should be consulted before attempting such repairs at the plant.

10.9.5 Synchronous Motors and Generators

The stator of a synchronous machine requires approximately the same care as the stator of an induction motor. In large-sized synchronous machines, the windings are generally more accessible and this facilitates cleaning.

The rotor field coils of a synchronous machine should be cleaned in the same manner as the field coils on a DC machine. Slow-speed synchronous machines have rotor poles held by the spider with studs and nuts, while in high-speed synchronous machines a dovetail construction is utilized with tapered wedges securing the poles.

Some synchronous machines have the poles bolted to the shaft using bolts through the poles. Some 400-cycle synchronous generators utilize a laminated field structure with coils placed in slots, each tooth representing a pole. Following is a general maintenance guide for synchronous motors:

- During any general overhaul, the nuts on the studs or the wedges for the dovetail poles should be check for looseness. The amortisseur winding should be checked for loose or cracked connections.
- In dusty installations where collector ring enclosures are not used, the collector rings and brush holders should be blown off weekly with clean dry air. When oil deposits form on the collector ring or brush holder insulation, it should be cleaned by wiping with a suitable solvent and coated with a high-gloss insulating varnish. When cleaning the brush holders, the brushes should be removed to prevent their absorbing the solvent.
- Coat all insulated surfaces of the brush holders and slip rings with a high-gloss insulating varnish. Caution should be exercised. Do not coat brush contact surfaces of the slip rings.
- If the collector rings become eccentric, grooved, pitted, or deeply scratched, this condition can best be corrected by grinding the rings with a rotating-type grinder, with the machine running at rated speed in its own bearing. Fine emery cloth or sandpaper should be used for light scratches on iron or steel rings but not on bronze rings.
- Regardless of the method used, rings, should be polished to a high gloss with crocus cloth and oil. After polishing, the rings should be thoroughly cleaned with a solvent to remove all abrasives and foreign materials.

- In as much as the wear due to electrochemical action is not the same on both the positive and negative collector rings, it is suggested that the polarity be reversed about every 3 months of operation to compensate for this condition.
- Field current specified on the nameplate should not be exceeded for continuous operation.

10.9.6 Cleaning and Varnishing of Machine Windings

The life of a winding depends upon keeping it in its original condition as long as possible. In a new machine, the winding is snug in the slots, and the insulation is fresh and flexible and has been treated to be resistant to the deteriorating effects of moisture and other foreign matter.

Moisture is one of the most subtle enemies of the machine insulation. Insulation should be kept clean and dry. Certain modern types of the insulation are inherently moisture proof and require infrequent varnish treatment, but the great majority, if exposed to a damp atmospheric place, should be given special moisture-resisting treatment.

One condition that frequently hastens winding failure is movement of the coils caused by vibration during operation. After insulation dries out, it loses its flexibility. Mechanical stresses caused by starting and plugging, as well as natural stresses in operation under load, sometimes precipitate short circuits in the coils and possibly failures from coil to ground, usually at the point where the coil leaves the slot.

Periodic varnish treatment and curing, correctly done so as to fill all spaces caused by drying and shrinkage of the insulation, will provide an effective seal against moisture and should be a matter of routine electrical maintenance. Varnish treatment and curing of rotating electrical equipment follow a logical procedure.

10.9.6.1 Cleaning

Some machines are exposed to accumulations of materials, such as talc, lint, or cement dust, which although harmless by themselves may obstruct the ventilation. The machine will then operate at higher temperatures than normal, and the life of the insulation will be decreased. Such materials can sometimes be blown out with clean dry compressed air.

The most harmful types of foreign materials include carbon black, metallic dust and chips, and similar substances that not only impair the ventilation but also form a conductive film over the insulation and increase the possibility of insulation failure. Metallic chips may also work themselves into the insulation because of the ventilation and magnetic fields. When windings are cleaned, inspection should be made for any signs of deterioration.

Epoxy-encapsulated windings, a construction finding increasing favor, are sealed against contaminants. They need little attention other than removing dirt accumulations. The common practice when such windings are damaged is replacement with a new winding.

It is extremely important that all wound stators and rotors be perfectly clean before varnish treatment and curing. Unless all conducting dirt and grease are removed, the varnish treatment will not be fully effective. Also, after varnish treatment, the leakage path caused by conducting materials will be difficult to uncover and remove. Correct cleaning involves the following steps:

- Dirt should be removed from all coil surfaces and mechanical parts. Air vent ducts should be clear. As an alternative, clean, dry air at a pressure of not more than 50 psi may be used. Higher air pressure may damage windings. Do not use air if dust from the machine can damage critical equipment nearby.
- As much oil, grease, and dirt as possible should be removed by wiping the windings with clean, dry cloths and then with clean cloths that have been moistened with a solvent recommended by the coil manufacturer. If the original varnish on the windings is cracked, a brush should be dipped in solvent and used to clean all conducting particles from the cracks.
- For cleaning, armatures or wound rotors should be placed in a vertical position with the commutator or collector ring end up, and a pressure spray gun with solvent should be used to clean under the collecting device and through vent holes. The same procedure should be repeated with the opposite end up, and then repeated again with the commutator or collector ring end up. Most large DC armatures are ventilated through open commutator risers at the front end. The solvent spray should be directed through these risers to reach the inner surface of the armature coils and inner commutator vee-ring extensions.
- Silicone-insulated equipment can be cleaned by the same methods used with other insulation systems. If a liquid cleaner is found to be necessary, the recommendations of the coil manufacturer should be followed.
- For windings other than silicone, there are a number of good commercial cleaners on the market. The manufacturer can recommend the one most suitable for the conditions. Plant safety rules concerning the use of flammable and toxic solvent should be observed and followed.
- Caution should be exercised to remove all liquid cleaners.

10.9.6.2 Drying

The wound apparatus should be dried in an oven held at a temperature of 115°C–125°C (239°F–257°F) for 6–12 h or until the insulation resistance becomes practically constant. If a vacuum is used, the drying time may be reduced.

The apparatus should be brought up to temperature slowly because excessive moisture may be present in the windings. If heated rapidly, this moisture may vaporize quickly enough to rupture the insulation.

Before treatment, the apparatus should be cooled to within 10°C (50°F) above room temperature, but never to a temperature lower than 25°C (77°F). If the apparatus is cooled to room temperature and allowed to stand, it will take up moisture quickly. If placed in the varnish at a temperature higher than that specified, the varnish will tend to harden.

10.9.6.3 Varnish

The selection of varnish is dependent upon the operating conditions to which the motor is subjected; also, the type of environmental conditions (i.e., moisture, corrosion, chemical, abrasion) should be taken into consideration.

Varnish must be compatible with the insulation system with which it is to be used. If it is incompatible, it may not adhere and may not give the desired protection. For most applications, the selection of a general-purpose high bonding, yet resilient, synthetic resin varnish is recommended. The varnish can be either class A, B, or F, depending upon the insulation system rating. On large AC stators using class A insulation, the use of a flexible asphalt or oleoresinous varnish is suggested; then, if it becomes necessary to lift a coil, the coil will not be destroyed.

Many types of varnishes are available, and when applying the insulating varnish, the recommendation of the manufacturer should be followed with respect to specific gravity, viscosity, and curing cycle for the particular varnish in question. After the varnish has been adjusted to give the desired film build and drainage characteristics, the specific gravity and viscosity readings should be recorded; then at periodic intervals the varnish should be examined for either specific gravity or viscosity, or both, and adjustments should be made to bring it within the original limits.

The units should be cured in a correctly ventilated forced-air circulating oven to remove the solvent vapors. The oven can be either gas fired or electrically heated. Infrared heat can be used if desired.

For the most part, the time and temperature of the cure should follow the varnish manufacturer's recommendations. The time of cure will vary from short bakes of several hours up through 16–24 h, based on the physical dimensions and makeup of the units, and taking into consideration the particular characteristics of the type of varnish that has been applied to the equipment.

Curing temperatures will vary from 75°C to 125°C (167°F to 257°F) for oleoresinous-type varnishes to 135°C to 155°C (275°F to 311°F) for classes B and F varnishes. Silicone varnishes usually require a cure temperature range of 185°C–200°C (365°F–392°F) or higher.

Complete rewinding jobs should receive at least two coats of varnish. Baking time can usually be reduced on the first or impregnated coat, with an extended period of time used on the final coat. The use of additional coats is based on what is expected of the unit after it is in operation. If severe conditions are to be encountered, multiple-coat systems are recommended. Also, apparatus such as high-speed armatures should receive multiple coats for the maximum bonding of the conductors. One coat is all that is necessary on older units that have been cleaned up on which no rewind work has been done.

In the case of large stators or rotors where the size is such that dipping is not possible, the varnish must be sprayed on the windings. Old winding surfaces must be completely coated.

For most applications, conventional dip methods are recommended. Other accepted methods are brushing and flooding. However, if the length or depth of the slots is great and the windings tightly packed, it may be necessary to use a vacuum impregnation system.

10.9.7 Lubrication, Bearings, and Oil Seals

10.9.7.1 Lubrication

Of all the important items of maintenance, lubrication ranks as one of the highest. Incorrect oiling or greasing will produce as disastrous results as any other type of motor mistreatment.

Excess oil may get into the windings where it will collect dust and other foreign matter. Too much grease in antifriction bearings causes heat and sometimes failure of bearings and may also coat the windings. Most manufacturers furnish data on correct oiling and greasing, and numerous articles have been written on the subject. The important point is to set up a definite lubrication schedule and follow it. Years of experience have demonstrated that it is as bad to use too much as too little oil and grease.

Of equal importance is the type of oil or grease used. In general, the recommendations of the manufacturer or experienced oil companies should be followed. In some cases, for design reasons, manufacturers insist on the use of particular lubricants that have been adopted after exhaustive test by the manufacturer. It will pay to follow these recommendations.

10.9.7.2 Sleeve Bearings

Some oil-lubricated machines are shipped without oil and, in the case of large machines, the journals are often packed and treated for protection during shipment. The rotating elements may also be blocked to prevent damage to the bearings and journals during shipment. Where lubrication is required, the bearing must be opened, the packing removed, and the journal cleaned and flushed before filling the housing with oil. All motor and generator bearings should be checked for oil before starting up.

The bearings of all electrical equipment should be carefully inspected at scheduled periodic intervals in order to obtain maximum life. The frequency of inspection, including the addition of oil, changing the oil, and checking the bearing wear, is best determined by a study of the particular operating conditions. If makeup oil is required in excessive amounts, an investigation for oil leaks should be started immediately.

The more modern types of sleeve-bearing housings are relatively dust and oil tight and require very little attention, since the oil does not become contaminated and oil leakage is negligible. Maintenance of the correct oil level is frequently the only upkeep required for years of service with this type of bearing.

Older types of sleeve bearings require more frequent inspection and checking for wear, and oil changes should be made more often. Never add oil to bearings when the machine is running.

In most cases, the safe temperature rise for a bearing is considered to be within 40°C above the room ambient.

Small sleeve-bearing motors use either wool packing or fluid wick for transferring the lubricant to sleeve bearings instead of oil-ring lubrication. Some of these small motors have provision for relubrication.

When electrical equipment must operate under extreme differences in air temperatures, the use of a lighter oil may be found desirable during cold weather.

Care should always be exercised in the use of reclaimed lubricating oils. The filtering operation should be positive and should remove all foreign and injurious matter.

A hot bearing is usually due to one of the following causes:

- No oil.
- Poor grade of oil or dirty oil.
- Failure of the oil rings to revolve with the shaft.
- Excessive belt tension.
- Rough bearing surface.
- Incorrect fitting of the bearing.
- Bent shaft.
- Misalignment of shaft and bearing.
- Loose bolts in the bearing cap.
- Excessive end thrust due to incorrect leveling. A bearing may become warm because of excessive pressure exerted by the shroud of the shaft against the end of the bearing.
- Excessive end thrust due to magnetic pull, with the rotating part being sucked into the stator or field because it extends farther beyond the magnetic structure or field poles at one end than at the other end.
- Excessive side pull because the rotating part is out of balance.

If bearing becomes hot, the load should be reduced if possible and lubricants fed freely, loosening the nuts on the bearing cap. If the machine is belt connected, the belt should be slackened. In case relief is not afforded, the load should be removed and the machine kept running slowly, where possible, until the shaft is cool in order that the bearing will not freeze. The oil supply should be renewed before starting the machine again.

A new machine should always be run unloaded or at slow speed for an hour or so to make sure that it operates correctly. The bearings should be carefully watched to observe that the oil rings revolve and carry a plentiful supply of oil to the shaft.

10.9.7.3 Antifriction Bearings

Ball or roller bearings carry the load by direct contact, as opposed to sleeve bearings, which carry the load on lubricating film. Lubrication is necessary to minimize the friction and generation of heat caused by the balls rubbing on the outer race as they roll over the top or on the retainer of the cage.

Antifriction bearings require considerable care to prevent loss of end clearance, distortion of balls, and marking of races. If too much force is used in pressing the bearing on the shaft, the clearance may be destroyed. It is recommended that antifriction bearings be heated in a hot bath of clean oil rather than by the use of dry heat. When the bearing is pulled off, with all the stress on the outer race, both races may be damaged, with resultant failure when put back in service. The bearing manufacturer's recommendations should be followed when removing and reapplying this type of bearing.

Bearing manufacturers produce a bearing known as the prelubricated shielded bearing. Several years use of this bearing has demonstrated that, for many applications, no further lubrication is needed. Such bearing construction is usually indicated on the nameplate.

In general, to obtain maximum service, ball-bearing motors should be relubricated at intervals determined by the type, size, and service of the bearing. Many motor manufacturers offer as a guide a table suggesting the intervals between lubrication. These tables show time intervals between greasing that range from 3 months or so for motors operating in very severe service, as in conditions involving dirt or vibrating applications, those where the end of the shaft is hot, or subject to high ambient temperatures, to intervals of up to 3 years for easy service, where motors operate for short periods or infrequently.

The bearing housing is usually arranged to introduce new grease and purge the bearing of old grease, allowing it to discharge through a partially restricted escape port or relief hole. This will, in general, allow filling to the desired degree, which is one-third to one-half full, leaving some space in the housing to allow for expansion of the grease.

It is again stressed that overgreasing can be just as harmful as undergreasing. Overgreasing causes churning and internal friction that can result in heating, separation of the oil and soap, oxidation of the grease, and possible leakage through the retaining seals.

10.9.7.4 Installation of Oil Seals

The importance of correctly installing an oil seal cannot be overemphasized. Failure to observe correct installation procedures probably accounts for more cases of the incorrect functioning of oil seals than any other single cause. To secure the ultimate in satisfactory service, it is recommended that the following precautions be observed.

Correct seal
It is essential that the seal be the correct size for the installation. Oil seals are made for a specified shaft size. When they are installed on a shaft of a larger diameter, there will be drag, frictional heat, and excessive wear on the sealing element and shaft. When installed on a shaft having a smaller diameter, immediate leakage can occur.

Fluid contact
The seal should be assembled with the toe or wiping edge of the sealing element pointing toward the fluid to be retained. Exceptions for unusual applications must be by specification in manuals or instructions furnished with the assembly.

Bore
The bore should be checked for adequate chamfer (30° angle to a minimum depth of 1/16 in.). The bore should be inspected for scratches and all sharp edges removed. The seal outside diameter should be correct for the bore in the assembly. When a leak at the outer edge of either metal or rubber-covered seals is caused by abrasion of the oil seal, it may be directly related to incorrect chamfer on the bore of the use of incorrect installation tools.

Shaft
The surface of the shaft should be uniform and free from burrs, nicks, scratches, and grooves. The surface finish should be between 10 and 20 µin. and, on a repair job, should be buffed to this thickness with crocus cloth.

Lubrication
In all cases, a lubricant should be applied to the shaft or to the sealing element of the oil seal. This aids installation and reduces heat buildup during the first few minutes of run. The application of a lubricant to the outer periphery of a synthetic rubber-covered seal will reduce the possibility of shearing or bruising.

Pressing tools
In pressing the seal into the bore, it is imperative that the correct-sized pressing tool be used to localize the pressure on the face of the seal and in direct line with the side walls of the seal case to prevent damage and distortion to the seal cases during the installation. When a seal must penetrate the bore below the surface, the correct pressing tool should be 1/32 in. smaller than the bore diameter. On installations where the seal is flush with the housing, the correct pressing tool should be at least 1/8 in. larger in diameter, and more if room permits. Care should be taken to avoid hammer blows, uneven pressure on seal surfaces, and cocking of the seal during this operation.

When an oil seal of open channel construction is pressed-fit heel first into the bore, an installation tool will be helpful. The tool is designed to have contact with the inside diameter of the seal case.

Shaft end

If the seal is to be installed toe first, the end of the shaft should have a 30° by 3/16 in. taper, or an installation tool must be used. If the seal is to be installed heel first, no special precautions are necessary other than to remove burrs or sharp edges from the end of the shaft.

Shaft with keyways and the like

When an oil seal is installed over the keyway, splines, and the like, an installation thimble should be used with the outside diameter not more than 1/32 in. over the shaft.

Pressure-lubricated bearings

Because of speed and bearing loading, it is necessary to pressure lubricate the bearings on some larger motors and generators. Pressure gauge readings may not show the amount of oil flowing, but machines have a sight oil-flow detector where oil flow may be checked. Orifices in the feed lines may clog, and oil-flow detection devices will protect the bearings.

Bearing insulation

If the bearing is insulated, care must be taken so that the insulated bearing is not grounded by bearing temperature detectors or relays.

10.9.8 Brushes

Correct care of brushes, brush rigging, and current-collecting parts is a fundamental necessity if satisfactory performance is to be obtained. Adequate inspection is essential to the maintenance of this equipment and the following points should be observed:

- Brush holder box should be adjusted between 1/16 and 1/8 in. from the surface of the commutator.
- Care should be taken to see that dirt and particles broken from the edges of brushes or the commutator have not lodged in the face of the brush.
- Brushes must be correctly aligned, and the commutator brushes must be correctly staggered, pairs of arms (+ or −) being set alternately.
- Brush is affected by such adverse conditions as sparking, glowing, rough commutator, severe chattering, no-load running, overload running, incorrect spring pressure, and selective action.
- Brush on a machine that sparks or glows owing to load conditions, off-neutral operation, or an electrical fault in the machine will be burned and pitted near the sparking edge.

- Severe chattering of the brush is caused by a high-friction film on the surface of the commutator or by incorrect spring pressure.
- Brush chattering due to a high-friction film occurs on machines where there is considerable no-load or light-load running. The characteristic curve of friction versus load current is of such a shape that minimum friction can be obtained at approximately 55 A/in.^{2} and as load current is either reduced or increased, the brush friction is increased. Accordingly, it is sometimes good practice, when a machine is running at very light loads for a considerable period of time, to lift one or more brushes per arm to bring the brush friction into the desirable range. Cases where the load current is above the normal values are more serious, because the higher currents produce sparking, overheating of the machine and brush chatter simultaneously.
- Spring pressure has a direct effect on the riding characteristics of a brush. A common error is to reduce spring pressure for cases where brush wear or marking of the commutator has been observed. This permits the brush to bounce on the commutator, which, in turn, causes sparking and selective action and produces a rough commutator. On the other hand, excessive spring pressure causes brush wear and commutator wear, and usually lowers the electrical contact voltage drop to the point where satisfactory commutation is not obtained. Correct spring pressure should be 2½–5½ lb/in.^{2} for industrial service and 5–10 lb/in.^{2} for traction service. The lower range on traction work will be found where spring-supported motors are used; axle-hung motors use the higher range.
- When checking spring pressure, the action of the brush in the box should be free. Dirt or gummy oil on the brush or in the brush box sometimes causes the brush to stick and in some cases, to completely break the contact between the brush and the commutator.
- Commutator wear in various forms is frequently attributed to a brush that is too hard. Actually, the abrasiveness of a brush does not result from its hardness. Some of the most abrasive brushes are soft to the touch or low when measured for scleroscopic hardness. The property in a brush of five grade that causes abrasiveness is controlled by the brush manufacturer, who should be consulted for information as to the relative cleaning properties of the various grades.

10.9.8.1 Brush Adjustment

The brushes of a new machine are generally adjusted at the factory to the electrically neutral position, and it should not be necessary to change the adjustment. An exception to this rule may occur on large machines where an off-neutral setting is sometimes used to improve commutation. In any case, the method for identifying the correct brush position is given in the manufacturer's instruction book. Various methods may be used for determining the neutral position. The kick method is commonly used as is outlined here.

With all brushes raised from the commutator and the machine standing still, voltages will be induced in the armature by transformer action if the shunt field is excited to about one-half of its normal strength and the field current suddenly broken. It will be found that the induced voltages in conductors located at equal distances to the right and left of the main pole centers will be equal in magnitude and opposite in direction.

Hence, if the terminals of a low-reading voltmeter (5 V) are connected to two commutator bars on the opposite side of a main pole and exactly halfway between the centerlines of two main poles, the voltmeter will show no deflection when the field current is broken. The spacing of these commutator bars is, therefore, the correct distance between brushes on adjacent brush arms.

The most practical method of making this check is to make two pilot brushes of wood or fiber to fit the regular brush holder, each brush carrying in its center a piece of copper fitted for line contact with the commutator bar. With a lead for the connection of adjacent brush arms, the brush rigging may then be shifted slightly forward or backward, as necessary, until breaking the field current produces no deflection on the voltmeter. By noting the position at which no deflection is obtained for each pair of brush arms, the average of the positions of neutral thus obtained will give the correct running location for the brushes.

A quick and convenient method of locating the neutral position on a DC motor and shunt fields is to check the speed of the motor in either direction with the same impressed line voltage. The position of the brushes that produces the same speed in either direction under the same voltage conditions is the correct neutral position.

Another shortcut is to take a piece of lamp cord and bend it in the middle, bringing the two ends together. The insulation should be removed for 1/2 in. on each end and the bare wires twisted together, fanning out to form a brush. When this brush is held so that it spans two bars at the outer end of the commutator and moved with and against the direction of rotation, the point of least sparking at the ends of the wires is the correct location for the centerline of the brushes.

10.9.9 Balancing

Electrical failures are often ascribed to deteriorated insulation, open circuit, short circuit, and so on, but in many cases, failure of insulation results from mechanical disturbances. Unusual noises in electrical apparatus may be the result of grounds, short-circuited coils, changes in voltage or frequency, rubbing or looseness of parts, vibration, defective bearings, and many other causes.

Any unusual amount of vibration or an increase in machine vibration should be investigated immediately. Common causes of undue vibration, other than imbalance, or bearing wear, dirt accumulation, misalignment, an incorrect or a settled foundation, uneven air gap, parts rubbing the rotating element, sprung shafting, a short-circuited field coil, or imbalanced stator currents in the case of AC machines. These should be investigated before balance weights are added or shifted. If at any time it should be necessary to remove the balance weights, they should be replaced in the same position.

Before disassembling a pole on high-speed machines, the axial position of that pole should be accurately marked so that it can be replaced in the same position. Should it become necessary to replace a field coil, or a complete pole, the balance must be checked.

10.9.9.1 Need for Balancing

Vibrations produced by unbalanced rotating parts may result in the following:

- Excessive bearing wear
- Noisy operation of the equipment
- Failure of structural parts
- Reduced overall mechanical efficiency
- Vibration of machine parts or the supporting structure

10.9.9.2 Imbalance Measurement

Imbalance is generally measured in ounce-inches (oz-in.). An imbalance of 1 oz-in. in a rotating body will produce a centrifugal force equivalent to that produced by 1 oz of weight 1 in. from the rotational axis. A rotor weighing 62.5 lb (1000 oz) whose mass center is displaced 0.001 from the rotational axis is 1 oz-in. out of balance.

Only force imbalance is measured by static balancing, which is a single-plane correction. The part being balanced is not rotated. Dynamic balancing of a part by rotation is required when there is appreciable axle length because, by this method, force imbalance, moment imbalance, or a combination of both may be measured. This is a two-plane correction.

The balancing process is not complete until corrections have been applied relative to the size and that the exact location indicated by the balancing machine. Corrections for balance may be made by the addition or removal of metal.

10.9.10 Belts, Gears, and Pinions

10.9.10.1 Belts

In most industrial organizations, installation, adjustment, inspection, and care of belts is the responsibility of a specially trained individual or group. The application of belts involves alignment and belt tension, which affect bearing operation. Maintenance personnel must report belt alignments that seem inaccurate, tensions that appear excessive, and splices that look doubtful. Drives having upward belt tension may be questioned. Bearing loads on sleeve-bearing motors should not be against that portion of the bearing where the oil is fed into the bearing. Action should be taken to protect the electrical apparatus when there is evidence of belt-produced static.

10.9.10.2 Gears and Pinions

Gears and gear trains are among the principal sources of noise and vibration. In designing such mechanisms, the manufacturer strives for the best tooth term to give the least amount of whip and backlash, with the gear center so located that the teeth mesh at the correct pressure points.

It is essential, therefore, that the bearings be so maintained that these gear center distances do not change. Correct lubrication of gears is essential to keep down the wear of teeth. A gear with worn teeth, even though it appears to have considerable life left in it, should be replaced to keep vibration and noise to a minimum.

10.10 Predictive Maintenance Guide on Motors and Variable Frequency Drives

Electrical maintenance personnel have for years been limited to troubleshooting motors with no more than a multimeter and an insulation resistance tester (megohmeter). The insulation resistance tester unfortunately does not provide enough information to allow most technicians to feel totally confident in determining whether or not an electrical problem exists or not. The troubleshooting of motors has become more difficult in recent years since many motors today are coupled to variable frequency drives (VFDs). The VFD itself in many cases can cause problems in the motor since it produces harmonics that pollute the power supply to the motor. At the end of this section, a discussion is offered on VFD and its interaction with the motor to help the reader understand its impact on a motor.

There has always been an on-going struggle to utilize technology to identify problems in motors. Recently technologies, such as vibration analysis has been developed to aid in the identification of problems in motors. When vibration analysis shows a two times line frequency ($2F_L$) spike, it is assumed that it must mean an electrical problem. However, it must be kept in perspective that there are many other variables that may be responsible for producing a $2F_L$ spike; therefore, removing a motor from service for an electrical repair due only to a high $2F_L$ could be a mistake, possibly an expensive one.

Also, just measuring the insulation resistance of motor windings may not be enough to say that the motor is fine for continued service or it can be put back in service after it has tripped off-line. The fact is numerous reasons can exist which causes a motor to trip that will not be seen by an insulation test,

FIGURE 10.11
Six electric areas of a motor. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

such as a turn-to-turn short. Breakdown in the insulation between individual turns of a winding can occur inside a stator slot or at the end turn and be completely isolated from ground. Phase-to-phase shorts can occur the same way. If these faults are left unattended, they can result in rapid deterioration of the winding, potentially ending in a complete motor replacement. Restarting of a motor that has tripped should be considered only after these faults have been ruled out. Troubleshooting an electric motor that is suspected to have an electrical problem requires checking the insulation system as well other components in the motor. To confidently assess the electrical condition of a motor and ensure that it will run reliably, there are six electrical areas in a motor analysis that must be looked at during the troubleshooting effort. Missing any of these areas could result in missing the problem and not having enough information to make a correct decision. The six areas are illustrated in the Figure 10.11.

Predictive technologies and tools are available today to troubleshoot and test these areas of interest. PdMA Corporation is just one of the several entities that have developed technologies and tools for diagnosing motor problems. PdMA offers two instruments that go beyond the conventional insulation resistance (megohmmeter) tester and multimeter for predictive maintenance and troubleshooting. These instruments are EMAX and MCE. How they can be used to help diagnose motor problems in the six electrical areas of a motor and how to evaluate these areas are discussed next.

10.10.1 Power Quality

Power quality has recently been thrust in the forefront due to the application of AC and DC drives, as well as other nonlinear loads. The variable frequency drives (VFDs) and other nonlinear loads can significantly increase the distortion levels of voltage and current. How can this distortion be minimized? What equipment is required, and is the concern purely financial or is equipment at risk? Power quality problems as it pertains to motor health involve voltage and current harmonic distortion, voltage spikes, voltage unbalance or imbalance and PF. The basic principle that ties them all together including thermal heating are discussed in this guide from the perspective of motor reliability and troubleshooting.

FIGURE 10.12
PdMA's EMAX instrument. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

By developing a methodical step-by-step process, power analysis (PA) tests using a power quality analyzer, such as PdMA's EMAX shown in Figure 10.12, can be used to get information on quality of the power supply being delivered to the motor. These test results can quickly be used to assess three of the six areas listed above. These areas are derived from the most common electrically related motor failures in an industrial environment. This discussion focuses primarily on the quality of the power supply to the motor, followed by a recommended process on how to evaluate the data recorded during a PA capture.

The EMAX is a dynamic tester that collects data while the motor is operating. This information can be used to evaluate incoming power quality, motor efficiency, rotor, stator, air gap, and power circuit conditions. It simultaneously collects all three phases of current and voltage to provide spectral and digital data in the areas of power, motor current, signature analysis, efficiency, crest factor (CF), total harmonic distortion (THD), sequence data, PF, impedance, current, and voltage.

Power quality refers to the condition of the voltage and current signals. Single- and three-phase nonlinear loads, VFDs, switch-mode power supplies, starting and stopping of large inductive loads, voltage spikes, and the like that can cause poor power quality. These influences can cause excessive harmonics on the electrical distribution system, which can result in overheating of the insulation system and other undesirable effects on the electrical distribution equipment. The term "power quality" is used for defining the quality of power supplied to the motor to do its job. But what is being actually

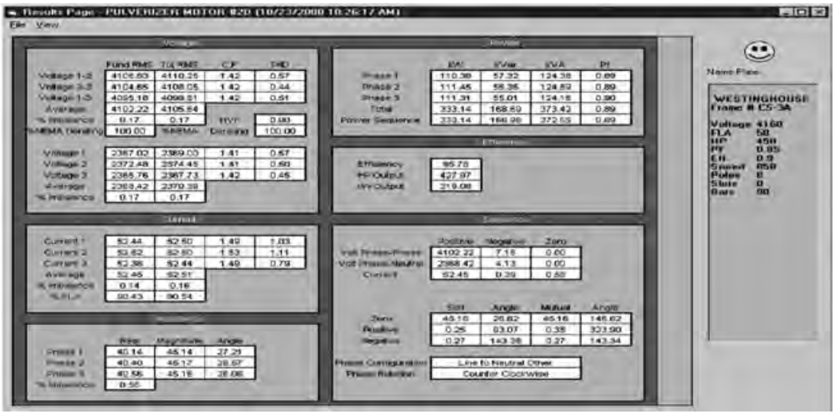


FIGURE 10.13
Phase-to-phase voltage imbalance of a motor—sample result page from PdMA EMAX. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

evaluated is the quality of the voltage that is being supplied to the motor circuit. The power supply system can only control the quality of the voltage; it has no control over the currents that a particular load might draw.

PA test allows a technician to take a power quality snapshot in order to see the condition of the voltage signal and evaluate the effect it will have on the motor. The actual sample time for the simultaneous measurement of the three voltage and current phases takes 0.17 s or less. From this snapshot, the technician focuses primarily on the three phase-to-phase voltages of the power delivered to the motor and determines what effect they are having on motor performance.

Data used to evaluate power quality is located in the phase-to-phase voltage section of the results page as is shown in Figure 10.13. In Figure 10.13, the result page shows among other data the input power to the motor, fundamental root mean square (rms), total rms, CF, and THD for each of the phase-to-phase voltages. The average voltage and percent imbalance are also listed. Additionally, recommended NEMA derating factors are provided for both phase-to-phase voltage imbalance and harmonic voltage factor (HVF).

The motor, or for that matter any three-phase machine, is a symmetrical device and is designed to operate on three-phase balanced sinusoidal voltages. When line voltages applied to a motor are not equal, negative sequence currents are introduced into the motor windings. The negative sequence currents flow in the windings of the motor in the opposite direction to the normal (positive sequence) currents. Therefore, these negative sequence currents produce an air gap flux that rotates in opposite direction to the rotation of the motor. This reduces the net motor torque, affecting its operation and increasing the temperature rise of the motor.

NEMA standard MG1-2006 provides a recommended derating factor based on percent voltage imbalance (Figure 10.14). The usual recommendation is to

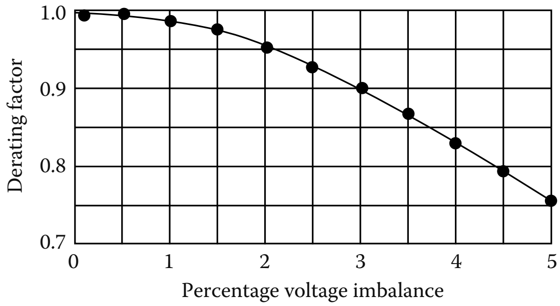


FIGURE 10.14
Derating factor chart for voltage unbalance (NEMA MG1-2006). (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

not run a motor when the voltage imbalance is greater than 5% (per NEMA MG-1). For a given phase-to-phase voltage imbalance, rated horsepower of an induction motor should be multiplied by the derating factor in accordance with the NEMA MG1-2006 recommendation. If the load on the motor exceeds this derated value, take steps to correct the imbalance, or reduce the load on the motor. Running the motor with the imbalanced voltage will cause excessive temperature rise in the windings and damage the insulation.

Terminal Voltage

Terminal voltage has a major effect on motor performance. The effect of low voltage on electric motors is well known and understood; however, the effect of high voltage on motors is often misunderstood. The effects of low and high terminal voltages are discussed next.

Effects of low voltage

When a motor is operated below nameplate rated voltage, some of the motor's characteristics will change slightly and other characteristics more dramatically. To drive a fixed mechanical load, a motor must draw a fixed amount of power from the circuit to produce the necessary torque to drive the load. The amount of power is roughly related to the voltage times current. So with a lower voltage, there will be a rise in current to maintain the required power. In terms of torque, the torque produce by the motor is proportional to the square of the voltage. For example, if the voltage to the motor is reduced by 10%, the torque will be reduced by 19%. This in itself is not alarming, unless the torque delivered by the motor is less than the torque required by the fixed load. In order to produce the necessary torque the motor will draw more current, therefore rise in current may exceed the nameplate current rating of the motor. When this happens the buildup of heat within the motor will damage the insulation system.

Aside from the possibility of overtemperature and shortened insulation life, other important effects on the motor's performance need to be understood. Starting, pull-up, and pull-out torque of induction motors all change based on the applied voltage squared. Thus, a 10% reduction from nameplate voltage (100%–90%) would reduce the starting, pull-up, and pull-out torque to 81%. At 80% terminal voltage, the motor would produce 64% torque of the nameplate values. Clearly, it would be difficult to start those hard-to-start loads under such conditions. Similarly, the motor's pull-out torque will be much lower than during normal voltage conditions.

Effects of high voltage

A common misconception is that high voltage tends to reduce current draw on a motor, since low voltage increases the current. This is not always the case. High voltage on a motor tends to push the magnetic portion of the motor into saturation. This causes the motor to draw excessive current in an effort to magnetize the iron beyond the point to which it can easily be magnetized. Generally, motors will tolerate a certain change above nameplate voltage; however, extremes above this value will cause the amperage to go up with a corresponding increase in heating and a shortening of motor life. For example, motors are generally designed to operate satisfactorily with a band of ±10% in accordance with NEMA standards. Even though this is the so-called tolerance band, the best performance would be at rated terminal voltage. Operation at the ends of this band would put unnecessary stress on the motor.

These tolerance bands are in existence not to set a standard that can be used all the time, but rather to set a range that can be used to accommodate the normal hour-to-hour swings in-plant voltage. Continuous operation at either the low or high end of the band will shorten the life of the motor.

The graph shown in Figure 10.15 is widely used to illustrate the general effects of high and low voltage on the performance of T-frame motors. It is acceptable to show general effects, but remember these effects will change slightly from one motor design to another. High voltages will always tend to

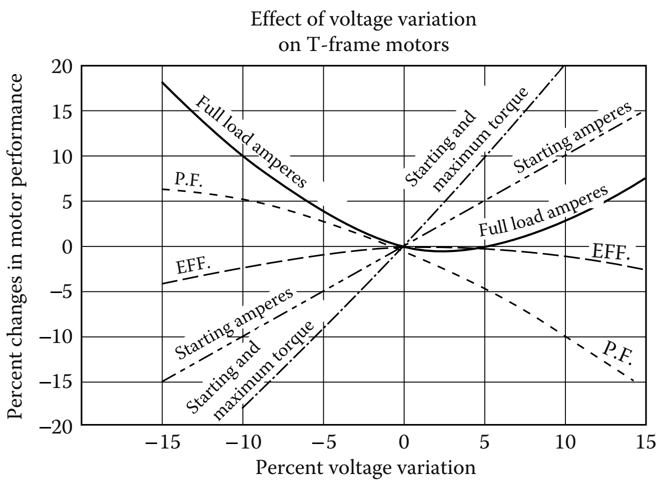


FIGURE 10.15

Effects of voltage variation on T-frame motors (NEMA MG1-2006). (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

reduce PF and increase losses in the system, which results in higher operating cost for the equipment and the system. The following guidelines are provided for assistance in evaluating the voltage of a motor circuit:

- Small motors tend to be more sensitive to overvoltage and saturation than large motors
- U-frame motors are less sensitive to overvoltage than T frames
- Premium/high efficiency motors are less sensitive to overvoltage than standard efficiency motors
- Overvoltage can drive up amperage and temperature even on lightly loaded motors; thus, motor life can be shortened by high voltage
- Full-load efficiency drops with either high or low voltage
- PF improves with lower voltage and drops sharply with high voltage
- Inrush current goes up with higher voltage

Simply put, the best life and efficient operation of electric motors occurs when motors are operated at voltage as close to nameplate ratings as possible.

Harmonics

The presence of harmonic distortion in the applied voltage to a motor will both increase electrical losses and decrease efficiency. These losses will increase motor temperature, resulting in even further losses. High harmonics can result in a temperature rise in motor temperature. NEMA MG1-2006 provides a chart for recommended harmonic derating factor known as HVF to aid in evaluating the harmonic voltage effects on the motor's performance. Figure 10.16a shows sinusoidal current and voltage waveforms of a linear load such as a motor. Figure 10.16b shows the nonsinusodial current and voltage waveforms of nonlinear load, such as drawn by a VFD.

When performing PA testing of motor circuits, the power analyzer, such as EMAX, samples the applied voltage signal. It analyzes the voltage waveform, identifies the fundamental frequency and all harmonics present and their percent of the waveform. With this information the HVF is calculated and, if required, recommended derating per NEMA guidelines is provided. The HVF derating curve is shown in Figure 10.17.

There is usually no need to derate motors if the voltage distortion remains within Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) Standard 519-1992 limits of 5% THD and 3% for any individual harmonic. Excessive heating problems begin when the voltage distortion reaches 8%–10% and higher. Such distortion should be corrected for long motor life.

The PA test, i.e., snap shot of power quality, provides a wealth of detailed information for identifying the power quality being delivered to the motor in a distribution system. In addition, this simple to perform test also provides the data required for detailed evaluation of motor circuits that utilize VFDs. Phase-to-phase voltage, harmonic distortion, bus voltage, and THD have an effect on the performance and condition of a motor.

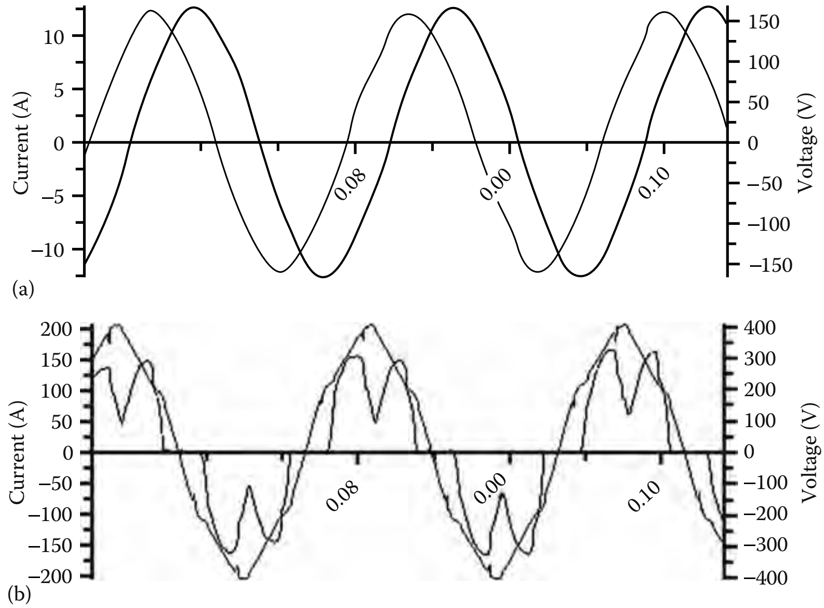


FIGURE 10.16
(a) Current and voltage waveforms of linear load. Linear loads are electrical load devices, which, in steady-state operation, present essentially constant impedance to the power source throughout the cycle of applied voltage. An example of a linear load is an induction motor. Note how the current is proportional to the voltage throughout the sine wave as shown. (b) Current and voltage waveform of nonlinear load. Nonlinear loads are electrical loads, which draw current discontinuously or whose impedance varies throughout the cycle of the input AC voltage sine wave. Examples of nonlinear loads in an industrial distribution system are arc lighting, converter power supplies for VFDs (6 and 12 pulse), and DC power supplies. An example of a discontinuous current draw is shown in Figure 10.16b, illustrating a phase of voltage and current supplying a VFD. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

10.10.2 Power Circuit

The power circuit refers to all the conductors and connections that exist from the point at which the testing starts through to the connections at the motor. This can include circuit breakers, fuses, contactors, overloads, disconnects, and lug connections. A 1994 demonstration project on industrial power distribution systems found that connectors and conductors were the source of 46% of the faults reducing motor efficiency. When evaluating the condition of a motor, it is a good practice to use as many technologies as possible. The anomalies in a power circuit and how to identify them are discussed next.

Power circuit refers to all the conductors and connections that exist from the power supply bus to the connections at the motor. This can include circuit breakers, fuses, contactors, overloads, disconnects, and lug connections. Many times a motor, although initially in perfect health, is installed into a faulty power circuit. This causes problems like voltage imbalances, current imbalances, etc. As these problems become more severe, providing the

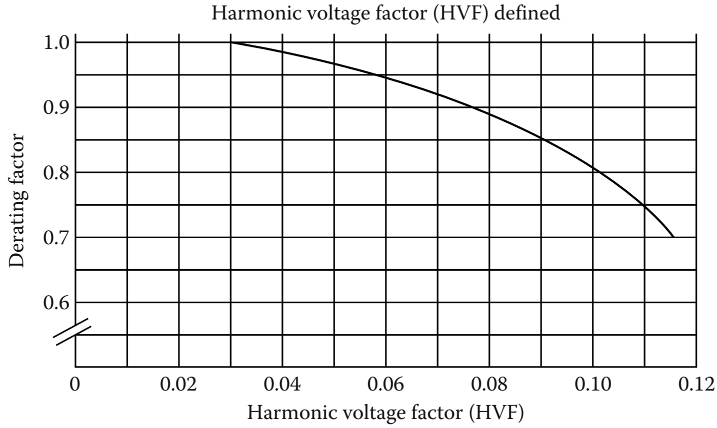


FIGURE 10.17
HVF curve (NEMA MG1-2006). *Note*: The curve does not apply when the motor is operated at other than rated frequency or when operated from a variable voltage or frequency source (VFD). (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

same horsepower output from the motor requires more current, causing temperatures to increase and insulation damage to occur. The PA test as discussed under power quality is performed on energized AC induction, AC synchronous, AC wound-rotor motors, and motors being powered by VFDs. The PA test indicates anomalies in the power circuit, power quality, and the stator fault zones.

High resistance connections in the power circuit result in unbalanced terminal voltages at the motor. The consequences of the unbalanced terminal voltage are overheating of the components adjacent to the high resistance connection, loss of torque, other phases drawing additional current to compensate, overheating of the insulation system, and a decrease in motor efficiency. Voltage imbalances will cause the motor to draw more current in order to perform the required work. Therefore, this could lead to premature single-phasing or motor burn out resulting in shutdown of a process due to the failed motor.

The values from the PA test that are used to evaluate the health of the power circuit are: phase-to-phase voltage, phase-to-phase current, and their respective imbalances. These measured values are recorded and compared against industry standards. An unbalanced power delivery not only causes a voltage imbalance but also causes a much higher percent current imbalance. Some rules of thumb to apply when troubleshooting the power circuit are listed next.

- A 1% voltage imbalance can result in a 6%–7% current imbalance, according to the Electrical Apparatus Service Association.
- A 3.5% voltage imbalance can raise winding temperatures by 25%, according to the Electrical Power Research Institute.
- A 10°C increase in winding temperature (above design) can result in a 50% reduction of motor life.

Phase voltage unbalance causes three-phase motors to run at temperatures greater than their published ratings. This excessive heating is due mainly to negative sequence currents attempting to cause the motor to turn in a direction opposite to its normal rotation. These higher temperatures soon result in degradation of the motor insulation and shortened motor life. The percent increase in temperature of the highest current winding is approximately two times the square of the voltage unbalance. For example, a 3% voltage unbalance will cause a temperature rise of about 18%. The greater the unbalance, the higher the motor winding temperature and the sooner the insulation will fail. NEMA standards recommend a maximum voltage unbalance of 1% without derating the motor. The motor can be derated down to 75% for a maximum of a 5% voltage unbalance. If the voltage unbalance exceeds 5%, it is recommended that the motor not be operated.

The easiest way to test a power circuit is using the PA test while the motor is under normal operating condition. A current imbalance is a possible indication of a high resistance connection. However, a voltage as well as a current imbalance is a better indicator. What determines whether both imbalances are present in the event of a high resistance connection is the test location.

Both voltage and current imbalances are not a requirement in the event of a fault in the power circuit. There can be many different reasons to look for a high resistance connection, a power circuit component failure, or an imbalance that points to another fault zone. Trending power circuit anomalies is most effective at similar loads. Higher loads may result in the fault being more obvious due to the stresses being greater at higher loads. The easiest way to verify the current draw of a motor is by looking at the percent full-load amperes (% FLA) in the current section on the results page of the power analyzer as shown in Figure 10.18.

As mentioned earlier, a current imbalance is a possible indicator of a power circuit anomaly. This is because the location of the anomaly in reference to

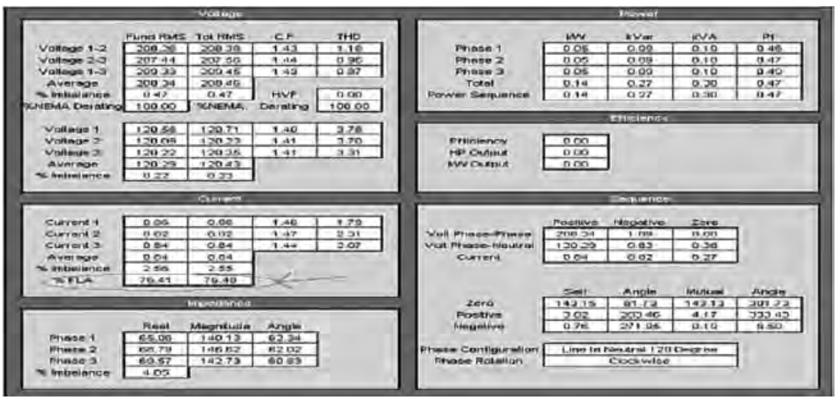


FIGURE 10.18
Motor current in %FLA—sample result page from PdMA EMAX. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

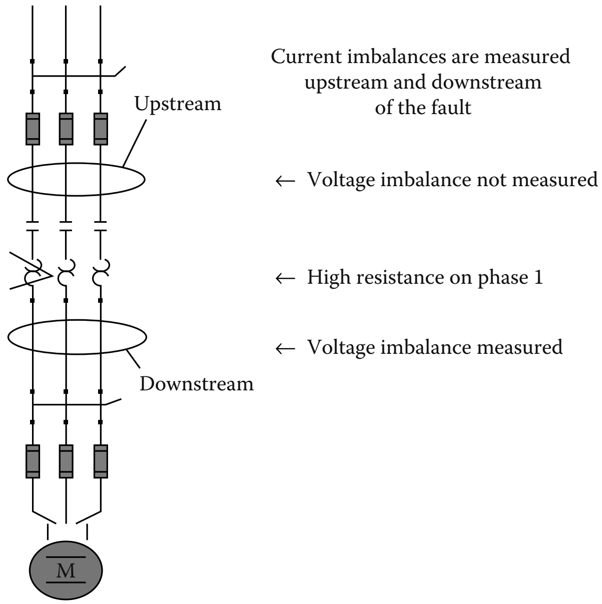


FIGURE 10.19
Location of testing for motor troubleshooting. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

the voltage test leads will show different imbalances. However, measured current values are consistent regardless of test location. Figure 10.19 shows how voltage readings can change based on test location. If the test is being performed upstream of the anomaly, then there will only be a current imbalance, and if the test is downstream, there will be both a current and voltage imbalance.

Loads using three-phase power sources are subject to loss of one of the three phases from the power distribution system. This condition is known as single-phasing of the primary power supply system. The loss of one phase, or leg, of a three-phase line causes voltages to become unbalanced on the secondary distribution power system, thereby causing serious problems for motors. The motor windings will overheat due primarily to the flow of negative sequence currents, a condition that exists anytime there is a phase voltage imbalance. The loss of a phase also inhibits the motor's ability to operate at its rated horsepower.

In conclusion, a high resistance connection results in voltage and current imbalances, which reduces the horsepower rating significantly. When a good motor is installed into a faulty power circuit, it causes problems with power imbalances, as well as, negative sequence currents. As the problems become more severe, the horsepower rating of the motor drops causing temperatures to increase resulting in overheating of adjacent components, damage to the rotor, stator, insulation, shortened motor life, reduced motor efficiency, motor failure, or fire. While damage to the rotor, stator, or insulation might be symptoms of a problem; the root cause still lies with the power circuit.

Replacing the motor without fixing the high resistance connection causes the failure cycle to begin again.

10.10.3 Insulation Condition

This refers to the insulation between the windings and ground. High temperatures, age, moisture, and dirt contamination all lead to shortened insulation life. It has been said that if the industry would just use the space heaters available to keep the insulation dry, then doubling the life of our motors would not be out of the question.

The importance of having good electrical insulation systems is obvious. The designs and applications of electrical equipment are almost infinite in their variety, but all units have one common characteristic. For electrical equipment to operate correctly, one of the most important characteristics is that the flow of electricity takes place along well-defined paths or circuits. These paths are normally limited to conductors, either internal or external to the electrical component. It is important that the flow of current be confined to defined conducting paths and not leak from one path to another through materials not intended to become conducting paths. Deterioration of insulation systems can result in an unsafe situation for personnel exposed to the leakage current.

Despite great strides in electrical equipment design in recent years, the weak link in the chain is still the insulation system. When electrical equipment fails, more often than not the fault can be traced to defective insulation. Even though an electric motor is correctly designed and tested prior to installation, there can be no guarantee that a fault in the insulation will not occur at some time in the future.

Many outside influences affect the life of electrical insulation systems. Outside influences include contamination of the insulation surfaces with chemicals from the surrounding atmosphere that attack and destroy the molecular structure, physical damage due to incorrect handling or accidental shock, vibration, and excessive heat from nearby industrial processes. Voltage transients in the conductors inside the insulation, such as surges or spikes caused by VFDs, can lower the dielectric strength to the point of failure. The deterioration occurs in many ways and in many places at the same time. For example, as chemicals and heat change the molecular structure of the insulating materials, they become semi-conductive, allowing more current to be forced through them by voltage resulting in leakage current.

Correctly conducted insulation system testing, analysis of the data collected, and followed by appropriate corrective actions can minimize the possibility of failures. Therefore, the significance of understanding insulation system testing has never been more important. The reader should refer to Chapters 1 and 2 for detail discussion of insulation (dielectric) theory and practice and conducting tests using DC voltage. A brief overview of the subject matter is offered here from the perspective of motor-winding insulation.

Insulation resistance measurements

The insulation system of motor windings is often checked using DC voltage tests. One of the most common test conducted is to measure the insulation resistance of the motor windings using an insulation resistance tester. When testing insulation with DC voltage, the total current drawn is the sum of four different currents: surface leakage, geometric capacitance, conductance, and absorption.

The surface leakage current is constant over time. Moisture or some other type of partially conductive contamination present in the machine causes a high surface leakage current, i.e., low insulation resistance.

The geometric capacitance current is a reversible component of the measured current on charge or discharge that is due to the geometric capacitance. That is the capacitance as measured with AC of power or higher frequencies. With direct voltage, this current has a very short time constant and does not affect the usual measurement.

The conduction current in well-bonded polyester and epoxy-mica insulation systems is essentially zero unless the insulation has become saturated with moisture. Older insulation systems, such as asphaltic-mica or shellac mica-folium may have a natural and higher conduction due to the conductivity of the adhesive tapes used as backing of the mica.

The absorption current is made of two components: the polarization of the insulation material and the gradual drift of electrons and ions through the insulating material. The polarization current is caused by the reorientation of the insulating material. This material, usually epoxy, polyester, or asphalt tends to change the orientation of their molecules when in the presence of a DC electric field. It normally takes a few minutes of applied voltage for the molecules to be reoriented, and thus for the current-supplied polarizing energy to be reduced to almost zero. The absorption current, which is the second component, is the gradual drift of electrons and ions through the insulating material. These electrons and ions drift until they become trapped at the mica surfaces usually found in motor insulation systems. The positively and negatively charged molecules of an insulation system are shown in Figure 10.19.

Figure 10.20a shows the random orientation of the insulation's molecules. As DC voltage is applied to the insulation, the molecules start to polarize and align, as shown in Figure 10.20b. The energy required to align the molecules, and subsequently reduce the amount of escaping molecules, is known as absorption current. Since absorption current is a property of the insulation material and the winding temperature, a specific absorption current is neither good nor bad. The absorption currents will vary from different insulating material. Prior to 1970, older thermoplastic materials used for motor winding insulation were typically asphalt or shellac, which has a higher absorption current.

After 1970, the shift was made to thermosetting polyester or epoxy-bonded insulating material, which significantly decreased the absorption current. Nonetheless, this does not mean that the more modern insulating materials are better because they have less absorption current. The amount of applied voltage must be appropriate to the nameplate voltage and the basic insulation condition. This is particularly important in small, low-voltage machines

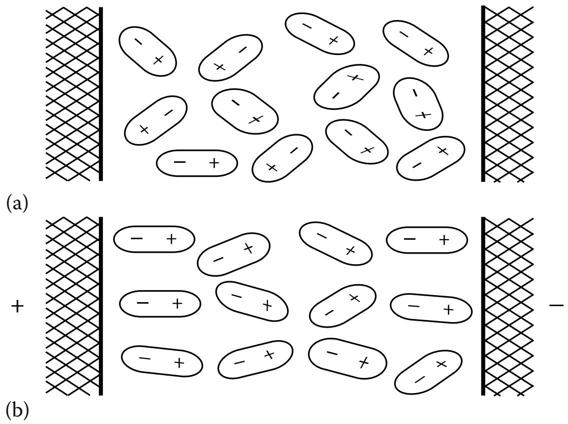


FIGURE 10.20
Positively and negatively charged molecules of an insulation system. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

where there is only a single layer of insulation. If test voltages are too high, the applied voltage may over stress the insulation. See Table 10.7 for recommended voltage application.

Also, the capacitance value of insulation may be measured to reflect on the cleanliness of the windings. A buildup of contamination on the surface of the windings results in higher capacitance readings. With a buildup of contamination on the insulation surface, dirty windings produce higher capacitance values than clean ones do. Over time, capacitance values steadily increased indicating an accumulation of dirt and that cleaning is necessary.

TABLE 10.7

Guidelines for DC Voltages for Insulation Resistance Tests

Winding Rated Voltage (V)[a]	Insulation Resistance Test Direct Voltage[b]
<300	500
>300–1,000	500–1,000
1,000–2,500	500–1,000
2,501–5,000	1,000–2,500
5,001–12,000	2,500–5,000
>12,000	5,000–10,000

[a] Rated line-to-line voltage for three-phase AC machines, line-to-ground voltage for single-phase machines, and rated direct voltage for DC machines or field windings.
[b] Refer to IEEE 43-2000 for a guide on DC test voltages.

Effects of contamination

There are many factors that can affect insulation resistance. The surface leakage current is dependant upon foreign matters, such as oil and carbon dust on the winding surfaces outside the stator slot. The surface leakage current may be significantly higher on large turbine generator rotors and DC machines, which have relatively large-exposed creepage surfaces. Dust and salts on insulation surfaces, which are ordinarily nonconductive when dry, may become partially conductive when exposed to moisture or oil, and this will cause increased surface leakage current and lower insulation resistance. The reason a motor's capacitance increases with contamination is because of how a capacitor works. Any two conducting materials, called plates, separated from each other by a dielectric material, form a capacitor. A dielectric material is anything that is unable to conduct direct electric current. A cable or motor winding surrounded by insulation provides one conductor and the dielectric material. The second plate is formed by the stator core and motor casing iron. It is this second plate that is increased in plate size as contamination builds up.

Effects of temperature

A higher temperature affects the resistance of both the insulation and conductor. There is a term called temperature coefficient (K_T). A material has either a positive or negative K_T. If the material has a positive K_T, then with added heat the resistance readings will increase. Inversely, if a material has a negative K_T, then the resistance readings will decrease with higher temperature. In metals, i.e., the magnetic wire of the stator, higher temperature introduces greater thermal agitation and reduces the movements of free electrons. Because of this reduction in free movement, the resistance readings will increase with added heat and therefore the conductor has a positive K_T. However, in insulation, the added heat supplies thermal energy, which frees additional charge carriers and reduces the resistance reading. Therefore, an increase in temperature on insulation reduces the resistance and it is said to have a negative K_T. This higher temperature affects every current except the geometric capacitive current.

The recommended method of obtaining data for an insulation resistance versus winding temperature curve is by making measurements at several winding temperatures, all above the dew point, and plotting the results on a semilogarithmic scale. Since this type of temperature coefficient plotting is usually not feasible, it is recommended to avoid the effects of temperature in trend analysis, subsequent tests should be conducted when the winding is near the same temperature as the previous tests. Otherwise the insulation test values should be corrected to a common base temperature of 40°C for trend analysis.

Therefore, resistance-to-ground readings must be temperature corrected for trending and comparison purposes. Temperature correction of the reading is required because the temperature of the insulation system under test may vary depending on operating conditions prior to testing, atmospheric conditions, or ambient temperature. Insulation material has a negative temperature coefficient, which means that the resistance characteristics vary inversely with temperature. In the test setup screen of a standard test, the temperature of the windings will have an effect on the measurement. The measured megohm value is then adjusted to a temperature correction to 40°C. The result is the

TABLE 10.8

Recommended Minimum Insulation Resistance Values at 40°C (All Values in Megohm)

$IR_{1\,min} = kV + 1$	For most windings made before about 1970, all field windings, and others not described below
$IR_{1\,min} = 100$	For most DC armatures and AC windings built after 1970 (form-wound coils)
$IR_{1\,min} = 5$	For most machines with random-wound stator coils and form-wound coils rated below 1 kV

Source: From IEEE Std 43-2000, IEEE Recommended Practice for Testing Insulation Resistance of Rotating Machinery.

corrected megohm readings. To accurately trend resistance reading for a motor over time, keep the test voltage and duration of applied voltage constant.

The temperature-corrected megohm readings should be recorded and graphed for comparison over time. If a downward trend is observed, look for dirt or moisture. A single reading will not have much meaning in regards to the overall health of the insulation system; a reading as low as 5 MΩ may be acceptable if related to a low-voltage application. See Table 10.8 for recommended minimum insulation resistance. Also, refer to Section 2.10.1 in Chapter 2 for additional discussion on recommended minimum insulation resistance values.

This is important because dirt and contamination reduce the motor's ability to dissipate heat generated by its own operation, resulting in premature aging of the insulation system. A general rule of thumb is that a motor's life decreases by 50% for every 10°C increase in operating temperature above the design temperature of the insulation system. Heat raises the resistance of conductor materials and reduces the insulation resistance of the winding insulation, and therefore breaks down the insulation. These factors accelerate the development of cracks in the insulation, providing paths for unwanted current to flow to ground. The effects from temperature to insulation resistance are shown in Figure 10.21.

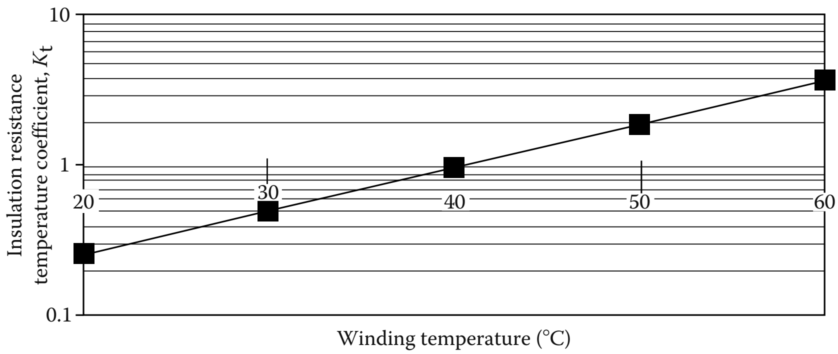


FIGURE 10.21
Temperature versus insulation resistance curve. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

Polarization index and dielectric absorption

The polarization index (PI) and dielectric absorption (DA) tests are performed with a megohmmeter on a deenergized motor. It is not necessary to perform a DA test if a PI test is performed. Refer to Sections 2.3.1.2 and 2.3.1.3 for description of DA and PI tests. The purpose of the PI test is to determine whether or not a motor's insulation system is suitable for continued service. The PI test is not limited to AC induction motors only. It also applies to wound-rotor motors, salient pole machines, and certain DC fields. The DC field would have to have conductors that are fully encapsulated in insulation. Therefore, the PI test can be a worthwhile test for multiple type machines. When performing a PI test, it is not necessary to correct for temperature. Since the machine temperature does not change appreciably between the 1 min and the 10 min readings, the effect of temperature on the PI is usually small. However, if the motor recently shut down and a PI test is performed, the results may be a substantial increase in insulation resistance. This would result in an unusually high PI, at which point additional testing should be performed once the windings have cooled to 40°C or lower. Refer to Table 2.14 in Chapter 2 for Interpretation of PI and DA data. Excellent results should indicate a PI ratio of 2–4, achieve higher than minimal insulation resistance values, and should be a nonsporadic rise in the megohm readings as shown in Figure 10.22.

Erratic insulation resistance values occurring at anytime during the test are indicative of short-term current transients. These may be due to contamination or moisture. It is important to know how low the insulation resistance values fall to in order to grade the insulation. For example, the IEEE standards

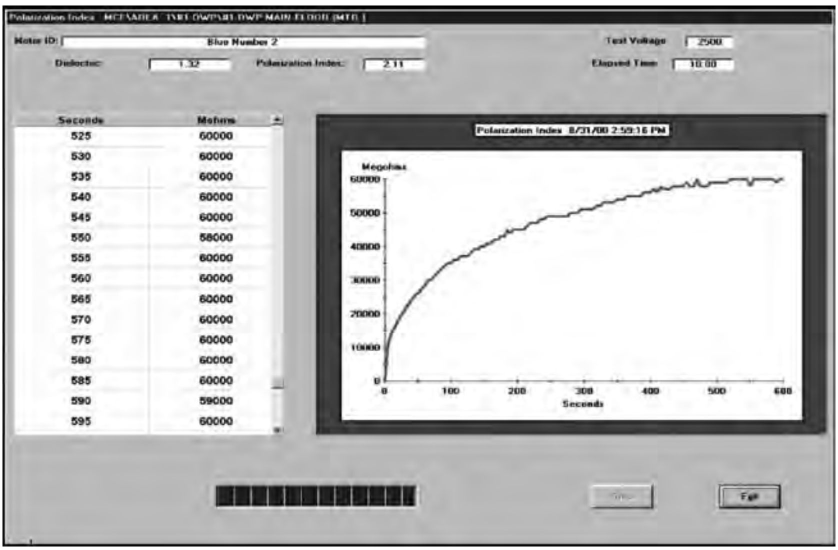


FIGURE 10.22
Graph showing megohm values versus time for calculating PI and DA sample result page from PdMA MCE. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

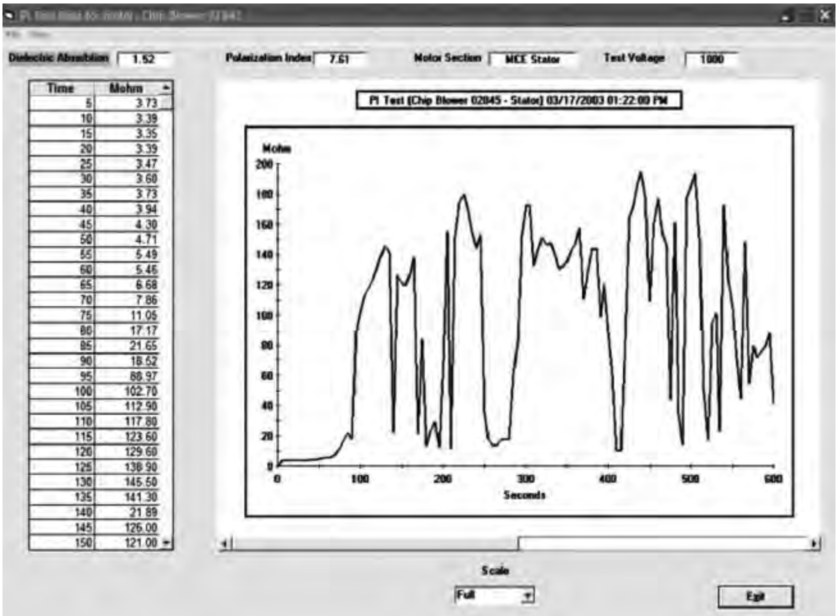


FIGURE 10.23
Graph showing megohm values falling below the minimum value. Sample result page from PdMA MCE. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

recommend minimum insulation resistance value of 100 MΩ for form-wound coils. Figure 10.23 shows insulation resistance values dipping below the suggested minimum value of 100 MΩ for a form-wound coil. The PI and DA tests can be both used as go–no-go, based on the minimum insulation resistance readings.

The PI value of greater than 4 does not necessarily mean that the health of the insulation system is good. The higher PI value may indicate other problems with the insulation system, such as being too dry and brittle indicating that it has lost some or all of its mechanical properties. According to the EASA's principles of large AC motors, it states that PI ratios of greater than 5 should be considered the result of dry or brittle insulation. This may be because of age of the insulation or operating the motor at higher than designed temperatures as shown in Figure 10.24. A very dry or brittle insulation may indicate good insulation resistance but it may not have the necessary dielectric strength and mechanical pliability.

10.10.4 Stator Condition

When discussing the stator, we are referencing the DC or three-phase AC windings, insulation between the turns of the winding, solder joints between the coils, and the stator core or laminations. This fault zone creates a lot of debate as to the cause and rate of failure. The stator fault zone is

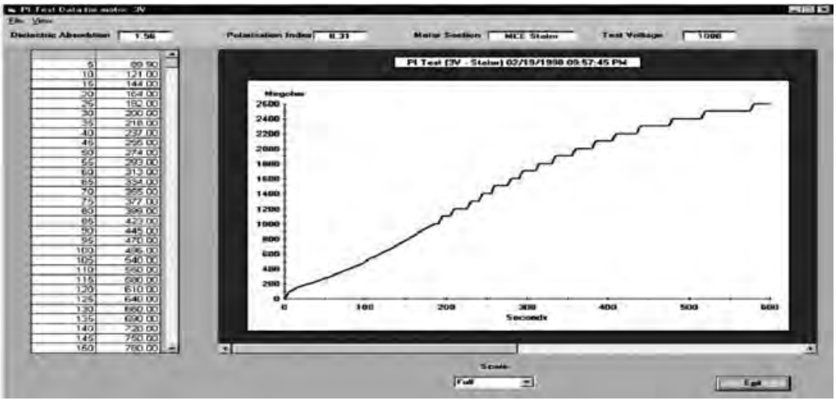


FIGURE 10.24
Graph showing insulation resistance readings of very dry or brittle insulation. Sample result page from PdMA MCE. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

often considered one of the most controversial areas due to the significant challenge in early fault detection and the prevention of motor failure surrounding the stator windings. This challenge is further intensified in higher voltage machines, where the fault-to-failure time frame becomes much shorter. The stator fault zone is identified as the health and quality of the insulation between the turns and phases of the individual turns and coils inside the motor.

Failure Mechanisms

The likely mechanisms of a stator-winding fault are either a turn-to-turn, phase-to-phase, or turn-to-ground short. A turn-to-turn short is identified as a short of one or more windings in a coil. This can develop into a very low impedance loop of wire, which acts as a shorted secondary of a current transformer. This results in excessive current flow through the shorted loop, creating intense heat and insulation damage. Due to the nature of a random wound design, a shorted turn could occur with much higher impedance, allowing the motor to run for extended periods of time before eventually destroying the coil with the high currents. As a result, it is not unusual to find random wound motors still running with bad stator windings. Form-wound coils however, do not exhibit high turn impedances and will therefore heat up quickly following the presence of a turn-to-turn short. A phase-to-phase short is identified as a short of one or more phases to another phase. This fault can be quite damaging due to the possibility of very large voltage potential existing between phases at the location of the short.

Analysis

The big controversy, which surrounds the stator fault zone, is whether technology can give ample warning of an impending stator-winding failure. A motor will develop a turn-to-turn, phase-to-phase, or ground short over

FIGURE 10.25
PdMA's MCE tester. MCE may be used to test all major types of motors: induction, synchronous, wound rotor, DC, servo, and spindle. (Courtesy of pdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

its life. The goal of any test, when faced with this type of long-term certainty, is to identify the impending conditions, which may be conducive to these faults, so the condition can be corrected. If the conditions conducive to faults are removed, then a longer life for the motor can be expected. If a turn-to-turn short has occurred, then preventing a restart of the motor may be the best thing at that point in the troubleshooting effort. Again, if you wait until the turn-to-turn short has occurred before you test the motor, you have waited too long.

A surge comparison test set, or PdMA's MCE test instrument, shown in Figure 10.25, applies a high-frequency AC signal and a low-voltage DC signal to the stator windings to perform stator analysis. From these signals, inductance and resistance measurements are taken for comparison between like coils and historical data. When testing a three-phase AC induction motor, comparison between the three phases is the most powerful tool. When testing a DC motor, only a single phase exists and comparison to historical test data or identical motors would be effective. Inductance is a highly sensitive parameter and is influenced by many variables within the motor. Rotor condition, air gap flux, frame construction (iron or aluminum), and winding condition are a few of the variables. The most influential variable on the inductance reading is the winding condition. Specifically the number of turns is a squared value in the overall inductance equation as seen below:

$$L = \frac{0.4\pi N^2 \mu A \times 10^{-8}}{l}$$

where
- L is the inductance (Henerys)
- N is the number of turns of coil
- μ is the permeability of core in electromagnetic units
- A is the cross-sectional area of core (cm^2)
- l is the mean length of core (cm)

Although it is our goal to prevent a turn-to-turn short from occurring, you can see that a loss of a single turn in a stator winding will have a dramatic effect on the overall inductance of one or more phases based on the coil configuration. In our effort to identify the conditions that are conducive to a turn-to-turn short, we can use other variables in the equation to identify anomalies, which could create stator problems.

Stator faults often end up as a turn-to-turn short, but begin as something else. An example is a motor with excessive vibration, which results in winding movement, friction, and eventually worn insulation between the winding turns. Another example is rotor defects, which create intense heat on the winding surface and eventually create weakened turn insulation or even a ground fault. Core iron defects, such as shorted laminations, will also create additional heat, airflow disturbance, and elevated vibration due to imbalanced magnetic fields and air gap flux. What influence do these situations have on stator inductance? Other than vibration, rotor defects and air gap flux anomalies have a direct impact on the permeability (μ) of the stator windings. Changes in μ due to a stator core defect will create changes in inductance related to a specific group of coils located near the defect. Changes in μ due to rotor defects will have a varying influence on the stator inductance as the rotor position changes. A quick comparison of the inductance and inductive imbalance values between the three phases or to historical data will indicate changes in these variables and prompt further action or testing to be performed in an effort to prevent the turn-to-turn short.

Stator analysis may be performed by evaluating the phase relationship of voltage and current for each of the three phases of an AC induction motor. These values are used to determine the impedance of each phase and display them as an impedance imbalance. Any change in the real or reactive component of one phase that is not duplicated on another phase will indicate a change that needs to be investigated. One of the hurdles involved in this type of testing is acquiring this dynamic data at a load substantial enough to allow these values to be affected by the condition of the windings and not the design. An unloaded motor may run with a current imbalance. This creates variations in the phase impedance, which duplicates indications of a stator fault. Therefore, it is important to have approximately 70% load or more to remove the design impact on these values. Testing should not stop at <70% load, but you must use the test data as comparison values only.

A test today at 50%–60% load compared to a test last quarter at 50%–60% load is still a very informative test. The more test points are obtained, the more confidence there is in the condition of your stator windings.

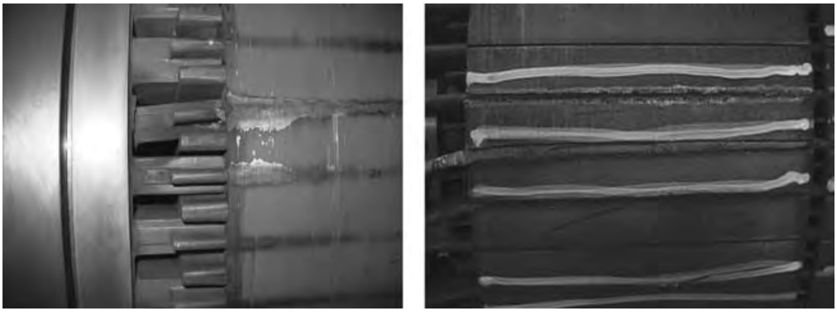
Another application is the ability to acquire data on current through the start-up cycle of the motor. The motor is under the most stress during start-up and can give many indications of problems existing or developing. Stator defects, as in open or shorted turns, will be identified as a change in the amplitude of the inrush current. The inrush current is the highest amplitude of current seen through a start-up and occurs immediately after the motor is energized. This occurs due to the effective locked rotor condition, which the motor is in at start-up. Without rotor movement, the counter electromotive force created by the rotor to reduce current flow in the stator does not exist. In fact, the inrush current immediately following the start of a motor is not affected by load at all. Whether at full load or no load during a start-up, the inrush current will be the same. Only line voltage and circuit impedance will have an effect on the inrush current. The current, which exists following the initial inrush however, is greatly affected by the load. If only line voltage and circuit impedance will affect the inrush current value and we generally expect line voltage to be the same, we must rely on circuit impedance as an indicator of stator health. Inrush current is dependent on impedance of the circuit therefore increased inrush current from normal indicates lower circuit impedance. Lower circuit impedance could be caused by weakened turn insulation or shorted turns and an open winding, high resistance connection or even incorrect repair specifications may cause higher circuit impedance. If significant temperature variations occur from one test to another, it will have an impact on the overall circuit impedance. The effect of temperature should be considered when evaluating the start-up data including inrush current.

It is important to remember that stator defects do not exist very long before they can become catastrophic. Use all the tools available, know the circumstances, and act quickly to dismiss or confirm stator fault indications. The goal of stator analysis is to identify any condition that may lead to a turn-to-turn short so that condition can be corrected before a turn-to-turn short occurs. If turn-to-turn shorts go undetected, then over time they will become bigger faults, such as coil-to-coil short, or phase-to phase short. Refer to Section 10.11.9 on surge comparison tests for detecting turn-to-turn shorts.

10.10.5 Rotor Condition

Rotor condition refers to the rotor bars, the rotor laminations, and the end rings of the rotor. In the 1980s, a joint effort between EPRI and General Electric showed that 10% of motor failures were due to the rotor. The rotor, although a small percentage of the motor problems, can influence other areas to fail.

Starting a motor with a broken or cracked rotor bar causes excessive heat to be generated around the vicinity of the broken bar. This can spread to other rotor bars and destroy the insulation around the nearby laminations. It can also affect other parts of the motor. What do we find just a few



(a) (b)

FIGURE 10.26
(a) Closed and (b) open bar rotor designs. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

millimeters away from the rotor? It is the stator. Stator insulation cannot hold up to the intense heat developed by the broken rotor bar and will eventually fail. Unfortunately, many times broken rotor bars are not easily seen without testing and it may be missed as the root cause of failure. This may result in a motor rewind, and replacement of bearings, but not a rotor repair. When the motor returns to service, it has the same problem all over again, just with new insulation to destroy.

The design of the rotor plays a major role in the severity of an identified rotor anomaly. If the rotor is a closed bar design, such as shown in Figure 10.26a, the severity will be low due to the rotor iron acting to hold the broken rotor bar in place. However, if the rotor is an open bar design, as shown in Figure 10.26b, then the severity increases significantly with the identification of a rotor defect. This elevated concern comes from the possibility of the rotor bar squeezing out of the rotor slot and contacting the stator.

The following tests may be performed to check the rotor.

Rotor influence check

One method of testing the rotor condition is the rotor influence check (RIC). What is a RIC? The RIC is a test performed on AC induction, synchronous, and wound-rotor motors, which illustrates the magnetic coupling between the rotor and stator. This relationship indicates the condition of the rotor and air gap within the motor.

The RIC is performed while rotating the rotor in specific increments (determined by the number of poles) over a single-pole group and recording the change in inductance measurements for each phase of a three-phase motor. For proper resolution, 18 inductance measurements per pole group are recommended. To determine the number of poles in a motor use the following equation.

$$F = NP/120$$

where

F is the line frequency

N is the speed of the motor (rpm)

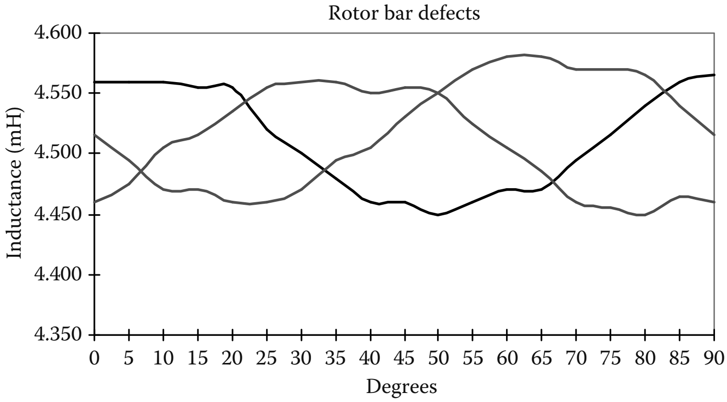


FIGURE 10.27
Graph showing expected inductance changes for a rotor with broken rotor bars. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

P is the number of poles
Recalculated for 60 Hz: $P = 7200/\text{rpm}$
Example: A motor with nameplate rpm = 1780 would have four poles as calculated from the above equation.

A RIC must be performed to provide any information about the standard squirrel-cage induction rotor. Faults such as broken rotor bars or damaged laminations can exist even if the balance of inductance is low. Basing the decision to perform a RIC only on how high the balance of inductance is on the baseline test could result in overlooking late stages of rotor bar defect. Figure 10.27 shows the expected inductance changes for a rotor with broken rotor bars. Note the erratic inductance values at the peak of the sine waves for each phase. Broken rotor bars cause a skewing in the field flux generated by and around the rotor bars. A normal rotor would have no skewing or erratic inductance patterns, as seen in Figure 10.28.

Numerous methods exist for rotor evaluation with the motor running. These methods are inrush current time domain, spectral, and demodulated forms of the current signal which offer a broad approach to rotor analysis. Equipment from various manufacturers is available to perform such analysis.

Inrush/start-up

One method of evaluating rotor health is the inrush/start-up. Broken rotor bars create higher rotor impedance resulting in higher reflected impedance onto the stator driving the current and torque down. This can be seen in the before and after inrush examples shown in Figure 10.29.

(Fp) sidebands

Another method is trending the pole pass sideband frequency (Fp) amplitude. Increasing Fp sideband amplitude is indicative of a modulating line current associated with rotor slip. This modulation is often due to a rotor

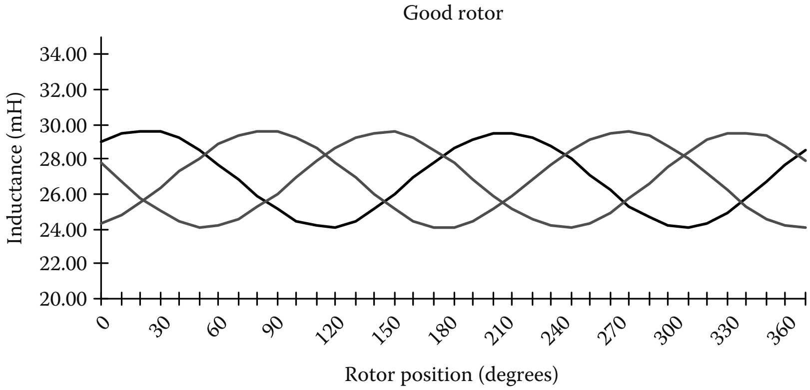


FIGURE 10.28
Graph of a good rotor showing no skewing or erratic inductance patterns. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

cage anomaly. Trending the Fp sideband amplitude an determining the differential amplitude as compared to line frequency amplitude allow a predetermined alarm based on well-known industry accepted standards. Figure 10.30 shows an elevated Fp sideband peak above the 36 dB differential from line frequency.

Fifth harmonic

The third method of evaluating rotor health is the high-frequency spectral analysis sometimes referred to as the Swirl effect. Broken or cracked rotor

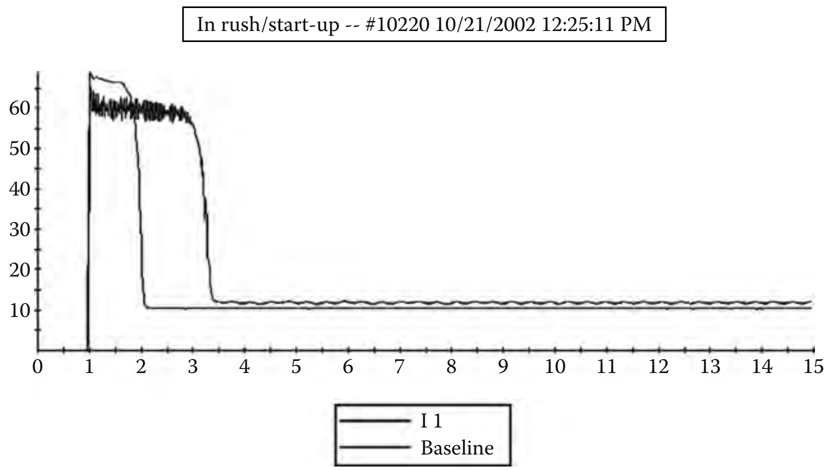


FIGURE 10.29
Graph showing inrush current of the motor relative to the baseline inrush current. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

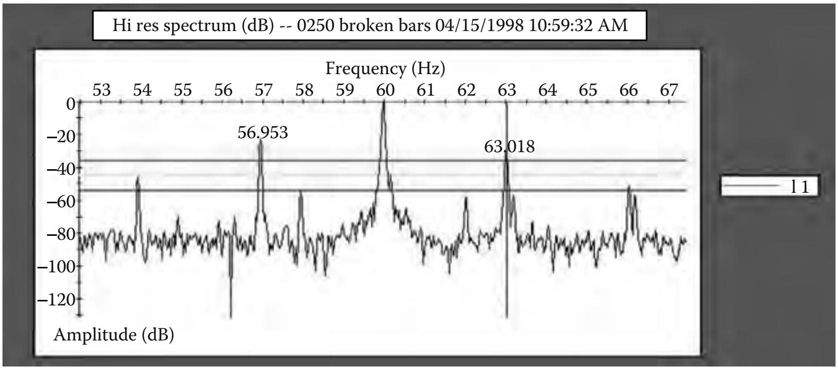


FIGURE 10.30
Graph showing an elevated Fp sideband peak. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

bars create a phase shift in the air gap flux resulting in multiple Fp sidebands below the end of the fifth harmonic. Figure 10.31 shows these elevated sidebands beneath the fifth harmonic.

Current demodulation

The fourth method of evaluating rotor health is the demodulated current spectrum. By removing the components of line frequency from the spectrum, the noise floor drops to a value allowing normally nonvisible peaks to be visible. Relating to rotor health it also allows a filtered view of the Fp in a

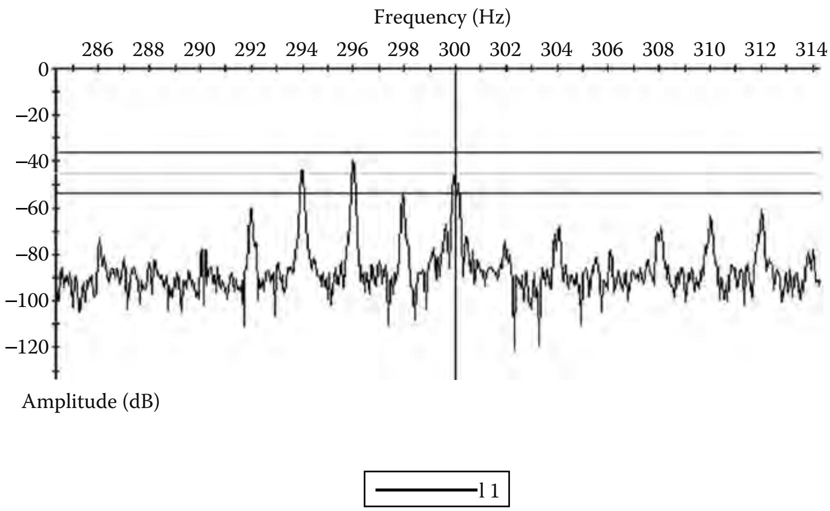


FIGURE 10.31
Graph showing elevated sidebands beneath the fifth harmonic. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

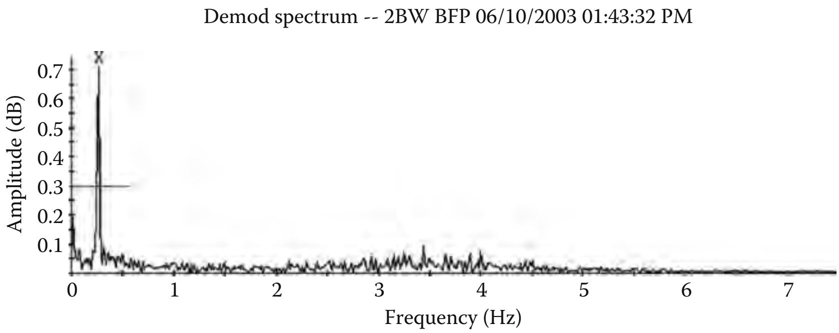


FIGURE 10.32
Graph showing the elevated Fp peak. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

demodulated spectrum form. Figure 10.32 shows the elevated Fp peak exceeding a predetermined alarm set point. This peak was associated with a broken rotor bar in a large 2-pole motor.

In a study funded by the Electric Power Research Institute, 10% of motor failures were caused by a rotor anomaly. This amounts to a large number of motors in even the average-sized plant. It is important to be aware of the rotor design, utilize the broad spectrum of test methods discussed above to correlate and confirm, and extend the motor life by fixing the cause not the symptom.

10.10.6 Air Gap

This relationship references the air gap between the rotor and stator. If this air gap is not evenly distributed around the 360° of the motor, uneven magnetic fields can be produced. These magnetic imbalances can cause movement of the stator windings, resulting in winding failure, and electrically induced vibration, resulting in bearing failure.

The air gap fault zone describes the measurable distance between the rotor and stator within the motor. Air gap eccentricity is a condition that occurs when there is nonuniformity in the air gap between the rotor and stator. When there is an eccentricity in the air gap, varying magnetic flux within the air gap will create imbalances in the current flow, which can be identified in the current spectrum. This unevenness in the space between the rotor and stator will affect the alignment of the RIC results.

- Static eccentricity occurs when the centerline of the shaft is at a constant offset from the centerline of the stator. An example is a misaligned end bell.
- Dynamic eccentricity occurs when the centerline of the shaft is at a variable offset from the centerline of the stator, such as a wiped bearing.

Failure Mechanisms

By definition, air gap eccentricity is a mechanical fault with the motor. There are several possible causes for the presence of variances in the distance between a rotor and a stator. The five basic types of air gap eccentricities that can occur are

- Rotor OD is eccentric to the axis of rotation
- Stator bore is eccentric
- Rotor and stator are round, but do not have the same axis of rotation
- Rotor and shaft are round, but do not have the same axis of rotation
- Any combination of the above

The following are only a few of the possible causes of an air gap eccentricity:

- Incorrect mounting of the motor to its bedplate can lead to an air gap distortion. A loose or missing bolt allows shifting of the motor's mounting foot during thermal expansion of the frame. This shifting over time could lead to a distortion of the frame and possible eccentricity of the stator. The common term for a motor incorrectly mounted is soft foot.
- During construction of the motor, out-of-roundness of either the rotor or stator will lead to an air gap eccentricity. Industry standards recommend that measurements for total indicated roundness should be performed at different locations along the length of each of these components. Couple these measurements with the circumferences of each component, and depending on the speed and size of the motor, there are recommended tolerances from 5% to 20% variation in the air gap.
- Eccentricity can develop due to incorrect tensioning of drive belts coupled to a motor. Incorrect alignment could also lead to a situation similar to this with both leading to a bowing of the rotor during operation.
- Distorted end bells, cocked bearings, or a bent shaft will all cause an air gap eccentricity. During the manufacturing of the rotor, uneven mechanical stresses could be introduced into the cage and lamination stack leading to bowing of the completed rotor.

An air gap eccentricity results in increased levels of vibration due to the uneven magnetic pull it creates between the circumference of the rotor and stator bore. Over time, these elevated levels of vibration can result in excessive movement of the stator winding, which could lead to increased friction and eventually a turn-to-turn, coil-to-coil, or ground fault. Additionally, this vibration can accelerate bearing failure, which could seize the shaft and overheat the windings or allow additional movement of the shaft leading to a rotor/stator rub. The uneven magnetic stresses applied to the rotor coupled with the increased vibration will also contribute to mechanical looseness developing in the rotor. Any of these occurrences could lead to a catastrophic failure of the motor, which could require a complete rewind and possible restacking of the iron.

Analysis

The easy part about analyzing a motor for eccentricity is collecting the data. The hardest part seems to be confirming what the data shows and deciding what to do about it. This may be true for many of the areas, but there is no absolute standard on how much eccentricity indicated on a current spectrum is too much, with the exception of an actual measurement of the physical air gap. Eccentricity analysis is performed utilizing the RIC test and will be most successfully applied in troubleshooting if preexisting RIC data is available. However, even without a baseline test, the RIC test will give definite indications of existing eccentricity.

Analysis of a RIC is done by evaluating the graph of phase-to-phase inductance for the following:

Scale: sinusoidal Y/N?	Characteristics: rotor damage
Alignment: eccentricity	Peak-to-peak inductance: eccentricity or stator

Phase-to-phase or turn-to-turn shorts will cause a separation of the three-phase sinusoidal RIC graph. The result is either a "two-up/one-down" or a "one-up/two-down" pattern. The pattern depends on whether the stator windings are wye or delta wound.

Air gap eccentricity impacts the alignment of the graph and the peak-to-peak inductance values of individual phases. Peak-to-peak variations occur on each phase or between phases, depending on the type of eccentricity. If it is static eccentricity, you may get equal peaks from pole group to pole group on the same phase, but the peak amplitude will be quite different between the pole groups of different phases. Simply put, the graph looks misaligned across the graph. If dynamic eccentricity exists, then peaks from pole group to pole group in the same phase will be different. In a four-pole motor, the rotor is positioned 90° to cover one pole group. When performing a RIC, the PdMA analysis software will use the motor nameplate data to determine the number of poles and then indicate how many degrees the rotor needs to be positioned to cover the first pole group.

Concentric versus lap wound

An important consideration when evaluating RIC data for indication of eccentricity is whether the motor is concentric or lap wound. If a motor is concentric wound, it is built with a preexisting offset between the stator windings and the rotor. The concentric wound motor seen in Figure 10.33 has the stator windings inserted into the stator slots in a basket form or stacked configuration. Commonly all of the pole groups for phase A are laid into the slots, then all of the pole groups for phase B, then finally all of the pole groups for phase C. This results in a greater distance between the rotor

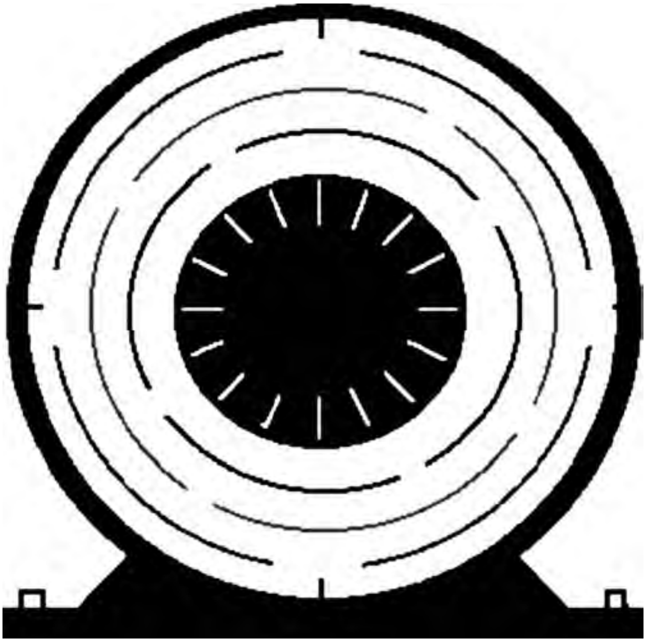


FIGURE 10.33
Graph showing concentric wound motor stator windings inserted into the stator slots in a basket form or stacked configuration. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

and the phase A coils than exists between rotor and phase C coils. This results in a natural stair stepping indication of the phase-to-phase values seen in Figure 10.34.

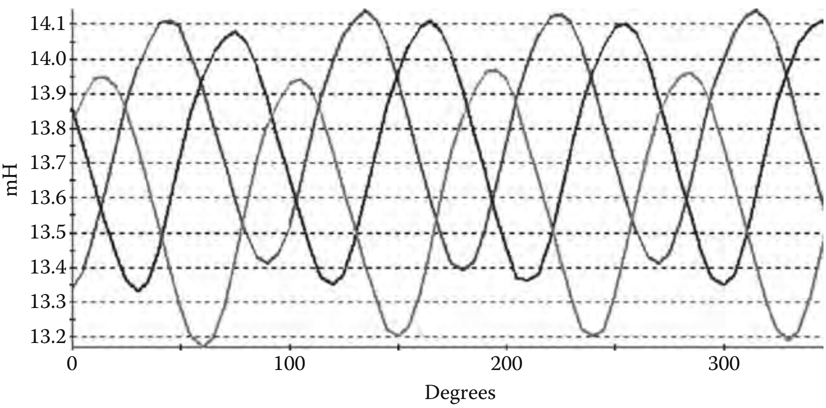


FIGURE 10.34
Graph showing phase-to-phase values of pole group windings. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

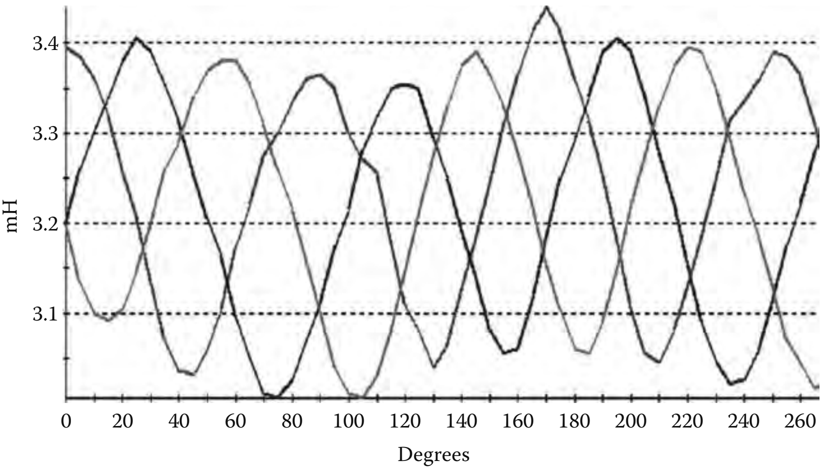


FIGURE 10.35
Graph showing an example of a dynamic eccentricity. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

Concentric wound motors by design create RIC results that appear as though there may be an eccentricity between the rotor and stator. Results of a RIC performed on a random concentric wound motor can be seen in Figure 10.35. Notice the peak amplitudes from one pole group to another are basically the same, but different from the other two phases. One phase is always slightly lower and the other phase is always slightly higher.

In a case where concentric wound motors are identified or suspected, the RIC needs to be performed over two pole faces. Place the motor in observe and confirm any suspected eccentricity with correlating evidence, such as EMAX eccentricity analysis or vibration analysis.

Analysis

Figure 10.35 shows an example of a dynamic eccentricity. Notice how the peak amplitudes of the blue phase vary from pole group to pole group as the rotor is rotated. This occurs for each of the three phases. Dynamic eccentricity is the more severe type of eccentricity due to the increased chance of a rotor/stator rub.

Eccentricity analysis is performed through a high-frequency spectrum of the current signal. When air gap eccentricity exists in a motor, the air gap flux will be off balance, causing different levels of voltage to be induced onto the rotor. This results in irregular current flow on the rotor and varying levels of counter electromotive force, which is felt by the stator. These varying forces on the stator winding produce changes in the amplitude of the current similar to a load change. By displaying the current in a spectrum format, the modulations can be seen as sideband activity around a location known as the eccentricity frequency (F_{ECC}). The F_{ECC} is the number of rotor bars multiplied by the shaft frequency (rpm/60) of the motor. The current modulations are seen as peaks on the spectrum, which will be first and third

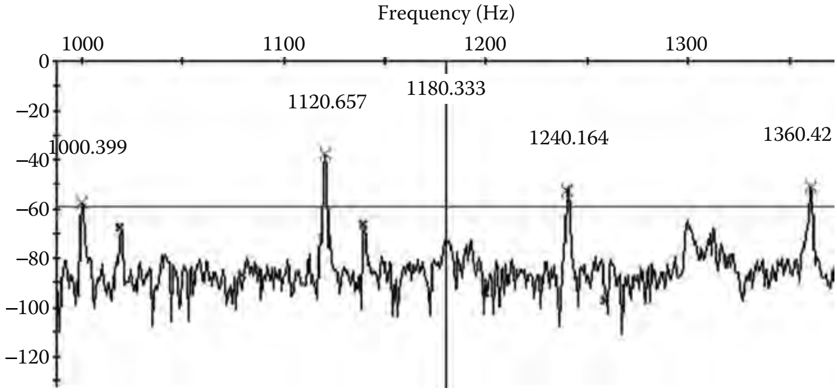


FIGURE 10.36
Graph showing current modulations as peaks on the spectrum. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

sidebands of the line frequency powering the motor. In a 60 Hz system these peaks will appear as four peaks, 120 Hz apart, and nonsynchronous to line frequency. The peaks are seen in Figure 10.36.

In Figure 10.36, the large Xs indicate the eccentricity-related peaks. The small xs indicate harmonics of line frequency. The cursor line located at 1180 Hz is the F_{ECC}, which is equal to the number of rotor bars times the shaft speed. The speed and rotor bar information is necessary to be able to confirm that the peaks identified on the spectrum are indeed eccentricity related. If the number of rotor bars and the speed are known, the analyzer software automatically places a red X at the four peak locations that identify eccentricity. Obtaining the speed from the Advance Spectral Analysis current demodulation software, low/high resolution rotor test or via a strobe light is the easy part. The rotor bar count; however, is another matter. First, at the earliest opportunity you should verify that a rotor bar count exists on each of your motor repair specifications. The report you get back from the shop should include how many rotor bars and stator slots exist in the motor. Second, utilize the vibration department to assist in the rotor bar count. They may have previously identified the number of rotor bars through spectrum analysis of the vibration signal.

Eccentricities in the air gap will develop uneven magnetic pull between the stator and rotor during operation. This uneven magnetic pull will lead to increased vibration, mechanical wear and tear, and possibly pullover to the point of a rotor/stator rub. It is important to have equipment, which provides the necessary information to make informed maintenance decisions concerning the severity of an air gap eccentricity.

Impact of variable frequency drives on motor

The variable frequency drive (VFD) is also called variable speed drive (VSD). The VFD technology has changed how motors are applied today. Many VFDs are being installed today with the motors to gain benefits in energy savings and ability to vary or control the speed of the motor. However, this all comes at a cost, since the VFD is a nonlinear load that generates harmonics and therefore pollutes the power supply to the motor and other loads in the electrical distribution system. This discussion focuses on the effects of VFDs on motors and how motors are impacted by VFDs.

Excessive heat is the first basic issue to be understand. One concern of VFD is their propensity to destroy motors through overheating. Where does the excessive heat come from? Heat results from excessive current flowing through the motor in order for the motor to produce the necessary torque to drive its load. When a motor operates as designed, it will deliver a certain torque for a given current input. If the torque demand changes (as in variations in load), the current demand changes. The motor is designed to account for the current required to provide rated torque and the amount of heat transfer required, to prevent the motor from overheating.

If a motor requires more than full-load current to deliver the rated torque or horse power, then there is either a design flaw with the motor or a problem with the power supply to the motor. Today, motors are designed with longer stretched out frames and much less iron than older designs. A 40 hp motor today is much smaller than the one made years ago. Older motors were able to dissipate heat through the large masses of iron used in their construction. Today, the heat is removed by transfer to the surface of the motor.

If this higher current is not from the load demand or the design of the motor (and these things should both be considered) then attention should be shifted to power quality. Poor power quality can cause a motor to draw excessive current as a result of harmonics, especially the 2nd, 5th, 11th, and so on. The IEEE standard 519-1992 standard on power quality states that the current distortion at the point of common coupling should not exceed a predetermined value, such as 10% for distribution system rated 15 kV and less.

First, let us understand the power quality problems. Voltage and current harmonic distortion, voltage spikes, voltage unbalance, and PF are a few among the many concerns when discussing power quality. Although all of these are important, we focus on just a few, beginning with harmonic distortion.

From the power quality perspective, the most common reference relating to harmonics is THD. THD is the ratio of the rms of the harmonic content to the rms value of the fundamental quantity, expressed as a percent of the fundamental. Quite simply it is the rms value of the signal with the fundamental frequency removed. A perfect 60 Hz sine wave would have 0% THD. So higher frequency waveforms, that is, voltage and currents that are multiple of the fundamental frequency (60 Hz) would be considered as harmonic distortion.

The following is a graphic representation showing the basic differences between the fundamental 60 Hz signal and the harmonics of the 60 Hz signal.

Figure 10.37 shows a time domain graph of a three-phase 60 Hz voltage and current signal. Phase 1 has a zero crossing near 0.01 s. The next zero crossing occurs at 180°, just before 0.02 s and completes a cycle at 360°. This is considered the first or fundamental harmonic.

Harmonic distortion is not difficult to understand since this distortion is comprised of higher order signals that are multiples of the 60 Hz fundamental

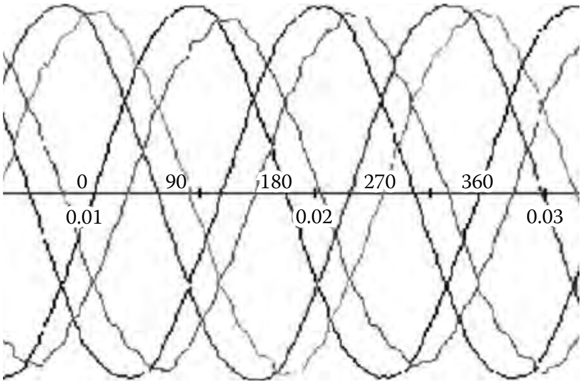


FIGURE 10.37
Three-phase 60 Hz fundamental voltage and current waveforms. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

signals. These harmonics can be related to the positive, negative, and zero sequence components that will help in the understanding of why the harmonic distortion causes excessive heating in the motor and other undesirable effects.

In a perfectly balanced three-phase system, only the positive sequence exists. However, when power system becomes unbalanced then all three components exists, i.e., positive, negative, and zero sequence. Similarly, when harmonics are generated by nonlinear load, such as VFD, the electrical distribution system is no longer in balance. As a result, the various order harmonics then can be classified as positive, negative, and zero sequence harmonics because they behave exactly like the original components. Positive sequence harmonics create a magnetic field in the direction of rotation of the fundamental (60 Hz), which is the positive direction of rotation of the motor. Therefore, the first-order harmonic is a positive sequence harmonic.

The second-order harmonic is 120 Hz and rotating in the opposite direction to the fundamental (60 Hz); therefore, it is called the negative sequence harmonic. Negative sequence harmonics develop magnetic fields in the opposite direction of rotation of the motor thus producing an opposing torque. The opposing torque reduces net positive torque of the motor. Therefore, the motor current increases to make up the torque required for a given load. The rotation of the magnetic field developed by the second harmonic is in reverse order. The second harmonic sequence is 3, 2, 1. This is in reverse order of the positive sequence and therefore is called negative sequence harmonic.

The third harmonic is called a zero sequence harmonic. This creates a single-phase signal that does not produce a rotating magnetic field. Though this signal performs no real work, it can still increase overall current demand and generate heat. The third harmonic currents flow back to the supply transformer and collect on the neutral leg, creating excessive heat in the transformer. The various order harmonics and their classifications as positive, negative, and zero sequence is shown in Table 10.9.

TABLE 10.9

Relationship between the Harmonic Order and the Positive, Negative, and Zero Sequence

Harmonic	Frequency	Sequence	Harmonic	Frequency	Sequence
1	60	+	7	420	+
2	120	–	8	480	–
3	180	0	9	540	0
4	240	+	10	600	+
5	300	–	11	660	–
6	360	0	12	720	0

Source: Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.

Harmonics are primarily the result of nonlinear (switching) loads such as computers, florescent lighting, and VFDs. The presence of harmonics in a distribution system results in excessive heat from increased current required by the loads. For example, a motor designed to pull 100 A at full load may draw 120 A if the harmonic distortion is high. This additional current can lead to insulation damage and possibly a failure of the motor. The voltage distortion is the primary concern for the motor.

Figure 10.38 shows the general makeup of a drive system consisting of three sections (rectifier, storage, and inverter sections). The rectifier section converts the AC signal into a DC signal. The capacitor bank stores this DC power, and the inverter section converts it into a variable AC output. Drives designed to operate DC motors function through similar principles. With DC, the strength of the output signal is regulated instead of the frequency. The focus of this discussion will be on AC drives.

Common classifications of VFDs available today are variable voltage inverters (VVI), variable current inverters (VCI), and PWM inverters. Each

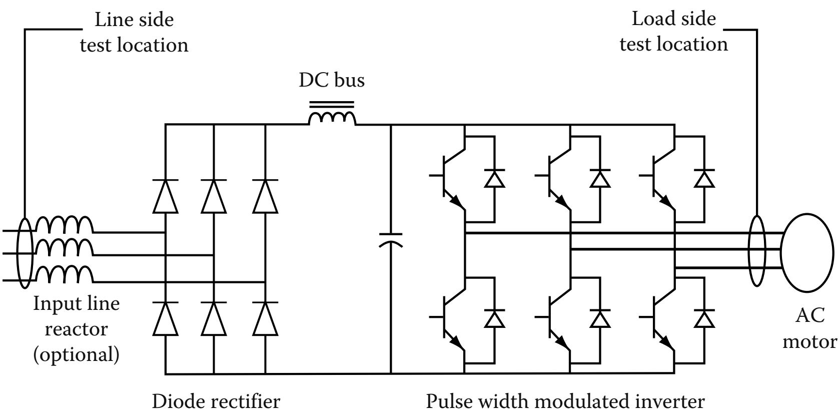


FIGURE 10.38
Components of a VFD. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

operates differently with its own set of advantages and disadvantages. Following is brief discussion on these three VFDs.

The above example shows the output of voltage and current from the inverter section of a VVI, sometimes referred to as a voltage source inverter (VSI). This type of drive controls the output voltage, as seen in the six steps that occur throughout a single cycle of the voltage waveform. The current signal is the product of the relationship between the controlled voltage of the drive and the motor impedance (Figure 10.39).

A VCI operates on the same principle as the VVI except that it controls the output current. In the case of the VCI, the voltage signal is then the product of the relationship between the controlled current of the drive and the motor impedance.

Although it is easy to see the six pulse influence that both the VVIs and VCIs have on the motor, we also need to be aware of their impact on an unfiltered distribution system upstream of the drive. To minimize the harmonic effects on the distribution system, line reactors or filters may be installed to filter the harmonics.

The third type of drive to be discussed is a newer class of drives, known as the PWM inverters. PWM drives utilize the insulated gate bipolar transistor (IGBT) technology mentioned earlier. Fast rise times, as low as 0.1 μs, can quickly damage older classes of insulation. This is amplified when the surge impedance of the motor is significantly higher than the cable impedance, causing voltage doubling to occur. Incorrect cable lengths are one cause of this impedance mismatch. As a result, the NEMA MG 1-2006, Section IV, Part 31 specification has been rewritten requiring motor insulation subject to VFDs signals, to withstand 1600 V pulses occurring in 0.1 μs or greater (Figures 10.40 and 10.41).

The major difference between PWM and other classes of drives is that PWM drives do not vary the amplitude of the voltage output. Instead they vary the frequency at which the output voltage is pulsed. By controlling the high frequency on and off times of the voltage output, the appearance of a sinusoidal wave form is accomplished. Although the output voltage is very erratic, the resulting current waveform is extremely smooth.

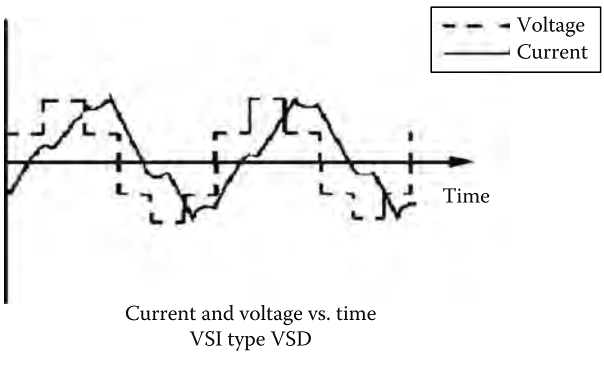


FIGURE 10.39
Current and voltage of VVI drive. (Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

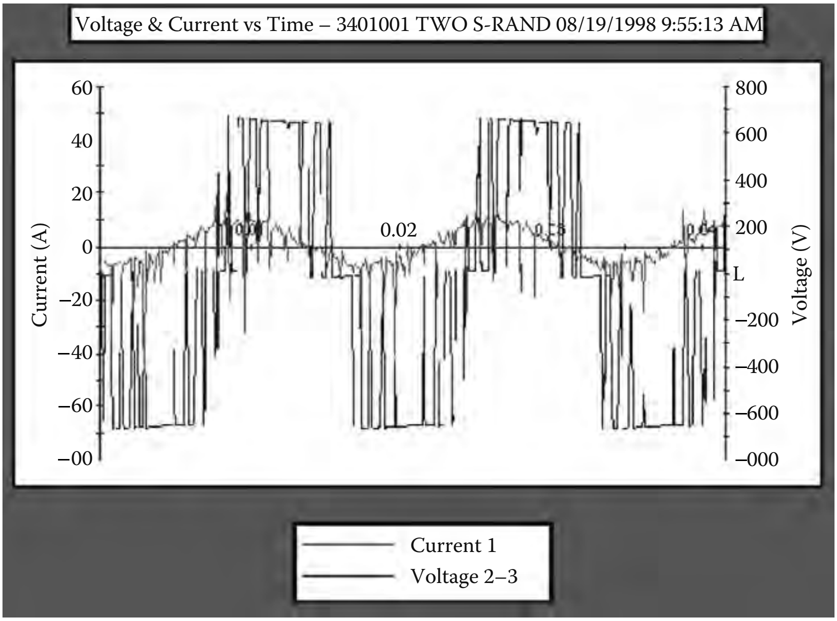


FIGURE 10.40
Voltage and current relationship at the output of a PWM drive. (From Naah Bethel/PdMA, Fault Zone Analysis, *Six Part Series on Identifying Motor Defects*. Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

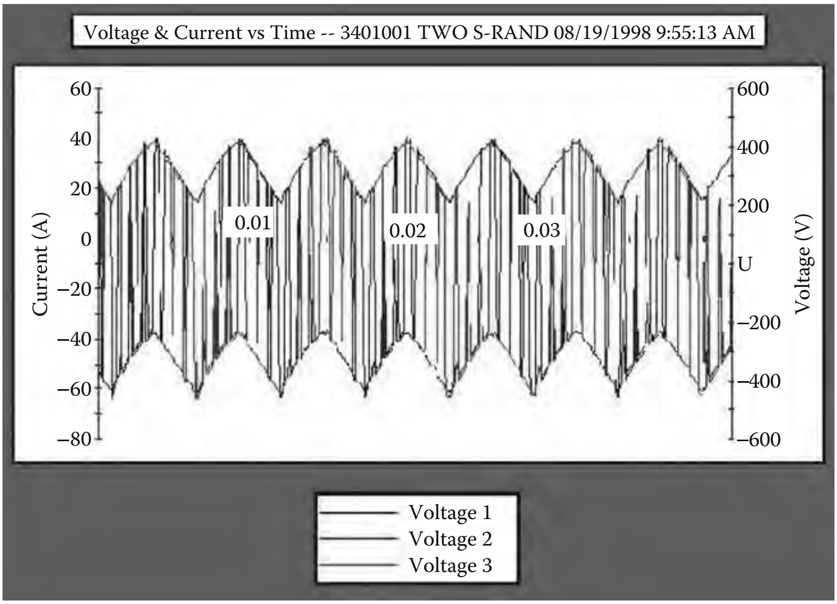


FIGURE 10.41
Line-to-neutral voltage output of a PWM drive. (From Naah Bethel/PdMA, Fault Zone Analysis, *Six Part Series on Identifying Motor Defects*. Courtesy of PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL.)

It is a fact that VFDs can damage the insulation system of a motor. However, with better understanding, it is possible to prevent the premature motor failures. It would be prudent not to install a PWM drive to an aged class B insulation system. Drive manufacturers have increased effectiveness through PWM technology to deliver a clean current waveform. But that current comes with the expense of very fast rise time. Consult the drive manufacturer and develop an understanding of the limitations in place for the installation of VFDs. This includes things such as cable length, modulating frequencies, and impedance matching of the motor and circuit and filtering to ensure a clean distribution system. VFD technology is here to stay and it will continue to improve. Just like motor insulation, it will get better over time. Information and communication is the key to longer motor life.

Application guide for VFDs

As discussed above, a good understanding of the technology is required when applying VFD to a new and to an existing motor. For VFDs equipped with IGBT technology, the voltage rises from zero to peak in only one-tenth of a microsecond. Unfortunately, there are not many standard design motors, including existing motors that would have sufficient insulation to withstand such a fast voltage rise. High peak voltages can be experienced at the motor terminals especially when the distance between the inverter (drive) and the motor exceeds about 15 m (50 ft). This is typically caused by the voltage doubling phenomenon of a transmission line having unequal line and load impedances. Motor terminal voltage can reach twice the DC bus voltage of the drive in long lead applications. When the characteristic load impedance is greater than the line impedance, then voltage (and current) is reflected from the load back toward the source (drive). The absolute peak voltage is equal to the sum of the incident peak voltage traveling toward the motor plus the reflected peak voltage. If the load characteristic impedance is greater than the characteristic line impedance, then the highest peak voltage will be experienced at the load (motor) terminal. If the DC bus voltage of the drive is 850 V, then motor terminal voltage could reach 1700 V peak.

Fast voltage rise times of 1600 V/μs can be typical as the motor lead length exceeds just a few hundred feet. Voltage rise time is referred to as dv/dt (change in voltage versus change in time). When the rise time is very fast, the motor insulation becomes overstressed. Excessively high dv/dt can cause premature breakdown of standard motor insulation. Inverter duty motors typically have more phase-to-phase and slot insulation than the standard duty motors (NEMA design B).

When motors fail due to insulation stress caused by high peak voltage and fast voltage rise times (high dv/dt) they have common symptoms. Most failures of these types occur in the first turn as either a phase-to-phase short or phase-to-ground short. The highest voltage is seen by the first turns of the winding and due to motor inductance and winding capacitance of the motor, the peak voltage and dv/dt decay rapidly as the voltage travels through the winding. Normally, the turn-to-turn voltage in a motor is quite low because there are many turns in the winding. However when the dv/dt is very high, the voltage gradient between turns and between phase windings can be excessively high, resulting in premature breakdown of the motor insulation system and ultimately motor failure. This problem is most prevalent on 480 V system because the peak terminal voltage experienced often exceeds the insulation breakdown voltage rating of the motor.

The standard motor capabilities established by the NEMA and expressed in the MG-I standard (part 30), indicate that standard NEMA type B motors can withstand 1000 V peak at a minimum rise time of 2 μs. Therefore to protect standard NEMA Design B motors, one should limit peak voltage to 1 kV and reduce the voltage rise to less than 500 V/μs.

There are several solutions available to solve this problem, each offering a different degree of protection at a different price. These solutions are:

Inverter duty motors: New motors specifically design for IGBT drive applications should be considered for all new installations. They offer increased winding slot insulation, increased first turn insulation, and increased phase-to-phase turn insulation. These motors are more expensive than standard design B motors but are the best motor for the application when it will be controlled by an IGBT variable frequency inverter. The NEMA Standard MG-I (part 31) indicates that inverter duty motors shall be designed to withstand 1600 V peak and rise times of greater than 0.1 μs. Always confirm the actual motor capability with the manufacturer before installation.

Cable length: Minimize the cable between the inverter and motor. Quite often this is not possible, especially when the actual location of motor is at greater distance from the inverter than desired. The longer the cable length, the greater is its capacitance which will result in lower overall cable surge impedance. Therefore, this will result in a greater mismatch between the characteristic impedance of the line (surge impedance) and load impedance, thus giving a higher peak voltage at the motor (load) terminals. By minimizing the cable length, this mismatch problem can be minimized.

Tuned inductor and capacitor (LC) filters: The LC filters are an effective means of cleaning the output voltage waveform and protecting the motor. An LC circuit can result in the best voltage waveform but at a relatively high cost and with some future considerations. The filters are low pass shunt-type filters tuned for a specific frequency, often in the range of 1–2 kHz. Because these filters have essentially zero impedance at the tuned frequency, it is very important that the inverter switching frequency not be set too low. The threat exists that someone may vary the carrier frequency (at a later date) without consideration for the existence of a low pass filter resulting in damage to the drive or filter. One should be very careful when applying these types of filters on the output of a drive with variable carrier frequency. LC filters for these types of applications cost approximately three to four times the cost of a load reactor and do not offer the most optimal solution.

RC snubber networks: The RC networks can reduce the slope of the voltage waveform leading edge and reduce the peak voltage of the waveform but they have a minimal effect on the actual waveshape. They perform marginally when compared to the other solutions. The RC networks are less costly than LC filters and they provide marginal benefits. The cost of RC network can be —two to three times the cost of a load reactor.

Load reactors: The load reactors offer the most cost-effective means of solving high dv/dt and peak voltage problems associated with IGBT drives. Typical experience shows that peak voltage is limited to 1000 V or less (actual value varies based upon system voltage). Voltage rise time (dv/dt) is typically extended to several microseconds resulting in only about 75–200 V/μs rise times. Usually the load reactor is all that is needed to adequately protect the motor from dv/dt and to allow full warranty of the motor applied in IGBT drive applications. The load reactor may be installed at the drive or at the motor location. It offers the best dv/dt reduction when placed at the drive. Placing the reactor at the drive also provides voltage stress protection for the motor cables. Several manufacturers offer line/load reactors that are specially constructed for IGBT drive applications. These reactors have a 4000 V rms (5600 V peak) insulation dielectric strength and are approved by both CSA and UL (UL506 & UL508).

10.11 Testing of Motors and Generators

Today's machines are subjected to extremely high electrical and mechanical stresses and therefore have shorter life spans as compared to yesterday's bulky machines. Furthermore, unfavorable operating conditions may lead to unexpected troubles, which can have harmful effects on machine life. The insulation system is extremely important and therefore should be checked on a regular basis. IEEE standard 1415-2006, *IEEE Guide for Induction Machinery Maintenance Testing and Failure Analysis* provides maintenance testing and failure analysis guidance for form-wound, squirrel cage, induction motors rated up to 15 kV. It addresses the stator (winding and core) rotor (winding and core) vibration and noise bearings and shafts structure, frame ventilation, and accessories. This guide is intended to be used by personnel responsible for the operation and maintenance of large induction machines. Table 10.1 of the IEEE standard 1415-2006, *IEEE Guide for Induction Machinery Testing and Failure Analysis*, gives a list of the various tests that are in widespread use in the industry for testing induction machines. This table lists the test description, effectiveness, typical frequency, and the pertinent IEEE standard reference for each test. The IEEE Table 10.1 is represented in Table 10.10 for reader's reference. The reader is urged to consult this table and the IEEE standard 1415-2006 when performing test on induction machinery.

The tests listed in Table 10.10 are all encompassing, and many of the nonelectrical tests are not in the scope of this book. The reader should refer to the last column of the Table 10.10 for additional information on the tests not covered in this chapter. The state of the machine insulation can be checked by means of the tests discussed below:

TABLE 10.10

Comparison of Maintenance Tests for Induction Machinery

Test	Description	Effectiveness	Online, Off-Line	Typical Test Frequency (Years)	Test Precautions	Industry Standard
AC high potential	Overvoltage test applied from conductor-to-ground to test groundwall insulation of the stator winding	Pass/fail test; not effective for trending	Off-line	Factory test or as necessary	Potentially destructive	IEEE 112 NEMA MG1 IEEE 4 IEEE 95
Acceleration time	Measure acceleration time starting	Difficult for trending	Online	1–2		
Bearing insulation	Insulation resistance shaft to ground	Pass/fail test	Off-line	0.5–1		IEEE 43 IEEE 112
Bearing temperature	Measurement of bearing metal, bearing housing, or bearing oil temperature. Applies to all bearings, oil lubricated and grease lubricated	Effective for trending. Must account for ambient temperature	Online	0.5–1 Continuously		
Capacitance	AC test to measure insulation capacitance line-to -ground	Effective on single coils during manufacturing of medium-voltage machines. Possibly effective for trending	Off-line	Factory 1–2		IEEE 286
Core loss (loop)	Test for shorted stator core laminations	Pass/fail test; not typically effective for trending, although under controlled conditions may be used for trending	Off-line	Typically during a rewind process	Be prepared to stop test abruptly if core damage is suspected	IEEE 62.2

Coupling insulation	Insulation resistance coupling to shaft	Pass/fail test	Off-line	1–1.5 after outage		
Current running	Measure stator current stator heating	Roughly determines overload—10% error possible on load estimate	Online	1–2 Continuously		IEEE 112 NEMA MG1
Current starting	Measure stator current during acceleration time	Acceleration time or reduced torque/rotor problems	Online	1–2		IEEE 112
Current signature analysis	Analysis of stator current to detect broken rotor bars or broken shorted circuit rings	Requires experienced operator. Effective for detection and can be used for trending. Load must be constant and over 30%	Online	3–5 Continuously		
Dielectric absorption	Timed overpotential test ratio of the 3 min IR reading to the 30 s IR reading	Effective for trending	Off-line	1–2		IEEE 43 & 95 for IR Test in general
DC high potential	Overvoltage test applied line–to-ground test, measures leakage current	Step voltage or ramp method effective for trending	Off-line	1–2	Maximal voltage according to industry standards	IEEE 95 NEMA MG1
Dissipation factor and tip-up	AC test to measure dissipation—capacitance line-to-ground	Effective on single coils during manufacturing of medium voltage machines. Possible effective for trending	Off-line	1–2		IEEE 286
Grease analysis	Appearance, smell, grit, content of grease sample grease-lubricated machine bearings	Effective for trending	Off-line	0.5–1		

(continued)

TABLE 10.10 (continued)

Comparison of Maintenance Tests for Induction Machinery

Test	Description	Effectiveness	Online, Off-Line	Typical Test Frequency (Years)	Test Precautions	Industry Standard
Growler	Tests rotors windings integrity (laminations) rotor core of disassembled machine	Pass/fail test; not effective for trending	Off-line	5–10		
Phase angle	Electrical evaluation of windings using low-voltage AC measurements	Possibly effective for trending if corrected for winding temperature and rotor position	Off-line	1–2		IEEE 388 ANSI/ EASA AR 100
Variable frequency test	Compares phases' complex impedances at different frequencies. Possibly effective for insulation diagnostics	Possibly effective for trending, if corrected for winding temperature and rotor position	Off-line	1–2		IEEE 389
Phase balance	AC test to measure stator-winding balance and rotor circuit condition	Possibly effective for trending if kept at same rotor position than previous tests	Off-line	1–2		IEEE 388 IEEE 389 ANSI/ EASA AR 100
Insulation resistance	Measures resistance of insulation between conductor and ground; to detect wet or dirty insulation and dielectric integrity	Effective for trending if corrected for temperature. Adequate scale range required	Off-line	1–2 after outage		IEEE 43 IEEE 56 IEEE 62.2 IEEE 1432

Oil analysis	Analysis of oil for lubricant characteristics and wear particle concentration oil-lubricated machine bearings	Effective for trending	Off-line analysis sample can be taken online	0.5–1		
PD	AC test to measure PD (corona) line-to-ground	Requires experienced operator. With some technologies possibly effective for trending	Online	0.5–5 Continuously		IEEE 1434
PI	Ratio of 10 min IR to 1 min IR to detect wet or dirty insulation and possibly aged insulation	Effective for trending machines; should have adequate scale range	Off-line	1–2		IEEE 43
Impedance starting	Monitors equivalent complex instantaneous impedance. Finds locked or stalled failure on start	Effective for trending	Online	1–2		NEMA MG1
Insulation PF PF and tip-up	AC test to measure insulation PF line-to-ground	Effective on single coils during manufacturing of medium voltage machines. Possible effective for trending	Off-line	Factory		IEEE 286
Shaft grounding currents	Measure shaft current and waveform on oscilloscope shaft to ground	Indicator of change trendable	Online	3–5		IEEE 112
Shaft voltage	Measure shaft voltage and waveform on oscilloscope shaft to ground	Indicator of change trendable	Online	3–5		IEEE 112
Speed	Measure of shaft rpm shaft speed	Determine overload effective for trending	Online	3–5	20% error possible for load estimate	IEEE 112 NEMA MG1

(continued)

TABLE 10.10 (continued)

Comparison of Maintenance Tests for Induction Machinery

Test	Description	Effectiveness	Online, Off-Line	Typical Test Frequency (Years)	Test Precautions	Industry Standard
Surge test	Impulse voltage tests turn-to-turn insulation and inductive stator balance	Good manufacturing and field test. Higher stress on line end coils matches stress distribution during voltage transients	Off-line	Factory or 1–2 field	Use maximal voltage according to industry standards	IEEE 522 NEMA MG1
Thermography	Observe with thermal camera machine in-service	Observe for hot spots. Effective for trending and finding ventilation blockage, poor electrical connection, core damage or coupling misalignment	Online	3–5		
Thermography	Rotor bar testing	Observe rotor bars and end rings for uneven heating	Off-line	Repair	Current should be limited	
Torque ripple	Monitors air gap torque of motor. Detects rotor bar condition, mechanical unbalance and motor-load looseness, shock loading and possibly other mechanical failures	Effective for trending	Online	0.5–2		
Ultrasound	Ultrasound noise from antifriction bearings. Also can be used to evaluate bonding of babbitt to bearing shell on oil film type bearings	Effective for trending	Online	1–1.5		

Vibration	Shaft or bearing housing vibration Direct on bearing Housing or proximity to shaft	Effective for trending	Online	0.5–1	
Voltage drop	Measure bus voltage during starting	Effective for trending	Online	3–5	
Voltage supply	Measure bus voltage stator heating rotor heating	Effective for trending	Online	Continuously	IEEE 112 NEMA MG1
Winding resistance (including cable)	Measures winding resistance stator windings and machine terminations detects poor connections	Effective for trending. Correct for temperature or percent unbalance	Off-line	1–1.5	IEEE 112 IEEE 118
Winding temperature	Indirect measurement of winding temperature. Applies to machine with built-in RTDs or thermocouples	Effective for trending. Must account for ambient temperature and load	Online	0.5–1 Continuously	

Source: From IEEE-std 1415–2006, IEEE Guide to Induction Machinery Maintenance Testing and Failure Analysis.

10.11.1 Insulation Resistance and Dielectric Absorption Tests

The simplest and most basic tests for checking insulation integrity of machines are the insulation resistance and dielectric absorption (DA) tests. Refer to Chapter 2 for details on how to perform these tests.

10.11.2 High-Potential Test

AC or DC voltage high potential test may be performed on machines stator windings. The size of the machine windings (i.e., insulation volume) will determine whether an AC high potential test can be performed in the field because if the machine is very large the field portable AC high potential test set may not have the capability to charge the winding insulation. The DC voltage high-potential test is discussed in Section 2.7 in Chapter 2, therefore this discussion only addresses the AC voltage high potential test for machines.

The high-potential test of the armature (stator) winding of a large motor or generator is preceded by a visual inspection and insulation resistance measurements. It provides the moment of truth concerning the condition of insulation.

High-potential tests may be performed with the rotor in place or with it removed. It is advantageous to consult and follow the manufacturer's recommendations and schedules, taking into account the operating history of a machine. For example, it is recommended that on large machines the rotor be removed every 5 years and high-potential tests performed every 2–3 years.

To prepare the tests, the machine terminals are disconnected from the bus bars, the neutral connection is broken so that each phase winding may be subjected to a test voltage with respect to the other phase windings, and the rotor (if in place) is grounded. Protective ground cables should be connected to all disconnected bus bars and the neutral conductor. Each phase winding is short circuited so that uniform test voltage will be applied to each end. A test lead is attached to each phase winding and secured and terminated so that a convenient connection to the high-voltage test lead and to ground can be made. Temporary insulation, plastic bags over sharp points, and tie offs must be arranged to give correct clearance for the test voltage. A minimum of clearance of 7 in. per 10 kV, 60 Hz, is recommended for base conductor clearance.

The 60 Hz AC high-potential test applies stresses to machine winding as near as possible to those that normally exist under operating conditions. Even though the 60 Hz test is preferred over DC or 0.1 Hz tests, there are few AC sets of adequate size (kVA) available to perform this test on large machines. The size of the test set may be calculated from the following formula: kVA = 0.377 CE^2, where C is the machine winding capacitance in microfarads and E is the maximum test voltage in kilovolts. For example, inservice operation on a 13.8 kV machine, each phase winding is stressed at $13.8/\sqrt{3}$ or approximately 8 kV to ground with midpoint only at 4 kV to ground. The ends of windings T_4, T_5, and T_6 (Figure 10.42a) are nearly at zero stress. The insulation toward the ends T_4, T_5, and T_6, could be worn and still not fail in service unless damage to the winding becomes severe. During the high-voltage test, the windings are short circuited. The high-voltage lead is connected to both T_1 and T_4 and later

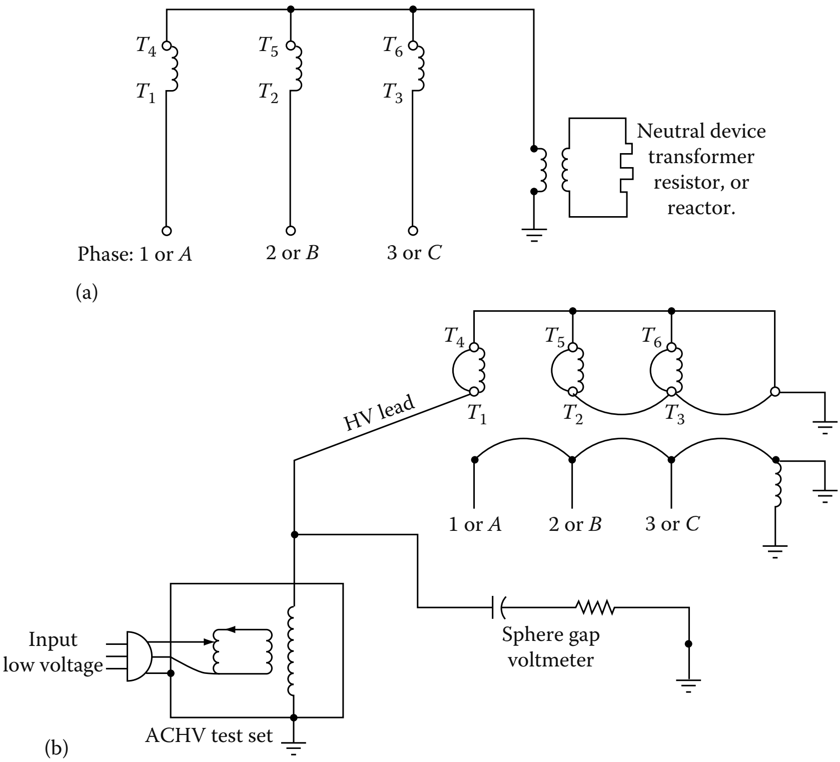


FIGURE 10.42
AC high-potential test connections. (a) Typical in-service generator stator connections and (b) AC high-potential test connection for generator connection.

to T_2 and T_3 and T_5 and T_6. Both ends of the winding are subjected to the same potential, full-test voltage. Weak points of any part of the winding that might not fail in service should fail under test. This is desirable since worn-out coils should be repaired or replaced to avoid unexpected and sudden failure.

Protection against accidental application of an overvoltage can be provided by connecting an air gap voltmeter with an appropriate series resistor between the high-voltage test lead and ground. A setting of 2–5 kV above the high-voltage test value will provide necessary protection. The test connection is shown in Figure 10.42b.

High-potential tests are used in connection with manufacture, repair or reconditioning, and routine testing of machines. The following test procedures and safety precautions are important while conducting these tests:

- Keep everyone from coming in contact with any part of the circuit or apparatus while the test is being conducted.
- After the test has been made, never touch the winding tested until it has been correctly connected to ground to remove any static charge it may have retained.

- All leads to the circuit being tested should be connected to one terminal of the source of the test voltage. All leads to all other circuits and all metal parts should be connected to ground. No leads are to be left unconnected for high-potential tests as this may cause an extremely severe strain at some point of the winding.
- When making an AC voltage high-potential test, the voltage should be increased to full voltage as rapidly as consistent with its value. This voltage should be maintained for 1 min. After completion of the test, the voltage should be reduced at a rate that will bring it to one-quarter value or less in not more than 15 s.
- When making DC voltage high-potential test, the voltage should be applied in controlled voltage steps. Refer to Chapter 2 for details on performing DC voltage high-potential tests.
- Effective AC voltages to apply to motors and generators are listed in Table 10.11.

10.11.3 PF Test

This method allows successful ground insulation tests on machine individual stator phase windings. This test is usually connected up to and including 100% line-to-ground voltage. The PF is the ratio of the stator insulation loss (watts) and volt-amperes at a specified test voltage. This can be represented by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{PF} = \{W_s\}/\{V_a\ I_a\}$$

TABLE 10.11

Alternating High-Voltage Test Values for Motors and Generators

Type of Motor and Generator	Motors and Generators Reconditioned but Not Rewound or Restored to Original Condition		Motors and Generators Rewound and Restored to Original Condition (Acceptance)	
	Armature	Field	Armature	Field
Above 250 V and above 0.5 hp	0.67 ($2E_{L-L}$ + 1000) V	Seven times the excitation voltage but not less than 1000 V or more than 2300 V	($2E_{L-L}$ + 1000)V	Ten times the excitation voltage but not less than 1500 V or more than 3500 V
Below 250 V and below 0.5 hp	600 V	600 V	900 V	900 V

[a] The IEEE standard 1415-2006 provides the following guidance. In the case of failed windings, where insulation is replaced or a partial rewind is performed, a reduced voltage final test may be used. Typically, the AC test voltages for these reduced tests are in the range of 125%–135% of rated line-to-line terminal voltage.

where
  W_s is the watts loss
  I_a is the charging current in milliamperes
  V_a is the test voltage in kilovolts

The evaluation of the test data is best interpreted by comparing with previous test results or by comparing test results among phases or with those test results obtained on units of similar manufacture and rating. It is generally found that machines up to 24 kV will have a PF of 3% or less, depending upon the insulation system. The PF tip-up test may also be performed to further evaluate the insulation system. The tip-up test is defined as the increase in PF as voltage is increased from 2 kV to operating voltage. Refer to Section 3.6.7 in Chapter 3 for more details on PF testing.

10.11.4 Dissipation Factor Tan δ Test

The machine winding may be considered as consisting of capacitance and resistance.

The active (resistive) power and reactive (capacitive) power can be represented by the following equations:

$$P_R = I^2R = \{E^2 R\}/R^2 = E^2/R$$

$$P_C = I^2X_C = [E^2/X^2{}_C]\, X_C = E^2/X_C = \omega CE^2$$

where
  P_R is the active power
  P_C is the reactive power
  C is the capacitance in microfarads
  R is the resistance in ohms
  X_C is the capacitive reactance in ohms
  I_R is the resistive current
  I_C is the capacitive current
  ω is the radian frequency

The active power of the resistance in this equivalent circuit represents all capacitor losses. These losses occur on the surface and in the interior of the dielectric. The power P determines the loss of the capacitor. The dissipation factor tan δ measuring bridge (Schering bridge) is designed to simulate the capacitor (the machine winding) by a series connection of resistance R_s and capacitance C_s. The corresponding values for the series connection for a given frequency can be converted by the following formula:

$$R_S = R\ (\tan^2\delta/\{1+\tan^2\delta\})$$

$$C_S = C(1+\tan^2\delta)$$

The losses measured by the Schering bridge and the tan δ can be represented as the following:

$$P = EI_{\mathrm{R}}$$

$$\tan\,\delta = I_{\mathrm{R}}\,/\,I_{\mathrm{C}}$$

or

$$P = EI_{\mathrm{C}}\,\tan\delta = \omega E^2 C\,\tan\delta$$

Substituting the value of C_{S} in the preceding equation, we have

$$P = \omega C_{\mathrm{S}} E^2\ \{\tan\delta\}/\{1+\tan^2\delta\}$$

For small values of tan δ (i.e., less than 1), we can neglect $\tan^2\,\delta$; we have

$$P = \omega\ C_{\mathrm{S}}\ E^2 \tan\delta$$

The value of C_{S} is measured as C_{x} by the Schering bridge. The resistance and the inductance of the leads have to be considered for high capacitances and resistances; otherwise they are negligible. The PF and tan δ tests are discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

10.11.5 Partial Discharge Test

One of the causes of machine insulation degradation and failure is due to partial discharge (PD) in the gas-filled voids in the stator insulation system. The online or off-line PD test can be used to directly measure the pulse currents generated by PD within a machine winding. The machine-winding insulation has voids that are filled with air or gas and they are of varying sizes. The PD pulses are of very short duration (few nanoseconds) because the void cavities are small however some pulses may be larger than other PD pulses. The PD test is applicable to form-wound stator windings of machines rated at 2300 V and above. Each PD pulse current originating in specific part of the winding will travels along the coil conductors. The PD current pulses in turn generate voltage pulses because of the surge impedance of the coils in the slots. Any device sensitive to high frequency can detect the PD pulses and thereby these small charge fluctuations (in coulomb) are measured by testing the corresponding current variations. By this method the weak points of the insulation (location of the PD) are measured. However, this method does not provide information on the condition of insulation at those points where PD has not occurred. PD is an electrical discharge that only partially bridges the insulation between conductors. Especially for machines rated greater than 4 kV, PD can be a sign of deterioration involving external surfaces (slot or end turn) or of delamination internal to the ground wall. PD current pulses can be measured in two ways: (1) off-line PD measurements and (2) online PD measurements.

The off-line PD test requires a power supply to energize the winding to at least rated phase-to-neutral voltage. It is best to perform this test one phase at a time with the other two phases grounded. The most common means of detecting the PD current pulses is to use a high-voltage capacitor connected to the stator terminals. The capacitor blocks the normal 60 HZ AC voltage applied to energize the windings while passing the high-frequency PD pulse currents. The output of the high-voltage capacitor is coupled to a resistive or inductive-capacitive load. The PD high-frequency current passing through the capacitor create a voltage pulse across the resistive or inductive-capacitive network which then can be displayed on an oscilloscope, or other display device. Every PD will create its own pulse and the magnitude of a particular PD pulse will be proportional to the size of void cavity.

During the off-line PD test, the applied voltage is gradually raised while monitoring the PD pulses on the oscilloscope at the machine terminals. The voltage at which the PD is first detected is known as PD inception voltage. The voltage is then raised to rated line-to-neutral operating voltage and held for 10 to 15 min while PD pulses are recorded. The voltage is then gradually reduced and the voltage at which the PD is no longer visible is recorded. This voltage is known as the PD extinction voltage. For motors rated 2300–4000 V, the phase-to-neutral voltage may not be sufficient to produce discharges, therefore some owners will perform the PD test at line-to-line voltage. It should be kept in mind that using line-to-line voltage for PD test exceeds the normal insulation voltage rating of the winding and could lead to winding insulation failure. During off-line PD measurements, it may be possible to measure at the line end and neutral end of the individual circuits or phases with all other circuits grounded or alternatively with all circuits tested in parallel. This will provide an indication as to whether the PD is more pronounced at the line or neutral ends and whether the phase-to-phase insulation is a source of PD activity.

The off-line PD test as discussed above does not pinpoint the location of the PD discharges in the stator windings. To determine the location of the PD discharges in the stator, PD probe test is performed. Two special probes are available to help locate the site of PD in the stator. One probe is designed to detect the electromagnetic (radio frequency) energy and the other to detect acoustic energy. The electromagnetic probe is usually tuned to 5 MHz essentially making it a modified AM radio with an antenna mounted on a one end of the probe handle. The probe with the antenna end then can be moved around the stator windings to locate where the PD is occurring. The ultrasonic probe is a directional microphone that picks up the acoustic pulses that are being generated by the movement of high-velocity electrons and ions due to PD in the stator windings. The ultrasonic sensor, used with appropriate safety precautions, can be useful for locating sites of higher PD activity at specific slots in the core of the machine. To perform PD probe test may require partially dismantling the machine, such as removing the rotor.

The online PD test is performed during normal operation when the machine is running at constant operating voltage. The PD monitor directly detects stator winding PD activity thereby including the effects of load, temperature, and voltage, which can provide important information as to the probable cause of the PD activity. The PD activity generates current pulses that are typically of very short duration and propagate throughout the stator windings. Each PD pulse comprises of frequencies ranging from DC to several hundred megahertz. The online PD test is similar to the off-line PD test in many respects and they require use of sensors, which can take the form of the following:

- Coupling capacitors at line terminals
- Radio frequency current transformer on ground wire
- Radio frequency current transformer on ground of insulation shield of supply cable
- Radio frequency current transformer on conductor between neutral of stator and grounding impedance
- Impedance across joint between machine frame and terminal box

The instrumentation used with these sensors can consist of the following:

- Radio noise meter for narrow band measurements between 100 kHz and several hundreds of megahertz. Each type of PD, such as slot discharge or end arm discharge may have its own unique frequency spectrum.
- Broadband measurement using an oscilloscope or pulse height analyzer to provide an indication as to the number, polarity, and phase position of the PD pulses. Polarity may indicate whether the PD is on a surface or if it is internal. Phase position may indicate whether the PD involves the groundwall, or phase-to-phase insulation.

During online measurements, the operator of the radio noise meter needs to identify RF signals from radio stations and sites of PD activity or sparking external to the machine so as to exclude these data from the analysis. Online PD measurements using broadband detection systems may make use of bandwidth, attenuation, and pulse travel time for noise reduction. Trending of individual machines based on periodic or continuous online PD measurements under identical operating conditions, or comparison between similar machines can indicate a need for off-line PD measurements to confirm and locate the probable source of the discharge activity.

Because of the complexity in which PD pulses propagate within machine windings and the profound effect of bandwidth upon the response of the PD detection instrumentation, it has not been possible to establish meaningful limits for the PD magnitudes, which are measured at the terminal of the machine. Comparisons may be possible between machines of the same design using the same sensors and detection instrumentation of identical bandwidth. For additional information, refer to IEEE standard 1434-2000, *IEEE Trial-Use Guide to the Measurement of Partial Discharges in Rotating Machinery.*

10.11.6 Slot Discharge Test

This test is performed to evaluate the coil surface grounding in the slot portion. The stator coil outer surfaces are painted with conducting varnish in order to make good electrical contact with the machine frame to prevent voids. However, at higher voltages, ionization can take place in the voids, resulting in insulation damage. The slot discharge test consists of applying approximately 7 kV AC and observing the wave form on an oscilloscope. This wave form is compared to a wave form of one coil side arcing to the slot at a single point. The slot discharge phenomena usually consist of high frequencies, such as 2500 Hz/s. The line disturbances are usually filtered out in order to obtain an accurate slot discharge phenomena.

10.11.7 Conductor Insulation Tests

The insulation failure between conductors of motors and generators depends upon the machine insulation design. Failure between conductors can be as likely as the failure of ground insulation. Coils are tested during manufacture well above the minimum sparking voltage to ensure that the coils do not fail owing to thermal effects, vibrations, and the like. Where a high level of reliability is needed, maintenance testing of conductor insulation should be performed to the level of new coil test values. Normally, this test should be performed at the factory or repair shop facilities. The following test methods are in common use:

- Surge comparison test (see Section 10.9.11)
- Induced surge voltage test
- Rotating spark-gap-type high-frequency oscillator

10.11.8 Motor and Generator Component Tests

These tests include insulation resistance tests on components of motors and generators such as RTDs, exciter windings, stator insulated through bolts, rotor windings, and so on. These tests consist of the following:

1. Resistance measurement and insulation resistance of the RTDs
2. Insulation resistance of insulated stator-through-bolts
3. Test the interlaminar insulation of stator core
4. Rotor winding tests
   a. Insulation resistance
   b. Winding resistance
   c. Winding impedance
   d. Winding flux distribution (pole voltage drop test)

The reader should consult the equipment manufacturer for recommendations or the pertinent IEEE standard such as IEEE-56-1991, IEEE-95-2007, and IEEE-112-2004 on conducting these tests.

10.11.9 Voltage Surge Comparison Test

It is a well-known fact that many motor failures begin as turn-to-turn shorts within a single winding. These turn-to-turn shorts then create hot spots which in turn degrade the insulation in adjacent turns until the entire winding fails. The mechanism of this type of failure may take a long time to develop depending upon the operating characteristics of the motor. This type of failure or degradation cannot be detected by the insulation resistance test (megohmmeter) or high-potential testing because of its incipient nature; however, this type of incipient type of fault can be detected by surge comparison testing. Many types of faults may be detected by the use of surge testing, such as turn-to turn, coil-to-coil, phase-to-phase as well as opens and grounds.

The surge comparison tester is used to simultaneously test turn-to-turn, coil-to-coil, and coil-to-ground insulation. The surge tester is an electronic device that applies surge voltage stress between turns of a coil, between phases, from winding to ground, and it can detect short-circuited turns in windings under test. The surge voltage is of very short duration and therefore will not damage the windings. However, the surge voltage can be increased high enough so that insulation breakdown and arcing can be observed. The surge comparison test can be used as a go or no-go test. This test is a very useful diagnostic test for quality-control shop testing when reconditioning or rewinding wound components and in the field to detect early impending winding insulation failures. Rewound and reconditioned motors and generators should be given a surge comparison test before varnishing so that winding faults, such as shorted turns or coils, reversed coil groups or phases, and incorrect number of turns in a coil, can be corrected before the windings are treated with varnish.

Surge testing is accomplished by impressing pulses of very rapid rise from a surge comparison tester (capacitor) into the machine windings. These pulses each produce a damped oscillation of current, or resonant frequency, between the capacitor of the tester and the winding. The pulse and the resulting oscillation is monitored by means of an oscilloscope. Then by observing the pattern on the oscilloscope, the existence and nature of the fault in the machine winding can be determined.

Surge Comparison testing is an extension of the principle of simple surge testing. If for example, we knew what inductance a winding should have, we could look at the single wave pattern and be assured that it is the correct frequency. That frequency of oscillation would be

$$f = 1/\left(2\pi\sqrt{LC}\right)$$

where

f is the frequency
L is the inductance
C is the capacitance

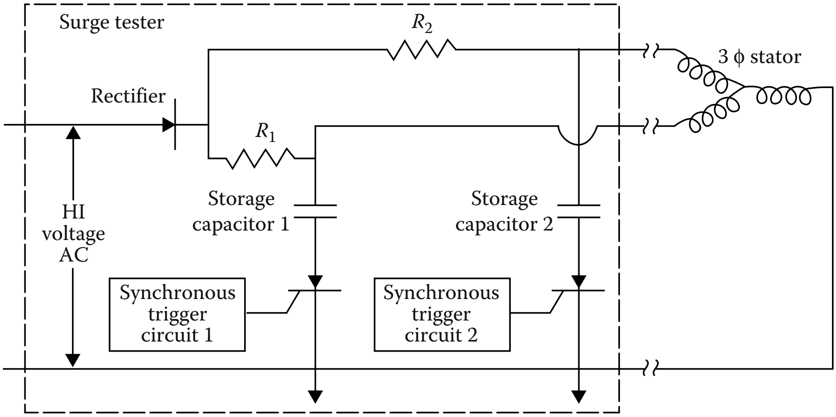


FIGURE 10.43
Simplified voltage surge comparison tester.

Since we seldom know the inductance value of a machine winding accurately, we need a more flexible yet accurate method to analyze a signal trace on the oscilloscope. To do this, we use a dual trace scope and two identical capacitance discharge circuits to charge two different machine windings that should match at the same time. For example, in the testing of three-phase machine stator we know that each of the three phases should have the same inductance. Consequently, by comparing one phase against another we have two complete, and hopefully, identical L-C circuits for our test to work. A simplified schematic of the surge comparison tester is shown in Figure 10.43. Detection of one-turn shorts or grounded coil is possible in all windings of few parallel circuits. Often only a small trace separation may be detectable with a one-turn short in a very large motor that has several parallel paths per phase. However, the winding connections can be broken to reduce the parallel paths in order to obtain a larger trace.

It may be difficult to indicate the type of fault from the wave shape observed on the oscilloscope; however, a double trace indicates that a definite fault exists, which should be investigated. Double lines at the top of the trace and at the horizontal centerline for formed and mush-wound stators are typical and do not indicate faults.

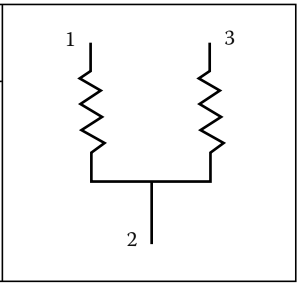
The surge comparison tester is a universal type instrument capable of testing single- and three-phase machine windings. Single-phase windings should be tested in pairs whereas the three-phase windings should be tested two phase windings at a time. Single-phase and three-phase machine windings of various sizes can be tested as shown in the connection diagram of Figure 10.44. The waveshapes for typical winding faults for the wye- and delta-connected machines are shown in Figure 10.45.

Surge comparison test connections

Switch position	Test leads			
	1	2	3	GND
1Ø	HOT	GND	HOT	GND
C	GND	HOT	HOT	GND
B	HOT	GND	HOT	GND
A	HOT	HOT	GND	GND

Single phase

Test switch position
Ground frame or core if applicable (Black lead) 1Ø



Three phase

To test	Test switch position
1 and 2 compared	A
1 and 3 compared	B
2 and 3 compared	C

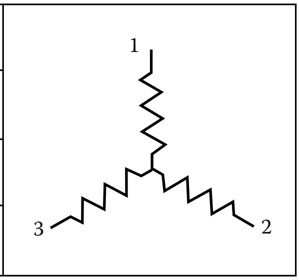


FIGURE 10.44
Typical voltage surge comparison test connections for single- and three-phase machines.

10.12 Other Insulation Test Methods

DC voltage testing has been used extensively for high-capacitance current load such as machine windings and high-voltage cables. However, the stress distribution imposed by DC voltage does not stress the insulation system the same as does the AC voltage test. Field testing with AC voltage requires substantially large test equipment (because of the capacitive charging requirements), which is impractical. Therefore, the need for new test methods has led to the development of the one-tenth hertz test and resonant test methods for testing large machines with AC voltage. These two methods are described briefly next.

10.12.1 Very Low Frequency Testing

This test is a variation of the 60 Hz AC high-potential test and is referred to as "one-tenth hertz" or very low frequency (VLF) Testing. It utilizes a very

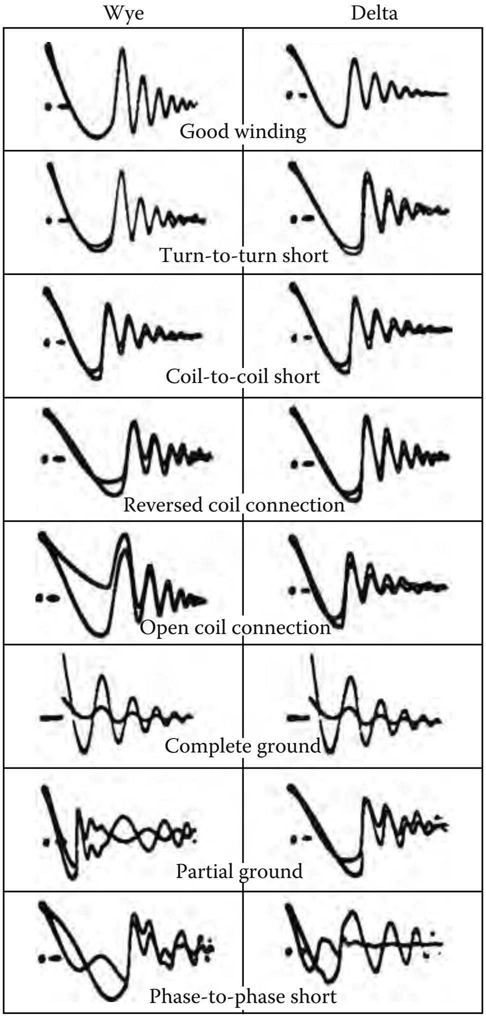


FIGURE 10.45
Waveshapes for typical winding faults for the Wye- and Delta-connected machines.

low frequency, such as 0.1 Hz voltage for searching flaws in the insulation system similar to that of 60 Hz test voltage equipment. The equipment, however, is considerably lighter and easier to handle. By using 0.1 Hz instead of 60 Hz voltage, the size (kVA) of test equipment is reduced by a ratio of 1:600. This is because the capacitive charging current is 1/600 of the current needed at power (60 Hz) frequency. Current VLF test equipment is cost-effective and reasonably portable. Experience with VLF testing indicates that the voltage stress distribution across the groundwall insulation is similar to the power frequency. Therefore, the VLF testing has the same advantages as that of the power frequency AC high-potential testing. The recommended test value for maintenance and acceptance testing is 1.15 times the 60 Hz test value to achieve an equal searching effect, that is, 1.15 (1.3E + 1000) and 1.15 (1.5E + 1000) V, respectively, where E is the rated line-to-line rms voltage of the equipment under test. The 1.3 and 1.5 factors correspondence to 65% and 75% multipliers that are used for maintenance and acceptance testing. Refer to Chapter 6 for more detail on VLF testing for cables.

10.12.2 Series Resonant Testing

Series resonant testing is used to test very large machines where power frequency (60 Hz) testing cannot be used because of its size and portability. It is been used for field testing of large generators, sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6) bus systems, and switchgear. It can also be used for PF, dielectric loss, cable fault location, and corona with some modifications to the test equipment. At series resonance, the energy (I^2R) supplied to the test specimen is dissipated in the insulation system. Energy stored in the tuned circuit (i.e., at resonance) transfers back-and-forth between capacitance and inductance each half-cycle. The ratio of energy stored to energy dissipated per half-cycle is known as the quality factor. A higher value of Q gives a low-loss circuit, whereas a low value of Q gives a lossy circuit. Q can be represented by the following equations:

$$Q = \frac{\{\text{Maximum energy stored in } L \text{ or } C \text{ during a cycle}\}}{\{\text{Energy loss per half cycle in } R\}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\omega RC} \text{ or } \frac{\omega L}{R}$$

At resonance, $X_L = X_C$, and in a series resonance circuit of RLC, the voltage across the capacitor is given the following equation:

$$V_C = \frac{\{-jX_C\ V\}}{\{R + j(X_L - X_C\ )\}}$$

$$= \{-jX_L/R\}V$$

or $|V_c| = QV$, where V is the applied voltage. The Q of typical winding systems is 40–80 for high-quality capacitance loads. At resonance the current in the circuit is in phase with the voltage, V. Therefore, input power is $P = VI$, and the reactive power available to the capacitive load is

$$\text{kVA} = QVI = QP$$

Therefore,

$$P = \text{kVA}/\text{Q} = \text{Reactive output power}/\text{Q}$$

The power required from the mains is reduced to 1/Q of the reactive load requirements. This results in a very substantial reduction in input requirements.

The series resonant method consists of low kVA source input driving a LC series circuit. If breakdown in the capacitive load should occur, the fault current is limited to a low value by the high inductance value in series with the fault. Furthermore, the output wave form is purely sinusoidal because the harmonics of tuned frequency are attenuated. The attenuation of power frequency harmonics makes series resonance testing very attractive for dielectric loss and PD testing. Consult the manufacturer's instructions on the operation and use of the series resonance test set.

10.13 Vibration Analysis

Vibration monitoring is perhaps the most beneficial test for rotating machines for identifying mechanical and electrical problems. Vibration analysis can monitor many abnormalities among them being wear, imbalance, misalignment, mechanical looseness, bearing damage, structural resonance, fatigue, etc.

Although diagnostics are sometimes based on a single vibration spectrum, as in most preventive and predictive maintenance programs, vibration spectra are acquired periodically and stored in a database. The data is then trended by searching for changes in levels at the problem or forcing frequencies. It is important that the trended data be acquired at the same location, in the same orientation, under the same operating conditions and with the same analyzer settings (frequency range, window type, number of spectral averages, number of spectral lines, etc.) every time. For this reason, transducer-mounting pads permanently mounted on the machine are a good idea.

The most common transducer is typically an accelerometer. Of the three types of vibration transducers (noncontacting shaft vibration probes with proximeters, velocity pickups, and accelerometers), the accelerometer has the widest bandwidth. It is desirable to securely mount the accelerometer or velocity transducer as close as possible to the bearings. For large high-speed machines with hydrodynamic (sleeve) bearings, the use of noncontacting shaft vibration probes is recommended for vibration analysis.

Some of the mechanical problems detected by vibration spectra are imbalance, misalignment, looseness, bent shaft, and bearing problems. Identification of an electrical or mechanical problem depends upon the frequency spectra and the frequency relationship between running speed, electrical vibration, and other machine internal or driven-equipment components. The phase between accelerations at three locations (drive end bearing, opposite drive end bearing, and axial reading) may also be used in the diagnosis of problems. Readings should be taken on all bearings in the horizontal, vertical, and axial directions.

Electrical problems reflected in vibration spectra include machine out of magnetic center (uneven air gap, rotor not round or bent rotor, rotor and

TABLE 10.12

Vibration Spectra Frequency for Typical Electrical and Electromagnetic Problems Problem Frequencies

Rotor Problems	$1X \pm m \times F_P$ $2X \pm m \times F_P$ $RBPF \pm m \times 2 \times F_L$ $2 \times RBPF \pm m \times 2 \times F_L$	$F_P = F_S \times N_P$ may appear, itself, in the vibration spectrum. Because F_P is small, a high resolution FFT spectrum (large number of lines) or zoom capabilities may be required to see these sidebands around the 1X, $2F_L$ frequencies and its harmonics. The RBPF is a substantially higher frequency than the 1X and its harmonics, so that a large bandwidth high resolution FFT may be required to see these components. Broken rotor bars show as F_P sideba nds around $2F_L$ with associated RBPF harmonics. A lesser 1X RBPF harmonic indicates loose rotor bars, while a high 1X RBPF indicates broken rotor bars.
Stator problems	$2 \times F_L$	Vibrations or siren-like noise may also be generated at the stator slot pass frequency.
Out of magnetic center	$2 \times F_L$ $2 \times F_L \pm m \times F_P$	These vibrations are generated by eccentric center magnetic forces. A $2 \times F_L$ component may result from soft foot or misalignment (mechanical problems). A high number of spectral lines or zoom analysis may be required in order to resolve the sidebands and resolve the $2 \times F_L$ component from the ×1 or its harmonics. A higher ×2 or ×3 running speed harmonic indicates looseness or misalignment. Looseness is most often coupled with a raised noise floor.
Loose connectors	$2 \times F_L$	

Source: From IEEE Std 1415-2006, IEEE Guide to Induction Machinery Maintenance Testing and Failure Analysis.

Notes: F_L, the line frequency (50 or 60 Hz); s, the slip; F_S, the slip frequency (s × F_L); N_P, the number of machine poles; F_P, the pole pass frequency ($F_S \times N_P$); rpm, revolutions per minute; NRB, the number of rotor bars; RBPF, the rotor band pass frequency (rpm × NRB); 1X, one times shaft rpm; m, any integer.

stator misaligned, elliptical stator bore), loose connectors, open or shorted stator windings, and rotor bar irregularities or broken rotor bars. Generally, these problems are also reflected in the 1X and, possibly, 2X, or higher harmonic vibrations coupled with twice line frequencies (2FL) (most common with electrical vibration).

Monitoring the vibration levels as the electrical power is disconnected from the machine is one method used to determine if a vibration is due to mechanical versus electromagnetic or electrical problems. If the cause is primarily electrical/electromagnetic, vibration levels will drop immediately (whereas levels decrease only as the machine slows down if the problem is mechanical in origin). This type of test is referred to as a "coast-down" test. Vibrations associated with electrical/electromagnetic problems also tend to be load dependent. This is a reflection of the role that the machine slip frequency plays in the generation of these vibrations. The frequencies at which electrical and electromagnetic problems are reflected in vibration spectra are summarized in Table 10.12.

11

Electrical Power System Grounding and Ground Resistance Measurements

11.1 Introduction

System grounding has been used since electrical power systems began. However, many companies and industrial plants have used system grounding methods differently. The problem of whether a system neutral should be grounded, and how it should be grounded, has many times been misunderstood completely. Therefore, grounding of many systems has been based upon past experience rather than engineering analysis.

This chapter provides applicable information for grounding, such as definitions, reasons for having a system ground, the most desirable grounding method, and so on, and how to measure ground resistance in order to maintain the grounding system.

The definition of grounding is commonly used for both, system grounding and equipment grounding. The National Electrical Code (NEC) defines system ground as a connection to ground from one of the current-carrying conductors of an electrical power system or of an interior wiring system, whereas an equipment ground is defined as a connection to ground from one or more of the noncurrent-carrying metal parts of a wiring system or equipment connected to the system.

The Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) and American National Standard Institute (ANSI) standard 142-2007, "IEEE recommended practice for grounding of industrial and commercial power systems" covers system grounding. Many of the following definitions are found in this standard in describing power system grounding.

System neutral ground: A connection to ground from the neutral point or points of a circuit, transformer, motor, generator, or system.

Grounded system: A system of conductors in which at least one conductor or point is intentionally grounded.

Ungrounded system: A system of conductors in which there is no intentional connection to ground.

Solidly grounded: A system in which there is no intentional impedance in ground connection; in such a system the line to ground fault currents may equal three-phase fault current.

Resistance grounded: A system grounded through a resistance the value of which can be such as to provide either a low- or high-resistance ground system. The low-resistance ground system can have from 25 to several thousand amperes depending upon the value of the resistance. The high-resistance ground system usually has a value less than 25 A but greater than the value given by $X_{CO}/3$, where X_{CO} is the charging capacitance of the system.

Reactance grounded: A system grounded through a reactance.

Resonant grounded: The system grounding reactance value is such that the rated frequency fault current flowing through it is substantially equal to the current flowing between the conductors and the earth (charging current of the system).

Ground-fault neutralizer: A grounding device that provides an inductive component of current in a ground fault that is substantially equal to, and therefore neutralizes, the rated frequency capacitive component of the ground fault current.

11.2 Selection of Grounding Method

The selection of a method for power system grounding is very difficult because a large number of factors must be considered before a power system grounding method can be chosen. The following discussion outlines some problems with various grounding methods and explains how and why grounding systems are applied.

11.2.1 Ungrounded Systems

Early electrical systems were almost universally operated ungrounded. On small systems an insulation failure on one phase did not cause an outage. The failure could probably be found and repaired at a convenient time without a forced outage. This worked well as long as the systems were small. However, as systems increased in size and voltage rating, an increasing number of insulation failures produced multiple failures and major faults. At first, the reasons for these failures were not understood, and considerable work was done to find why they occurred. Figure 11.1 shows a typical ungrounded neutral system. Actually, it is a capacitive grounded neutral system, the capacitance being the conductor capacitance to ground. In normal operation, the capacitive current of all three lines is leading the respective line to neutral voltages by 90°, and the vector sum of all three currents is zero. Figure 11.2 shows what happens when the system

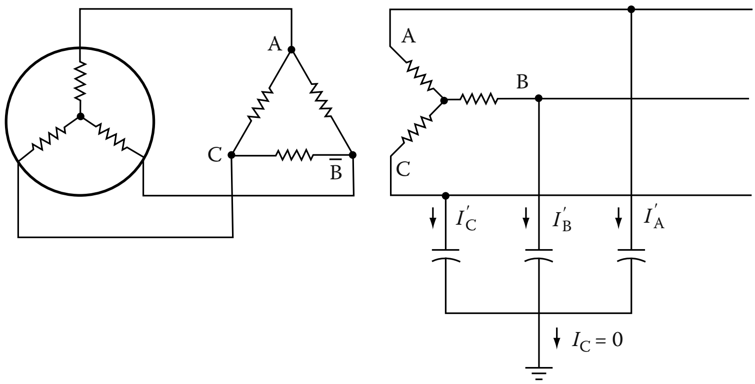
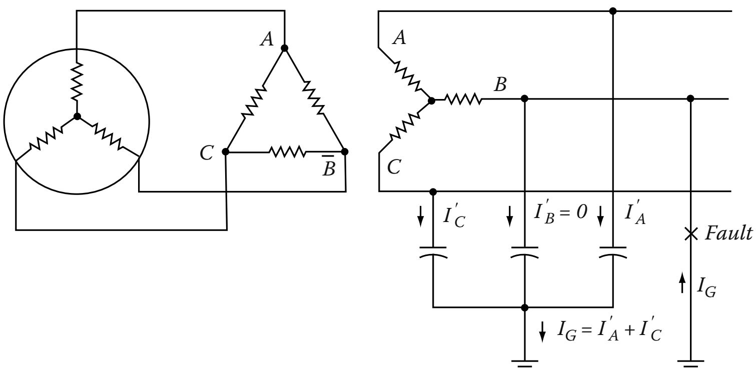


FIGURE 11.1
Ungrounded system—normal condition.

of Figure 11.1 is accidentally grounded. The charging current of the faulted phase goes to zero because its voltage to ground is zero. The voltages of the unfaulted phases increase to full line-to-line value with respect to ground, and their charging currents increase proportionally. In addition, because of the 30° shift of the line voltages with respect to ground, the charging currents shift accordingly, and the sum of the charging currents in the unfaulted phases is three times the normal value and appears in the ground, returning to the system through the fault. If the fault can be interrupted, it will most likely be done at a current zero. However, since the current leads by 90° in



I'_B is 0 since E_B is 0. Voltage across C_A and C_C now E_{BA} and E_{BC} instead of E_A and E_C.

$I'_A = \sqrt{3} I_A \angle +30°$ and $I'_C = \sqrt{3} I_C \angle -30°$. Assume $I_A = I_B = I_C = 1\text{PU}$. Then $I_A = 1\angle +210°$ and

$I_C = 1\angle -30°$ or $I'_A = \sqrt{3}\angle +30° \angle +210° = \sqrt{3}\angle 240°$ and $I'_C = \sqrt{3}\angle -30° \angle 30° = \sqrt{3}\angle -60°$.

$I'_A + I'_C = I_G = \sqrt{3}\angle -120° + \sqrt{3}\angle -60° = 3\angle -90° = -3I_B$ of Figure 11.1.

FIGURE 11.2
Ungrounded system—Bϕ fault to ground.

the capacitive circuit, current zero occurs at the instant of a voltage maximum; thus, if the fault momentarily clears, a high voltage immediately appears across the fault, and restrike of the fault will probably occur.

In the momentary interval of time that the fault has been cleared the excessive voltage charge of the capacitors on the unfaulted lines has been trapped as a direct current (DC) charge. When the arc restrikes again: the capacitors are again recharged by a line-to-ground voltage added to the trapped charge. Thus, a restrike after another current zero clearing is more inevitable, adding another charge. The phenomenon thus probably becomes an oscillating and self-perpetuating buildup in voltage, which eventually will lead to an insulation failure on another phase and a major two-phase fault. While the first failure may have been a tree branch in the line, the second failure may occur at some other location entirely, perhaps involving expensive equipment insulation, such as a transformer. Thus, the principal advantage claimed for the ungrounded system actually caused troubles that resulted in its abandonment.

These troubles coupled with other factors led to the adoption of grounded neutral systems in some form. Some of the other factors were as follows:

- Because of greater danger to personnel, code authorities frowned on ungrounded systems.
- Equipment costs were generally lower for equipment rated for grounded neutral systems because of the reduction in insulation permissible; because graded insulation could be used, single-bushing, single-phase transformers could be used.
- At the higher voltages being used today (69 kV and above), material savings in transformer costs can be realized by employing reduced basic insulation level (BIL). These savings are in addition to the modest savings above, and may amount to substantial savings in the cost of transformers in the various voltage classes with reduced insulation. The requirements for safely reducing insulation level demand that system neutrals be grounded. Thus, these savings are not available on the ungrounded system.

11.2.2 Solidly Grounded Systems

The simplest and most effective method of grounding is to solidly connect the neutrals of any wye-connected transformers or generators to ground. This method has two major advantages:

- It is simple and inexpensive in that it requires no extra equipment.
- It minimizes the magnitude of the overvoltage that will appear on the unfaulted phases during a ground fault, resulting in a reduction in the stress on insulation as compared with other methods.

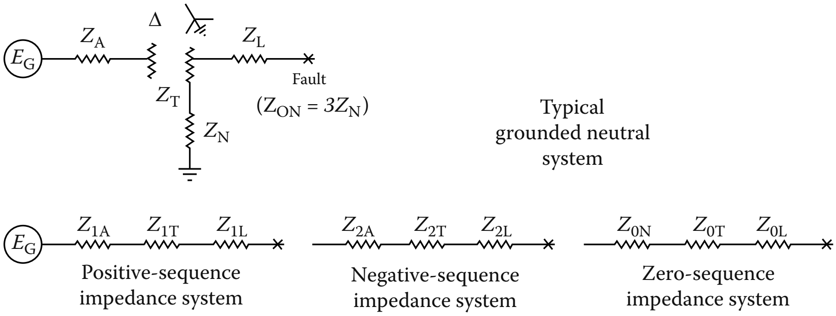
This is the reason that solidly grounded neutrals are a necessity where reduced BIL insulation is to be used.

In spite of the advantages of the solidly grounded system, there are associated disadvantages such that other grounding methods are often used. These disadvantages all stem from the fact that a solidly grounded system produces the greatest magnitude of ground fault current when a fault to ground occurs.

It is realized that with a grounded neutral system perhaps 95% or more of all faults start as a single phase to ground fault. If the amount of ground current that flows can be controlled and the fault cleared promptly, the amount of damage at the fault will be reduced and the fault probably restricted so as not to involve more than one phase. This may result in preventing bumdowns, reduction in the cost of making repairs, and reduction in the frequency or extent of maintenance on the breakers that interrupt the fault. In the case of machines or transformers, the difference in repair cost may be that of replacing a few damaged coils as compared with completely replacing the machine or transformer, which may be necessary where oil fires and explosion follow the transformer fault, or where heavy fault currents melt down coils and burn and weld together expensive areas of laminated electrical steel in the transformer core or machine stator iron. Since the damage done is approximately proportional to I^2t, it is obvious that much more can be done in the reduction of current than by reduction in time. Figure 11.3 shows the relationship of impedances controlling three- and single-phase to ground faults. Under certain conditions, single phase to ground faults can give rise to short-circuit currents 50% in excess of three-phase short-circuit current. Thus, breakers whose ratings make them entirely capable of interrupting three-phase faults may be in severe difficulty handling a single phase to ground fault. In view of this, the potential savings in damage and repair costs or avoiding the cost of having to install larger breakers may justify avoiding the simple and inexpensive solidly grounded system in favor of a more complex and expensive system that will provide control of the amount of fault current.

11.2.3 Reactance and Resistance Grounded Systems

Reactors are commonly employed as neutral impedance for ground current limitation when the amount of current reduction is small. This is because reactors of low ohmic value to handle large quantities of current can be built quite inexpensively as compared with a resistor for the same current limitation. Reactors to provide current limitation to values less than approximately 30%–50% of value are not practical. This is true partly because the high ohmic values necessary to provide the higher current limitation makes them more expensive than resistors, and partly because high values of reactance grounding approach the conditions of ungrounded systems and give rise to high transient voltages.



Three-phase short-circuit

	3ϕ **Fault Current**	**1 Phase to Ground Fault Current**
1	$I_{F3\phi} = \dfrac{E_G}{Z_{1A}+Z_{1T}+Z_{1L}}$	$I_{F1\phi} = \dfrac{3E_G}{Z_{1A}+Z_{2A}+Z_{1T}+Z_{2T}+Z_{1L}+Z_{2L}+Z_{0N}+Z_{0T}+Z_{0L}}$
	But $Z_{1A} = Z_{2A}$; $Z_{1T} = Z_{2T}$ and $Z_{1L} = Z_{2L}$	
2	$I_{F3\phi} = \dfrac{E_G}{Z_{1A}+Z_{1T}+Z_{1L}}$	$I_{F1\phi} = \dfrac{3E_G}{2(Z_{1A}+Z_{1T}+Z_{1L})+Z_{0N}+Z_{0T}+Z_{0L}}$
	If we assume fault at transformer secondary, $Z_{1L} = Z_{2L} = Z_{0L} = 0$.	
3	$I_{F3\phi} = \dfrac{E_G}{Z_{1A}+Z_{1T}}$	$I_{F1\phi} = \dfrac{3E_G}{2(Z_{1A}+Z_{1T})+Z_{0N}+Z_{0T}}$
	But if $Z_{0N} = 0$; $Z_{1T} = Z_{0T}$ and Z_{1T} is small compared to Z_{1A}	
4	$I_{F3\phi} = \dfrac{E_G}{Z_{1A}}$	$I_{F1\phi} = \dfrac{3E_G}{2Z_{1A}}$ or $I_{F1\phi} = \dfrac{3}{2} I_{F3\phi}$

Going back to Equation 3 by changing value of Z_{0N} the 1ϕ fault can be varied from a maximum approaching $I_{F1\phi}=(3/2)\ I_{F3\phi}$ down to $I_{F1\phi} = 0$ for infinite value of Z_{0N}. If fault is out on line from station: since Z_{0L} varies from approximately 3 to 11 times value of Z_{1L}, it follows that $I_{F1\phi}$ value drops off rapidly with respect to $I_{F3\phi}$ as fault location is moved out on line. In a short distance it will become less then $I_{F3\phi}$ value and on long feeders may approach rated load current values even where $Z_{0N} = 0$.

FIGURE 11.3
Relationship of three- and single-phase to ground faults.

Resistors are generally used where it is desired to limit fault currents to moderate to small values. The directly connected resistor is not practical for extremes of current limitation. Reactors are used where a small reduction of current is required, because a resistor large enough to handle the large quantities of current remaining would have to have resistor grids of tremendous cross section or many parallel grid paths, and as a result would be very expensive. On the other hand, if extreme limitation of ground current by resistors is desired, the resistor again becomes excessively expensive. This is because there are maximum values of resistance that it is practical to build into a resistor unit before the cross-sectional area of the resistance conductor becomes so small as to make it too susceptible to mechanical failure from shock, rust, corrosion, and the like. Thus, to get very high values of resistance, the resistor must be made up by connecting a tremendous number of moderate resistance units in series and it becomes expensive and bulky.

A variation of the directly connected resistor is used, where it is desirable and practical to limit ground fault currents to extremely low values, to avoid the expense and difficulties of the very high value resistance. A distribution transformer is connected between the neutral to be grounded and ground. A resistor is then connected across the secondary of the transformer, as shown in Figure 11.4. The actual 0.25 Ω resistor in the transformer secondary is stepped up in value as it appears to the generator neutral by the square of the transformer ratio of 13,200/240 or 3024 times. Thus, the 1/4 Ω secondary resistor appears as a 756 Ω resistor in the generator neutral. This limits the ground fault current to a maximum of 11.5 A. This represents only a small percent of current on the basis of machine full-load current and of the

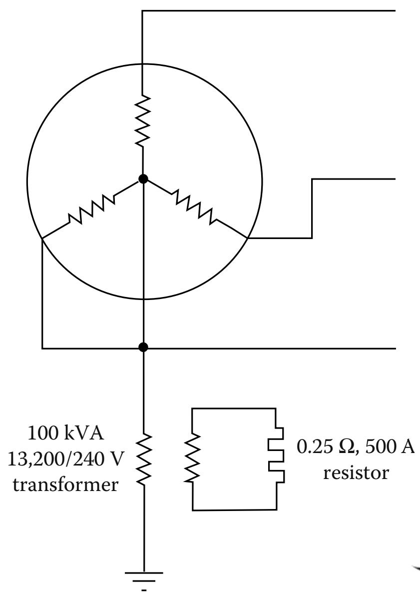


FIGURE 11.4
High-resistance grounding method. Voltage across transformer primary on solid ground fault = $13{,}800\,\text{V}\sqrt{3} = 7970\,\text{V}$; Resistance of 0.25 Ω resistor to primary circuit = $0.25 \times (13{,}200/240)^2 = 756\ \Omega$, Max $I_{F1\phi} = E/R = 7970/756 = 11.53\,\text{A}$.

maximum three-phase fault current available. This is representative of the extreme of current limitation. It accomplishes the ultimate in the reduction of fault damage. Further reduction of fault current would be dangerous, because if it were attempted, the capacitance of the generator and step-up transformer windings and the generator lead bus duct would predominate over the higher values of resistance, and the system would approach the characteristics of the original ungrounded system of Figure 11.1 with its dangers of arcing grounds.

11.2.4 Resonant Grounding

One of the earliest methods of attempting to eliminate the faults of the ungrounded system and still retain the claimed advantages for it was by means of resonant grounding using the Peterson coil. This method attempted to eliminate the fault current that could cause the arcing ground condition. Figure 11.5 shows the system of Figures 11.1 and 11.2 with the Peterson coil applied. This is simply a tunable, iron-cored reactor connected between neutral and ground. It is tuned so that the current it furnishes matches the current furnished by line capacitance under fault conditions. Under normal system conditions, it does not carry current. However, upon the occurrence of a fault it contributes a reactive component of current through the fault matching the capacitive component. Since the two currents are 180° out of phase, they cancel. This leaves no current at the fault, minimizes the chance of restrike, and thus eliminates the cause of voltage buildup.

The ground-fault neutralizer is said to be effective in 70%–80% of the faults. It is not in great favor because it is not 111% effective, because of its expense, and because of the expense of the equipment necessary to protect it in the 20%–30% of the cases when it does not work. The principal cause of its failure to work is improper tuning. This might seem to be easily corrected, but when it is realized that retuning would be required upon each feeder extension or

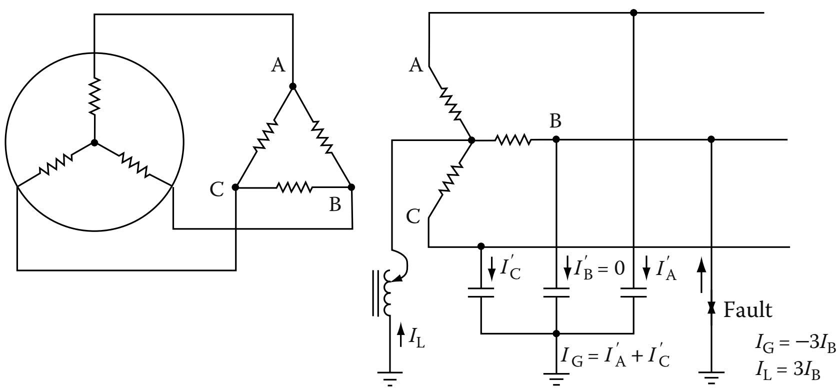


FIGURE 11.5
Resonant grounded system (Bϕ fault to ground).

rearrangement, for each emergency switching condition, or that even if kept properly tuned the system could be detuned by a broken conductor associated with the fault it was to clear, some of the difficulties of its application can be realized. It can work well in a three-phase radial circuit. However, it is not practical in a tie feeder or network system unless it is blocked off by delta transformers or other zero-sequence impedance isolators so that the tuned setting required can be definitely known and is not variable because of system operating conditions. To calculate the reactance value of the neutral reactor, the following equation from Figure 11.2 can be used:

$$I_G = I'_A + I'_C = -3I_B$$

It is desired that $I_L = 3I_B$ so that $I_G + I_L = 0$ at the fault. Voltage across $X_L = -E_B$. Call the capacitive reactance of the line X_C. Then

$$I_L = -\frac{E_B}{X_L} = \frac{-3E_B}{X_C} = -3I_B$$

$$-E_B = 3E_B \quad \text{or} \quad -X_C E_B = 3E_B X_L \quad \text{or} \quad X_C = 3X_L$$

Therefore, for fault current zero,

$$X_L = -\frac{X_C}{3}$$

11.2.5 Grounding Ungrounded Systems

So far the discussion of grounding has assumed a wye-connected neutral to ground. This is not always the case, and in some cases it is not a three-phase system that it is desired to be grounded. For situations of this kind a grounding transformer is used. This may be a conventional wye-delta transformer of suitable rating or a special zigzag wye unit may be used. Once the neutral is established, any of the grounding methods already discussed may be employed, provided the rating of the grounding transformer is adequate for the amount of current permitted by the grounding method used. Figure 11.6 shows the setup of a zigzag wye transformer used for the grounding.

In the selection of grounding equipment and methods, many factors must be considered. It is desirable from the reduction of fault damage, repair costs, and switching equipment maintenance to limit ground fault current as much as possible. However, the greater the limitation of current, the higher the possible transient overvoltages that will be encountered. This will determine the equipment insulation levels required and the rating of lightning arresters required to protect the equipment, and will consequently affect costs. Therefore, these factors are in conflict with the desire for maximum fault limitation. Whether resistors or reactors are used will determine the degree of overvoltage expected on a given system for a given degree of current limitation and thus affects the selection of the use of resistors or reactors.

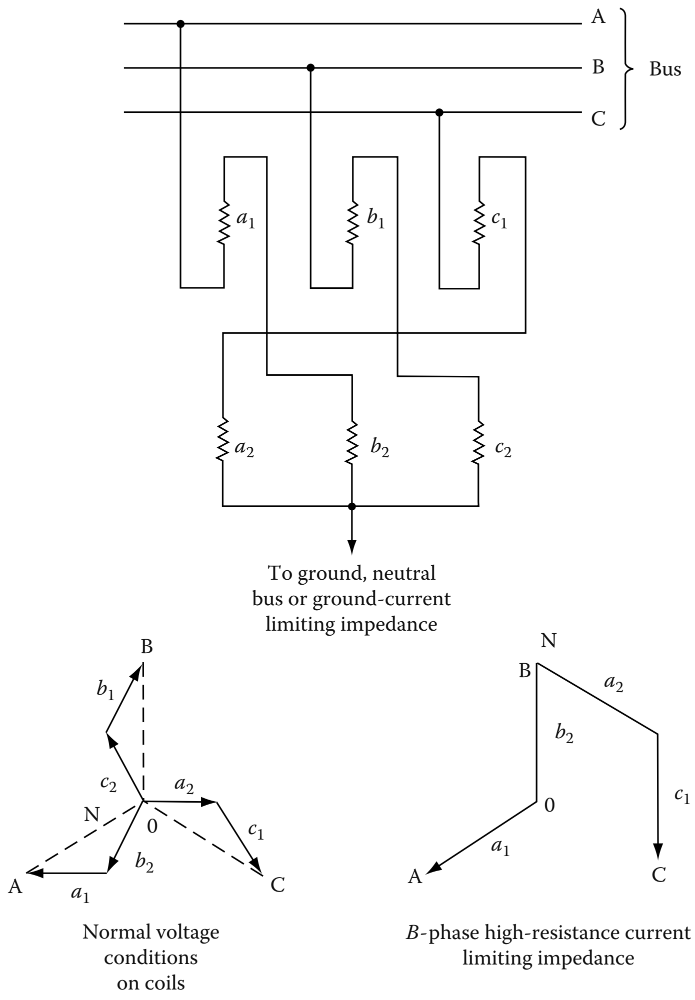


FIGURE 11.6
Ground source through a wye-zigzag grounding transformer.

Whenever grounding of any kind is used, it is obvious that fault current will flow when a normally ungrounded conductor becomes grounded. It is necessary that relays, fuses, or other protective devices sense and operate to clear the fault. Since the degree of current limitation employed may well have a serious effect on the ability of these devices to operate as desired, it follows that the degree of current limitation that can be employed may well be determined by the sensitivity of protective devices used, or, conversely, the type and sensitivity of the protective devices required may be determined by the degree of current limitation selected. However, since a multiplicity of feeders at generator voltage depends upon ground overcurrent relays for their ground fault protection, ground fault current must be kept up to a value that will give adequate relay operating torque for any and all ground faults on them, with reasonable current transformer ratios and relay current ranges.

Thus, the selection of the value to which the ground fault is to be limited becomes the problem of making a selection between minimum ground fault current to limit damage, the minimum ground fault that will give adequate protective device operation, and the maximum ground fault current that the generator windings can tolerate before there is danger of the magnetic forces forcing windings out of the generator armature slots. The extreme ground current limitation can be used only where there are no feeders at generator voltage that must have ground fault protection, and delta-wye transformers isolate the zero-sequence network for which ground fault protection at this very low current level must be provided to a very small number of equipment units. Even then, very special relaying methods must be employed.

In conclusion, several important points with respect to impedance grounding of system neutrals are so obvious that they are often overlooked.

1. Since grounding equipment is electrically active in a circuit only during a ground fault, considerable money can be saved by buying equipment rated for short time duty. Grounding equipment for a station with all underground circuits will be expected to be subjected to very infrequent faults, and since cable faults are usually permanent, repeated reclosing attempts will probably not be made. Under these circumstances a short time rating of the grounding equipment of 11 s or less may be adequate. However, grounding equipment installed in a station having all overhead circuits will be subjected to the cumulative heating effect of perhaps many closely spaced feeder faults during severe storm conditions, each circuit outage being accompanied by several unsuccessful closing attempts. Under these conditions, equipment having a rating on a 10 min or more basis may be inadequate.
2. Impedance neutral grounding equipment must always be considered hot because if a ground fault occurs in the system, it will raise the neutral to full phase to ground voltage. This not only poses a safety problem but also creates the problem of how to maintain the equipment, unless the machine, bus, or station for which the impedance furnishes the ground is shut down.
3. Where a multiplicity of grounding units is employed, care must be exercised in switching facilities for their transfer to avoid the danger that someone will get caught operating disconnects for the transfer just as a ground fault occurs. If multiple units are used, care must be exercised to assure that the protective relaying will operate and coordinate properly through the range of conditions possible with the multiple units.
4. Where impedance grounding is used, no other neutrals in the same zero-sequence system may be grounded except through the same impedance. To do so will shunt or short circuit the original impedance and raise the ground fault current above the desired design value.

11.3 Selection of Grounding System

As discussed earlier, the various methods of grounding commonly used are solidly grounded, resistance grounded, reactance grounded, and ground-fault neutralizer grounded. The ungrounded system, in the true sense of the word, is grounded, because the charging capacitance from the phase conductor to earth acts as the grounding point. The various grounding methods are shown in Figure 11.7.

The selection of a grounding system should be based upon the following systems factors:

- Magnitude of the fault current
- Transient overvoltage
- Lightning protection
- Application of protective devices for selective ground fault protection
- Types of load served, such as motors, generators, etc.

The application limits and a guide for the various grounding methods for consideration of the above-mentioned factors are shown in Table 11.1 and discussed in the following sections.

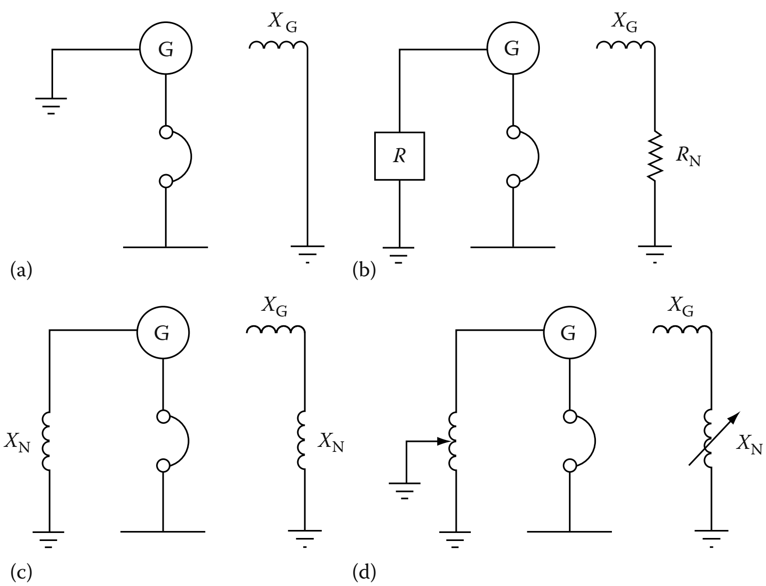
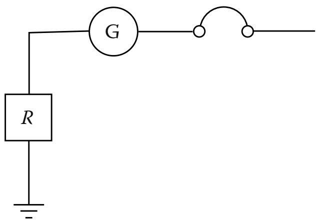
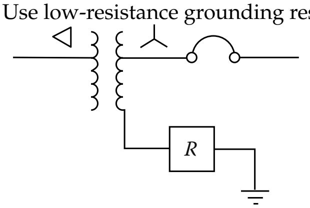
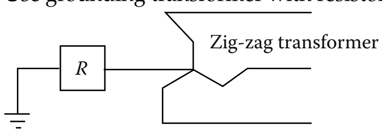
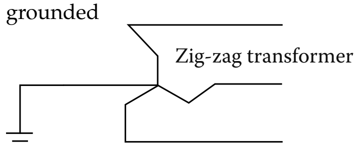


FIGURE 11.7
Methods of grounding system neutrals. (a) Solidly grounded; (b) resistance grounded; (c) reactance grounded; (d) ground-fault neutralizer.

TABLE 11.1

Grounding Methods for Low- and Medium-Voltage Systems

System	Grounding Practice	Comments
Medium-voltage system (2,400–13,800V)		
Wye-connected generator on the system	Use low-resistance grounding resistor 	Allows the use of neutral-type lightning arresters if $X_0/X_1 \leq 3$ $X_0/X_1 \leq 10$ for limiting transient overvoltages
Wye-connected transformer on the system	Use low-resistance grounding resistor 	Does not allows the use of neutral-type lightning arresters To limit transient overvoltage, $R_0/X_0 \geq 2$
System ungrounded (i.e., no wye-connected generators or transformer)	Use grounding transformer with resistor 	Some comments as for wye-connected transformer
Low-voltage system (120–600V)		
Wye-connected generator on the system	Use low-voltage reactance to ground generator neutral	Ground fault current should be not less than 25% of three-phase fault current
Wye-connected Transformer power supply system	Ground transformer neutral solidly to ground	Ground fault current can be equal to three-phase fault current (or greater at the secondary of delta-wye-connected transformer)
System ungrounded (i.e., no wye-connected transformer)	Use grounding transformer solidly grounded 	Ground fault current to be equal to at lest 25% of three-phase fault current

11.3.1 Solidly Grounded System

A solidly grounded system is one in which a generator, transformer, or grounding transformer neutral is directly grounded to earth or station ground.

Because the reactance of source (generator or transformer) impedance is in series with the neutral circuit, this system cannot be considered a zero impedance circuit. In nearly all grounded systems, it is desirable to have the line to ground fault current in the range of 25%–110% of three-phase fault current in order to prevent the development of high transient overvoltage. The higher the ground fault current, the less are the transient overvoltages.

Ground-neutral-type lightning arresters may be applied on this system provided that the ground fault current is at least 60% of three-phase fault current. Another way of expressing this value is to express the reactance and resistance ratios as follows:

$$\frac{X_0}{X_1} \leq 3$$

and

$$\frac{R_0}{X_1} \leq 1$$

where

X_0 is the zero-sequence reactance
X_1 is the positive-sequence reactance
R_0 is the zero-sequence resistance

Normally, direct grounding of the generator is not desirable because the ground fault current may exceed three-phase fault current. Since the generator is rated for maximum three-phase fault current, it is not desirable to have higher ground fault currents than three-phase fault current. Therefore, most grounded systems having generators are grounded through low reactance values to keep ground fault currents less than three-phase fault current. Generally, low-voltage systems (i.e., below 600 V) are solidly grounded. Medium-voltage systems may be either solidly or low resistance grounded.

11.3.2 Low-Resistance Grounding

In low-resistance grounding, the neutral is grounded through a resistance of low ohmic value. The reasons for using the resistance grounding system are the following:

- To reduce the ground fault current to prevent damage to switchgear, motors, cables, and the like
- To minimize magnetic and mechanical stresses

- To minimize stray ground fault currents for personnel safety
- To reduce the momentary line-voltage dips by clearing of ground faults

The line-to-ground voltage that may exist during fault conditions can be as high as the voltage present on ungrounded systems. However, the transient overvoltages are not so high. If the system is properly grounded by resistance, there is no danger from destructive overtransient voltages.

11.3.3 High-Resistance Grounding

In this system, the neutral is grounded through a resistance of high ohmic value. The line-to-ground voltage of unfaulted phases during a ground fault is nearly equal to line-to-line voltage. If the insulation system was selected for a grounded system, it will be subjected to an overvoltage condition during a line-to-ground fault.

The ground fault current available in this type of system is very small, usually 25 A or less. It should be remembered that when using this system the ground fault current should never be less than the charging current. Moreover, the lightning arresters for this system should be the ungrounded type. This type of system is subject to the following types of overvoltage conditions:

- Ferroresonance type, that is, resonance effects of series inductive–capacitive circuits
- Limited transient overvoltage conditions
- Overvoltage conditions due to direct connection to higher voltages

The reasons for using high-resistance grounding are similar to those for low-resistance grounding except that in this system ground fault current is limited to a very small value.

11.3.4 Reactance Grounding

In a reactance grounded system, the neutral circuit is grounded through a reactor. In general, reactance grounding is used for grounding generator neutrals. The value of the reactor chosen is usually such that the ground fault current is not less than 25% of three-phase fault current to prevent serious transient overvoltages during ground fault clearance. The value of X_0 must be less than or equal to 10 times the X_1 value for this type of system.

11.3.5 Ground-Fault Neutralizers (Resonant Grounded)

In this system, a reactor having a specially selected high value of reactance is connected in neutral connection to ground. The current that flows through the reactor, during a line-to-ground fault condition, is equal to and 180° out of phase with the charging current that flows in two unfaulted phases. Under this condition, the two currents cancel, leaving the faulted current due only to resistance. Because resistive current is in phase with the voltage, the fault current is quenched when both the voltage and fault current pass through zero axis.

A precaution required in this system is that care must be taken to keep the ground-fault neutralizer tuned to the system capacitance. If any switching is done to take circuits out, the neutralizer reactance values must be changed by adjusting neutralizer taps. Ground-fault neutralizers have been used only to a limited extent and are not as common as the other systems of grounding.

11.4 Understanding Ground Resistance

The term ground is defined as a conducting connection by which a circuit or equipment is connected to the earth. The connection is used for establishing and maintaining as closely as possible the potential of the earth on the circuit or equipment connected to it. A ground consists of a grounding conductor, a bonding connector, its grounding electrode(s), and the soil in contact with the electrode.

Grounds have several fundamental protection applications. For natural phenomena, such as lightning, grounds are used to provide a discharge path for the current to reduce shock hazard to personnel and to prevent damage to equipment and property.

For induced potentials due to faults in electric power systems with ground returns, grounds help in ensuring rapid operation of the protection relays by providing low resistance fault current paths. This provides for the removal of the induced potential as quickly as possible. The ground should drain the induced potential before personnel are injured and the power or communications system is damaged.

Ideally, to maintain a reference potential for instrument safety, to protect against static electricity, and limit the equipment ground voltage for operator safety, a ground resistance should be 0 Ω. In reality, as explained in this text this value cannot be achieved. However, low ground resistance is required by NEC, OSHA, and other electrical safety codes and standards.

11.4.1 Grounding Electrode Resistance

Figure 11.8 illustrates a grounding rod (electrode). The resistance of the grounding is made up of the following components:

1. Resistance of the electrode itself and that of the connection to it
2. Contact resistance of the surrounding earth to the electrode

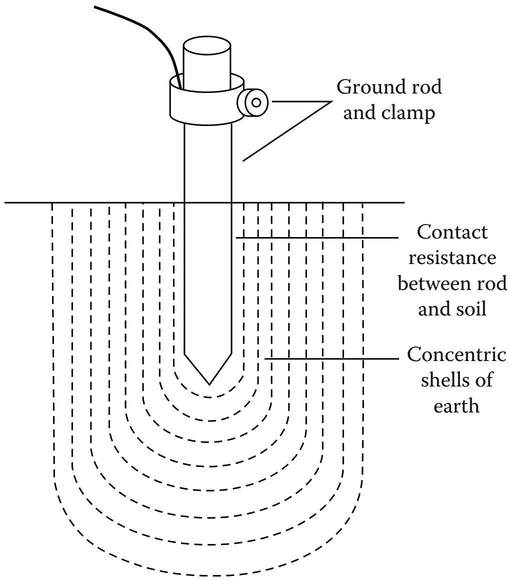


FIGURE 11.8
Grounding electrode.

3. Resistance of the earth immediately surrounding the grounding electrode or resistivity of earth, which is often the most significant factor

The grounding electrodes are usually made of a very conductive metal (copper or copper clad) with adequate cross sections so that the overall resistance is negligible. The resistance between the electrode and the surrounding earth is negligible if the electrode is free of paint, grease, or other coating, and if the earth is firmly packed.

The only component remaining is the resistance of the surrounding earth. The electrode can be thought of as being surrounded by concentric shells of earth or soil, all of the same thickness. The closer the shell to the electrode, the smaller its surface; hence, the greater its resistance. The farther away the shells are from the electrode, the greater the surface of the shell; hence, the lower the resistance. Eventually, adding shells at a distance from the grounding electrode will no longer noticeably affect the overall earth resistance surrounding the electrode. The distance at which this effect occurs is referred to as the effective resistance area and is directly dependent on the depth of the grounding electrode.

When ground fault current flows from a ground rod to earth, it flows in all directions through a series of concentric spheres or shells, commonly referred to as effective cylinders of earth, surrounding the rod. The resistance of the closest sphere to the ground rod is the highest because it is the smallest sphere.

As the distance from the ground rod is increased, the resistance becomes less because the sphere becomes larger. Eventually, a distance from the electrode is reached where the sphere resistance becomes zero. Therefore, in any ground resistance measurement only the part of earth resistance is considered that contributes a major part of the resistance. Theoretically, the earth resistance of the ground system should be measured up to infinite distance from the ground rod. However for practical purposes, the effective cylinder of earth (shells) that contributes the major portion of the earth resistance is two times the length of the ground rod.

In theory, the ground resistance may be derived from the general formula:

$$R = \rho \frac{L}{A}$$

where

R is the ground resistance
ρ is the resistivity of the soil
L is the length of grounding electrode
A is the area

This formula illustrates why the shells of concentric earth decrease in resistance the farther they are from the ground rod:

$$R = \text{Resistivity of soil} \times \frac{\text{thickness of shell}}{\text{area}}$$

In the case of ground resistance, uniform earth (or soil) resistivity throughout the volume is assumed, although this is seldom the case in nature. The equations for systems of electrodes are very complex and often expressed only as approximations. The most commonly used formula for single-ground electrode systems, developed by Professor H. R. Dwight of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, is the following:

$$R = \frac{\rho}{2\pi L} \times \frac{[(\ln 4L) - 1]}{r}$$

where

R is the resistance of the ground rod to the earth (or soil) (Ω)
L is the grounding electrode length
r is the grounding electrode radius
ρ is the average resistivity(Ω-cm) of soil

11.4.2 Effect of Ground Electrode Size and Depth on Resistance

Size: Increasing the diameter of the rod does not materially reduce its resistance. Doubling the diameter of the ground rod reduces resistance by less than 10%, as indicated in Figure 11.9.

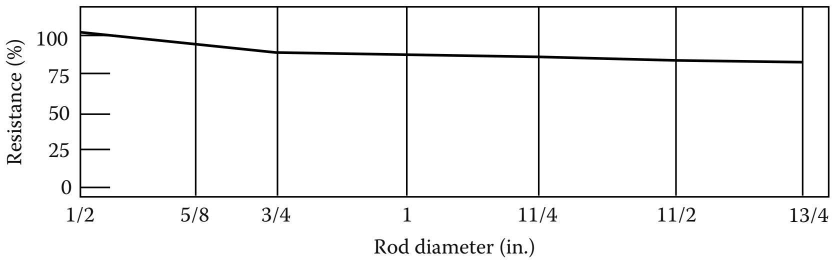


FIGURE 11.9
Ground resistance versus ground size.

Depth: As a ground rod is driven deeper into the earth, its resistance is substantially reduced. In general, doubling the rod length reduces the resistance by an additional 40%, as seen in Figure 11.10. The NEC requires a minimum of 8 ft (2.4 m) to be in contact with the soil. The most common is a 10 ft (3 m) cylindrical rod which meets the NEC code. A minimum diameter of 5/8 in. (1.59 cm) is required for steel rods and 1/2 in. (1.27 cm) for copper

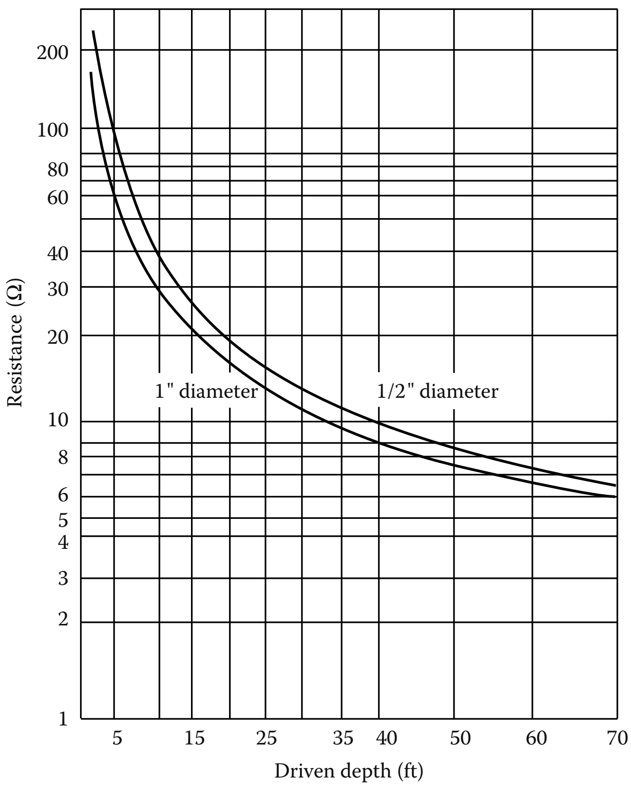


FIGURE 11.10
Ground resistance versus ground rod depth.

TABLE 11.2
Resistivity of Different Soils

Soil	Resistivity (Ω-cm) Minimum	Average	Maximum
Ashes, cinders, brine, waste	590	2,370	7,000
Clay, shale, gumbo, loam	340	4,060	16,300
Same, with varying proportions of sand and gravel	1,020	15,800	135,000
Gravel, sand, stones with little clay or loam	59,000	94,000	458,000

or copper clad steel rods. Minimum practical diameter for driving limitations for 10 ft (3 m) rods are

- 1/2 in. (1.27 cm) in average soil
- 5/8 in. (1.59 cm) in moist soil
- 3/4 in. (1.91 cm) in hard soil or more than 10 ft driving depths

11.4.3 Effect of Soil Resistivity on Ground Electrode Resistance

Dwight's formula, cited previously, shows that the resistance of grounding electrodes to earth depends not only on the depth and surface area of grounding electrodes, but on soil resistivity as well. Soil resistivity is the key factor that determines what the resistance of a grounding electrode will be, and to what depth it must be driven to obtain low ground resistance. The resistivity of the soil varies widely throughout the world and changes seasonally. Soil resistivity is determined largely by its content of electrolytes, consisting of moisture, minerals, and dissolved salts. A dry soil has high resistivity if it contains no soluble salts, as shown in Table 11.2.

11.4.4 Factors Affecting Soil Resistivity

Two samples of soil, when thoroughly dried, may become in fact very good insulators, having a resistivity in excess of 109 Ω-cm. The resistivity of the soil sample is seen to change quite rapidly until approximately 20% or greater moisture content is reached as indicated in Table 11.3.

The resistivity of the soil is also influenced by temperature. Table 11.4 shows the variation of resistivity of sandy loam, containing 15.2% moisture, with temperature changes from 20°C to –15°C. In this temperature range, the resistivity is seen to vary from 7,200 to 330,000 Ω-cm.

Because soil resistivity directly relates to moisture content and temperature, it is reasonable to assume that the resistance of any grounding system will vary throughout the different seasons of the year. Such variations are shown in Figure 11.11. Since both temperature and moisture content become more stable at greater distances below the surface of the earth, it follows

TABLE 11.3

Effects of Moisture on Soil Resistivity

Moisture Content (% by weight)	Resistivity (Ω-cm)	
	Top Soil	**Sandy Loam**
0.0	$<10^9$	$<10^9$
2.5	250,000	150,000
5.0	165,000	43,000
10.0	53,000	18,500
15.0	19,000	10,500
20.0	12,000	6,300
30.0	6,400	4,200

TABLE 11.4

Effects of Temperature on Soil Resistivity

Temperature		Resistivity (Ω-cm)
°C	**°F**	
20	68	7,200
10	50	9,900
0	32 (water)	13,800
0	32 (ice)	30,000
−5	23	79,000
−15	14	330,000

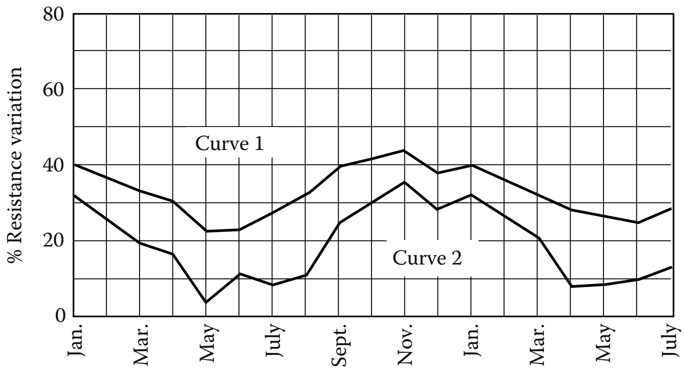


FIGURE 11.11
Seasonal variation of earth resistance with an electrode of 3/4 in. pipe in stony clay soil. Depth of electrode in earth is 3 ft for curve 1, and 10 ft for curve 2.

TABLE 11.5

Effect of Salt[a] Content on the Resistivity of Soil

Added Salt (% by weight of moisture)	Resistivity (Ω-cm)
0	10,700
0.1	1,800
1.0	460
5.0	190
10.0	130
20.0	100

Note: Sandy loam, moisture content 15% by weight; temperature, 17°C.

[a] Such as copper sulfate, sodium carbonate, and others. Salts must be EPA or local ordinance approved prior to use.

that a grounding system to be most effective at all times should be constructed with the ground rod driven down a considerable distance below the surface of the earth. Best results are obtained if the ground rod reaches the water table.

In some locations, the resistivity of the earth is so high that low-resistance grounding can be obtained only at considerable expense and with an elaborate grounding system. In such situations, it may be economical to use a ground rod system of limited size and to reduce the ground resistivity by periodically increasing the soluble chemical content of the soil. Table 11.5 shows the substantial reduction in resistivity of sandy loam brought about by an increase in chemical salt content.

Chemically treated soil is also subject to considerable variation of resistivity with changes in temperature, as shown in Table 11.6. If salt treatment is employed, it is, of course, necessary to use ground rods that will resist corrosion.

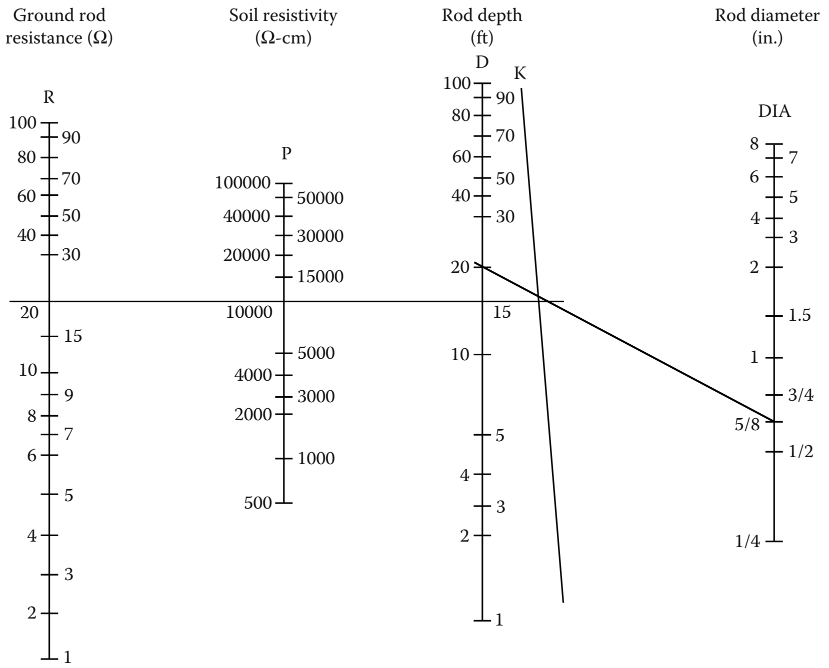
TABLE 11.6

Effect of Temperature on the Resistivity of Soil Containing Salt[a]

Temperature (°C)	Resistivity (Ω-cm)
20	110
10	142
0	190
–5	312
–13	1,440

Note: Sandy loam, 20% moisture, salt 5% of weight of moisture.

[a] Such as copper sulfate, sodium carbonate, and others. Salts must be EPA or local ordinance approved prior to use.



1. Select required resistance on R scale
2. Select apparent resistivity on P scale
3. Lay straightedge on R and P scales, and allow to intersect with K scale
4. Mark K scale point
5. Lay straightedge on K scale point and diameter (DIA) scale, and allow to intersect with D scale
6. Point on D scale will be rod depth required for resistance on R scale

FIGURE 11.12
A nomograph showing ground electrode depth versus ground electrode resistance.

11.4.5 Effect of Ground Electrode Depth on Resistance

In determining the approximate ground rod depth required to obtain a desired resistance, a grounding nomograph may be used. The nomograph, shown in Figure 11.12, indicates that to obtain a grounding resistance of 20 Ω in a soil with a resistivity of 10,000 Ω-cm, a 5/8 in. OD rod must be driven 20 ft. Note that the values indicated on the nomograph are based on the assumption that the soil is homogenous and, therefore, has uniform resistivity. The nomograph value is an approximation.

11.5 Ground Resistance Values

The NEC code states that the resistance to ground shall not exceed 25 Ω. This is the maximum value of ground resistance and in most applications a much lower ground resistance is required.

"How low a ground resistance should be?" An arbitrary answer to this question is difficult. The lower the ground resistance, the safer, and for positive protection of personnel and equipment, it is worth the effort to aim for less than 1 Ω. It is generally impractical to reach such a low resistance along a distribution system or a transmission line or in small substations. In some regions, resistances of 5 Ω or less may be obtained without much trouble. In others, it may be difficult to bring resistance of driven grounds below 100 Ω.

Accepted industry standards stipulate that transmission substations should be designed not to exceed 1 Ω resistance. In distribution substations, the maximum recommended resistance is for 5 Ω or even 1 Ω. In most cases, the buried grid system of any substation will provide the desired resistance.

In light industrial or in telecommunication central offices, 5 Ω is often the accepted value. For lighting protection, the arrestors should be coupled with a maximum ground resistance of 1 Ω. Table 11.7 shows typical values of ground resistance for various types of installations.

Grounding nomograph

These parameters can usually be met with the proper application of basic grounding theory. There will always exist circumstances which will make it difficult to obtain the ground resistance required by the NEC or other safety standards. When these situations develop, several methods of lowering the ground resistance can be employed. These include parallel rod systems, deep-driven rod systems utilizing sectional rods and chemical treatment of the soil. Additional methods, discussed in other published data, are buried

TABLE 11.7

Typical Grounding Resistance Values of Substations for Various Installations

Installation	Type	Maximum Substation Grounding Resistance Values[a]
Commercial	Metallic buildings	≤25 Ω (per NEC)
	Wet wells, etc.	
	Homes	
Industrial	General facilities	5 Ω
	Chemical	3 Ω
	Computer	<1–3 Ω
	High-speed loading facilities for chemical	<1 Ω
Utilities	Generating stations	1 Ω[a]
	Large substations	1 Ω
	District substations	1.5–5 Ω
	Small substations	5 Ω

[a] For solidly grounded systems.

plates, buried conductors (counterpoise), electrically connected building steel, and electrically connected concrete reinforced steel.

Electrically connecting to existing water and gas distribution systems was often considered to yield low ground resistance; however, recent design changes utilizing nonmetallic pipes and insulating joints have made this method of obtaining a low-resistance ground questionable and in many instances unacceptable.

11.6 Ground Resistance Measurements

To maintain sufficiently low resistance values of grounding systems, their periodic testing is required. The testing involves measurement to ensure that they do not exceed design limits. The methods of measuring and testing the ground resistance and soil resistivity are as follows:

- Two-point method
- Three-point method
- Fall-of-potential method
- Ratio method
- Four-point method
- Touch potential measurements
- Clamp-on method

The measurement of ground resistances may only be accomplished with specially designed test equipment. The most common method for measuring ground resistance uses the fall-of-potential principle of alternating current (AC) of 60 Hz or some higher frequency circulating between an auxiliary electrode and the ground electrode under test; the reading will be given in ohms and represents the resistance of the ground electrode to the surrounding earth. Also, one manufacturer has recently introduced a clamp-on ground resistance tester.

11.6.1 Two-Point Method

This method may be used to measure the resistance of a single driven ground rod. It uses an auxiliary ground rod whose resistance is either known or can be measured. The resistance value of the auxiliary ground rod also must be very small compared to the resistance of the driven ground rod so that the measured value can be assumed to be wholly contributed by the driven ground rod. For example, this test might be applicable in the measurement of resistance of the single driven ground rod for a residence or in congested areas where finding room to drive two auxiliary rods may be a problem.

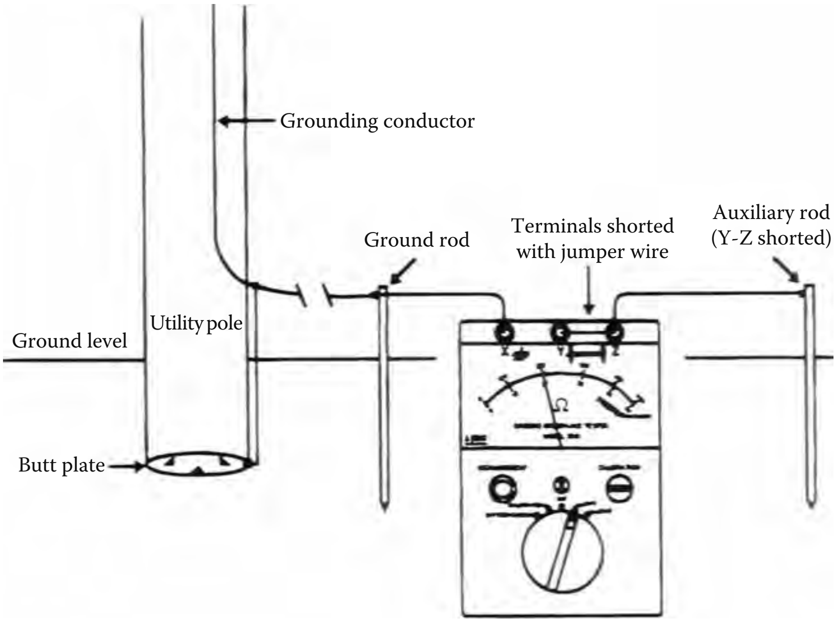


FIGURE 11.13
Two-point ground resistance measurement method.

In this case, the municipal metallic water supply line can be assumed as the auxiliary ground rod whose resistance value is approximately 1 Ω or less. This value is quite small compared to the value of a single driven ground rod, whose value is in the order of 25 Ω. The reading obtained is that of the two grounds in series. The lead resistances will also be measured and should be deducted from the final measurements. This method is usually adequate where a go, no-go type of test is required. The connections for this test are shown in Figure 11.13.

11.6.2 Three-Point Method

This method is similar to the two-point method except it uses two auxiliary rods. To obtain accurate values of resistance measurements, the resistance of the auxiliary electrodes should be approximately equal to or less than that of the electrode under test. The connections for the three-point method are shown in Figure 11.14.

Either AC of 60 Hz or DC may be used for making this test. The advantage of using AC is that it minimizes the effects of stray currents on measurement readings. However, if stray currents happen to be of the same frequency, error will be introduced in the readings. The use of DC for making this test will totally eliminate the AC stray currents. However, stray DC and formation of gas around the electrodes will introduce error in the readings when using DC

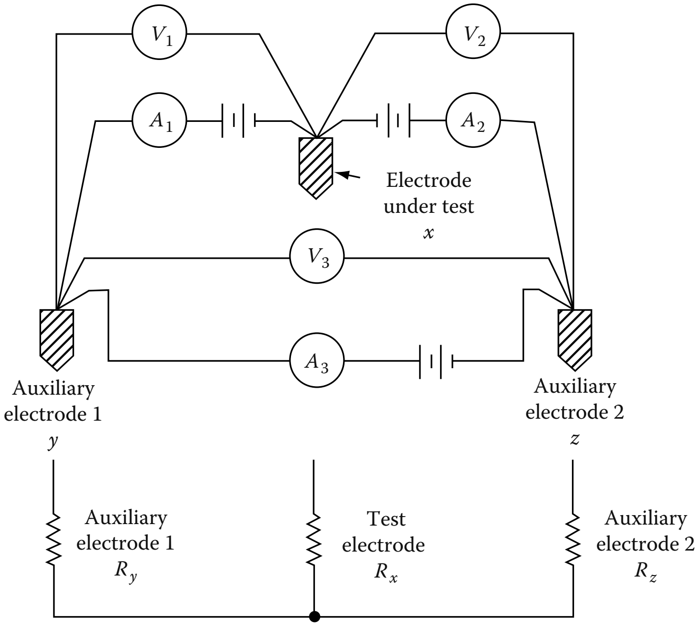


FIGURE 11.14
Three-point test method and its equivalent circuit.

for this test. The effect of stray DCs can be minimized by taking readings with current in the opposite direction. The average of the two readings will give an accurate test value. Apply currents only long enough to take readings.

The resistance value of the test electrode can be calculated as follows. Let

$$R_1 = R_x + R_y = \frac{V_1}{A_1}$$

$$R_2 = R_x + R_z = \frac{V_2}{A_2}$$

$$R_3 + R_y + R_z = \frac{V_3}{A_3}$$

Solving these three equations, we have

$$R_y = R_3 - R_Z$$

$$R_x = R_1 - R_y = R_1 - R_3 + R_z$$

Also:

$$R_x = R_2 - R_Z$$

from which

$$2R_x = R_1 + R_2 - R_3$$

or

$$R_x = \frac{R_1 - R_2 - R_3}{2}$$

11.6.3 Fall-of-Potential Method

This method measures grounding electrode resistance based upon the principle of potential drop across the resistance. It also uses two auxiliary electrodes (one current rod and the other a potential rod) that are placed at a sufficient distance from the test electrodes; a current of known magnitude is passed through the electrode under test and one of the auxiliary electrodes (current rod). The drop in potential between the electrode under the test and the second auxiliary electrode (potential rod) is measured. The ratio of voltage drop (V) to the known current (I) will indicate the resistance of the grounding circuit. Either a DC or AC voltage source may be used for conducting this test.

Several problems and errors may be encountered with this method, such as (i) stray currents in earth may cause voltmeter readings to be either high or low and (ii) the resistance of auxiliary electrode and electrical leads may introduce errors in the voltmeter reading. This error can be minimized by using a voltmeter of high impedance value.

This method can be used with either a separate voltmeter and ammeter or a single instrument which provides a reading directly in ohms (see Figure 11.15). To measure the resistance of a grounding electrode, the current electrode is placed at a suitable distance from the grounding electrode under test. As shown in Figure 11.16, the potential difference between rods X and Y is measured by a voltmeter, and the current flow between rods X and Z is measured by an ammeter. (*Note*: X, Y, and Z may be referred to as X, P, and C in a three-point tester or C1, P2, and C2 in a four-point tester.)

By Ohm's law $E = RI$ or $R = E/I$. By this formula, we may obtain the ground electrode resistance R. If $E = 20\,\text{V}$ and $I = 1$ A, then

$$R = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{20}{1} = 20\,\Omega$$

FIGURE 11.15
Fall-of-potential method ground resistance instrument. (Courtesy of Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA.)

11.6.3.1 Position of the Auxiliary Electrodes on Measurements

The goal in precisely measuring the resistance to ground is to place the auxiliary current electrode Z far enough from the ground electrode under test so that the auxiliary potential electrode Y will be outside of the effective resistance areas (effective cylinder of earth) of both the ground electrode and the

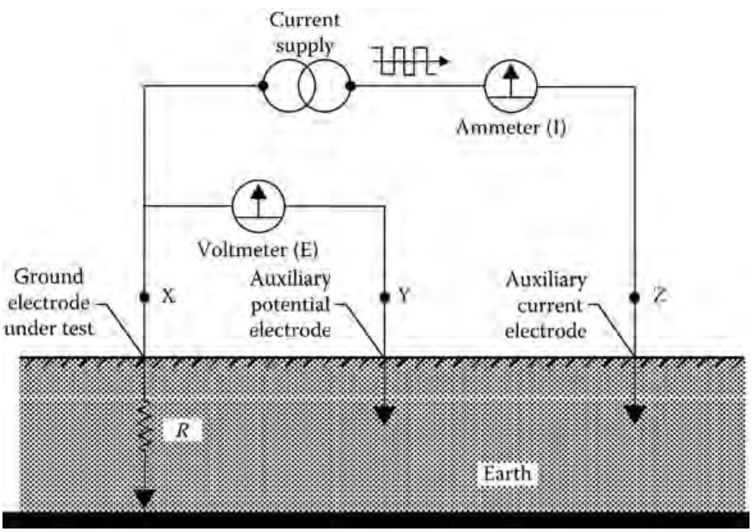


FIGURE 11.16
Fall-of-potential method.

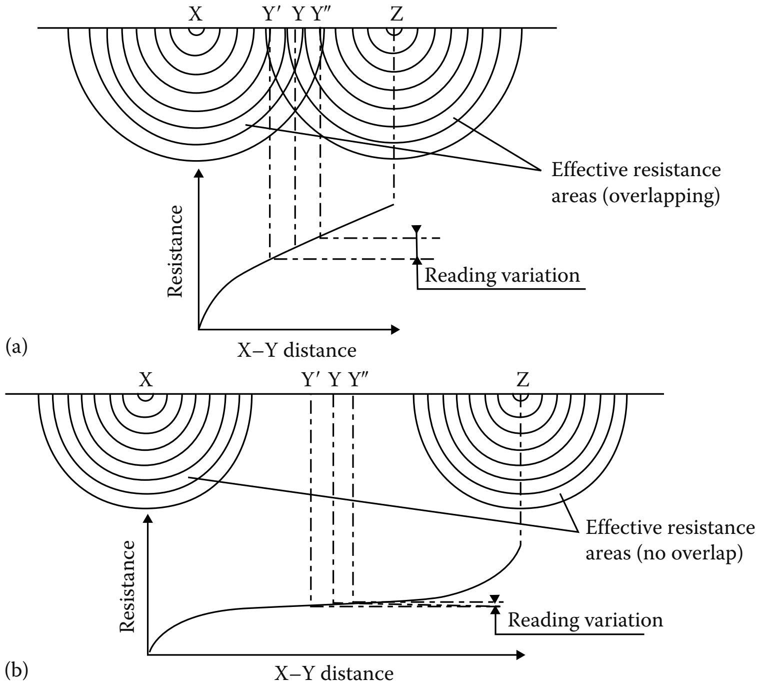


FIGURE 11.17
Effective resistance areas (cylinders of earth) (a) overlapping and (b) not overlapping.

auxiliary current electrode. The best way to find out if the auxiliary potential rod Y is outside the effective resistance areas is to move it between X and Z and to take a reading at each location. If the auxiliary potential rod Y is in an effective resistance area (or in both if they overlap as in Figure 11.17a), by displacing it the readings taken will vary noticeably in value. Under these conditions, no exact value for the resistance to ground may be determined.

On the other hand, if the auxiliary potential rod Y is located outside of the effective resistance areas, as in Figure 11.17b, as Y is moved back and forth the reading variation is minimal. The readings taken should be relatively close to each other, and are the best values for the resistance to ground of the ground X. The readings should be plotted to ensure that they lie in a "plateau" region as shown in Figure 11.17b. The region is often referred to as the 62% area which is discussed in the following section.

11.6.3.2 Measuring Resistance of Ground Electrodes (62% Method)

The 62% method is an extension of the fall-of-potential method and has been adopted after graphical consideration and after actual test. It is the most accurate method but is limited by the fact that the ground tested is a single unit. This method applies only when all three electrodes are in a straight line and the ground is a single electrode, pipe, or plate, etc., as is shown in Figure 11.18.

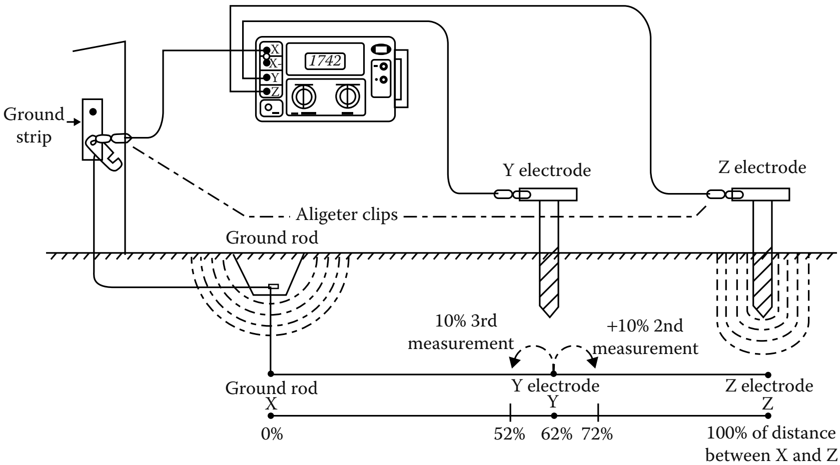


FIGURE 11.18
Fall-of-potential method showing potential rod location at 62% distance from the electrode under test.

Consider Figure 11.19, which shows the effective resistance areas (concentric shells) of the ground electrode X and of the auxiliary current electrode Z. The effective cylinders of earth of the X and Z rods overlap. If readings were taken by moving the auxiliary potential electrode Y toward either X or Z,

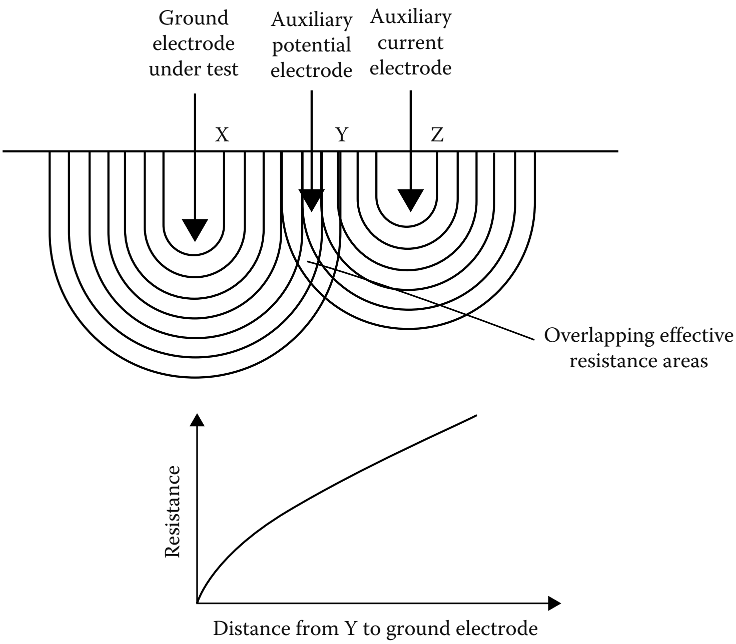


FIGURE 11.19
Overlapping effective resistance areas.

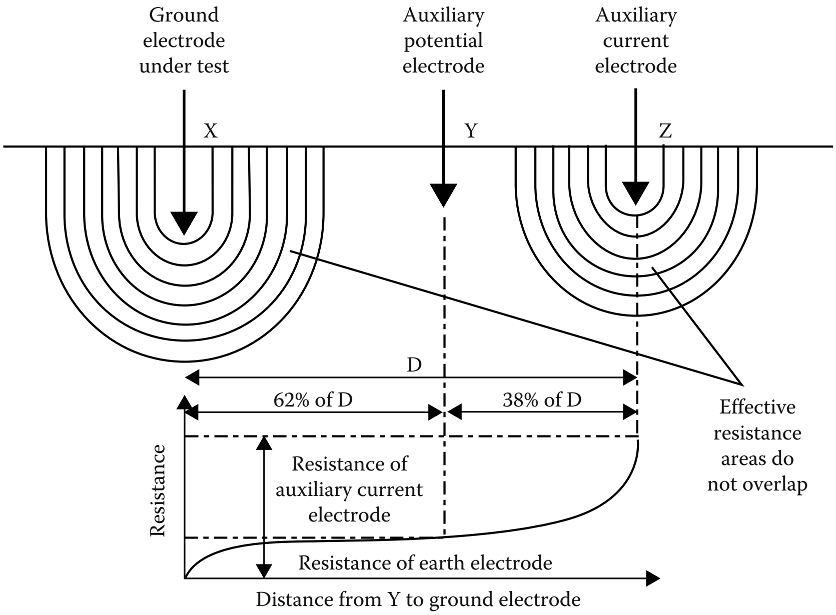


FIGURE 11.20
Effective resistance areas not overlapping.

the reading differentials would be great and one could not obtain a reading within a reasonable band of tolerance. The sensitive areas overlap and act constantly to increase resistance as Y is moved away from X.

Now consider Figure 11.20, where the X and Z electrodes are sufficiently spaced so that the areas of effective resistance do not overlap. If we plot the resistance measured, we find that the measurements level off when Y is placed at 62% of the distance from X to Z, and that the readings on either side of the initial Y setting are most likely to be within the established tolerance band. This tolerance band is defined by the user and expressed as a percent of the initial reading: ±2%, ±5%, ±10%, etc.

11.6.3.3 Auxiliary Electrode Spacing

No definite distance between X and Z can be given, since this distance is relative to the diameter of the electrode tested, its length, the homogeneity of the soil tested, and particularly, the effective resistance areas. However, an approximate distance may be determined from Table 11.8, which is given for a homogeneous soil and an electrode of 1 in. in diameter. (For a diameter of 1/2 in., reduce the distance by 10%; for a diameter of 2 in. increase the distance by 10%.) It is recommended that the test should be made for ground electrode resistance for each season of the year. The data should be retained for each season for comparison and analysis. Serious deviation of the test data from previous years, other than seasonal variations, could mean electrode corrosion.

TABLE 11.8

Approximate Distance (ft) to Auxiliary Electrodes Using the 62% Method

Depth Driven	Distance to Y	Distance to Z
6	45	72
8	50	80
10	55	88
12	60	96
18	71	115
20	74	120
30	86	140

11.6.3.4 Multiple Electrode System

A single driven ground electrode is an economical and simple means of making a good ground system. But sometimes a single rod will not provide sufficient low resistance, and several ground electrodes will be driven and connected in parallel by a cable. Very often when two, three, or four ground electrodes are used, they are driven in a straight line; when four or more are used, a hollow square configuration is used and the ground electrodes are still connected in parallel and equally spaced as shown in Figure 11.21.

In multiple electrode systems, the 62% method electrode spacing may no longer be applied directly (see Table 11.9). The distance of the auxiliary electrodes is now based on the maximum grid distance (i.e., in a square, the

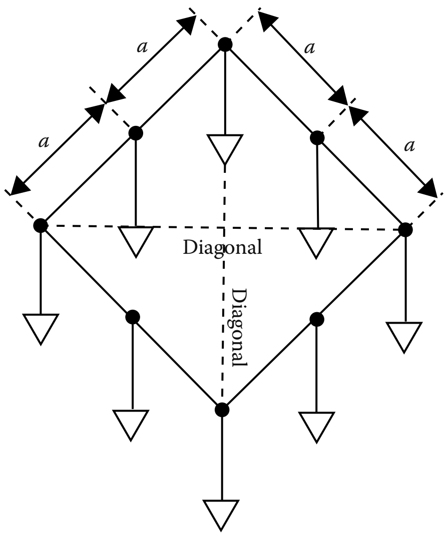


FIGURE 11.21
Multiple electrode system (ground grid).

TABLE 11.9

Multiple Electrode System Distance (ft)

Maximum Grid Distance	Distance to Y	Distance to Z
6	78	125
8	87	140
10	100	160
12	105	170
14	118	190
16	124	200
18	130	210
20	136	220
30	161	260
40	186	300
50	211	340
60	230	370
80	273	440
100	310	500
120	341	550
140	372	600
160	390	630
180	434	700
200	453	730

diagonal; in a line, the total length, e.g., a square having a side of 20 ft will have a diagonal of approximately 28 ft).

Excessive noise. Excessive noise may interfere with testing because of the long leads used to perform a fall-of-potential test. A voltmeter can be utilized to identify this problem. Connect the X, Y, and Z cables to the auxiliary electrodes as for a standard ground resistance test. Use the voltmeter to test the voltage across terminals X and Z as shown in Figure 11.22. The voltage reading should be within the stray voltage tolerances acceptable to the ground tester being used. If the test exceeds this value, try the following techniques:

1. Braid the auxiliary cables together. This often has the effect of canceling out the common mode voltages between these two conductors.
2. If the previous method fails, try changing the alignment of the auxiliary cables so that they are not parallel to power lines above or below the ground.
3. If a satisfactory low voltage value is still not obtained, the use of shielded cables may be required. The shield acts to protect the inner conductor by capturing the voltage and draining it to ground, as shown in Figure 11.23.

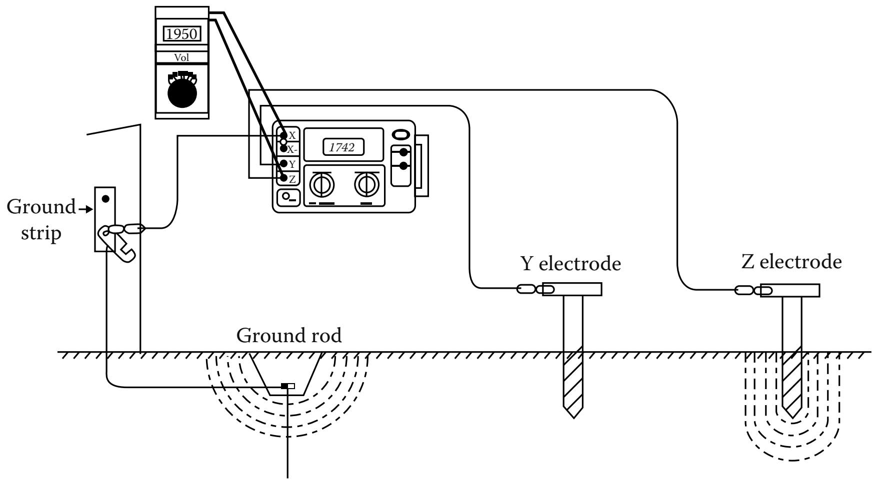


FIGURE 11.22
Testing for stray voltages.

Excessive auxiliary rod resistance. The inherent function of a fall-of-potential ground tester is to input a constant current into the earth and measure the voltage drop by means of auxiliary electrodes. Excessive resistance of one or both auxiliary electrodes can inhibit this function. This is caused by high soil resistivity or poor contact between the auxiliary electrode and the surrounding dirt. To ensure good contact with the earth, stamp down the soil directly around the auxiliary electrode to remove air gaps formed when inserting the rod. If soil resistivity is the problem, pour water around the auxiliary electrodes. This reduces the auxiliary electrode's contact resistance without affecting the measurement.

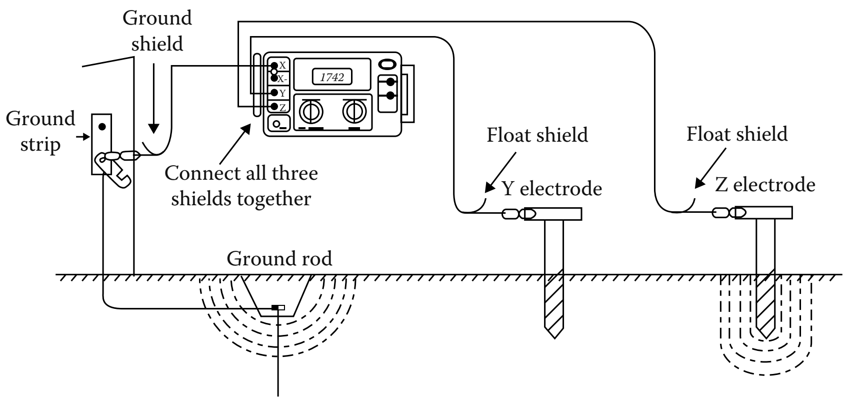


FIGURE 11.23
Use of shielded cables to minimize stray voltages.

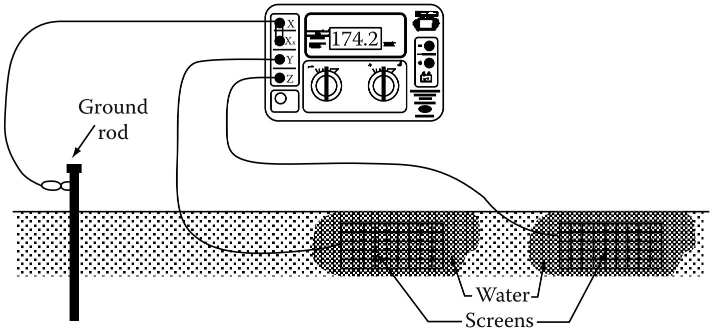


FIGURE 11.24
Use of screens as auxiliary electrodes.

Tar or concrete mat. Sometimes a test must be performed on a ground rod that is surrounded by a tar or concrete mat, where auxiliary electrodes cannot be driven easily. In such cases, metal screens and water can be used to replace auxiliary electrodes, as shown in Figure 11.24. Place the screens on the floor the same distance from the ground rod under test as you would auxiliary electrodes in a standard fall-of-potential test. Pour water on the screens and allow it to soak in. These screens will now perform the same function as would driven auxiliary electrodes.

11.6.4 Ratio Method

This method uses a Wheatstone bridge or an ohmmeter to measure the series resistance of grounding electrode and the auxiliary electrode. The test connections are shown in Figure 11.25. A slide wire potentiometer is used with a Wheatstone bridge for this test. The potentiometer is connected across the grounding electrode under test and the first auxiliary electrode. The sliding contact of the potentiometer is connected to the second auxiliary electrode through a detector for determining the null point. The resistance of the test electrode and first auxiliary electrode is measured first by the Wheatstone bridge or ohmmeter. Then, using the potentiometer and Wheatstone bridge, a new null point is determined with the second electrode in the test circuit. The resistance of the grounding electrode is the ratio of the test electrode resistance to the total resistance of the two in series. The procedure and equations are as follows:

- Measure $R_x + R_y$ by means of a Wheatstone bridge or ohmmeter
- Determine from the potentiometer the ratio of $R_A/(R_A + R_B)$
- Insert second auxiliary electrode (R_z) in test circuit and obtain null point

$$\frac{R_x}{R_A} = \frac{R_x + R_y}{R_A + R_B} \quad \text{or} \quad R_x = (R_x + R_y)\left(\frac{R_A}{R_A + R_B}\right)$$

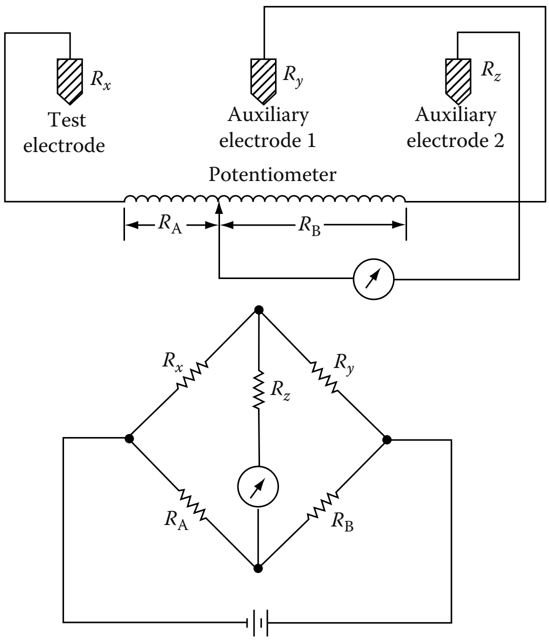


FIGURE 11.25
Ratio method of measuring ground resistance.

11.6.5 Soil Resistivity Measurements (Four-Point Measurement)

The purpose of soil resistivity measurements is threefold. First, such data are used to make subsurface geophysical surveys as an aid in identifying ore locations, depth to bedrock, and other geological phenomena. Second, resistivity has a direct impact on the degree of corrosion in underground pipelines. A decrease in resistivity relates to an increase in corrosion activity and therefore dictates the protective treatment to be used. Third, soil resistivity directly affects the design of a grounding system, and it is to that task that this discussion is directed. When designing an extensive grounding system, it is advisable to locate the area of lowest soil resistivity in order to achieve the most economical grounding installation.

The two types of resistivity measurements are two-point method and four-point method. The two-point method is simply the resistance measured between two points. For most applications, the most accurate method is the four-point method. The four-point method, as the name implies, requires the insertion of four equally spaced, and in-line, electrodes into the test area. A known current from a constant current generator is passed between the outermost electrodes. The potential drop (as a function of the resistance) is then measured across the two innermost electrodes. The ground resistivity is based on the formula given below and the meter is calibrated to read directly in ohms.

This value is the average resistivity of the ground at a depth equivalent to the distance A between two electrodes.

$$\rho = \frac{4\pi AR}{1+\left(2A/\left(\sqrt{A^2+4B^2}\right)\right)-\left(2A/\left(\sqrt{4A^2+4B^2}\right)\right)}$$

where
A is the distance between the electrodes (cm)
B is the electrode depth (cm)
R is the ohmic value as measured by four-terminal ground tester
If $A > 20B$, the formula becomes:

$$\rho = 2\pi AR \text{ (with } A \text{ in cm)}$$

$$\rho = 191.5AR \text{ (with } A \text{ in ft)}$$

$$\rho = \text{soil resistivity } (\Omega\text{-cm})$$

11.6.6 Touch Potential Measurements

The primary reason for performing ground resistance measurements is to ensure electrical safety of personnel and equipment. Periodic ground electrode or grid resistance measurements are recommended when:

1. The electrode/grid is relatively small and can be conveniently disconnected
2. Corrosion induced by low soil resistivity or galvanic action is suspected
3. Ground faults are very unlikely to occur near the ground under test

In certain cases, the degree of electrical safety can be evaluated from a different perspective. Voltage gradient are a safety concern in large high-voltage switchyards and substations. Therefore, the ground grid system of these facilities is designed to ensure that the voltage gradients due to induced or fault currents remain at low value and not pose a danger to personnel or equipment. The maximum limit of voltage for these gradients is defined in terms of the following:

Touch potential: Touch potential is the voltage difference between a person's arm and the feet, caused by the voltage gradient due to fault or induced current. It is assumed that the current passes through the heart and therefore this potential should be kept to near zero to safeguard personnel who might accidentally come in contact with equipment and structures in a switchyard or substations.

Step potential: Step potential is the voltage difference between a person's feet, caused by the voltage gradient due to fault or induced current. It is assumed that the current passes through the legs and therefore this potential should be kept to near zero to safeguard personnel.

Touch potential measurements are recommended when the following factors are present.

1. It is physically or economically impossible to disconnect the ground to be tested.
2. Ground faults could reasonably be expected to occur near the ground to be tested, or near equipment grounded by the ground to be tested.
3. The footprint of grounded equipment is comparable to the size of the ground to be tested. (The footprint is the outline of the part of equipment in contact with the earth.)

When performing touch potential measurements, a four-pole ground resistance tester is used. During the test, the instrument induces a low-level fault into the earth at some proximity to the subject ground. The instrument displays touch potential in volts per ampere of fault current. The displayed value is then multiplied by the largest anticipated ground fault current to obtain the worst case touch potential for a given installation.

For example, if the instrument displayed a value of 0.100 when connected to a system where the maximum fault current was expected to be 5000 A, the maximum touch potential would be 500 V.

Touch potential measurements are similar to fall-of-potential measurements in that both measurements require placement of auxiliary electrodes into or on the earth. Spacing the auxiliary electrodes during touch potential measurements differs from fall-of-potential electrode spacing, as shown in Figure 11.26.

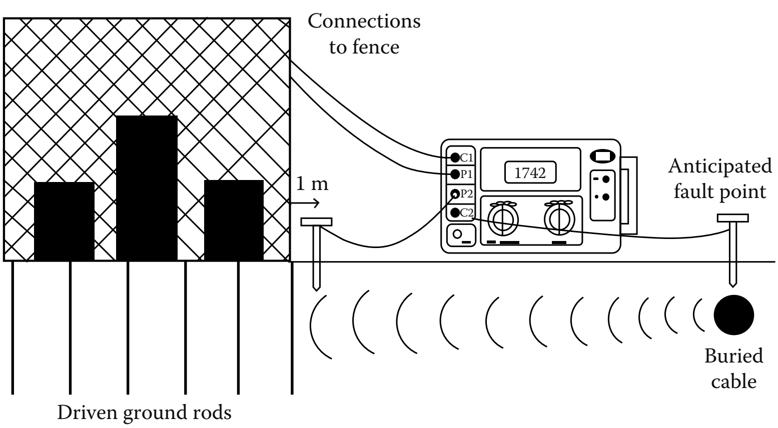


FIGURE 11.26
Touch potential measurements.

Consider the following scenario: If the buried cable depicted in Figure 11.26 experienced an insulation breakdown near the substation shown, fault currents would travel through the earth toward the substation ground, creating a voltage gradient. This voltage gradient may be hazardous or potentially lethal to personnel who came in contact with the affected ground.

To test for approximate touch potential values in this situation, proceed as follows. Connect cables between the fence of the substation and C1 and P1 of the four-pole earth resistance tester. Position an electrode in the earth at the point at which the ground fault is anticipated to occur, and connect it to C2. In a straight line between the substation fence and the anticipated fault point, position an auxiliary electrode into the earth 1 m (or one arm's length) away from the substation fence, and connect it to P2. Turn the instrument on, select the 10 mA current range, and observe the measurement. Multiply the displayed reading by the maximum fault current of the anticipated fault. By positioning the P2 electrode at various positions around the fence adjacent to the anticipated fault line, a voltage gradient map may be obtained.

11.6.7 Clamp-On Ground Resistance Measurement

This measurement method is new and quite unique. It offers the ability to measure the resistance without disconnecting the ground. This type of measurement also offers the advantage of including the bonding to ground and the overall grounding connection resistances.

11.6.7.1 Principle of Operation

Usually, a common distribution line grounded system can be simulated as a simple basic circuit as shown in Figure 11.27, or an equivalent circuit as shown in Figure 11.28. If voltage E is applied to any measured grounding pole R_x through a special transformer, current I flows through the circuit, thereby establishing the following equation:

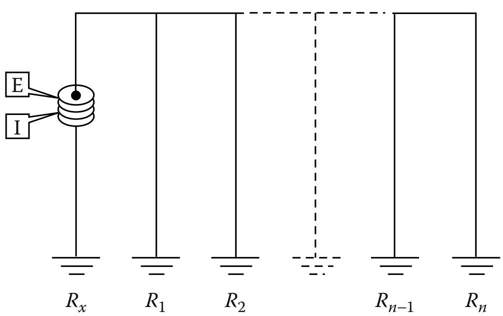


FIGURE 11.27
Simple basic circuit of distribution grounded system.

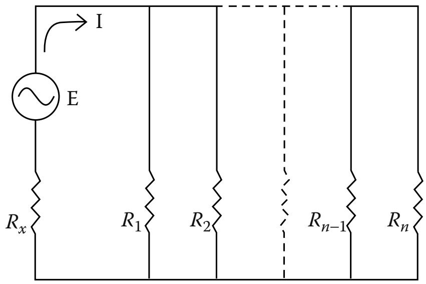


FIGURE 11.28
Equivalent circuit of simple distribution grounded system.

$$\frac{E}{I} = R_x + \frac{1}{\sum_{k=1}^{n} (1/R_k)}$$

where usually:

$$R_x >> \frac{1}{\sum_{k=1}^{n} (1/R_k)}$$

Therefore, $E/I = R_x$ is established. If I is detected with E kept constant, measured grounding pole resistance can be obtained.

Refer again to Figures 11.27 and 11.28. Current is fed to a special transformer via a power amplifier from a 1.6 kHz constant-voltage oscillator. This current is detected by a detection current transformer (CT). Only the 1.6 kHz signal frequency is amplified by a filter amplifier before being fed into analog/digital (A/D)-converter, and after synchronous rectification it is displayed on the liquid crystal display (LCD).

The filter amplifier is used to cut off earth current at commercial frequency and high-frequency noise. Voltage is detected by coils wound around the injection CT and then amplified and rectified to be compared by a level comparator. If the clamp is not closed properly, an open jaws annunciator appears on the LCD. The clamp-on ground resistance measurement instrument is shown in Figure 11.29.

11.6.7.2 In-Field Measurement

The following are examples of ground resistance measurements in typical field situations:

Pole-mounted transformer: Remove any molding covering the ground conductor, and provide sufficient room for the jaws of the clamp-on ground tester. The jaws must be able to close easily around the conductor. The jaws can be placed around the ground rod itself.

FIGURE 11.29
Clamp-on ground resistance measurement instrument. (From Clem, O., Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA, Used in company catalog, datasheet, and brochure, 2008. With permission.)

Note: The clamp must be placed so that the jaws are in electrical path from the system neutral or ground wire to the ground rod or rods as the circuit provides.

Select the current range *A*. Clamp onto the ground conductor and measure the ground current. The maximum range is 30 A. If the ground current exceeds 30 A, ground resistance measurements are not possible. "**Do not proceed further with the measurement**." Having noted the ground current, select the ground resistance range Ω and measure the resistance directly. The reading you measure with the ground tester indicates not just the resistance of the rod, but of the connection to the system neutral and all bonding connections between the neutral and the rod.

Note that in Figure 11.30, there exist both a butt plate and a ground rod. In this type of circuit, it is necessary to place the tester jaws above the bond so that both grounds are included in the test. For future reference, note the date, ohms reading, current reading, and pole number. Replace any molding you may have removed from the conductor.

Note: A high reading indicates one or more of the following:

Poor ground rod.
Open ground conductor.
High resistance bonds on the rod or splices on the conductor; watch for buried split butts, clamps, and hammer-on connections.

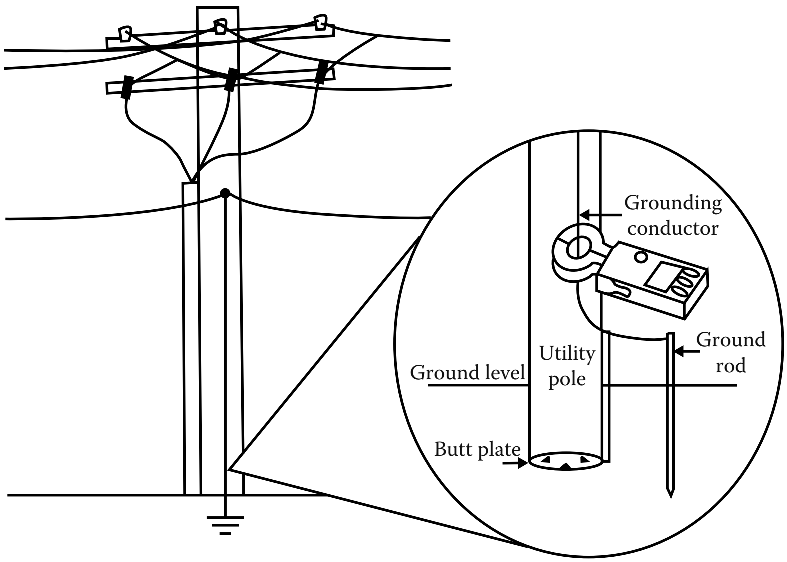


FIGURE 11.30
Ground resistance measurement of pole-mounted transformer.

Service entrance or meter: Follow basically the same procedure as in the first example. Notice that Figure 11.31 shows the possibility of multiple ground rods and in Figure 11.32, the ground rods have been replaced with a water pipe ground. You may also have both types acting as a ground. In these cases, it is necessary to make the measurements between the service neutral and both grounded points.

Pad-mounted transformer

Note: Never open transformer enclosures. They are the property of the electrical utility. If the ground test needs to be performed with the utility transformer, coordinate with the utility personnel for such a test.

"**Observe all safety requirements—dangerously high voltage is present**." Locate and number all rods (usually only a single rod is present). If the ground rods are inside the enclosure, refer to Figure 11.33 and if they are outside the enclosure, refer to Figure 11.34. If a single rod is found within the enclosure, the measurement should be taken on the conductor just before the bond on the ground rod. Often, more than one ground conductor is tied to this clamp, looping back to the enclosure or neutral.

In many cases, the best reading can be obtained by clamping the instrument onto the ground rod itself, below the point when the ground conductors are attached to the rod, so that you are measuring the ground circuit. Care must be taken to find a conductor with only one return path to the neutral.

Generally, a very low reading at the measurement indicates that you are on a loop and you need to test closer to the rod. In Figure 11.34, the ground rod

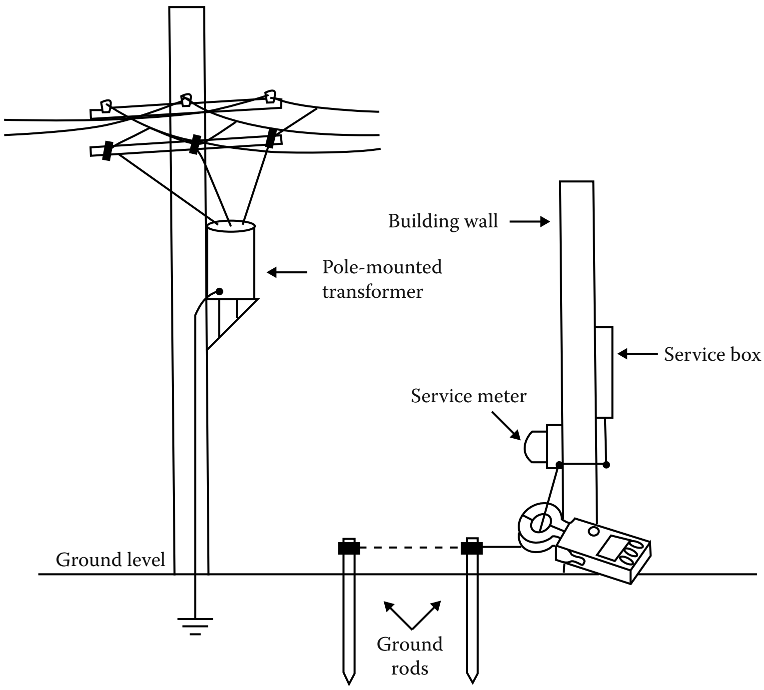


FIGURE 11.31
Ground resistance measurement of service entrance having multiple ground rods.

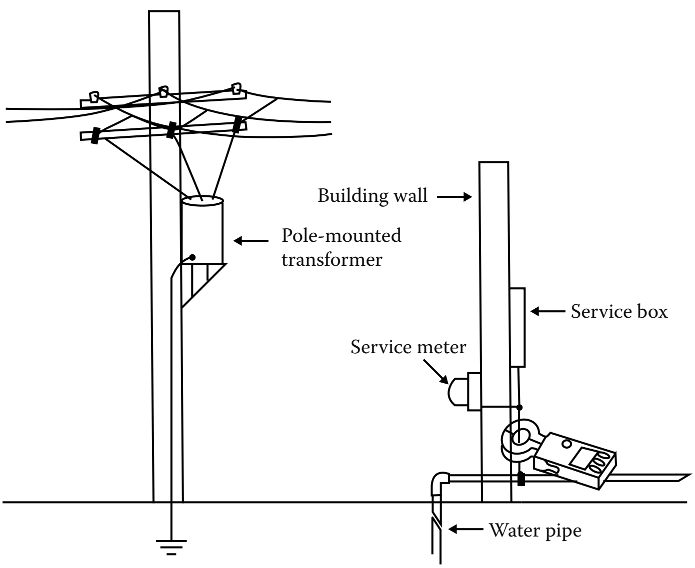


FIGURE 11.32
Ground resistance measurement of service entrance with water pipe ground.

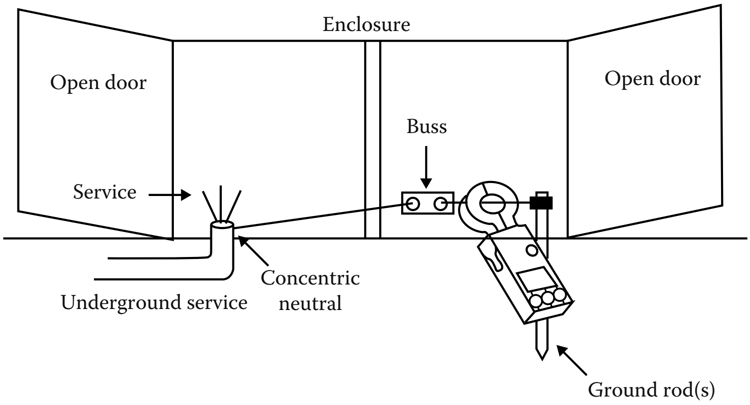


FIGURE 11.33
Ground resistance measurement of pad-mounted transformer with ground rods inside the enclosure.

is located outside the enclosure. Clamp at the indicated measuring point to obtain the correct reading. If more than one rod exists at different comers of the enclosure, it will be necessary to determine how they are connected to properly measure the ground resistance.

11.6.7.3 Transmission Towers

"**Observe all safety requirements—dangerously high voltage is present**." Locate the ground conductor at the base of the tower.

Note: Many different configurations exist. Care should be taken when searching for the ground conductor. Figure 11.35 shows a single leg mounted on a concrete pad with an external ground conductor. The point at which you clamp the ground tester should be above all splices and connections which allow for multiple rods, butt wraps, or butt plates.

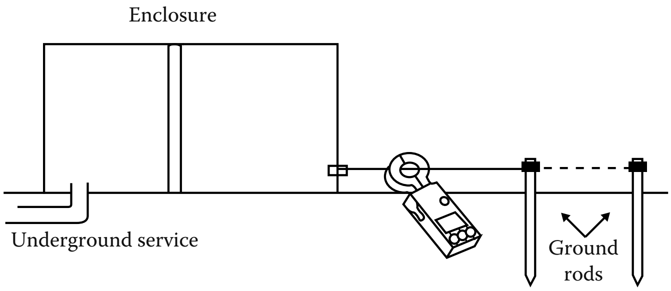


FIGURE 11.34
Ground resistance measurement of pad-mounted transformer with ground rods outside the enclosure.

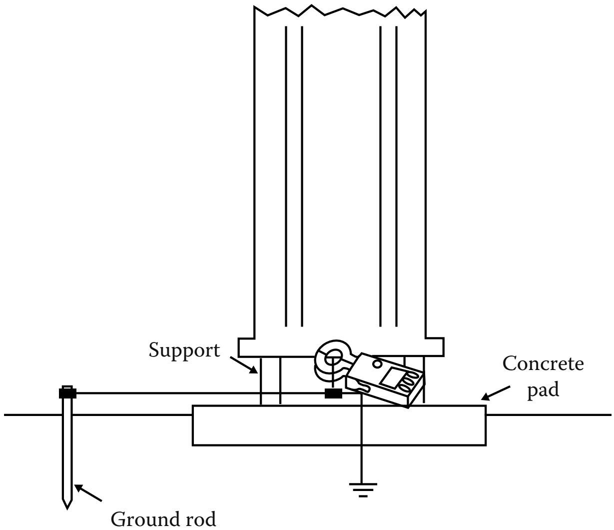


FIGURE 11.35
Ground resistance measurement of transmission tower with a single leg mounted on a concrete pad with an external ground conductor.

11.6.7.4 Central Office Locations

The main ground conductor from ground window or ground plane is often too large to clamp around. Due to the wiring practices within the central office, there are many locations at which you can look at the water pipe or counterpoise from within the building. An effective location is usually at the ground buss in the power room, or near the backup generator.

By measuring at several points and comparing the readings, you will be able to identify neutral loops, utility grounds, and central office grounds. The test is effective and accurate because the ground window is connected to the utility ground at only one point, according to standard practices.

11.7 Ground Grid Integrity Measurements

Neither the ground resistance measurements or the touch potential measurements provide information on the ability of grounding conductors and connections to carry ground fault currents safely to earth. Experience has shown that the ground fault current can cause a lot of damage to equipment and pose safety hazard to personnel when it does not find a low-impedance path to the ground grid and thus to mother earth. Therefore, it makes sense to periodically check and verify the integrity of the ground grid connections.

The objective of this measurement is to determine whether the equipment, frame, structures, or enclosure grounds are connected to the grounding electrode or ground grid with low resistance. The resistance value of such connections is expected to be very low (100 μΩ or less). The best way for making tests for integrity of ground grid connections is to use a large but practical current and some means of detecting the voltage drop caused by this current. A test set is available to conduct this measurement using AC current. This test method is known as the high-current test method. This method consists of passing 300 A through the ground grid between a reference ground (usually a transformer neutral) and the ground (conductor and connections) to be tested. The voltage drop and the current magnitude and direction are monitored to verify the inte-grity of the ground connections. The GTS-300* test set is shown in Figure 11.36. The test connections for conducting this test are shown in Figure 11.37.

The below listed guidelines are offered when using the high-current method of testing the continuity of ground grids and grounds. However, it should be kept in mind that these are only guidelines since each ground has to be considered on its own merits relative to other grounds in the immediate vicinity.

FIGURE 11.36
Ground grid integrity test set, GTS-300. (From Onnie Clem, Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA, Used in company catalog, datasheet, and brochure, 2008. With permission.)

* A registered trade name of Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

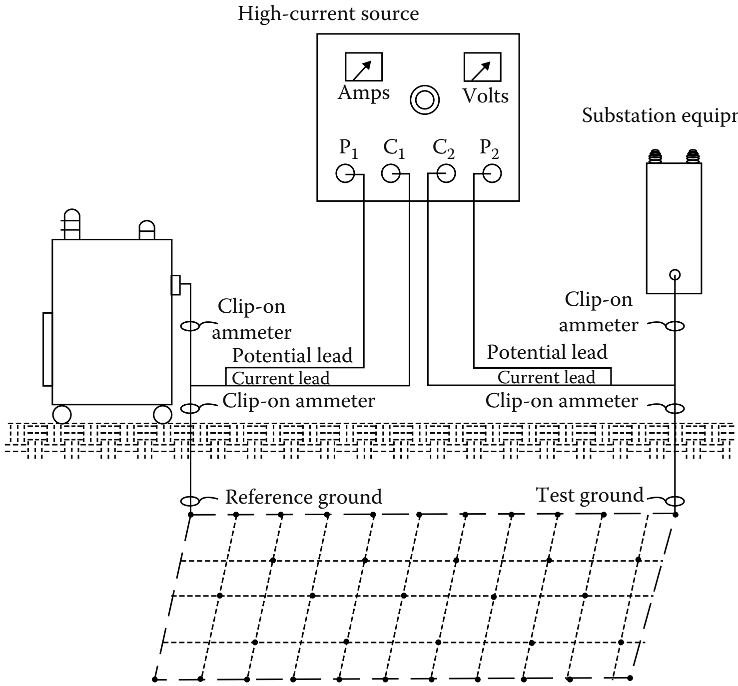


FIGURE 11.37
High-current method of testing ground grid integrity.

1. The voltage drop of the ground grid rises approximately 1 V for each 50 ft of straight distance from the reference point.
2. On equipment with single ground the ground can be considered satisfactory if the voltage drop is in line with item 1 above and at least 200 A flow to the ground conductor under test into the grid. On most equipment of this type, 300 A will flow to the grid; however, in some cases current will also flow through foundation bolts and or conduits.
3. On equipment with multigrounds, a ground can be considered satisfactory if the voltage drop is in line with item 1 above and at least 150 A flow to the ground conductor under test into the grid. If the current to the grid is less than 150 A, the ground should be disconnected from the equipment and 300 A again should be passed through the ground. If the ground passes the 300 A and the voltage drop does not increase more than 0.5 V over the previous level, the ground can be considered satisfactory.

   "Caution: Before any ground is removed from an equipment be sure to parallel it with a 2/0 CU temporary ground, such as a truck ground or other grounds before it is disconnected."

4. To test transformer neutral or reference point pass 300 A through the transformer neutral at a point above grade but below any bonding connections or clamps on the tank. If at least 150 A flow to the ground grid, the reference point can be considered satisfactory.
5. Establish a reference ground, preferably a transformer neutral. From a high-current AC source (GTS-300) connect one test lead to ground being tested as shown in Figure 11.37. Connect the test lead at a point above grade but below the bonding connections or clamps. Pass 300 A through the ground grid and record the voltage drop across the grid. Using a clip-on ammeter, measure the amount of test current flowing above (to the equipment) and below (to the grid) the test lead on the ground being tested. The voltage drop should be in accordance with item 1 above. The test amperes should be in accordance with items 2 and 3 in this list.

12

Power Quality, Harmonics, and Predictive Maintenance

12.1 Background

Power quality (PQ) problems can be defined as any power problem manifested by voltage, current, and frequency deviations that result in failure or misoperation of load or equipment. PQ problems may be classified into two categories: (1) conducted low-frequency phenomena and (2) radiated frequency phenomena. The conducted low-frequency phenomenon is characterized by the following types of PQ problems.

- Overvoltage, undervoltage, transients including sags and swells
- Voltage fluctuations (flicker)
- Voltage dips and interruptions
- Voltage imbalance or unbalance
- Power frequency variations
- Induced low-frequency voltages
- Harmonics, interharmonics, and harmonic resonance

The radiated frequency phenomenon known as noise is characterized by the following types of PQ problems.

- Magnetic and electric fields (electromagnetic interference, EMI)
- Radio frequency interference (RFI)

Further, the addition of nonlinear (digital and electronic) loads in industrial and commercial power systems have lead to problems in the quality of power that is being delivered to a site. A nonlinear load is defined as that which draws a nonsinusoidal current wave when supplied by a sinusoidal voltage source. PQ problems can produce results that range from erratic equipment behavior to complete shut down of a facility. In some cases, the shut down may be accompanied by a catastrophic failure costing millions of dollars in some cases. Thus, it is important to understand and solve PQ problems. But, catastrophic failure is just one possible outcome. PQ problems can creep along—silently consuming maintenance resources for trouble shooting PQ anomalies and at the same time increasing the cost of electrical energy (utility bills) because of inefficient use. Things may appear to be normal, but that is only because of a lack of understanding of PQ problems and power anomalies. Like the old saying, what you do not know cannot hurt you. PQ covers a wide range of issues, from voltage disturbances like sags, swells, outages and transients, to voltage and current harmonics, to performance of wiring and grounding. The concept of load and source compatibility is not new. The need to provide power with steady voltage and frequency was recognized since the early days of the electrical power. Some of the early concerns were flicker of light bulbs due to voltage fluctuations and overheating of motors due to voltage waveform distortion (harmonics). More recently, transient voltage disturbances associated with lightning and power system switching have emerged as a major concern to manufacturers and users of electronic equipment. The issue of grounding, and how to deal simultaneously with surges, lightning protection (i.e., known as RFI, EMI or noise), and safety is a complicated task because of conflicting philosophies advocated by different professionals. Today's PQ problems are far more complex. They cannot be handled so easily because of a multitude of different causes and a variety of specific sensitivities in the end user equipment that is most affected. Because both the causes and consequences of PQ problems are so diverse, they are not amenable to a single solution. The symptoms of poor PQ include intermittent lockups and resets, corrupted data, premature equipment failure, overheating of components for no apparent cause, nuisance tripping of relays and protective devices, etc. The ultimate cost is in downtime, decreased productivity and frustrated personnel.

In this chapter we attempt to provide an understanding of the fundamentals of PQ, harmonics, and their effects on electrical equipment. More importantly, we are going to approach PQ issues from the prospective of predictive maintenance so that maintenance personnel can be vigilant and alert in identifying and resolving actual and potential PQ problems before they become a major source of trouble.

12.2 PQ Concept and Fundamentals

The industry standards such as IEEE, ANSI, and NEMA specify steady state voltage tolerances for the electric utility at the point of service to be within ±5% for nonlighting loads. These standards also specify the steady state voltage tolerances at the point of use. Equipment utilizing electricity must be designed to give satisfactory performance throughout the range of +4% to −10%, and acceptable performance in the broader range of +6% to −13%. However, this specification of steady state voltage limits is insufficient for today's microelectronic technology. What constitutes acceptable performance and acceptable PQ for computers is more difficult to define. A comprehensive definition of PQ is needed. It should be based on consideration of the following:

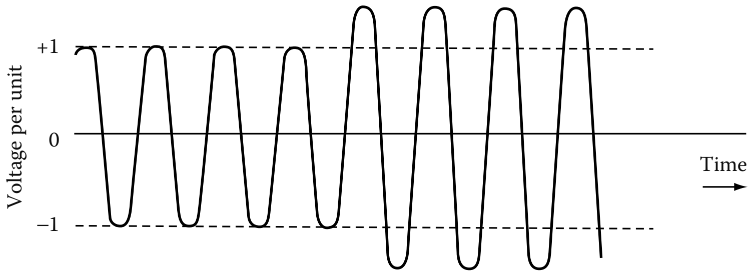


FIGURE 12.1
An overvoltage condition in power distribution system.

- All types of power disturbances that occur
- Quality of power necessary for successful operation of diverse electrical and electronic equipment
- Practical limits to the capability of delivering power of high quality to diverse customers
- Economics of the electric power distribution from both the utility and customer perspective

One definition proposed by the IEEE-1100 describes PQ as a concept of powering and grounding sensitive electronic equipment in a manner that is suitable to the operation of that equipment.

12.2.1 Types and Consequences of Electrical Disturbances

Several different types of electrical disturbances can occur in a power distribution system as described briefly below.

Voltage disturbances: The interaction between sensitive electronic equipment, their power sources, and their electrical environment can result in distortions to the alternating current (AC) line voltage. Several common load derived sources of voltage waveform disturbances and their relative characteristics are presented below.

Overvoltage: An overvoltage is any change above the prescribed input voltage range for a given piece of equipment (Figure 12.1). Overvoltages can be caused by many factors in the utility and customer's supply voltage system, such as incorrect transformer tap settings, improper application of power factor (PF) correction capacitors, and the like. They can cause overheating and reduced life of electrical equipment.

Undervoltage: An undervoltage is any change below the prescribed input voltage range for a given piece of equipment (Figure 12.2). Undervoltages can be caused by many factors in the power supply and/or in the site distribution power system. Undervoltage can occur due to overloaded distribution systems or customer wiring, incorrect transformer tap setting, faulty connections or wiring, loose or corroded connections, or unbalanced phase

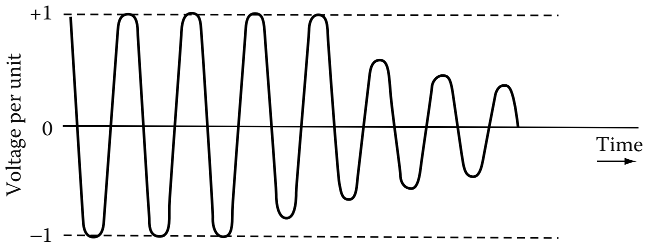


FIGURE 12.2
An undervoltage condition in power distribution system.

loading conditions. They cause a range of problems from errors in sensitive equipment to hardware damage, low efficiency, and reduced life of electrical equipment (e.g., some motors and heaters).

Voltage dip (sag): A momentary voltage dip is referred to as sag. Sag is a voltage dip of momentary (0.5–180 cycles) reduction in voltage (0.1–0.9 PU) at the power frequency beyond a particular piece of equipment's utilization voltage tolerance a shown in Figure 12.3. Voltage dip can be caused by faults on the power system (remote or in adjacent feeders), indirect lightning effects, overloaded or undersized wiring and incorrect fuse rating, utility switching/equipment failure, and start-up of large loads (motors, air conditioners, electric furnaces, etc.). They cause power-related computer systems failures, motor stalling, and overheating of motors and electrically driven equipment. (Voltage dip and sag terms are used interchangeably in this chapter to define the same occurrence.)

Transients: A transient voltage surge (TVS) can occur on power lines and conductors, including telecommunications and data line links. It is a significant deviation from normal AC voltage sine wave, typically lasting from a fraction of 1 μs up to 5 ms. A TVS can be categorized as a deviation generated from a natural occurrence (lightning) or through the switching of power equipment, either on-site or elsewhere. Irrespective of the cause of the TVS, the electric charge enters the power lines and conductors at some point and the influx of charge causes voltage there to rise in a manner determined by the system capacitance. The electric charge then spreads through the system in the form of traveling waves which redistribute its energy. Various forms of TVS are discussed below.

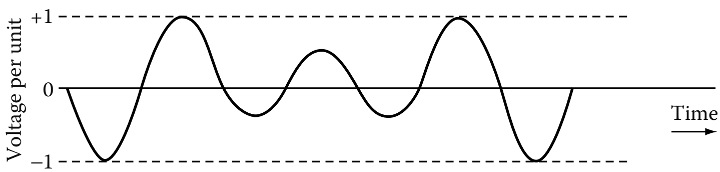


FIGURE 12.3
Voltage dip (sag) condition in power distribution system.

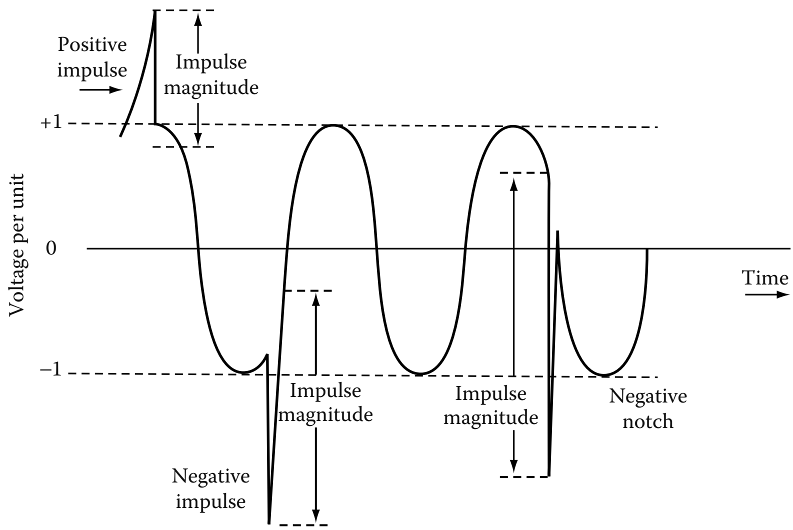


FIGURE 12.4
Impulse transient wave.

Impulse transient: An impulse transient has a fast rise time, fairly rapid decay, and high energy content. Duration can be from a few microseconds up to several hundred microseconds. A typical impulse transient is shown in Figure 12.4. Its impulse magnitude is measured from the point it occurs on the sine wave and not from zero voltage. It is called a spike, if it adds to the sine wave, or a notch, if it subtracts from the sine wave.

The voltage impulse is a high-frequency voltage phenomenon of positive (spike) or negative amplitude (notch). An impulse occurring between current-carrying conductors is known as normal mode event and an impulse common to all current-carrying conductors and involving the ground conductor is referred to as common mode (CM) event. Many impulses have components of both types. Another type of repetitive voltage disturbance is a series of events with discrete components which occur repetitively throughout a single cycle or regularly multiple cycles. These repetitive voltage disturbances are usually caused by phase-angle-controlled loads, such as silicon-controlled rectifiers (SCRs). The impulse factors which affect the loads are impulse amplitude, duration, frequency, grounding, etc. Over time the cumulative effect of repetitive voltage disturbances can exceed the energy handling capability of the loads, thus resulting in a catastrophic failure. The symptoms of this type of disturbance are indicated by equipment component failures, hard disk crashes, parity errors, power supply failures, lockup, circuit board failures, surge suppressor failures, etc.

Oscillatory transient: An oscillatory transient has a fast rise time, oscillations that decay exponentially, and a lower energy content than an impulse transient. A typical oscillatory transient can last up to one cycle (16.7 ms) or even longer and can have frequencies from a few hundred hertz to many megahertz. A typical oscillatory transient is shown in Figure 12.5.

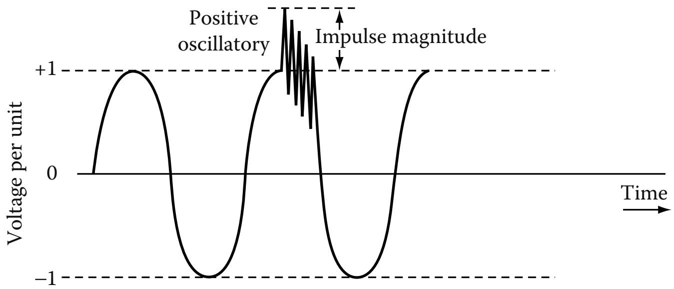


FIGURE 12.5
Oscillatory transient.

Switching transient: Switching of power equipment can cause a transient voltage to be generated due to the stored energy contained in the circuit inductances (L) and capacitances (C). The size and duration of the transient depends on the value of inductance and capacitance and the waveform applied. Examples of switching surges are fault clearing, capacitor switching, and switching of inductive loads on and off. Damage from transient overvoltages can be immediate or latent. The latent damage occurs when equipment or components are severely stressed by repeated transient overvoltages or by a single transient overvoltage condition, but not to the point of immediate failure. Each exposure reduces the ability of the equipment or component's ability to withstand additional stress. At some later time, the equipment or component fails unexpectedly without apparent cause due to its weakened nature from previous transients. This latent effect may not become apparent for some time.

Interruptions: Power interruptions are a complete loss of power lasting for cycles, seconds, minutes, hours, or days (Figure 12.6). A variety of factors can cause power interruptions, such as tripping of the main circuit breaker due to a fault, malfunction or failure of equipment, or operation of protective devices in response to faults that occur due to acts of nature or accidents, or other anomalies in the power supply. These interruptions may cause loss of computer memory, equipment shutdown/failure, hardware damage, and productivity loss.

Frequency variations: A frequency variation is a deviation from a prescribed input frequency range such as 60 Hz (Figure 12.7). This deviation can be either higher or lower than normal. Sudden changes in load, switching of power

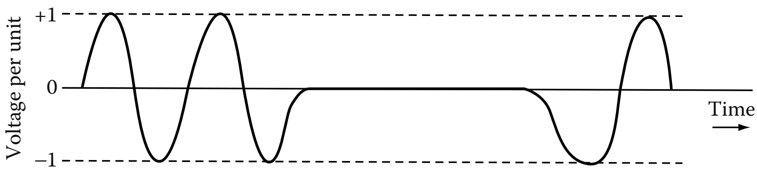


FIGURE 12.6
Power interruption.

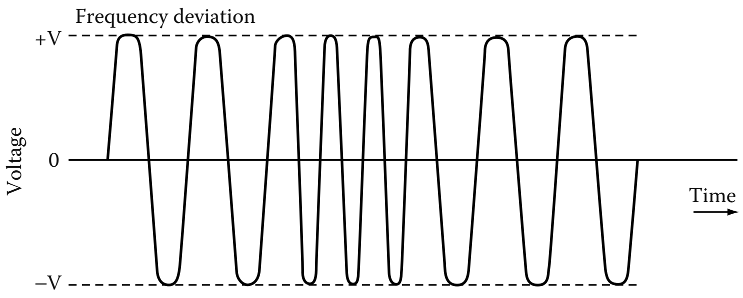


FIGURE 12.7
Frequency variations.

between utility and on-site generator, utility generator malfunctions, or mismatch between generation and load can cause such variations.

Harmonics: Harmonics are voltages or currents at frequencies that are integer multiples of 60 Hz frequency (120, 180, 240, 300 Hz, etc.). They are designated by their harmonic number or multiple of the fundamental frequency. For example, a harmonic with a frequency of 180 Hz—(three times the 60 Hz fundamental frequency) is called the third harmonic. As shown in Figure 12.8, harmonics superimpose themselves on the fundamental waveform, distort it, and change its waveform. In industrial power systems, for example, 15%, 20%, or 25% total harmonic current distortion (THD) may be experienced. THD can be determined by calculating the square root of the sum of the squares of all harmonics, divided by the nominal 60 Hz value. This yields

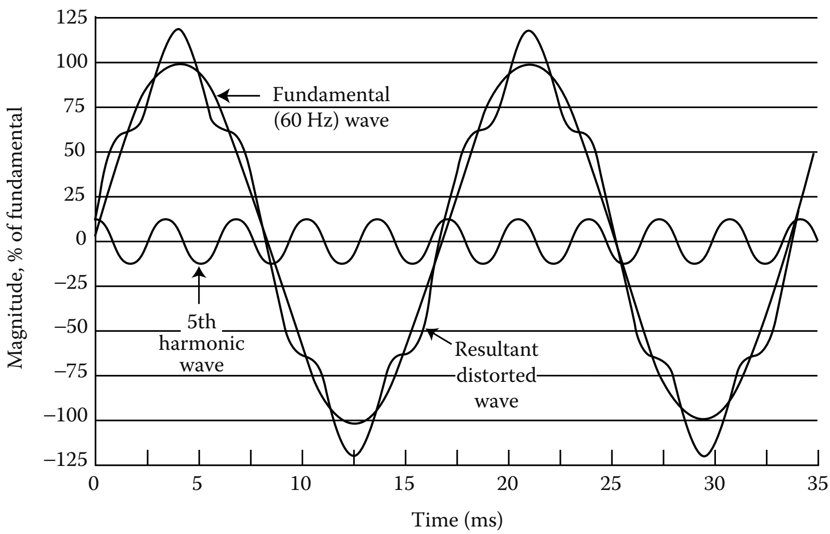


FIGURE 12.8
HD caused by fifth harmonic current superimposed on 60 Hz waveform. (Courtesy of Plant Engineering Magazine, 2000 Clearwater Dr., Oak Brook, IL.)

a root-mean-square (rms) value of distortion as a percentage of the 60 Hz waveform. Note, odd-order harmonic currents are additive in the common neutral of a three-phase system, whereas the even-order harmonics cancel out to zero. The odd-order harmonic currents such as the third and all odd multiples of the third harmonic (9th, 15th, etc.) are equal and in phase for a three-phase, four-wire system. Therefore, they add in the neutral. Other odd harmonics (5th, 7th, 11th, etc.) are also additive, although not fully since they are equal but not exactly in phase. Mathematically, the total is a vector sum of the three-phase harmonic currents. The phase angles between the three-phase harmonic currents results in partial addition and partial cancellation. Therefore, the total neutral current for these harmonics is more than any one harmonic phase current, but less than three times any harmonic phase current. Whereas for the second harmonic and all even harmonics (fourth, sixth, eighth, etc.), currents are not in phase and the sum of the positive and negative neutral currents equals to zero for a three-phase, four-wire system. Harmonics are caused by nonlinear loads, that is loads in which the current waveform does not conform to the waveform of applied voltage. All equipment operating on the principle of ferromagnetic induction (lighting ballasts, lifting magnets, solenoids, motors, etc.) produces some degree of harmonics. A prime example of a device that produces harmonics is a power converter such as a rectifier that draws current in only a portion of each cycle. Other devices, such as those which change impedance with applied voltage, also produce harmonics. These include saturated transformers and gaseous discharge lighting, such as fluorescent, mercury arc, and high pressure sodium lights.

Harmonics can cause overloading of conductors and transformers and overheating of utilization equipment, such as motors. Odd-numbered triplen harmonics (3rd, 9th, 15th, etc.) can especially cause overheating of neutral conductors on three-phase, four-wire systems. While the fundamental frequency line currents and other even harmonic currents cancel each other in the neutral, the triplen harmonic and other odd harmonic currents are additive in the neutral. Harmonics also can cause nuisance tripping of molded-case circuit breakers and power switchgear equipped with solid-state trip-sensing units designed to sense peak (as opposed to rms) current. As increased amounts of sensitive electronic equipment are being added to today's workplaces, concern for harmonics has escalated as well. Electronic equipment miss operation can result from harmonics because much of electronic circuitry—notably that in which action is instigated by an electronic pulsing clock—is triggered by zero crossing on the waveform.

Harmonic currents may contribute to capacitor failure and blown fuses on PF improvement capacitors under resonance conditions on the power system. Resonance occurs when the power system inductance and capacitance come in tune (i.e., equal) with each other at a particular frequency; capacitive and inductive reactance are both functions of frequency. Every circuit containing inductive and capacitive devices has one or more resonant frequencies. Resonance can cause very high voltages to appear across elements of the power system. At series resonance, minimum circuit impedance occurs at the resonant frequency and is equal to the resistance of the circuit since the

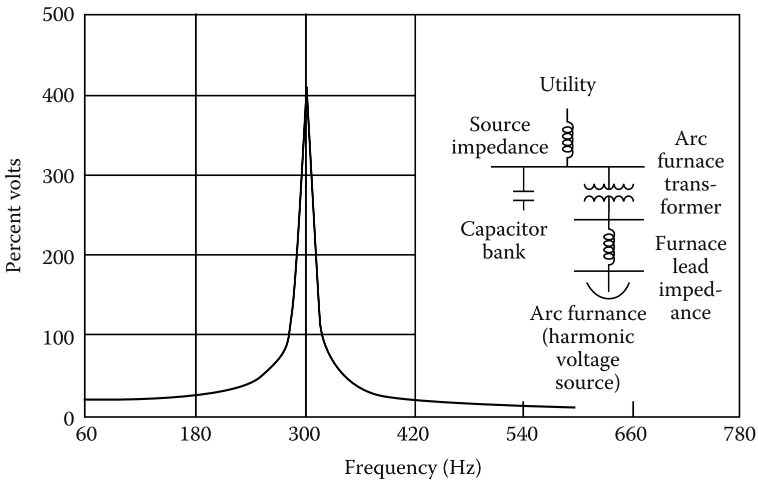


FIGURE 12.9
Parallel resonance condition indicating very high peak voltages at about 300 Hz.

inductive and capacitive impedances are equal. Series resonance provides a low impedance path for the harmonic currents present in the system.

Figure 12.9 illustrates a typical resonant condition on an arc furnace circuit containing PF improvement capacitors. The plot of voltage response versus frequency models the arc furnace as a harmonic current source of varying frequency. A resonance peak occurs at very close to 300 Hz, or the fifth harmonic. This harmonic source develops excessive voltage at the capacitor terminals, resulting in extremely high current flow through the capacitor.

Voltage imbalance: A voltage imbalance is a long term, steady state problem. It is expressed as a percent, i.e., the maximum deviation of voltage from the average of three-phase voltages, multiplied by 100, divided by the average of the voltages. Voltage imbalances are caused by unbalanced phase loading conditions, defective transformers, and ground faults in ungrounded or resistive grounded systems. These imbalances usually are caused by large single-phase loads. They cause premature failures of motors and transformers due to overheating. Voltage imbalances only affect three-phase applications.

Electrical noise: Electrical noise is a low-voltage, low-current, high-frequency signal that rides a 60 Hz sine wave, distorting it. Noise may be caused by any of the following: RFI, EMI, harmonics from nonlinear loads, and the like. Even though microprocessor-based equipment is grounded in accordance with National Electric Code (NEC) requirements, some continue to have failures, execution and reading errors, and unpredictable and intermittent operations because of electrical noise. Some manufacturers of microprocessor-based equipment recommend electrical separation to minimize the effects of electrical noise, i.e., to locate the microprocessor-based equipment and/or data lines not too close to large power apparatus such as transformers, motors, etc.

Two types of electrical noise can occur in a power distribution system. They are normal mode (line-to-neutral, L–N or line-to-line) noise and CM (neutral-to-ground, N–G) noise.

Normal mode noise is measured between the phase (hot) and neutral lines or phase-to-phase. CM noise is a potential difference that occurs between any or all current-carrying conductors and the grounding conductor or earth. In the three-phase, grounded-wye power supplies typical of large computer systems, these disturbances also can be potential differences between neutral and ground. Some computer-based loads are sensitive to excessive levels of voltage potential between the neutral and grounding conductors. A ground is used to reference the electronic logic in equipment and should be stable. Equipment manufacturers sometimes specify acceptable limits for neutral to ground voltage, for example, one volt peak to peak. CM disturbances can be generated by a ground potential difference between elements of the computer or remote peripherals connected to the computer. This type of disturbance is influenced by several factors, including the system configuration and the impedance of the grounding system. Both of these factors generally are beyond the direct control of the user, except in the construction of a new facility. However, CM noise can be suppressed by the use of an isolation transformer. Equalizing ground potentials is often difficult due to the broad frequency band involved in wiring resonances. However, proper computer system grounding, including a signal reference grid (SRG), has been found to be effective against most CM disturbances. CM noise on the primary of the transformer that appears as normal mode noise on the secondary is commonly referred to as transverse mode or sometimes as intercoupling or differential mode (DM) noise. CM transient voltages that appear on the transformer primary winding will be coupled through the transformer interwinding capacitance, appearing across the secondary winding as normal mode voltages. Electrical noise typically occurs in the RF MHz range. It also may occur at frequencies below MHz range. The 60 Hz (power) grounding system often is not effective for conducting RF signals to the common reference point grounding electrode. In some cases, computers and peripherals are themselves responsible for generating noise disturbances. A properly designed power grounding system has sufficiently low impedance at 60 Hz to maintain enclosures, raceways, and all grounded metals at the same voltage potential (ground reference). But the 60 Hz ground system is unable to provide this equalization at higher frequencies because of the increased impedance caused by inductive reactance and the skin effect. (Skin effect is known as the tendency of current to flow more at the surface of the conductor than its center, thereby increasing the AC resistance of the conductor). The inductive reactance at a frequency of 30 MHz is 500,000 times as great as that of the same conductor when the applied voltage is at 60 Hz. At microprocessor switching speeds (over 1 to 30 MHz), current penetration in the copper conductor is less than at 60 Hz, with the result that the effective impedance between one point and another is pronounced. Also, as frequency rises, the wavelength proportionally decreases. Circulating (noise) currents see an apparent open circuit at intervals of one-quarter wavelength, so that the current path is interrupted or becomes unreliable. Some frequencies pass and some do not, causing distortion. Consequently, the long grounding conductors used in the grounding systems designed to meet NEC requirements become ineffective for grounding of high-frequency systems. Short returns are always recommended for fast-rise circuits to provide effective signal returns at system signal frequencies.

Table 12.1 is a summary of the electromagnetic phenomena categories and their characteristics of the power system.

TABLE 12.1

Electromagnetic Phenomena and Characteristics

Categories	Typical Characteristics
Overvoltage	
Impulse	Nanosecond: 5 ns rise time for <50 ns impulse
	Microsecond: 1 µs rise time for of 50 ns–1 ms impulse
	Millisecond: 0.1 ms rise time for >1 ms impulse
Oscillatory	Low frequency: <5 kHz for 0.3–50 ms at 0–4 PU
	Medium frequency: 5–500 kHz for 20 µs at 0–8 PU
	High frequency: 0.5–5 MHz for 5 µs at 0–4 PU
Short duration voltage variations	
Interruption	Momentary: <0.1 PU for 1/2 cycles—3 s
	Temporary: <0.1 PU for 3 s–1 min
Voltage dip (sag)	Instantaneous: 0.1–0.9 PU for 0.5–30 cycles
	Momentary: 0.1–0.9 PU for 30 cycles—3 s
Swell	Instantaneous: 1.1–1.8 PU for 0.5–30 cycles
	Momentary: 1.1–1.4 PU for 30 cycles—3 s
	Temporary: 1.1–1.2 PU for 3 s–1 min
Long duration voltage variations	
Interruption	Sustained: 0.0 PU for >1 min
Undervoltage	0.8–0.9 PU for >1 min
Overvoltage	−1.2 PU for >1 min
Voltage waveform distortions	
DC offset	0.0%–0.1%
Harmonics	0.0–100th harmonic order with 0%–20% magnitude
Interharmonics notchings	0.0–6 kHz with 0.0%–2% magnitude
Voltage fluctuations	
Intermittent	<25 Hz with 0.1%–7% magnitude

12.3 Origins of PQ Problems and Harmonics

Power disturbances can originate from many sources external and internal to a facility's electrical power distribution system. External sources are

- Power system faults
- Lightning
- Switching
- Surges
- Accidents involving electric power lines and feeders

Examples of internal sources are

- Line and capacitor switching
- Motor starting or switching of large inductive loads
- Harmonic producing loads (linear and nonlinear (solid-state and electronic) loads)

The mechanisms involved in generating electrical disturbances often determine whether occurrence of disturbances is random or repeatable, unpredictable, or easy to find. Untrained users often attribute power disturbances to the utility source. However, recent Electrical Power Research Institute (EPRI) studies indicated that most (up to 80%) electronic system malfunctions attributable to power disturbances are the result of electrical wiring and grounding errors, or interactions of loads within the facility's distribution system.

A brief description of some of the major sources of power disturbances follows:

Power system faults: Power system faults can cause a momentary voltage reduction to a complete loss of power lasting for a few cycles, seconds, minutes, hours, or days. Power system faults may be classified as temporary or permanent. Usually the temporary faults are confined to overhead distribution lines where a line may suffer a momentary fault which will open the circuit breaker. However, the circuit breaker will reclose immediately to restore the circuit. Permanent faults are confined usually to underground feeders. Due to their location, the detection and repair of these types of faults require a considerable amount of time. Also, the power system faults may result from power apparatus failure such as transformers, circuit breakers, etc. which require a longer time to repair or replace.

Lightning surges: Direct lightning strikes to the power system conductors cause overvoltages near their points of impact. Direct hits inject the total lightning surge into the system. As a result, current amplitudes can range from a few thousand amperes to a few hundred thousand amperes. The rapid change of current through the impedance of the conductors produces a high voltage drop, which causes secondary flashover to ground. This diverts current even in the absence of an intentional diverter. Lightning strikes also can activate lightning arrestors and/or surge arrestors. A flashover of line insulators can trip a breaker, with reclosing delayed by several cycles, causing a power interruption. The power system also can be affected indirectly by lightning. These effects include overvoltages in conductors and ground potential rises in grounding grids or the earth.

Load switching and surges: Load switching forms a transient disturbance whenever a circuit containing capacitance and inductance, such as capacitors, starting motors, or switching feeders, is switched on or off. In these circuits, the currents and voltages do not reach their final value instantaneously. The severity of such disturbances depends on the power level of the load being switched and on the available short-circuit current of the power system. Switching large loads on or off can produce long-duration voltage changes beyond the immediate transient response of the circuit. More complex switching can produce surge voltages reaching 10 times the normal circuit voltages, involving energy levels determined by the power rating of the elements being switched. Also, energizing loads, such as large motors, may cause voltage dip that can affect operation of microprocessor-based equipment.

Linear and nonlinear loads: The power system harmonic problem is an old problem and, in many instances in the past, we have been able to go around it and reduce its effects. The harmonic producing linear loads are devices such as transformers, generators, motors, electromagnetic ballasts, and saturated magnetic devices that have been around a long time. These are discussed in more detail in Section 12.4. The nonlinear loads are generally classified as those devices that are electronic and solid-state devices used in power conversion and control. It is clear that nonlinear loads draw nonsinusoidal currents from the power system, even if the power system has a perfect sinusoidal waveshape. These currents produce nonsinusoidal voltage drops in the system's source impedance which distorts the sine wave produced by the power source. A typical nonlinear load is a direct current (DC) power supply with capacitor-input filter. They are used in most computers and draw current only at the peaks of the voltage sine wave. Nonlinear loads typically result in harmonic distortions (HDs) in the power system. These loads can be broadly classified into four categories as follows.

1. *Power electronic devices:* Power electronic devices are being employed in small appliances to huge converters on the transmission system. Typical applications of power electronics include switch-mode power supplies (SMPS), adjustable speed drives (ASDs), electronic ballasts, and the like.
2. *Saturatable devices:* Most saturatable devices are transformers which generate harmonics due to the nonlinearity of the transformer excitation. These harmonics are small unless the transformer is overexcited due to high voltage magnitudes.

3. *Arcing devices:* Arcing devices are used most commonly in fluorescent, high and low pressure sodium and mercury-vapor lamps. Other types of these devices include arc furnaces or arc welders.
4. *Electrostatic discharges (ESDs):* An ESD buildup results from a rubbing action between two materials (solid or liquid) of different surface energy characteristics. This is due to an absence of a conductive path between the two materials. The ESD is quickly released when a conductive path (discharge arc) is established. Such discharges can be harmful to semiconductor devices in sensitive electronic equipment. Discharge voltages often range from 5 to 40 kV.

Grounding design and installation: Improperly grounded systems which have multiple ground points are common causes of PQ disturbances. Grounding systems which do not have sufficiently low ground impedance do not allow the proper amount of current flow necessary for the operation of the circuit protection devices, thereby compromising the safety of personnel and equipment. Such systems also cause failures in electronic equipment due to leakage currents. Leakage currents created by power line noise, coupled with high-ground impedances, cause voltage to develop on the ground conductor that can trigger a failure in electronic equipment. A ground system with multiground points can create multiground loops and impose stray currents on the logic chips of microprocessors. Therefore, it is essential that the design and installation of earth grounds and equipment grounds should be done carefully. Since the ground system also serves as an equal potential reference between peripherals, an improperly designed ground can affect microprocessor logic and inject unwanted signals. The logic circuitry of a microprocessor uses the ground system as a zero conductor. See Section 12.7 for a more detailed discussion on grounding design and installation.

Wiring design and installation:
Wiring design and installation problems can be classified as follows:

1. Problems involving the hot, neutral, and ground wires
2. Missing connections, improper connections, loose connections, open grounds, N–G shorts, two hot wires in an outlet, reversed polarity
3. Lack of an isolated ground (IG) receptacle when called for

Because microprocessors use the ground wire as the zero-voltage reference, stray currents imposed upon it can change information and damage microprocessor components. Additional power distribution problems can occur because many pieces of equipment typically are connected together through the building's grounding system, including conduit or data cables. If the ground paths of individual pieces of equipment are not isolated from one another, currents carried on one can affect another's operation. When a piece of equipment is plugged into a standard wall receptacle without an IG designation, its ground wire is immediately connected to every other piece of equipment in the building by means of building conduit. This is similar to the manner in which a large radio antenna picks up radio signals it was never meant to receive. Data cables are extremely sensitive to such cross talk.

12.4 Characteristics of Typical Linear and Nonlinear Loads

The harmonic loads may be classified as linear and nonlinear loads. The linear loads that produce harmonics are iron core devices which operate in the nonlinear (saturated) region of the iron core. Also, depending on the winding pitch, motors and generators may produce harmonics. These sources (loads) have been around since the early days of power systems, but the harmonics produced by these devices have been manageable. The traditional (established) sources of harmonics include the following:

- Tooth ripple or ripples in the waveform arising from the rapid pulsations and oscillations of the field flux caused by movement of the poles in front of the projecting armature teeth cause harmonic output. This tooth ripple causes flux distortion in synchronous machines.
- Variations in air gap reluctance over the synchronous machine pole pitch set up a continuous variation in flux, which permeates to the waveshape, and leaves harmonics as a result.
- Flux distortion in the synchronous machine may be due to load effects. Sharp variations in the load result in sudden changes in machine speed without changes in flux, thus setting up a distorted waveshape.
- Generation of nonsinusoidal emf's are due to nonsinusoidal distribution of the flux in the air gap of synchronous machines.
- Limited transformer current harmonics, primarily third harmonic, occur at no load.
- Imposition of small and limited amount of nonsinusoidal currents, although input voltages are pure sine wave, occur in networks containing nonlinearity. Typical of these nonlinearities are welders, arc furnaces, voltage controllers, frequency converters, etc.

To a lesser extent, but of importance is the fact that a drastic change in the design philosophy of all power equipment and load equipment has taken place. In the past, manufacturers tended towards underrating or overdesigning most equipment. Now, in order to be competitive, power devices and equipment must be critically designed. In the case of iron core devices, this means that the operating points are more into the nonlinear characteristics, resulting in a sharp rise in harmonics from the established power equipment and load equipment.

Today, however the application of electronic equipment continues to change the electrical environment in the power distribution system of most commercial and industrial facility. In the past, the most common loads found in electrical distribution systems were linear loads such as motors, incandescent lighting, and electric heating. Although these loads still exist in modern facilities, other loads—primarily electronic—that have nonlinear load characteristics represent a large percentage of the total load. Because of the proliferation of nonlinear loads, harmonic currents have increased significantly in electrical distribution systems. Since the electrical distribution systems in most facilities were designed to match the characteristics of linear loads (i.e., nearly sinusoidal waveforms), the application of nonlinear loads have caused serious problems such as overheating of conductors, transformers, inadvertent circuit breaker tripping, capacitor failures, and malfunction of electronic equipment. The nonlinear loads consume substantial amounts of energy and thus have a greater impact compared to the linear loads on a facility's electric power distribution system. Linear loads have an impedance characteristic which is basically constant over time with applied voltage. If a sinusoidal voltage is applied to these loads, the current drawn also is sinusoidal.

In contrast, nonlinear electronic loads do not draw sinusoidal current. The applied power to these loads is either rectified by a diode bridge or the device is turned on and off with switching components such as SCRs, triacs, or transistors. Figure 12.10 shows the current waveforms of linear load (sinusoidal) and rectifier (SMPS) load. In Figure 12.10, the sine waveform is representative of heaters, incandescent and motor type loads, the pulse waveform is representative of electronic loads that draw current in pulses (i.e., nonsinusoidal waveform), or draw current for the portion of each cycle by turning on and off. The nonsinusoidal loads do not draw current for the entire cycle but rather draw current in

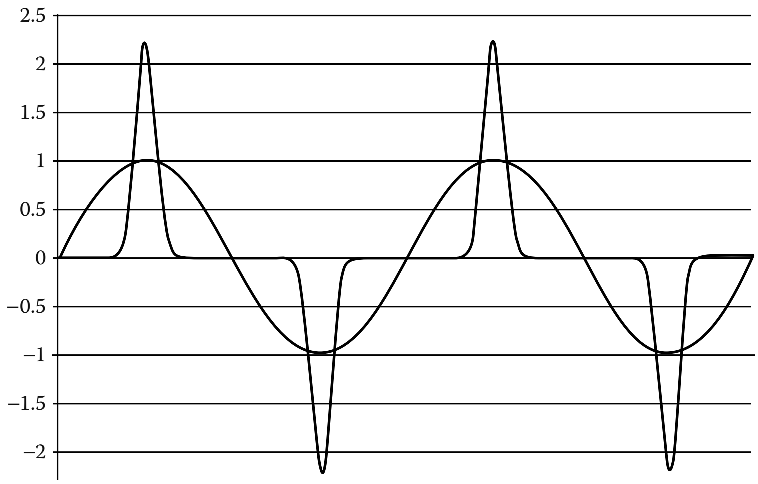


FIGURE 12.10
Load current waveforms: sinusoidal load and rectified (nonsinusoidal) load.

small period per cycle or turn on at a specific point in the cycle. The current drawn by the electronic loads is in abrupt transitions which interact with system impedance causing voltage loss and transients (impulses).

Some electronic loads are constant power loads, such as SMPS, and for these loads a decrease in voltage within the operating range will cause an increase in current to maintain constant power. Also, the harmonic currents of the load interact with the impedance of the distribution system thereby causing harmonic voltage drops. When the distribution system impedance is high, the harmonic voltage drops are high and the harmonic currents for the nonsinusoidal loads are lower. When the distribution system impedance is low, the harmonic voltage drops are low and harmonic current for the nonlinear loads are high. The nonlinear loads when combined with high current inrush and high distribution system impedance tend to cause severe voltage dips and voltage waveform distortion. Under these conditions, the constant power electronic loads attempt to compensate by increasing current draw. The increased current draw interacts with the impedance of the distribution system and adds to the voltage dip, and if the voltage dip is severe enough loads throughout the distribution system will crash. In addition to producing line voltage drops, the third harmonic currents (odd-order triplen harmonics) do not cancel out and flow in the neutral circuit of a three-phase, four-wire system. As a result, these currents return back to the power source over the neutral conductor. These currents can be higher than the phase currents and, therefore, create new concerns over the adequacy of the neutral of the three-phase power supply system.

To cope with harmonics problems caused by nonlinear loads, load characteristics of system harmonics must be studied and understood. The load characteristics can, for the most part, be determined from an examination of the load response to a distorted voltage waveform at load terminals.

12.4.1 Voltage and Current Characteristics of Nonlinear Loads

12.4.1.1 HD Terminology

The nonsinusoidal periodic waveform of nonlinear loads can be represented through Fourier analysis as the sum of a DC component and sine waves of various amplitudes and phase displacement from some relative angle. The sine waves all have frequencies which are multiple of the fundamental frequency of 60 Hz. The voltage and current waveforms can then be represented as the sum of a DC component and sine waves with a fundamental frequency ω_1 as follows:

$$V(t) = V_0 + \sum_{h-1}^{N} V_h \sin(h\omega_1 t + \delta_h)$$

and

$$I(t) = I_0 + \sum_{h-1}^{N} I_h \sin(h\omega_1 t + \theta_h)$$

The voltage and current equations represent sine waves that are multiples of a fundamental frequency, and are called harmonics. The effective value (rms) of current waveform where the amplitude of each harmonics is known can be obtained by the equation as follows:

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\sum_{h=1}^{\infty} (I_h)^2}$$

The nonlinearity (i.e., distortion) of the waveform can be determined in terms of THD, crest factor (CF), and form factor. The THD is defined as the ratio of the rms value of the total harmonic currents and the rms value of the fundamental current. The THD is expressed as a percentage of the fundamental current is given by the equation:

$$\text{THD} = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} (I_h)^2}}{I_1}$$

The CF is defined as the ratio of the peak of a waveform to its rms value and can be written as

$$\text{Crest factor} = \frac{I_{\text{peak}}}{I_{\text{rms}}}$$

In a purely (i.e., linear) sinusoidal waveform the CF is equal to square root of 2 (i.e., 1/(0.707)), or 1.414. The form factor is defined as the ratio of the rms value of a waveform to rms value of the waveform's fundamental, and can be written as

$$\text{Form factor} = \frac{I_{\text{rms}}}{I_1}$$

12.4.1.2 Types of Nonlinear Loads

Four types of nonlinear power electronic devices are increasingly being used in commercial facilities. These are fluorescent lighting, ASDs, SMPS, and uninterruptible power supplies (UPS). A brief description of voltage and current characteristics of each is detailed below.

Fluorescent lighting: Fluorescent lighting has overtaken incandescent lighting as the most popular and widely used lighting system. Light in fluorescent lamps is generated by gas discharge. The lamps require a ballast to provide proper starting and operating voltages and to limit current during lamp operation. Two types of ballasts are used with fluorescent lamps: magnetic core–coil and electronic. Both types generate harmonics. Magnetic ballasts generate third HD typically in the range of 13%–20%. In contrast, recent tests conducted by Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory show that HD generated by currently available electronic ballasts can vary from 5% to well over 33% of the fundamental current, depending on their design. In fact, some types of electronic ballasts generate less harmonic currents than magnetic ballasts. Most manufacturers are holding HD to levels well below those recommended by ANSI (THD less than 32%). In summary, the THD of electronic ballast is comparable to magnetic ballasts, electronic ballast have wide range of individual harmonic currents, and use much less power than magnetic ballasts.

Variable frequency drives (VFDs): Most VFDs contain a front-end rectifier, DC link, and an inverter, operating together with a control system. The rectifier converts the three-phase AC input to DC voltage. Depending on the type of system, a reactor, a capacitor, or a combination of these are used to smooth the DC signal. The inverter circuit uses the DC voltage to create a variable frequency AC voltage to control the speed of the AC motor. The VFDs are also referred to as ASDs or variable speed drives (VSDs). The characteristic harmonics for a VFD or ASD are based on the number of rectifiers (pulse number) in a circuit and can be determined by the following:

$$h = (n \times p) \pm 1$$

where

h is the harmonic order
n is an integer (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, …)
p is the number of pulses of rectifier

For example, using the above equation, the six-pulse rectifier shown in Figure 12.11a will create characteristic harmonics of 5th, 7th, 11th, 13th, 17th, 19th, and so on. The degree and magnitude of the harmonics is function of the drive design and the interrelationship of the nonlinear load with the connected distribution system impedance. The power source line impedance ahead of the controller will determine the magnitude and amplitude of harmonic currents and voltages reflected back into the distribution system as is shown in Figure 12.11b. The distorted current reflected through the distribution impedance causes a voltage drop or harmonic voltage distortion. This relationship is proportional to the distribution system available fault current and to the distribution system impedance.

The two most commonly used AC drives are: voltage source inverter (VSI) drives and current source inverter (CSI) drives. Each is briefly described below.

VSI drives: VSI drives employ a large capacitor in the DC link to provide a relatively constant voltage to the inverter. The inverter then breaks up this DC voltage to provide the variable frequency AC voltage for the motor. Most inverter drives use pulse width modulation (PWM) techniques to improve the quality of the output voltage waveform. Typical applications of these drives are motors up to 100 hp.

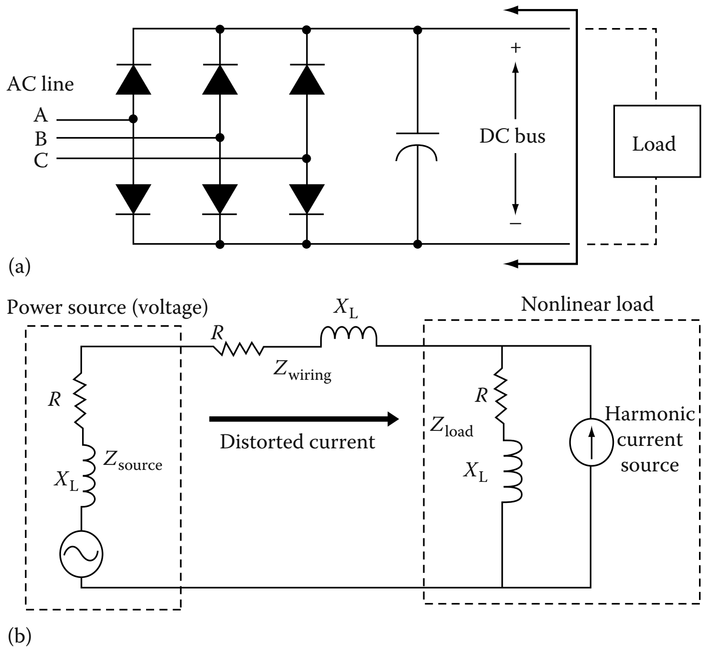


FIGURE 12.11
(a) Six-pulse front-end converter for AC drive, and (b) its equivalent circuit.

CSI drives: CSI drives are typically used for larger motor applications where custom design can be justified. The DC link consists of a large choke to keep the DC current relatively constant. The inverter then breaks up this current waveform to provide the variable frequency AC signal for the motor.

PF characteristics of VFDs also can be very important because the application of capacitors for PF correction can create special problems, including harmonic resonance and transient voltage magnification. The displacement component of the PF is associated with the angle between the voltage and the current. Without any distortion, the PF is equal to the displacement PF (DPF). Both drives have distorted current waveforms, that adds a distortion component to the PF (true PF is real power divided by total apparent power).

The distortion, and therefore the PF, can be considerably worse for VSI-type drives than for most CSI-type drives. Phase-controlled CSI drives have a very poor PF if operated with large rectifier firing delay angles. Transient voltage withstand capability is another important characteristic of VFDs. Power semiconductor switches that have a peak inverse voltage (PIV) rating of only 1200 V are used in many VFDs. On a 480 V distribution system, this PIV rating equates to 177% of normal system voltage. In most power semiconductor switch assemblies, onboard metal-oxide varistors (MOVs) are utilized for protection purposes. While the MOVs are effective for many low energy transients, they can be destroyed by magnified capacitor switching transients if not sized correctly. Drive topology and the control system characteristics also

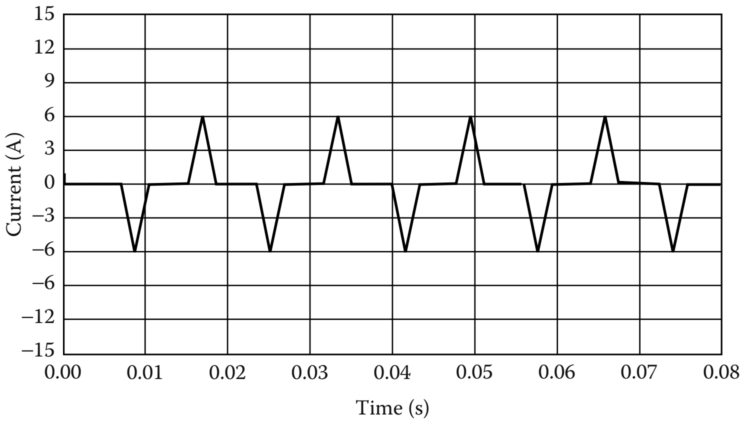


FIGURE 12.12
Current waveform of SMPS. (Courtesy of Electrotek Concepts, Inc., 9040 Excutive Park Dr., Knoxville, TN.)

affect the sensitivity of VFDs to transient disturbances. VSI-type drives require smoothing of the DC line voltage with a large capacitor for proper operation. For protection of inverter components, the DC bus voltage is monitored and the drive is tripped when it exceeds a preset level. Momentary interruptions or voltage dip on the input voltage can affect drive controls as well. This characteristic is very dependent on the specific controls involved, but it is not uncommon for voltage dips lasting only a few cycles to cause drives to trip.

SMPS: SMPS generate harmonics due to the switching action of the rectifier bridge which supplies the switching regulator. A DC capacitor provides an essentially constant DC voltage for the switching regulator. In order to maintain this DC voltage, the capacitor only needs to draw a pulse of current near the peak on each sine wave. The resulting current waveform is shown in Figure 12.12. The power relationship based on sinusoidal voltage and currents will not be valid with these waveforms. For one thing, the peak current is no longer 1.414 times the rms current. The CF (ratio of peak to rms) for this current is much higher and any meter, controls or relay which is sensitive to the peak current must take this into account. The current drawn by the SMPS contains significant harmonic components. Figure 12.13 shows that the highest harmonic component is the third.

Harmonic components in this current also have a dramatic effect on the PF of the load. Although the 60 Hz component of the current (fundamental) is in phase with the voltage (DPF close to unity), the harmonic components reduce the true PF and indirectly reduce the real power available.

12.4.1.3 PF Characteristics of Loads

PF is defined as the ratio of real power divided by the apparent (total) power, i.e., watts divided by volt-amps (VA). Resistive loads produce unity PF, however,

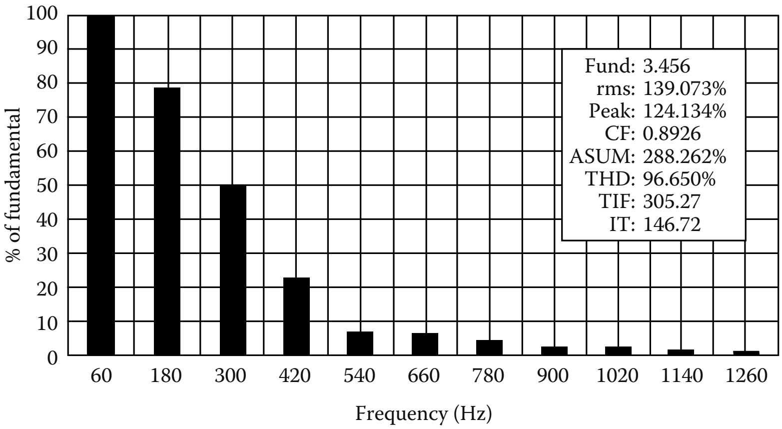


FIGURE 12.13
Harmonic current of SMPS. (Courtesy of Electrotek Concepts, Inc., 9040 Excutive Park Dr., Knoxville, TN.)

all reactive (inductive and capacitive) loads produce nonunity (i.e., less than 1.0) PF. The PF for the linear and nonlinear loads is given by the following expressions:

1. *Linear loads*

$$\mathrm{PF}_{\text{Displacement}} = \frac{\mathrm{kW}_{60\,\mathrm{Hz}}}{\mathrm{kVA}_{60\,\mathrm{Hz}}} = \cos\theta$$

where

$$\mathrm{kVA}_{60\,\mathrm{Hz}} = \left[\mathrm{kW}_{60}^2 + \mathrm{kVAR}_{60}^2\right]^{1/2}$$

2. *Nonlinear loads*

$$\mathrm{PF}_{\text{True}} = \frac{\mathrm{kW}_{60\,\mathrm{Hz}}}{\mathrm{kVA}_{\mathrm{rms}}} \neq \cos\theta \quad \text{(i.e., the true power factor is not equal to } \cos\theta\text{)}$$

where

$$\mathrm{kVA}_{\mathrm{rms}} = \left[\left(\mathrm{kW}_{60}^2 + \mathrm{kW}_{\mathrm{har}}^2\right) + \left(\mathrm{kVAR}_{60}^2 + \mathrm{kVAR}_{\mathrm{har}}^2\right)\right]^{1/2}$$

Uncorrected electronic power supplies exhibit very poor true PF and high harmonics which generate heat in the phase and neutral wires of the electrical power distribution system, especially where single-phase 120 V power is supplied from a 208/120 V three-phase wiring system. The PF defines how efficiently a load utilizes the current that it draws from an AC power system. The PF can also be expressed in terms distortion factor to give an assessment of the efficiency of the load utilization in the presence of harmonics. Therefore for a sinusoidal circuit (i.e., no harmonics), we can write voltage and current equations at the load as the following;

$$V(t) = V_1 \sin(\omega_1 t + \delta_1)$$

and

$$I(t) = I_1 \sin(\omega_1 t + \theta_1)$$

where
  V_1 and I_1 are peak values of the 60 Hz voltage and current
  δ_1 and θ_1 are the relative phase angles

The true PF at the load is defined as the ratio of the average power to apparent power, or

$$\mathrm{PF}_{\mathrm{True}} = \frac{P_{\mathrm{avg}}}{S} = \frac{P_{\mathrm{avg}}}{V_{\mathrm{rms}} I_{\mathrm{rms}}}$$

For a purely sinusoidal case, the above equation can be written as;

$$\mathrm{PF}_{\mathrm{True}} = \mathrm{P}^{\mathrm{F}}_{\mathrm{Disp}} = \frac{P_{\mathrm{avg}}}{\sqrt{P^2 + Q^2}} = \frac{\left(V_1/\sqrt{2}\right)\left(I_1/\sqrt{2}\right)}{\left(V_1/\sqrt{2}\right)\left(I_1/\sqrt{2}\right)} \cos(\delta_1 - \theta_1) = \cos(\delta_1 - \theta_1)$$

where $\mathrm{PF}_{\mathrm{Disp}}$ is commonly known as the DPF, and $(\delta_1 - \theta_1)$ is known as the PF angle. Therefore in a purely sinusoidal situation, there is only one PF because true PF and DPF are equal. However, this is not true in the case of nonsinusoidal situations because voltages and currents contain harmonics. The average power for a nonsinusoidal situation can be represented by including the significant harmonics such as the third, fifth, seventh, and so on. We can then write the equation as:

$$P_{\mathrm{avg}} \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} V_{\mathrm{hrms}} I_{\mathrm{hrms}} \cos(\delta_{\mathrm{h}} - \theta_{\mathrm{h}}) = P_{1\mathrm{avg}} + P_{2\mathrm{avg}} + P_{3\mathrm{avg}}$$

where, each harmonic makes a contribution to the average power. Also, the rms value of the voltage and current can be expressed as following:

$$V_{\mathrm{rms}} = \sqrt{\sum_{h=1}^{\infty} \frac{V_h^2}{2}} = \sqrt{\sum_{h=1}^{\infty} V_{h\mathrm{rms}}^2}$$

$$I_{\mathrm{rms}} = \sqrt{\sum_{h=1}^{\infty} \frac{I_h^2}{2}} = \sqrt{\sum_{h=1}^{\infty} I_{h\mathrm{rms}}^2}$$

The above equations can be written in terms of the distortion factor (i.e., THD) as

$$V_{\text{rms}} = V_{1\text{rms}}\sqrt{1+(THD_V/100)^2}$$
$$I_{\text{rms}} = I_{1\text{rms}}\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_I/100)^2}$$

We can now substitute the above equations in the original equation for true PF at the load.

$$\text{PF}_{\text{True}} = \frac{P_{\text{avg}}}{S} = \frac{P_{\text{avg}}}{V_{\text{rms}}I_{\text{rms}}}$$

$$\text{PF}_{\text{True}} = \frac{P_{\text{avg}}}{V_{1\text{rms}}I_{1\text{rms}}\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_V/100)^2}\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_I/100)^2}}$$

The above equation can be expressed as a product of two components as the following:

$$\text{PF}_{\text{True}} = \frac{P_{\text{avg}}}{V_{1\text{rms}}I_{1\text{rms}}} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_V/100)^2}\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_I/100)^2}}$$

Also, by assuming that P_{avg} is approximately equal to $P_{1\text{avg}}$ and since usually THD_V is less than 10%, $V_{\text{rms}} = V_{1\text{rms}}$. By incorporating these two assumptions in the above equation, it then can be written as

$$\text{PF}_{\text{True}} \approx \frac{P_{\text{avg}I}}{V_{1\text{rms}}I_{1\text{rms}}} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_I/100)^2}} = \text{PF}_{\text{Disp}} \cdot \text{PF}_{\text{Dist}}$$

where PF_{Dist} is the distortion PF.

Because DPF (PF_{Disp}) can never be greater than unity, the above equation shows that the true PF in a nonsinusoidal situations has the upper bound given by the following equation:

$$\text{PF}_{\text{True}} \le \text{PF}_{\text{Dist}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(\text{THD}_I/100)^2}}$$

The above equation provides insights into the nature of the true PF of electronic (nonlinear) loads, especially single-phase loads. It appears from the above equation that higher the HD, lower is the true PF even though the DPF can be very high. The displacement and true PF relationships are shown in Figure 12.14.

The true PF is calculated for a nonlinear load with distortion (THD_I %) as shown below:

THD_I (%)	Maximum True PF
10	0.99
15	0.989
20	0.98
30	0.96
50	0.89
70	0.82
100	0.71

The true PFs calculated above represent maximum true PFs for nonlinear loads. Actual true PF is the product of maximum true PF and DPF, and the product can be significantly lower than DPF. The PF comparison shown above gives an optimistic picture because harmonic currents actually cause more losses per ampere than do fundamental currents.

12.4.1.4 Phase Sequence of Harmonics

In a balanced three-phase power system, the voltages and currents in phases a–b–c are shifted in time by ±120° of fundamental. Taking a-phase as a reference, we can write an equation for a-phase current as

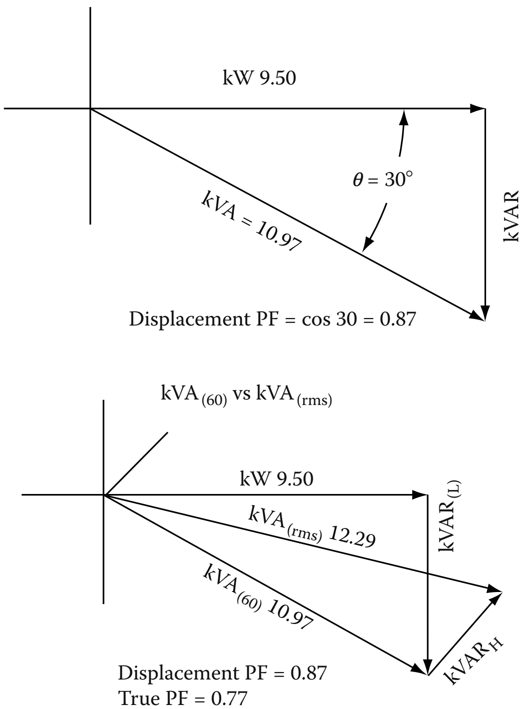


FIGURE 12.14
DPF versus true PF.

$$i_a(t) = \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} I_h \sin(h\omega_1 t + \theta_h)$$

then the currents in phases b and c lag and lead by $(2\pi/3)$ rad (120°), respectively. Thus the current in the b and c is as follows:

$$i_b(t) = \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} I_h \sin\left(h\omega_1 t + \theta_h - h\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$i_c(t) = \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} I_h \sin\left(h\omega_1 t + \theta_h + h\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

Also, similar equations can be written for phase voltages which are shown in Figure 12.15 with b-phase voltage lagging a-phase voltage by 120° and c-phase voltage leading a-phase voltage by 120° (or lagging by 240°).

When the above equations are expanded to include the first three harmonics, we see an important pattern. Thus the above equations for a–b–c phases are

$$i_a(t) = I_1 \sin(1\omega_1 t + \theta_1) + I_2 \sin(2\omega_1 t + \theta_2) + I_3 \sin(3\omega_1 t + \theta_3)$$

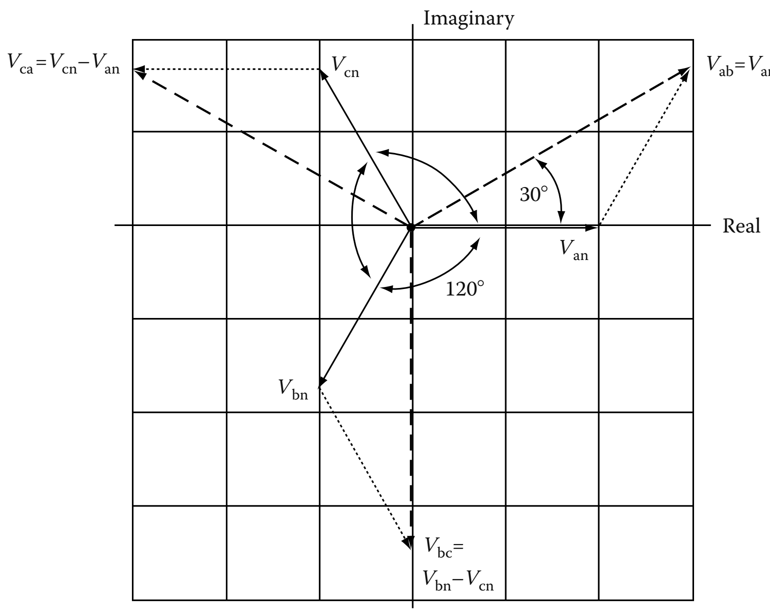


FIGURE 12.15
Voltage phasors in a balanced three-phase system (phase sequence abc).

$$i_b(t) = I_1 \sin\left(1\omega_1 t + \theta_1 - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + I_2 \sin\left(2\omega_1 t + \theta_2 - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$$
$$+ I_3 \sin\left(3\omega_1 t + \theta_3 - \frac{6\pi}{3}\right) \quad \text{or}$$
$$= I_1 \sin\left(1\omega_1 t + \theta_1 - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + I_2 \sin\left(2\omega_1 t + \theta_2 + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$
$$+ I_3 \sin(3\omega_1 t + \theta_3 + 0)$$

$$I_c(t) = I_1 \sin\left(1\omega_1 t + \theta_1 + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + I_2 \sin\left(2\omega_1 t + \theta_2 + \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$$
$$+ I_3 \sin\left(3\omega_1 t + \theta_3 + \frac{6\pi}{3}\right) \quad \text{or}$$
$$= I_1 \sin\left(1\omega_1 t + \theta_1 + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + I_2 \sin\left(2\omega_1 t + \theta_2 - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$
$$+ I_3 \sin(3\omega_1 t + \theta_3 - 0)$$

By examining the above current equations, we see that

- The first harmonic (i.e., the fundamental) is positive sequence (a–b–c) because phase b lags phase a by 120°, and phase c leads phase a by 120° (or lags phase a by 240°)
- The second harmonic is negative sequence (a–c–b) because phase b leads phase a by 120°, and phase c lags phase a by 120°
- The third harmonic is zero sequence because all three phases have the same phase angle

The pattern for a balanced system repeats and is shown below as "Phase sequence of harmonics in three-phase balanced system."

Harmonic	Phase sequence
1	+
2	–
3	0
4	+
5	–
6	0
...	...

If a system is not balanced, then each harmonic can have positive, negative, and zero sequence components. However, in most cases, the pattern shown above can be assumed to be valid.

Because of Kirchhoff's current law, zero sequence currents cannot flow into a three-wire connection such as a delta transformer winding or a delta-connected load. In most cases, systems are fairly well balanced, so that it is common to make the same assumption for third harmonics and other triplens. Thus, a delta-grounded wye transformer at the service point of an industrial facility usually blocks the flow of triplen harmonic load currents into the power system. Unfortunately, the transformer does nothing to block the flow of any other harmonics, such as fifth, seventh, and so on. Zero sequence currents flow through neutral or grounding paths. Positive and negative sequence currents sum to zero at neutral and grounding points. Another interesting observation can be made about zero sequence harmonics. Line-to-line voltages never have zero sequence components because, according to Kirchhoff's voltage law, they always sum to zero. For that reason, line-to-line voltages in commercial buildings are missing the third harmonic that dominates L–N voltage waveforms. Thus, the V THD of line-to-line voltages is often considerably less than for L–N voltages.

12.4.1.5 Harmonic Generating Characteristics

In the past, harmonic currents originated primarily from a few major sources, such as arc welders, fluorescent ballasts and lights, arc furnaces, etc. As explained previously, significant harmonics are being generated by today's load equipment such as switching power supplies, solid-state controls, and other sensitive electronic equipment. The harmonics in these nonlinear loads cause voltage distortion, poor PF, and stress on supply power system equipment. Harmonics from nonsinusoidal loads interact with electrical distribution system impedance, creating heat in electrical distribution equipment. Harmonic voltage distortion limits peak applied voltage and may increase susceptibility to momentary voltage dropouts.

12.4.1.6 Sensitivity to Harmonics

Most electronic equipment is affected by harmonics because high levels of harmonic currents cause problems in the power system that is not designed for nonlinear loads. The problems are:

- Overloading of the phase and neutral conductors of the power distribution system
- Overheating of the distribution transformers, where high-frequency currents can cause higher losses from eddy currents, magnetic hysteresis, and skin effect
- Overloading of power sources such as UPS systems and emergency generators including generator controls
- Poor utilization of available power from the branch circuits because of low PF

- Premature failure of PF correction capacitors because of overheating by harmonic currents
- Flat-topping of the voltage waveform caused by high-peak currents which reduce the ride-through capability of the electronic equipment

12.4.1.7 Sensitivity to Voltage Variation

All electronic equipment is generally sensitive to supply voltage variations. For example, computer systems can experience performance problems if the following voltage thresholds are exceeded: sags greater than −20% rms, spikes greater than 100% peak, and swells greater than +10% rms. When assessing the impact of voltage variation on electronic equipment, it is helpful to know the related voltage waveforms, that is whether they are swell, sag, impulse, or electrical noise. The effects of power line voltage variation, resulting from a utility's power system disturbances or interaction of the load and its power source, may appear in many forms. Sensitive electronic equipment may cease to operate, errors may occur in processing and data transfer, or hardware damage may occur.

12.4.1.8 Sensitivity to Voltage Flicker

Voltage changes which are cyclical in nature (occur in the range of 0.5–30 Hz) are commonly referred to as voltage flicker. Voltage flicker can be caused by: repetitive motor starting, punch presses, large reciprocating compressors, resistance welders, and arc furnaces. Voltage flicker can affect the sensitive electronic load equipment, especially if it happens near peak voltage when the DC power supply usually draws AC line current.

12.4.1.9 Sensitivity to Noise

All power lines, motors, generators, and other current handling devices radiate magnetic fields of varying strengths (electric noise). In addition to the above sources of electrical noise, fault produced transients, surges, and ground potential rises also produce unwanted magnetic fields. The generated and radiated magnetic fields couple across to other cables (both power and communications) and affect sensitive electronic equipment. The level of electrical noise that is considered acceptable depends on the signal level and accuracy requirements of the load equipment. Separation of the electrical noise sources and load signal cables, proper grounding, and proper cable configuration are some of the techniques for reducing noise.

12.5 Effects of Harmonic on Power System Equipment and Loads

The HD of concern here is the nonfundamental periodic voltage resulting from the steady state operation of nonlinear elements connected to the power distribution system. This periodic voltage often, but not always, consists of harmonics of the power system fundamental frequency. The effect of voltage distortion may be divided into three general categories: (1) insulation stress due to voltage effects, (2) thermal stress due to current flow, and (3) load disruption. Load disruption is defined as objectionable abnormal operation or failure caused by voltage distortion. While this definition is general enough to include such items as torques generated in electromechanical devices, load disruptions appear to b e limited to the various types of solid-state loads. In this section we offer a discussion on general concepts involved in evaluating the effects of harmonics on power apparatus, to provide quantitative analysis of the effects and to identify potential problems.

12.5.1 Basic Concepts on Effects of Harmonics

A distorted periodic voltage or current waveform can be expanded into a Fourier series to give the harmonic terms by the following equations:

$$V(t) = V_1 \cos(\omega t + \delta_1) + V_2 \cos(2\omega t + \delta_2) + V_3 \cos(3\omega t + \delta_3) + \cdots$$

$$I(t) = I_1 \cos(\omega t + \theta_1) + I_2 \cos(2\omega t + \theta_2) + I_3 \cos(3\omega t + \theta_3) + \cdots$$

where

V_1 and I_1 are voltage and current peak values of the fundamental

V_h and I_h, $h = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ are voltage and current peak values of the hth harmonic

δ_h and θ_h are the relative phase angles of the hth harmonic

The current distortion factor (CDF) or the THD_I was discussed in Section 12.4 and is repeated here again as follows:

$$\text{CDF} = \text{THD}_I = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} (I_h)^2}}{I_1}$$

similarly the voltage distortion factor can be written as

$$\text{VDF} = \text{THD}_V = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} (V_h)^2}}{V_1}$$

Harmonics also generate telephone interference through inductive coupling. The telephone interference is defined as telephone influence factor (TIF) which is expressed as follows:

$$\mathrm{TIF} = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} (w_h I_h)^2}}{I_1}$$

where w_h is a weight factor for audio and inductive coupling effects at the hth harmonic.

The rms value of the voltage distortion does not provide peak voltage levels which are needed to assess the effects HD on insulation. A more meaningful measure for assessing HD on insulation is magnitude factor (MF), which is given by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{MF} = \frac{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} V_h}{V_1}$$

The distortion factors, current, voltage (rms and peak), and telephone influence are utilized to describe the quantitative effect of the harmonics on electric loads and other apparatus. For example, the CFD is useful in quantifying the copper losses in a constant resistance load, the TIF to quantify telephone interference, MF in assessing dielectric stress, etc. In general, the diversity of the effects of harmonics makes it extremely unlikely that any one measure of voltage distortion will adequately describe all effects. A better approach is to identify the sensitivities of apparatus performance to distortion factors, and thereby, identify the relative usefulness of these parameters. The effects of harmonics on thermal stress, insulation stress, and load disruption are discussed as follows.

12.5.1.1 Thermal Stress

In general, the presence of harmonic current increases the losses and thus the thermal stress of the equipment. The losses are copper losses, iron losses, and dielectric losses. In a given power equipment, one or more of above losses may determine the thermal stress of the device. These losses can be computed as follows:

Copper losses: The copper losses (P_C) can be computed with the following general formula

$$P_C = \frac{1}{2}\left[\sum_{h}^{\infty} R_h I_h^2\right]$$

where I_h is the peak value of the hth harmonic current, R_h is the resistance of the apparatus at the hth harmonic.

In cases where resistance of the apparatus is constant (independent of frequency), the copper losses can be written in terms of the CDF as follows;

$$P_C = \frac{1}{2}R\left[\sum_h^{\infty} I_h^2\right] = \frac{1}{2}RI_1^2\left(1+(\mathrm{CDF})^2\right)$$

As shown in the equation above, the CFD determines the increase of copper losses due to the presence of harmonics. In general, however, the resistance of power apparatus increases with frequency because of the skin effect. The impact of skin effect on harmonic losses becomes more important in large diameter conductors and deep bar induction motors.

Iron losses: Iron losses are made up of (1) hysteresis loss and (2) eddy current loss. These losses are given by the following formulas:

Hysteresis loss (P_h) is a function of magnetic material used and frequency of the current. For a given magnetic core, the hysteresis loss is equal to

$$P_h = a_h f B_m^v$$

where
- a_h is a constant dependent on core dimensions
- f is the frequency of electric current
- B_m is the maximum value of the magnetic flux density
- v is an exponent dependent on the core material (for commonly used materials, v = 1.5–2.5)

Eddy current loss (P_e) depends on core material (resistivity of core), thickness of lamination, frequency of electric currents, and magnetic flux density. For a given magnetic circuit the eddy current losses are given by

$$P_e = a_e f^2 B_m^2$$

where
- a_e is a constant dependent on material and thickness of lamination
- f is the frequency of electric current
- B_m is the maximum value of the magnetic flux density

The total losses are given by the sum of hysteresis and eddy current losses, therefore

$$P_{\text{iron loss}} = a_{(h)} f B_m^v + a_e f^2 B_m^2$$

The total iron loss is a nonlinear function of frequency and maximum magnetic flux density. For a given voltage harmonic, the frequency is known and the maximum magnetic flux density is proportional to the harmonic current. The constant of proportionality depends on coil and magnetic core design. The equation for iron loss is valid for a sinusoidal excitation of the power apparatus of frequency f. In case the excitation source is polluted with harmonics, one can cautiously use the equation for iron loss to compute the iron loss for each harmonic and add the contributions. This procedure (superposition) is correct only for linear apparatus. Because of magnetic saturation and magnetic hysteresis, magnetic circuits are not exactly linear systems. However, for normally encountered operating conditions and level of harmonics, superposition can be used as a reasonable approximation.

Dielectric losses: The dielectric losses are applicable to cables and capacitors and at a given harmonic, h, are given by the following equation

$$P_{\mathrm{e}} = (1/2)(\tan\delta)_h V_h^2 h\omega C$$

where

ω is the fundamental angular frequency
V_h is the peak value of the hth harmonic voltage
C is the capacitance of the apparatus
$(\tan\,\delta)_h$ is the dielectric loss factor at the hth harmonic

12.5.1.2 Insulation Stress

Insulation stress primarily depends on instantaneous voltage magnitude and voltage rate of increase secondarily. The presence of voltage harmonics can result in an increase of the crest value of the voltage and thus increased insulation stress. This increase is not of concern for most power system apparatus because they are insulated for much higher voltage levels than those usually encountered from harmonics. Capacitor banks, however, are very sensitive to overvoltages and must be protected against overvoltages resulting from harmonics. A special discussion is provided later in this section. The voltage rate of increase is important in switchgear and it is discussed in this section also. An area of possible concern is the effect of voltage distortion on surge protective devices, including the sparkover and recovery of gapped surge arresters.

12.5.1.3 Load Disruption

Load disruption is defined as objectionable abnormal operation or failure caused by voltage distortion. Many electronic equipment are susceptible to load disruption because their normal operation depends on the existence of a sinusoidal voltage source. The effects of the harmonics on electronic equipment are discussed later in this section. Load disruption also includes decreases of useful magnetic electromagnetic torque in electric machinery because of the presence of harmonics. Specifically, current harmonics circulating in the armature of electric machinery may generate pulsating or constant electromagnetic torques. Pulsating torques result in equipment wear and shortening of equipment life. Constant torques, in most cases, reduce the useful electromagnetic torque and, result in reduced efficiency.

12.5.2 Harmonic Effects on Power System Equipment

12.5.2.1 Transformers

The effects of harmonics on transformers are

- Increased copper losses
- Increased iron losses
- Possibly resonance between transformers
- windings and line capacitance
- Insulation stress
- Neutral overheating due to triplen harmonics

The copper losses and iron losses in the presence of harmonics can be computed with the general equations presented in Section 12.5.1.1. The application of general equations given in Section 12.5.1.1 assumes that the transformer is a linear device which it is not. However, for normal, operating conditions and normal levels of harmonics, this is a reasonable approximation. Similarly, an approximate expression for total hysteresis losses can be determined by using the equations given in Section 12.5.1.1. However, the increase of hysteresis losses due to harmonics is only a fraction of the eddy current losses.

Voltage harmonics result in higher transformer voltage, therefore higher insulation stress. This is not a problem since most transformers are insulated for much higher voltage levels than the overvoltages due to usual levels of harmonics. There is a certain degree of interaction between voltage and current harmonics for transformers designed to operate near the saturation point (knee of the saturation curve). It is possible a small level of voltage harmonic to generate a high level of current harmonics. This phenomenon depends on specific harmonic and phase relationship to the fundamental. To address the overheating of transformers due to harmonics, the ANSI/IEEE published a standard C57.110-1998, "Recommended practice for establishing transformer capability when supplying nonsinusoidal load currents," which was reaffirmed in 2004. This standard establishes methods for determining derating factors for transformer capability to carry nonsinusoidal load currents.

In 1990, Underwriters Laboratory (UL) established the method for testing transformers that serve nonlinear loads. The UL test addresses coil heating due to nonlinear loads and overheating of the neutral conductor by assigning a "K" factor to the transformer. The *K*-factor is meant to apply to transformers serving general nonlinear loads. UL has devised the *K*-factor method for labeling and rating the ability of dry-type transformers to withstand the effects of harmonics. The *K*-factor rating indicates the transformer's ability to tolerate the additional heating caused by harmonics. The *K*-factor is based on the methodology similar to that discussed in the ANSI/IEEE C57.110 standard. The *K*-factor can be calculated as the sum of the product of each harmonic current squared and that harmonic number squared for all harmonics from the fundamental to the highest harmonic of consequence. When *K*-factor is multiplied by the stray losses of the transformer, the result represents the total stray losses in the transformer caused by harmonic currents. To obtain the total load losses, the total stray losses are then added to the load losses. It should be obvious that the *K*-factor for linear loads (absence of harmonics) is 1. Also, the *K*-factor does not mean that the transformer can eliminate harmonics. Harmonics increase heating losses in all transformers, and some of these losses are deep within the core and windings and some are closer to the surface. Oil-filled transformers react differently to the increased heat and are better able to cool whereas dry-type transformers are more susceptible to the harmonic current effects and are so labeled. The UL test addresses coil heating due to nonlinear loads and overheating of the neutral conductor.

There are two methods for calculating *K*-factor. They are UL method and normalized method. The UL method, based on the transformer's rated rms current, is generally used when rms current is measured. The UL method is defined as follows:

$$K = \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} I_{h(\mathrm{PU})}^{2} h^{2}$$

where

h is the harmonic order

$I_{h(\mathrm{PU})}$ is the rms current of the harmonic expressed as a per unit of the rated rms transformer current

The normalized method is based on the load's fundamental current. Harmonic measurements are often taken with a harmonic analyzer. A majority of harmonic analyzers output data is in per unit values related to the fundamental current. Therefore, the normalized method is applicable. The normalized method is defined as follows:

$$K = \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} f_h^2 h^2$$

where f_h is the fundamental current in per unit (the first harmonic = 100%) An example of the two methods for the same harmonic spectrum of data is given in Tables 12.2 and 12.3.

The *K*-factor rating of dry-type transformers is available from 1 through 50. However, for majority of application rating of 20 or less should suffice. Table 12.4 lists the available *K*-factor rated transformers.

TABLE 12.2

Calculation of *K*-Factor per UL Method

Harmonic	I_h (PU) (Measured)	I_h (PU)^2	h^2	I_h (PU)^2 h^2
1	0.72	0.52	1	0.52
3	0.52	0.27	9	2.43
5	0.31	0.10	25	2.40
7	0.25	0.06	49	3.06
9	0.15	0.02	81	1.82
11	0.07	0.00	121	0.59
13	0.05	0.00	169	0.42
			K-factor =	11.24

TABLE 12.3

Calculation of *K*-Factor per Normalized Method

Harmonic	f_h (PU)	f_h (PU)^2	h^2	f_h (PU)^2 h^2
1	1.00	1.00	1	1.00
3	0.72	0.52	9	4.69
5	0.43	0.19	25	4.63
7	0.35	0.12	49	5.91
9	0.21	0.04	81	3.52
11	0.10	0.01	121	1.14
13	0.07	0.00	169	0.82
		1.88		21.71
		K-factor =	21.71/1.88 =	11.54

TABLE 12.4

K-Factor Rating of Dry-Type Transformers

K-Factor	Comments and Typical Applications
1	Normal transformer for sinusoidal load applications with a harmonic factor less than 0.05
4	Welders and induction heaters, high intensity discharge (HID) and fluorescent lighting, solid-state controls
9	Not readily available or usually specified
13	Telecommunications equipment, classrooms and health care facilities
20	Data processing equipment, ASD
30	Extended range
40	Extended range
50	Extended range

The basic sources of data for computing *K*-factor are from measurements or estimates. Exercise care in measuring loads so the data is accurate and simulates the transformer at full load. When estimating loads, the computed *K*-factor is usually overly conservative (large) as it does not take into account potential harmonic phase cancellations. To address this, UL has specified that the rms current of any single harmonic greater than the 10th be considered as no greater than $1/h$ of the fundamental rms current. This attempts to compensate for otherwise conservative computed impacts of higher frequencies. Equipment manufacturers can be a source of data for nonlinear loads. As *K*-factor increases, the transformer becomes larger and its impedance decreases markedly. Lower source impedance can result in higher distortion, which can aggravate a problem instead of solving it.

Another problem that occurs with transformers is the overheating of the neutral in a three-phase four-wire power distribution system. When single-phase nonlinear loads are connected to the secondary of a wye–delta transformer, such as is found in many industrial and commercial applications, the triplen harmonics (third, ninth, and so on) algebraically add up in the neutral of the secondary of the transformer. These currents are often in excess of the phase currents and therefore cause overheating of the neutral conductor, components, bus bars, etc. Also these currents are reflected back into the delta primary windings where they circulate and cause the transformer to overheat or fail.

12.5.2.2 Rotating Machines

The effects of harmonics in rotating machinery are increased heating due to copper and iron losses, changes in electromagnetic torque which affect, machine efficiency and machine torsional oscillations. The level and importance of these effects depend on electric machine design and harmonic source type. Electric machines can be classified as synchronous machines (three-phase), three-phase induction machines and single-phase induction motors. On the other hand, the source of harmonics for three-phase systems may be a balanced three-phase source or may be a single-phase source injecting harmonics in one phase only. The latter case can be analyzed with the use of symmetrical components which is applicable to each one harmonic. Thus for three-phase electric machinery only the effects of balanced three-phase harmonic excitation need to be examined. The effects of single-phase harmonic excitation can be deduced from the former. A good understanding of the effects of harmonics on rotating machinery requires a good understanding of the electromagnetic fields inside the machines due to harmonic currents. Because of the complex construction of rotating machinery, the frequency of the magnetic flux may not coincide with the frequency of the armature currents. In addition, at a given harmonic, the frequency of the magnetic flux in the rotor is different of the frequency in the stator. The below listed observations can be used for analyzing the effects of harmonics on rotating machines.

1. The zero sequence harmonics ($h = 3, 6, 9, 12, \ldots$) do not produce a net magnetic flux density. Thus the only effect they produce is ohmic losses.
2. The positive sequence harmonics ($h = 1, 4, 7, 10, 13, \ldots$) produce a rotating magnetic flux which rotates with speed $h\omega$ in the positive direction and magnitude proportional to the harmonic current. The relative speed of the rotating magnetic field with respect to the rotor is $(h - 1)\omega$ [or $(h - 1 + S)\omega$ for induction machines, S = slip]. Because of induction motor action, an electromagnetic torque will be developed in the direction of rotation. The frequency of the alternating magnetic flux is $60h$ in the stator and $60(h - 1)$ in the rotor. These frequencies determine the iron losses which occur partly in the stator and partly in the rotor.
3. The negative sequence harmonics ($h = 2, 5, 8, 11, \ldots$) produce a rotating magnetic flux which rotates with speed $-h\omega$ (opposite to the direction of rotation) and magnitude proportional to the harmonic current. The relative speed of the rotating magnetic field with respect to the rotor is $-(h + 1)\omega$ [(or $-(h + 1 - S)\omega$ for an induction machine, S = slip)]. Because of induction motor action, an electromagnetic torque will be developed in a direction opposite to that of rotation. The frequency of the alternating magnetic flux is $60h$ in the stator and $60(h + 1)$ in the rotor.

The performance of an induction motor, operating from a supply voltage rich in harmonics, deteriorates because the presence of negative sequence harmonics generates opposing torque and the presence of any harmonic increases copper and iron losses. These effects result in a net derating of the motor.

Another effect results from the interaction of the magnetic field generated by a harmonic and the fundamental magnetic field. Consider, for example, the seventh harmonic in a synchronous, machine. The seventh harmonic magnetic field rotates, relatively to the rotor field, with a speed $(h - 1)\omega$. The interaction of the two fields will produce a pulsating torque of frequency $60(h - 1) = 360$ Hz. In the same way, the fifth harmonic will generate a pulsating torque of frequency $60(h + 1) = 360$ Hz. Thus pairs of harmonics generate pulsating torques of frequency 180, 360, 540 Hz, etc. In a typical system, the 360 Hz pulsating torque is substantial and results in oscillations of the machine shaft. It is possible that the natural frequency of the machine is in the vicinity of this frequency. In this case, the fifth and seventh harmonics may excite a super synchronous resonance condition which involves torsional oscillations of the rotor elements. Supersynchronous resonance occurs when the frequency of a mode of mechanical vibration exists close to the frequency of electrical stimulus. In this case, high resonant mechanical oscillations may be developed which could result in fatigue of the shafts.

The pulsating torques, due to the presence of harmonics, also result in higher noise emission as compared with pure sinusoidal excitation.

The ANSI standards C50.13-2005, *American National Standard Requirements for Cylindrical-Rotor Synchronous Generators*, defines a limit on the negative sequence current (60 Hz) for generators operating continuously at rated kVA and maximum current not exceeding 105% (of rated) in any phase.

12.5.2.3 Capacitor Banks

Capacitor impedance decreases with frequency. For this reason, capacitor banks act as sinks of harmonics. In a system with distributed harmonic sources, the harmonics will converge to the capacitor bank. As a result most harmonic problems show up first at shunt capacitor banks. Severe harmonic problems at capacitor banks manifest themselves with (1) fuses blowing and (2) capacitor canister (can) failure. The presence of harmonics at capacitor banks can cause:

- Increased dielectric losses and thus heating
- Resonance conditions resulting in magnification of harmonics
- Overvoltages

Distribution line capacitor banks: Distribution capacitor banks can form a resonant circuit with the inductance of distribution lines at a frequency near the harmonics of interest. In this case, the harmonics may be amplified at the capacitor location. Consider, for example, a portion of an overhead distribution circuit represented for simplicity with an *R*, *L* circuit, a capacitor bank, and a source of harmonics as in Figure 12.16.

The harmonic voltage, V_c, at the capacitor bank is given by the equation:

$$V_{\mathrm{c}} = V \frac{1}{1 - \omega^2 LC + j\omega C}$$

where

V is the applied harmonic voltage

R, L is the equivalent circuit representation of the distribution line

C is the capacitance of the capacitor bank

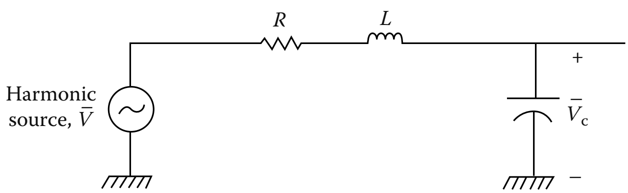


FIGURE 12.16
Equivalent circuit of a distribution line and a capacitor.

The resonance frequency is given by the equation

$$f_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi LC}}$$

and can coincide with a harmonic frequency.

At this frequency, the voltage V_c is given by the equation

$$V_c = V\frac{1}{j\omega RC}$$

Today computer programs are available to predict these resonance conditions and the harmonic frequency can be predicted with which the capacitor will resonate. Therefore, this effect can be mitigated by installing a correct filter to shunt the harmonic currents thereby avoiding the resonance condition.

PF correction capacitor banks: Every power capacitor installation is in parallel with the inductance of the power system, and this combination is in resonance at some frequency. If this frequency is at one of the static power converters characteristic harmonics, the current of that harmonic can excite the resonant circuit and cause an oscillating current to be exchanged between the two energy storage elements. These high harmonic currents can produce high harmonic voltages which in turn can force harmonic currents to flow in adjacent circuits. This diversity of conditions makes it hard to determine if all parameters are going to be present to cause problems. This happens enough times to make system designers nervous when the combination of static power converters and power factor capacitors occurs on the same power system (see Figure 12.17).

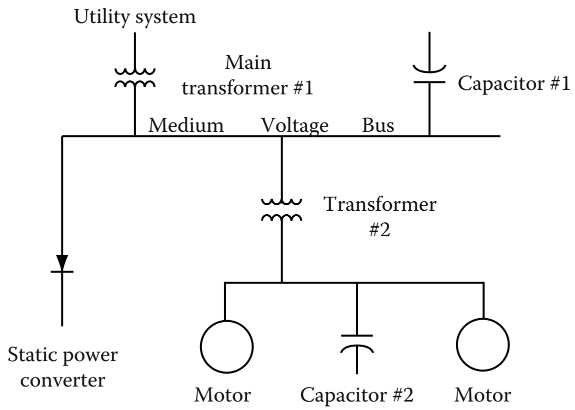


FIGURE 12.17
Power distribution system with static power converters and power factor capacitors.

Criteria for trouble: There are some quick rules of thumb that might be used to determine if there might be a problem. The first is the resonant value of the combination of the system impedance and the capacitor bank size:

$$f_{\text{p}} = \sqrt{\frac{\text{SC MVA}}{\text{CAP MVAR}}} = \sqrt{\frac{X_{\text{c}}}{X_{\text{sc}}}}$$

where
f_{p} is the per unit parallel resonant frequency
X_{c} is the capacitor bank reactance (per unit or ohms)
X_{sc} is the system reactance (per unit or ohms)

A second rule of thumb involves the size of the static power converter with respect to the size of the electrical system feeding the converter. The term short-circuit ratio (SCR) has been used to describe this and is defined as

$$\text{SCR} = \frac{\text{short-circuit MVA}}{\text{converter MVA}}$$

If the converter is small compared to the system capacity, the per-unit harmonic currents will be small and the system impedance will be low, so any harmonic voltage will be insignificant. If the SCR is above 20 and the f_{p} is above 8.5, the probability of problems is low. If the SCR is below 20, and if the parallel resonance f_{p} is near one of the converter characteristic harmonics, there is a high probability of producing excessive harmonic voltage and high harmonic currents. The increased use of static power converters and power factor capacitors can set up system conditions to cause problems. However, with the judicial design of filters using the power factor capacitors to control the harmonic currents from the static power converters, both pieces of equipment can be used to take full advantage of all the economics that both of them offer.

Another effect of the harmonic components on the capacitor bank is to cause additional heating because of increased dielectric losses. The increased losses due to harmonics may be calculated with

$$L = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{h=2}^{\infty}(\tan\delta)_h C h \omega V_h^2$$

where
L is the increase in losses
h is the order of harmonic
C is the capacitance
$(\tan\delta)_h$ is the loss factor at the frequency of the hth harmonic
ω is the fundamental angular frequency
V_h is the peak value of the hth voltage

The overvoltage appearing at a capacitor bank due to the presence of harmonics depends on the phase relationship of harmonic and fundamental voltages. It is possible that the instantaneous overvoltage is greater than the rms overvoltage. As the corona inception and extinguishing voltage levels are a function of peak voltage, and not rms voltage, the life of the capacitor could be affected due to corona discharges. Capacitors, unlike most other power apparatus, have strict limits on current, kVAR, and voltage. The IEEE 18-2002, "Shunt power capacitors," specifies the limit on harmonics that the shunt capacitors can be subjected to under normal operation. The standard states that the capacitor may be continuously operated in the presence of harmonics provided (1) the total reactive power is not greater than 135% of its rated value, (2) the current due to the fundamental and harmonic frequency components does not exceed 180% of rated rms value, and (3) the rms value of the applied voltage is not more than 110% of rated terminal voltage and the crest value (1.2 × (square root of two)) of the applied voltage does not exceed 120% of rated peak voltage.

12.5.2.4 Switchgear

Harmonic components in the current waveform can affect the interruption capability of the switchgear. This takes place with two distinct mechanisms: (1) the presence of harmonics affects the rate of rise of the transient recovery voltage and the maximum value of the transient voltage and (2) harmonics affect the operation of the blowout coil in the stored-energy breakers. These effects will be discussed next.

The presence of current harmonics may result in high di/dt values at current zero. In this case, the rate of rise of the transient recovery voltage across the breaker will be higher than normal creating the possibility of dielectric failure and restrike. Also, the presence of harmonic currents affects the time that current crosses zero. This time affects the crest value of the transient recovery voltage. For example, if this time coincides with the maximum of the source voltage (fundamental), the crest value of the transient recovery voltage can reach $2.82E$ where E is the rms value of the rated voltage. This value may cause breaker restrike. Circuit breakers have failed to interrupt currents due to the inability of the blowout coils to operate adequately in the presence of severe harmonics. As the blowout coil assists in the arc's movement into the arc chute where the interruption takes place, its inefficient operation prolongs arcing and eventually results in breaker failure. Similar problems can exist in other current interrupting devices such as load break switches, circuit switchers, etc. Vacuum breakers are less sensitive to harmonic currents. There are no definite standards set forth by the industry on the level of harmonic currents that switching devices are required to interrupt. All the interrupting tests are performed at the rated supply frequency. The effect of harmonics on transient recovery voltage is by far the most difficult because it depends on specific system configuration.

One of the principal problems due to harmonics is the one that occurs within the switchgear neutral of three-phase four-wire systems when harmonics are present. The problem associated with neutrals is the result of the addition of triplen harmonic currents (i.e., multiple of the third harmonic) to the fundamental current in the neutral. The result often is that the neutral, which would normally carry very little current in a balanced three-phase system, now carries currents in excess of the phase currents for the system. Since neutral conductors, lugs, bus bars, etc, often are sized smaller than phase conductors and current components, the result is that the neutral system components are overloaded and often overheat, fail, or even burn down.

12.5.2.5 Protective Relays

Relays that depend on voltage/current crest or voltage zeroes for their operation are obviously affected by HD. System harmonics affect relay operation in a very complex manner. The induction disk and electromechanical relays are affected in the following way. The presence of harmonic currents results in additional torque components altering the time delay characteristics of the relays. Ground relays cannot distinguish between zero sequence current and third harmonic current. Thus, the presence of excessive third harmonic current can cause ground relays to trip. A recent Canadian study documents the effects of harmonics on relay operation as follows:

1. Relays exhibited a tendency to operate slower and/or with higher pickup values rather than to operate faster and/or with lower pickup values.
2. Static underfrequency relays were susceptible to substantial changes in operating characteristics.
3. In most cases, the changes in operating characteristics were relatively small over the moderate range of distortion expected during normal operation.
4. Depending on the manufacturer, the overvoltage and overcurrent relays exhibited various changes in operating characteristics.
5. Depending on harmonic content, operating torques of relays can be reversed.
6. Operating times can vary widely as a function of frequency mix in the metered quantity.
7. Balanced beam impedance relays can exhibit both overreach and underreach.
8. Harmonics can impair the high speed operation of differential relays. Several tests indicated that the relays could exhibit complete restraint.

In general, the harmonic levels required to cause misoperation of relays are greater than levels which would be considered maximum acceptable limits for other equipment. Harmonic levels of 10%–20% are generally required to cause problems with relay operation, except in unusual circumstances.

12.5.2.6 Metering Devices

Metering and instrumentation are affected by the presence of voltage and current harmonics. Induction disk devices, such as watt-hour meters and overcurrent relays, are designed and calibrated only for the fundamental current and voltage. The presence of harmonic currents and voltages generates additional electromagnetic torque on the disk which can cause erroneous operation. A Canadian study indicates that a 20% fifth harmonic content can produce 10%–15% error in a two element three-phase watt transducer. Other studies have shown that the error due to harmonics may be positive, negative, or smaller with third harmonics. This, of course, is dependent on the type of meter under consideration. Solid-state meters can measure power based on waveshape. In general, the distortion must be severe (>20%) before significant errors are detected.

12.5.2.7 Electronic Equipment

In many cases, electronic equipment are significant sources of harmonics. On the other hand, the operation of electronic equipment is often dependent on accurate determination of voltage zero crossings or other aspects of the voltage waveshape. For example, HD can result in a shifting of the zero crossing of the voltage waveform. This may be critical for many types of electronic circuit controls, and misoperation, such as commutation failures, can result from the shifts of the zero crossing. A large class of loads utilize energy in some form other than at the incoming line frequency, and require rectification or frequency conversion. External distortion may affect the performance of either the power converter or the converter load. The severity of these effects are influenced by the equipment design. Analysis of these effects is complicated by the fact that the converter itself is a complex nonlinear apparatus producing its own harmonics. Inverters used for DC to AC conversion or vice versa, generate a voltage notch during commutation. Voltage notching effects are of sufficient concern that notch limits on distorting apparatus have been included in some standards and guidelines. Voltage and current distortion may lead to disruption of the operation of electronic equipment. These disruptions may be divided into two categories: disruption of the converter operation and disruption of the converter load operation. The diversity of converter designs and the wide range of loads fed by these converters makes any general analysis difficult. It can be noted, however, that these disruptions are very much a function of converter design, and that electrical isolation of the sensitive load from loads producing distortion reduces the likelihood of disruption. Empirical data and operating experience with steady state voltage and current distortion in industrial plants has led to specific design recommendations summarized in the IEEE standard 519-1992, "IEEE guide for harmonic control and reactive compensation of static power converters."

12.5.2.8 Lighting Devices

Incandescent lamps: The incandescent lamp is one of the devices of this load group which is most sensitive to increased heating effects. A relative equation for bulb life is given by the equation:

$$L = \left[\frac{1}{V}\right]^n = \left[\frac{1}{V_1^2\left(1+(V\mathrm{DF})^2\right)}\right]^{n/2}$$

where
- L is the PU bulb life (to rated life base)
- V_1 is the PU fundamental voltage
- V is the PU rms voltage (to rated voltage base)
- n is a constant (representative value for n is 13)

It can be noted that large distortion factors will significantly shorten the bulb life, and that changes in the fundamental voltage are relatively more significant than changes in the distortion factor.

Arc lamps: The various types of arc lamps exhibit nonlinear resistance characteristics where the resistance declines as the current increases. The lamps have a safe operating region, and a ballast is required to place the lamp operating point in the safe region for all line voltage conditions throughout the range of various lamp characteristics. During normal lamp operation, the ballast functions as a current-limiting element. With inductive ballasts, the influence of voltage distortion would be roughly described by the distortion factor. It would appear that modest distortion factors would not cause a large shift in the lamp-operating point. Capacitive ballasts must be viewed with some concern, however, as the ballast reactance would drop as the frequency of the harmonic rises. Because the bulb itself is a highly nonlinear device, it is not at all clear what effect voltage distortion would have on lamps with capacitive ballasts.

12.6 Predictive Maintenance and PQ Measurements*

12.6.1 Introduction

In this section a discussion is provided on PQ measurements that can be used as predictive maintenance of power system and plant equipment. Unexpected failures can be avoided in both production equipment and power system apparatus when basic PQ measurements are added to maintenance

* This predictive PQ guide is based on information provided by Fluke Corporation.

procedures. Insurance claims data in the NFPA 70B indicates that roughly half of the cost associated with electrical failures could be prevented by regular maintenance. A study published in IEEE 493-1997 says that a poorly maintained system can attribute 49% of its failures to lack of maintenance. To determine the cost of a failure, it helps to consider the cost of lost income (gross margin) due to downtime, cost of labor to troubleshoot, patch, clean up, repair and restart, and cost of damaged equipment and materials, including repairs, replacements and scrapped materials.

Predictive maintenance of PQ focuses on a small set of measurements that can predict power distribution or critical load failures. By checking the PQ at critical loads, one can see the effect of the electrical system up to the load. The predictive maintenance inspection program should include motors, generators, pumps, A/C units, fans, gearboxes, or chillers on site. The voltage stability, HD, and unbalance voltages are good indicators of load and distribution system health and can be taken and recorded quickly with little incremental labor. Current measurements can identify changes in the way the load parameters are changing. All of these measurements can be taken without halting operations and measurement data can easily be entered into computer maintenance management software (CMMS) and plotted over time (see Section 1.4.3.5 for information on CMMS). For each measurement point or piece of equipment, limits can be set to trigger corrective action. Limits should be set well below the point of failure, and as time goes on limits may be tightened or loosened by analyzing historical data. The appropriate limits depend somewhat on the ability of the loads to deal with power variation. But for most equipment, the maintenance team can devise a set of default, house limits based on industry standards and experience. The cost of three-phase power analyzers and other PQ tools is lower now than before and measurements discussed in this section should be part of the predictive maintenance program.

12.6.2 Safety Standards for Test Instruments

12.6.2.1 Test Instrument Standards

IEC 61010 establishes international safety requirements for low voltage (1000 V or less) electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use. The low voltage power distribution system is divided into four categories, based on the proximity to the power source. Within each category are voltage listings—1000, 600, 300 V, etc. The key concept to understand is that you should use a meter rated to the highest category, as well as the highest voltage, that you might be working in. For PQ troubleshooting, a meter rated to CAT IV-600 V should always be used. The CAT ratings should be marked near the voltage inputs of the instrument. IEC 61010 requires increased protection against the hazards of transient overvoltages. Transients can cause an arc-over inside an inadequately protected meter. When that arc-over occurs in a high energy environment, such as a three-phase feeder circuit, the result can be a dangerous arc blast. The potential exists for serious harm to personnel as well as damage to the meter. Also, when undertaking PQ measurements,

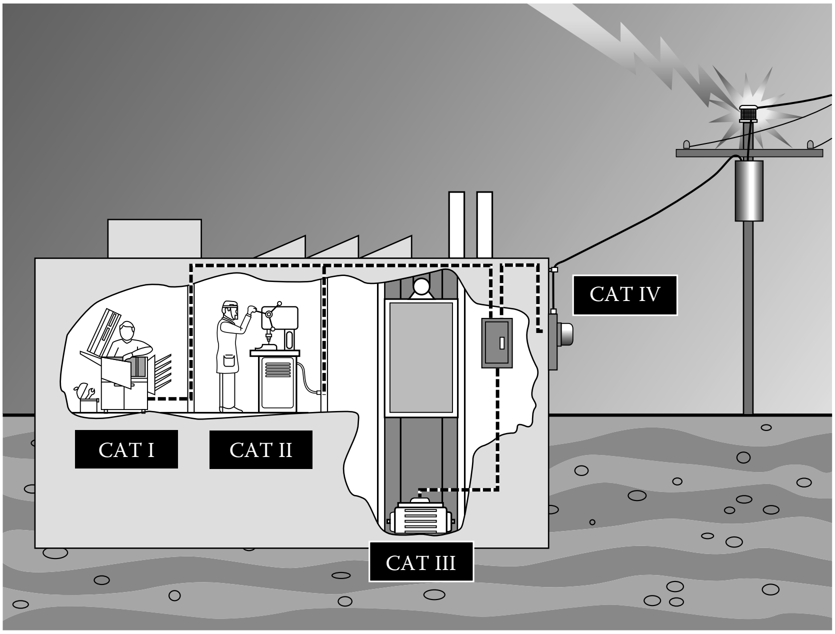


FIGURE 12.18
IEC (61010) safety categories of electrical equipment for measurements use. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

the personnel should follow the requirements of safety-related work practices listed in Chapter 13 of the NFPA 70E, and rules promulgated by OSHA (Code of Federal Regulations, Title 29, Subtitle B, Chapter XVII, subpart S, paragraph 1910.331–1910.335) for safety-related work practices. Further, the instrument's manufacturer application notes and information should be consulted when making such measurements. The four categories of electrical equipment for measurements are depicted in Figure 12.18.

Manufacturers can self-certify that they meet IEC 61010 specifications, but there are obvious pitfalls for the end-user in self-certification. Certification by an independent testing laboratory provides assurance that the meter meets IEC requirements. Before using the test instruments, look for a symbol and listing number of an independent testing laboratory such as UL, CSA, TÜV, VDE, or others.

Overvoltage Category	Summary Description
CAT IV	Three-phase at utility connection, any outdoors conductors (under 1000 V)
CAT III	Three-phase distribution (under 1000 V), including single-phase commercial lighting and distribution panels
CAT II	Single-phase receptacle connected loads
CAT I	Electronic

12.6.2.2 Instruments for PQ Measurements

PQ monitoring requires a variety of instruments due to the many different measurements that must be performed. A general description of test instruments is given in this to make the reader familiar with the instruments that are normally used for PQ surveys and/or measurements. As an example, Table 12.5 lists the test instruments manufactured by Fluke Corporation which are applicable to the type of measurements discussed in this section. Similar instruments are available from other manufactures. Note that a true-rms multimeter, ammeter,

TABLE 12.5

Test Instruments Applicable to PQ Measurements

Test Tools (Model)[a]	PQ Analyzer (43B-Single-Phase Analyzer)	Harmonic Analyzer (435 Three-Phase Analyzer)	PQ Recorder [(Three-Phase-1750; Single-Phase–VR1710)]	Rms Digital Multimeter (Single-Phase-87 V)	PQ Clamp Meter (1ϕ Power-345)
Power	kVA, kW, kVAR, PF, DPF	kVA, kW, kVAR, PF, DPF			
Recording	TrendPlot, PC logging	PC logging	4000 V events		
Real-time clock	—		—		
Harmonics	To 51st harmonic	To 50th harmonic		True-rms volts and current	True-rms volts and current
Voltage transients	20 ns with waveform		1 μs event recording	250 μs peak MIN/MAX	
Sags and swells (voltage only)	Single cycle MIN/MAX with trend		Single cycle event recording	100 ms MIN/MAX	
Sags and swells (simultaneous voltage and current)	Single cycle MIN/MAX				
Outages	Single cycle MIN/MAX with trend	Event recording with duration		100 ms MIN/MAX	
Documentation, RS232 computer	FlukeView PQ software	FlukeView PQ software	EventView software		
Motor in-rush current	Waveform with cursors			MIN/MAX	MAX hold
Waveform	20 MHz scope	Fundamental			
Noise	—				
Peak	—	—		—	
True-rms	—	—		—	—

Sources: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

[a] Models listed are Fluke Instruments used for PQ measurements. Similar instruments are available from other PQ instrument manufacturers.

ground impedance tester, and power line monitor/analyzer are absolutely essential equipment for minimum effective power disturbance detection and analysis.

True-rms multimeters: A true-rms digital multimeter is used to measure voltage and continuity.

True-rms clamp-on ammeters: A true-rms clamp-on ammeter is used to measure current and analyze current waveforms, particularly when sinusoidal waveforms are involved. It is recommended due to the ease of use and broad bandwidth characteristics of transformer-based meter designs. Several types of ammeters currently are available such as direct reading and indirect reading ammeters.

Ground impedance testers: A ground impedance tester is a multifunctional instrument designed to detect wiring and ground problems in low-voltage power distribution systems. Such problems can include: wiring errors, neutral–ground (N–G) shorts and reversals, IG shorts ground, and neutral impedance shorts. Some testers are designed for use on 120 V AC single-phase systems while others can be used on both single and three-phase systems up to 600 V AC.

Earth ground tester: An earth ground tester is used to measure the ground electrode impedance. Ground resistance tests should be conducted with a fall-of-potential method instrument. Clamp-on instruments that do not require the grounding electrode to be isolated from the building may be used with the understanding that these instrument may not give the most accurate readings of the ground electrode impedance.

Oscilloscope: An oscilloscope can be used to detect harmonics in an electrical system. It also can be used for noise measurements when combined with a line decoupler. In this case, the input is connected to the voltage of interest with the appropriate lead. If a voltage above the range of the oscilloscope is to be examined, probes with resistance-divider networks are available to extend the range of the instrument.

Spectrum analyzers: A spectrum analyzer equipped with appropriate measurement capabilities can be used to measure harmonics, electrical noise, and frequency deviations. Special-purpose harmonic meters or low frequency or broadband spectrum analyzers also can be used to measure these voltage and current disturbances.

Static meters: Static meters typically are used to measure ESD. These are handheld devices.

Psychrometer: A psychrometer is used to measure temperature and humidity in the environment, although such measurements also can be made with power monitoring devices equipped with special probes.

Field strength meter: A field strength meter equipped with a special probe can be used to measure electric or magnetic field strength.

Infrared detectors: Infrared detectors can be used to detect overheating of transformers, circuit breakers, and other electrical apparatus.

12.6.3 PQ Measurement Guidelines

PQ covers a wide range of issues, from voltage disturbances like voltage dips (sags), swells, outages and transients, to current harmonics, to performance wiring and grounding. The symptoms of poor PQ include intermittent lock-ups and resets, corrupted data, premature equipment failure, overheating of components for no apparent cause, etc. The ultimate cost is in downtime, decreased productivity, and frustrated personnel. This application note gives information on how to troubleshoot PQ problems. It also gives you information on how to start fixing those problems. But before grabbing that meter, the following cautionary notes must be adhered to:

1. Suggested measurements should only be made by qualified personnel who are trained to make these measurements in a safe manner, using proper procedures and test tools rated for work on electrical power circuits.
2. To the best of the author's knowledge, recommended solutions are consistent with the NEC, but in any case, NFPA 70 (NEC), NFPA 70E, and OSHA requirements must not be violated.
3. The information provided in this guidance is believed to be accurate and current, but it is not intended to be a substitute for the specialized knowledge and experience of professional PQ practitioners. What this application guide offers is a starter kit, not the final word on PQ predictive maintenance.

12.6.3.1 Preparation for Conducting Measurements

To troubleshoot PQ problems, one approach is to start as close to the problem load as possible. The problem load is the sensitive load, typically electronic, that is somehow malfunctioning. Poor PQ is suspected, but part of your job is to isolate PQ as a cause from other possible causes (hardware, software?). Like any detective, you should start at the scene of the crime. This bottom-up approach can take you a long way. It relies on making use of a sharp eye and on taking some basic measurements. An alternative is to start at the service entrance, using a three-phase monitor, and work back to the problem load. This is most useful if the problems originate with the utility. Yet survey after survey has concluded that the great majority of PQ problems originate in the facility. In fact, as a general rule, PQ is best at the service entrance (connection to utility) and deteriorates as you move downstream through the distribution system. That is because the facility's own loads are causing the problems. Another illuminating fact is that 75% of PQ problems are related to wiring and grounding problems! For this reason, many PQ

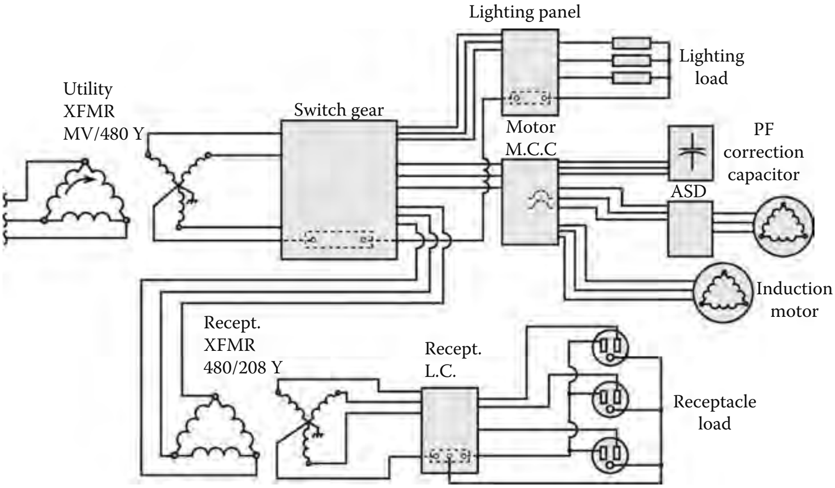


FIGURE 12.19
Simplified electrical distribution system, typical of commercial and industrial facilities. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

authorities recommend that a logical trouble shooting flow is to first diagnose the electrical infrastructure of the facility, then monitor if necessary. The bottom-up troubleshooting procedure is designed to help you do this detective work.

1. *Make a map:* Obtain or create a current one-line diagram of the power distribution system. It is tough to diagnose PQ problems without having a working knowledge of the site being investigated. You can start by locating or reconstructing a "as built" one-line (or three-line) diagram of the distribution system (see Figure 12.19). The one-line will identify the AC power sources and the loads they serve. If you work on-site, the map might already exist in your head, but it will be a big help to everyone, including yourself, if it is on paper. If you are coming to a work site for the first time, getting an up-to-date one-line means identifying new loads or other recent changes in the system. Why go to this effort? Systems are dynamic; they change over time, often in unplanned and haphazard ways. Furthermore, while some problems are local in origin and effect, there are many problems that result from interactions between one part of the system and another. Your job is to understand these system interactions. The more complete your documentation, the better off you will be. It is true, however, that the sites that need the most help are the ones least likely to have a good record of what is going on in their system. So the simple rule is, at this point in the investigation, do the best you can to get good documentation, but do not count on it being available.

2. Do a walk around of the site. Sometimes a visual inspection will offer immediate clues:
   - A transformer that is much too hot
   - Wiring or connections discolored from heat
   - Receptacles with extension strips daisy-chained to extension strips
   - Signal wiring running in the same trays as power cables
   - Extra N–G bonds in subpanels
   - Grounding conductors connected to pipes that end in midair. At a minimum, you will get a sense of how the facility is wired and what the typical loads are
3. Interview affected personnel and keep an incident log. Interview the people operating the affected equipment. You will get a description of the problem and often turn up unexpected clues. It is also good practice to keep a record of when problems happen and what the symptoms are. This is most important for problems that are intermittent. The goal is to find some pattern that helps correlate the occurrence of the problem in the problem load to a simultaneous event elsewhere. Logically, this trouble-logging is the responsibility of the operator closest to the affected equipment.
4. The typical electrical distribution system for a commercial building or a light industrial facility is shown in Figure 12.19 that can be divided in to two parts: (1) distribution system and (2) three-phase loads. We will start the predictive maintenance from the bottom-up, i.e., starting at the branch circuit and moving up to the service panel, transformer, and then going into three-phase loads as listed below.

   Distribution system

   Receptacle branch circuit

   Service panels

   Transformers

   Electrical noise and transients

   Lightning protection

   Three-phase loads

   Polyphase induction motors

   AC ASD

   Commercial lighting

12.6.3.2 Basic Power Measurements

The basic power measurements for assessing PQ problems are phase voltages, neutral-to-ground voltage, phase currents, voltage and current distortion, voltage unbalance or imbalance, etc. The basic power measurements for PQ are listed in Table 12.6

TABLE 12.6

Basic Power Measurements for Three-Phase Wye Equipment

Voltage measurements	Phase-to-neutral voltages
	N–G voltages
Voltage sags	Phase to neutral sag count
Voltage harmonics	Phase voltage THD
Current measurements	Phase currents
Voltage unbalance	Negative sequence, zero sequence

Sources: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

Good voltage level and stability are fundamental requirements for reliable equipment operation. The following power conditions are indicative of PQ problems and should be checked.

Voltage: Running loads at overly high or low voltages causes reliability problems and failures. Verify that line voltage is within 10% of the nameplate's rating. As connections in the power system deteriorate, the rising impedance will cause drops in voltage. Added loads, especially those with high inrush, will also cause voltage decline over time. The loads farthest from the service entrance or transformer will show the lowest voltage. Neutral-to-ground voltage shows how heavily the power system is loaded and helps quantify the triplen harmonic currents. Neutral-to-ground voltage higher than 3% should trigger further investigation.

Voltage sag count: Taking a single voltage reading tells only part of the story. How is the voltage changing during an hour and during a day? Sags, swells, and transients are short-term variations in voltage. The voltage sag (or dip) is the most common and troublesome variety. Sags indicate that a system is having trouble responding to load requirements and significant sags can interrupt production. Voltage sags can cause spurious resets on electronic equipment such as computers or controllers, and sag on one phase can cause the other two to overcompensate, potentially tripping the circuit. Sags have several dimensions: depth, duration, and time of day. Utilities use a special index to track the number of sags that occur over a period of time. To gauge the depth of the sags, they count how often voltage drops below various thresholds. The longer and larger the voltage variations more likely the equipment is susceptible to malfunction. For example, the Information Technology Industry Council (ITIC) curve specifies 120 V computer equipment should be able to run as long as voltage does not drop below 96 V for more than 10 s or below 84 V for more than 0.5 s.

Current: Current measurements that trend upward are a key indicator of a problem or degradation in the load. While equipment is running, monitor phase, neutral and ground current over time. Make sure none of the currents are increasing significantly, verify that they are less than the nameplate rating, and keep an eye out for high neutral current, which can indicate harmonics and unbalance.

Voltage unbalance: In a three-phase system, significant differences in phase voltage indicate a problem with the system or a defect in a load. High voltage unbalance causes three-phase loads to draw excessive current and causes motors to deliver lower torque. Also, it causes motor overheating, for example, 3% unbalance in voltage causes a temperature rise of 25°C. The negative sequence voltage (V_{neg}) and zero sequence voltage (V_{zero}) are an indication of voltage asymmetry between phases. It is desirable to keep V_{neg} to be less than 2%. The negative sequence voltage and zero sequence voltage are also referred to as V_2 and V_0, respectively.

Voltage HD: HD is a normal consequence of a power system supplying electronic loads such as computers, business machines, electronic lighting ballasts, and control systems. Adding or removing loads from the system changes the amount of distortion, so it is a good idea to regularly check harmonics. Harmonics cause heating and reduced life in motor windings and transformers, excessive neutral current, increased susceptibility to voltage sags, and reduced transformer efficiency. As current harmonics interact with impedance, they are converted into voltage harmonics. THD is a sum of the contributions of all harmonics. By tracking voltage THD over time one can determine if distortion is changing. The voltage harmonic distortion (voltage THD) in accordance with IEEE 519 should be less than 5%.

12.6.3.3 Measurements at the Receptacle of a Branch Circuit

Many PQ problems show up at the branch circuit level. There is a simple reason for this: that is where most of the sensitive loads are located. It is also the end of the line of the electrical distribution system, and the place where shortcomings cannot be hidden. Let us assume you have been called in to solve the problem. You have already talked to the people involved have a rough idea of the symptoms (equipment lockups, intermittent resets or crashes, etc.) and as much sense of the timing and history of the problems as you can get. So it is time to gather hard evidence: it is time to take measurements. Our primary focus with troubleshooting at the receptacle level is to determine if the L–N voltage available is of sufficient stability and amplitude to supply the needs of the load(s). Make the following measurements.

Waveform: The waveform gives us quick snapshot information. An ideal waveform would be a sine wave. In this case, (Figure 12.20) the voltage waveform is flat-topped, which is typical of a building with many nonlinear loads such as computers and other office equipment. Our other measurements will tell us whether this flat-topping is excessive.

Peak voltage: The peak value is critical to electronic loads because the electronic power supply charges its internal capacitors to the peak value of the line voltage. If the peak is too low, it affects the ability of the caps to charge fully and the ability of the power supply to ride through momentary dips in the line voltage. For an rms voltage of 120 V, the peak value for a sine wave

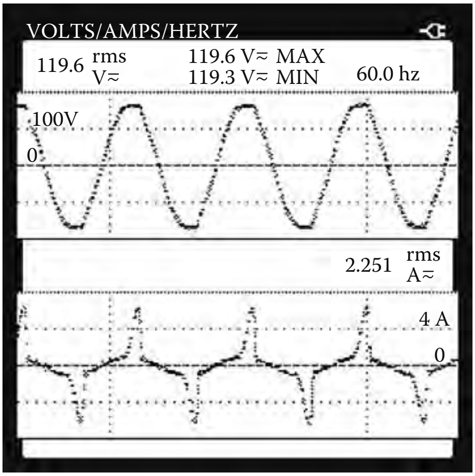


FIGURE 12.20
Flat-topped voltage waveform measured at a receptacle. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

should be 169.7 V (1.414 × 120 V). However, as we see from Figure 12.20, the flat-topped waveform will have a lower peak value.

The flat-topped waveform is typical of the voltage in facilities with computer loads. What causes flat-topping? The utility supplies AC power, but electronic equipment runs on DC power. The conversion of AC into DC is done by the power supply (SMPS) of the computer. The SMPS has a diode bridge which turns AC into pulsating DC, which then charges a capacitor. As the load draws the capacitor down, the capacitor recharges. However, the capacitor only takes power from the peak of the wave to replenish itself, since that is the only time the supplied voltage is higher than its own voltage. The capacitor ends up drawing current in pulses at each half-cycle peak of the supplied AC voltage. This is happening with virtually all the electronic loads on the circuit. If the AC power source were perfectly stiff, meaning that it had an infinite capacity to supply all the current that was required, then there would be no such thing as flat-topping (or sags or any voltage distortion). There are practical limits to what the AC power source can supply. This limit is usually described by a concept called source impedance, which is the total impedance from the point where the load is located back to the source. There are two major contributors to this source impedance. One is the wiring; the longer the conductor and the smaller the diameter (higher gauge), the higher the impedance. The other factor is the internal impedance of the power supply transformer (or other source equipment). This internal impedance is simply a way of saying that a transformer of a given size/rating can only supply so much current. The source impedance is naturally greatest at the end of a branch circuit, the farthest point from the source. That is the same place where all those electronic loads are demanding current at the peak of the wave. The result is that the voltage peak tends to get dragged down—in other words, flat-topped. The more loads there are, the greater the flat-topping. Also, the higher the source impedance, the greater the flat-topping of the voltage waveform is going to be incurred.

Rms voltage: Nominal line voltage is measured in rms which corresponds to the effective heating value. Equipment is rated in rms, not peak, because their main limitation has to do with heat dissipation. rms voltage can be too high or too low, but it is usually the low voltage that causes problems. Low rms voltage combined with flat-topping (low peak) is a deadly combination for sensitive loads. Voltage drop is a function of both the loading of the circuit and the source impedance, which in effect means the length and diameter (gauge) of the wire run. The NEC (210-19.a, FPN No. 4) recommends a limit of a 3% voltage drop from the branch circuit breaker to the farthest outlet, and a total voltage drop of less than 5% including the feeder and branch circuit.

Recording (short-term): The limitation of the above measurement is that it is static. Many loads require more current (inrush current) when they are first turned on. This momentary high current may cause a momentary low voltage (sag) because of the additional IR drop through the conductors. Such sags are often caused by loads drawing inrush currents on the same branch circuit, or on the same panelboard. You can measure a worst case sag of 100 ms or more (about six cycles at 60 Hz) by using a rms digital multimeter, while energizing the load. What if you want to know if there are recurring sags? The recurring sags can be recorded by using a PQ analyzer which will continuously capture sags of as little as single cycle duration (17 ms). A 1 h recording time may be enough to indicate if there are recurring sags and swells.

Recording (long-term): For longer term recording an instrument, such as Fluke's VR1710 voltage event recorder, can be used to record sags, swells, outages, transients, and frequency deviations while plugged into the outlet. The device can be left on-site, unattended, for days and weeks, all the time catching intermittent events. The correlation of equipment malfunction with voltage events is hard evidence of a PQ problem.

N–G voltage: Let us say a simple L–N measurement at the outlet has a low reading. The low reading does not tell if the reading is low because the feeder voltage is low (at the subpanel), or if the branch circuit is overloaded. You could try to measure the voltage at the panel, but it is not always easy to tell which panel feeds the outlet you are measuring and it is also sometimes inconvenient to access a panel. N–G voltage is often an easier way of assuring the loading on a circuit. As the current travels through the circuit, there is a certain amount of voltage drop in the hot conductor and in the neutral conductor. The drop on the hot and neutral conductors will be the same if they are the same gauge and length. The total voltage drop on both conductors is subtracted from the source voltage and is that much less voltage available to the load. The bigger the load, the higher the current, and the greater the N–G voltage drop. Think of N–G voltage as the mirror of L–N voltage: if L–N voltage is low, that will show up as a higher N–G voltage. N–G voltage exists because of the voltage drop due to the current traveling through the neutral back to the N–G bond. If the system is correctly wired, there should be no N–G bond except at the source transformer (at what the NEC calls the source of the separately derived system (SDS), which is usually a transformer). Under this situation, the ground conductor should have virtually no current and therefore no voltage drop on it. In effect, the ground wire is available as a long test lead back to the N–G bond.

Shared neutrals: The three-phase circuits are usually wired so that they share a single neutral. The original idea was to duplicate on the branch circuit level the four wire (three phases and a neutral) wiring of panelboards. Theoretically, only unbalanced current should return on the neutral. If the loads supplied from the three-phase circuits are balanced, which is usually the case for linear loads then there should be minimum current returning on the neutral. However, this is not the case with nonlinear (electronic) loads, therefore the single neutral carries a much higher current. This old conventional method of wiring has become a problem with the growth of single-phase nonlinear loads. The problem is that zero sequence current from nonlinear loads, primarily third harmonic, will add up arithmetically and return on the neutral. In addition to being a potential safety problem because of overheating of an undersized neutral, the extra neutral current creates a higher N–G voltage. Remember that this N–G voltage subtracts from the L–N voltage available to the load. The measurement of N–G voltage of a shared neutral is shown in Figure 12.21.

The following guide is offered on the N–G measurements for assessing and resolving PQ problems.

1. A rule-of-thumb used by the industry is that N–G voltage of 2 V or less at the receptacle is okay, while a few volts or more indicates overloading; 5 V is seen as the upper limit. There is obviously some room for judgment in this measurement.
2. A high reading could indicate a shared branch neutral, i.e., a neutral shared between more than one branch circuit. This shared neutral simply increases the opportunities for overloading as well as for one circuit to affect another.
3. A certain amount of N–G voltage is normal in a loaded circuit. If the reading is stable at close to 0 V, suspect an illegal N–G bond in the receptacle (often due to loose strands of the neutral touching some ground point) or at the subpanel. Any N–G bonds other than those at the transformer source (and/or main panel) should be removed to prevent return currents flowing through the ground conductors.
4. If N–G voltage is low at the receptacle, you are in good shape. If it is high, then you still have to determine if the problem is mainly at the branch circuit level, or mainly at the panel level. Remember, assuming there is no illegal N–G bond in intervening panels or receptacles, your ground test lead goes all the way back to the source, so you are reading voltage drops all the way to the source.

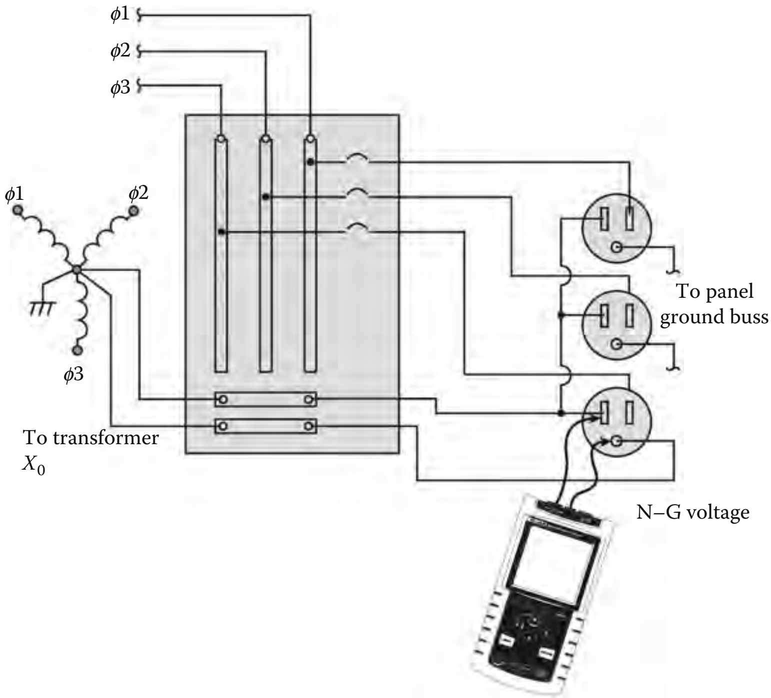


FIGURE 12.21
Measurement of N–G voltage of a shared neutral. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

Summary: The PQ measurements on receptacle of branch circuits as discussed above are summarized in the Table 12.7. The quality of power depends on quality wiring which is referred to in the industry as performance wiring. The basic intent of performance wiring is to maintain or restore correct L–N voltage to the load. There is a distinction between performance wiring and code minimum wiring. The NEC sets the absolute minimum requirements for a wiring and is primarily concerned with fire prevention and personnel safety. The NEC should, of course, never be violated, but it is also important to understand that the Code's objective is not to establish standards to achieve PQ. However, many facilities are finding that it pays to take the extra step and install or even retrofit facilities with performance wiring for correct operation of nonlinear loads. The attributes of performance wiring are listed in Table 12.8. There are also situations where receptacle-installed power conditioning devices are a good solution, either as a complement to the wiring changes or as an economically viable alternative to some wiring changes. By monitoring voltage events at the receptacle, any anomalies in the voltage (phase-neutral and N–G) can be detected. Predictive maintenance of PQ will ensure that that the sensitive loads are receiving the correct voltage.

TABLE 12.7

PQ Measurements on Receptacle of Branch Circuits

Voltage Measurement	Look for	Instrument
1. Waveform	Snapshot of severity of voltage distortion	Three-phase or single-phase analyzer
2. Peak voltage	Excessive flat-topping	Three-phase or single-phase analyzer, rms digital multimeter (peak min max)
3. Rms voltage	Low rms (steady state low rms or intermittent/cyclical sags)	Three-phase or single-phase analyzer, rms digital multimeter (peak min max)
4. Recording (short-term)	Sags, swells, interruptions while troubleshooter remains on-site (4 min to 1 h typical recording time)	Three-phase or single-phase analyzer (sags/swells or transients)
5. Recording (long-term)	Up to 4000 sags, swells, outages, transients	Three- or single-phase recorder
6. N–G	N–G voltage too high (or close to zero)	Three-phase or single-phase analyzer, rms digital multimeter (peak min max)

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

TABLE 12.8

Suggestions for Performance Wiring of Branch Circuits

Recommendation	Reason
Check for loose connections	It is easy to overlook the obvious
Eliminate shared neutrals. In new installations, pull individual neutrals for each branch circuit	Minimize load interaction and source impedance
Limit the number of receptacles per branch circuit to three	Minimize loading and load interaction
Limit length of 120 V branch circuits to 50 ft (15 m)	Minimize source impedance
Install dedicated branch circuits for all laser printers and copy machines. Dedicated circuits should be run in their own conduit	Keep victim loads and culprit loads separated. Conduit prevents coupling between circuits
Install a green wire ground (do not just depend on the conduit connection)	Maintain a continuous, low impedance ground
Label all panels, circuit breakers, and receptacles	This would not improve PQ, but it will sure make life easier for the troubleshooter and the installer

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

12.6.3.4 Measurement at the Service Panel

In the bottom-up approach, the next step is to inspect and monitor PQ attributes at the service panel. While inspecting, checkout for the following:

- Visual inspection
- Feeder conductor current test
- Neutral conductor current test (feeder and branch)
- Phase-to-neutral voltage test (feeder and branch)
- N–G voltage test (feeder)
- Circuit breaker voltage drop and current on branch phase conductors

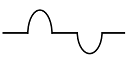
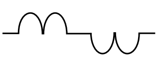
The service panel is where the effects of single-phase harmonic loads are easy to measure. A true-rms meter ensures accurate readings of nonlinear voltages and currents. Refer to Table 12.9 for comparison of average reading and true-rms reading multimeters.

Visual inspection

- Look for an illegal N–G bond in subpanels (see Figure 12.22). This is a violation of the NEC as well as of PQ wiring. It is also extremely common. If an illegal N–G bond is found in one panel at a site, it is likely to be in any number of them. Who knows why they are there: perhaps the installer was thinking that all panels are wired like residential service panels; or that the quickest way to reduce N–G voltage was to install a jumper, or that the more grounds the better. In any case, remove all illegal N–G bonds—no exceptions.
- Look for signs of overheating, such as discolored connecting lugs. Loose connections and excessive loading show up as heat. High

TABLE 12.9

Comparison of Average-Responding and True-rms Multimeters

		Multimeter Reading	
Waveform	**Description**	**Average-Sensing DMM**	**True-rms DMM**
	Sine wave	Correct	Correct
	Square wave (flat-top voltage)	10% high	Correct
	Current to single-phase diode rectifier	40% low	Correct
	Current to three-phase diode rectifier	5%–30% low	Correct

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

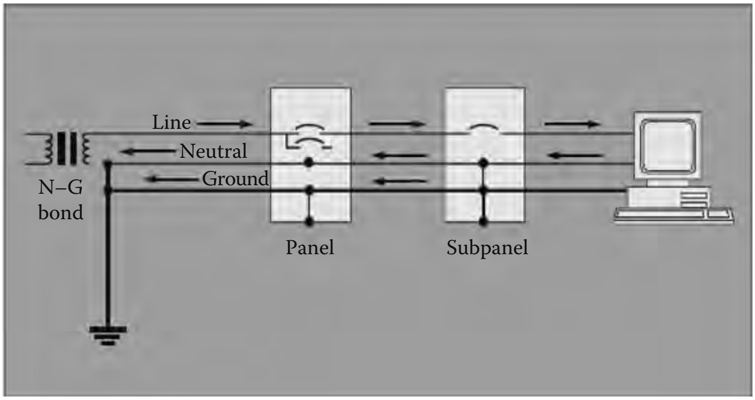


FIGURE 12.22
Subpanel N–G bonds cause load return currents to flow on ground conductors. This causes corrosion of pipes in grounding system as well as noisy grounds. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

levels of harmonic current that were not accounted for in the original wire sizing can also cause overheating. Infrared sensors are the preferred method for noncontact temperature measurement.

- Of particular concern is the size of the feeder neutral conductor. It has long been understood that any fundamental current resulting from the unbalance of single-phase loads among the three phases will return on the neutral, but a relatively recent phenomenon is the third harmonic (triplen) currents generated by nonlinear single-phase loads that all return on the neutral. The NEC-1996, the first time stated that "On a four-wire, three-phase wye circuit where the major portion of the load consists of nonlinear loads, there are harmonic currents present in the neutral conductor, and the neutral shall be considered to be a current-carrying conductor." (Article 310, "Notes to ampacity tables of 0 to 2000 Volts," Note 10.c). In effect, this requires that the neutral conductor should be at least equal to the size of the phase conductor. Many experts now recommend that the neutral be double the size of the phase conductor.
- Check for shared branch neutrals. Count neutral conductors for branch circuits: if there are fewer than the phase conductors, there are shared neutrals.
- Check tightness of conduit connections, especially if the conduit is being used exclusively as the grounding conductor (not recommended).

Measurements

The measurements that are to be made at the service panel are summarized in Table 12.10.

TABLE 12.10

Service Panel Measurements

Measurement	Look for	Instruments
1. Feeder phase current	Overloading and balance	Three-phase analyzer; true-rms clamp meter
2. Feeder neutral current	High currents from unbalanced fundamental and third harmonics	Three-phase analyzer; rms DMM to find dominant frequency
3. Feeder N–G voltage	High voltage indicates excessive current, near-zero indicates possible subpanel N–G bond	Same
4. Branch L–N voltage	Low voltage	Same
5. Branch neutral current	Shared neutrals	Same
6. Voltage drop across breaker contacts. Hot breakers	Worn contacts. Breakers in need of replacement	Same

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

Feeder phase current: Check each phase to make sure it is not overloaded. Also check for excessive unbalance.

Feeder neutral current: Measure the feeder neutral conductor for cumulative neutral current. Third harmonic currents from all three phases will add arithmetically in the neutral.

Feeder N–G voltage test: Measure the neutral-to-ground voltage, excessive N–G voltage indicates overloading. A N–G voltage at or very near zero indicates the existence of an illegal N–G bond in a subpanel.

Phase-to-neutral voltage test: Phase-to-neutral voltages are measured and recorded. They can be compared with receptacle L–N voltages to measure voltage drop.

Branch neutral current: Measure each branch neutral for overloading. The neutrals are measured instead of the phase conductors because they might share the return current of several phase conductors, yet they are not protected by breakers.

Circuit breaker voltage drop: The voltage drop across a set of breaker contacts will give you a quick measure of the wear of those contacts. Ideally, the voltage drop should be zero. In practice, there will be some voltage drop in the millivolt range, with the exact value being dependent on the load current. As a general rule, the voltage drop should not exceed 20–100 mV, depending on load. This test can also be performed as contact resistance measurement test. For more details refer to Chapter 8.

Summary: The recommendations for improving PQ at the service panel are summarized in Table 12.11.

TABLE 12.11

Service Panel Recommendations for Improving PQ

Recommendation	Reason
Limit length of 208 V feeder runs to 120 V subpanels to 200 ft (65 m)	Minimize source impedance and chance of voltage sags
Do not cascade (daisy chain) subpanels off of other subpanels if possible, and especially if the upstream panel is heavily loaded or has loads with high inrush currents	Upstream loads can cause voltage sags that will affect all downstream loads
Install a green wire ground conductor (do not rely on conduit connections)	Maintain a continuous, low impedance ground
	Minimize heat, voltage sags
Reduce the load on the panel if necessary	Reduce neutral return current (of the fundamental current)
Redistribute branch circuit loads to improve balance of the three phases	
Upsize the feeder neutral if necessary, to accommodate the third harmonic. This can be done by running another neutral in parallel.	Prevent overloading and heating of feeder neutral. Will reduce N–G voltage
Install third harmonic filter	Reduce neutral current
Nonlinear load panel	Manufacturer designed for nonlinear loads

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

In addition, the following should be considered to reduce the effects of harmonics if PQ problems are encountered at the service panel:

1. Double the neutral, going beyond the NEC requirements.
2. Use nonlinear load panels.
3. Install zero sequence filters. Such a filter effectively sinks the third harmonic, preventing overloading on the feeder neutral and the transformer.
4. Install zigzag transformers.
5. Replace older motor drives with newer, harmonics compensated ones.
6. Coping with harmonics involves larger neutrals and other methods of better being able to handle the harmonics that are present. Curing harmonics involves eliminating or reducing harmonics at their source.
7. In some cases, you can try to reduce the spread of harmonics in the system—for example, by putting certain loads on their own transformer and panel.
8. Many harmonics problems exist because of the way things are wired. Major rewiring is usually expensive in terms of downtime and so it is not normally the first method used to fight a harmonics problem.
9. Look carefully at the system before implementing any curing or coping method, so you do not wind up trying one after another until

you finally have to concede you should have rewired to begin with. The trial and error approach to fixing harmonics-related problems will usually delay an effective remedy, while dramatically raising the total cost of solving the problem.

10. With the right testing on the particular wiring, you can isolate the problem and proceed with reasonable certainty as to whether a wiring change is required or not.
11. To correct phase unbalance:
    - Redistribute loads to different phases to balance current in three phases. Look for single-phase loads being fed from primarily one phase in the panel.
    - This redistribution and balancing has many benefits. It reduces the risk of overheating any particular phase in the transformer, minimizes neutral current, reduces the chances of nuisance breaker tripping, and provides other advantages in terms of maintenance and reliability.
12. To correct loose connections, use an infrared sensor to check for hot spots. Do not use the method of retorquing to prevent loose connections. This nearly always results in overtorquing. A fastener does its job by stretching to near what is called its elastic limit. Once you exceed this, the fastener can never provide the clamping power it was designed to provide. And the clamping power is what allows that connection to be made tight. Once you exceed the elastic limit of a fastener, you have eliminated its ability to give you a reliable connection. Overtorquing can eventually strip threads. But, this does not mean you are okay as long as you do not strip the threads. What matters is how far you stretched the fastener. Once you exceed the torque limit for that fastener, it will no longer fasten properly.
13. Examine connections on wireways. For electrical metallic tubing (EMT), check that the coupling screws are not loose. Do not overtighten these. You cannot economically tighten conduit, as it is threaded together.
14. For critical circuits, consider installing a bonding jumper around every metallic wireway connection. For example, install a bonding jumper around each conduit coupling or around each EMT fitting.
15. As already mentioned, remove any load-side N–G bonds.

12.6.3.5 Measurements at the Transformer

Transformers are subject to overheating from harmonic currents. Transformers supplying nonlinear loads should be checked periodically to verify operation is within acceptable limits. Transformers are also critical to the integrity of the grounding system. Table 12.12 lists the various measurements needed for transformers.

TABLE 12.12

Measurements at the Distribution Transformer

Measurement	Look for	Instrument
1. kVA	Transformer loading. If loading exceeds 50%, check for harmonics and possible need for derating	Three-phase or single-phase analyzer
2. Harmonic spectrum	1. Harmonic orders/amplitudes present: third harmonic (single-phase loads), fifth, seventh (primarily three-phase loads) 2. Resonance of higher order harmonics 3. Effectiveness of harmonic trap filters	Same
3. THD	Harmonic loading within limits: voltage %THD <5%, current %THD <5%–20%	Same
4. *K*-factor	Heating effect on transformer from harmonic loads	Same
5. Ground currents	1. Objectionable ground currents are not quantified but are prohibited by the NEC 2. N–G bond in place 3. Electrical safety ground (ESG) connector to ground electrode (typically building steel) in place	Same and true-rms clamp-on multimeter

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

Measurements

Transformer loading (kVA): If the transformer has a four-wire wye secondary, which is the standard configuration for commercial single-phase loads, actual kVA can be easily determined by measuring phase currents supplied from each winding and then calculating each kVA, or measuring directly the kVA in each phase. The sum of individual phase kVA then gives the three-phase kVA of the transformer. Compare actual load kVA measured or calculated against nameplate kVA rating to determine % loading. If the load is balanced, a single measurement is sufficient. Transformers loaded at less than 50% are generally safe from overheating. However, as loads increase, measurements should be made periodically. At some point the transformer may require derating because of nonlinear loading.

Harmonic spectrum: The harmonic spectrum of the secondary (load) current will give an idea of the harmonic orders and amplitudes present:

In a transformer feeding single-phase loads, the principal harmonic of concern is the third. The third will add arithmetically in the neutral and circulate in the delta primary of a delta–wye transformer. The delta–wye connected transformer tends to isolate the rest of the system from the third harmonic currents from the primary system, however it does isolate the fifth, seventh or other nontriplen harmonics. The third harmonic and triplen harmonic current however will cause additional heating of the transformer.

In a transformer feeding three-phase loads which include drives or UPS systems with six-pulse converters, the fifth and seventh harmonic will tend to predominate. Excessive fifth is of particular concern because it is negative sequence. It will tend to produce counter-torque and overheating in polyphase motors.

Harmonic amplitudes normally decrease as the harmonic frequency goes up. If one frequency is significantly higher in amplitude than lower frequencies, we can suspect a resonant condition at that frequency. If such a condition is detected, be sure to take readings at capacitor banks to see if the caps are experiencing overcurrent/overvoltage conditions.

Before-and-after harmonic spectrum measurement is extremely valuable to determine if harmonic mitigation techniques, like trap filters, which are tuned to specific frequencies, are sized properly and are working as expected. Different harmonic frequencies affect equipment in different ways. See Table 12.13 for harmonic sequences and their effects on equipment.

TABLE 12.13

(a) Harmonic Frequencies, Sequences, and (b) Effects

Name	**First**	**Second**	**Third**	**Fourth**	**Fifth**	**Sixth**	**Seventh**	**Eighth**	**Ninth**
(a) Harmonic frequencies and sequences									
Frequency	60	120	180	240	300	360	420	480	540
Sequence	+	–	0	+	–	0	+	–	0

Sequence	Rotation	Effects (from skin effect, eddy current etc.)
(b) Effects of harmonic sequences		
Positive	Forward	Heating of conductors, circuit breakers, etc.
Negative	Reverse	Heating as above + motor heating and problems
Zero	None	Heating of the neutral conductor, bus and transformer neutral

Rule: If waveforms are symmetrical, even harmonics disappear.
Harmonics are classified as follows:

1. Order or number: Multiple of fundamental, hence, third is three times the fundamental, or 180 Hz.
2. Odd or even order: Odd harmonics are generated during normal operation of nonlinear loads. Even harmonics only appear when there is DC in the system. In power circuits, this only tends to occur when a solid-state component(s), such as a diode or SCR, fails in a converter circuit.
3. Sequence:
   a. Positive sequence. Main effect is overheating.
   b. Negative sequence. Create counter-torque in motors, i.e., will tend to make motors go backwards, thus causing motor overheating. Mainly fifth harmonic.
   c. Zero sequence. Add in neutral of three-phase, four-wire system. Mainly third harmonic.

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

THD: Check for THD of both voltage and current:

For voltage, THD should not exceed 5%. For current, THD should not exceed 5%–20%.

IEEE 519 sets limits for harmonics at the point of common coupling (PCC) between the utility and customer (EN50160 is the European standard that is equivalent to the IEEE 519). IEEE 519 addresses THD measurements that are taken at the PCC which is usually considered to be the main transformer between the utility and the customer. Therefore the THD measurements are often made at the secondary of the customer's main transformer, since that is the point most easily accessible to all parties. Some PQ practitioners have broadened the concept of PCC to include points inside the facility, such as on the feeder system, where harmonic currents being generated from one set of loads could affect another set of loads by causing significant voltage distortion. The emphasis is on improving in-plant PQ, rather than on simply not affecting utility PQ.

Voltage THD: THD has a long history in the industry. The underlying concept is that harmonic currents generated by loads will cause voltage distortion as they travel through the system impedance. This voltage distortion then becomes the carrier of harmonics system wide. If for example, the distorted voltage serves a linear load like a motor, it will then create harmonic currents in that linear load. By setting maximum limits for voltage distortion, we set limits for the system-wide impact of harmonics.

Voltage distortion, however, depends on source impedance, i.e., on system capacity. It is quite possible for the first (or second or third) customer to inject significant harmonic currents into the system and not cause voltage THD to exceed 5%. The entire responsibility for harmonic mitigation could fall on the last customers unlucky enough to push voltage THD over 5%, even if their particular harmonic load was relatively small.

Current THD: To restore some fairness to this situation, standards for maximum current harmonics were added, since current harmonics were under the control of the local facility and equipment manufacturer (remember, harmonic loads act as generators of harmonics). This emphasis on the mitigation of current harmonics at the load, including the not-too-distant requirement that the load generate virtually no harmonics, has become the prevailing regulatory philosophy. It puts the burden of responsibility on the local site and on the equipment manufacturers. For equipment manufacturers, EN50160, IEC/EN 61010, and IEC/EN 61000-4, are the applicable European standards. To meet requirement for the European market, USA manufacturers will have to meet the above listed standards. The limits set in IEEE 519 for harmonic currents depend on the size of the customer relative to the system capacity. The SCR is a measure of the electrical size of the customer in relation to the utility source. The smaller the customer (higher SCR), the less the potential impact on the utility source and the more generous the harmonic

TABLE 12.14

IEEE 519 Limits for Harmonic Currents at the PCC

	Odd Harmonics					
SCR = I_{sc}/I_L	**<11**	**11–17**	**17–23**	**23–35**	**>35**	**TDD**
<20	4.0%	2.0%	1.5%	0.6%	0.3%	5.0%
20–50	7.0%	3.5%	2.5%	1.0%	0.5%	8.0%
50–100	10.0%	4.5%	4.0%	1.5%	0.7%	12.0%
100–1000	12.0%	5.5%	5.0%	2.0%	1.0%	15.0%
>1000	15.0%	7.0%	6.0%	2.5%	1.4%	20.0%

Source: IEEE Std 519-1992, IEEE Recommended Practices and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electric Power Systems.

Note: IEEE allows these limits to be exceeded for up to one hour per day, while IEC allows them to be exceeded for up to 5% of the time.

limits. The larger the customer's power system (smaller SCR), the more stringent the limits on harmonic currents. Refer to Table 12.14 for current harmonic limits at the PCC.

Total demand distortion (TDD) and THD: TDD is the ratio of the current harmonics to the maximum load (I_L). It differs from THD in that THD is the ratio of harmonics to the instantaneous load. Why TDD instead of THD? Suppose you were running a light load (using a small fraction of system capacity), but those loads were nonlinear. THD would be relatively high, but the harmonic currents actually being generated would be low, and the effect on the supply system would in fact be negligible. Therefore, TDD allows harmonic load to be referenced to the maximum load: if harmonic load is high at maximum load, then we have to watch out for the effect on the supply source. So where does that leave current THD as a useful measurement. The closer the current THD reading(s) is taken to conditions of maximum load, the closer it approximates TDD. The one place not to apply the specs is at the individual harmonic-generating load. This will always be a worst-case distortion and a misleading reading. This is because as harmonics travel upstream, a certain amount of cancellation takes place (due to phase relationships which, for practical purposes, is difficult to predict). THD and TDD should be measured at a PCC, or at the source transformer.

K-factor: *K*-factor is a specific measure of the heating effect of harmonics in general and on transformers in particular. It differs from the THD calculation in that it emphasizes the frequency as well as the amplitude of the harmonic order. This is because heating effects increase as the square of the frequency.

A K-4 reading would mean that the stray loss heating effects are four times normal. A standard transformer is, in effect, a K-1 transformer. As with THD, it is misleading to make a K-factor reading at the load or receptacle because there will be a certain amount of upstream cancellation; transformer K-factor is what counts. Once the K-factor is determined, choose the next higher trade size. K-factor rated transformers are available in standard trade sizes of K-4, K-13, K-20, K-30, etc. K-13 is a common rating for a transformer supplying office loads. The higher ratings tend to be packaged into power distribution units (PDUs) which are specially designed to supply computer and other PQ sensitive installations. For additional information on K-rated transformer, refer to Section 12.5.2.1.

Ground currents: Two prime reasons for excessive ground current are illegal N–G bonds (in subpanels, receptacles, or even in equipment) and so-called IG rods:

Subpanel N–G bonds create a parallel path for normal return current to return via the grounding conductor. If the neutral ever becomes open, the equipment safety ground becomes the only return path; if this return path is high impedance, dangerous voltages could develop.

Separate IG rods almost always create two ground references at different potentials, which in turn cause a ground loop current to circulate in an attempt to equalize those potentials. A safety and equipment hazard is also created: in the case of lightning strikes, surge currents traveling to ground at different earth potentials will create hazardous potential differences.

Transformer grounding: The proper grounding of the transformer is critical. NEC Article 250 in general and 250-26 in particular address the grounding requirements of the seperately derived systems (SDS).

A ground reference is established by a grounding connection, typically to building steel (which, in turn, is required to be bonded to all cold water pipe, as well as to any and all earth grounding electrodes). Bonding should be by exothermic weld, not clamps that can loosen over time. The grounding electrode conductor itself should have as low a high-frequency impedance as possible (not least because fault current has high frequency components). Wide, flat conductors are preferred to round ones because they have less inductive reactance at higher frequencies. For the same reason, the distance between the grounding electrode conductor connection to the system (i.e., N–G bond at the transformer) and the grounding electrode (building steel) should be as short as possible.

The neutral and ground should be connected at a point on the transformer neutral bus. Although permitted, it is not advisable to make the N–G bond at the main panel, in order to maintain the segregation of normal return currents and any ground currents. This point at the transformer is the only point on the system where N–G should be bonded. Refer to Table 12.15 for inspection of the transformer grounding related to PQ problems.

TABLE 12.15

Inspection of the Transformer Grounding for PQ Problems

Inspection of Transformer Ground	Explanation
Check for N–G bond	A high impedance N–G bond will cause voltage fluctuation
Check for grounding conductor and integrity of connection to building steel (exothermic weld)	Fault currents will return to the source via these connections, so they should be as low impedance as possible
Check for tightness of all conduit connections	If the conduit is not itself grounded, it will tend to act as a choke for higher frequencies and limit fault current (remember that fault currents are not just at 60 Hz but have high-f components)
Measure for ground currents on the grounding conductor	Ideally there should be none, but there will always be some ground current due to normal operation or leakage of protective components (MOVs, etc.) connected from phase or neutral to ground. However, anything above an amp should be cause for suspicion (there is no hard and fast rule, but experienced PQ troubleshooters develop a feel for possible problems)

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

Solutions: There are a number of solutions for transformer-related PQ problems. They are

- Install additional distribution transformers
- Derate transformers
- Install *K*-rated transformers
- Used forced air cooling

SDS: The distribution transformer is the supply for a SDS, a term which is defined in the NEC (Article 100). The key idea is that the secondary of this transformer is the new source of power for all its downstream loads: this is a powerful concept in developing a PQ distribution system. The SDS accomplishes several important objectives, all beneficial for PQ:

- It establishes a new voltage reference. Transformers have taps which allow the secondary voltage to be stepped up or down to compensate for any voltage drop on the feeders.
- It lowers source impedance by decreasing, sometimes drastically, the distance between the load and the source. The potential for voltage disturbances, notably sags, is minimized.
- It achieves isolation. Since there is no electrical connection, only magnetic coupling, between the primary and secondary, the SDS isolates its loads from the rest of the electrical system. To extend this

isolation to high frequency disturbances, specially constructed isolation transformers provide a shield between the primary and secondary to shunt RF noise to ground. Otherwise, the capacitive coupling between primary and secondary would tend to pass these high-frequency signals right through.

- A new ground reference is established. Part of the definition of the SDS is that it "has no direct electrical connection, including a solidly connected grounded circuit conductor, to supply conductors originating in another system." (NEC 100) The opportunity exists to segregate the subsystem served by the SDS from ground loops and ground noise upstream from the SDS, and vice versa.

K-rated transformers: Harmonics cause heating in transformers, at a greater rate than the equivalent fundamental currents would. This is because of their higher frequency. There are three heating effects in transformers that increase with frequency

- **Hysteresis:** When steel is magnetized, magnetic dipoles all line up, so that the north poles all point one way, the south poles the other. These poles switch with the polarity of the applied current. The higher the frequency, the more often the switching occurs, and, in a process analogous to the effects of friction, heat losses increase.
- **Eddy currents:** Alternating magnetic fields create localized whirlpools of current that create heat loss. This effect increases as a square of the frequency. For example, a third harmonic current will have nine times the heating effect as the same current at the fundamental.
- **Skin effect**. As frequency increases, electrons migrate to the outer surface of the conductor. More electrons are using less space, so the effective impedance of the conductor has increased; at the higher frequency, the conductor behaves as if it were a lower gauge, lower ampacity, higher impedance wire. The industry has responded with two general solutions to the effects of harmonics on transformers: install a *K*-factor rated transformer or derate a standard transformer. Let us look at pros and cons of the *K*-factor approach first. *K*-factor is a calculation based on the rms value, %HD of the harmonic currents, and the square of the harmonic order (number). It is not necessary to actually perform the calculation because a harmonic analyzer will do that for you. The important thing to understand is that the harmonic order is squared in the equation and that is precisely where the high-frequency heating effects, like eddy current losses, are taken into account. *K*-rated transformers are designed to minimize and accommodate the heating effects of harmonics. *K*-rated transformers do not eliminate harmonics (unless additional elements like filters are added).

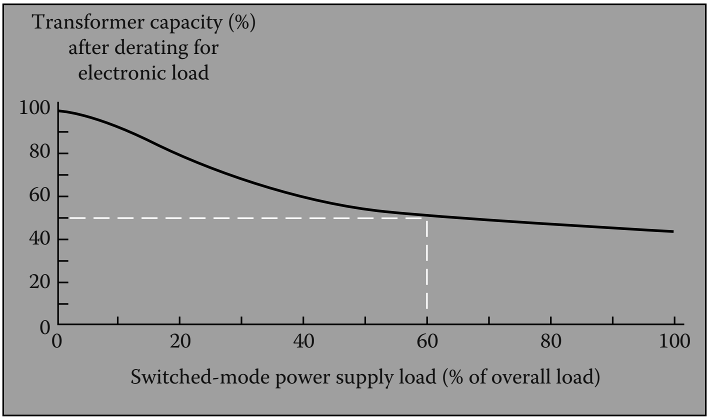


FIGURE 12.23
Transformer derating curve (IEEE Std 1100-1992, IEEE Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment.)

> They accommodate harmonics with techniques such as the use of a number of smaller, parallel windings instead of a single large winding: this gives more skin for the electrons to travel on. The primary delta winding is up-sized to tolerate the circulating third harmonic currents without overheating. The neutral on the secondary is also up-sized for third harmonics (typically sized at twice the phase ampacity).

Application issues with K-factor transformers: *K*-rated transformers have been widely applied, but there are certain issues with them. Many consultants do not see the need for using transformers with a rating higher than *K*-13 although *K*-20 and higher might be supplied as part of an integrated PDU. Also, early applications sometimes overlooked the fact that *K*-rated transformers necessarily have a lower internal impedance. Whereas a standard transformer has an impedance typically in the 5%–6% range, *K*-rated transformers can go as low as 2%–3% (lower as the *K*-rating increases). In retrofit situations, where a standard transformer is being replaced by a *K*-rated transformer of equivalent kVA, this may require new short-circuit calculations and resizing of the secondary overcurrent protective devices.

Derating standard transformers: Some facilities managers use a 50% derating as a rule-of thumb for their transformers serving single-phase, predominantly nonlinear loads. This means that a 150 kVA transformer would only supply 75 kVA of load. The derating curve (see Figure 12.23), taken from IEEE 1100-1992 (Emerald Book), shows that a transformer with 60% of its loads consisting of SMPS, which is certainly possible in a commercial office building, should in fact be derated by 50%. The following is an accepted method for calculating transformer derating for single-phase loads only. It is based on the very reasonable assumption that in single-phase circuits, the third harmonic will predominate and cause the distorted current waveform to look predictably peaked. Use a true-rms meter to make these current measurements:

1. Measure rms and peak current of each secondary phase. (Peak refers to the instantaneous peak, not to the inrush or peak load rms current).
2. Find the arithmetic average of the three rms readings and the three peak currents and use this average in step 3 (if the load is essentially balanced, this step is not necessary).
3. Calculate xformer harmonic derating factor:

$$\text{xHDF} = (1.414 * I_{\text{rms}})/I_{\text{peak}}$$

4. Or, since the ratio of peak/rms is defined as CF, this equation can be rewritten as:

$$\text{xHDF} = 1.414/\text{CF}$$

If the test instrument has the capability, measure the CF of each phase directly. If the load is unbalanced, find the average of the three phases and use the average in the above formula. Since a sine wave current waveform has a CF = 1.414, it will have an xHDF = 1; there will be no derating. The more the third harmonic, the higher the peak, the higher the CF. If the CF were 2.0, then the xHDF = 1.414/2 = 0.71. A CF = 3 gives us an xHDF = 0.47. A wave with CF = 3 is about as badly distorted a current waveform as you can expect to see on a single-phase distribution transformer.

Caution: This method does not apply to transformers feeding three-phase loads, where harmonics other than the third tend to predominate and CF is not useful as a simple predictor of the amount of distortion. A calculation for three-phase loads is available in ANSI/IEEE C57.110. However, there is some controversy about this calculation since it may underestimate the mechanical resonant vibrations that harmonics can cause, and that accelerate transformer wear above and beyond the effects of heat alone.

12.6.3.6 Electrical Noise

Electrical noise is the result of more or less random electrical signals getting coupled into circuits where they are unwanted, i.e., where they disrupt information-carrying signals. Noise occurs on both power and signal circuits, but generally speaking, it becomes a problem when it gets on signal circuits. Signal and data circuits are particularly vulnerable to noise because they operate at fast speeds and with low voltage levels. The lower the signal voltage, the less the amplitude of the noise voltage that can be tolerated.

The signal-to-noise ratio describes how much noise a circuit can tolerate before the valid information, the signal, becomes corrupted. Noise is one of the more mysterious subjects in PQ, especially since it must be considered

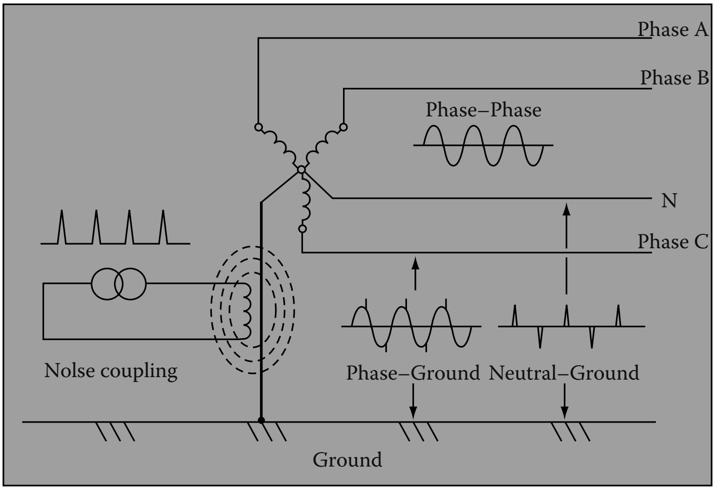


FIGURE 12.24
Noise coupling. Ground noise measured as ø-G or N–G noise. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

with its equally mysterious, grounding. To lessen the mystery, there are two key concepts to understand:

- The first is that electrical effects do not require direct connection (such as through copper conductors) to occur. For an electrician who's been trained to size, install and test wiring, this may not be intuitive. Yet think of lightning, or of the primary and secondary of an isolation transformer, or of the radio antenna: there is no direct, hard-wired connection, but somehow complete electrical circuits are still happening. The same electrical rules-of-behavior are in operation for noise coupling, as will be explained later.
- The second concept is that we can no longer stay in the realm of 60 Hz. One of the benefits of 60 Hz is that it is a low enough frequency that power circuits can be treated (almost) like DC circuits; in other words, basic Ohm's law applies. But when it comes to noise, we need to keep in mind that signal circuits occur at high frequencies, that noise is typically a broad spectrum of frequencies, and that we need to consider the frequency-dependent behavior of potential sources of noise.

Coupling mechanisms: There are four basic mechanisms of noise coupling (see Figure 12.24). It pays to understand them and how they differ one from the other because a lot of the troubleshooter's job will be to identify which coupling effect is dominant in a particular situation.

Capacitive coupling: This is often referred to as electrostatic noise and is a voltage-based effect, lightning discharge is just an extreme example. Any conductors separated by an insulating material (including air) constitute a capacitor—in other words, capacitance is an inseparable part of any circuit. The potential for capacitive coupling increases as frequency increases (capacitive reactance, which can be thought of as the resistance to capacitive coupling, decreases with frequency).

Inductive coupling: This is magnetic-coupled noise and is a current-based effect. Every conductor with current flowing through it has an associated magnetic field. A changing current can induce current in another circuit, even if that circuit is a single loop; in other words, the source circuit acts as a transformer primary with the victim circuit being the secondary. The inductive coupling effect increases with the following factors: (1) larger current flow, (2) faster rate of change of current, (3) proximity of the two conductors (primary and secondary), and (4) the more the adjacent conductor resembles a coil (round diameter as opposed to flat, or coiled as opposed to straight). Here are some examples of how inductive coupling can cause noise in power circuits:

Noise in power circuits: A transient surge, especially if it occurs on a high-energy circuit, causes a very fast change in current which can couple into an adjacent conductor. Lightning surges are a worst case, but common switching transients or arcing can do the same thing.

- If feeder cables are positioned such that there is a net magnetic field, then currents can be induced into ground cables that share the raceway.
- It is well-known that signal wires and power conductors should not be laid parallel to each other in the same raceway, which would maximize their inductive coupling, but instead be separated and crossed at right angles when necessary. Input and output cables should also be isolated from each other in the same manner. Magnetic fields are isolated by effective shielding. The material used must be capable of conducting magnetic fields (ferrous material as opposed to copper). The reason that a dedicated circuit (hot, neutral, and ground) should be run in its own metal conduit when possible is that is in effect magnetically shielded to minimize inductive coupling effects. Both inductive and capacitive coupling are referred to as near field effects, since they dominate at short distances and distance decreases their coupling effects. This helps explain one of the mysteries of noise—how slight physical repositioning of wiring can have such major effects on coupled noise.

Conducted noise: While all coupled noise ends up as conducted noise, this term is generally used to refer to noise that is coupled by a direct, galvanic (metallic) connection. Included in this category are circuits that have shared conductors (such as shared neutrals or grounds). Conducted noise could be high frequency, but may also be 60 Hz. These are some common examples of connections that put objectionable noise currents directly onto the ground:

- Subpanels with extra N–G bonds.
- Receptacles miswired with N and G switched.
- Equipment with internal solid-state protective devices that have shorted from line or neutral to ground, or that have not failed but have normal leakage current. This leakage current is limited by UL to 3.5 mA for plug-connected equipment, but there is no limit for permanently wired equipment with potentially much higher leakage currents. (Leakage currents are easy to identify because they will disappear when the device is turned off).
- Another common example is the so-called IG rod. When it is at a different earth potential than the source grounding electrode, a ground loop current occurs. This is still conducted noise, even though the direct connection is through the earth.
- Datacom connections that provide a metallic path from one terminal to another can also conduct noise. In the case of single-ended, unbalanced connections (RS-232), the connection to terminal ground is made at each end of the cable. This offers a path for ground currents if the equipment at each end is referenced to a different power source with a different ground.

RFI: RFI ranges from 10 kHz to the 10s of MHz (and higher). At these frequencies, lengths of wire start acting like transmitting and receiving antennas. The culprit circuit acts as a transmitter and the victim circuit is acting as a receiving antenna. RFI, like the other coupling mechanisms, is a fact of life, but it can be controlled (not without some thought and effort, however).

RFI noise reduction employs a number of strategies:

- Fiber optic cable, of course, is immune to electrical noise.
- Shielded cabling (such as coax cables) attempts to break the coupling between the noise and signal.
- Balanced circuits (such as twisted pair) do not break the coupling, but instead take advantage of the fact that the RFI will be coupled into both conductors (signal and return). This noise (called CM noise) is then subtracted, while the signal is retained. In effect, the balanced circuit creates a high impedance for the coupled noise.
- Another example of the high-impedance-to-noise approach is the use of RF chokes. Whether used with data or power cables, RF chokes can offer effective high-frequency impedance (X_L increases with frequency).
- A low-impedance path can be used to shunt away the noise. This is the principle behind filtering and the use of decoupling caps (low impedance to high frequency, but open at power line frequencies). But a sometimes over looked, yet critical, aspect is that the

ground path and plane must be capable of handling high-frequency currents. High-frequency grounding techniques are used to accomplish this. The SRG, first developed for raised floor computer room installations, is an effective solution. It is essentially an equipotential ground plane at high frequency.

Signal grounding: To understand the importance of clean signal grounds, let us discuss the distinction between DM versus CM signals. Imagine a basic two-wire circuit: supply and return. Any current that circulates or any voltage read across a load between the two wires is called DM (the terms normal mode, transverse mode, and signal mode are also used). The DM signal is typically the desired signal (just like 120 V at a receptacle). Imagine a third conductor, typically a grounding conductor. Any current that flows now through the two original conductors and returns on this third conductor is common to both of the original conductors. The CM current is the noise that the genuine signal has to overcome. CM is all that extra traffic on the highway. It could have gotten there through any of the coupling mechanisms, such as magnetic field coupling at power line frequency or RFI at higher frequencies. The point is to control or minimize these ground or CM currents, to make life easier for the DM currents.

Measurement: CM currents can be measured with current clamps using the zero-sequence technique. The clamp circles the signal pair (or, in a three-phase circuit, all three-phase conductors and the neutral, if any). If signal and return current are equal, their equal and opposite magnetic fields cancel. Any current read must be CM; in other words, any current read is current that is not returning on the signal wires, but via a ground path. This technique applies to signal as well as power conductors. For fundamental currents, a clamp meter or digital multimeter (DMM) + clamp would suffice, but for higher frequencies, a high bandwidth instrument like the Fluke 43 PQ analyzer or scope meter should be used with a clamp accessory.

12.6.3.7 Transients

Transients should be distinguished from surges. Surges are a special case of high-energy transient which result from lightning strikes (see Section 12.6.3.8). Voltage transients are lower energy events, typically caused by equipment switching. They are harmful in a number of ways:

- They deteriorate solid-state components. Sometimes a single high-energy transient will puncture a solid-state junction, sometimes repetitive low-energy transients will accomplish the same thing. For example, transients which exceed the PIV rating of diodes are a common cause of diode failure.
- Their high-frequency component (fast rise times) cause them to be capacitively coupled into adjoining conductors. If those conductors

are carrying digital logic, that logic will get trashed. Transients also couple across transformer windings unless special shielding is provided. Fortunately this same high-frequency component causes transients to be relatively localized, since they are damped (attenuated) by the impedance of the conductors (inductive reactance increases with frequency).

- Utility capacitor switching transients are an example of a commonly occurring high-energy transient (still by no means in the class of lightning) that can affect loads at all levels of the distribution system. They are a well known cause of nuisance tripping of VFDs (ASDs): they have enough energy to drive a transient current into the DC link of the drive and cause an overvoltage trip. Transients can be categorized by waveform. The first category is impulsive transients, commonly called spikes, because a high-frequency spike protrudes from the waveform. The cap switching transient, on the other hand, is an oscillatory transient because a ringing waveform rides on and distorts the normal waveform. It is lower frequency, but higher energy.

Causes: Transients are unavoidable. They are created by the fast switching of relatively high currents. For example, an inductive load like a motor will create a kickback spike when it is turned off. In fact, removing a Wiggy (a solenoid voltage tester) from a high-energy circuit can create a spike of thousands of volts. A capacitor, on the other hand, creates a momentary short circuit when it is turned on. After this sudden collapse of the applied voltage, the voltage rebounds and an oscillating wave occurs. Not all transients are the same, but as a general statement, load switching causes transients. In offices, the laser copier/printer is a well-recognized "bad guy" on the office branch circuit. It requires an internal heater to kick in whenever it is used and every 30 s or so when it is not used. This constant switching has two effects: the current surge or inrush can cause repetitive voltage sags; the rapid changes in current also generate transients that can affect other loads on the same branch.

Measurement and recording: Transients can be captured by digital storage oscilloscopes (DSOs). The Fluke 43 PQ analyzer, which includes DSO functions, has the ability to capture, store and subsequently display up to 40 transient waveforms. Events are tagged with time and date stamps (real-time stamps). Another voltage event recorder, such as Fluke's VR101S will also capture transients at the receptacle.

Peak voltage and real-time stamps are provided.

TVS suppressors (TVSS): Fortunately, transient protection is not expensive. Virtually all electronic equipment has (or should have) some level of protection built in. One commonly used protective component is the MOV which clips the excess voltage. TVSS are applied to provide additional transient protection. TVSS are low voltage (600 V) devices and are tested and certified to UL

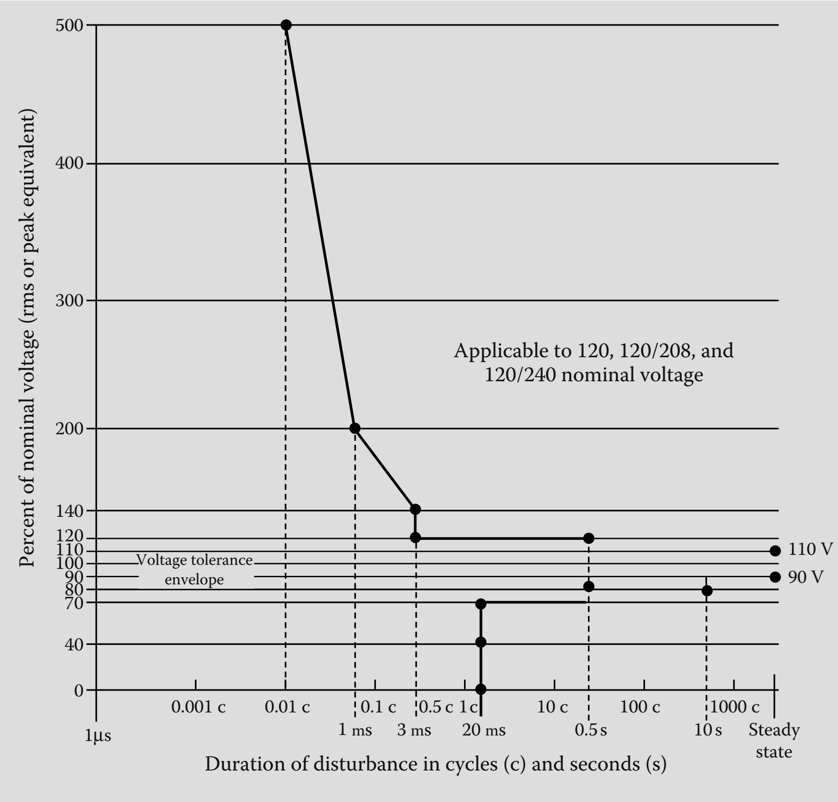


FIGURE 12.25
ITIC susceptibility profile (curve) for sensitive equipment (electronic equipment). (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

1449. UL 1449 rates TVSS devices by grade, class, and mode. As an example, the highest rating for a TVSS would be grade A (6000 V, 3000 A), class 1 (let-through voltage of 330 V max), and mode 1 (L–N suppression). The proper rating should be chosen based on the load's protection needs:

- A lower grade might result in a TVSS that lasts 1 year instead of 10 years. The solid-state components in a TVSS will themselves deteriorate as they keep on taking hits from transients.
- A lower class might permit too much let-through voltage that could damage the load. Class 1 is recommended for SMPS.
- A mode 2 device would pass transients to ground, where they could disrupt electronic circuit operation.

Voltage susceptibility profile: The new Information Technology Industry Council (ITIC) profile (Figure 12.25) is based on extensive research and updates of the Computer Business Equipment Manufacturers Association

(CBEMA) curve. The CBEMA curve now the ITIC curve was the original voltage susceptibility profile for manufacturers of computers and other sensitive equipment. Similar curves are being developed for 230 V/50 Hz equipment and for ASDs. Sensitive equipment should be able to survive events inside the curve. Events outside of the curve could require additional power conditioning equipment or other remedial action. A major change in ITIC is that the ride-through times for outages as well as the tolerance for sags have both been increased. The field troubleshooter must keep in mind that the profiles are recommendations and that a particular piece of equipment may or may not match the profile. The profiles are useful because, when recorded events are plotted against them, they give a general idea of the voltage quality at a particular site.

12.6.3.8 Lightning

Lightning protection plays a vital part in the overall PQ of an installation. Lightning occurrence varies by geography, with Florida being the lightning capital of the United States. Lightning does not have to score a direct hit to be disruptive. It has so much energy that it couples surges into conductors, both those exposed to air and those buried in the ground. Basic lightning protection has two main requirements:

Effective grounding: A low impedance of the grounding electrode system to earth is important. But, equally important is that all parts of the grounding system be bonded together: all ground electrodes are bonded (and extraneous ground rods removed), structural steel is tied to service entrance ground, all grounding connections are tight and free of corrosion, etc. This minimizes the phenomenon called transferred earth potential, where large surge currents create large voltage differences between two ground points with different impedances to earth. This same grounding practice is important for performance reasons, as it tends to minimize ground loop currents that circulate in an attempt to equalize ground potentials.

Surge arrestors: A surge arrestor "is a protective device for limiting surge voltages by discharging or bypassing surge current…," per NEC Article 280. Since the surge current is bypassed to ground, surge arrestors are only as effective as the grounding system. Surge arrestors are sized for the location where they are installed. Three categories are defined (ANSI/IEEE C62.41-2002).

A surge arrestor at an outside installation is closest to the lightning event and must absorb most of the energy. This is considered a Category C location (corresponding to CAT IV in IEC 61010). Category B refers to feeders and distribution panels (equivalent to CAT III in IEC 61010), and Category A refers to receptacle connected surge arrestors (equivalent to CAT II).

Surge arrestor or TVSS: A surge arrestor is there to protect the insulation and, ultimately, prevent failures that could lead to fires. It is not necessarily designed

TABLE 12.16

Inspection of Lightning Protection System

Check	Look for	Reason
Surge arrestors	Installed at main service panel, subpanels, and critical equipment	Lightning is high energy and needs multilevel protection
	To minimize high frequency impedance, leads should be short, with no bends	Lightning has high frequency components. Shorter leads have less X_L and less impedance at high frequency
Grounding electrode conductors at service entrance or at SDS	Grounding electrode connections are not loose or corroded	Ensure low impedance ground to minimize potential to ground with lightning induced surges
	Grounding conductor should not be coiled or have unnecessary bends	Minimize impedance to high-frequency components of lightning
Grounding electrode bonding	All grounding electrodes should be effectively bonded together (<0.1 W)	Prevent difference in earth potential between electrodes in event of lightning
Separately driven (isolated) electrode	Electrode and equipment ground should both be tied to building steel, and thereby to the service entrance ground	Same as above—entire grounding system should be an equipotential ground plane for lightning
Datacom cabling that runs between buildings	Surge arrestors on datacom cabling or use of fiber optic cables	Datacom cabling run between buildings can be a path for surge currents, due to differences between building earth potentials

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.
Note: Lightning protection is covered in a number of standards and codes, including:
NEC*:* Articles 250 and 280
National Fire Protection Association: NFPA 780
Lightning Protection Institute: LPI-175
UL-96 and UL-96 A

to protect sensitive equipment. That's the job of the TVSS. Refer to an inspection guide on Inspection of Lightning Protection System which is given in Table 12.16.

12.6.3.9 Polyphase Induction Motors

About two-thirds of the electric power in the United States is consumed by motors, with industrial three-phase motors above 5 hp (7 kW) being by far the bulk of that load. They are linear loads and therefore do not contribute to harmonics. They are, however, the major contributor to reduced DPF, which is a measurement of the effective use of system capacity.

Measurements

Voltage unbalance: Voltage unbalance should not exceed 1%–2% (unless the motor is lightly loaded). The reason for such a small tolerance for voltage unbalance is because it has a very large effect on current unbalance, in the neighborhood of 8:1. In other words, a voltage unbalance of 1% can cause current unbalance of 8%. Current unbalance will cause the motor to draw more current than it otherwise would. Also, the unbalance voltage being delivered to motor terminals will cause the flow of negative sequence currents. Negative sequence currents produce opposing torque which the motor has to overcome therefore it will draw more current, thereby overheating the motor. For example a 3% voltage unbalance raises the motor winding temperature by 25% (refer to Section 10.10 in Chapter 10). The net effect of voltage unbalance is more heat and heat is the enemy of motor life, since it deteriorates the winding insulation.

Voltage unbalance can be caused by severe load unbalance but it could just as easily be caused by loose connections and worn contacts. Example of voltage unbalance calculation can be made as follows:

Example

$$\%V_{\text{unbalance}} = \frac{\text{Max deviation from average}}{\text{Average (of three phases)}} \times 100$$

$$\frac{3}{472} \times 100 = 0.64\% < 1\%$$

Voltage %THD and harmonic spectrum: Voltage THD should not exceed 5% on any phase. If the voltage distortion on any phase is excessive, it can cause current unbalance. The usual culprit is the fifth harmonic and therefore the harmonic spectrum should be examined for the fifth in particular. The fifth is a negative sequence harmonic which creates counter-torque in the motor. A motor fed by a voltage with high fifth harmonic content will tend to draw more current than otherwise. This is a major problem when across-the-line or soft-start motors share the same bus with VFDs.

Current unbalance: To find current unbalance, measure amps in all three phases. Do the same calculation as for voltage unbalance. In general, current unbalance should not exceed 10%. However, unbalance can usually be tolerated if the high leg reading does not exceed the nameplate full load amps (FLA) and service factor (SF). The FLA and SF are available on the motor nameplate. If the voltage unbalance and the voltage THD are within limits, high current unbalance can be an indication of motor problems, such as damaged winding insulation or uneven air gaps. Current measurement will also find single-phasing. If a three-phase motor loses a phase (perhaps caused by a blown fuse or loose connection), it may still try to run single-phase off the remaining two phases. Since the motor acts like a constant power device, it will simply draw additional current in an attempt to provide sufficient torque. A voltage measurement alone will not necessarily find this condition, since voltage is induced by the two powered windings into the nonpowered winding.

Loading: Measure current draw of the motor. If the motor is at or near its FLA rating (times the SF multiplier), it will be more sensitive to the additional heating from harmonics, as well as current unbalance. A motor that is only lightly loaded is usually safe from overheating. On the other hand, its efficiency and DPF are both less than optimal. Most motors reach maximum efficiency at 60%–80% of full load rating. DPF is maximum at rated load (including SF) and drops off, especially at less than 80% of rated load. This leads to the conclusion that, to the degree a motor load is constant and predictable, 80% of rated load is the most efficient operating range.

Inrush (lock rotor current): Motors which are started across-the-line (as opposed to those using soft-starts or drives) draw a current inrush, also called locked rotor current. This inrush tapers off to normal running current as the motor comes up to speed.

- Older motors draw an inrush of typically 500%–600% of the running current. Newer energy efficient designs draw brief inrushes as high as 1200% of running current, a direct result of the lower impedances which help make them more energy efficient in the first place.
- High torque, high horse power motor loads require proportionally higher inrush.
- Motor loads started at the same time will have a cumulative inrush. Another source of inrush is UPS and VFD systems with diode converters. They draw inrush current as their capacitor banks first charge.

Effects of inrush current:

1. Inrush causes voltage sags if the source voltage is not stiff enough. Therefore, relays and contactor coils might drop out (typically, the sag would have to get as bad as about 70% of normal line voltage); or, if they hold in, their contacts might chatter (especially if the additional load causes a long-term undervoltage). Control circuits might reset or lockup (at 90% and below). Drives might trip off-line (undervoltage trip).
2. High peak demand periods, which may cause higher utility bills.
3. Cycling loads can cause periodic sags, which might show up as flickering lights.
4. If the motor is required to start up a high torque load, the inrush can be relatively prolonged (e.g., 10 to 20 s or more) and this can cause nuisance tripping as the overload heaters trip the motor starter.

PF: If the PF of the motor is low, it can be improved by applying capacitors to supply the required reactive volt-amperes (kVAR). To size PF correction capacitors, it is necessary to measure the DPF and active power consumption (kW) of the motor load. These measurements assume that the motor voltage and current are balanced. Therefore, before undertaking PF correction, first make sure that voltage and current unbalance are within limits. Either problem can shorten motor life and should take priority over DPF correction.

12.6.3.10 PQ Measurements of VFDs

AC VFDs can be both a source and a victim of poor PQ. VFDs are also referred to as ASDs. Although ASDs are usually depicted as the culprit in the PQ scenario, there are ways in which they can be a victim load as well. ASDs can be affected as follows.

Capacitor switching transients: High-energy (relatively low frequency) transients that are characteristic of utility capacitor switching can pass through the service transformer, feeders, and converter front-end of the drive directly to the DC link bus, where it will often cause a DC link overvoltage trip. Input diodes could also be blown out by these transients.

Voltage distortion: If high-voltage distortion shows up as excessive flat-topping, it will prevent DC link capacitors from charging fully and will diminish the ride-through capability of the drive. Thus a voltage sag which would not normally affect a drive will cause the drive to trip on undervoltage.

Grounding: Improper grounding will affect the internal control circuits of the drive, with unpredictable results.

ASDs as culprit loads: A drive can definitely be a culprit load and have a major impact on system PQ. But before discussing the problems, let us put in perspective the positive effects of drives on PQ. First of all, they offer built-in soft-start capabilities. This means there will be no inrush current and no voltage sag effect on the rest of the system. Second, if the drive is of the PWM type, with a diode converter front-end, the DPF is high (commonly >95% at rated load) and more or less constant throughout the range. This means that drives can reduce energy usage and correct for DPF at the same time. It is a good thing too, because drives and PF correction capacitors do not mix. Capacitors are vulnerable to the higher frequency harmonic currents generated by drives, since their impedance decreases as frequency increases. The type of drive has a major impact on the PQ symptoms, because of the different converter designs (converters or rectifiers turn AC to DC and are the first stage of the drive). There are two major types of converter design.

1. *SCR converter with VSI/variable voltage inverter (VVI) drives*
Commonly called six-step drives, they use SCRs in their converter front-ends (the following discussion also applies to CSI drives, which also use SCRs). VSI (Figure 12.26) and CSI drive designs tended to be applied on larger drives

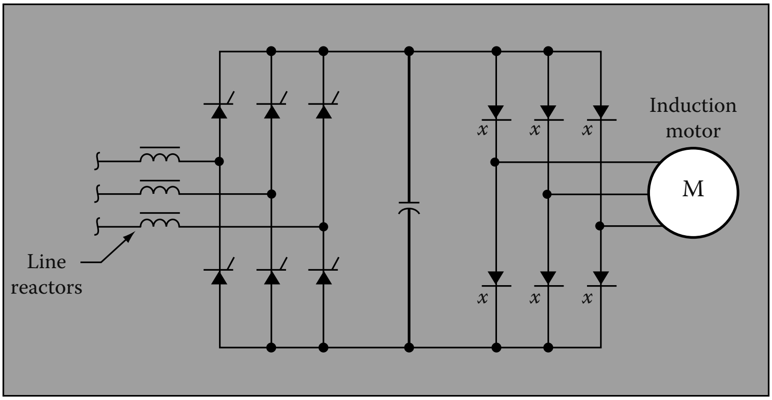


FIGURE 12.26
Electrical circuit of a VSI drive. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

(>100 hp). SCR converters control the DC link voltage by switching on (or gating) current flow for a portion of the applied sine wave and switching off at the zero-crossing points. Unlike diodes, SCRs require control circuits for gate firing.

For the SCR converter, there are three main issues that affect line-side PQ:

- Commutation notches. SCR switching or commutation is such that there are brief moments when two phases will both be "ON." This causes what is in effect a momentary short circuit that tends to collapse the line voltage. This shows up as notches on the voltage waveform. These notches cause both high V-THD and transients. The solution is to place a reactor coil or isolation transformer in series with the drive's front end to clean up both problems.
- DPF declines as drive speed decreases. This is not as serious a problem as it sounds, because the power requirement of the drive-motor-load decreases even more.
- Harmonic currents, typically the fifth and seventh, are generated by VSI drives.

2. *Diode converter with PWM drives*

The other and more common converter design uses diodes and is used in the PWM drive (Figure 12.27). The diodes require no switching control circuitry. One of the main trends in the industry has been the proliferation of PWM drives, mainly due to the continued development of fast switching, efficient insulated gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs) used in the inverter section of the drive (inverters turn DC to AC). For all practical purposes, PWM drives are the industry standard. For the diode converter, the main PQ issue is harmonics. The actual harmonic orders being generated depend on the number of

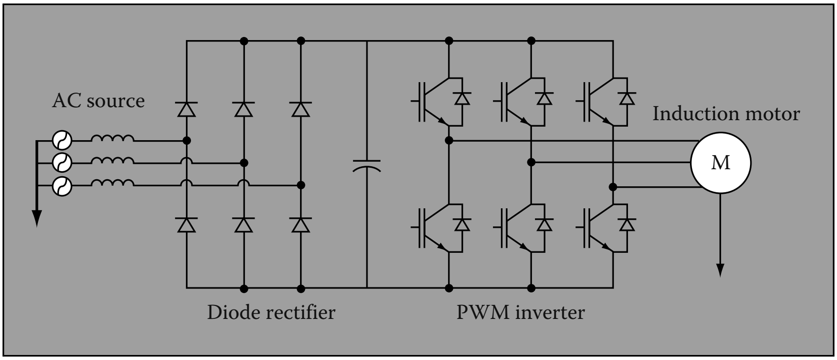


FIGURE 12.27
Electrical circuit of the PWM drive. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

diodes in the front end. For three-phase conversion, a minimum set of six diodes is required. This six-pulse converter will generate fifth and seventh harmonics. If a 12-pulse converter were used, the 11th and 13th harmonics will be generated instead of the fifth and sixth—and, very importantly, for the same load, the amplitude of the 11th and 13th would be considerably less than the 5th and 6th. Therefore, the THD would be less. The vast majority of drives, however, are six-pulse PWM style, which is one reason we see so much fifth harmonic on the system.

Harmonics solutions: There are a number of solutions to mitigating drive-generated harmonics. They are the following:

1. Harmonic trap filters (Figure 12.28)
These are typically LC networks connected in parallel at the source of the harmonics (in other words, at the drive input). They are tuned to just below the fifth harmonic (typically 280 Hz) and will tend to sink both fifth and much of the seventh harmonic. Obviously, they must be sized to the harmonic-generating load.

2. Phase-shift transformers
This can be as simple as a delta–wye transformer feeding one drive(s) and a delta–delta feeding another drive(s). There is a 30° phase-shift effect between these two configurations, which effectively results in cancellation of harmonics at the closest upstream PCC. The cancellation effect is optimal when both loads are more or less equal.

12.6.3.11 Power System Resonance

Is it possible to install PF correction capacitors and have PF get worse? It certainly is and a starting place to understanding this puzzle lies in the distinction between DPF and total PF. The penalty for not understanding the

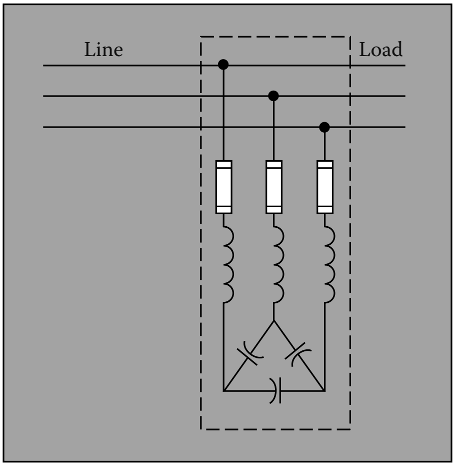


FIGURE 12.28
Harmonic trap filter. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

difference can be blown capacitors and wasted investment. Total PF and DPF are the same in one basic sense: they are the ratio of real power to apparent power, or watts to VA. DPF is the classic concept of PF. It can be considered as the PF at the fundamental frequency. Total PF now includes the effects of fundamental and of harmonic currents (it is also referred to as true PF or DPF) (see Figure 12.13). It follows that with the presence of harmonics, PF is always lower than DPF and is also a more accurate description of total system efficiency than DPF alone. Strictly speaking, the term PF refers to total PF, but in practice can also be used to refer to DPF. Needless to say, this introduces some confusion into discussions of PF. You have to be clear which one you are talking about.

DPF: Lower DPF is caused by motor loads which introduce the need for reactive power (VARs). The system has to have the capacity, measured in VA to supply both VARs and watts. The more VARs needed, the larger the VA requirement and the smaller the DPF. The cost of VARs is accounted for in a PF penalty charge.

Utilities often levy additional charges for DPF below a certain level; the actual DPF number varies, but typical numbers are 0.85 to 0.9. To reduce VARs caused by motor loads, PF correction capacitors are installed. Upstream system capacity, both in the plant and at the utility level, is released and available for other uses (Figure 12.29). Historically, this has been the gist of the PF story: a relatively well-known problem with a relatively straightforward solution.

Harmonics and capacitors: Harmonics have had a dramatic impact on the application of PF correction. The motor and capacitor loads described above are all linear and for all practical purposes generate no harmonics. Nonlinear

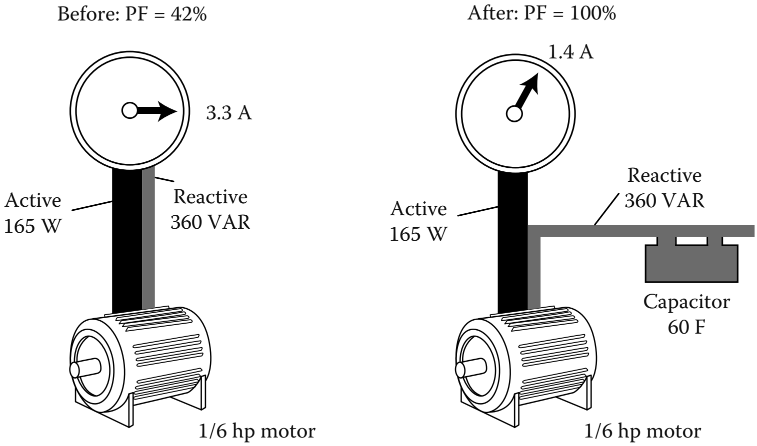


FIGURE 12.29
Capacitor corrects DPF. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

loads such as VFDs, on the other hand, do generate harmonic currents. Take a plant which is step-by-step putting VFDs on its motor loads.

VFDs generate significant harmonic currents (fifth and seventh on six-pulse converter drives). Suddenly the fuses on existing PF correction caps start blowing. Since these are three-phase caps, only one of the three fuses might blow. Now you have got unbalanced currents, possibly unbalanced voltages. The electrician replaces the fuses. They blow again. He puts in larger fuses. Now the fuses survive, but the capacitor blows. He replaces the capacitor. Same thing happens. What is going on? Harmonics are higher frequency currents and higher the frequency, the lower the impedance of a cap. The cap acts like a sink for harmonic currents.

Power system resonance: In a worst-case scenario, the inductive reactance (X_L) of the transformer and the capacitive reactance (X_C) of the PF correction cap form a parallel resonant circuit: $X_L = X_C$ at a resonant frequency which is the same as or close to a harmonic frequency. The harmonic current generated by the load excites the circuit into oscillation. Currents that are many times greater than the exciting current then circulate within this circuit. This so-called tank circuit can severely damage equipment, and it will also cause a drop in PF. This resonant condition often appears only when the system is lightly loaded, because the damping effect of resistive loads is removed. In other words, we have what the audio buffs call a high Q circuit. (Figure 12.30).

Start with harmonics mitigation: The correct solution path starts with measuring and mitigating the harmonics generated by the drives. Harmonic trap filters would generally be called for. These trap filters are installed locally on the line side of the drive. Their effect is very much like the traditional PF correction cap, in two senses: they reduce DPF as well as PF, and also they

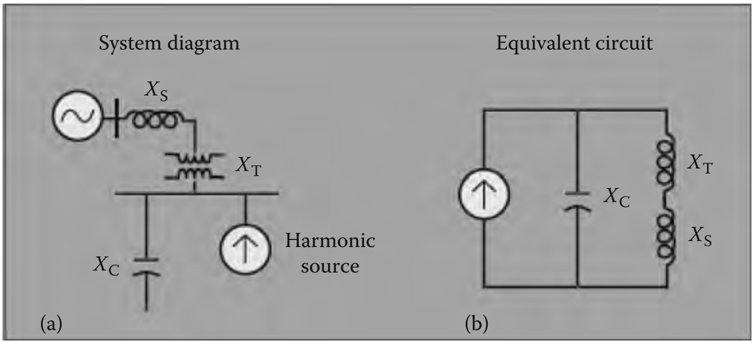


FIGURE 12.30
Resonant circuit when $X_C = (X_T + X_S)$. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

localize the circulation of the problem harmonics (generally the fifth). Harmonics mitigation and traditional DPF correction should be addressed as one systems issue. In other words, manage total PF, not just DPF.

12.6.3.12 Commercial Lighting Load

Lighting loads are a major load for many large facilities. Evaluating these circuits is important for both energy conservation and PQ (see Table 12.17). Keep in mind that commercial lighting loads are wired single phase, with the loads connected from phase-to-neutral. Typically, the phase-to-phase voltage is 480 V, with the phase-to-neutral voltage at 277 V. Measurements must be taken at the lighting panel, one phase at a time, since power consumption and PF could vary on each phase. Consider the following factors from the PQ perspective.

TABLE 12.17
Measurements on Commercial Lighting Loads

Measurement	Look for	Instrument
1. Power consumption (kW)	Balance among three phases	Three-phase/single-phase analyzer
2. DPF and PF	Magnetic ballast will have low DPF Electronic ballast may have low total PF, although new generations of ballast often have harmonic mitigation built-in	Same
3. %THD	Current %THD <20% is desirable	Same
4. Voltage stability	Unstable voltage can cause lights to flicker	Same

Source: Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.

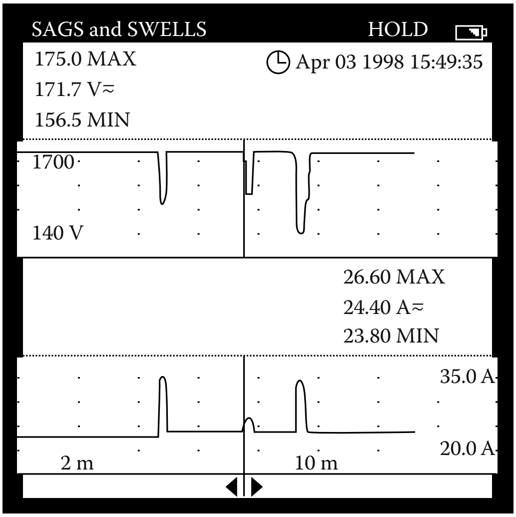


FIGURE 12.31
Fluke 43 trends voltage (*top*) and current (*bottom*) simultaneously. Current swells/inrush caused voltage sags, indicating that a load downstream from the measurement point is the cause of the disturbance. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

Power consumption: Excessive phase unbalance can cause voltage unbalance, which in turn can affect three-phase motor loads.

PF: Ballast with low PF might have lower cost-of-purchase but higher cost-of-operation.

THD: Current THD should be considered when selecting ballast, especially if there is a possibility of transformer overloading.

Voltage stability: The sags and swells mode of the Fluke 43 (or similar instrument) is especially useful for recording repetitive voltage sags which can show up as flickering lights. Both current and voltage are monitored simultaneously (Figure 12.31). This helps us to tell if sags are downstream of the measuring point (load related) or upstream (source related). For example, if voltage sags while current swells, a downstream current inrush likely caused the sag. If both voltage and current sag at the same time then some event upstream has caused the sags. It could be an upstream load like a motor on a parallel branch circuit which drew down the feeder voltage. Or it could be source voltage related, for example, a lightning strike or breaker trip/reclosure on the utility distribution system.

12.6.3.13 Summary of PQ Problems

The following summary is provided of the PQ problems discussed in this section beginning from utility source all the way down to 120 receptacles. These PQ problems are:

Lightning: Can be extremely destructive if proper surge protection is not installed. It also causes sags and undervoltages on the utility line if far away. If close by, it causes swells and overvoltages. But in the final analysis, lightning is an act of nature and not in the same category as the damage man does to himself.

Utility automatic breaker reclosure: Causes short duration sags/outages, but better than the alternative, a longer-term outage.

Utility capacitor switching: Causes a high-energy voltage disturbance (looks like an oscillating transient riding on the wave). If the cap bank is near the facility, this transient can propagate all through the building.

Facility without enough distribution transformers: Trying to cut corners in the wrong places; running 208 V feeder up 20 stories is not the road to PQ.

Gen-sets not sized for harmonic loads: Excessive voltage distortion affects electronic control circuits. If SCR converter loads are present, notching can affect frequency control circuits.

PF correction capacitors and the effects of harmonics: Harmonics and caps do not mix. Those bulging capacitors are crying for help.

Inrush currents from high torque motor: Causes voltage sags if the load is too large or the source impedance too great. Staggered motor starts can help.

Undersized neutrals at panelboard: In the era of the third harmonic currents, neutrals can easily carry as much current or more current than the phase conductors. Keeping undersized neutral leads to overheated neutral and lugs, potential fire hazards, and high N–G voltage.

Running power and signal cables together: Think of the signal cable as a single-wire transformer secondary and the power cable as the primary. The opportunities for coupling are endless.

Loose conduit connections and lack of green wire grounding conductor: Causes open or high impedance ground circuit. Not good for PQ or safety.

Hi-frequency noise: The most effective high frequency grounding technique is the installation of a SRG.

IG rods (Figure 12.32): They are a safety hazard because the earth is a high impedance path and will prevent enough current from flowing to trip the breaker. They also cause ground loops; after all, every electron still has to go back where it came from. Further, if a person comes in contact with the ground where the step potential is high because of the high impedance path of the earth, the person will get shocked, injured or killed. One of the great mysteries of PQ is how some manufacturers get away with insisting that their equipment warranty is void unless an IG rod is installed. This installation is in violation of the NEC requirements for single point grounding.

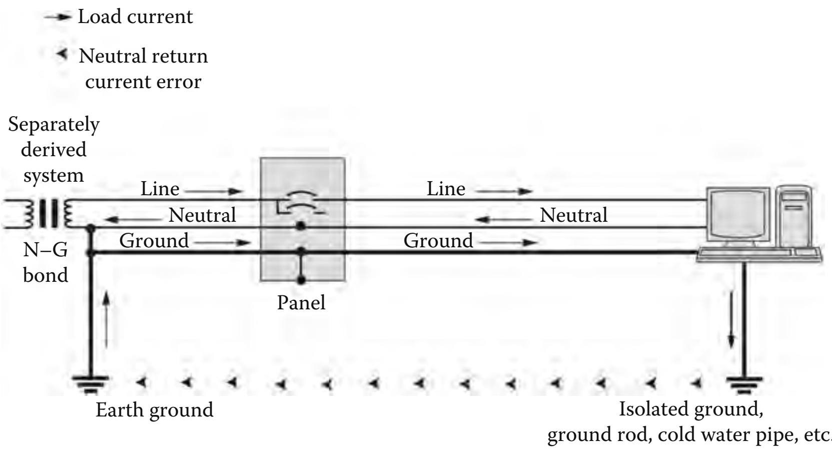


FIGURE 12.32
IG rod can cause ground loops. Common problem with machine tool installations. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

Shared neutrals on branch circuits: Causes load interaction and overloaded neutrals.

Laser printers and copiers sharing branch circuits with sensitive loads: Guaranteed periodic voltage sags and switching transients.

Miswired receptacles (N–G swapped): Hard to believe, but they are very common in most facilities. Guaranteed to put return currents on the ground conductor and create a noisy ground.

Data cables connected to different ground references at each end: Shows up as voltage between equipment case and the data cable connector.

Illegal N–G bonds: Guaranteed to put return currents on ground. Not only is it a PQ problem, it is a plumbing problem. Circulating ground currents cause corrosion of water pipes.

12.7 PQ Solution and Power Treatment Devices

In Sections 12.1 through 12.5, we discussed concepts, origins, characteristics and effects of voltage disturbances, and HDs on power system equipment. In Section 12.6 a predictive maintenance and troubleshooting guide was presented to identify and quantify the PQ-related problems. Once the PQ problem is identified and its effects on power equipment are understood, the next obvious step is to find a solution to correct the offending problem? There is no one answer that fits all PQ-related solutions. Each type of PQ problem requires its very own solution or treatment. There are many power treatment devices that reflect different philosophies advocated by varying PQ professionals. To the user the wide variety of what is available on the market for resolving PQ problems can be confusing and frustrating. However, there are some basic considerations in selecting and applying PQ solutions that all agree upon. First, is there a single problem or multiple problems, and is the nature of the problem(s) understood so an informed solution can be implemented; second any solution or treatment device installed has to obey the laws of physics and must be implemented without adversely affecting the loads; third the installation of the treatment device must be done correctly because if improperly installed, it may be detrimental to the system operation as was the original problem; and last the treatment device must be compatible with the load otherwise it may interact with the load causing a condition that is actually worse than before. The solutions and power treatment devices for solving PQ problems can be classified into three problem categories:

1. Voltage disturbances and noise
2. HDs
3. Wiring and grounding

Treatment devices are applied to modify a given electrical power to improve its quality and reliability for correct functioning of its loads. They can perform a range of functions such as voltage regulation, noise elimination, and standby power supply (SPS), among others. Many different types of mitigating devices are available, but specification and selection of mitigating equipment is dependent upon two considerations. First, the type of load to be powered must be considered. Single loads are effectively regulated with the proper mitigating device. However, larger systems that support many loads are far more complex. Requirements of all loads require consideration, as well as the potential interaction between them to determine the proper mitigating devices required. Second, the equipment requirements for each application must be considered. Examples of such requirements include PQ requirements of the load, problems (improper wiring and grounding, temperature, humidity, ESD, etc.) which could interfere with proper operation of the critical load, type of conditioning required, future quality and reliability of the power supply, and cost to eliminate or mitigate power-related problems. The most commonly used mitigating devices and their characteristics for the three categories identified above are discussed as follows:

12.7.1 Voltage Disturbances and Noise

The voltage disturbance, such as impulses, transients, swells, voltage dips, and interruptions were discussed in Section 12.2. The treatment devices for mitigating voltage disturbances and noise may be grouped as follows:

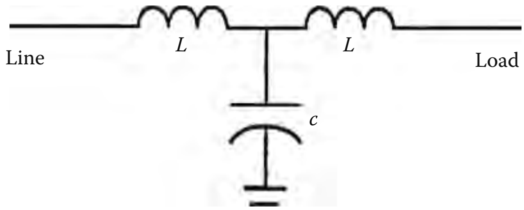


FIGURE 12.33
Basic noise filter without surge suppressors and tracking filters. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

- Line (noise) filters
- TVSS
- Voltage regulators
- Isolation transformers
- Power conditioners
- UPS

12.7.1.1 Noise Filters (Electronic Filters)

Noise filters prevent interference (e.g., conducted EMI and/or RFI) from traveling into sensitive electronic equipment from the power source. These filters also prevent equipment that generates interference from feeding it back into the power line. Most sensitive electronic equipment utilize some type of noise filter. A basic noise filter is low pass LC filter, that is it passes line frequency (60 Hz) and blocks the very high frequencies or steep wave front transients (Figure 12.33). This is accomplished by series inductors followed by capacitors to ground. The inductor forms two impedance paths: one low for the 60 Hz power and one high for the high-frequency noise. The remaining high-frequency noise is conducted by the capacitor to ground before it reaches the load. Many line filters are based on surge suppression components, such as surge suppressors but also have components that provide frequency response and waveform tracking. Waveform tracking allows the filter to clamp impulses at lower voltages than TVSS. The line filters exert more control over normal mode events compared to CM event because of absence of ground isolation capabilities. The line filters are listed under UL 1012, Standard for Safety of Power Supplies.

12.7.1.2 TVSS

TVSS protect against voltage spikes and oscillatory-transient voltages. They are either gap type or the clamping type. The gap type is relatively slow acting (microseconds) with large energy handling ability. The clamping type is fast acting (nanoseconds) with somewhat smaller energy-handling ability. The gap type units are best used near the power source entrance where as clamping type units are used near the equipment being protected.

The four basic types of equipment used for protection from transients are crowbar devices, voltage-clamping devices, attenuation (filtering) devices, and hybrid devices. The crowbar devices include air gaps, gas discharge tubes, lightning arrestors, and switching devices. The voltage-clamping devices consist of varistors (nonlinear resistors), MOVs, zener diodes, and selenium rectifiers. These devices are unidirectional conductors until a breakdown voltage is reached, at which time they conduct in the reverse direction. Attenuation devices are inserted in a circuit to permit power at line frequency to pass, while attenuating transients. They are referred to as noise filters or low-pass filters. The attenuating devices are not truly suppression devices, but have applications when noise or transients at particular frequencies are found on a specific power or data line. Hybrid devices are transient suppressors that combine two or more technologies to provide transient suppression over a wide range of voltages, rates of rise, and energy content. Protecting computers and sensitive electronic equipment against transients is a good installation practice. Careful grounding is necessary for these devices to be effective. Power to computers also should be separated electrically as much as possible from the remainder of building power system. Incoming power lines, data and communications lines entering from outside the building, and those inside the building subjected to transients should have transient protection. Separate protection for individual units may be needed (unless already built into the equipment) for computers and sensitive electronic equipment. In selecting the transient suppression devices, careful consideration should be given to the voltage rating of the devices. The devices selected should have a minimum voltage rating that is higher than the system or data line voltage or phase-to-phase or phase-to-ground voltage. Selecting the energy dissipation rating required is somewhat more difficult since it is rarely possible to predict the energy content of the transient that might occur. The device selected must survive the worst possible transient and, at the same time, the clamping voltage must not exceed the withstand voltage rating of the equipment being protected. Transient devices should be installed using the shortest possible conductors, so that its inductive reactance is small at high transient frequencies. UL standard for safety, 1449 provides criteria for safety and performance testing of TVSS. TVSS tested and approved in accordance with this standard list the approval marking and maximum suppression voltage of the device.

12.7.1.3 Voltage Regulators

There are two types of voltage regulators that are available for maintaining correct voltage to the load. They are line voltage regulator and constant voltage regulator. The line voltage regulators maintain a relatively constant voltage output within a specified range, regardless of input voltage variations.

Although DC line voltage regulators are built into most sensitive electronic equipment, AC regulators are only now being built into some equipment. These regulators use the same ground reference on output as for the incoming power. They can only modify input line voltage amplitude and cannot establish a new signal. Solid-state devices (e.g., constant voltage and tap-changing transformers) are being used almost exclusively, rather than electromechanical types.

Line voltage regulators typically are used to protect against momentary and transient disturbances within a certain range. These regulators have a typical response time of 1 cycle. While many voltage problems can be handled by the appropriate application of a line voltage regulator, it is not suitable to protect sensitive electronic loads against rapid changes in voltage. They also do not have noise suppression capabilities. Regulators with switching power supplies actually create noise, and therefore are unsuitable for critical loads. The regulators also can become unstable if other regulators with similar response times are on the same circuit. Two types of line voltage regulators currently are available: tap changers and buck–boost.

The tap changers, also known as tap switchers or electronic tap switching transformers, regulate output voltage in response to fluctuations in input voltage or load (see Figure 12.34). This is accomplished with solid-state switches (SCRs or triacs) which automatically select appropriate taps on a power transformer (either isolating type or autotransformer type) at the zero current point of the output wave. Some of these devices are voltage switching type units that make the tap change at the voltage zero crossing. This causes a transient to be generated except when the load is at unity PF. The magnitude of this transient is determined by actual load conditions.

The buck–boost regulators assure smooth continuous output by regulating heavy inrush currents typically delivered by computer start-ups or disk drive motors. When power is fed into these regulators, they either add to (boosts)

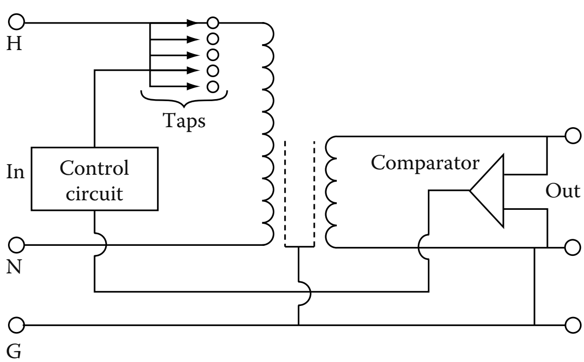


FIGURE 12.34
Tap changer voltage regulator. (Courtesy of Fluke Corporation, Everett, WA.)

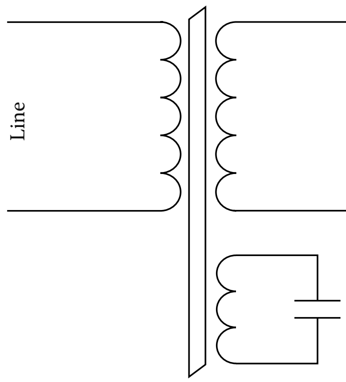


FIGURE 12.35
Basic constant voltage (ferroresonant) regulator.

or subtract from (bucks) the incoming voltage. These electronic devices eliminate use of steps as compared to the tap changer. Output is maintained constant for 15%–20% variations of input voltage. This is accomplished by comparing output voltage to the desired (set) level and by the use of feedback to modify the level of boost or buck. A path for nonlinear currents generated by the load and by the regulator itself is provided by a parametric filter. An advantage of buck–boost regulators is that they attenuate normal mode noise and surges. In addition, if they are built with isolation and shielding, the regulators can be separately derived source for power grounding, and can provide CM noise reduction.

The constant voltage regulator is typically referred to as ferroresonant regulators or constant voltage transformers (CVTs). This type of regulator is a relatively simple device because it has no moving or active electronic parts. It uses a saturating transformer with a resonant circuit made up of the transformer's inductance and a capacitor (Figure 12.35). The unit maintains a nearly constant voltage on the output for input swings of 20%–40%.

CVTs are susceptible to load imbalances and can become unstable. If the load current gets too high, these transformers tend to go out of resonance. They often can only supply 125%–200% of their full load rating. As a result, the CVTs cannot support starting current of motors exceeding these limits without a drastic dip in output voltage. CVTs are very inefficient at light loads and less efficient at all other load levels. Their poor efficiency is due to the resonant circuit which handles relatively large amounts of current all the time. As a result, the circuit causes the heat loss to be higher than other types of regulators. Noise can be a problem with these transformers requiring special enclosures. Because of its saturating elements, the CVT is a nonlinear device and introduces harmonic currents on the power source supplying it. The constant voltage regulators should be oversized in order to provide for heavy starting or in-rush currents. This is because output voltage is significantly reduced when these regulators are near their current limits.

The possibility also exists that the output voltage may not be compatible with some loads. In some cases, this can shut down other devices as a result of low output voltage of the CVT.

12.7.1.4 Isolation Transformers

Isolation transformers incorporate separate primary (or input) and secondary (or output) windings with electrostatic Faraday shielding around the windings. They perform two distinct functions. First, they transform or change the input to secondary output voltage level and/or to compensate for high or low voltage. Second, the transformers establish the power ground reference close to the point of use. Because of this, CM noise induced through ground loops or multiple current paths in the ground circuit upstream of the established reference ground point is significantly reduced.

Isolation transformers introduce minimal magnetizing current distortion into the input source. The delta-connected primary winding of the transformer can reduce the balanced third harmonic currents fed back to the source by single-phase nonlinear loads which are supplied from three-phase feeder systems. When a delta primary, wye secondary, isolation transformer is used to power a load such as a single-phase rectifier, the balanced third harmonic currents circulate in the delta primary so they are not seen by the power source. An isolation transformer may be designed with a simple electrostatic (Faraday) shield between the two sets of windings or they can be equipped with multi shields. Figure 12.36 shows an isolation transformer with three electrostatic Faraday shields, where primary and secondary winding are individually shield with an overall shield system. A single shield is normally adequate in most applications however additional shields increase the CM rejection capabilities of the transformer. This Faraday electrostatic shield comprises of conducting sheets of nonmagnetic material (copper or aluminum) connected to ground. They are designed to improve the isolation characteristics of the transformer. Electrostatic shielding adds little to the cost, size, and weight of the transformer. Isolation transformers can achieve efficiencies from 95% to 98%. These transformers generate little heat and are relatively quiet. They can be installed separately or with PDUs. Isolation transformers with distribution units have the advantage of being able to be located very close to the critical load.

12.7.1.5 Power Conditioners

Power line conditioners consist of one or more basic power treatment devices as previously discussed in this section. Some power conditioners may provide impulse attenuation, high-frequency filtering, isolation and voltage regulation others may not provide these features. Some of the power conditioners are: enhanced isolation transformer, ferroresonant power

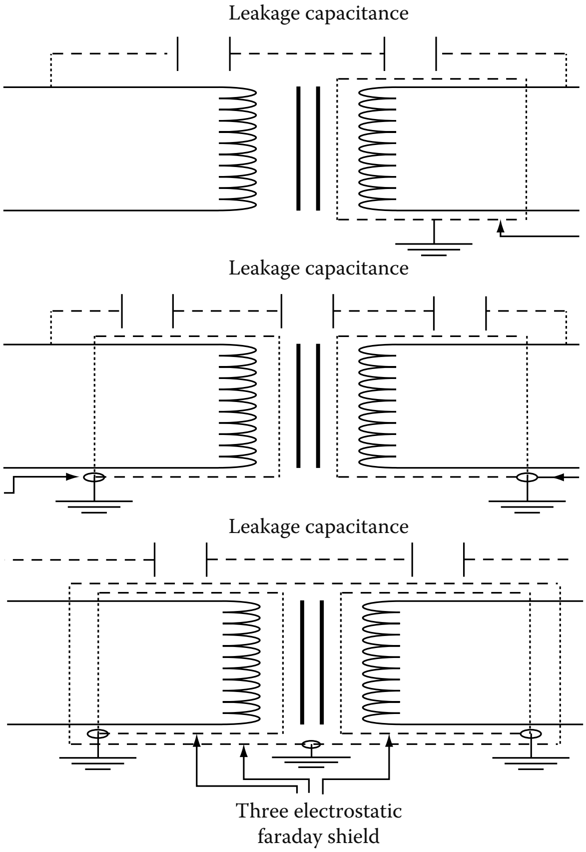


FIGURE 12.36
Isolation transformer with three electrostatic shields.

conditioner, tap switching power conditioner, magnetic synthesizer, and motor generator (M-G) sets. These conditioners also provide a locally derived source with isolation while providing voltage regulation. Some advanced conditioners contain noise reduction features of isolation transformers, filtering devices with voltage regulators, or surge suppressors to clamp high voltage surges.

The enhanced isolation transformer uses MOVs and air core wound chokes on the primary and a large capacitor across the secondary. These transformers were designed primarily for modern SMPS. The impedance of the transformer is kept low to ensure capability with the high inrush current of the power supply. The enhanced isolation transformers are available with single or multiple shields for improved CM noise attenuation.

The ferroresonant power conditioner is an isolation transformer operating in a saturated mode which was discussed in Section 12.7.1.3. It operates like a ferroresonant regulator with capability to regulate voltage and to a degree perform waveshaping. Also, shielding between the primary and secondary improves the high frequency attenuations capabilities.

The tap switching power conditioner is an isolation transformer with multiple taps for voltage correction. However, some tap switching power conditioners do not use isolation transformers, but instead use autotransformer. This power conditioner has the capability to regulate voltage, provide impulse attenuation and filtering.

The magnetic synthesizers consist of nonlinear inductors and capacitors in a parallel resonant circuit with six saturating pulse transformers. These synthesizers draw power from the source and generate their output voltage waveform by combining the pulses of the saturating transformers in a step wave manner. They provide noise and surge rejection and regulation of output voltage to within 10% over large swings (50%) input voltage. These units generally include additional filtering to eliminate self-induced harmonics and pulse transformer shielding to attenuate CM disturbances. The magnetic synthesizer inherently limits maximum current at full voltage to 125%–200% of the rating. With greater loads, voltage drops off rapidly, producing typically 200%–300% current at short circuit. Large step load changes, even within the unit's rating, can cause significant voltage and frequency transients in the output of this conditioner. These regulators work best when the load does not make large step changes. Due to the magnetics involved, these synthesizers tend to be large and heavy. They also can be acoustically noisy without special packaging. Some of the larger units display good efficiencies, as long as they are operated at close to full load. The magnetic synthesizer introduces current distortion on its input, due to its nonlinear elements, which is at its highest when the conditioner is lightly loaded.

The M-Gs transform AC electrical power to mechanical power, then back to AC electrical power. They consist of an AC powered electric motor driving an AC generator, which then supplies AC power to the load as shown in Figure 12.37. Two types of M-Gs are utilized today. These are shaft or belt isolated M-Gs and rotating transformer M-Gs. In the former, the motor and generator are coupled by a shaft or belts. The latter units have a common rotor, a motor stator, and a generator stator. They generally are small units and have excellent efficiency values. One disadvantage is that they do not provide the same level of noise and surge isolation between the input and the output as conventional M-Gs. Because of the coupling between the two stators (which are wound one on top of the other), the noise has a path through the unit. Shaft or belt isolated M-Gs are used widely as a source of 415 Hz power for large computers requiring this frequency. They can be easily powered by a single 60 Hz induction motor. As the induction motor speed varies, the output frequency varies with motor speed since the generator output is a function of its shaft speed. However, the output voltage is maintained by controlling the excitation of the field winding of the generator and the generator output voltage is independent of small motor speed changes.

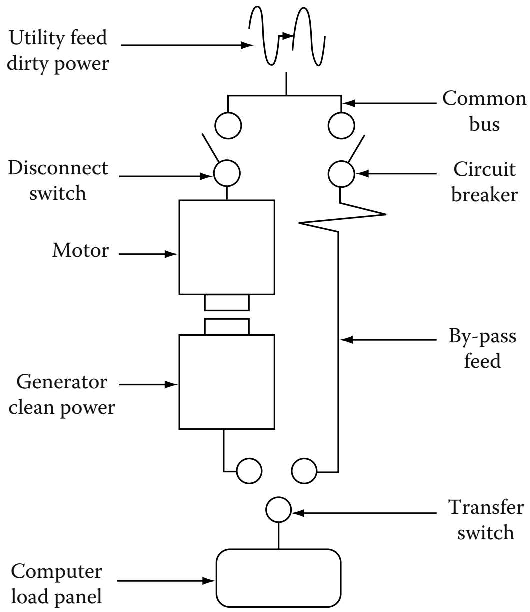


FIGURE 12.37
Motor-generator set.

12.7.1.6 UPS

An UPS conditions incoming power and provides continuous power in the event of a power failure (Figure 12.38). UPS typically contain batteries that can be used during power interruptions. They are either online or off-line and are available in a wide range of configurations, from battery backup to units backed by a standby generator that can supply power for days. Two types of UPS systems predominately used are static and rotary UPS (RUPS).

Static UPS systems: A majority of UPS systems used today are static. They are preferred over rotary systems because of lower cost, higher efficiency,

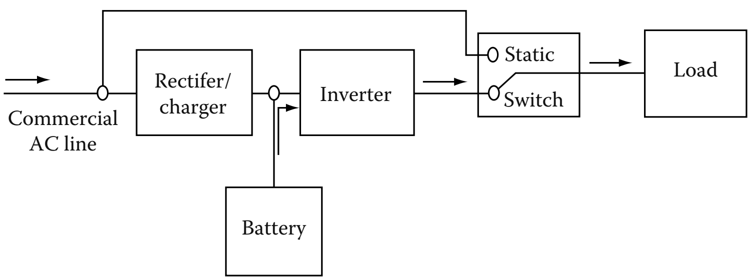


FIGURE 12.38
General configuration of an UPS.

ease of maintenance, and fewer moving parts. Static UPS systems instantly provide power from battery to the load in the event of a power failure. Batteries used for large installations usually are lead-acid wet cells. Some smaller units use gelled-electrolyte cell or immobilized-electrolyte cell (maintenance free) batteries. Cost is influenced considerably by the length of battery protection time required and load size. In most instances, 15 min of protective time is considered adequate because it permits an orderly shutdown of the load equipment. In many instances, however, the UPS system is used in conjunction with an engine-generator set. As such, the UPS provides instantaneous power until such time as load can be transferred to the engine-generator set. In the event of an inverter failure or while maintenance is being performed on the UPS, a bypass transfer switch is included to allow connection of the utility to the critical load. This load can be transferred without interruption because UPS output is kept in phase with the utility source under normal operation. Static UPS systems can be either float-type (online) or AC-input type.

The RUPS systems can be configured in several different ways. In one configuration, shown in Figure 12.39, the rectifier of a RUPS is supplied from the utility source while the battery floats online. The inverter's output frequency is slaved to the utility source and follows it exactly. The solid-state rectifier supplies DC to the inverter and also maintains the battery at appropriate float charge. The step function square wave AC output is used to drive the motor which, in turn, powers the generator. The M-G's output frequency is maintained at 60 Hz. When the incoming power is interrupted, the high-capacity batteries supply DC to the inverter which, in turn, supplies power to the M-G set. The inverter frequency control system maintains motor frequency within ±0.1% of rated 60 Hz while the batteries supply the load.

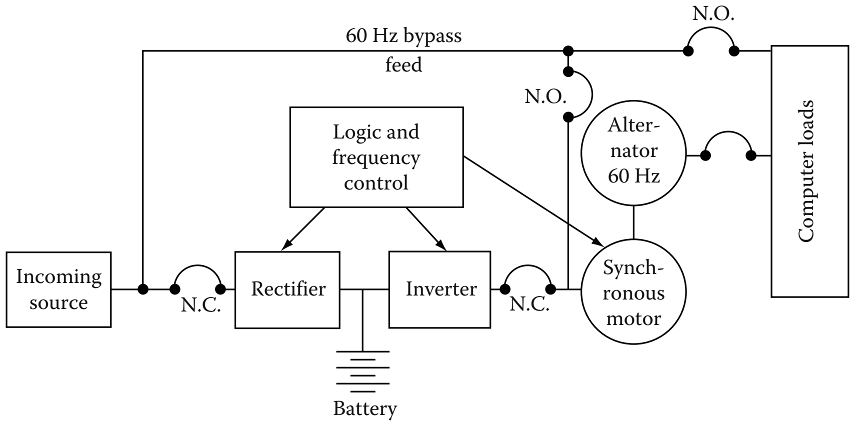


FIGURE 12.39
Rotary UPS.

Also, the UPS can be configured as SPS systems to provide energy that can be used during power interruptions. SPSs typically comprise of batteries and are either off-line or stand-by type. Two categories of SPSs that are used to supply backup power are rotary and static SPS systems. These systems are designed as standby systems such that during normal operation the power is supplied via the bypass circuit to the loads. If a power interruption occurs, the SPS switches to the battery to supply power to the inverter, which in turn supplies the load.

12.7.2 HDs

The effects of HD on power equipment and circuits were discussed in Section 12.5. High levels of stress due to HD can lead to problems for the utility's distribution system, plant distribution system and any power equipment serviced by that distribution system. Effects can range from spurious operation of equipment to a shutdown, such as machines or assembly lines, or catastrophic failure of equipment. Harmonics can lead to power system inefficiency as well because increase in HD will decrease true PF. Some of the negative ways that harmonics affect plant equipment are summarized below:

Conductor overheating: Conductor heating is a function of the square of the rms current per unit volume in the conductor. Harmonic currents on undersized conductors or cables can cause a skin effect, which increases with frequency.

Capacitors: Capacitors are affected by heat increases due to power loss (temperature rise) which will shorten life of capacitors. If a capacitor is tuned to one of the characteristic harmonics such as the fifth or seventh, overvoltages due to resonance can cause dielectric failure or rupture of capacitor.

Fuses and circuit breakers: Harmonics can cause false or spurious operations of relays, breakers and protective trips, damaging or blowing components.

Transformers: Transformers have increased iron and copper losses or eddy currents due to stray flux losses. This causes overheating of transformer windings and iron (core).

Generators: Generators experience similar problems as transformers. Sizing and coordination is critical to the operation of the voltage regulator and controls. Excessive harmonic voltage distortion will cause multiple zero crossings of the current waveform. Multiple zero crossings affect the timing of the voltage regulator, causing interference and operation instability.

Revenue meters: Revenue meters may record measurements incorrectly, resulting in higher billings to user.

Drives/power supplies: VFDs and power supplies can be affected by misoperation due to multiple zero crossings. Harmonics can cause failure of the commutation circuits, found in DC drives and AC drives with SCRs.

Computers/telephones: These devices may experience interference or failure.

12.7.2.1 Industry Standards on Limits of Harmonics

The most often quoted standard on harmonics in the United States is IEEE 519-1992, "Recommended practices and requirements for harmonic control in electric power systems." The IEEE 519-1992 attempts to establish reasonable harmonic goals for electrical systems that contain nonlinear (harmonic producing) loads. The objective is to propose steady state harmonic limits that are considered reasonable by both electric utilities and their customers. The underlying philosophy is that

- Customers should limit harmonic currents
- Electric utilities should limit harmonic voltages
- Both parties share the responsibility for holding harmonic levels in check

IEEE 519 applies to all voltage levels, including 120 V single-phase residential service, industrial and commercial entities, and utilities as well. While it does not specifically state the highest-order harmonic to limit, the generally accepted range of application is through the 50th harmonic for the industrial and commercial facilities. DC, which is not a harmonic, is also addressed and is prohibited. Since no differentiation is made between single-phase and three-phase systems, the recommended limits apply to both. It is important to remember that IEEE 519-1992 is a recommended practice and not an actual standard or legal document unless it is adopted by the local jurisdiction. Rather, it is intended to provide a reasonable framework within which engineers can address and control harmonic problems. It has been adopted by many electric utilities and by several state public utility commissions, such as Texas and Oklahoma states.

According to the IEEE 519-1992 standard, the industrial and commercial entity is responsible for controlling the harmonic currents created in their power systems. Since harmonic currents reflected through distribution system impedances generate harmonic voltages on the utility distribution systems, the standard proposes guidelines based on industrial distribution system design. The Table 10.3 in IEEE 519-1992, defines levels of harmonic currents that industrial and commercial customers can inject onto the utility distribution system. The contents of this table are shown in Table 12.18.

Table 11.1 of IEEE 519-1992 defines the voltage distortion limits that can be reflected back onto the utility distribution system. Usually if the industrial or commercial user controls the overall combined current distortion according to Table 10.3 of IEEE 519, this should help the customers meet the limitations set forth in the guidelines of IEEE 519 standard (Table 12.19).

12.7.2.2 Evaluating System Harmonics

In order to prevent or correct harmonic problems within an industrial or commercial facility an evaluation of system harmonics should be performed to quantify the problem. The harmonic evaluation can be conducted by either

TABLE 12.18

Current Distortion Limits for General Distribution Systems (120 V–69 kV)

Maximum Harmonic Current Distortion in % of I_L	**Individual Harmonic Order (Odd Harmonics)[a,b]**					
I_{SC}/I_L	**<11**	**$11 \leq h \leq 17$**	**$17 \leq h \leq 23$**	**$23 \leq h \leq 35$**	**$35 \leq h$**	**TDD**
<20[c]	4.0	2.0	1.5	0.6	0.3	5.0
20 < 50	7.0	3.5	2.5	1.0	0.5	8.0
50 < 100	10.0	4.5	4.0	1.5	0.7	12.0
100 < 1000	12.0	5.5	5.0	2.0	1.0	15.0
>1000	15.0	7.0	6.0	2.5	1.4	20.0

Source: From IEEE Std 519-1992, Recommended Practices and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electric Power System, Table 10.3.

Note: I_{SC}/I_L, where I_{SC}, maximum short-circuit current at PCC and I_L, maximum demand load current (fundamental frequency component) at PCC.

[a] Even harmonics are limited to 25% of the odd harmonic limits above.

[b] Current distortions that result in a DC offset, e.g., half-wave converters, are not allowed.

[c] All power generation equipment is limited to these values of current distortion, regardless of actual.

performing an on-site measurement at the PCC, or by modeling the power system and performing a harmonic analysis study using a computer simulation. The evaluation should determine total harmonic voltage and current distortion (THD_V and THD_I), and investigate the existence of harmonic resonance conditions. The conditions listed below usually warrant a harmonic evaluation:

- The application of capacitor banks in systems where 20% or more of the load comprises of harmonic generating equipment
- The facility has a history of harmonic-related problems, including excessive capacitor fuse blowing
- In facilities where power company has restrictive limits for harmonic injection into their system than those recommended in the IEEE 519 standard

TABLE 12.19

Voltage Distortion Limits

Bus Voltage at PCC	**Individual Voltage Distortion (%)**	**Total Harmonic Voltage Distortion THD (%)[a]**
69 kV and below	3.0	5.0
69.0001 through 161 kV	1.5	2.5
161.001 kV and above	1.0	1.5

Source: From IEEE Std 519-1992, Recommended Practices and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electric Power System, Table 11.1.

[a] High-voltage systems can have up to 2.0% THD where the cause is an HVDC terminal that will attenuate by the time it is tapped for a user.

- Plant expansions that add significant harmonic generating equipment operating in conjunction with capacitor banks
- When coordinating and planning to add an emergency standby generator as an alternate power source in an industrial facility

Performing a harmonic study

In order to perform a harmonic study, the power system requires modeling it in the harmonic analysis software program. To conduct this analysis, data are needed on the following as a minimum:

- One-line drawings of the power system, showing ratings and connections of all electrical equipment
- Location, connection, size, and control method of capacitors
- Conductor sizes, lengths, and impedances
- Location and type of nonlinear loads, including harmonic profile of the load. (This can be measured on the equipment or provided by manufacturer of the equipment.)
- Overall plant load and load at each bus
- Location, rating, connection, and impedance of transformers
- Available fault duty at PCC location (incoming point of connection from the utility)

12.7.2.3 Harmonic Solutions—Mitigation Devices and Methods

Harmonic solutions to solve harmonic problems may include using mitigation devices, such as current-limiting reactors, passive filters, active filters, or other devices that minimize the flow of harmonic currents onto the utility's distribution system and within the power system. Harmonic solution techniques fall into two broad categories, (1) preventive and (2) remedial.

Preventive measures: Preventive measures focus on minimizing the harmonic currents that are injected into power systems. Preventive measures include the following:

- Strict adherence to IEEE 519.
- Phase cancellation: The use of 12-pulse converters instead of six-pulse converters. Most harmonic problems with converters (VFDs and the like) are associated with high fifth and seventh harmonic currents, and if they are eliminated through phase cancellation, harmonic problems rarely develop. In situations where there are multiple six-pulse converters, serving half of them (in terms of power) through delta–delta or wye–wye transformers, and the other half through delta–wye or wye–delta transformers, achieves net 12-pulse operation.

- Use of low distorting loads: Because of IEEE 519, increasing attention is being given to the current THD of distorting loads. For example, 12-pulse (or higher) VFDs and low-distortion fluorescent lamp ballasts can be used to lower current distortion.
- Computer simulations: It is always better to simulate the impact of a large distorting load before it is ordered and installed. Solutions can be proposed and evaluated on paper, and implemented when the load is installed.

Remedial measures: Remedial measures include the following:

Circuit detuning: By using only field measurements, such as capacitor current waveforms, it is possible to identify the capacitor banks that are most affected by resonance. As a temporary measure the affected capacitor bank can be switched off to see if the resonance problem subsides. Of course, the problem may simply transfer to another capacitor bank, so measurements after switching at other capacitor banks must be made to see if the temporary solution is satisfactory. If switching a capacitor bank off temporarily solves the problem, computer simulations may be in order to test filtering options and possible relocation of the capacitor bank.

Passive harmonic filters: These are widely used to control harmonics, especially the fifth and seventh harmonics. Most filters consist of series L and C components that provide a single-tuned notch with a low-impedance ground path. At 50/60 Hz, these filters are, for all practical purposes, capacitors. Thus, passive filters provide both PF correction and voltage distortion control. Fifth harmonic filtering is usually adequate to solve most distribution system harmonic problems. However, in some cases it may be necessary to add 7th, 11th, and 13th harmonic filters, in that order. In general, harmonics may not be skipped. For example, if the problem harmonic is the seventh, both fifth and seventh harmonic filters must be added because the seventh filter alone would aggravate the fifth harmonic voltage. Filters tuned near the third harmonic must be avoided because transformers and machines located throughout distribution feeders are sources of third harmonics, and their currents will easily overwhelm third harmonic filters. Usually, the higher the harmonic, the fewer kVARs needed for a filter. For multiple filter installations, a good practice is to stairstep the kVAR as follows: if Q kVARs are used for the 5th harmonic, then $Q/2$ should be used for the 7th, $Q/4$ for the 11th, and $Q/8$ for the 13th. Of course, actual sizes must match standard kVAR sizes. For best performance, a filter should be at least 300 kVAR (three-phase). It may be possible to add low-voltage filters without performing computer simulations, as long as all shunt capacitors in the facility are filtered. However, in a utility distribution system, it is always prudent to perform computer simulations to make sure that a filter does not aggravate the harmonics situation at a remote point. This is especially true if the feeder also has unfiltered capacitors.

Harmonic current filters prevent input harmonics of nonlinear electronic loads from being fed back into the power service. Nonfiltered input harmonics

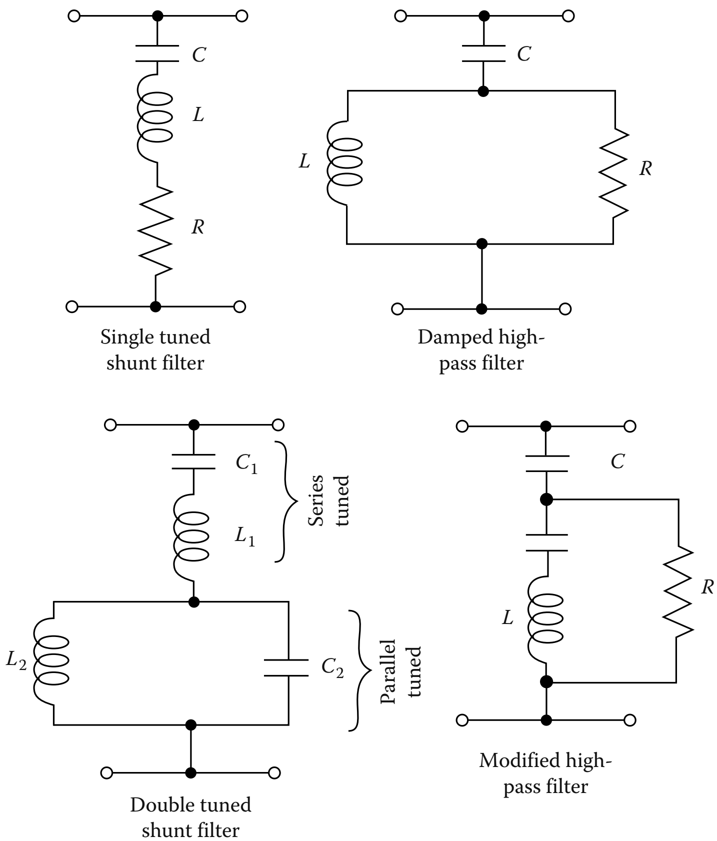


FIGURE 12.40
Various types of harmonic current filters.

can generate heat which can have an effect on conductors and transformers and cause voltage distortion. The filters vary in size from small units for plug-connected loads to larger devices for hard-wired loads. Different types of harmonic current filters are illustrated in Figure 12.40. Harmonic current filters typically are placed in parallel with the load. If installed and used properly, these filters work best at reducing harmonic currents at their source. They also eliminate the need for other changes to compensate for the problems caused by the harmonic currents.

Some problems associated with passive filters are that:

- Their effectiveness diminishes over time as their capacitors age, losing μF and thus raising their notch frequency.
- They attract harmonic currents from all sources in the network—new, known, and unknown, so that they may become overloaded.
- Active filters. This is a new and promising technology, but there are as yet few distribution feeder installations. Active filters are power

electronic converters that inject equal-but-opposite distortion to yield more sinusoidal voltage waveforms throughout a network. Active filters have the advantages of

- Time-domain operation so that they automatically tune to the problem harmonic or harmonics
- Current-limiting capability to prevent overload by new or unknown sources of harmonics on the network
- Multipoint voltage monitoring so that they can simultaneously minimize distortion at local and remote busses

The performance of mitigation equipment must be verified by extensive monitoring, both before and after commissioning. At least 2 days of recordings before commissioning, and one week after, should be made to assure that the mitigation equipment is performing as planned. One week of measurements is needed so that the entire weekly load cycle can be observed.

Monitoring should include time traces of voltage and current THD, spectra, sample waveforms, power, and harmonic power.

Delta–delta and delta–wye transformers: This configuration uses two separate utility feed transformers with equal nonlinear loads. This shifts the phase relationship to various six-pulse converters through cancellation techniques, similar to the 12-pulse configuration.

Isolation transformers: An isolation transformer provides a good solution in many cases. The advantage is the potential to voltage match by stepping up or stepping down the system voltage, and by providing a N–G reference for nuisance ground faults. This is the best solution when utilizing AC or DC drives that use SCRs as bridge rectifiers.

Line reactors: More commonly used for size and cost, the line reactor is the best solution for harmonic reduction when compared to an isolation transformer. AC drives that use diode bridge rectifier front ends are best suited for line reactors. Line reactors (commonly referred to as inductors) are available in standard impedance ranges from 1.5%, 3%, 5%, and 7.5%.

12.7.3 Wiring and Grounding Problems

In those facilities that are experiencing equipment problems that appear to be power-related, a on-site inspection will be required to verify that power disturbances are the cause of electronic equipment malfunction or failure. The specific objective of such an inspection is to determine condition and adequacy of the wiring and grounding system. This inspection should include the following checks:

Wiring and grounding: Wiring and grounding measurements detect problems in the feeders and branch circuits serving the critical load. The test instruments used to conduct these tests should be selected carefully. Use of commonly available three-light circuit testers is not recommended. These instruments have limitations and can provide a correct indication when the circuit being tested actually has one or more problems. They also are incapable of indicating the integrity of power conductors. Recommended instruments for these measurements include true-rms multimeter, true-rms clamp-on multimeter, and ground impedance testers. These instruments are described in Section 12.6.

Continuity of conduit/enclosure grounds: Electronic equipment should be grounded with a separate equipment grounding conductor. This conductor can be terminated in an IG system, insulated from the conduit ground, or in the conduit ground system. This is because both are ultimately connected to the building ground systems. However, the IG and conduit ground must terminate at the first upstream N–G bonding point. Ground impedance testers can be used to measure the quality of both the IG and conduit ground systems from the equipment to the power source. To achieve good performance from sensitive electronic loads, phase, neutral, and equipment grounding conductors should be routed through continuously grounded metallic conduit. Continuously grounded metal conduit provides a shield for radiated interference.

Load phase and neutral currents: Measurements of load phase and neutral currents are necessary to determine whether the load is sharing a neutral conductor with other loads. They also determine whether the neutral conductor sizing is adequate. When sizing neutral conductors, one should keep in mind that the current in the neutral can exceed current in the phase conductor. This is because three-phase circuits supplying single-phase loads have nonlinear current characteristics and share a common neutral. A true-rms reading clamp-on ammeter must be used to make phase and neutral conductor measurements. To determine whether the neutral serving the sensitive electronic load is shared with other loads, check the neutral current with the sensitive load turned off. If the current is not zero, a shared neutral is being used.

N–G bonds: The NEC requires bonding of the neutral and equipment grounding conductor at the main service panel (NEC 250-53) and the secondary side of SDSs (NEC 250-26(a)). If not properly bonded, N–G bonds create shock hazards for operating personnel, and degrade the performance of sensitive electronic equipment. These bonds can be detected using a wiring and grounding tester. A voltage measurement between neutral and ground at the outlets may indicate voltage from millivolt to few volts range under normal operating conditions. A zero voltage indicates the presence of a nearby N–G bond. Excessive current on equipment grounds in distribution panels also indicates the possibility of a load side N–G bond.

Equipment grounding conductor impedance: The impedance of the equipment grounding conductor is measured using a ground impedance tester. Properly installed and maintained equipment ground conductors exhibit very low impedance levels. A high impedance measurement indicates poor quality connections in the equipment grounding system or an improperly installed equipment grounding conductor. An open ground measurement reveals no equipment grounding conductor connection. Recommended practice is to verify an impedance level of 0.25 Ω or less. This also helps assure personnel protection under fault conditions.

Neutral conductor impedance: Neutral conductor impedance is measured because a low impedance neutral is essential to minimize N–G potentials at the load and reduce CM noise. A ground impedance tester can be used to conduct these measurements. It is necessary for neutral conductors to have low impedance.

Grounding electrode resistance: The grounding electrode system provides an earth reference point for the facility and a path for lightning and static electricity. This is important because the electrode serves as the connection between the building grounding system and the grounding electrode system. An accurate measurement can be taken only when the grounding electrode is disconnected from all other grounds. For new construction, the resistance of the grounding electrode system is measured with an earth ground tester using the fall-of-potential method. It is recommended that the measured resistance be in accordance with the design values and industry standards and codes. For more information on grounding and ground resistance measurements, refer to Chapter 11.

Current flow in the grounding electrode conductor can be measured using a clamp-on ammeter. In most cases, small current flow will exist. However, zero current flow usually indicates an open connection. Current flow on the order of the phase currents indicates serious problems or possible fault conditions.

IG and conduit ground systems: The quality of both the IG and conduit ground systems from the equipment to the ground source needs to be measured. This is to ensure that sensitive electronic loads are grounded with a separate equipment grounding conductor and are ultimately connected to the building grounding system. Both ground systems terminate at the first upstream N–G bonding point. The phase, neutral, and equipment grounding conductors should be routed through continuously grounded metallic conduit. As a result, better performance of sensitive electronic equipment is achieved. Another benefit is that safety codes are met.

Dedicated feeders and direct path routing: Measuring phase currents with the critical loads turned off is one way to determine if sensitive electronic loads are being served by dedicated branch feeders with conductor routing in as short and direct a path as possible. If there is any current flow, the feeder is being used to serve other loads.

SDSs: No direct electrical connection should exist between SDSs and output and input conductors. SDSs are required by the NEC to have a load-side N–G bond which is connected to the grounding electrode system. All equipment grounding conductors, any IG conductors, neutral conductors, and the metal enclosure of the SDSs are required to be bonded together and bonded to the grounding electrode conductor. Visual inspections and measurements with a ground impedance tester can determine the quality of these connections.

13

Electrical Safety, Arc-Flash Hazard, Switching Practices, and Precautions

13.1 Introduction

Safety in electrical systems concerns three different areas: protection of life, protection of property, and protection of uninterrupted productive output. The required investment to accomplish improved safety often consists merely of additional planning effort without any extra equipment investment. The protection of human life is paramount. Electrical plant property can be replaced and lost production can be made up, but human life can never be recovered nor human suffering compensated for. To achieve improved safety to personnel, special attention should be directed to energized equipment, adequate short-circuit protective devices, a good maintenance program, simplicity of the electrical system design, and proper training of personnel who work around electricity. Many of the items necessary to give improved protection to life will also secure improved protection to plant property and minimize breakdown of electrical system equipment. This chapter deals with electrical safety, switching practices, arc-flash hazard analysis, precautions, and accident prevention.

Most electrical companies and plants have safety programs and rules in the workplace and training programs for their employees. Most safety programs embody company safety rules and practices, national and local codes and standards, and federal and state laws. For individuals to carry out their duties, they must be knowledgeable of the rules and standards that apply to their workplace. Electrical safety standards and requirements are varied; some are voluntary while others are laws that are mandatory, and provide guidance for safely working around or on electrical energy. Since the standards are periodically revised, one should always refer to the most recent version of the standard when consulting such a standard. A brief discussion of the safety standards, arc-flash hazard analysis and labeling of equipment, and regulations related to these topics and electricity are covered below to familiarize the reader with them.

13.2 Industry Standards and Regulatory Requirements for Safety

13.2.1 ANSI C2: The National Electrical Safety Code-2007

The National Electrical Safety Code (NESC) is intended to provide practical rules for safeguarding personnel during the installation, operation, or maintenance of electrical supply and communications lines and associated equipment. The NESC rules cover supply and communications lines, equipment, and associated work practices used by both private and public electrical companies (utilities). The NESC covers five major areas as listed below.

- Grounding methods for electrical supply and communications facilities
- Rules for installation and maintenance of electrical supply stations and equipment
- Safety rules for the installation and maintenance of overhead electrical supply and communications lines
- Safety rules for the installation and maintenance of underground electric supply and communications lines
- Rules for the operation of electric supply and communications lines and equipment

Section 410, "General requirements" of NESC-2007 contains information and guidance on electric safety requirements that are necessary for safeguarding employees in the workplace. In accordance with Section 410 the employer is required to inform the employees on safety rules, safety training and arc hazard evaluation including wearing of arc-rated clothing. These requirements as stated in NESC-2007 standard are as follows:

1. The employer shall inform each employee working on or about communications equipment or electric supply equipment and the associated lines, of the safety rules governing the employee's conduct while so engaged. When deemed necessary, the employer shall provide a copy of such rules.
2. The employer shall provide training to all employees who work in the vicinity of exposed energized facilities. The training shall include applicable work rules required by this part and other mandatory referenced standards or rules. The employer shall ensure that each employee has demonstrated proficiency in required tasks. The employer shall provide retraining for any employee who, as a result of routine observance of work practices, is not following work rules.
3. Effective as of January 1, 2009, the employer shall ensure that an assessment is performed to determine potential exposure to an

electric arc for employees who work on or near energized parts or equipment. If the assessment determines a potential employee exposure greater than 2 cal/cm^2 exists, the employer shall require employees to wear clothing or a clothing system that has an effective arc rating not less than the anticipated level of arc energy. When exposed to an electric arc or flame, clothing made from the following materials shall not be worn: acetate, nylon, polyester, or polypropylene. The effective arc rating of clothing or a clothing system to be worn at voltages 1000 V and above shall be determined using Tables 410-1 and 410-2 or performing an arc hazard analysis. When an arc hazard analysis is performed, it shall include a calculation of the estimated arc energy based on the available fault current, the duration of the arc (cycles), and the distance from the arc to the employee.

Exception 1: If the clothing required by this rule has the potential to create additional and greater hazards than the possible exposure to the heat energy of the electric arc, then clothing with an arc rating or arc thermal performance value (ATPV) less than that required by the rule can be worn.

Exception 2: For secondary systems below 1000 V, applicable work rules required by this part and engineering controls shall be utilized to limit exposure. In lieu of performing an arc hazard analysis, clothing or a clothing system with a minimum effective arc rating of 4 cal/cm^2 shall be required to limit the likelihood of ignition.

Note 1: A clothing system (multiple layers) that includes an outer layer of flame-resistant (FR) material and an inner layer of non-FR material has been shown to block more heat than a single layer. The effect of the combination of these multiple layers can be referred to as the effective arc rating.

Note 2: It is recognized that arc energy levels can be excessive with secondary systems. Applicable work rules required by this part and engineering controls should be utilized.

13.2.2 ANSI/National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70, National Electrical Code (NEC)-2008

The NEC NFPA 70 is part of the NFPA codes. The NEC includes information on design, installation and other technical information of electrical facilities and its principle objective is to help minimize the possibility of electric fires. The NEC or portions of it are adopted as local law in many municipalities, cities, states, and other such areas. Since 2002, the NEC, article 110-16 requires flash hazard labels on electrical equipment to warn personnel of the potential electric arc-flash hazards and the personal protective equipment (PPE) they must wear when working on energized equipment. The NEC article 110-16 is listed below for reader's reference.

110.16—flash protection: Electrical equipment, such as switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, meter socket enclosures, and motor control centers, that are in other than dwelling occupancies, and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall be field marked to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc-flash hazards. The marking shall be located so as to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

FPN No. 1: NFPA 70E, *Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace-2004*, provides assistance in determining severity of potential exposure, planning safe work practices, and selecting PPE.

FPN No. 2: ANSI Z535.4-1998, *Product Safety Signs and Labels*, provides guidelines for the design of safety signs and labels for application to products.

13.2.3 ANSI/NFPA 70B, Standard for Electrical Equipment Maintenance-2006

The electrical equipment maintenance is a publication of the NFPA and it contains recommended practice information on maintenance of electric equipment and apparatus. The 70B document covers systems and equipment which are typically installed in industrial plants, commercial buildings, and large family dwellings.

13.2.4 ANSI/NFPA 70E, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace-2004

The electrical safety requirement in workplaces is a publication of NFPA. This code contains information and guidance on electric safety requirements that are necessary for safeguarding employees in the workplace. The sixth edition, published in 2004, reflects several significant changes to the older versions of 70E. The major changes emphasize safe work practices. Clarity and usability of the document are also enhanced. The name of the document was changed to NFPA 70E, *Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace*. The existing Parts 1 through 4 were renamed as Chapters 1 through 4 and are reorganized as follows:

Chapter 1 Safety-related work practices

Chapter 2 Safety-related maintenance requirements

Chapter 3 Safety requirements for special equipment

Chapter 4 Installation safety requirements

This standard is compatible with corresponding provisions of the NEC, but is not intended to, nor can it, be used in lieu of the NEC. Chapter 4 of NFPA 70E is intended to serve a very specific need of OSHA and is in no way intended to be used as a substitute for the NEC. NFPA 70E is intended for use by employers, employees, and OSHA.

The chapter on safety-related work practices was reorganized to emphasize working on live parts as the last alternative work practice. Therefore it contains extensive requirements for working on or near electrical conductors or circuit parts that have not been put into an electrically safe work condition. When such work is to be performed, the required electrical hazard analysis has specific requirements for the analysis of shock and flash hazards. Other sections of the 70E provide guidance on selecting the proper PPE. The significant requirements for the analysis of shock and flash hazards are as follows:

The NFPA 70E, Article 110.8 (B) (1) Electrical hazard analysis: If the live parts operating at 50 V or more are not placed in an electrically safe work condition, other safety-related work practices shall be used to protect employees who might be exposed to the electrical hazards involved. Such work practices shall protect each employee from arc flash and from contact with live parts operating at 50 V or more directly with any part of the body or indirectly through some other conductive object. Work practices that are used shall be suitable for the conditions under which the work is to be performed and for the voltage level of the live parts. Appropriate safety-related work practices shall be determined before any person approaches exposed live parts within the limited approach boundary by using both shock hazard analysis and flash hazard analysis.

(a) Shock hazard analysis. A shock hazard analysis shall determine the voltage to which personnel will be exposed, boundary requirements, and the PPE necessary in order to minimize the possibility of electrical shock to personnel. (b) Flash hazard analysis. A flash hazard analysis shall be done in order to protect personnel from the possibility of being injured by an arc flash. The analysis shall determine the flash protection boundary and the PPE that people within the flash protection boundary shall use.

The NFPA 70E, Article 130.2 Approach boundaries to live parts:

A. *Shock hazard analysis:* A shock hazard analysis shall determine the voltage to which personnel will be exposed, boundary requirements, and the PPE necessary in order to minimize the possibility of electric shock to personnel.
B. *Shock protection boundaries:* The shock protection boundaries identified as limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries are applicable to the situation in which approaching personnel are exposed to live parts.
C. *Approach to exposed live parts operating at 50 V or more:* No qualified person shall approach or take any conductive object closer to

exposed live parts operating at 50 V or more than the restricted approach boundary set forth in Table 130.2(C), unless any of the following apply:

1. The qualified person is insulated or guarded from the live parts operating at 50 V or more (insulating gloves or insulating gloves and sleeves are considered insulation only with regard to the energized parts upon which work is being performed), and no part of the qualified person's body crosses the prohibited approach boundary set forth in Table 130.2(C) which is shown in Table 13.1.
2. The live part operating at 50 V or more is insulated from the qualified person and from any other conductive object at a different potential.
3. The qualified person is insulated from any other conductive object as during live-line bare-hand work.

D. *Approach by unqualified persons:* Unqualified persons shall not be permitted to enter spaces that are required under 400.16(A) to be accessible to qualified employees only, unless the electric conductors and equipment involved are in an electrically safe work condition.

1. *Working at or close to the limited approach boundary:* Where one or more unqualified persons are working at or close to the limited approach boundary, the designated person in charge of the work space where the electrical hazard exists shall cooperate with the designated person in charge of the unqualified person(s) to ensure that all work can be done safely. This shall include advising the unqualified person(s) of the electrical hazard and warning him or her to stay outside of the Limited Approach Boundary.
2. *Entering the limited approach boundary:* Where there is a need for an unqualified person(s) to cross the limited approach boundary, a qualified person shall advise him or her of the possible hazards and continuously escort the unqualified person(s) while inside the limited approach boundary. Under no circumstance shall the escorted unqualified person(s) be permitted to cross the restricted approach boundary.

The requirements stated in NFPA 70E for shock protection and safe distances for qualified and unqualified personnel can be summarized as follows:

Flash protection boundary: An approach limit at a distance from exposed live parts within which a person could receive a second-degree burn if an electric arc flash were to occur. Appropriate flash-flame protection equipment must be utilized for persons entering the flash protection region. This distance may be outside or inside the following shock protection distances.

TABLE 13.1

Approach Boundaries to Live Parts for Shock Protection

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
	Limited Approach Boundary[a]			
Nominal System Voltage Range, Phase-to-Phase	Exposed Movable Conductor	Exposed Fixed Circuit Part	Restricted Approach Boundary[a]; Includes Inadvertent Movement Adder	Prohibited Approach Boundary[a]
Less than	Not specified	Not specified	Not specified	Not specified
50 to 300	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	1.07 m (3 ft 6 in.)	Avoid contact	Avoid contact
301 to 750	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	1.07 m (3 ft 6 in.)	304.8 mm (1 ft 0 in.)	25.4 mm (0 ft 1 in.)
751 to 15 kV	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	1.53 m (5 ft 0 in.)	660.4 mm (2 ft 2 in.)	177.8 mm (0 ft 7 in.)
15.1 to 36 kV	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	1.83 m (6 ft 0 in.)	787.4 mm (2 ft 7 in.)	254 mm (0 ft 10 in.)
36.1 to 46 kV	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	2.44 m (8 ft 0 in.)	838.2 mm (2 ft 9 in.)	431.8 mm (1 ft 5 in.)
46.1 to 72.5 kV	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	2.44 m (8 ft 0 in.)	965.2 mm (3 ft 2 in.)	635 mm (2 ft 1 in.)
72.6 to 121 kV	3.25 m (10 ft 8 in.)	2.44 m (8 ft 0 in.)	991 mm (3 ft 3 in.)	812.8 mm (2 ft 8 in.)
138 to 145 kV	3.36 m (11 ft 0 in.)	3.05 m (10 ft 0 in.)	1.093 m (3 ft 7 in.)	939.8 mm (3 ft 1 in.)
161 to 169 kV	3.56 m (11 ft 8 in.)	3.56 m (11 ft 8 in.)	1.22 m (4 ft 0 in.)	1.07 m (3 ft 6 in.)
230 to 242 kV	3.97 m (13 ft 0 in.)	3.97 m (13 ft 0 in.)	1.6 m (5 ft 3 in.)	1.45 m (4 ft 9 in.)
345 to 362 kV	4.68 m (15 ft 4 in.)	4.68 m (15 ft 4 in.)	2.59 m (8 ft 6 in.)	2.44 m (8 ft 0 in.)
500 to 550 kV	5.8 m (19 ft 0 in.)	5.8 m (19 ft 0 in.)	3.43 m (11 ft 3 in.)	3.28 m (10 ft 9 in.)
765 to 800 kV	7.24 m (23 ft 9 in.)	7.24 m (23 ft 9 in.)	4.55 m (14 ft 11 in.)	4.4 m (14 ft 5 in.)

Source: From NFPA 70E, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace-2004, Table 130.2(C).

Note: For flash protection boundary, see 130.3(A). All dimensions are distance from live part to employee.

[a] See definition in Article 100 and text in 130.2(D)(2) and Annex C for elaboration.

Limited approach boundary: An approach limit at a distance from an exposed live part within which a shock hazard exists. A person crossing the limited approach boundary and entering the limited region must be qualified to perform the job/task.

Restricted approach boundary: An approach limit at a distance from an exposed live part within which there is an increased risk of shock, due to electrical arc over combined with inadvertent movement, for personnel working in close proximity to the live part. The person crossing the restricted approach boundary and entering the restricted space must have a documented work plan approved by authorized management, use PPE that is appropriate for the work being performed and is rated for voltage and energy level involved.

Prohibited approach boundary: An approach limit at a distance from an exposed live part within which work is considered the same as making contact with the live part. The person entering the prohibited space must have specified training to work on energized conductors or live parts. Any tools used in the prohibited space must be rated for direct contact at the voltage and energy level involved. The limits of approach are depicted in Figure 13.1.

The NFPA 70E, Article 130.3 Flash-hazard analysis: A flash hazard analysis shall be done in order to protect personnel from the possibility of being injured by an arc flash. The analysis shall

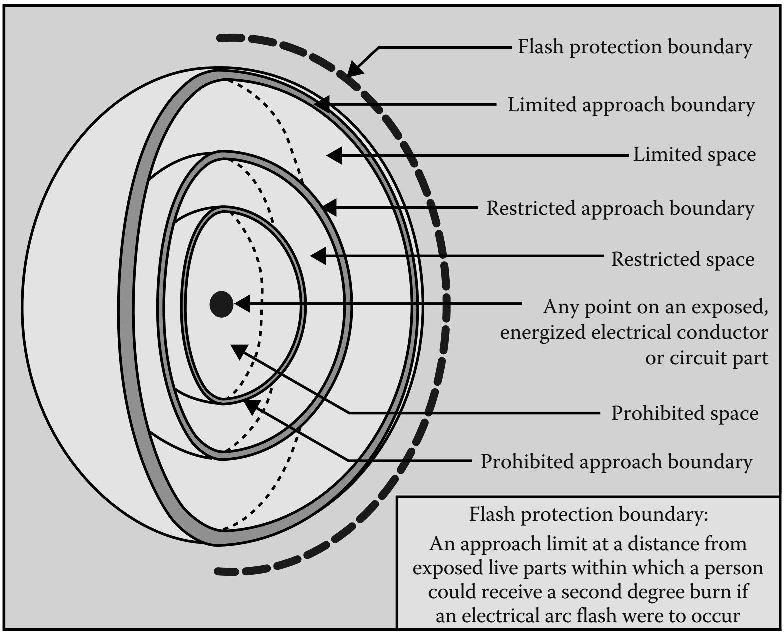


FIGURE 13.1
Limits of distance approach. (From NFPA 70E, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace-2004.)

determine the flash protection boundary and the PPE that people within the flash protection boundary shall use.

Flash protection boundary: For systems that are 600 V or less, the flash protection boundary shall be 4.0 ft, based on the product of clearing times of six cycles (0.1 s) and the available bolted fault current of 50 kA or any combination not exceeding 300 kA cycles (5000 A s). For clearing times and bolted fault currents other than 300 kA cycles, or under engineering supervision, the flash protection boundary shall alternatively be permitted to be calculated in accordance with the following general formula:

$$D_c = [2.65 \times \mathrm{MVA_{bf}} \times t]^{1/2}$$

or

$$D_c = [53 \times \mathrm{MVA} \times t]^{1/2}$$

where

D_c distance (ft) from an arc source for a second-degree burn

$\mathrm{MVA_{bf}}$ is the bolted fault capacity available at point involved (in mega volt-amps)

MVA is the capacity rating of transformer (mega volt-amps). For transformers with MVA ratings below 0.75 MVA, multiply the transformer MVA rating by 1.25

t is the time of arc exposure (s)

At voltage levels above 600 V, the flash protection boundary is the distance at which the incident energy equals 5 J/cm^2(1.2 cal/cm^2). For situations where fault clearing time is 0.1 s (or faster), the flash protection boundary is the distance at which the incident energy level equals 6.24 J/cm^2(1.5 cal/cm^2).

Protective clothing and PPE for application with a flash hazard analysis: Where it has been determined that work will be performed within the flash protection boundary by NFPA 70E, Article 130.3(A), the flash hazard analysis shall determine, and the employer shall document, the incident energy exposure of the worker (cal/cm^2). The incident energy exposure level shall be based on the working distance of the employee's face and chest areas from a prospective arc source for the specific task to be performed. FR clothing and PPE shall be used by the employee based on the incident energy exposure associated with the specific task. Recognizing that incident energy increases as the distance from the arc flash decreases, additional PPE shall be used for any parts of the body that are closer than the distance at which the incident energy was determined. As an alternative, the PPE requirements of NFPA 70E, Article 130.7(C)(9)(a) shall be permitted to be used in lieu of the detailed flash hazard analysis approach described in NFPA 70E, Article 130.3(A).

The NFPA 70E, Article 130.7 (13), Arc flash protective equipment: All arc-rated PPE include the ATPV with units in cal/cm^2. The required

PPE at specific locations is determined by comparing the calculated incident energy to the ratings for specific combinations of PPE. NFPA 70E, Table 130.7(C)(11) lists examples of protective clothing systems and typical characteristics including the degree of protection for various clothing. The protective clothing selected for the corresponding hazard/risk category number shall have an arc rating of at least the value listed in the last column of NFPA 70E, Table 130.7(C)(11). The NFPA 70E, Table 130.7(C)(11) is shown in Table 13.2 below.

For actual applications, the calculated incident energy must be compared to specific PPE combinations used at the facility being evaluated. The exception to this is the upper limit of 40 cal/cm^2. While PPE is available in ATPV values of 100 cal/cm^2 or more, values above 40 cal/cm^2 are prohibited due to the sound, pressure, and concussive forces. The sound, pressure, and concussive forces are more severe than the thermal values of arc energy greater than 40 cal/cm^2. An examination of the categories listed in Table 13.2 implies that each category has range (spread) of arc rating, i.e., for example category 1 range is 4–7.999, category 2 range is 8–24.999, and so on. It should be noted that manufacturers are allowed to label their garments for a given PPE category as long as garment's thermal value falls within the category's range. For example, a garment with an 8 cal/cm^2 rating can be labeled category 2 even though the category 2 can go up to 24.99 cal.

TABLE 13.2

PPE Categories

Hazard/Risk Category	Typical Protective Clothing Systems: Clothing Description (Typical Number of Clothing Layers Is Given in Parentheses)	Required Minimum Arc Rating of PPE: J/cm^2	cal/cm^2
0	Nonmelting, flammable materials (i.e., untreated cotton, wool, rayon, or silk, or blends of these materials) with a fabric weight at least 4.5 oz/yd^2 (1)	N/A	N/A
1	FR shirt and FR pants or FR coverall (1)	16.74	4
2	Cotton underwear—conventional short sleeve and brief/shorts, plus FR shirt and FR pants (1 or 2)	33.47	8
3	Cotton underwear plus FR shirt and FR pants plus FR coverall, or cotton underwear plus two FR coveralls (2 or 3)	104.6	25
4	Cotton underwear plus FR shirt and FR pants plus multilayer flash suit (3 or more)	167.36	40

Source: From NFPA 70E-2004, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace-2004, Table 130.7(C)(11).

Note: Arc rating is defined in Article 100 and can be either ATPV or E_{BT}. ATPV is defined in ASTM F 1959-99 as the incident energy on a fabric or material that results in sufficient heat transfer through the fabric or material to cause the onset of a second-degree burn based on the Stoll curve. E_{BT} is defined in ASTM F 1959-99 as the average of the five highest incident energy exposure values below the Stoll curve where the specimens do not exhibit break open. E_{BT} is reported when ATPV cannot be measured due to FR fabric break open.

It is inappropriate for some manufacturers to promote their safety equipment using lower calorie values for a given category of PPE. Therefore, when selecting PPE, the actual calculated incident energy at the specific work location must be compared to specific garment thermal rating within the given category to correctly protect the worker from a flash hazard.

The NFPA 70E, Article 400.11, Flash Protection: Switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and motor control centers in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall be field marked to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc-flash hazards. The marking shall be located so as to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment. This is the same requirement stated in Article 110-16 of the NEC-2002.

13.2.5 Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Standards

OSHA standards are federal regulations and apply to all covered industries except those states which have adopted safety programs which are approved by the OSHA. A partial listing of industries covered by OSHA is General Industry, Construction Industry, Power Generation, Transmission and Distribution, and Telecommunications. OSHA safety standards are published in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 29, Subtitle B, Chapter XVII. The OSHA electrical safety standards are in at least four categories similar to the four chapters of NFPA 70E.

These are

- Design and installation safety
- Safety-related work practices
- Safety-related maintenance requirements
- Special equipment

Electrical safety standards for general industry are found in Part 1910, Subpart S, I, and J. A partial listing of subpart S and I is given below.

Title	Paragraphs
Design safety standards for electrical equipment	1910.302–1910.308
Safety-related work practices	1910.331–1910.335
Safety-related maintenance requirements	1910.361–1910.380
Safety requirements for special equipment	1910.381–1910.398
Hazard assessment and equipment selection	1910.132–1910.139

In addition, part 1910.333(a)(1) states that live parts to which an employee may be exposed shall be de-energized before the employee works on or near them, unless the employer can demonstrate that de-energizing introduces additional or increased hazards or is infeasible due to design or operational limitations. When employees are required to work where there is a potential electrical hazard, part 1910.335 calls for the employer to provide electrical protective equipment that is appropriate for the specific parts of the body to be protected and for the work to be performed.

Employers are responsible for performing a hazard assessment in accordance with part 1910.132(d)(1) (i–iii). The requirements are as follows:

1910.132(d)(1): The employer shall assess the workplace to determine if hazards are present, or are likely to be present, which necessitate the use of PPE. If such hazards are present, likely to be present, the employer shall:

1910.132(d)(1)(i): Select, and have each affected employee use, the types of PPE that will protect the affected employee from the hazards identified in the hazard assessment

1910.132(d)(1)(ii): Communicate selection decisions to each affected employee

1910.132(d)(1)(iii): Select PPE that properly fits each affected employee.

The employer shall verify that the required workplace hazard assessment has been performed through a written certification that identifies the workplace evaluated; the person certifying that the evaluation has been performed; the date(s) of the hazard assessment; and, which identifies the document as a certification of hazard assessment.

1910.335(a)(1)(i) PPE: Employees working in areas where there are potential electrical hazards shall be provided with, and shall use, electrical protective equipment that is appropriate for the specific parts of the body to be protected and for the work to be performed.

1910.132(f) Training: The employer shall provide training to each employee who is required by this section to use PPE. Each such employee shall be trained to know at least the following: (1) When PPE is necessary; (2) What PPE is necessary; (3) How to properly don, doff, adjust, and wear PPE; (4) The limitations of the PPE; and (5) The proper care, maintenance, useful life, and disposal of the PPE.

Each affected employee shall demonstrate an understanding of the training specified in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, and the ability to use PPE properly, before being allowed to perform work requiring the use of PPE.

1910.132(f)(3) Proficiency and Retraining: When the employer has reason to believe that any affected employee who has already been trained, but does not have the understanding and skill required by paragraph (f)(2) of this section, the employer shall retrain each such employee. Circumstances where retraining is required include, but are not limited to, situations where: changes in the workplace render previous training obsolete; or changes in the types of PPE to be used render previous training obsolete; or inadequacies in an affected employee's knowledge or use of assigned PPE indicate that the employee has not retained the requisite understanding or skill. The employer shall verify that each affected employee has received and understood the required training through a written certification that contains the name of each employee trained, the date(s) of training, and that identifies the subject of the certification.

13.3 Arc-Flash Hazard and Regulatory Requirements

The regulatory requirements of OSHA, NFPA 70, and NFPA 70E pertaining to a worker's safety are described in Section 13.2. The regulatory requirements can be summarized as follows:

1. Determine the risk to personnel from exposure to incident energy released during an arc-flash event, i.e., the arc-flash hazard must be quantified.
2. Provide appropriate arc-flash hazard protection, i.e., correct PPE must be selected for nonprohibited work.
3. The arc flash assessment results must be documented and equipment labeled to inform and warn personnel of arc-flash hazard.
4. Personnel must be trained, understand the extent of arc-flash hazard, and take correct protective actions.

To quantify the hazard for each specific location, arc-flash analysis should be performed using either the IEEE 1584, *IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations*, methodology or the alternate method given in 70E. The IEEE 1584 and 70E methodologies involve calculating available short-circuit currents for each location, determining the clearing time of protective relays and devices, equipment location type and working distance. See Sections 13.3.2 and 13.3.3 for more details on performing the arc-flash analysis study. The correct PPE category is selected based on the results of the arc-flash hazard analysis study. After completion of the steps 1 and 2, correct labeling is developed to label the equipment in accordance with NEC and 70E requirements to warn personnel of the hazard. The labels that are generated from the arc-flash analysis programs are color coded to signify the severity of the danger of the incident energy available at the particular location. For example, the label color codes range from color green for category 0 (minimum severity) to color red (maximum severity) for which no PPE category is available and where no work can be done on energized equipment. A sample of the two labels generated using an arc-flash analysis program is shown in Figures 13.2 and 13.3. It should be noted that the text and color of the label in Figure 13.2 signifies the "Danger" and states "energized work is prohibited" because the arc energy exceeds the 40 cal/cm^2 for which no PPE is available.

! DANGER

NO PPE AVAILABLE

ENERGIZED WORK PROHIBITED

1919 in.	Flash Hazard Boundary
57.2 cal/cm^2	Flash Hazard at 36 in.
	Dangerous !!! No FR Class Found
13,200 VAC	Shock Hazard when cover is removed
2	Glove Class
60 in.	Limited Approach (Fixed Circuit)
26 in.	Restricted Approach
7 in.	Prohibited Approach

Bus: 13.2 KV PRIM Prot: 125E PRIM FU

FIGURE 13.2
Arc-flash hazard label for no PPE category available.

! WARNING

Arc Flash and Shock Hazard

Appropriate PPE Required

125 in.	Flash Hazard Boundary
28.6 cal/cm^2	Flash Hazard at 18 in.
Class 4	Cotton Underwear + FR Shirt and Pant + Multilayer Flash Suit
480 VAC	Shock Hazard when cover is removed
00	Glove Class
42 in.	Limited Approach (fixed circuit)
12 in.	Restricted Approach
1 in.	Prohibited Approach

Bus: MAIN SWBD BUS Prot: 4000A MAIN BKR

FIGURE 13.3
Arc-flash hazard label for PPE category 4.

The label shown in Figure 13.3 indicates PPE category 4 that the worker must use to perform work at this location. Both labels show the calculated flash protection boundary, incident energy, PPE category, glove classification, and shock protection boundaries per NFPA 70 E. The final step in this process is to give training to the employees on the arc-flash hazard, and how they should protect themselves.

13.3.1 Summary of NFPA 70, 70E, and OSHA Requirements

NFPA 70E and OSHA part 1910-132 require a hazard assessment for electrical equipment and selection of appropriate PPE for the employees if they are to work on energized equipment. Further, NFPA 70 (National Electric Code) requires that the equipment has to be labeled to show the available arc energy and the category of PPE the person needs to wear before working on the equipment. The following overview is offered for the reader in order to understand what is required by the above stated NFPA and OSHA requirements.

13.3.2 Overview of Arc-Flash Hazard

Arc-flash hazard is defined as a dangerous condition associated with the release of energy caused by an electric arc. The arc current creates a brilliant flash of light, a loud noise, intense heat, and a rapidly moving pressure wave. The products of arc-fault are ionized gases, metal vapors, molten metal droplets, and shrapnel that shower the immediate vicinity of the arcing fault. The electrical arc burns make up a substantial portion of injuries from electrical malfunctions. The extremely high temperatures of the electrical arc can cause fatal and major burns at distances of 5–10 ft from the arcing equipment. Therefore, the focus of industry on electrical safety and recognition of arc-flash burns as having great significance highlighted the need for protecting employees from all arc-flash hazards. The NEC-2008, Article 110-16 Flash protection, states in part that switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and motor control centers that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall be field marked to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc-flash hazards. It is implied that flash protection is required when examining, adjusting, servicing, or maintaining energized equipment. The equipment shall be field marked (labeled) to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc-flash hazards. Let us now take a look at how the requirements for field labeling of equipment can be accomplished.

In order to generate an arc flash hazard label, an arc-flash hazard analysis study has to be conducted to determine the arc energy available at a given equipment. Therefore an arc-flash hazard analysis is performed in conjunction with the short-circuit study and protective device coordination study. Results of the short-circuit study are used to calculate the three-phase fault current from which the arcing fault current is determined. Results of protective device coordination study are used to determine the time required for the electrical protective devices to clear the arcing fault current conditions.

Results of both short circuit and protective device coordination studies are used to perform an arc-flash hazard analysis. Results of arc-flash hazard analysis are used to identify the flash protection boundary and the incident energy at assigned working distances for the electrical equipment. The flash protection boundary and the incident energy calculated in the arc-flash hazard analysis evaluation are based on taking credit for the protective relays and devices in removing the arc. Therefore it is important that these protective devices be kept in good working condition to maintain the validity of the arc-flash hazard analysis results. Readers will find useful information in Section 1.9 in Chapter 1, where a discussion is provided on the bases of maintenance and testing of protective devices. In view of the requirements for arc-flash hazard analysis, it has become even more important now to maintain and test breakers and protective devices on a regular basis to ensure their reliability.

13.3.3 Arc-Flash Analysis

The arc-flash analysis is conducted by using a software program specifically developed to do the arc-flash analysis. The arc-flash software programs are based on the methodologies given in IEEE-1584-2002 and the NFPA 70E methodologies. The arc-flash software program is intended to provide guidance based on the methodologies given in IEEE-1584–2002 and the NFPA 70E for the calculation of incident energy and arc-flash protection boundaries. The results obtained from the arc-flash software program can be used as a basis to develop strategies that have the potential of minimizing burn injuries. These strategies include specifying the rating of PPE, working only when the equipment is not energized, applying arc-resistance switchgear, and following other good engineering techniques and work practices. The guide for arc-flash analysis presented in the IEEE-1584-2002, is based on testing and analysis of the hazard presented by incident energy. The potentially hazardous effects of molten metal splatter, projectiles, pressure impulses, and toxic arc by-products were not considered in the analysis methodology of IEEE-1584-2002. The software programs based on the IEEE-1584-2002, provide analysis only for the hazards presented by incident energy and do not cover the potential hazards from molten metal splatter, projectiles, pressure impulses, and toxic arc by-products. The PPE listing documented in the result of the arc-flash software program are not intended to prevent all injuries but to mitigate the impact of an arc flash upon a person, if one should occur. The selection of a level of PPE is based on NFPA 70E, Table 130.7(C)(11) using the results of the arc-flash analysis. For conducting an arc-flash analysis, the following steps are required:

- Collect the system data
- Determine the system modes of operation
- Calculate the bolted fault currents
- Determine the arcing fault currents
- Determine protective device characteristics and the duration of the arcs (clearing time of the protective devices)

- Determine the system voltages and classes of equipment
- Select the working distances
- Determine the incident energy for all equipment
- Determine the flash boundary for all equipment
- Select PPE from the NFPA 70E-2004

It should be noted that it takes an experienced engineer to implement the steps listed above for modeling the electrical power system, input the required system data, set the overcurrent relays and protective devices in the software program. After the short circuit and protective device coordination studies are completed then an arc flash hazard analysis study is conducted to calculate the various parameters of the arc flash hazard. The arc-flash software programs available on the market today will generate a report that provides detail information on the various aspects of arc flash hazard analysis. A typical arc flash evaluation report includes the information listed in Table 13.3.

TABLE 13.3

Typical Arc Flash Evaluation Report Information

Bus name	This is the location at which the equipment is being evaluated.
Prot device name	This is protective device that interrupts the arcing current.
Bus (kV)	The nominal voltage of the bus or equipment.
Bolted bus fault	This is the bolted three-phase fault at the bus or equipment.
Protective device bolted fault	This is the bolted fault current through the protective device.
Protective device arcing fault	This is the arching fault current through the protective device.
Trip/delay time	The protective device tripping delay time taken from the time current coordination study.
Breaker opening time	The breaker opening time (mechanical time).
Ground	The type of system grounding; yes, means solidly grounded; no, means high-resistance or ungrounded system.
Equipment type	This is taken from IEEE std 1584-2002, Table 2.
Gap (mm)	Typical bus-to-bus gap taken from IEEE std 1584-2002, Table 2.
Arc-flash boundary (in.)	This is an approach limit for flash protection from live parts operating at 50 V or more that are uninsulated or exposed within which a person could receive a second degree burn should an arc source develop.
Working distance (in.)	The working distance of the head and chest from a potential arc source.
Incident energy (cal/cm^2)	This is the incident energy calculated based on the arc current, the arc time, and the working distance.
Required protective FR clothing class	Based on the calculated incident energy, a hazard risk category class is determined for personnel protective clothing. Refer to NFPA 70E, Tables 130.7(C)(10) and 130.7(C)(11) for complete clothing equipment.

13.4 Electrical Safety Practices and Precautions

The methods and techniques discussed in this chapter are industry accepted practices for working in or around energized electric power lines and circuits, and should be used only as guidelines. National and local codes and rules and regulatory standards should always take precedence over the guidelines discussed in this chapter.

The following rules are basic to electrical accident prevention:

- Know the work to be done and how to do it.
- Review working area for hazards of environment or facility design that may exist in addition to those directly associated with the assigned work objective.
- Wear flame-retardant coveralls and safety glasses plus other recommended protective devices/equipment. Refer to the PPE categories specified under arc-flash hazard analysis for a specified task.
- Isolate (de-energize) the circuits and/or equipment to be worked.
- Lock out and tag all power sources and circuits to and from the equipment/circuit to be worked on.
- Test with two pretested testing devices for the presence of electrical energy on circuits and/or equipment (both primary and secondary) while wearing electrical protective gloves.
- Ground all sides of the work area with protective grounds applied with hot sticks. All grounds must be visible at all times to those in the work area.
- Enclose the work area with tape barrier.

13.4.1 Electrical Safety

The following general guidelines are provided on on-site safety, work area control, lock-out and/or tagging, protective apparel, testing of energized circuits and equipment, rubber gloves, voltage testers and detectors, grounds, circuit breaker maintenance safety checklist, and entering confined spaces. These guidelines should be supplemented as required to meet the applicable codes and regulations including the PPE required per arc-flash hazard analysis.

13.4.2 "On-Site" Electrical Safety

Prior to going on an "on-site" electrical assignment, each worker should receive the following rules and should review and abide by them while on the assignment.

A foreman or qualified employee should be designated for each on-site assignment to provide on-site work direction and safety coordination. All personnel assigned to on-site electrical work should comply with the following directions:

- Know the work content and work sequence, especially all safety measures.
- Know the proper tools and instruments required for the work, that they have the full capability of safely performing the work, and that they are in good repair and/or are calibrated.
- Check to determine that all de-energized circuits and equipment are locked out and that grounds are placed on all sides of the work area prior to beginning work.
- Segregate all work areas with barriers or tapes, confine all your activities to these areas, and prevent unauthorized access to the area.
- Insure that all energized circuits and equipment adjacent to the work area are isolated, protected, or marked by at least two methods (e.g., rubber mats, tapes, signs, etc.) for personnel protection.
- Do not perform work on energized circuits and equipment without the direct authorization of your unit manager. When work on energized circuits and equipment has been authorized, use appropriate PPE required for the task, safety-tested equipment (i.e., rubber gloves, sleeves, mats, insulated tools, etc.).
- Your foreman and qualified employee must inform you of all changes in work conditions. You then must repeat this information to your foreman and qualified employee to insure your recognition and understanding of the condition.
- Do not work alone; work with another worker or employee at all times. Do not enter an energized area without direct permission from your foreman and qualified employee.
- Discuss each step of your work with your foreman and qualified employee before it is begun.
- Do not directly touch an unconscious fellow worker since he or she may be in contact with an energized circuit and equipment. Use an insulated device to remove him or her from the suspect area.
- Do not perform, or continue to perform, any work when you are in doubt about the safety procedure to be followed, the condition of the equipment, or any potential hazards. Perform this work only after you have obtained directions from your foreman and qualified employee.
- Do not work on, or adjacent to, any energized circuits and equipment unless you feel alert and are in good health.

13.4.3 "On-Site" Safety Kit

The following are recommended protective tools to be used in preparation for and in the performance of on-site electrical work:

- Red safety tape (300 ft)
- Red flashing hazard lights (6)

- Safety cones (6)
- Red "Do Not Operate" tags (15)
- Padlocks, keys, and lock shackle (6)
- Ground fault circuit interrupter-15 A, 125 V (1)
- Fire extinguishers (2)
- PPE
  Flame-retardant coveralls
  Safety glasses
  Face shields
  Hard hats
  Other items required for protection on the job
- Combustible gas/oxygen detectors
- Portable ventilation blower
- Ground loop impedance tester, ohmmeter (1)
- Voltage detectors
  Statiscope
  1. Station type (1)
  2. Overhead extension type (1)
  Audio
  1. Tic Tracer
  2. ESP
- Voltage/ampere meter (1)
  Amprobe
  Simpson
- Rubber gloves and protectors of appropriate class
- Grounding clamps, cables
- Hot sticks

13.4.4 Work Area Control

When workers are setting up the control area, it should be standard procedure that the safety coordinator be present and provide the required information.

Tape—solid red: A red tape barrier (with safety cones and red flashing lights) must be used to enclose an area in which personnel will be working. Other persons may not enter the isolated area unless they are actively working in conjunction with the personnel on the assigned work.

The purpose of the solid red tape barrier is to enclose and isolate an area in which a hazard might exist for individuals unfamiliar with the equipment enclosed. The only persons permitted within the solid red barrier are individuals knowledgeable in the use and operation of the enclosed equipment.

For their safety, workers shall not interest themselves in nor enter any area not enclosed by the red tape barrier except for a defined route to enter and leave the site.

It is important that the tape barrier is strictly controlled and the restrictions regarding its use are enforced.

When any workers are using solid red tape to enclose an area, the following requirements must be satisfied:

- Place the tape so that it completely encloses the area or equipment where the hazard exists.
- Place the tape so that it is readily visible from all avenues of approach and at such a level that it forms an effective barrier.
- Be certain that the area enclosed by the tape is large enough to give adequate clearance between the hazard and any personnel working in the tape enclosed area.
- Arrange the tape so any test equipment for the setup can be operated safely from outside the enclosed area.
- Use the tape to prevent the area from being entered by persons unfamiliar with the work and associated hazards. Do not use the tape for any other purpose.
- Remove the tape when the hazard no longer exists and the work is completed.

It shall be standard procedure that the workers should consider all areas outside the red barrier work area as energized and undertake no investigation unless accompanied by a knowledgeable plant employee.

Tape—white with a red stripe: White tape with a red stripe is used to enclose and isolate a temporary hazard (mechanical or electrical). No one is to enter this enclosed area. Obviously, if the enclosing of a hazardous area with tape is to be protective, the use of the tape barrier should be controlled and the restrictions on entering the area strictly enforced.

When any personnel are using white tape with a red stripe, the following requirements must be satisfied:

- Place the tape so that it completely encloses the area or equipment where the hazard exists.
- Place the tape so that it is readily visible from all avenues of approach and at such a level that it forms an effective barrier.
- Be certain that the area enclosed is large enough to give adequate clearance between the hazard and any personnel outside the enclosed area.
- Arrange the tape so that the test equipment for the setup can be operated outside the enclosed area.
- Use the tape only to isolate a temporary mechanical or electrical hazard; do not use the tape for any other purpose.

Consider a striped tape area similar to an interlocked enclosure and treat as such.

Remove the tape when the hazard no longer exists.

13.4.5 Lock-Out and/or Tagging

For the protection of personnel working on electrical conductor and/or equipment, locks must be placed on all open isolation devices designed to receive them. "DANGER" tags signed by the foreman or qualified employee must also be placed on the open isolation device.

Danger Tags: Danger tags may be applied only by authorized personnel and the tags must be dated and signed by the person applying the tag. The following requirements must be satisfied when danger tags are used:

Danger tags are to be used only for personnel protection when the personnel are required to work on or near equipment that, if operated, might cause injury.

Danger tags are attached to primary disconnecting devices as a means of locking out equipment. Tag each source of power to the equipment and associated feeds (instrumentation circuits, PT's, CT's, etc.) to the equipment which is to be locked out.

Danger tags should be left on the equipment only while the personnel are working on the equipment or when a hazard to the personnel exists. A device bearing a danger tag must not be operated at any time (Figure 13.4).

Out of order tags: Out of order tags are used to restrict the operation of equipment which has a mechanical defect or for other reasons that are not related to the safety of personnel. Complete information concerning the reasons for the tag and a list of all persons authorized to operate the tagged device must be written on the tag (Figure 13.5).

Out of service tags: Out of service tags are used to indicate equipment that has been taken out of service. It is a white tag with letters on a black background.

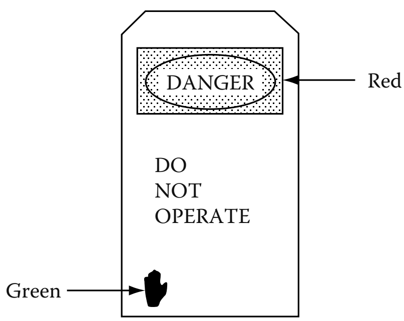


FIGURE 13.4
A sample of danger tag.

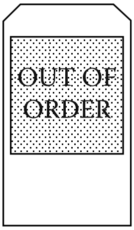


FIGURE 13.5
A sample of out of service tag.

Caution tags: Caution tags are used to indicate potential hazard or unsafe conditions. These are yellow tags with yellow letters on a black background.

Use of danger tags: Danger tags are authorized for use on any isolation device as a method of locking out equipment. These tags must be hung so there is no doubt as to which device they control. The tags may be used and signed only by authorized personnel, who are designated by the plant manager.

When more than one crew or trade is working on the same equipment, each crew must attach its own tag and place its own lock on the device. Gang lock clips can be used as shown in Figure 13.6 to provide maximum protection to a number of crews working on the same equipment or conductors.

Danger tags may be removed only by the person who originally placed and signed the tag. If that person is absolutely unable to remove the tag, a committee selected by the plant manager will fully investigate the situation. This committee will remove the tag only when they are satisfied that they have full knowledge of the intention of the original tagger and that the tag may be removed without endangering anyone.

13.4.6 Protective Apparel-Operating Electrical Equipment

All personnel must wear the PPE i.e., apparel based on the arc-flash hazard categories required by NFPA 70E and OSHA regulations (see Sections 13.2 and 13.3) when working on electrical equipment which is, or might be considered, energized, or become energized as a result of the work. Following is a partial list of protective clothing covered in the PPE categories described in NFPA 70E:

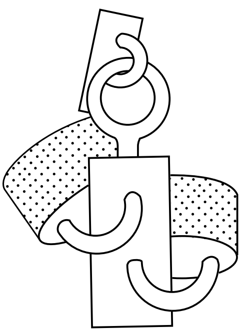


FIGURE 13.6
A sample of Gang lock clips to lock out equipment.

- Nonmelting, flammable materials (i.e., untreated cotton, wool, rayon, or silk, or blends of these materials) with a fabric weight at least 4.5 oz/ydz
- FR shirt and FR pants or FR coverall
- Cotton underwear—conventional short sleeve and brief/shorts, plus FR shirt and FR pants
- Cotton underwear plus FR shirt and FR pants plus FR coverall, or cotton underwear plus two FR coveralls
- Cotton underwear plus FR shirt and FR pants plus multilayer flash suit (3 or more)
- Fire-resistant coveralls buttoned fully at the throat and wrists
- Electrical lineman's safety gloves with protectors
- A face shield which also provides forehead and hair protection, or a face shield which can be attached to a hard hat
- All personnel shall wear protective apparel when withdrawing and inserting circuit breakers, connecting and disconnecting ground connections, and testing for energized circuits and/or equipment
- Only qualified personnel shall be allowed to operate switching equipment

13.4.7 Testing of Electrical Circuits and/or Equipment

General: All circuits and equipment are to be considered as energized until proven de-energized by testing with voltage detectors, and grounding cables are connected. The voltage detectors selected should be for the class of voltage supplied to the circuits and equipment to be serviced.

Personnel assigned to on-site electrical service work should be supplied with at least two electrical voltage detectors. The voltage detectors provided shall be capable of safely detecting the voltage present in the circuits and/or equipment to be serviced. The assigned personnel shall be instructed in the correct operation of each detector before each on-site electrical job.

Each electrical circuit and/or piece of equipment to be serviced should be tested by an assigned craftsman with two detectors and then tested by one other person who has been trained in the correct operation of the voltage detectors. This testing shall be performed in the assigned craftsman's presence to insure that the electrical circuit and/or equipment is de-energized.

The voltage detectors should be checked for proper operation immediately prior to and immediately after testing the electrical circuits and/or equipment to be serviced. These checks should be made on a known source of energized voltage, such as on the spark plug of a running automobile engine with a glow stick, or with a specifically designed tester supplied by the detector vendor.

While testing circuits and/or equipment, the craftsman performing the tests shall wear lineman's safety rubber gloves designed for the class of voltage in the circuits and/or equipment to be serviced and other protective equipment for this work.

Capacitors: A capacitor to be serviced must be removed from operation in the following sequence:

Isolate the capacitors by opening the breakers or isolation devices connecting them to the electrical system.

Permit the capacitors to drain off the accumulated charge for 5–10 min. (There is generally a built-in device which accomplishes this drain.)

Short circuit and ground the capacitors in the manner and with the protective equipment noted in Section 13.4.11. While performing these procedures, be very careful that sufficient distance is maintained from the capacitors with a hot stick in the event the drain-off device is not properly functioning.

Vacuum circuit breaker high-potential testing (hipotting)–cautions: Although the procedure for hipotting a vacuum circuit breaker is similar to that used for any other electrical device, there are two areas that require the exercise of extra caution.

During any hipotting operation, the main shield inside the interrupter can acquire an electrical charge that usually will be retained even after the hipot voltage is removed. This shield is attached to the midband ring of the insulating envelope. A grounding stick should always be used to discharge the ring as well as the other metal parts of the assembly before touching the interrupter, connections, or breaker studs.

High voltage (HV) applied across open gaps in a vacuum can produce hazardous X-radiation if the voltage across the contacts exceeds a certain level for a given contact gap. Therefore, do not make hipot tests on an open breaker at voltages higher than the recommended 36 kV alternating current (AC) across each interrupter. During the hipot test, the steel front panel and partial side panels should be assembled to the breaker. Personnel should stand in front of the breaker to take advantage of the shielding afforded by the panels. If this position is not practical, equivalent protection can be provided by limiting personnel exposure to testing four three-phase breakers per hour with the personnel not closer than 3 m (9 ft 10 in.) to the interrupters. During equipment operation in the normal current carrying mode, there is no X-radiation because there are no open contacts.

Electrostatic coupling: When personnel are working on a de-energized circuit that is adjacent to an energized circuit, it is important to be certain that solid grounds are attached to the de-energized circuit at all times. A substantial voltage charge can be generated in a de-energized circuit by electromagnetic coupling with the energized circuit. The solid grounds will drain off this voltage charge.

13.4.8 Rubber Gloves for Electrical Work-Use and Care

Rubber gloves with leather protectors that have been tested to at least 10,000 V must be worn when work is performed on or within reach of

energized conductors and/or equipment. The rubber gloves and protectors of the appropriate class should be available to all trained personnel as part of the safety kit for on-site electrical work.
The rubber gloves and protectors are of two types:

1. Low-voltage rubber gloves and protectors (Class 0). These gloves are tested and approved for work on equipment energized at 750 V or less. (Permission should be given by the foreman for the use of low-voltage gloves when working on conductors and/or equipment energized below 750 V.)
2. HV rubber gloves and protectors. The gloves are tested at 10,000 V (Class 1) for use on 5 kV or less, tested for 15,000 V for use on 10 kV or less (Class 2), and at 20,000 V (Class 3) for use on 15 kV or less voltage ratings.

Both HV and low-voltage rubber gloves are of the gauntlet type and are available in various sizes. To get the best possible protection from rubber gloves, and to keep them in a serviceable condition as long as possible, here are a few general rules that apply whenever they are used in electrical work:

- Always wear leather protectors over your gloves. Any direct contact of a rubber glove with sharp or pointed objects may cut, snag, or puncture the glove and rob you of the protection you are depending on.
- Always wear rubber gloves right side out (serial number and size to the outside). Turning gloves inside out places a stress on the preformed rubber.
- Always keep the gauntlets up. Rolling them down sacrifices a valuable area of protection.
- Always inspect and give a field air test (described later) to your gloves before using them. Check the inside of the protectors for any bit of metal or short pieces of wire that may have fallen in them.
- Always store gloves where they cannot come into contact with sharp or pointed tools that may cut or puncture them.
- All gloves are to be inspected before use.

HV rubber gloves:

- These gloves must be tested before they are issued. All gloves should be issued in matched pairs in a sealed carton. If received with the seal broken, return them for testing.
- When HV gloves are issued to individuals for use over a three month period, they shall be inspected and tested at least every three months by a certified testing laboratory. All gloves, must be tested when returned to the tool crib after the job is completed.

Low-voltage rubber gloves:

- Low-voltage rubber gloves must be inspected (see inspection of rubber gloves) before each use
- Defective gloves, or gloves in a questionable condition, must be immediately replaced

Leather protector gloves:

- Approved leather protectors must be worn over rubber gloves to protect them from mechanical injury
- Protectors that have been soaked with oil should never be used over rubber gloves
- Protectors that are serviceable for use over rubber gloves are not to be used as work gloves
- Protectors should be replaced if they have faulty or worn stitching, holes, cuts, abrasions, or if for any other reason, they no longer protect the rubber gloves

Inspection of rubber gloves (all classes): Before rubber gloves are used, a visual inspection and an air test should be made at least once every day and at any other time deemed necessary during the progress of the job.

Visual inspection: When inspecting rubber gloves in the field, stretch a small area at a time (see Figure 13.7), checking to be sure that no defects exist, such as (1) embedded foreign material, (2) deep scratches, (3) pin holes or punctures, (4) snags, or (5) cuts. In addition, look for signs of deterioration caused by oil, tar, grease, insulating compounds, or any other substance which may be injurious to rubber. Inspect the entire glove thoroughly, including the gauntlet.

Gloves that are found to be defective should not be mutilated in the field but should be tagged with a yellow tag and turned in for proper disposal.

Air test: After visually inspecting the glove, other defects may be observed by applying the air test as follows:

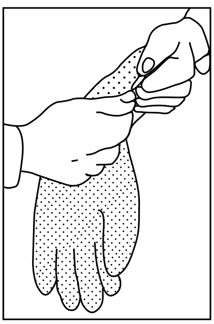


FIGURE 13.7
Inspecting rubber gloves in the field.

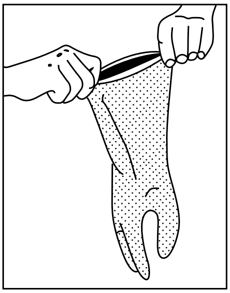


FIGURE 13.8
Testing a glove for air leak in the field—step 1.

Hold the glove with thumbs and forefingers as illustrated in Figure 13.8. Twirl the glove around quickly to fill with air (Figure 13.9).

Trap the air by squeezing the gauntlet with one hand. Use the other hand to squeeze the palm, fingers, and thumb in looking for weaknesses and defects (Figure 13.10).

Hold the glove to the face to detect air leakage or hold it to the ear and listen for escaping air.

13.4.9 Low-Voltage Tester

This tester may be used for measuring AC or direct current (DC) voltage from 110 to 600 V when accuracy is not required. It can be used to test for continuity, blown fuses, grounded side of a circuit or a motor, and polarity. This tester operates on the principle that the current passed through the solenoid of the instrument is proportional to the voltage under test and will cause the tester solenoid plunger to move in the same proportion. A pointer attached to the plunger indicates the voltage on the tester scale. This instrument has no internal protection: therefore, extreme caution must be used at all times.

Some models have a two-part neon bulb. Both parts glow when energized by AC. Only the part that is connected to the negative side of a circuit will glow when energized by DC.

When the low-voltage tester is used
Wear rubber gloves with protectors

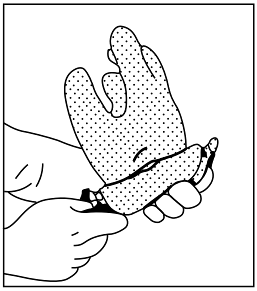


FIGURE 13.9
Testing a glove for air leak in the field—step 2.

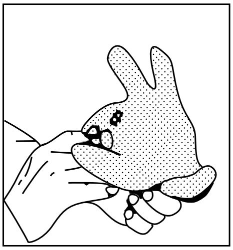


FIGURE 13.10
Testing a glove for air leak in the field—step 3.

Check the operation of the tester by testing a known energized circuit. Assure good contact with the tester probes across the circuit being tested. Read the voltage on the tester.

Because the low-voltage tester is designed for intermittent use only, continuous operation might burn out the solenoid, especially on the higher voltage.

Tic tracer (an audio voltage detector): The tic tracer is an audio voltage detector, which detects the electrostatic field surrounding an energized AC circuit and/or equipment.

This detector will operate only on unshielded AC circuits and/or equipment. It will detect the presence of voltages ranging from approximately 40 up to 600 V when hand held; higher voltages when used with approved hot sticks.

Wear HV rubber gloves and leather protectors when using the tic tracer to test circuits and/or equipment to be serviced.

Turn on the actuating switch on the side of the tic tracer.

Check the tracer by bringing it close to a conductor known to be energized.

Check for proper tracer operation by placing it near a lighted fluorescent bulb or at any known energized conductor of AC voltage.

13.4.10 Medium- and HV-Detectors

Proximity Type: The proximity type HV tester is an instrument intended for use in detecting the electrostatic field surrounding an electrical conductor that is energized with AC at high potential. It is used only on AC circuits and/or equipment. The lowest voltage that can be reliably detected by this device is about 2000 V. Most detectors of this type have hard rubber or plastic tubular cases with one end for testing and a handle at the other end. A neon tube is used for voltage detection. There are several designs in various lengths for use in different situations. When the test end is brought near an uninsulated conductor that has been energized with AC at high potential, the neon tube will light with a red glow. A conductor that is surrounded by grounded metal has its electrostatic field effectively limited by the grounded metal; therefore, care should be taken that a conductor under test is not shielded in such a way as to interfere with the operation of the detector.

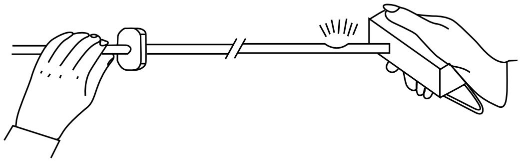


FIGURE 13.11
Proximity type HV detector with neon tube.

Use of a proximity HV detector

- Wear HV rubber gloves of the appropriate class with protectors.
- Wipe detector clean and dry. Check detector by bringing the test end close to an uninsulated conductor known to be energized at HV. Or you can use portable tester (Figure 13.11) by placing the lamp-end metal terminal of the detector against the testing point of the tester and pulling the trigger. If neon bulb of the detector glows, it is in good condition.
- To test an uninsulated conductor to determine whether or not it is energized, bring the test end of the detector close to the conductor. A red glow from the neon tube indicates that the conductor is energized. If there is no red glow from the neon tube, recheck the detector as explained above to make certain that the instrument is properly functioning.
- In using the detector, turn the neon tube away from the direct rays of strong light in order to make the red glow from the tube more visible.
- Wear rubber gloves and leather protectors when making tests with HV detectors and keep hands in back of guards on handles.
- The proper type of detector, having sufficient length or extension, should be used to maintain proper body clearances for the particular voltage being tested. Some detectors are equipped with a periscope (Figure 13.12) so that the glow from the neon tubes will be visible from a greater distance. Care must be exercised in the use of the periscope type so the guard or hand does not block the line of sight.

Direct contact type: The direct contact type HV detector is an instrument intended for use in detecting the presence of an AC voltage with respect to ground by direct contact between the detector and the energized conductor. It is used only on AC circuits and/or equipment. The lowest voltage that can

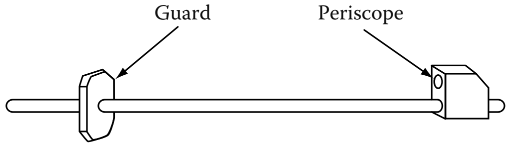


FIGURE 13.12
Proximity Type HV detector with periscope.

be reliably detected by this instrument is about 2400 V to ground. The actual detection is normally done by a neon tube connected to one side of a forked contact terminal. The bulb is illuminated by a very small current flow due to the capacitance between an internal electrode and ground. This type of detector should not be used on ungrounded systems.

A special type phasing detector with two HV wands should be used if the system is ungrounded. These two wands are each touched to a different phase and the neon indicator detects phase-to-phase voltage. This device can also be used on grounded systems. The lowest voltage that can be reliably detected by this device is about 2000 V.

Important points to remember:

- Assume all circuits to be energized until proven otherwise.
- All protective equipment is to be proof tested for the voltage being worked.
- Maintain all leads, probes, clips, and terminals in good condition. Repair or replace defective leads.
- Wear HV rubber gloves of the appropriate class with protectors.

13.4.11 Grounds-Personnel Protection

Grounding is installed to provide a metallic connection from ground to de-energized circuit and/or equipment to be serviced. This is for the purpose of draining off static and induced electricity but, most importantly, to protect the worker, in the event that the equipment becomes accidentally energized. Before grounds are attached, the cable, bus, or equipment must be de-energized, isolated, locked out, and tagged. It must then be definitely established that the equipment to be grounded is de-energized by testing the circuits and/or equipment with voltage detectors.

The selection of the ground clamps is based on both the configuration and the electrical capacity according to the type of equipment to be grounded. The ground cable is to be a flexible insulated copper conductor. The rules for sizing the ground cables to be used as protective grounds are:

The minimum size of cable to be used is a No. 1/0 American wire gauge (AWG) conductor.

The size of ground cables to be used must be at least equal to the size of the conductors feeding the circuit and/or equipment to be serviced. When the size of the ground cables or clusters is too large due to the system capacity, then bus sections or similar conducting materials must be used.

The cross-sectional area of the shorting paths and to ground must be sufficient to carry the short-circuit current. One or several conductors in a cluster may function as the grounding cable to carry the current. (A 4/0 AWG neoprene-insulated welding cable will pass 30,000 A for 0.5 s without melting the insulation.)

When installing ground clamps on electrical circuits and/or equipment, all workers shall use hot sticks rated for the voltage being worked. Several types of hot sticks, 6 to 8 ft in length, are listed as follows:

- Rotary blade—universal end
- Two-prong—universal end
- Fixed blade—universal end
- Rotary prong—universal end

While grounds are applied, the following protective equipment must be worn:

- Flame retardant coveralls
- Safety glasses
- Electrical lineman's gloves with leather protectors
- Hard hat
- Face shield

In applying grounds, perform the following steps in sequence:

Attach the protective ground cable to the station or building ground grid. If a ground system is not available, drive ground rods of sufficient cross section and number to carry the fault current. Be positive that a solid ground connection is made.

Test the value of the impedance of the ground cable and clamps with an ohm meter. The value should be much less than 1 Ω. Unless this value is extremely low, the ground connection is not adequate for personnel protection.

Connect one ground cable to the closest phase of the system and connect each succeeding phase in order of closeness. When removing the grounds, reverse the order so the application or removal of a ground will not require the crossing of an ungrounded-system phase. The grounds are applied to phases A, B, and C, in that order and removed in the reverse order.

Connect grounds to each phase of the circuit and/or equipment.

Check to determine that all connected ground cables are visible at all times when work is being performed.

Install grounds on all sides of the work area.

Switchgear ground and test (G&T) device: A G&T device is an auxiliary device, used with metal clad switchgear to ground equipment or to permit various tests, when equipment is out of service. The G&T device resembles a circuit breaker but is not designed to interrupt a circuit.

Switchgear "dummy" element: A dummy element is a device to provide a current path through a breaker compartment. The element frame resembles a breaker. The element is not designed to interrupt a circuit.

13.5 Electrical Switching Practices and Precautions

13.5.1 On-Site Circuit Breaker Maintenance Safety Checklists

Low voltage (600 V and below) checklist:
Preparation:

- Telephone channels must be made available to summon emergency personnel when needed. The telephone must be close to the work site and functional throughout the period during which the work is to be done.
- The light level in the work area must be sufficient to perform the work safely. (M-G sets, high-powered self-contained lighting systems, and/or emergency feeders will be used/supplied if the electrical shutdown is complete.)
- No employee should work on-site for more than 12 h, and the work period should be preceded and followed by a minimum of 8 h off (rest).
- The qualified craftsman should provide technical direction on-site.
- No one shall work alone.
- General workers shall not energize equipment or systems. These activities are to be performed by an assigned qualified person.
- Damp or recently flooded areas shall be worked completely de-energized. Control power also shall be de-energized.
- All stationary (bolted-in) and plug-in type circuit breakers (nondraw out) shall only be worked on when both the line and load sources are de-energized.
- When primary power circuits are energized, no conducting materials, including hardware or tools, shall be inserted in the cubicle.

Examination of equipment/breakers:
Prior to working on equipment/breakers, the following precautions must be observed:

- On solenoid operating mechanisms, trip the breaker "open." On stored energy mechanisms, trip the breaker "open" and completely discharge "stored energy springs." (See the appropriate breaker instruction book and determine the exact procedure.)
- Check for proper operation of mechanical or electrical interlocks. (All low-voltage draw out power circuit breakers have either mechanical or electrical interlocks to protect both personnel and equipment while the breaker is being inserted or withdrawn from its cubicle.) Always check these devices to confirm their proper operation. In all cases, consult the manufacturer's instruction to obtain interlock adjustment data (dimensions and tolerances).

- Check for defeated or bypassed interlocks. (This condition enables the circuit breaker to be withdrawn or inserted in a closed position. This is an extremely hazardous condition.) If defeated interlocks are found, the following steps are to be performed:

Reactivate the interlock (or remove the bypass) and test to verify proper performance.

If equipment or materials are not available to make the repair, notify the appropriate person and do not reinsert the circuit breaker. The responsible person informed of the risk should decide whether to have his men reinsert a breaker with defective interlocks.

To minimize personnel and equipment exposure, de-energize the equipment (including control power). If this is not possible and the responsible person plans to reinsert the breaker, all other personnel should remove themselves from the immediate area.

- Place the keys to interlock on the equipment being worked in the possession of the qualified craftsman or foreman, providing technical and safety direction for the on-site job.
- Check carefully that the spring-loaded contacts of the primary disconnect assemblies on the low-voltage draw out breakers are mounted properly, that the hardware is tight, and none are missing. Also check to determine that springs are in good condition and exert the proper pressure to insure good contact.
- Check the hinge pins and spring clips on the primary disconnect assemblies. (The primary disconnect assemblies on some breakers may employ hinge pins mounted horizontally and passing through each disconnect cluster. The pins are retained on both ends by spring (or cee) clips. There is one pin per cluster and a total of six clusters—three line and three load. The length of these pins is sufficient to bridge the spacing between the phases, and the pin will still be retained in its original primary cluster. If not properly clipped, these pins will travel with vibration or other external forces. If the pin movement is extreme, a phase-to-phase fault can result.)
- Check each low-voltage breaker with a 1000 V megohm meter phase-to-phase-to-ground to assure adequate dielectric resistance between phases and to ground. These tests will prevent reapplying a breaker which could cause a serious flashover due to the effects of aging and environment.
- Prior to operation of circuit breaker mechanisms, remove all tools, parts, and equipment from the breaker proper. All personnel are to stand clear of the breaker while it is being energized by a qualified person.

Racking in precautions:

- First insure that the breaker is open.
- Inspect the cubicle for foreign objects (such as tools, rags, hipot wire or loose hardware, etc.). Adequate lighting is necessary to thoroughly inspect the cubicle.
- Exercise care when cleaning and inspecting cubicles. Use only insulated nonconducting tools (brushes, vacuum hoses, screwdrivers, etc.) to clean or adjust elements within the cubicle. Handles or grips are to be sufficiently long to avoid the necessity of major extensions of the arm into the cubicle. Long sleeves and rubber gloves/gauntlets are mandatory for all interior cubicle adjustments when the system is energized. Technicians are to wear long sleeved shirts and remove all jewelry such as watches and rings. If the stationary line side or load side stabs or bars require maintenance which involves other than vacuuming, the system is to be de-energized.
- Check to determine that the control circuits (24 to 250 V DC, 120 to 550 V AC) are de-energized. Pulling the fuses or disconnect plug on control circuits will ensure that these circuits are de-energized because they are not necessarily de-energized by opening the circuit breaker.
- Inspect the circuit breaker on the lift table or overhead crane just prior to insertion. This is to insure that all parts are tight and in their proper positions. It is also intended to insure that all foreign materials (such as rags, tools, hipot wire or loose hardware) are removed.
- Perform a 1000 V megohm meter test with the circuit breaker in the open position (the last step prior to racking in). Perform megohm meter test phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground on all the circuit breaker primary disconnects.
- The steps above shall be verified by the qualified craftsman. On those competitive units using cee clip retainers, a count is to be made to insure that all clips required are in position and all hardware is properly mounted.
- Before racking in (or racking out) the circuit breaker, communicate audibly your intention to the other members of the work crew.
- Be certain to wear the required protective equipment (PPE) and position yourself to either side of the cubicle.

Medium-voltage (601 through 15,000 V) checklist:
Preparation:

- Telephone channels must be made available to summon emergency personnel when needed. The telephone must be close to the work site and functional throughout the period during which the work is to be done.

- The light level in the work area must be sufficient to perform the work safely. (M-G sets, high-powered self-contained lighting systems and/or emergency feeders will be used/supplied if the electrical shut down is complete.)
- No employee should work on-site for more than 12h, and the work period should be preceded and followed by a minimum of 8h off (rest).
- The qualified craftsman should provide technical direction on-site.
- No one shall work alone.
- General workers shall not de-energize and/or energize equipment or systems. These activities are to be performed by an assigned qualified person.
- Damp or recently flooded areas shall be worked completely de-energized. Control power also shall be de-energized.
- All stationary (bolted-in) and plug-in type circuit breakers (nondraw out) shall only be worked on when both the primary and secondary (control power) sources are de-energized.
- When primary power circuits are energized, no conducting materials, including hardware and tools shall be inserted into the cubicle.

Examination of equipment breakers:

- Prior to working on equipment breakers, the following precautions must be observed:

  On solenoid operating mechanisms, trip the breaker "open."

  On stored energy mechanisms, trip the breaker "open" and completely discharge "stored energy springs." (See the appropriate breaker instruction book and determine the exact procedure.)
- Check for proper operation of mechanical or electrical interlocks. (All medium-voltage draw out power circuit breakers have either mechanical or electrical interlocks to protect both personnel and equipment while the breaker is being inserted or withdrawn from its cubicle.) Always check these devices to confirm their proper operation. In all cases, consult the manufacturer's instruction to obtain interlock adjustment data (dimensions and tolerances).
- Check for defeated or bypassed interlocks. (This condition enables the circuit breaker to be withdrawn or inserted in a closed position. This is an extremely hazardous condition.) When defeated interlocks are found, the following steps are to be performed:

  Reactivate the interlock (or remove the bypass) and test to verify proper performance.

  If equipment or materials are not available to make the repair, notify the appropriate person and do not reinsert the circuit breaker.

The responsible person informed of the risk should decide whether to have his men reinsert a breaker with defective interlocks.

To minimize personnel and equipment exposure, the equipment (including control power) should be de-energized. If this is not possible and the responsible person plans to reinsert the breaker all other personnel shall remove themselves from the immediate area.

- Place the keys to interlock on the equipment being worked on in the possession of the qualified craftsman or foreman, providing technical and safety direction for the on-site job.
- Examine the condition of the ball-type contacts on the medium draw out breakers. This examination is to be performed with the breaker removed from the cubicle. Spring-loaded clusters from the mating contact to the primary bus. These clusters are protected by a sliding safety shutter that moves (open or closed) with the breaker elevating mechanism, which is part of the cubicle construction. The clusters must not be exposed by sliding open the shutter when the breaker is not in the cubicle or until the cubicle is completely de-energized, tested, and grounded.
- Check the hinge pins and spring clips on the primary disconnect assemblies. (Some breakers may employ hinge pins mounted horizontally and passing through each primary disconnect cluster. The pins are retained on both ends by spring (or cee) clips. If not properly clipped, these pins will travel with vibration or other external forces. If the pin movement is extreme, a phase-to-phase fault can result.)
- Check each medium-voltage breaker with a 2500 V or higher voltage megohm meter phase-to-phase-to-ground to assure adequate dielectric resistance between phases and to ground. These tests will prevent reapplying a breaker which could cause a serious flashover due to the effects of aging and environment.
- Prior to operation of circuit breaker mechanisms, remove all tools, parts and equipment from the breaker proper. All personnel are to be away from the breaker and to keep hands off the breaker.

Racking in precautions:

- First insure that the breaker is open.
- Inspect the cubicle for foreign objects (such as tools, rags, hipot wire or loose hardware, etc.). Adequate lighting is necessary to thoroughly inspect the cubicle.
- Exercise care when cleaning and inspecting cubicles. Cubicle heaters, powered from a CPT source, are a potential problem. When cleaning, the cubicle heaters should be turned off. Care must be exercised not to damage the heaters or their wiring. The stationary secondary coupler (control power connections) are mounted vertically and are recessed.

Care must be exercised when working close to the bottom of the coupler since potentially dangerous voltages could exist on several of the contact points.

- Check that the control circuits are de-energized (24 to 250 V DC, 120 to 550 V AC). Pulling the fuses or disconnect plug on control circuits will ensure that these circuits are de-energized because they are not necessarily de-energized by opening the circuit breaker.
- Inspect the circuit breaker just prior to inspection. This is to insure that all parts are tight and in their proper positions. It is also intended to insure that all foreign materials (such as rags, tools, hipot wire, or loose hardware) are removed.
- Perform a 2500 V or a higher voltage megohm meter test with the circuit breaker in the open position (the last step prior to racking in). Megohm meter phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground on all the circuit breaker primary disconnects.
- The steps above shall be verified by the qualified craftsman. On competitive units using cee clip retainers, a count is to be made to insure that all clips required are in position and all hardware is properly mounted.
- Before racking in or racking out the circuit breaker, communicate audibly your intention to the other members of the work crew.
- Close the cubicle door prior to closing the circuit breaker.

13.5.2 Confined Spaces—Procedure for Entering

General: A confined space is an enclosed structure or space with restricted means of entry (such as a manhole, transformer vault, transformer tank, elevator pits, motor basements, etc.). The confined space is so enclosed and of such volume that natural ventilation through openings provided does not prevent the accumulation of dangerous air contaminants nor supply sufficient oxygen to protect the life, health, and safety of any person occupying such structure or space.

General workers are not to enter confined spaces (see definition above) where dangerous air contaminants have been present, are present, or could be introduced from potential sources. Workers may enter these confined spaces only after the atmosphere has been tested and found free of dangerous air contaminants.

Any such confined space shall be continuously maintained free of dangerous air contaminants by mechanical ventilation or equivalent means during any period of occupancy. If, however, due to emergency conditions, any such confined space cannot be cleared of dangerous air contaminants by mechanical ventilation or equivalent means, any person entering such confined space shall be provided with and shall use an approved air line respirator, or approved self-contained breathing apparatus.

Dangerous contaminants that may be found in confined spaces may be grouped as follows:

- Fuel gases (e.g., manufactured gas, natural gas, or liquefied petroleum gases)
- Vapors of liquid fuels and solvents (e.g., gasoline, kerosene, naphtha, benzene, and other hydrocarbons)
- Products of combustion (e.g., carbon monoxide-engine exhaust or carbon dioxide)
- Nitrogen and/or carbon dioxide used for testing or burning gases and volatile substances within industrial drainage
- Gases from fermentation of organic matter (e.g., hydrogen, hydrogen sulfide, methane, carbon dioxide, and mixtures deficient in oxygen)
- Gases generated by the customers' processes

The hazards of explosion, fire, and asphyxiation may all be encountered in the preceding contaminants because mixtures of these classes of contaminants are not uncommon.

Preparing to enter a confined space: All confined spaces shall be considered hazardous until proven safe by tests. General workers shall not enter a confined space, even momentarily, until it has been tested for oxygen and combustible gas content and then power ventilated for a minimum of 5 min or four complete air volume changes, whichever is the greater.

Smoking, or any device which produces a spark, shall not be allowed in a confined space. In addition, smoking is not permitted within 10 ft of an open confined space.

Every employee that is to enter a confined work area should be properly trained in the procedures for detecting hazardous conditions and must be provided with the proper equipment to make this determination. Before a confined space is entered, the foreman/qualified employee must also review with the general workers the work to be performed and the hazards that may be encountered.

Testing a confined space: Every confined space that has been closed for any period of time should be tested to determine if sufficient life-supporting oxygen is present and if combustible gases are present. In addition, any instruments that are used to sample a confined space environment must first be tested for proper working operation before they are used. Periodic calibration of the test instrumentation as recommended by the manufacturer of the instrument is a mandatory requirement, and such calibrations must utilize the type of equipment suitable for the air contaminants involved:

1. If doors or covers contain vents, the preentry test is made with the doors or covers in place in order to test conditions of confined space before it has been disturbed. If the cover or door is unvented, it is opened enough only to admit the test hose or the instrument to be inserted.
2. When a test indicates hazardous gases, the cover or door must be very carefully opened or removed in order not to create sparks. If the test indicates that air contaminants are in excess of safe concentrations or that explosive hazards are present in the confined space, the space must be purged by forced ventilation until another test indicates that the air contaminant concentration is safe (see ventilation).
3. If initial tests indicate that the atmosphere is safe, the confined space must be force ventilated for a minimum of 5 min, using a blower of 500 cubic feet per minute (CFM) or more, or four complete air volume changes before it is entered. The blower must be operated during the entire time period when an employee is occupying the confined space.
4. After the confined space is entered and the blower hose is positioned, initial testing for gas is accomplished by sampling in the areas of possible gas entrance and then generally throughout the confined space. If the test results are satisfactory, the work may be performed.
5. If an unsatisfactory atmosphere is found as the result of the preceding test, employees must immediately leave the confined space. The blower must be operated for 10 additional minutes and then a second test is performed. The second test must be performed away from the direct output of the blower.
6. If the second test indicates that the atmosphere is safe, the confined space may be entered. The blower shall be operated during the entire time period that personnel are occupying the confined space. Again, a test is made for gas by sampling or testing in the area of possible gas entrance and then generally throughout the confined space.
7. If the confined space is still contaminated and cannot be cleared, after venting and retesting, the cause must be determined. If the area where the contaminant is entering can be plugged, sealed, or capped to render it safe, these procedures shall be performed by personnel wearing an approved air line respirator or approved self-contained breathing apparatus. The area is then to be retested, continuously vented, and monitored.

Ventilation procedures: Confined spaces containing air contaminants and/or explosion hazards must be purged by mechanical ventilation until tests indicate that the concentration of air contaminants in the confined space is not more than 10% of the lower explosive level of such air contaminants, and that there is sufficient oxygen to support life available in the confined space.

Personnel performing the ventilation procedure must be familiar with the operating instructions for the particular equipment being used, and must also perform the following general procedures:

- Place the blower so it will not be subject to damage, obstruct traffic, or present a hazard to pedestrians.
- On sloping surfaces, avoid placing the blower on the upgrade side of the confined space opening. If it is necessary to place the blower on the upgrade side of a manhole or vault, block the unit so that vibration will not cause it to move toward the manhole opening.
- Do not operate or store blower in a confined space.
- Always remove the blower hose from a confined space before the blower is turned off.
- Place blower on a firm level base at least 10 ft from a manhole or vault opening and in accordance with above.
- Attach the blower hose to the air outlet of the blower by slipping the end of the hose, which is equipped with a strap-type clamp, over the air outlet and then pull the strap tight to hold the hose in place.
- Connect the power cord to the power source to start the blower. (Only grounded electrical equipment shall be used.)
- Let the blower run for 1 min with the hose out of the confined space. Check the end of the hose to see that the hose is securely attached to the air outlet.
- Place the blower hose in the confined space and adjust the position of the blower so the hose will run directly into the confined space without unnecessary bends. The optimum position of the output end of the blower hose is with the hose opening directed toward an end wall.
- If the ventilating blower stops, leave the confined space immediately. Remove the hose from the confined space. Do not replace the hose in the confined space until the blower is operating. When the blower is again operating, purge the hose and test the atmosphere before replacing the hose in confined space.

Equipment necessary for entering a confined space: Any person entering a confined space should be provided with and should use the following additional safety equipment:

- Either an approved life belt, approved safety harness, approved wrist straps, or approved noose-type wristlets should be worn.
- A lifeline should be attached to such life belt, approved safely harness, approved wrist straps or approved noose-type wristlets with the other end securely anchored outside the confined space.

- A safe means of entering and leaving the confined space (such as a portable ladder) should be provided. Such means must not obstruct the access opening.
- An explosion-proof battery-operated portable light in good working order.
- Nonsparking striking, chipping, hammering, or cut tools and equipment where the confined space may contain explosive or flammable air contaminants.

Safety monitors: If the confined space is found to be contaminated, a person designated as a safety monitor should be stationed at the access opening of any confined space while such space is occupied for any reason. The safety monitor is responsible for performing the following:

- Maintaining visual contact with every person in the confined space where the construction of the space permits
- Having continuous knowledge of the activities and well-being of every person in the confined space either through verbal communication or other positive means at all times
- Assisting a person in a confined space with such tasks as handling tools or supplies or removing containers of refuse or debris, provided that these tasks do not interfere with his primary duty as a safety monitor

The safety monitor selected should have the following characteristics:

- Be an alert, competent person, and fully capable of quickly summoning assistance for the administration of emergency first aid when required
- Be physically able to assist in the removal of a person from a confined space under emergency conditions

The following should be available to the safety monitor or rescue personnel for use if required.

- Approved air line respirator, approved hose mask, or approved self-contained breathing apparatus
- Explosion-proof battery-operated portable light in good working order

The emergency equipment should be located at the access opening of the confined space or not more than 15 ft. from such opening. In the case of a manhole or in-the-ground enclosure, a universal tripod should be set up before the confined space is entered.

Emergency conditions: The safety monitor should not enter a confined space until he or she is relieved at his or her post. An additional employee or another person should be available to summon aid immediately. The monitor will attempt to remove the victim by the use of the lifeline and to perform all other necessary rescue functions from the outside. Upon arrival of help, the monitor may enter the confined space for rescue work only when he is assured that his outside assistance is adequate. Rescuers entering confined space should be protected with the approved safety equipment required by the situation such as lifeline and harness and proper personal protection equipment.

13.5.3 Electrical Precautions

There are many types and designs of disconnecting switches, commonly known as disconnects, which are used to sectionalize a line or feeder, make connections, and isolate equipment on electrical systems. The type used depends upon the kind of service, voltage, current-carrying capacity, and the equipment design. This section discusses only the most common types, which use air as an insulating medium, and the hazards involved and what measures should be taken to avoid them.

13.5.3.1 General Precautions

Management should thoroughly define who has the authority to operate disconnect switches or electrical controls or apparatus that will in any manner affect the safety of personnel or interrupt electrical service. Switching should be done by persons who are fully qualified and authorized to do this work and by other individuals only when they are under the direct supervision of such qualified and authorized persons.

All apparatus should be legibly marked for every identification. This marking should not be placed on a removable part.

Switching orders should be in written form, with every step in the switching sequence spelled out in detail. Telephone or radio orders should be written down and then repeated. These procedures are particularly important for long or complicated operations. Every manual switching operation exposes the operator to some degree of hazard. Therefore, for his own safety he must understand the switching job to be done and be completely familiar with every detail of his part of the operation. An operator should not start a switching sequence until he has carefully checked the written order and is satisfied that it is correct in every respect. Once he has begun the operation, he must keep his mind on what he is doing, ignoring distractions, until the job is completed. If his attention is diverted to another task while he is executing a switching operation, he should not continue the operation before carefully checking what has already been done.

13.5.3.2 Loads and Currents

Ordinary disconnects should not be used to interrupt loads and magnetizing currents or to energize lines, cables, or equipment unless all the following conditions are met:

- The amount of current should be small.
- The kVA capacity of the equipment being interrupted should be relatively low.
- The location and design of the disconnect assure that it can be operated without danger of flashover.
- Experience has shown that the disconnect can be used successfully for the particular purpose. Therefore, disconnects should be properly connected and installed before proceeding with an operation.

Disconnecting switches are frequently used to break parallel circuits. As the blade leaves the clip, a relatively light or weak arc is drawn, which is quickly broken as the arc resistance increases. This operation is safe provided that the impedance of the circuit is low enough to permit the arc to break. Here again, experience is the best guide as to which parallels can be broken. Energizing or magnetizing current is the most difficult to break because of its low power factor.

Disconnects should never be used to de-energize lines, cables, capacitors, transformers, and other equipment unless specific approval is given and then with full knowledge that the disconnects will interrupt the current.

Underhung disconnects are mounted horizontally, and careful consideration must be given before they are used to break a parallel or to interrupt load current. The heat and ionized gas of even a small arc may be enough to cause a flashover.

13.5.3.3 Switch Sticks

Switch sticks or hook sticks are insulated tools designed for the manual operation of disconnecting switches and should be used for no other purpose. A switch stick is made up of several parts. The head or hook is either metal or plastic. The insulating section may be wood, plastic, laminated wood, or other effective insulating material, or a combination of several such materials. Glass fiber and epoxy resin materials are being used instead of wood by some manufacturers, and although they may cost somewhat more than switch sticks made of wood, the extra expense can be justified by longer life and reduced maintenance. Some manufacturers make a switch stick with a thin extruded plastic coating. This type of stick requires less maintenance than other types because the coating is tough and can be easily repaired.

A stick of the correct type and size for the application should be selected. Standard switch sticks are made in lengths up to 24 ft with proportional diameters. Special or telescoping sticks are available in longer lengths.

Switch sticks with insulated heads should be used to operate disconnects mounted indoors or on structures where the metal head of the stick might be shorted out when inserted into the eye of the switch.

The parts of a switch stick are pinned together and are therefore subject to wear. Consequently, they should be examined frequently. Varnish or a similar nonconductive coating used to seal the wooden parts and prevent their absorbing moisture, should be in good condition at all times.

It is recommended that personnel do not approach electrical conductors any closer than indicated below unless it is determined that the conductors are de-energized.

Voltage Range (Phase-to-Phase) (kV)	Minimum Working and Clear Hot Stick Distance
0.3–0.75	1 ft 0 in.
2.1–15	2 ft 0 in.
15.1–35	2 ft 4 in.
35.1–46	2 ft 6 in.
46.1–72.5	3 ft 0 in.
72.6–121	3 ft 4 in.
138–145	3 ft 6 in.
161–169	3 ft 8 in.
230–242	5 ft 0 in.
345–362	7 ft 0 in.
500–552	11 ft 0 in.
700–765	15 ft 0 in.

Storage of switch sticks is important. When stored indoors, a stick should be hung vertically on a wall to minimize the accumulation of dust. (It should be located in a convenient place but not where it might be subject to damage.)

If a switch stick must be stored outdoors, it should be protected from sun and moisture. The varnish or insulating coating on a stick exposed to direct sunlight or excessive heat may soften and run. A long pipe capped at both ends, ventilated, and shielded or insulated from direct sun rays makes a good storage place.

13.5.3.4 Opening Disconnects by Using the "Inching" Method

The "inching" method of opening manually operated disconnects should be used wherever the opening operation can be controlled. The inching method should never be used for load break disconnects, air break switches, or other switching devices designed to break load or magnetizing currents.

In the inching method, the operator opens the disconnect gradually until he is sure that there is no load current. He then opens the disconnect fully. If a small static arc develops, but no more than is expected, the disconnect may be opened further, with caution, until the arc breaks. The opening can then be completed. If an arc develops that is greater than the normal charging current warrants or, in the case of breaking a parallel, greater than expected, the disconnect should be quickly closed.

Using these techniques, an operator can open disconnects by the inching method nearly as fast as he can by other methods and with maximum safety.

13.5.3.5 Selector Disconnects

A selector disconnect has three phases with a double blade in each phase. The blade may be placed in either of two positions. Each blade is operated separately. The three operations—to open, to open and close, and to transfer from one position to the other under load conditions—must be done in the right sequence for proper functioning.

To open a set of selector disconnects, first one blade of each phase is fully opened. Then the second blade of each phase is fully opened.

To open a set of selector disconnects from one position and close them to the other position, first one blade of each phase is fully opened, and then the second blade of each phase is fully opened. All six blades are then open. One blade of each phase is then closed to its selected position; and to complete the operation, the second blade of each phase is closed to this position.

To transfer selector disconnects from one position to the other under load conditions, first one blade of each phase is fully opened. After these blades have been opened, they are then closed one at a time to the selected position. The two sources of power for the circuit are thus paralleled. In a like manner, the second blade of each phase is opened from the original position, breaking the parallel, and then closed to the selected position. Now all six blades are closed to the selected position, and the transfer is completed without interruption to load.

When operating selector disconnecting switches, the operator should never open a blade of one phase from one position and swing it closed to the selected position in one operation. The corresponding blades in each of the phases should be opened successively, and only one step should be taken at a time.

13.5.3.6 Circuit Breaker Disconnects

The bus and line side disconnects of a circuit breaker must not be operated until the operator has made certain by observation of the circuit breaker indicating target or mechanism that the breaker is in the open position. (The exception to this rule is that the line side disconnects may be operated to make or break a parallel, for example, to shunt out feeder voltage regulators.)

Checking the position of the breaker is a routine part of operation that must never be neglected. Sometimes a breaker operated by remote control may not open because the control contact has failed or the operator has not held the opening control long enough.

Even if a mechanical failure has occurred or a control fuse has blown, it is still possible for a breaker to operate partially, reaching a semiclosed position. Wherever possible, all three phases of a breaker should be checked for failure of a lift rod or other mechanical failure that could cause a phase to remain closed. (An operator should always be on the alert for such conditions.)

Before the circuit breaker is restored to service after maintenance work has been completed, the operator must check to make sure that it has been left in the open position.

13.5.3.7 Interrupter Switches

The need to interrupt load currents and to de-energize regulators and similar equipment has led to the development of the interrupter switch. There are many different designs, and the type used depends upon the voltage and the current interrupting capacity required.

Generally, there is an auxiliary blade or contact in addition to the regular load contacts. Before the switch is opened, it is important to check this auxiliary contact, where possible, to make sure that it is fully engaged. When the switch is opened, the load contact breaks first and then the auxiliary contact is opened. The arc is extinguished by an arc chamber, arcing horns, or other means. No attempt should ever be made to inch an interrupter switch.

13.5.3.8 Closing Disconnects under Load Conditions

While disconnects are not designed to be used as load-pickup devices or to energize lines, cables, or apparatus, they may be used for these purposes where all the following conditions are met:

- Length of line or cable should be limited.
- Load and the capacity of the apparatus should be small.
- Voltage should be low.

Approval for these operations should be obtained from the person in charge only after all conditions have been studied.

In all cases, the procedure to be followed is the same. An operator must be aware that he is closing a disconnect under load conditions; he should select a switch stick of the correct length and then take a comfortable stance in direct line with the disconnect; and he should first move the disconnect to about the three-fourths closed position. After checking to see that the blade is in line with the clip, he should then use a firm direct stroke to seat the disconnect completely.

An operator should never reopen the disconnect to make a second attempt at closing it. If it is not seated completely, he should use added pressure to finish the closing. If the alignment is wrong, the lines or apparatus should be de-energized before the disconnect is opened.

13.5.3.9 Air Break Switches

An air break switch is a gang-operated disconnect designed with arcing horns and with sufficient clearance to energize and de-energize load currents, magnetizing current of power transformers, charging current of transmission lines, and to make and break transmission line parallels.

Air breaks, like other types of gang-operated disconnects, are connected so that operation of all three phases is controlled by means of a hand lever.

Some of the procedures governing stick-operated disconnects apply also to air breaks. The inching procedure should not be applied to air breaks designed to interrupt load or magnetizing currents.

When air break switches are installed, their use should be specifically stated and any limitation must be made known to all operating personnel concerned.

Weather conditions can affect the successful breaking of current by an air break—a strong wind can blow the arc across phases or a heavy rain can change the normal insulating air clearances.

Air breaks should be firmly opened and closed. When closing an air break to pick up a load, an operator should be careful not to open it after the load circuit has been completed by either the arcing horns or the main contacts, regardless of whether or not the air break has been closed properly.

Before air breaks are used to break transmission line parallels, the load current should be checked to assure that it is within the capacity of the air break to interrupt.

Operators should never depend upon the position of the operating lever to determine whether the air break is open or closed. They should check the air break visually before and after operation and make sure that each operating blade is in the selected position. One blade may fail to operate and remain either closed or open.

To prevent inadvertent operation when maintenance, repair, or other work is to be done, all air breaks should be locked in an open position and tagged.

13.5.3.10 Protection against Air Break Flashover

During the operation of air breaks, a flashover causing a flow of fault current may occur. Several measures have been commonly used to protect the operator against electric shock. They include using an insulating section in the handle of the operating rod, grounding the handle of the rod, and providing ground mats or insulating stools at the operating position. (Opinions vary concerning the effectiveness of these measures and there are no widely accepted standards.) Rubber gloves should always be worn by the operator.

The handle of the operating rod may be insulated against possible contact with energized parts of the air break by a section of nonconductive wood or porcelain, in order to effectively protect an operator against the hazards of an air break failure. However, this does not protect against the shunting effect of the pole mounting and attachments. The ground voltage gradient is reduced but not eliminated by an insulating section.

Whether or not an insulating section is provided, the handle of the operating rod should be grounded with the lowest possible resistance. (A large majority of air break installations have a continuous metal operating rod that is grounded.)

Ground mats should be provided for operators to stand on; they will give him or her maximum protection against touch voltage and ground gradient voltage and prevent any dangerous potential gradient from occurring across the body in case of an insulation failure or flashover. Some companies provide portable ground mats of small iron mesh. Other companies install fixed ground mats, and specifications for installation vary widely. (Whether a ground mat is portable or fixed, however, it must be electrically connected to the operating rod and to ground to equalize the ground gradient in the area where an operator stands.)

Operators should keep both feet on ground mats. Regardless of the type of installation or the protection provided, they should always stand with their feet as close together as is comfortable.

13.5.3.11 Motor-Controlled Disconnects and Air Breaks

Many of the routine procedures and practices previously discussed for manually operated disconnects and air breaks also apply to motor-controlled disconnects and air breaks. In addition, the practices and precautions outlined in the following paragraphs should be observed.

The operators should hold the remote control contact long enough for the operating relay to seal in and ensure operation of the disconnect.

To determine whether the switch is open or closed, operators must never rely upon the indicating lights or upon the position of the operating handle. Instead, they must always visually check the position of the blades at the switch, making sure that each blade is in the selected position. (This check is particularly important for switches with high-pressure contacts.)

When a motor-operated switch is used as a tagging point for work clearance, the motor drive should be uncoupled from the operating rod. If this precaution cannot be taken, a heavy pin, lock, or blocking device must be used on the switch to prevent inadvertent operation. In addition, the switch for the motor control circuit should be tagged and locked in an open position to prevent operation of the motor in case of an accidental ground.

13.6 Electrical Fire Emergencies

This section is written as a guide for fire fighting personnel for handing electrical fire emergencies. Electrical personnel are not usually fire fighting experts but, because of their knowledge of electricity, they can provide vital and helpful information to others who are involved in fighting fires. Therefore, a cooperative effort is needed among the various groups when dealing with electrical emergencies. The various safety considerations dealing with such emergencies are discussed next.

13.6.1 Never Make Direct Contact with Any Energized Object

Electricity, whether from a power line or from a thundercloud, is always trying to get to the earth, which is at ground voltage—also called zero voltage. Voltage is a measure of the pressure that pushes electric charge through a conductor. An object with any voltage above zero is called energized. Any energized object will produce a flow of electric charge through a conductor placed between it and the earth or any other object at ground voltage, such as a grounded wire. Since nearly all common materials—including the human body—are conductors to some extent, the only way to keep the electricity where it belongs is to place some sort of insulator (nonconductor) between the energized object and the earth.

One can get just as shocked from 120 V house current as one can from a 500,000 V power line! In fact, a HV shock, because of the clamping action it has on the heart (cardiac arrest), may prevent the deadly irregular beating of the heart (fibrillation) often associated with lower-voltage shocks. Cardiac-arrest victims often respond readily to artificial respiration and external heart massage, whereas a fibrillation victim may only respond to an electrical defibrillator device. Also with the lower-voltage shock, instead of enough current to knock you out, you may get just enough to set your muscles so you cannot let go.

13.6.2 Stay Clear of Vicinity of Any Faulty Energized Object

One can be injured without touching an energized object. When an energized object is sparking, it emits excessive heat and ultraviolet rays. Such sparking occurs while trying to interrupt the flow of electric charge, such as when an energized wire is cut or when a fallen energized wire is lifted away from the earth. The electric charge tries to maintain its flow through the air—this results in a flash, an electric arc. The excessive heat from such a flash can bum human flesh several feet away.

The heat of an electric arc has been known to fuse contact lenses to the cornea of a human's eyes. Ultraviolet rays emitted from an electric flash may also damage unprotected eyes. Eye injuries may not be immediately apparent there may be no noticeable eye irritation for several hours after exposure. If your eyes are exposed to an electric arc, consult a doctor for proper treatment without delay. Electrical employees should wear specially treated goggles to prevent ultraviolet ray damage whenever an electric arc may occur.

13.6.3 Be Alert in Vicinity of Any Energized Object

We have already emphasized the danger from contacting an energized object, or even getting in the vicinity of a faulty energized object, such as a fallen wire. It is just as important to be cautious in the vicinity of energized facilities that are operating properly. Most electrical emergency work is performed without de-energizing all electric facilities in the vicinity. In many cases, it is even advantageous to leave power on as long as possible. However, all personnel must continuously be alert. Do not let the quiet, harmless appearance lull you into a false sense of security.

13.6.3.1 Beware of Covered Wires

Many overhead wires are covered. But, that covering is often designed to protect the wire from the weather or tree contact, not to protect you from the wire. Never consider a covered wire any safer than a bare wire. And remember, most wires on utility poles are bare, even though they may appear to be covered when viewed from the ground.

13.6.3.2 Beware of Telephone Cables

Telephone cables are rarely dangerous when accidentally contacted. But, are you so sure you can tell the difference between telephone cable and electric power cable, that you do stake your life on it—and the lives of others? Although higher voltage facilities are generally installed higher up on utility poles, this is not true always—electric power cables operating at 34,000 V may be attached below telephone cables on the same pole. And a fallen telephone cable may be contacting a power line!

- Never rest ladders on wires or on any other electric equipment
- Never drag hose over wires
- Never even come too close to wires—brushing against one can be fatal

You may have had some experience where you were able to contact energized facilities without incident. But, just because you "got away with it" before does not guarantee you will get away with it again. And remember, higher-voltage facilities have much greater pressure behind the electricity—something you "got away with" on 120 V facilities can bring disaster if attempted on 34,000 V facilities. And since normal water is a conductor of electricity, even slightly damp objects become much more hazardous.

13.6.4 Assume Every Fallen Wire Is Energized and Dangerous

13.6.4.1 Wire on Ground

Some fallen wires snap and twist-bursting warning sparks. Others lie quietly—no sparks, no warning rattles like a snake. Both types are equally deadly. It is impossible to determine from the appearance of a wire whether or not it is energized. Also, automatic switching equipment may reenergize fallen wires. Always stay clear and keep everyone else clear until an electric company employee arrives and clears the wire or de-energizes it.

13.6.4.2 Wire on Object

If a wire is in contact with any object—fence, tree, car, or person—that object in turn may be energized and deadly. Keep yourself and others away from metal highway dividers and metal fences that may be in contact with fallen wires. A fallen wire draped over such dividers and fences can energize them for their entire length.

13.6.4.3 Wire on Vehicle

If anyone is in a vehicle which is in contact with a wire, the safest thing he or she can do is stay inside. If possible, he or she should drive the vehicle away from the contact. If the vehicle is on fire, tell him or her to jump free with both hands and feet clear of the vehicle when hitting the ground. At no time can the person simultaneously touch both the vehicle and the ground or any other object that is touching the ground, such as yourself. If he or she does, he or she will become a path for the electricity to flow to ground. Never board a vehicle that may be energized. A spray or fog nozzle should be used to direct water onto a burning vehicle—even then, stay back as far as practicable (at least 6 ft) whenever the wire on a vehicle may be energized.

13.6.5 Never Cut Wires Except to Protect Life

And even then, only thoroughly trained persons, such as electric company employees, using approved procedures and equipment can cut wires. Otherwise cutting wires can create more hazards than leaving them alone. When taut wires are cut, the change in tension may cause utility poles to fall or wires to slack off and sag to the ground some distance from where the wires are cut. Wire which retains some of its original "reel-curl" may coil up when cut and get out of control with resultant hazards.

13.6.5.1 Take Care after Cutting

Cutting a wire at one place does not necessarily ensure that the wire on either side of the cut is de-energized because

- Wires are frequently energized from both directions.
- Wires may be in accidental contact with other energized wires.
- Wires may be energized from a privately owned generator within a building.

13.6.5.2 Cutting Service Wires

When protection of life requires de-energizing a building, cutting service wires should be considered only when it is not practicable to remove fuses, open-circuit breakers, open the main switch, or wait for an electric company representative. Specialized equipment must be used to cut each wire individually and then bend each one back, to prevent short-circuiting the wires together.

All wires must be cut. Never assume that one wire is a ground wire and is therefore safe. Even a ground wire may be contacting an energized wire at some unseen location. If the service wires can be cut on the supply side of where they connect to the building's wires, it will be possible to restore the service more quickly when required. However, far more important, service wires should always be cut on the building side of where they are first attached to the building—this avoids having wires fall on the ground.

13.6.6 Use Approved Procedures and Equipment If You Must Work Near Energized Facilities

This rule certainly applies whether or not there is any victim to be rescued. However, the presence of a victim requires you to be even more conscientious. Follow recommendations given in safety standards, such as ANSI C2, OSHA regulations, NFPA 70E, and your company's safety guide.

Notify the electric company: If you see no safe way of separating a victim from an energized object, request the electric company's assistance. Your first consideration must be your own protection—you cannot help by becoming a victim yourself.

Moving the victim: Electric company employees have specialized equipment that they can use to drag a victim clear of electric equipment. They can use other specialized equipment to keep the wire in contact with the ground while the victim is being dragged clear—this reduces the amount of electricity flowing through the victim and minimizes further injury from additional burns.

Moving the wire: Electric company employees have specialized equipment that they can use to remove a wire from a victim. They can control the wire to prevent it from recontacting the victim. Electric company employees will put the wire toward themselves while walking away—rather than pushing and walking toward it—to reduce the danger to themselves in case the wire gets out of control. And, again, they can use other specialized equipment to keep the wire in contact with the ground while moving it—this reduces the amount of electricity flowing through the victim and minimizes further injury from additional bums.

Cutting the wire: If a victim is entangled with an electric wire, the wire on both sides of the victim must be cut to be certain that no source of electricity remains. Wires should only be cut by an individual who is thoroughly trained to cut wires safely and who uses specialized equipment.

First aid: A victim who has been separated from energized electric facilities does not retain an electric charge—so there is no danger in handling the victim, administering first aid, or applying artificial respiration. Electric bums, even if insignificant on the surface, may involve serious destruction of tissues and must receive expert medical treatment as soon as possible.

13.6.7 Avoid Using Hose Streams on Energized Facilities

The application of water on electric facilities by handheld hoses may carry the electricity back to the nozzle. This electricity might be sufficient to cause serious injury. Tabularized safe distances can be misleading, since water conductivity and nozzle design vary widely. The National Board of Fire Underwriters' Special Interest Bulletin No. 91 advises that for 120 V facilities there is no danger unless the nozzle is brought within a few inches. However, fire fighters should consider all electric facilities to be HV, because even low-voltage wires may inadvertently be crossed with HV wires.

Spray or fog preferred: For maximum safety to the fire fighter, when either intentional or unintentional application of water on energized facilities may occur, a spray or fog nozzle should be used.

Beware of run-off water: A dangerously energized puddle of water may be formed by water running off energized electric facilities.

Beware of adjacent equipment: Take care not to damage uninvolved electric facilities nearby. A porcelain insulator supporting energized facilities may flashover (arc), and even explode, if hit by a straight stream (even spray or fog) directed onto it. Wires may swing together, short-circuit, and bum down if hit by the force of a straight stream.

Other extinguishing agents: Dry chemical and carbon dioxide are nonconductive and may be used around energized facilities. These may be used to extinguish a surface-type utility pole fire. Foam, soda acid, and the loaded-stream type are conductive and should not be used on fires around energized facilities.

13.6.8 Be Equally Alert Indoors and Outdoors

Medium-voltage installations: Medium-voltage services do exist in many larger buildings—commercial, institutional, and industrial facilities. Do not enter any transformer room or open any electric switch without the advice of an authorized individual. Besides the obvious electric hazard, privately owned transformers may be filled with flammable oil or with nonflammable liquids. Such equipment is not required to be isolated outdoors or in a fire resistant room and therefore may be located anywhere on the premises. The non-flammable liquid, while safe from a fire standpoint, may be caustic and may generate poisonous fumes. Call the plant electrician to identify specific hazards and to de-energize facilities as needed.

Low-voltage installations: Low-voltage services exist in practically every building and can be as dangerous as medium-voltage facilities.

Leave power on as long as possible: The power may be needed to operate pumps or other equipment which, if stopped, would cause additional damage to the building or to any materials being produced in it.

Remove fuses or open-circuit breakers: To shut off an affected section, remove fuses or open-circuit breakers.

Open main switch: Open the main switch to shut off entire building when electric service is no longer useful. If you must stand in water or if the switch is wet, do not grasp the switch handle in the palm of your hand. Use dry equipment such as a piece of rope, pike pole, or handle of fire axe to open the switch. Then attach a warning tag indicating that the power has been intentionally shut off.

Cut wires only to protect life: Cut wires only when life would be endangered by leaving a building energized, or when a victim must be rescued. However, cutting electric wires should only be considered when it is not practicable to remove fuses, open-circuit breakers, open the main switch, or wait for an electric company representative.

Pull electric meter: Pull the electric meter only to protect life when no other method is practicable. Wear gloves and face shield or goggles to protect against electric arcing. Meters at most large buildings, as well as many house meters, can produce extensive arcing when removed—especially if the interior wiring is faulty. In addition, removing some meters does not interrupt the power. Such meters should be identified by a small label reading "CAUTION: Apply Jumpers Before Removing Meter." If a meter is removed, cover panel to protect the public, and notify the electric company.

Flammable fumes: Whenever flammable fumes may be present, avoid operating any electric switch within the area—even a simple light switch—because even a small spark can cause an explosion.

Palms inward: When walking through a building or any enclosure where visibility is poor, proceed with arms outstretched and the palms of the hands turned toward the face. In this way, if contact is made with an energized object the tendency of the muscles to contract may assist in getting free from the contact.

13.6.9 Protect People and Property in Surrounding Area and Do Not Fight Fires on Electric Equipment Until an Electric Company Representative Arrives

Where electric power equipment is involved, wait for the electric company representative and coordinate the fire fighting operation with him or her to ensure maximum effectiveness and safety. Cooperate with his or her requests because he or she knows what is necessary to fight fires on his or her equipment.

Danger from switches: Never operate electric company switches that are mounted on utility poles or located in manholes or within substation properties. Many of these switches are not intended to open and drop the electric load, and attempting such an operation could damage the switch and even cause it to explode.

Danger from oil: Oil may be present in any pole—mounted, underground, or surface equipment, such as transformers. This oil will bum. Under the intense heat of a fire, the equipment may even rupture and spray its burning oil. This may be followed by subsequent explosions caused by ignition of the mixture of air with hot oil vapor or with burning insulation vapor.

Danger from water: Water greatly increases the danger of electrocution from energized facilities. Until it is confirmed that electric facilities are de-energized, use only dry chemicals, carbon dioxide, water sprays, or fog—and even then, take extreme care to avoid physical contact with energized facilities. Also, take care not to direct a straight stream onto uninvolved electric facilities nearby.

Contain liquids leaked from equipment: Any liquid leaked from electrical equipment may be flammable oil or a nonflammable liquid. Avoid contact with these liquids—they may be caustic and fumes may be irritating. Both types of liquids must be thoroughly cleaned up by appropriate personnel to prevent environmental damage. After extinguishing any fire, try to contain any leaked liquid—use absorbent granules, dry sand, ashes, or sawdust. Do not wash it away with a hose system.

13.6.10 Hose Streams May Be More Hazardous than Helpful Until Any Underground Fault Is De-Energized

Electric wires are installed underground in industrial plants, many urban areas, and new residential developments. Switching equipment and transformers are installed in manholes or in metal cabinets on the surface, and they supply electricity through an interconnected network of electrical cables. Both high- and low-voltage cables may be directly buried beneath only 2 or 3 ft of earth—or they may be installed in ducts. The two major causes of fires are:

- Cable faults that ignite the cable insulation, or the fiber duct, or both
- Oil-filled manhole equipment which overheats and spills oil that ignites

Notify electric company: Specify location of all manholes involved. A cable fault usually clears itself, or it can be cleared manually by opening appropriate switches. Until the fault which caused the fire is de-energized, no attempt should be made to extinguish the fire. An electric arc cannot be extinguished by fire fighting techniques, and the arc is sustaining the fire.

Clear the area: Under normal conditions, the insulation and jacketing of underground cables provide adequate protection. However, an explosion or fire can remove these protective coverings and expose the energized conductors. Such a condition is a major hazard, and fire fighting personnel are cautioned to stay clear.

Beware of toxic or explosive gases: Flammable vapors, which are not always detectable by sense of smell, may be coming from (1) nearby sewers, (2) gas mains, or (3) buried gasoline or oil storage tanks, as well as from (4) smoldering insulation and fiber duct. Inside a duct, the vapor–air mixture may be too rich to ignite. Upon reaching a source of fresh air, such as a manhole, the vapor–air mixture may fall within the explosive limits. The resulting explosions may be intermittent, with their frequency depending on how fast the vapors are coming out and mixing with the air. They may vary in intensity from a slight puff to an explosion of sufficient violence to blow a manhole cover high in the air. If the mixture becomes too rich to ignite within the confined space of a manhole, an explosion may occur when the manhole cover is removed.

Prepare to assist electric company employees: The electric company may discharge water into a duct line to cool it after the circuit has been de-energized. If a hose line is supplied by the local fire company, let the electric company employees handle the nozzle, using their approved rubber gloves for protection.

Leave manhole covers as found: Only electric company employees should remove manhole covers using hooks or long-handled tools and standing safely to one side. And everyone must be kept at a reasonable distance back to avoid injury. Removing manhole covers may help to ventilate the conduit system and pin down the location of the fault. However, removing a manhole cover may reignite flammable vapors—or even cause low-order explosions, if the atmosphere was too rich to bum before removing it.

Never direct water into a manhole: Until requested by the electric company representative, never direct water into a manhole. The source of the fire and any other facilities that might be damaged must be de-energized before water can be used safely and effectively.

13.7 Effects of Electrical Shock

Current is the killing factor in electrical shock. Voltage is important only in that it determines how much current will flow through a given body resistance. The current necessary to operate an 10 W light bulb has eight to ten times more current than the amount that would kill a lineman, that is, if it actually breaks through skin and body resistance and current of this amperage flows in the body. A voltage of 120 V is enough to cause a current to flow which is many times greater than that necessary to kill. Currents of 100 to 200 mA cause a fatal heart condition known as ventricular fibrillation for which there is no known remedy.

TABLE 13.4

Effects of 60 Hz Current on an Average Human

Current Values through Body Trunk	Effect
Safe	
1 mA, or less	Causes no sensation—not felt. Is threshold of perception.
1–8 mA	Sensation of shock. Not painful. Individual can let go at will, as muscular control is not lost. (5 mA is accepted as maximum harmless current intensity.)
Unsafe	
8–15 mA	Painful shock. Individual can let go at will, as muscular control is not lost.
15–20 mA	Painful shock. Muscular control of adjacent muscles lost. Cannot let go.
20–50 mA	Painful. Severe muscular contractions. Breathing is difficult.
100–200 mA	Ventricular fibrillation. (A heart condition that results in death—no known remedy.)
200 mA and over	Severe burns. Severe muscular contractions, so severe that chest muscles clamp heart and stop it during duration of shock. (This prevents ventricular fibrillation.)

The following figures are given for human resistance to electrical current:

Type of Resistance	Resistance Values (Ω)
Dry skin	100,000–600,000
Wet skin	1,000
Internal body	
Hand-to-foot	400–600
Ear-to-Ear	About 100

With 120 V and a skin resistance plus internal resistance totaling 1200 Ω, we would have 1/10 A electric current, that is 100 mA. If skin contact in the circuit is maintained while the current flows through the skin, the skin resistance gradually decreases. A brief summary of the effects of current values on average human are shown in Table 13.4.

13.8 First Aid

First aid kits for the treatment of minor injuries should be available. Except for minor injuries, the services of a physician should be obtained. A person qualified to administer first aid should be present on each shift on "on-site" jobs.

Prior to starting "on-site" jobs, telephone communications should be available and tested to summon medical assistance if required. Each "on-site" job should have the telephone number of the closest hospital and medical personnel available.

13.8.1 Shock

Shock occurs when there is a severe injury to any part of the body from any cause. Every injured person is potentially a patient of shock and should be regarded and treated as such, whether symptoms of shock are present or not.

Proper treatment of shock is as follows:

Keep the patient warm and comfortable, but not hot. In many cases, the only first aid measure necessary and possible is to wrap the patient underneath as well as on top to prevent loss of body heat.

Keep the patient's body horizontal or, if possible, position him or her so that the feet are 12–18 in. higher than the head. In any case, always keep the patient's head low. The single exception to this positioning is the case of a patient who obviously has an injury to the chest, and who has difficulty in breathing. This patient should be kept horizontal with head slightly raised to make breathing easier.

Do not let the patient sit up, except as indicated in chest injury or where there is a nose bleed. If there is a head injury and perhaps a fracture of the skull, keep the patient level and do not elevate his feet.

If the patient is conscious, you may give him or her hot tea, coffee, or broth in small quantities since the warmth is valuable in combating shock.

Proper transportation practice is never more imperative than in the case of a person who may develop shock. It is the most important single measure in the prevention and treatment of shock. Use an ambulance, if possible. If other means must be used, follow the above points as closely as possible.

13.8.2 Resuscitation

- Seconds count. Begin artificial respiration as soon as possible. In electric shock cases, do not rush and become a casualty yourself. Safely remove victim from electrical contacts before starting artificial respiration. Do not move victim unless necessary to remove him or her from danger or to place him or her in the proper position for artificial respiration.
- Attempt to stop any hazardous flow of blood.
- Clear victim's mouth of false teeth or any foreign objects or fluids with your fingers or a cloth wrapped around your finger. Watch victim closely to see that mucus or stomach contents do not clog air passages.

- If help is available, have the following taken care of while applying artificial respiration:

  Call a doctor and ambulance.

  Loosen victim's clothing about neck, chest, and waist.

  Keep victim warm during and after resuscitation. Use ammonia inhalants.

  Do not give liquids while victim is unconscious.
- Continue uninterrupted rescue breathing until victim is breathing with out help or until pronounced dead.
- The change of operators, when necessary, shall be done as smoothly as possible without breaking the rhythm. If necessary to move victim, continue resuscitation without interruption.
- Watch victim carefully after he revives. Do not permit him to exert himself.

13.8.3 Resuscitation—Mouth-to-Mouth (Nose) Method

Place victim on his back. Place his head slightly downhill, if possible. A folded coat, blanket, or similar object under the victim's shoulders will help maintain proper position. Tilt the head back so chin points straight upward.

Grasp the victim's jaw and raise it upward until the lower teeth are higher than the upper teeth; or place fingers on both sides of the jaw near the earlobes and pull upward. Maintain jaw position throughout resuscitation period to prevent tongue from blocking air passage.

Pinch victim's nose shut with thumb and forefinger, take a deep breath and place your mouth over victim's mouth making airtight contact; or close victim's mouth, take a deep breath and place your mouth over victim's nose making airtight contact. If you hesitate at direct contact, place a porous cloth between you and victim.

Blow into the victim's mouth (nose) until his chest rises. Remove your mouth to let him exhale, turning your head to hear out rush of air. The first 8 to 10 breaths should be as rapid as the victim will respond; thereafter, the rate should be slowed to about 12 times a minute.

13.8.4 Important Points to Remember

If air cannot be blown in, check position of victim's head and jaw and recheck mouth for obstructions; then try again more forcefully. If chest still does not rise, turn victim face down and strike his back sharply to dislodge obstruction. Then repeat rescue breathing procedure.

Sometimes air enters victim's stomach, evidenced by swelling of stomach. Expel air by gently pressing down on stomach during exhalation period.

13.8.5 Two-Victim Method of Resuscitation—Mouth-to Mouth (Nose)

In those rare instances where two men working together are in shock, both require resuscitation, and only one worker is available to rescue them, the following method may be used:

Place two victims on their backs, with their heads almost touching and their feet extended in a straight line away from each other.

Perform the mouth-to-mouth resuscitation method as described in Section 13.8.3. Apply alternately to each victim. The cycle of inflation and exhalation does not change so it will be necessary for rescuer to work quickly in order to apply rescue breathing to both victims.

13.8.6 External Heart Compression

Perform heart compression only when indicated: After rescue breathing has been performed for about half a minute, if bluish or gray skin color remains and no pulse can be felt, or if pupils of the eyes are dilated, heart compression should be started. Heart compression is always accompanied by rescue breathing. If only one rescuer is present, interrupt compression about every 10 to 15 compression cycles and give victim three or four breaths.

- Place victim on his back on a firm surface.
- Put hands on breastbone. Place heel of one hand on lower third of breastbone with other hand on top of first.
- Press downward. Apply pressure until breastbone moves 1–1.5 to 2 in.
- Lift hands and permit chest to return to normal.
- Repeat compression 60 times per minute.

Heart compression should not be performed in the following instances:

- When victim has a pulse
- When his pupils do not remain widely dilated
- When his ribs are broken

Appendix A Forms and Reports

A key factor in an efficient maintenance and testing program is the preparation and filling of all inspection and test data and records. This enables mathemafical trends to be established, and to a great extent future performance and maintenance measures can be prepared.

Forms permit the orderly recording of data and are a reminder to record all pertinent factors, for example temperature and relative humidity and so on. A variety of forms are available for recording of data. The test and inspection data has been traditionally recorded manually, but today with the computer based management programs much of data entry can be automated. Many of the test and inspection forms are available from the test equipment manufacturers or utility companies, but if one wishes to prepare his own then they can be tailored to fit requirements as needed. One method of filling is by apparatus with the original inspection and test, and all successive test for that apparatus would be filed in chronological order. The important fact is that records should be maintanined (in whatever order or format that may be suitable) for comparison, evaluation and trending. Following are sample test data forms that the reader may wish to adopt for recording test data if these forms are already not in the workplace.

1. *Substation inspection report:* It can be used daily or weekly to monitor pertinent operating conditions.
2. *Power transformer test record:* A summary of all tests performed at installation, scheduled maintenance, or special occasions (trouble or suspected trouble).
3. *Bushing current transformer test record:* Same as the transformer.
4. *Power circuit breaker test record:* Same as the transformer.
5. *Insulation resistance—dielectric absorption test sheet:* These forms are available from test equipment manufacturers such as Megger Incorporated and others. These form is very useful when conducting motor and generator insulation resistance and dielectirc absorption tests.
6. *Contact resistance (microohm) tests:* This form is used to record test data when conducting switchgear and breaker tests for detecting and assessing imperfect and/or conncetion having high resistance.
7. *High Potential and Megohmmeter tests:* This is useful when one or several circuit components are subjected to insulation resistance and go, no-go high potential tests. This form should be modified to include equipment ambient temperature, relative humidity, and to state measured insulation resistance values in Megohms.

8. *Insulation megger and live line tests:* This form is for switchyards where insulators are intalled in sections, and confirms that each layer is doing its share in a series string.
9. *DC-Hipot test graph paper:* This form is useful in recording DC hi-pot test data for generators or other apparatus and as well as cables.
10. *Transducer test sheet:* A calibration record of transducers when used in instrumentation schemes in connection with supervisory control. This applilcation is increasing in various industries such as large pumping stations.
11. *Instrument tests:* A calibration form for switchyard instruments and other indicating and recording instruments. This form can be modified by the user as required for polyphase connections and other multipliers.
12. *Low voltage breaker test report (600 V or less):* This form is used to record the data when low voltage breaker protective devices are calibrated and tested. This is very useful form for recording the protective devices data and test points for as found and as left conditions.
13. *Fall of potential method:* This form is used when conducting grounding electrode and ground grid resistance measurements. It allows the test technician to record data conveniently while conducting the test.
14. *Protective relay test record:* This form is similar to the low voltage breaker test report except that this form is used in relays used in the medium voltage switchgear.
15. *Cable test record:* This form is similar to the DC hi-pot test form except that it is three-dimensional, i.e., it allows the test technician to reord the data in megohms or microamps with respect to test voltage. It automatically converts megohms to microamps and vice versa.

Date: __________ Substation: __________
Time: __________ Inspector: __________

Transformers						
Rating						
kW						
kVar						
(A) PH. amps						
(B) PH. amps						
(C) PH. amps						
(A) PH. volts						
(B) PH. volts						
(C) PH. volts						
Tap range						
Tap position						
Max. tap pos.						
Tap operations						
Gas gauze						
Oil temp.						
Max. oil temp.						

Hot spot temp.						
Coolers fans						

Peak of the week	**Day:**		**Time:**			**Date:**		
kW								
kVar								
PH. amps								
PH. volts								
Bus volts	4 kV	13 kV	33 kV	69 kV	115 kV	138 kV	230 kV	
Battery no. 1	Spec. gr.	Volts	Water	Battery no. 2	Spec. gr.	Volts	Water	
Propane tank	No. 1	No. 2	Emergency generator	Hours run	Capacitor operations			
	%	%						
Breaker or fuse operations								

Form A1 Substation inspection report.

AMPERES

Fdr. no.						
(A) Φ						
(B) Φ						
(C) Φ						
Fdr. No.						
(A) Φ						
(B) Φ (C) Φ						
Fdr. No.						
(A) Φ						
(B) Φ						
(C) Φ						
REMARKS						

Form A2 Power transformer test record.

Installation ( ) Station ______
Special ( ) Designation ______
Scheduled ( ) Date ______

Thermal devices:

Top Oil				**Winding Temperatures**			
Contact	**Operates**	**Resets**	**Function**	**Contact**	**Operates**	**Resets**	**Function**
1	____ °C	____ °C	______	1	____ °C	____ °C	______
2	____ °C	____ °C	______	2	____ °C	____ °C	______
3	____ °C	____ °C	______	3	____ °C	____ °C	______

Ten-ohm RTD connected to indicate ______ and is ______ connected to indicator.

Gas test: As found °C ______% As left °C ______%
Doble test: Date ______ Sheet number ______

Oil tests:

	IFT	**Neutralization**	**Power Factor**	**Breakdown**	**H_2O (ppm)**
Main tank	______	______	______	______	______
Dial head	______	______	______		______
TC – OCB	______	______	______		______

Insulation tests:

	Transformer Only		**Transformer and Leads or Leads Only**	
	Megger	**Hi-Pot Volt**	**Megger**	**Hi-Pot Volt**
PRI TO SEC & GRD (& TER)	______	______	______	______
SEC TO PRI & GRD (& TER)	______	______	______	______
PRI TO SEC	______	______	______	______
TER TO PRI & SEC & GRD	______	______	______	______
PRI TO TER	______	______	______	______
SEC TO TER	______	______	______	______
CORE TO FRAME (500 V)	______			

UST TAPS (Megger)	H1	H2	H3	H0	X1	X2	X3	X0	Y1	Y2	Y3	Y0
To Flange (V)	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
To Cond. (V)	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____

Form A2 continued

(Do not exceed voltage rating of UST Tap)

Lightning arresters—rated ________ kV A phase B phase C phase

Hi-pot ________ volts Megger ________ ________ ________

Sketch Bushing Diagram Vector Diagram

Ratio tests—under load tap changer (no load tap on full winding)

Tap	____	____	____	Calc	Volts	Tap	____	____	____	Calc	Volts
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____
____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____	____

Data: MFG ________________ kVA ________________ CLASS ________________

Serial no. ____________________________		NO. ________________		
Winding	Voltage	Amps	Impulse	Misc.
E	__________	__________	__________	__________
X	__________	__________	__________	__________
Y	__________	__________	__________	__________

Instruction book ________________ Control drawing ______________
Impedance ________________%__ Tester ________________

Form A2 continued

Primary current ______________ amperes

Designation		__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________
__________	Calc. Actual	__________	__________	__________	__________	__________

____

Tester

Form A3 Bushing current transformer test record.

Installation ( ) Station ______________________

Special ( ) Designation ______________________

Date ______________________

Data:

Designation	Bushing	Max. ratio	Conn. ratio	Mfg.	Type	Use
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________
________	________	________	________	________	________	________

Bushings installed on:

Misc. Notes:

Form A4 Power circuit breaker test record.

Installation ( )
Special ( )
Scheduled ( )

Station ____________
Designation ____________
Date ____________

Contact resistance (μΩ)	Tank No. 1 ______	No. 2 ______	No. 3 ______
Pressure switch: type: ____________			

<u>Contacts</u>	<u>Operates</u>	<u>Resets</u>	**Total breaker operations to**
No. 1	______psi	______psi	Compressor motor start ______
No. 2	______psi	______psi	Alarm contact operation ______
No. 3	______psi	______psi	Breaker lockout ______

Travel Analyzer	**Tank No. 1**	**Tank No. 2**	**Tank No. 3**	**Mfg. Rec.**
Breaker contact opening time (cycles)	______	______	______	______
Lift rod travel (ft./s)	______	______	______	______
"a" Switch opening time (cycles)	______	______	______	______
Total lift road travel (in.)	______	______	______	______
Breaker trip free time (cycles)	______	______	______	______

Doble test: Date ____________ Sheet number____________

Oil Tests	**IFT**	**Neutralization**	**Power Factor**	**Breakdown**
Tank No. 1	______	______	______	______
Tank No. 2	______	______	______	______
Tank No. 3	______	______	______	______

Rectox Tests	**Normal Operating Conditions**					
	% Age R	**Sta. Ser. V**	**AC volts**	**DC volts**	**AC amps**	**DC amps**
AF	______	______	______	______	______	______
AL	______	______	______	______	______	______

CB min. close volts AF ____________ AL ____________ Closing relay min. close volts AF ________ AL ________

Cubicle heaters: Number ________ Thermostat set ________ Feed ____________
Protection ____________

Form A4 continued

Insulation tests:

	PCB Only		PCB and Leads or Leads Only	
Closed breaker	Megger	Hi-Pot Volt	Megger	Hi-Pot Volt
A to ground	_____	_____	_____	_____
B to ground	_____	_____	_____	_____
C to ground	_____	_____	_____	_____
A to B	_____	_____	_____	_____
A to C	_____	_____	_____	_____
B to C	_____	_____	_____	_____

Open breaker Megger

1 to grd. _____	4 to grd. _____	1 to 2 _____	3 to 4 _____
2 to grd. _____	5 to grd. _____	1 to 3 _____	3 to 5 _____
3 to grd. _____	6 to grd. _____	2 to 4 _____	5 to 6 _____

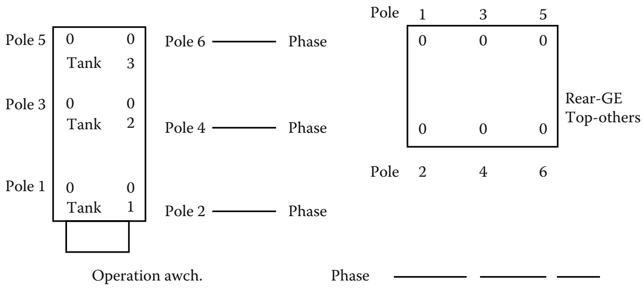
Omit on three tank breakers

Open breaker Hi-Pot, each pole _____ kV, other poles and tank grounded.

UST Taps: (Megger)	Pole No. 1	Pole No. 2	Pole No. 3	Pole No. 4	Pole No. 5	Pole No. 6
To flange	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
To conductor	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

(Do not exceed voltage rating of UST tap)

Data:



Operating mech.
Top view
(indicate bus and line)

Top view.
Stud side view.
(indicate bus and line)

Mfg. _____ Volts _____ Amps _____
Int. cap. _____ Type _____
Serial _____ NO. _____
Close volts _____ Amps _____ Cycles _____
Open volts _____ Amps _____ Cycles _____
Comp. motor volts _____ Amps _____ Cycles _____

_____
Tester

Form A5 Insulation resistance—dielectric absorption test sheet.

	Rotating equipment	Test no. ______
	______ Company	DATE ______
	______ Location	TIME ______

Equipment	Rating	Voltage	
Type	Mfg.	Serial	
Recent operating history			
Winding condition as to clearnesses and repair			
Armature insulation age	Class	Field insulation age	Class
Describe end turn corona shielding			
List associated equipment included in test			
Line cable length:	Conductor size:	Insulation material:	Insulation thickness:
AC armature phases connected	Delta ☐	Star ☐	Neutral cable

Test data—megohms

Part Tested					**Test Mode**	**Hours Days**	**After Shutdown**
Grounding time					Dry bulb temp.		°F
Test voltage					Wet bulb temp.		°F
	To line	To line	To line	To line	Dew point		°F

Part Tested					**Test Mode**	**Hours Days**	**After Shutdown**
Test connections	To earth	To earth	To earth	To earth	Relative humidity		%
	To guard	To guard	To guard	To guard	Absolute humidity		GR/#
1/4 MIN					Equipment temp.		°F (°C)

Form A5 continued

1/2 MIN					How obtained		
3/4 MIN							
1							
2					Megohm meter inst. –		
3					Serial no.		
4					Range		
5					Voltage		
6							
7							
8							
9							
10							
10/1 MIN megohms							
Remarks							
Tested by							

Form A6 Micro-ohm measurement tests.

Installation tests
Metal clad switchgear

Micro-ohm tests

Location: ________________________ Switchgear: ________________________ kV

Bus section no. ____________________

		Bus measurements						
From	**To**	**A Ø**	**B Ø**	**C Ø**				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____		A Ø	B Ø	C Ø
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____	Total	___	___	___

Bus section no. ____________________

CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____		A Ø	B Ø	C Ø
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____	Total	_____	_____	_____

Bus section no. ____________________

CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____				
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____		A Ø	B Ø	C Ø
CUB_____	CUB_____	_____	_____	_____	Total	_____	_____	_____

	Outgoing Line Measurements			**Designation**
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________

Form A6 continued

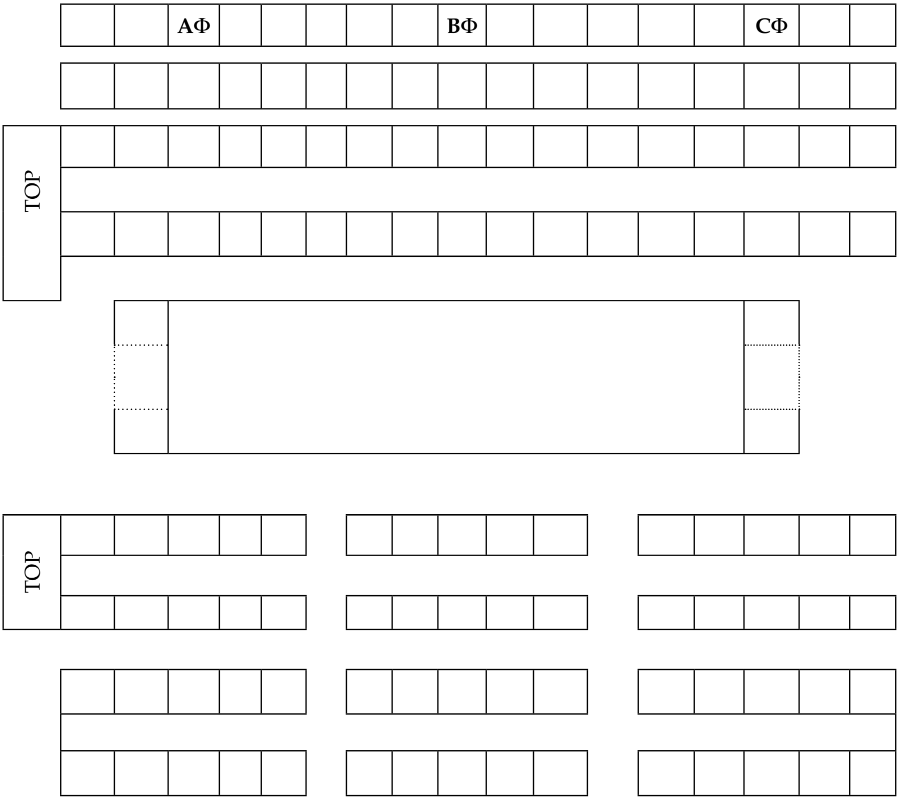
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	________________
CUB ________	________	________	________	No. ___trans sec
CUB ________	________	________	________	No. ___trans sec
CUB ________	________	________	________	No. ___trans sec

Form A7 High-potential and megohm measurement tests.

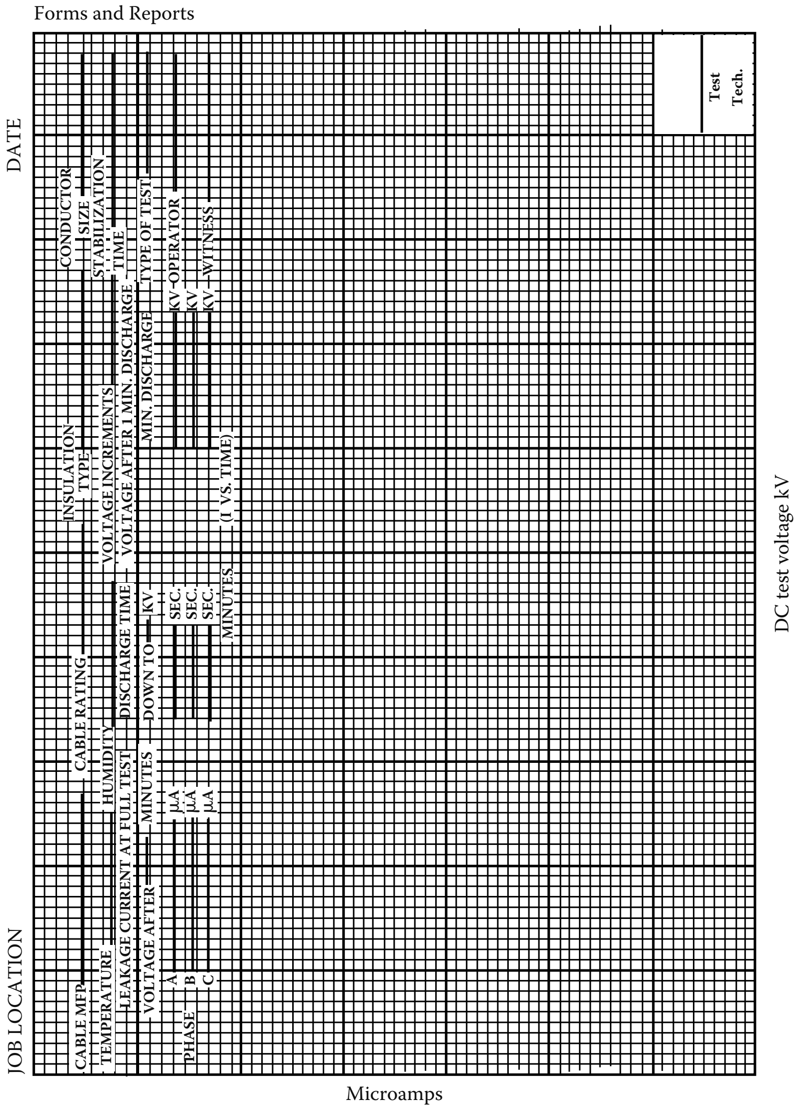
Installation ( ) Location __________
Special ( ) Date _______________
Scheduled ( ) Temp. __________ R. H. _____

	High							
Circuit Designation	Potential		A phase	B phase	C phase	A to B	B to C	C to A
	Test kV	Voltage	To grd	To grd	To grd	Phase	Phase	Phase

Form A8 Insulator megohm measurement and live line tests.



Form A9 DC Hi-Pot test graph paper.



Form A10 Transducer test sheet.

Page ______ of ______

Transducer data ____________________ Location ____________________ Design" ______________

Tester ____________________

		Watts		Vars		Volts		Amps		Remarks
Date	**Circuit**	**%Error**	**Mfr.**	**%Error**	**Mfr.**	**%Error**	**Mfr.**	**%Error**	**Mfr.**	**Remarks**

Form A11 Instrument test.

Circuit no. ____________
Date of test ______________________ Station no. ____________
Instrument under test: ______________________
Location ______________________
Serial no. ________ Type ________ Amp. Cap. ________ Volts ________
Scale ________ C. T. Ratio ________ P. T. Ratio ________ Freq. ________
Cap. C. T. Used ________ Amps. Ratio ________ Make ________ Type________
Cap. P. T. Used ________ Volts-Amps. Ratio ________ Make ________ Type ________

As found test data

Standard	**Meter Under Test**	**%Error**	**Standard**	**Meter Under Test**	**%Error**

As left

Standard	**Meter Under Test**	**%Error**	**Standard**	**Meter Under Test**	**%Error**

Remarks: ______________________

Tester ______________________ Assistant ______________________

Form A12 Low voltage breaker test report 600 V or less.

Location ____ Date ________________

Circuit ____ Job no. ________________

Breaker Mfg. ____________ Type ____________ Frame ____________ Serial ____________

☐ Air circuit breaker ☐ Molded/case ☐ Drawout ☐ Fixed

Fuse type ______________________________ Single phase prot. ________________

Trip devices Series ☐ Static ☐ Oil dash pot ☐ Trip coil/sensor Rating ________

Style ______________________________ Curve ______________________________

Ranges

L.T.D. ____________ S.T.D. ____________ Inst. ____________ Grd. fault ____________

Settings

L.T.D. ________ Band ________ S.T.D. ________ Band ________ Inst. ________ Grd fault. ________

Characteristic	**% Setting test amps**	**Curve (s)**
Long time delay	____________	____________
Short time delay	____________	____________
Instantaneous	____________	____________
Ground fault	____________	____________

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="18">E
L
E
C
T
R
I
C
A
L

T
E
S
T

R
E
S
U
L
T
S</td><td rowspan="3">Device</td><td rowspan="3">% SETTING</td><td rowspan="3">TEST AMPS</td><td colspan="6">PICK UP ACTION OR SECONDS TO OPERATE</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">AS FOUND</td><td colspan="3">AS LEFT</td></tr>
<tr><td>A</td><td>B</td><td>C</td><td>A</td><td>B</td><td>C</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Long time</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Short time</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Instantaneous</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Ground fault</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Contact resistance—micro-ohms: A</td><td colspan="2">B</td><td colspan="2">C</td></tr>
<tr><td>Megger test meghohms @ ____volts DC</td><td>A–G</td><td>B–G</td><td>C–G</td><td>A–B</td><td>B–C</td><td>A–A</td><td>B–B</td><td>C–C</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="9"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="10">Remarks:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="10"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="10"></td></tr>
</table>

Form A13 Fall of potential plot.

Instrument mfg. ________________ Name of operator: ____________________
Model ________________________ Location: ________ Date: ______________
Serial # ______________ Ground system type:
Single rod ☐ Multiple rods ☐ Longest dimension ______________ft.
Depth __________________ft.
Distance of auxiliary current electrode Z: _____________ft.

Voltage Electrode Distance from Ground Under Test	Resistance		
Feet	Ohms		
___	___		
___	___		
___	___		
___	___	50	100
___	___		
___	___	45	90
___	___		
___	___	40	80
___	___		
___	___	35	70
___	___		

Test Conditions

Temp: ______________________ Soil: Moist ☐ Dry ☐

Soil type

Loam ☐ Sand & Gravel ☐ Shale ☐
Clay ☐ Limestone ☐ Sandstone ☐
Granite ☐ Slate ☐

Other ______________________

Form A13 continued

___	___	30	60																				
___	___																						
___	___	25	50																				
___	___																						
___	___	20	40																				
___	___																						
___	___	15	30																				
___	___	10	20																				
___	___																						
___	___	5	10																				
___	___		×1																				
___	___		×10																				
___	___	Circle scales and multipliers used		×1	10		20		30		40		50		60		70		80		90		100
___	___			×10	5		10		15		20		25		30		35		40		45		50
				Distance in feet from ground under test to voltage electrode.																			

Form A14 Protective relay test record.

Location ____________________

Circuit ____________________

Protection ____________________ Testman ____________________

Current ☐

Transformer data Potential ☐ Quantity __________ Make __________ Rating __________

Ratio ____________________ Connection ____________________

Current ☐

Transformer data Potential ☐ Quantity __________ Make __________ Rating __________

Ratio ____________________ Connection ____________________

Relay data

Disc Instantaneous

Quantity __________ Make __________ Style __________ Range ____________________

Quantity __________ Make __________ Style __________ Range ____________________

SETTINGS ☐ From Study (Remarks) ☐ Existing, As Apparent

Tap				Time Dial			Instantaneous			Other	
	Found	Left		Found	Left		Found	Left		Found	Left
A											
B											
C											
G											

Test Values/Work · As applicable A B C G Other

1. Instantaneous devices Pick up amps AF _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
   A.L. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
2. Time delay delays device Pick up amps AF _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
   A.L. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
3. Time test @ _____% Pick up _____ ☐ Hertz ☐ Seconds AL _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
4. Time test @ _____ % Pick up _____ ☐ Minutes AL _____ _____ _____ _____ _____
5. Directional element tests
6. Cleaned – ☐ Contacts ☐ Disc/magnet gap ☐ Disc backstop ☐ General
7. Inspected- ☐ Panel wiring ☐ Aux. relays ☐ All ct. shorting devices
   ☐ Contact alignment ☐ Disc. alignment ☐ Meters
8. Tested Cts. for/by ☐ Visual ☐ Impedance comparison ☐ Backfeed
   ☐ Complete circuitry ☐ All phase cts. feed residual ground relay
   ☐ Ground relay zero sequence connected
9. Operational– ☐ Relays operated to trip breaker ☐ Operational not desired by customer
10. Relays trip - ☐ Breaker direct ☐ Breaker thru. aux. relay ☐ Targets/seal-in OK
    Device 86 relayto ____________________

Remarks ____________________

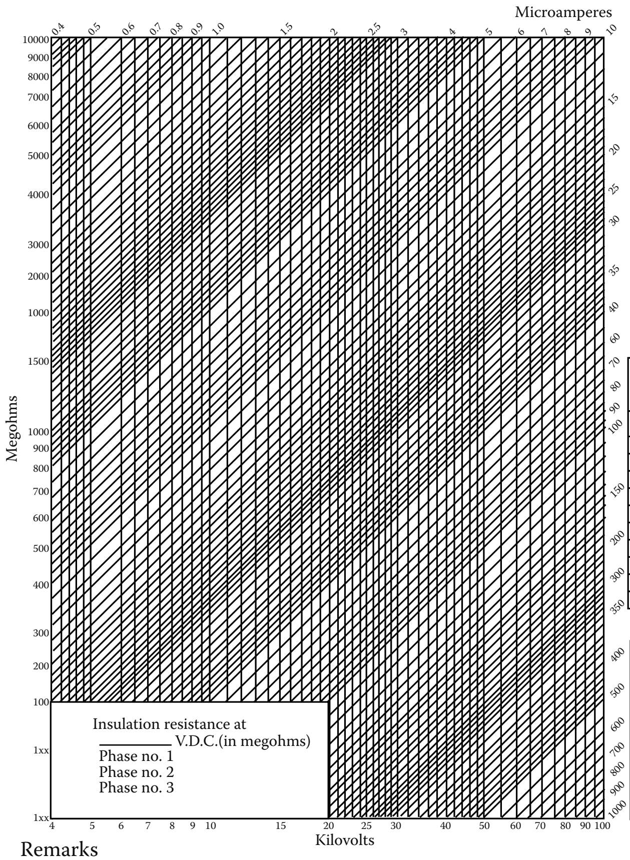
____

Form A15 Cable test record.

Forms and Reports

Circuit ______________________ Date ______________

Location ______________________ Job no. ______________



Tester ______________

Circuit ______________

S/N of
Test bet ______________

Cal. date ______________

Cable data

Manuf. ______________

Size ______________

Type ______________

KV rating ______________

Length ______________

Term. ______________

Type of test KV

Install ______________

Proof ______________

Maint. ______________

Test	Leakage current microamps (μA)		
Kv	A∅	B∅	C∅

Remarks: absorption test

Min.	A∅	B∅	C∅
.25			
.50			
1.0			
2.0			
3.0			
4.0			
5.0			

Remarks

____

____

____

Appendix B ANSI/IEEE Standard Device Function Numbers

In North America protective relays are generally referred to by standard device numbers. Letters are sometimes added to specify the application.

1. Master element
2. Time-delay starting or closing relay
3. Checking or interlocking relay
4. Master contractor
5. Shopping device
6. Starting circuit breaker
7. Anode circuit breaker
8. Control power disconnecting device
9. Reversing device
10. Unit sequence switch
11. Reserved for future application
12. Overspeed device
13. Synchronous-speed device
14. Underspeed device
15. Speed- or frequency-matching device
16. Reserved for future application
17. Shunting or discharge switch
18. Accelerating or decelerating device
19. Starting-to-running transition contactor
20. Electrically operated valve space (solenoid valve)
21. Distance relay
22. Equalizer circuit breaker
23. Temperature-control device
24. Reserved for future application
25. Synchronizing- or synchronous-check device
26. Apparatus thermal device
27. Undervoltage relay
28. Flame detector
29. Isolating contactor
30. Annunciator relay
31. Separate excitation device
32. Directional power relay
33. Position switch
34. Master sequence device
35. Brush-operating or slip-ring short-circuiting device
36. Polarity or polarizing voltage device
37. Undercurrent or underpower relay

38. Bearing protective device
39. Mechanical condition monitor
40. Loss of field relay
41. Field circuit breaker
42. Running circuit breaker
43. Manual transfer or selector device
44. Unit sequence starting relay
45. Atmospheric condition monitor
46. Reverse-phase or phase-balance current relay
47. Phase-sequence voltage relay
48. Incomplete sequence relay
49. Machine or transformer thermal relay
50. Instantaneous overcurrent or rate-of-rise relay
51. AC time overcurrent relay
52. AC circuit breaker
53. Exciter on DC generator relay
54. High-speed DC circuit breaker
55. Power factor relay
56. Field application relay
57. Short-circuiting or grounding device
58. Rectification failure relay
59. Overvoltage relay
60. Voltage- or current-balance relay (use 60 °C when 60 V is also present)
61. Machine split phase current balance
62. Time-delay stopping, or opening, relay
63. Liquid or gas pressure or vacuum relay
64. Ground protective or detector relay
65. Governor
66. Notching or jogging device or starts per hour
67. AC directional overcurrent relay
68. Blocking relay
69. Permissive control device
70. Rheostat
71. Liquid- or gas-level relay or switch
72. DC circuit breaker
73. Load-resistor contractor
74. Alarm relay
75. Position-changing mechanism
76. DC overcurrent relay
77. Pulse transmitter
78. Phase angle measuring or out-of-step protective relay
79. AC reclosing relay
80. Liquid or gas flow relay
81. Frequency relay
82. DC reclosing relay
83. Automatic selective control or transfer relay

84. Operating mechanism
85. Carrier or pilot-wire receiver relay
86. Locking-out relay
87. Differential protective relay
88. Auxiliary motor or motor generator
89. Line switch
90. Regulating device
91. Voltage directional relay
92. Voltage and power directional relay
93. Field-changing contactor
94. Tripping or trip-free relay
95. Used only for specific applications on individual installation where none of the assigned numbered functions from 1 to 94 are suitable
96. Auto loading relay

Note: Suffix letters are used with device function numbers for various purposes; for instance, suffix N is generally used if the device is connected in the secondary neutral of current transformers, and suffixes X, Y, and Z are used to denote separate auxiliary devices. Where more than one device is used for similar functions, a numerical suffix is used to differentiate (e.g., 52–1, 52–5).

B = Bus, F = field, G = ground or generator, N = neutral, and T = transformer.

Bibliography

Chapter 1

Andreas, J. C., *Energy-Efficient Electric Motors: Selection and Application*, Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1992.

Bartley, W. H., *Analysis of Transformer Failures: Part 2—Causes, Prevention and Maximum Service Life*, International Association of Engineering Insurers 36th Annual Conference, Stockholm, Sweden, 2003.

de Siqueira, I. P., Reliability-centered maintenance of oil immersed transformers: A work group approach from several companies, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Edison Electric Institute, Report on equipment availability for 10 year period, 1965–74, EEI Publication No. 75-50, November 1975 (Prime Mover Generation Equipment).

Edison Electric Institute, Report on excitation system troubles, 1975, EEI Publication No. 76-78, December 1976 (later data have also been published).

Edison Electric Institute, Report on generator troubles, 1975, EEI Publication No. 76082, December 1976 (later data have also been published).

Edison Electric Institute, Report on metalclad switchgear troubles, 1975, EEI Publication No. 76-82, December 1976 (later data have also been published).

Edison Electric Institute, Report on motor troubles, 1975, EEI Publication No. 76-79, December 1976.

Edison Electric Institute, Report on power circuit troubles, 1975, EEI Publication No. 76-81, December 1976.

Edison Electric Institute, Report on power transformer troubles, 1975, EEI Publication No. 76-80, December 1976.

Hillmer, T. and Brandes, H., New generation of a class 180 (H) electrical insulation system for high voltage machines, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

IEEE Committee Report, Report on reliability survey of industrial plants: Parts I, II, and III, *IEEE Transaction on Industry Applications*, Vol. IA-10, No. 2, July/August 1974, pp. 213–252; Parts IV, V and VI, Vol. IA-10, No. 4, July/August 1974, pp. 456–476.

IEEE Committee Report, Report on reliability survey of industrial plants: Parts I–VI, *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, March/April 1974, pp. 213–252; July/August 1974, pp. 456–476; September/October 1974, p. 681 (see Annex A and Annex B).

IEEE Committee Report, Report of switchgear bus reliability survey of industrial plants and commercial buildings, *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, March/April 1979, pp. 141–147 (see Annex E).

IEEE Committee Report, Report of generator reliability survey of industrial plants and commercial buildings, *IEEE-ICPS Technical Conference Record*, CH1543-8-1A, May 1980, pp. 40–44.

IEEE Committee Report, Report of transformer reliability survey—Industrial plants and commercial buildings, *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, 1983, pp. 858–866 (see Annex G).

IEEE Std 500-1984 (Reaff 1991), IEEE Guide to the Collection and Presentation of Electrical, Electronic, Sensing Component, and Mechanical Equipment Reliability Data for Nuclear Power Generating Stations 2, 3, IEEE Std 493-2007, Chapter 10.

IEEE Std 120-1989, IEEE Master Test Guide for Electrical Measurements in Power Circuits.

IEEE Std 902-1998, IEEE Guide for Maintenance, Operation, and Safety of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

IEEE Std 1-2000, IEEE Recommended Practice-General Principles for Temperature Limits in the Rating of Electrical Equipment and for the Evaluation of Electrical Insulation.

IEEE Std 493-2007, IEEE Recommended Practice for the Design of Reliable Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

Mayoux, C., On the degradation of industrial materials withstanding electrical stress, *IEEE Conference on Electrical Insulation and Dielectric Phenomena 2000,* Victoria, BC.

McWilliams, D. W., Patton, A. D., and Heising, C. R., Reliability of electrical equipment in industrial plants—Comparison of results from 1959 survey and 1971 survey, *IEEE-ICPS Technical Conference Record*, 74CH0855-71A, Denver, CO, June 2–6, 1974, pp. 105–112.

Megger Inc., *"A Stitch in Time…" The Complete Guide to Electrical Testing*, 21-P8b-1992, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Moubray, J., ATA MSG-3, Operator/manufacturer scheduled maintenance development, *Reliability-Centered Maintenance*, Industrial Press, Inc., New York, 2003.

Neitzel, D. K., *Circuit Breaker Maintenance, Medium-Voltage Course Textbook*, Chapter 1, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2006, p. 1-10.

Neitzel, D. K., *Circuit Breaker Maintenance, Medium-Voltage Course Textbook*, Chapter 4, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2006, p. 4-18.

Neitzel, D., Establishing an electrical safety program, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Neitzel, D. K., *Protective Relay Maintenance, Basic Course Textbook*, Module 3, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2006, p. 5-24.

Neitzel, D. K., *Circuit Breaker Maintenance, Low-Voltage Course Textbook*, Module 2, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2007, p. 34.

Neitzel, D. K., *Principle Components of a Molded-Case Circuit Breaker*, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2007, p. 14.

Neitzel, D. K., *Various Electrical Safety Course Textbooks*, NEC 110.16 Required Label, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2007.

Neitzel, D. K., *Various Electrical Safety Course Textbooks*, Recommended Label for Arc-Flash Hazard, AVO Training Institute, Inc., Dallas, TX, revision 2007.

A Guide to the Reliability-Centered Maintenance (RCM) Standard, (SAE JA1012), Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE), January 2002.

NUREG/CR-6819, *Common-Cause Failure Event Insights-Circuit Breakers*, Vol. 4, Idaho National Engineering and Environmental Laboratory, Idaho Falls, ID, May 2003.

O'Donnell, P., Report of large motor reliability survey of industrial plants and commercial installations, *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, Parts 1 and 2, July/August 1985, pp. 853–872; Part 3, January/February 1987, pp. 153–158 (see Annex H).

O'Donnell, P., Survey of lower voltage breakers as found during maintenance, *IEEE Industrial & Commercial Power Systems Technical Conference*, May 6–9, 1996, New Orleans, LA.

Patton, A. D., Determination and analysis of data for reliability studies, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, Vol. PAS-87, January 1968, pp. 84–100.
PowerDB Inc., *Instructional Manual for PowerDB Software*, PowerDB Inc., College Station, TX, 2008.
ReliaSoft Corporation, Basic steps of applying reliability centered maintenance (RCM)—Part II, *Reliability HotWire*, ReliaSoft Corporation, Issue 73, 2007.
Smith, A. and Glenn R., *RCM—Gateway to World Class Maintenance*, Elsevier, Burlington, MA, 2004.
St. Germain, E., and Pride, A., *NASA Reliability Maintenance Guide for Facilities and Collateral Equipment*, 1996.
UL 1446-2007, Standard for Systems of Insulating Materials.

Chapter 2

Bishop, T., Insulation resistance testing: How many megohms does it take to start a motor? *NETA World*, Spring 2008.
El-Hawary, M. E. (Series Editor), *Electrical Insulation for Rotating Machines, Design, Evaluation Aging Testing and Repair, IEEE Press Series on Power Engineering*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ, 2004.
Gregorec, J., The basics of insulation testing, *NETA World*, Fall 2006.
IEEE Std 62-1995, IEEE Guide for Diagnostic Field Testing of Electric Power Apparatus, Part 1: Oil Filled Power Transformers, Regulators, and Reactors.
IEEE Std 4-1995, IEEE Standard Techniques for High-voltage Testing.
IEEE Std 902-1998 (Yellow Book), IEEE Guide for Maintenance, Operation, and Safety of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.
IEEE Std 400-2001, Guide for Field Testing and Evaluation of the Insulation of Shielded Power Cable Systems.
IEEE Std 400-2001, IEEE Guide for Field Testing and Evaluation of the Insulation of Shielded Power Cable Systems.
IEEE Std 4a-2001, Amendment to IEEE Standard Techniques for High-Voltage Testing.
IEEE Std 95-2002, IEEE Recommended Practice for Insulation Testing of AC Electric Machinery (2300 V and above) with High Direct Voltage.
IEEE Std 522-2004, IEEE Guide for Testing Turn Insulation of Form-Wound Stator Coils for Alternating-Current Electric Machines.
IEEE Std 62.2-2004, IEEE Guide for Diagnostic Field Testing of Electric Power Apparatus.
IEEE Std 112-2004, IEEE Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators.
IEEE Std 1-2005, IEEE Recommended Practice—General Principles for Temperature Limits in the Rating of Electrical Equipment and for the Evaluation of Electrical Insulation.
IEEE Std 400.1-2007, IEEE Guide for Field Testing of Laminated Dielectric, Shielded Power Cable Systems Rated 5 kV and above with High Direct Current Voltage.
Jowett, J., Insulation testing as an electrical maintenance tool, *NETA World*, Summer 2004.
Megger Inc., *"A Stitch in Time…" The Complete Guide to Electrical Testing*, 21-P8b-1992, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *A Guide to Diagnostic Insulation Testing above 1 kV*, MEG-562/3M/5.2007, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for S1-552 5 kV Digital Insulation Resistance Tester*, S1-552_UG_en_V03 0806, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

NETA Maintenance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems (NETA MTS-2005), International Electrical Testing Association, Portage, MI, Table 100-1, 2005.

Reynolds, A. O., *The Lowdown on High-Voltage DC Testing*, 22-P1-1988, Biddle Instruments, Blue Bell, PA, 1988.

Westinghouse Electric Corporation, *Westinghouse Electrical Maintenance Hints*, Westinghouse Electric Corporation Printing Division, Trafford, PA, 1984.

Chapter 3

Cotter, J. and Kennedy, M., *Factory verses Field Testing of C2 for HSP Bushings*, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Doble Engineering Co., *Power-Factor Test Data Reference Book*, Doble Engineering Co., Watertown, MA, 1985.

Gregorec, J., The basics of insulation testing, *NETA World*, Fall 2006.

Hill, K., Basic power factor testing, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.

IEEE Std 4-1995, IEEE Standard Techniques for High-Voltage Testing (revision of IEEE Std 4-1 978).

IEEE Std 62-1995, IEEE Guide for Diagnostic Field Testing of Electric Power Apparatus, Part 1: Oil Filled Power Transformers, Regulators, and Reactors.

IEEE Std 286-2000, IEEE Recommended Practice for Measurement of Power Factor Tip-Up of Electric Machinery Stator Coil Insulation.

IEEE Std 576-2000, IEEE Recommended Practice for Installation, Termination, and Testing of Insulation.

IEEE Std 400-2001, IEEE Guide for Field Testing and Evaluation of the Insulation of Shielded Power Cable Systems.

IEEE Std 4a-2001, Amendment to IEEE Standard Techniques for High-Voltage Testing.

IEEE Std 522-2004, IEEE Guide for Testing Turn Insulation of Form-Wound Stator Coils for Alternating-Current Electric Machines.

IEEE Std 62.2-2004, IEEE Guide for Diagnostic Field Testing of Electric Power Apparatus.

IEEE Std 400.2-2004, IEEE Guide for Field Testing of Shielded Power Cable Systems Using Very Low Frequency (VLF).

IEEE Std 400.3-2006, IEEE Guide for Partial Discharge Testing of Shielded Power Cable Systems in a Field Environment.

Jesing, J., C1 and C2 testing sensitivity on a current transformer, CLP Power India GPEC Paguthan CCPP, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Delta-3000 10 kV Automated Insulation Test Set*, AVTM673001, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Capacitance and Dissipation Factor Bridge Catalog No. 810130*, AVTM810130, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA, 2002.

Melo, M. C. and Brazil, F., Analysis and comparison of failure modes of OIP and RIP bushings, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Rowan, S., Non-invasive on-line diagnostics for electrical systems, *Mining Technology Magazine*, July 1988.

Chapter 4

ASTM D117-2002, Standard Guide for Sampling, Test Methods, and Specifications for Electrical Insulating Oils of Petroleum Origin.

ASTM D88-2007, Standard Test Method for Saybolt Viscosity.

Claiborne, C. C., Oommen, T. V., Le, H. D., Walsh, E. J., and Baker, J. P., Enhanced cellulosic insulation life evaluation in a high oleic vegetable oil dielectric fluid, Paper 3C, *Doble Conference*, April 2002.

FCC Rules, Code of Federal Regulations Title 40 Part 761.1 (40CFR761.1), Protection of Environment-Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) Manufacturing, Processing, Distribution in Commerce, and Use Prohibitions-Applicability, 1995.

Garnett, J. and Sweetser, C., In-service assessment and teardown of an ABB PME362-50-30 SF6 filled dead tank circuit breaker, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Hibi, K., SF6 Gas management, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

IEC 61203:1992, Synthetic Organic Esters for Electrical Purposes—Guide for Maintenance of Transformer Esters in Equipment.

IEEE Std C57.104-1991, IEEE Guide for the Detection and Determination of Generated Gases in Oil-Immersed Transformers and Their Relation to the Serviceability of the Equipment.

IEEE Std C57.111-2003, IEEE Guide for Acceptance of Silicone Insulating Fluid and its Maintenance in Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.146-2005, IEEE Guide for the Interpretation of Gases Generated in Silicone-Immersed Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.106-2006, IEEE Guide for Acceptance and Maintenance of Insulating Oil in Equipment.

IEEE Std C57.147-2008, IEEE Guide for Acceptance and Maintenance of Natural Ester Fluids in Transformers.

Jakob, K. and Jakob, F., Recent applications of DGA, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Lewand, L., Gassing characteristics of transformer oil under thermal stress, *NETA World*, Fall 2005.

McShane, C. P., New safety dielectric coolants for distribution and power transformers, *IEEE Industry Applications Magazine,* Vol. 6, No. 3, pp. 24–32, May/June 2000.

McShane, C. P., Rapp, K. J., Corkran, J. L., Gauger, G. A., and Luksich, J., Aging of paper insulation in natural ester dielectric fluid, *IEEE/PES Transmission and Distribution Conference and Exposition*, October 28–November 2, 2001.

McShane, C. P., Luksich, J., and Rapp, K. J., Retrofilling aging transformer with natural ester based dielectric coolant for safety and life extension, *Proceedings of the IEEE-IAS/PCA Cement Industry Technical Conference*, Dallas, TX, May 2003.

Megger Inc., Instructional Manual for OTS60SX Semi Automatic Oil Test Set, 6172-120 V12, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 29 CFR, Part 1910, Subpart Z, 1910.1000, Table Z-2.

Oommen, T. V., Claiborne, C. C., Walsh, E. J., and Baker, J. P., A new vegetable oil based transformer fluid: Development and verification, *IEEE Conference on Electrical Insulation and Dielectric Phenomena*, Vancouver, BC, Canada, October 2000, pp. 308–312.

Platts, D., Investigation of transformer hydrogen gassing, PPL electric utilities, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Technologies Verification (ETV) Reports, EPA 600/R-02/042 and EPA 600/R-02/043, Office of Research and Development, National Center for Environmental Research, Washington, DC.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Technology Verification, Joint Verification Statement for Vegetable Oil-Based Insulation Dielectric Fluid, Statement VS-R-02-02, June 2002, and VSR-02-03, June 2002.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Test Method OPPTS 835.3110, Office of Prevention, Pesticides, and Toxic Substances Test Guidelines, Washington, DC, September 1995.

VDE 0370-1978, Insulating Oils in Service in Transformers and Switchgear.

Chapter 5

Babcock, R. O., *Application Guide for Power Factor Testing of Bushings*, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX, 2003.

Babcock, R. O., *Application Guide for Power Factor Testing of Power and Distribution Transformers*, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX, 2003.

Bartley, W., Analysis of transformer failures, *International Associations of Engineering Insurers Association 36th Annual Conference*, Stockholm, 2003.

Bartley, W., Investigating transformer failures, *Weidmann-ACTI 5th Annual Technical Conference*, Hartford Steam Boiler Inspection & Insurance Company, November 2006.

Britton, J. A., Frequency response analysis of power transformers: Practical aspects of FRA testing and interpretation, *NETA 2005 Annual Technical Conference,* New Orleans, LA.

Coffeen, L. (NEETRAC), Cantrelle, D. (George Power Co.), and Mongo, J. (Florida Power and Light), Online Monitor Tracks Transformer Health, Transmission and Distribution World, October 1, 2007.

Hamaker, C., A blueprint for transformer maintenance, Public Utilities Fortnightly, July 2006.

IEEE C57.125-1991, IEEE Guide for Failure Investigation, Documentation and Analysis for Power Transformers and Shunt Reactors.

IEEE C57.19.01-2000, IEEE Standard Performance Characteristics and Dimensions for Outdoor Apparatus Bushings.

IEEE C57.91-1995, IEEE Guide for Loading Mineral-Oil-Immersed Transformers.

IEEE PC 57.119-2001, Recommended Practice for Performing Temperature Rise Tests on Oil Immersed Power Transformers at Loads beyond Nameplate Ratings.

IEEE Std 259-1999, IEEE Standard Test Procedure for Evaluation of Systems of Insulation for Dry-Type Specialty and General-Purpose Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.113-1991, IEEE Guide for Partial Discharge Measurement in Liquid-Filled Power Transformers and Shunt Reactors.

IEEE Std C57.12.00-2000, IEEE Standard General Requirements for Liquid-Immersed Distribution, Power, and Regulating Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.12.10-1997, Product Standard for Power Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.12.90-1999, IEEE Standard Test Code for Liquid-Immersed Distribution, Power, and Regulating Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.93-2007, IEEE Guide for Installation and Maintenance of Liquid-Immersed Power Transformers.

IEEE Std C57.98-1993 (Reaff 1999), IEEE Guide for Transformer Impulse Tests.

James, R. and Bartley, W., Transformer asset management, *Weidmann-ACTI 2nd Annual Technical Conference*, New Diagnostics for Better Asset Management, November 2003.

Kennedy, M., Field experiences with SFRA, *DOBLE Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Mandeville, J., SFRA—AEP's Prospective, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Capacitance and Dissipation Factor Bridge Catalog No. 810130*, AVTM810130, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Delta-3000 10kV Automated Insulation Test Set*, AVTM673001, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for S1-552 5kV Digital Insulation Resistance Tester*, S1-552_UG_en_V03 0806, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Transformer Ohmmeter Catalog No. 830280*, AVTM830280, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for TTR Hand Crank Transformer Turn Ratio Test Set*, AVTM 55-JD, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for TTR25 Handheld Transformer Turn Ratio Test Set*, AVTMTTR25, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for TTR310 Three-Phase Transformer Turn Ratio Test Set*, AVTMTTR310, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Meyers, S. D., Kelly, J. J., and Parrish, R. H., *A Guide to Transformer Maintenance*, Transformer Maintenance Institute, Akron, OH, 1981.

NEMA standard publication number TR1-1993 (R2000), *Transformers, Regulators, and Reactors*, NEMA, Rosslyn, VA.

NETA Maintenance Testing Specification for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems (NETA MTS-2005), International Electrical Testing Association, 3050 Old Center Ave, Portage, MI, Table 100-5, 2005.

Prout, P. and Simonelli, R., Assessment of insulation dryness using dew point measurements of transformers below freezing, *DOBLE Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Rojas, A., The role of test voltage and current levels in transformer condition assessment—Is there a better way? *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Sánchez, S., Pérez, C., and Avalos, A., Frequency response analysis for fault detection in power transformers, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Stephens, R., Hill, K., and Stelmach, D., High voltage transformer tests uncover manufacturing defect not detected in the factory, *DOBLE Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Theyeri, M., Risk management associated with power transformers, *DOBLE Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Chapter 6

Abdolall, K., Halldorson, G. L., and Green, D., Condition assessment and failure modes of solid dielectric cables in perspective, *IEEE Transaction on Power Delivery*, Vol. 17, No. 1, January 2002.

Ahmed, N. and Srinivas, N., Partial discharge measurements in distribution class extruded cables, *IEEE T&D Conference*, New Orleans, 1999, pp. 46–51.

Ahmed, N. and Srinivas, N., *Online Versus Offline Partial Discharge Testing in Power Cables*, DTE Energy Technologies Inc., 2001.
Babcock, R. O., *Application Guide for Power Factor Testing of Cables and Potheads*, 2003, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.
Boone, W., Reliability improvement of cable circuits by condition-based maintenance, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.
Chan, J.C., Duffy, P., Hiivala, L.J., and Wasik, J. Partial discharge-Part VIII: PD Testing of solid dielectric cables, *Electrical Insulation Magazine*, September/October 1991, pp. 744–760.
Eynon, R., Inspections of medium-voltage power cables, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.
GE Wire and Cable Hand Book, Wire and Cable Products Department, Bridgeport, CT, 1973.
Gulski, E., Smith, J. J., Seitz, P. N., and Smit, J. C. PD Measurements on-site using oscillating wave test system, *Conference Record of the 1998 International Symposium of Electrical Insulation*, Virginia, June 7–10, 1998, pp. 420–423.
Hicks, S., On-line partial-discharge testing of medium-voltage cables, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.
IEEE Std 400-2001, IEEE Guide for Field Testing and Evaluation of the Insulation of Shielded Power Cable Systems.
IEEE Std 400.2-2004, IEEE Guide for Field Testing of Shielded Power Cable Systems Using Very Low Frequency (VLF).
IEEE Std 400.3-2006, IEEE Guide for Partial Discharge Testing of Shielded Power Cable Systems in a Field Environment.
IEEE Std 400.1-2007, IEEE Guide for Field Testing of Laminated Dielectric, Shielded Power Cable Systems Rated 5 kV and above with High Direct Current Voltage.
Lanz, B., Cable testing options compared, Application Note, 2004.
Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Portable Fault Locator PFL40A*, AVTMPFL40A-EN, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.
Megger Inc., *Fault Finding Solutions*, MEG-231/MIL/3M/11.2003, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.
Moore, G. F. (Ed.), *Electrical Cables Handbook/BICC Cables*, 3rd edn., Blackwell Science, Oxford; Malden, MA, 1997.
Morshuis, P., Assessment of dielectric degradation of ultrawide band PD detection, *IEEE Transaction on Dielectric and Electrical Insulation*, Vol. 2, No. 5, 1995, pp. 774–760.
Ross, R., Composition, structure and growth of water trees in polythene, KEMA Scientific and Technical Reports (ISSN 0167–8590), KEMA, the Netherlands, Vol. 8, No. 4, 1990, pp. 209–271.
Ross, R. and Smit, J. J., Influence of ageing conditions on water tree growth processes, *IEEE Transactions on Electrical Insulation*, 1992, pp. 368–371.

Chapter 7

Anderson, B., Remote breaker racking, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.
Babcock, R. O., *Application Guide for Power Factor Testing of Circuit Breakers*, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX, 2003.
Blohm, R., Battery installation and maintenance recommendations, *NETA Annual Technical Conference*, San Antonio, TX, 2004.

Brown, J., Revise the Doble test procedure for SF6 dead tank and vacuum breakers, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Claesson, L. Stanisic, Z., Wernli, H., and Petterson, K., Safe circuit breaker timing with new technology, *Cigre and IEEE International Conference on Condition Monitoring and Diagnosis*, Changwon, Korea, April 4, 2006.

Fernihough, W. J., Detection of SF6 circuit breaker problems using the Doble test set, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

IEEE Std C37.85-1989, American National Standard for Switchgear—Alternating-Current High-Voltage Power Vacuum Interrupters-Safety Requirements for X-Radiation Limits.

IEEE Std 1291-1993, IEEE Guide for Partial Discharge Measurement in Power Switchgear.

IEEE Std C37.010-1999, IEEE Application Guide for AC High-Voltage Circuit Breakers Rated on a Symmetrical Current Basis.

IEEE Std C37.06-2000, American National Standard AC High-Voltage Circuit Breakers Rated on a Symmetrical Current Basis-Preferred Ratings and Related Required Capabilities.

IEEE Std C37.10.1-2000, Guide for the Selection of Monitoring for Circuit Breakers.

IEEE Std 450-2002, IEEE Recommended Practice for Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Lead-Acid Batteries for Stationary Applications.

IEEE Std C37.48-2005, IEEE Guide for Application, Operation, and Maintenance of High-Voltage Fuses, Distribution Enclosed Single-Pole Air Switches, Fuse Disconnecting Switches, and Accessories.

IEEE Std 1188-2005, IEEE Recommended Practice for Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries for Stationary Applications.

IEEE Std 551-2006 (Violet Book), IEEE Recommended Practice for Calculating Short-Circuit Currents in Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

IEEE Std C37.04-2006, IEEE Standard Rating Structure for AC High-Voltage Circuit Breakers.

Jensen, R., ABB Type 15-VHK-500 Vacuum breakers manufactured between 1989 and 1997, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Knights, M., Tracking down the greenhouse gas SF6 with infrared thermography, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Leoni, A. R. and Nelson, J. P., Some lessons learned from commissioning substation and medium voltage switchgear equipment, IEEE Paper No. PCIC-2000-XX.

Locarno, M., Southern states capacitor switcher problem found by Doble testing, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Mandeville, J., New battery technology, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for BITE2 Battery Impedance Test Equipment*, AVTM246004, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for DLRO200 High Current Low Resistance Ohmmeter*, 6172-763, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for S1-5010 Diagnostic Insulation Tester*, 6172-283, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for S1-552 5 kV Digital Insulation Resistance Tester*, S1-552_UG_en_V03 0806, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *Battery Testing Guide*, MEG-290/MIL/2.5M/4.2004, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *A Guide to Low Resistance Testing: Understanding and Measuring Low Resistance to Ensure Electrical System Performance*, MEG-429_V04/MIL/2.5M/7.2005, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

NUREG/CR-6819, Common-Cause Failure Event Insights-Circuit Breakers, Vol. 4, ID 83415, Idaho National Engineering and Environmental Laboratory, Idaho Falls, May 2003.

Patterson, C., Field application of partial discharge testing for medium-voltage switchgear, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.

Programma Instruments, *Instructional Manual for TM1800 Circuit Breaker Analyzer System*, CG0757EE, Programma Instruments, Taby, Sweden.

Programma Instruments, *Instructional Manual for Torkel 820/840/860 Battery Load Units*, BS2395EE, Programma Instruments, Taby, Sweden.

Programma Instruments, *Instructional Manual for Vidar Vacuum Tester*, BR0150AE, Programma Instruments, Taby, Sweden.

Programma Instruments, *Instructional Manual for EGIL Breaker Analyzer*, BM0087JE, Programma Instruments, Taby, Sweden.

Rogers, D. and Smith, M., Oil circuit breaker (WE 2300-GW-20000) failure due to high moisture content, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Salinas, A. Southern California Edison, Vacuum bottle monitoring, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Smeaton, R. W. and Ubert, W. H., *Switchgear and Control Handbook*, 3rd edn., McGraw Hill Book Company, New York.

Tressler, R., Practical aspects of maintaining and testing stationary batteries, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.

True, T., Switching 138 kV breakers with capacitors using gang operated switches causes arcing, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Chapter 8

ABB Inc., *Installation/Maintenance Instructions for Low Voltage Air-Magnetic Power Circuit Breakers, K-Line 225A through 2000A, Stationary and Draw-Out Frames, Manually and Electrically Operated Mechanisms*, ABB Inc., Florence, SC, IB 6.1.12.1-1D, Issue "D" 7-15-06.

ANSI C37.16-2000, Low-Voltage Power Circuit Breakers and AC Power Circuit Protectors Preferred Ratings, Related Requirements, and Application Recommendations.

ANSI/IEEE C37.13-1995, Standard for Low-Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers Used in Enclosures.

ANSI/IEEE Std 242-1986, IEEE Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems (Buff Book), New York.

ANSI/IEEE Std 242-2001, IEEE Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

Casler, C., Electrical inspections with the use of thermography, ultrasound, and ultraviolet technology, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2008.

IEEE Standards Collection, C37, *Circuit Breakers, Switchgear, Substations, and Fuses*, 7995 Edition, The Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc., New York.

IEEE Std 944-1986, IEEE Recommended Practice for the Application and Testing of Uninterruptible Power Supplies for Power Generating Stations.

IEEE Std 141-1993 (Redbook), IEEE Recommended Practice for Electric Power Distribution for Industrial Plants.

IEEE Std 242-2001 (Buff Book), IEEE Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

IEEE Std 1458-2005, IEEE Recommended Practice for the Selection, Field Testing, and Life Expectancy of Molded Case Circuit Breakers for Industrial.

IEEE Std 1015-2006 (Blue Book), IEEE Recommended Practice for Applying Low Voltage Circuit Breakers Used in Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

Ignall, R., Power monitoring—How to perform a power survey, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2008.

Megger Inc., A Guide to Low Resistance Testing—Understanding and Measuring Low Resistance to Ensure Electrical System Performance, MEG-429_V04/MIL/2.5M/7.2005, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for CB-832 Circuit Breaker and Overload Relay Test Set*, 9841, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for CB-845 Circuit Breaker Test Set*, 9820, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for DDA-3000 and DDA-6000 Universal Circuit Breaker Test Set*, 17176, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for High CCA-1600 Circuit Breaker Test Set*, 50550, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for High Current Test Set Model MS-2*, 12510, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Neitzel, D. K., Neeser, D., and Callanan, M., Preventative maintenance and reliability of low-voltage overcurrent protective devices, *IEEE-PCIC Europe 2004 Conference Documentation*, 2004.

NEMA AB-1, Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case Switches.

NEMA AB-1-2002, Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case Switches.

NEMA AB-1, 2002, Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures, Only Available from UL, See UL 489.

NEMA AB-3, 2006, Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Their Application.

NEMA AB-4, 2003, Guidelines for Inspection and Preventive Maintenance of Molded Case Circuit Breakers Used in Commercial and Industrial Applications.

NEMA C37.16, 2000, Low-Voltage Power Circuit Breakers and AC Power Circuit Protectors—Preferred Ratings, Related Requirements, and Application Recommendations.

NEMA C37.17, 1997, Trip Devices for AC and General Purpose DC Low Voltage Power Circuit Breakers.

NEMA Standards Publication AB 4, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Washington, DC.

NETA Maintenance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems (NETA MTS-2005), International Electrical Testing Association, 3050 Old Center Ave, Portage, MI, Table 100.18.

Schneider Electric USA, *Introduction to Field Testing and Maintenance Guide, for Thermal-magnetic and Micrologic® Electronic-trip Molded Case Circuit Breakers*, Schneider Electric USA, Palatine, IL, 1/2005 (600DB9901R1/05).

Sprague, M. J., Service-life evaluations of low-voltage power circuit breakers and molded-case circuit breakers (Frame Size amperes 800A–4000A).

UL 248-1 2000, UL Standard for Safety for Low-Voltage Fuses: Part 1: General Requirements, 2nd edn.; Reprint with revisions through and including August 11, 2005.

UL 248-8 and 10, 2000, UL Standard for Safety for Low-Voltage Fuses: Part 8 and 10: Class J & L Fuses, 2nd edn.; Reprint with revisions through and including August 11, 2005.

UL 489-2002, UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures, 10th edn.; Reprint with revisions through and including June 30, 2006.

UL 67, UL Standard for Safety for Panelboards, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.

UL 248.1–248.16-2000, UL Standard for Safety for Low-Voltage Fuses, Part 1–Part 16.

UL-489-1991, Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures.

UL-489-2002, Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures.

Chapter 9

ANSI/IEEE C57.13.1-1981, Field Testing of Relaying Current Transformers.

ANSI/IEEE C57.13-1993.06.01 (R2000), Standard Requirements for Instrument Transformers.

ANSI/IEEE Std C57.13.3-1983, IEEE Guide for Grounding of Instrument Transformers.

Beach, D., Klotz, S., and Barney, B., *Practical Experience in Commissioning Distributed Generation Installations*, Basler Electrical Company, Highland, IL, 2002.

Gosalia, J., Relay performance testing, *NETA Annual Technical Conference,* Denver, CO, 2004.

Guiliante, T., Makki, A. M., and Taffuri, J., New techniques for dynamic relay testing, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2007.

IEEE Special Publication # 96TP115-0, Relay performance testing, Power System Relaying Committee, Report of Working Group 113.

IEEE Std C37.103-2004, IEEE Guide for Differential and Polarizing Relay Circuit Testing.

IEEE Std C57.13.3-2005, IEEE Guide for Grounding of Instrument Transformer Secondary Circuits and Cases.

IEEE Std C37.90-2005, IEEE Standard for Relays and Relay Systems Associated with Electric Power Apparatus.

IEEE Std C57.13.1-2006, IEEE Guide for Field Testing of Relaying Current Transformers.

IEEE Std C37.110-2007, IEEE Guide for the Application of Current Transformers Used for Protective Relaying Purposes.

Jodice, J. A., Relay Performance Testing, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, Vol. 12, No. 1, January 1997.

Kumm, J. J., Webber, M. S., Schmeitzer, E. O. III, and Hou, D., Philosophies for testing protective relays, *48th Annual Georgia Tech Protective Relaying Conference*, Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories Incorporated, Atlanta, GA, May 1994.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for MCT-1600 Current Transformer Test Set*, 750025, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for MPRT Protective Relay Test System*, 710000, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Pieniazek, D. and Williamson, R., Application of relaying class current transformers, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Programma Instruments, *Instructional Manual for Sverker 750/760 Relay Test Unit*, ZP-CD01ER05A, Programma Instruments, Taby, Sweden.

Relay testing and maintenance, General Electric Company Power Management Technical Publication No. GET-3473B-2000.

Tienken, C., Gosalia, J., and Giuliante, A. T., End-to-end testing for routine maintenance, *Annual Western Protective Relay Conference*, October 21–23, 1997.

Werstiuk, C., Back to the basics—Current transformer testing: Parts 1 & II, *NETA World*, Fall and Winter 2004–2005.

White, J., Current transformers—a forgotten piece of the relay system, *NETA World*, Winter 2004–2005.

Young, M. and Horak, J., *Commissioning of Numerical Relays*, Basler Electrical Company, Highland, IL, 2001.

Zavadlov, C., Communicating with modern protective relays, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2007.

Zimmerman, K., Commissioning of protective relay systems, *SEL Technical Papers*, 2007.

Zocholl, S. E., Standard CT accuracy ratings in metal-clad switchgear, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Zocholl, S. E., *Analyzing and Applying Current Transformers*, Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories, Inc., WA, 2004.

Chapter 10

Bethel, N. P., *Fault Zone Analysis—Six Part Series on Identifying Motor Defects*, PdMA Corporation, Tampa, FL, 2005.

Blokhintsev, I. and Patterson, C., Continuous partial discharge monitoring on motors, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Bruni, K. A., *Guidelines for Successful Commutator and Brush Operation*, Carbon Products Operation Inc., East Stroudsburg, PA, pp. 1–7.

Brynjebo, E., Electrical testing and tabulation of high voltage motors, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Edwards, D. G., On-line Monitoring of Stator Winding Insulation in High Voltage Motors, Society of Petroleum Engineers, 1989, No. 19272.

General Electric Company, *Power Consideration for Adjustable Drives*, General Electric Company, Drive Dept., Erie, PA (GET-6468B-9/1988).

Gleichman, R., Failure modes and field testing of medium voltage motor windings, *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, Vol. 38, No. 5, September/October 2002.

IEEE Std 666-1991, Design Guide for Electric Power Service System for Generating Systems.

IEEE Std 115-1995, IEEE Guide: Test Procedures for Synchronous Machines.

IEEE Std 43-2000, IEEE Recommended Practice for Testing Insulation Resistance of Rotating Machinery.

IEEE Std 43-2000, IEEE Recommended Practice for Testing Insulation Resistance of Rotating Machinery.

IEEE Std 1434-2000, IEEE Trial-Use Guide to the Measurement of Partial Discharges in Rotating Machinery.

IEEE Std 841-2001, IEEE Standard for the Petroleum and Chemical Industry—Severe Duty Totally Enclosed Fan-Cooled (TEFC) Squirrel Cage Induction Motors—Up to and Including 370 kW (500 hp).

IEEE Std 112-2004, IEEE Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators.

IEEE Std 67-2005, IEEE Guide for Operation and Maintenance of Turbine Generator.

IEEE Std 415-2006, IEEE Guide for Induction Machinery Maintenance Testing and Failure Analysis.

IEEE Std 434-2006, IEEE Guide for Functional Evaluation of Insulation Systems for AC Electric Machines Rated 2300 V and above.

IEEE Std 1415-2006, IEEE Guide to Induction Machinery Maintenance Testing and Failure Analysis.

Maughan, C., Inspection, test and operating issues with collector rings, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for Delta-3000 10 kV Automated Insulation Test Set*, AVTM673001, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for S1-1052 5 kV Digital Insulation Resistance Tester*, S1-1052_UG_en_V03 0806, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *A Guide to Diagnostic Insulation Testing above 1 kV*, MEG-562/3M/5.2007, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Michalec, J., Thermal imaging of carbon brushes as a maintenance tool, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

NEMA MG-1, Motors and Generators—Includes Revision 1, 2007.

O'Donnell, P. (Coordinating Author), IEEE Committee Report, Report of large motor reliability survey of industrial and commercial installations, Parts 1 and 2, *IEEE Transaction on Industry Applications*, Vol. IA-21, No. 4, July/August 1985, pp. 853–872.

O'Donnell, P. (Coordinating Author), IEEE Committee Report, Report of large motor reliability survey of industrial and commercial installations, Parts 3, *IEEE Transaction on Industry Applications*, Vol. IA, No. 1, January/February 1987, pp. 153–158.

Pong, L., Hill, K., Simard, H., and Ryman, V., Condition assessment of RM field poles using M4000 test set, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Stone, G. C., Partial discharge measurements to asses rotating machine insulation condition: A survey, 1996, *IEEE International Symposium on Electrical Insulation*, Montreal, Canada, June 1996.

Tesla, A. and Tetreault, A., End winding vibration in large rotating machines, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Thomas, T. M., Integrating static and dynamic electric motor testing into a predictive maintenance program, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Timperley, J., High Voltage Equipment Condition Assessment with EMI Diagnostics, *Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2008.

Toliyat, H. A. and Kliman, G. B., *Handbook of Electric Motors*, Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, 2004.

Chapter 11

C62.92.2-1989, IEEE Guide for the Application of Neutral Grounding in Electrical Utility Systems, Part II: Grounding of Synchronous Generator Systems.

C62.92.4-1991, IEEE Guide for the Application of Neutral Grounding in Electrical Utility Systems, Part IV: Distribution.

C62.92.5-1992, IEEE Guide for the Application of Neutral Grounding in Electrical Utility Systems, Part V: Transmission Systems and Sub-Transmission Systems.

C62.92.3-1993, IEEE Guide for the Neutral Grounding in Electrical Utility Systems, Part III: Generator Auxiliary System.

C62.92.1-2000, IEEE Guide for the Application of Neutral Grounding in Electrical Utility Systems, Part 1: Introduction.

Clem, O., Used in company catalog, datasheet, and brochure, Megger/Programma, Valley Forge, PA, 2008.

Cunnie, E., Testing the bonding resistance in a grounding electrode system, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Havens, A., High resistance grounding or what happens when a phase-to-ground fault occurs? *NETA Conference Papers*, 2005.

IEEE Std 81-1983, IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System.

IEEE Std 665-1995, IEEE Guide for Generating Station Grounding.

IEEE Std 80-2000, IEEE Guide for Safety in AC Substation Grounding.

IEEE Std 1050-2004, IEEE Guide for Instrumentation and Control Equipment Grounding in Generating Stations.

IEEE Std 1100-2005 (Emerald Book), IEEE Std 1100-2005, IEEE Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment.

IEEE Std 142-2007 (Green Book), IEEE Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.

Jowett, J., Slope method, *NETA World*, Summer 2002.

Jowett, J., Measuring ground resistance—the fall of potential method, *NETA World*, Spring 2002.

Jowett, J., The role of testing in the practice of good grounding, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.

Jowett, J., Ground testing in complex, difficult environments, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2007.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for DET2/2 Digital Earth Tester*, 6171-428 V10, Megger Inc., Dover, U.K.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for GTS-300 Ground Grid Test Set*, 4464400600, Megger Inc., Dallas, TX.

Megger Inc., *Getting Down to Earth A Practical Guide to Earth Resistance Testing*, MEG-456/MIL/5M/11.2005, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA.

Selkirk, D., Ground-fault detection, charging current and neutral-grounding resistor selection, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2008.

Tajali, R., System grounding for mission-critical power systems, *NETA World*, Winter, 2004–2005.

Vlachos, G., Understanding ground resistance testing, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2006.

Chapter 12

ANSI/IEEE C57.110, 1986, Recommended Practice for Establishing Transformer Capacity When Supplying Non-Sinusoidal Load Currents.

Dranetz Technologies, Inc., *Power Line Harmonics Problems—Causes and Cures*, 1994.

Dranetz Technologies, Inc., *The Dranetz Field Handbook for Power Quality Analysis*, Dranetz Technologies, Inc., Edison, NJ, 1991.

EC&M Practical Guide to Quality Power for Sensitive Electronic Equipment, Second Edition, DeDad, John and Waggoner, Ray, Intertec Publishing, Overland Park, KS, 1997.

EPRI, *Wiring and Grounding for Power Quality*, Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, CA, 1995.

EPRI, Electrotek Concepts, Inc., *Power Quality Workbook for Utility and Industrial Applications,* TR-105500, Research Project 2935-30, Final Report, October 1995.

Fluke Corporation, *Applying Power Quality Measurements to Predictive Maintenance*, 2005.

Fluke Corporation, *Basic Power Quality Methodology and Common Culprits*, 2004.

Fluke Corporation, *Common Power Quality Factors Affecting Transformers*, 2004.

Fluke Corporation, *Electrical Noise and Transients*, 2004.

Fluke Corporation, *How Adjustable Speed Drives Affect Power Distribution*, 2004.

Fluke Corporation, *Performing Power Quality Studies and Troubleshooting Loads*, 2007.

Fluke Corporation, *Power Quality Clamp Meter*, 2007.

Fluke Corporation, *Power Quality Measurements at Receptacle Branch Circuits*, 2004.

Fluke Corporation, *Power Quality Troubleshooting with Hand Held Tools*, 2004.

Fluke Corporation, *Reducing Downtime by Troubleshooting Power Quality Disturbances*, 2006.

Fluke Corporation, *Troubleshooting Power Harmonics—Basic Troubleshooting Using Multimeters and Current Clamps*, 2004.

Grady, W. M. and Gilleskie, R. J., Harmonics and how they relate to power factor, *Proceedings of EPRI Power Quality Issues and Opportunities Conference*, San Diego, CA, November 1993.

Heydt, G. T., *Electric Power Quality*, Stars in a Circle Publication, Indianapolis, IN.

IEEE Std 519-1992, IEEE Recommended Practices and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electric Power systems, Table 10.3, Table 11.1.

IEEE Std 1100-1992 (Emerald Book), IEEE Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment.

IEEE Std C57.110-1998, IEEE Recommended Practice for Establishing Transformer Capability When Supplying Nonsinusoidal Load Currents.

IEEE Tutorial Course, Power System Harmonics, *IEEE Power Engineering Education Committee and the IEEE Transmission and Distribution Committee General Systems Subcommittee of the IEEE Power Engineering Society*, 84, EHO221-2-PWR.

Ignall, R., Power quality monitoring—Seeing what's on the wires, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2007.

Mack Grady, W., Understanding Power System Harmonics, *IEEE Power Engineering Review,* Vol. 21, No. 11, November 2001.

Megger Inc., *Instructional Manual for PA-9 Plus Portable Power Quality Analyzer,* AVTMP9P, Megger Inc., Valley Forge, PA, 2007.

NIST, *FIPS Publication 94-Guidance on Electrical Power for ADP Installations*, NIST, Gaithersburg, MD, 1994.

Ontario Hydro, *Power Quality Reference Guide*, Ontario Hydro, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
Pacific Gas and Electric Company, *Power System Harmonics*, 1993.
Rusch, R. J., K-rated transformers, Industry INFO, June 1998.
The power of a waveform: Expanded troubleshooting options with the Fluke 345, 2006.
Wagner, J. P., Switch Mode Power Conversion in Data Processing Equipment, 1997.

Chapter 13

ANSI C2-2007, National Electrical Safety Code (NESC), 2009.
ANSI Z244.1-1982 (Reaff 1993), Safety Requirements for the Lock Out/Tag Out of Energy Sources.
ANSI Z535.4-1998, Product Safety Signs and Labels.
ANSI/NFPA 70B-2006, Recommended Practice for Electrical Equipment Maintenance.
ASTM D120-95, Standard Specification for Rubber Insulating Gloves.
Guide to Industrial Electric Power Distribution. Compiled by the editors of Electrified Industry, B. J. Martin Co., Chicago.
Hartman, P., Electric arc flash protective clothing, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.
IEEE Std 1584, IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations.
IEEE Std 141-1993 (Red Book), IEEE Recommended Practice for Electric Power Distribution for Industrial Plants.
Inshaw, C. and Toepfer, F., Arc flash compliance practical application of NFPA-70 and IEEE 1584 standards, *73rd Annual International Doble Client Conference*, Boston, MA, 2006.
Lee, R. H., The other electrical hazards—Electric arc blast burns. IEEE TP IPSD 81-55.
Neitzel, D. K., *CPE, Protective Devices Maintenance as it Applies to the Arc/Flash Hazard*, AVO Training Institute, Dallas, TX, 2004.
Neitzel, D. K., Proper protective device maintenance and testing—The difference between life and death, *NETA Conference Papers*, 2004.
NFPA 70E-2004, Standard for Electrical Safety Requirements for Employee Workplaces.
NFPA 70E, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace, 2004.
NFPA 70E, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace, 2004, Table 130.2(C), Table 130.7(C)(11).
NFPA 70-2008, National Electrical Code (NEC).
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 29 CFR Part 1910 Subpart S and I, 1910.131, 1910-132-.139, 1910.147, 1910-302-.308, 1910.331-.335, 1910.361-.398 and Appendix A.

Index

D

E

O

P

U

V

Electrical Engineering

Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing

Second Edition

Paul Gill

New trends toward preventive and predictive maintenance are giving rise to advanced techniques for obtaining maximum life from electrical equipment, maintaining its reliability, and minimizing repair costs. Following in the tradition of its bestselling predecessor, **Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing, Second Edition** consolidates and coordinates the latest developments in the field into one comprehensive text.

Integrating basic principles, theory, and practice, the book discusses routine (field) and commissioning testing as well as maintenance procedures for assessing equipment insulation integrity and operational dependability. The book shows how to inspect and test equipment for apparatus integrity and other operating characteristics that affect performance. The author evaluates results for each category of testing and elucidates equipment degradation mechanisms and their impact on reliability and efficiency by detailing failure modes and effects.

Containing numerous references, equations, illustrations, and photographs, this valuable resource is a one-stop guide for implementing an effective maintenance and testing plan for electric power equipment.

DK4058

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
an informa business
www.crcpress.com

6000 Broken Sound Parkway, NW
Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487
270 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016
2 Park Square, Milton Park
Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN, UK

ISBN: 978-1-57444-656-2
90000
9 781574 446562